

Frederic S. Mishkin

MACROECONOMICS
POLICY AND PRACTICE

www.ebook3000.com

An abstract mosaic pattern composed of irregular, interconnected shapes in various shades of blue, green, and brown. The pattern is dense and fills the lower half of the page.

Frederic S. Mishkin

Columbia University

MACROECONOMICS **POLICY AND PRACTICE**

Addison-Wesley

Boston Columbus Indianapolis New York San Francisco Upper Saddle River
Amsterdam Cape Town Dubai London Madrid Milan Munich Paris Montreal Toronto
Delhi Mexico City Sao Paulo Sydney Hong Kong Seoul Singapore Taipei Tokyo

www.ebook3000.com

The Pearson Series in Economics

Abel/Bernanke/Croushore

*Macroeconomics**

Bade/Parkin

*Foundations of Economics**

Berck/Helfand

The Economics of the Environment

Bierman/Fernandez

Game Theory with Economic Applications

Blanchard

*Macroeconomics**

Blau/Ferber/Winkler

The Economics of Women, Men and Work

**Boardman/Greenberg/Vining/
Weimer**

Cost-Benefit Analysis

Boyer

Principles of Transportation Economics

Branson

Macroeconomic Theory and Policy

Brock/Adams

The Structure of American Industry

Bruce

Public Finance and the American Economy

Carlton/Perloff

Modern Industrial Organization

Case/Fair/Oster

*Principles of Economics**

Caves/Frankel/Jones

World Trade and Payments: An Introduction

Chapman

Environmental Economics: Theory, Application, and Policy

Cooter/Ulen

Law & Economics

Downs

An Economic Theory of Democracy

Ehrenberg/Smith

Modern Labor Economics

Ekelund/Ressler/Tollison

*Economics**

Farnham

Economics for Managers

Folland/Goodman/Stano

The Economics of Health and Health Care

Fort

Sports Economics

Froyen

Macroeconomics

Fusfeld

The Age of the Economist

Gerber

*International Economics**

Gordon

*Macroeconomics**

Greene

Econometric Analysis

Gregory

Essentials of Economics

Gregory/Stuart

Russian and Soviet Economic Performance and Structure

Hartwick/Olewiler

The Economics of Natural Resource Use

Heilbroner/Milberg

The Making of the Economic Society

Heyne/Boettke/Prychitko

The Economic Way of Thinking

Hoffman/Averett

Women and the Economy: Family, Work, and Pay

Holt

Markets, Games and Strategic Behavior

Hubbard/O'Brien

*Economics**

*Money, Banking, and the Financial System**

Hughes/Cain

American Economic History

Husted/Melvin

International Economics

Jehle/Reny

Advanced Microeconomic Theory

Johnson-Lans

A Health Economics Primer

Keat/Young

Managerial Economics

Klein

Mathematical Methods for Economics

Krugman/Obstfeld/Melitz

*International Economics: Theory & Policy**

Laidler

The Demand for Money

Leeds/von Allmen

The Economics of Sports

Leeds/von Allmen/Schiming

*Economics**

Lipsey/Ragan/Storer

*Economics**

Lynn

Economic Development: Theory and Practice for a Divided World

Miller

*Economics Today**

Understanding Modern Economics

Miller/Benjamin

The Economics of Macro Issues

Miller/Benjamin/North

The Economics of Public Issues

Mills/Hamilton

Urban Economics

Mishkin

*The Economics of Money, Banking, and Financial Markets**

*The Economics of Money, Banking, and Financial Markets, Business School Edition**

*Macroeconomics: Policy and Practice**

Murray

Econometrics: A Modern Introduction

Nafziger

The Economics of Developing Countries

O'Sullivan/Sheffrin/Perez

*Economics: Principles, Applications and Tools**

Parkin

*Economics**

Perloff

*Microeconomics**

*Microeconomics: Theory and Applications with Calculus**

**Perman/Common/
McGilvray/Ma**

Natural Resources and Environmental Economics

Phelps

Health Economics

Pindyck/Rubinfeld

*Microeconomics**

**Riddell/Shackelford/Stamos/
Schneider**

Economics: A Tool for Critically Understanding Society

Ritter/Silber/Udell

*Principles of Money, Banking & Financial Markets**

Roberts

The Choice: A Fable of Free Trade and Protection

Rohlf

Introduction to Economic Reasoning

Ruffin/Gregory

Principles of Economics

Sargent

Rational Expectations and Inflation

Sawyer/Sprinkle

International Economics

Scherer

Industry Structure, Strategy, and Public Policy

Schiller

The Economics of Poverty and Discrimination

Sherman

Market Regulation

Silberberg

Principles of Microeconomics

Stock/Watson

Introduction to Econometrics

Introduction to Econometrics, Brief Edition

Studenmund

Using Econometrics: A Practical Guide

Tietenberg/Lewis

Environmental and Natural Resource Economics

Environmental Economics and Policy

Todaro/Smith

Economic Development

Waldman

Microeconomics

Waldman/Jensen

Industrial Organization: Theory and Practice

Weil

Economic Growth

Williamson

Macroeconomics

Editorial Director: Sally Yagan
Editor in Chief: Donna Battista
Acquisitions Editor: Noel Kamm Seibert
Executive Development Editor: Rebecca Ferris-Caruso
Editorial Project Manager: Carolyn Terbush
Editorial Assistant: Megan Cadigan
Director of Marketing: Patrice Jones
AVP/Executive Marketing Manager: Lori DeShazo
Market Development Manager: Kathleen McLellan
Marketing Assistant: Ian Gold
Managing Editor: Nancy H. Fenton
Senior Production Project Manager: Kathryn Dinovo
Senior Manufacturing Buyer: Carol Melville
Creative Director: Christy Mahon
Senior Art Director: Jonathan Boylan
Text and Cover Designer: ElectraGraphics, Inc.
Permissions Project Supervisor: Michael Joyce
Cover Art: © Shutterstock, Inc./Color Symphony
Media Director: Susan Schoenberg
Senior Media Producer: Melissa Honig
MyEconLab Content Lead: Noel Lotz
Supplements Editor: Alison Eusden
Full-Service Project Management/Composition: GEX Publishing Services
Printer/Binder: R. R. Donnelley/Willard
Cover Printer: Lehigh-Phoenix Color/Hagerstown
Text Font: 10/13 Palatino

Credits and acknowledgments borrowed from other sources and reproduced, with permission, in this textbook appear on the appropriate page within text.

Copyright © 2012 Pearson Education, Inc., publishing as Addison-Wesley, 75 Arlington Street, Boston, MA 02116. All rights reserved. Manufactured in the United States of America. This publication is protected by Copyright, and permission should be obtained from the publisher prior to any prohibited reproduction, storage in a retrieval system, or transmission in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or likewise. To obtain permission(s) to use material from this work, please submit a written request to Pearson Education, Inc., Rights and Contracts Department, 501 Boylston Street, Suite 900, Boston, MA 02116, fax your request to 617-671-3447, or e-mail at www.pearsoned.com/legal/permissions.htm.

Many of the designations by manufacturers and seller to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in this book, and the publisher was aware of a trademark claim, the designations have been printed in initial caps or all caps.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Mishkin, Frederic S.
Macroeconomics : policy and practice / Frederic S. Mishkin.
p. cm.
Includes index.
ISBN 978-0-321-43633-7 (casebound) 1. Macroeconomics. I. Title.
HB172.5.M568 2012
339—dc22 2010048027

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Addison-Wesley
is an imprint of



www.pearsonhighered.com

ISBN 10: 0-321-43633-4
ISBN 13: 978-0-321-43633-7

www.ebook3000.com

To My Mom

This page intentionally left blank

BRIEF CONTENTS

PART ONE	INTRODUCTION	1
	Chapter 1 The Policy and Practice of Macroeconomics	3
	Chapter 2 Measuring Macroeconomic Data	18
PART TWO	MACROECONOMIC BASICS	45
	Chapter 3 Aggregate Production and Productivity	47
	Chapter 4 Saving and Investment in Closed and Open Economies	67
	Chapter 5 Money and Inflation	102
PART THREE	LONG-RUN ECONOMIC GROWTH	142
	Chapter 6 The Sources of Growth and the Solow Model	144
	Chapter 7 Drivers of Growth: Technology, Policy, and Institutions	175
PART FOUR	BUSINESS CYCLES: THE SHORT RUN	198
	Chapter 8 Business Cycles: An Introduction	200
	Chapter 9 The <i>IS</i> Curve	222
	Chapter 10 Monetary Policy and Aggregate Demand	240
	Chapter 11 Aggregate Supply and the Phillips Curve	267
	Chapter 12 The Aggregate Demand and Supply Model	284
	Chapter 13 Macroeconomic Policy and Aggregate Demand and Supply Analysis . . .	312
PART FIVE	FINANCE AND THE MACROECONOMY	343
	Chapter 14 The Financial System and Economic Growth	345
	Chapter 15 Financial Crises and the Economy	363
PART SIX	MACROECONOMIC POLICY	394
	Chapter 16 Fiscal Policy and the Government Budget	396
	Chapter 17 Exchange Rates and International Economic Policy	423
PART SEVEN	MICROECONOMIC FOUNDATIONS OF MACROECONOMICS	454
	Chapter 18 Consumption and Saving	456
	Chapter 19 Investment	486
	Chapter 20 The Labor Market, Employment, and Unemployment	514
PART EIGHT	MODERN BUSINESS CYCLE ANALYSIS AND MACROECONOMIC POLICY	540
	Chapter 21 The Role of Expectations in Macroeconomic Policy	542
	Chapter 22 Modern Business Cycle Theory	566
	EPILOGUE	592
	Web Chapter Financial Crises in Emerging Market Economies Go to the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin	

This page intentionally left blank

CONTENTS

PREFACE	xxxi
---------------	------

PART ONE **INTRODUCTION** **1**

Chapter 1	
The Policy and Practice of Macroeconomics	3
PREVIEW	3
THE PRACTICE OF MACROECONOMICS	3
The Process: Developing Macroeconomic Models	4
The Purpose: Interpreting Macroeconomic Data	5
MACROECONOMIC POLICY	9
How Can Poor Countries Get Rich?	9
Is Saving Too Low?	10
Do Government Budget Deficits Matter?	11
How Costly Is It to Reduce Inflation?	11
How Can We Make Financial Crises Less Likely?	12
How Active Should Stabilization Policy Be?	12
Should Macroeconomic Policy Follow Rules?	13
Are Global Trade Imbalances a Danger?	13
HOW WE WILL STUDY MACROECONOMICS	13
Emphasis on Policy and Practice	13
Concluding Remarks	14
SUMMARY	14
KEY TERMS	14
REVIEW QUESTIONS	14
PROBLEMS	15
Chapter 2	
Measuring Macroeconomic Data	18
PREVIEW	18
MEASURING ECONOMIC ACTIVITY: NATIONAL INCOME ACCOUNTING	19
MEASURING GDP: THE PRODUCTION APPROACH	19
Market Value	19
Final Goods and Services	21
Newly Produced Goods and Services	22
Fixed Period of Time	22
POLICY AND PRACTICE: Can GDP Buy Happiness?	22
BOX: Stocks Versus Flows	23
MEASURING GDP: THE EXPENDITURE APPROACH	23

Consumption Expenditure	24
Investment	24
Government Purchases	25
Net Exports	25
BOX: Meaning of the Word <i>Investment</i>	25
Changes in the Spending Components of GDP over Time	26
MEASURING GDP: THE INCOME APPROACH	27
Categories of Income	27
BOX: An International Comparison of Expenditure Components	28
Income Measures	29
REAL VERSUS NOMINAL GDP	30
Nominal Variables	30
Real Variables	30
Chain-Weighted Measures of Real GDP	31
MEASURING INFLATION	31
GDP Deflator	32
PCE Deflator	32
Consumer Price Index	32
POLICY AND PRACTICE: Policy and Overstatements of the Cost of Living ...	33
Inflation Rate	34
Percentage Change Method and the Inflation Rate	34
MEASURING UNEMPLOYMENT	35
BOX: MACROECONOMICS IN THE NEWS: Unemployment and Employment .	37
MEASURING INTEREST RATES	38
Types of Interest Rates	38
BOX: MACROECONOMICS IN THE NEWS: Interest Rates	38
Real Versus Nominal Interest Rates	39
The Important Distinction Between Real and Nominal Interest Rates	40
SUMMARY	41
KEY TERMS	41
REVIEW QUESTIONS	42
PROBLEMS	43

PART TWO**MACROECONOMIC BASICS****45****Chapter 3****Aggregate Production and Productivity****PREVIEW****DETERMINANTS OF AGGREGATE PRODUCTION**

Factors of Production

Production Function

Cobb-Douglas Production Function

APPLICATION: Why Are Some Countries Rich and Others Poor?	49
Cobb-Douglas Production Function Characteristics	51
Changes in the Production Function: Supply Shocks	54
DETERMINATION OF FACTOR PRICES	56
Demand for Capital and Labor	56
Supply of Capital and Labor	58
Factor Market Equilibrium	58
DISTRIBUTION OF NATIONAL INCOME	60
APPLICATION: Explaining Real Wage Growth	61
APPLICATION: Oil Shocks, Real Wages, and the Stock Market	62
Concluding Remarks	64
SUMMARY	64
KEY TERMS	64
REVIEW QUESTIONS	64
PROBLEMS	65
Chapter 4	
Saving and Investment in Closed and Open Economies	67
PREVIEW	67
RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN SAVING AND WEALTH	67
Private Saving	68
Government Saving	68
National Saving	69
POLICY AND PRACTICE: Government Policies to Stimulate Saving	70
Uses of Saving	71
BOX: MACROECONOMICS IN THE NEWS: Balance of Payments Accounts ..	72
The Link Between Saving and Wealth	73
APPLICATION: How the United States Became the Largest Net Debtor in the World	74
SAVING, INVESTMENT, AND GOODS MARKET EQUILIBRIUM IN A CLOSED ECONOMY	75
Saving and Investment Equation	75
Saving	76
Investment	77
Goods Market Equilibrium	78
RESPONSE TO CHANGES IN SAVING AND INVESTMENT IN A CLOSED ECONOMY	79
Changes in Saving: Autonomous Consumption	79
Changes in Saving: Effects of Fiscal Policy	79
POLICY AND PRACTICE: Crowding Out and the Debate over the 2009 Fiscal Stimulus Package	81
Changes in Autonomous Investment	82

SAVING, INVESTMENT, AND GOODS MARKET EQUILIBRIUM IN AN OPEN ECONOMY	83
Perfect Capital Mobility and the Open Economy	83
Goods Market Equilibrium in an Open Economy	84
SAVING, INVESTMENT, AND THE TRADE BALANCE IN A SMALL OPEN ECONOMY	84
Goods Market Equilibrium in a Small Open Economy	84
Connection Between the World Economy and Small Open Economy	86
RESPONSE TO CHANGES IN SAVING AND INVESTMENT IN A SMALL OPEN ECONOMY	86
Changes in Domestic Saving	86
APPLICATION: The Twin Deficits	87
Changes in Investment	89
LARGE VERSUS SMALL OPEN ECONOMIES	89
SUMMARY	90
KEY TERMS	91
REVIEW QUESTIONS	91
PROBLEMS	92
Chapter 4 Appendix	
Saving and Investment in Large Open Economies	94
GOODS MARKET EQUILIBRIUM IN LARGE OPEN ECONOMIES	94
CHANGES IN DOMESTIC SAVING	96
APPLICATION: The Global Saving Glut	97
CHANGES IN DOMESTIC INVESTMENT	98
SUMMARY	100
REVIEW QUESTIONS AND PROBLEMS	100
Chapter 5	
Money and Inflation	102
PREVIEW	102
WHAT IS MONEY?	103
Meaning of Money	103
Functions of Money	103
BOX: Unusual Forms of Money	104
THE FEDERAL RESERVE SYSTEM AND THE CONTROL OF THE MONEY SUPPLY	104
Federal Reserve Banks	105
Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System	106
Federal Open Market Committee (FOMC)	106
Control of the Money Supply	106
BOX: The European Central Bank	107
MEASURING MONEY	107
The Federal Reserve's Monetary Aggregates	107

BOX: MACROECONOMICS IN THE NEWS: The Monetary Aggregates	108
The Fed's Use of M1 Versus M2 in Practice	108
BOX: Where Is All the U.S. Currency?	109
QUANTITY THEORY OF MONEY	110
Velocity of Money and the Equation of Exchange	110
From the Equation of Exchange to the Quantity Theory of Money	111
The Classical Dichotomy	112
Quantity Theory and the Price Level	112
Quantity Theory and Inflation	113
APPLICATION: Testing the Quantity Theory of Money	113
HYPERINFLATION	115
POLICY AND PRACTICE: The Zimbabwean Hyperinflation	116
INFLATION AND INTEREST RATES	116
APPLICATION: Testing the Fisher Effect	117
THE COST OF INFLATION	119
Costs of Anticipated Inflation	119
Costs of Unanticipated Inflation	120
SUMMARY	121
KEY TERMS	122
REVIEW QUESTIONS	122
PROBLEMS	123
Chapter 5 Appendix	
The Money Supply Process	126
THE FED'S BALANCE SHEET	126
Liabilities	126
Assets	127
CONTROL OF THE MONETARY BASE	127
Federal Reserve Open Market Operations	127
Shifts from Deposits into Currency	128
Discount Loans	129
Overview of the Fed's Ability to Control the Monetary Base	129
MULTIPLE DEPOSIT CREATION: A SIMPLE MODEL	130
Deposit Creation: The Single Bank	130
Deposit Creation: The Banking System	131
Critique of the Simple Model	133
FACTORS THAT DETERMINE THE MONEY SUPPLY	133
Changes in the Nonborrowed Monetary Base	133
Changes in Borrowed Reserves from the Fed	133
Changes in the Required Reserve Ratio	134
Changes in Currency Holdings	134
Changes in Excess Reserves	134
Overview of the Money Supply Process	134

APPLICATION: The Great Depression Bank Panics and the Money Supply, 1930–1933	135
THE MONEY MULTIPLIER	136
Deriving the Money Multiplier	137
Intuition Behind the Money Multiplier	138
Money Supply Response to Changes in the Factors	139
SUMMARY	140
KEY TERMS	140
REVIEW QUESTIONS AND PROBLEMS	141

PART THREE **LONG-RUN ECONOMIC GROWTH** **142**

Chapter 6

The Sources of Growth and the Solow Model	144
PREVIEW	144
SOURCES OF ECONOMIC GROWTH: GROWTH ACCOUNTING	145
Growth Accounting Equation	145
Growth Accounting in Practice	146
BOX: Time Subscripts	147
APPLICATION: U.S. Growth Rates in the Postwar Period	147
Cross-Country Differences in Growth Accounting Rates	148
THE SOLOW GROWTH MODEL	149
Building Blocks of the Solow Growth Model	149
Dynamics of the Solow Growth Model	152
BOX: The Bathtub “Model” of the Steady State	154
Convergence in the Solow Model	154
APPLICATION: Evidence on Convergence, 1960–2009	155
BOX: War, Destruction, and Growth Miracles	156
SAVING RATE CHANGES IN THE SOLOW MODEL	157
POPULATION GROWTH IN THE SOLOW MODEL	158
Population Growth and the Steady State	159
Changes in Population Growth	160
Population Growth and Real GDP Per Capita	160
POLICY AND PRACTICE: China’s One-Child Policy and Other Policies to Limit Population Growth	162
PRODUCTIVITY GROWTH IN THE SOLOW MODEL	162
Technology Growth and the Steady State	162
SUMMING UP THE SOLOW MODEL	163
Solow Model: The Results	163
Solow Model: Limitations	164
SUMMARY	164
KEY TERMS	164

REVIEW QUESTIONS	165
PROBLEMS	166
Chapter 6 Appendix A	
The Golden Rule Level of the Capital-Labor Ratio	168
STEADY STATES AT DIFFERENT CAPITAL-LABOR RATIOS	168
GOLDEN RULE CAPITAL-LABOR RATIO	169
IMPLICATIONS OF THE GOLDEN RULE CAPITAL-LABOR RATIO	171
SUMMARY	172
KEY TERMS	172
REVIEW QUESTIONS AND PROBLEMS	172
Chapter 6 Appendix B	
The Algebra of the Solow Growth Model	173
SOLVING FOR THE STEADY STATE	173
SUMMARY AND RESULTS	174
REVIEW QUESTIONS AND PROBLEMS	174
Chapter 7	
Drivers of Growth: Technology, Policy, and Institutions	175
PREVIEW	175
TECHNOLOGY AS A PRODUCTION INPUT	175
Technology Versus Conventional Production Inputs	176
Technology and Excludability	176
POLICIES TO PROMOTE PRODUCTIVITY	176
Building Infrastructure	176
Increasing Human Capital	177
POLICY AND PRACTICE: Government Measures to Increase Human Capital	177
Encouraging Research and Development	178
INSTITUTIONS AND PROPERTY RIGHTS	180
The Legal System and Property Rights	180
BOX: Geography, the Legal System, and Economic Growth	182
Obstacles to Effective Property Rights	182
POLICY AND PRACTICE: The World Bank's <i>Doing Business</i>	183
POLICY AND PRACTICE: Does Foreign Aid Work?	184
ENDOGENOUS GROWTH THEORY	186
Allocation of Labor	186
Production Function	186
Production of Technology	187
Sustained Growth in the Romer Model	188
FACTORS THAT AFFECT ENDOGENOUS GROWTH	189
Effects of an Increase in the Fraction of the Population Engaged in R&D, α	189
Effect of Changes in the Productiveness of R&D, χ	189
Response to an Increase in the Total Population \bar{N}	191

APPLICATION: Does Population Growth Improve Living Standards?	192
The Romer Model and Saving	194
SUMMARY	195
KEY TERMS	195
REVIEW QUESTIONS	195
PROBLEMS	196

PART FOUR **BUSINESS CYCLES: THE SHORT RUN** **198**

Chapter 8	
Business Cycles: An Introduction	200
PREVIEW	200
BUSINESS CYCLE BASICS	201
Business Cycle Illustration	201
BOX: Dating Business Cycles	202
Co-Movement and Timing of Economic Variables	203
MACROECONOMIC VARIABLES AND THE BUSINESS CYCLE	203
Real GDP and Its Components	203
BOX: MACROECONOMICS IN THE NEWS: Leading Economic Indicators ...	204
Unemployment	206
Inflation	206
Financial Variables	206
International Business Cycles	208
A BRIEF HISTORY OF U.S. BUSINESS CYCLES	210
Pre–World War I	210
The Interwar Period and the Great Depression	212
Post–World War II	212
The “Great Moderation”	213
The Great Recession of 2007–2009	213
TIME HORIZONS IN MACROECONOMICS	213
Keynesian and Classical Views on Economic Fluctuations	214
The Short Run Versus the Long Run	214
PRICE STICKINESS	215
Perfect Competition Versus Monopolistic Competition	215
Sources of Price Stickiness	216
Empirical Evidence on Price Stickiness	217
ROAD MAP FOR OUR STUDY OF BUSINESS CYCLES	217
SUMMARY	218
KEY TERMS	218
REVIEW QUESTIONS	219
PROBLEMS	220

Chapter 9

The IS Curve	222
PREVIEW	222
PLANNED EXPENDITURE	223
THE COMPONENTS OF EXPENDITURE	223
Consumption Expenditure	223
Planned Investment Spending	224
Net Exports	226
Government Purchases and Taxes	227
GOODS MARKET EQUILIBRIUM	228
Solving for Goods Market Equilibrium	228
Deriving the <i>IS</i> Curve	229
UNDERSTANDING THE <i>IS</i> CURVE	229
What the <i>IS</i> Curve Tells Us: Intuition	229
What the <i>IS</i> Curve Tells Us: Numerical Example	229
Why the Economy Heads Toward the Equilibrium	230
Why the <i>IS</i> Curve Has Its Name and Its Relationship with the Saving-Investment Diagram	231
FACTORS THAT SHIFT THE <i>IS</i> CURVE	232
Changes in Government Purchases	232
APPLICATION: The Vietnam War Buildup, 1964–1969	233
Changes in Taxes	234
POLICY AND PRACTICE: The Fiscal Stimulus Package of 2009	235
Changes in Autonomous Spending	236
Summary of Factors that Shift the <i>IS</i> Curve	237
SUMMARY	237
KEY TERMS	238
REVIEW QUESTIONS	238
PROBLEMS	238

Chapter 10

Monetary Policy and Aggregate Demand	240
PREVIEW	240
THE FEDERAL RESERVE AND MONETARY POLICY	240
THE MONETARY POLICY CURVE	241
The Taylor Principle: Why the Monetary Policy Curve Has an Upward Slope ..	242
Shifts in the <i>MP</i> Curve	243
POLICY AND PRACTICE: Autonomous Monetary Easing at the Onset of the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis	244
THE AGGREGATE DEMAND CURVE	245
Deriving the Aggregate Demand Curve Graphically	245
Factors That Shift the Aggregate Demand Curve	247
BOX: Deriving the Aggregate Demand Curve Algebraically	247

THE MONEY MARKET AND INTEREST RATES	251
Liquidity Preference and the Demand for Money	251
Demand Curve for Money	252
Supply Curve for Money	253
Equilibrium in the Money Market	253
Changes in the Equilibrium Interest Rate	254
SUMMARY	257
KEY TERMS	257
REVIEW QUESTIONS	257
PROBLEMS	258
Chapter 10 Appendix	
The Demand for Money	260
KEYNESIAN THEORIES OF MONEY DEMAND	260
Transactions Motive	260
Precautionary Motive	261
Speculative Motive	261
Putting the Three Motives Together	261
PORTFOLIO THEORIES OF MONEY DEMAND	262
Portfolio Theory	262
Portfolio Theory and Keynesian Liquidity Preference	262
Other Factors That Affect the Demand for Money	263
Summary	263
EMPIRICAL EVIDENCE ON THE DEMAND FOR MONEY	263
Interest Rates and Money Demand	264
Stability of Money Demand	264
SUMMARY	265
KEY TERMS	265
REVIEW QUESTIONS AND PROBLEMS	266
Chapter 11	
Aggregate Supply and the Phillips Curve	267
PREVIEW	267
THE PHILLIPS CURVE	268
Phillips Curve Analysis in the 1960s	268
POLICY AND PRACTICE: The Phillips Curve Tradeoff and Macroeconomic Policy in the 1960s	268
The Friedman-Phelps Phillips Curve Analysis	269
The Phillips Curve After the 1960s	272
The Modern Phillips Curve	272
The Modern Phillips Curve with Adaptive (Backward-Looking) Expectations ..	272
THE AGGREGATE SUPPLY CURVE	273
Long-Run Aggregate Supply Curve	274
Short-Run Aggregate Supply Curve	275

SHIFTS IN AGGREGATE SUPPLY CURVES	277
Shifts in the Long-Run Aggregate Supply Curve	277
Shifts in the Short-Run Aggregate Supply Curve	278
SUMMARY	280
KEY TERMS	281
REVIEW QUESTIONS	281
PROBLEMS	282
Chapter 12	
The Aggregate Demand and Supply Model	284
PREVIEW	284
RECAP OF THE AGGREGATE DEMAND AND SUPPLY CURVES	284
The Aggregate Demand Curve	285
Factors That Shift the Aggregate Demand Curve	285
Short- and Long-Run Aggregate Supply Curves	286
Factors that Shift the Long-Run Aggregate Supply Curve	287
Factors that Shift the Short-Run Aggregate Supply Curve	287
EQUILIBRIUM IN AGGREGATE DEMAND AND SUPPLY ANALYSIS	287
Short-Run Equilibrium	288
Long-Run Equilibrium	288
BOX: Algebraic Determination of the Equilibrium Output and Inflation Rate ..	289
Short-Run Equilibrium over Time	289
Self-Correcting Mechanism	291
CHANGES IN EQUILIBRIUM: AGGREGATE DEMAND SHOCKS	291
BOX: Algebraic Determination of the Response to a Rightward Shift of the Aggregate Demand Curve	292
APPLICATION: The Volcker Disinflation, 1980–1986	293
APPLICATION: Negative Demand Shocks, 2001–2004	294
CHANGES IN EQUILIBRIUM: AGGREGATE SUPPLY (PRICE) SHOCKS	295
Temporary Supply Shocks	295
APPLICATION: Negative Supply Shocks, 1973–1975 and 1978–1980	297
Permanent Supply Shocks	298
APPLICATION: Positive Supply Shocks, 1995–1999	300
Conclusions	301
APPLICATION: Negative Supply and Demand Shocks and the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis	301
AD/AS ANALYSIS OF FOREIGN BUSINESS CYCLE EPISODES	303
APPLICATION: The United Kingdom and the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis	303
APPLICATION: China and the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis	304
SUMMARY	305
KEY TERMS	306
REVIEW QUESTIONS	306
PROBLEMS	307

Chapter 12 Appendix	
The Taylor Principle and Inflation Stability	309
SUMMARY	311
REVIEW QUESTIONS AND PROBLEMS	311
Chapter 12 Web Appendix A	
The Effects of Macroeconomic Shocks on Asset Prices	
Go to the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin	
Chapter 12 Web Appendix B	
The Algebra of the Aggregate Demand and Supply Model	
Go to the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin	
Chapter 13	
Macroeconomic Policy and Aggregate Demand and Supply Analysis	312
PREVIEW	312
THE OBJECTIVES OF MACROECONOMIC POLICY	312
Stabilizing Economic Activity	313
Stabilizing Inflation: Price Stability	313
Establishing Hierarchical Versus Dual Mandates	314
THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN STABILIZING INFLATION AND STABILIZING ECONOMIC ACTIVITY	314
Monetary Policy and the Equilibrium Real Interest Rate	315
POLICY AND PRACTICE: The Federal Reserve's Use of the Equilibrium Real Interest Rate, r^*	315
Response to an Aggregate Demand Shock	317
Response to a Permanent Supply Shock	320
Response to a Temporary Supply Shock	323
The Bottom Line: The Relationship Between Stabilizing Inflation and Stabilizing Economic Activity	327
HOW ACTIVELY SHOULD POLICY MAKERS TRY TO STABILIZE ECONOMIC ACTIVITY?	327
Lags and Policy Implementation	327
POLICY AND PRACTICE: The Activist/Nonactivist Debate Over the Obama Fiscal Stimulus Package	328
THE TAYLOR RULE	329
The Taylor Rule Equation	329
The Taylor Rule Versus the Monetary Policy Curve	330
The Taylor Rule in Practice	330
POLICY AND PRACTICE: The Fed's Use of the Taylor Rule	331
INFLATION: ALWAYS AND EVERYWHERE A MONETARY PHENOMENON	332
CAUSES OF INFLATIONARY MONETARY POLICY	334
High Employment Targets and Inflation	334
APPLICATION: The Great Inflation	337

SUMMARY	338
KEY TERMS	339
REVIEW QUESTIONS	339
PROBLEMS	340

PART FIVE **FINANCE AND THE MACROECONOMY** **343**

Chapter 14

The Financial System and Economic Growth	345
PREVIEW	345
THE ROLE OF THE FINANCIAL SYSTEM	345
Direct Finance	346
Indirect Finance	347
BOX: Financial Intermediaries	348
INFORMATION CHALLENGES AND THE FINANCIAL SYSTEM	349
Asymmetric Information	349
Free-Rider Problem	350
Financial Intermediaries Address Asymmetric Information Problems	350
Collateral and Asymmetric Information Problems	353
APPLICATION: The Tyranny of Collateral	353
GOVERNMENT REGULATION AND SUPERVISION OF THE FINANCIAL SECTOR	354
Government Regulation to Promote Transparency	354
BOX: Government-Directed Credit	355
Government Safety Net	355
BOX: The Enron Implosion	356
Role of Prudential Regulation and Supervision	357
FINANCIAL DEVELOPMENT AND ECONOMIC GROWTH: THE EVIDENCE	357
APPLICATION: Is China a Counter-Example to the Importance of Financial Development to Economic Growth?	359
SUMMARY	360
KEY TERMS	360
REVIEW QUESTIONS	360
PROBLEMS	361

Chapter 14 Web Appendix

Free Trade, Financial Globalization, and Growth

Go to the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin

Chapter 15

Financial Crises and the Economy	363
PREVIEW	363

ASYMMETRIC INFORMATION AND FINANCIAL CRISES	364
Asymmetric Information Problems	364
Agency Theory and Financial Crises	364
DYNAMICS OF FINANCIAL CRISES	364
Stage One: Initiation of Financial Crisis	364
Stage Two: Banking Crisis	367
Stage Three: Debt Deflation	368
APPLICATION: The Mother of All Financial Crises: The Great Depression	368
Stock Market Crash	368
Bank Panics	369
Adverse Selection and Moral Hazard Worsen, Causing Aggregate Demand to Decline	369
Real Interest Rates Rise	371
Debt Deflation	371
Recovery Begins	372
International Dimensions	372
APPLICATION: The 2007–2009 Financial Crisis	372
Causes of the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis	372
Effects of the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis	373
BOX: Collateralized Debt Obligations (CDOs)	374
Residential Housing Prices: Boom and Bust	374
POLICY AND PRACTICE: Was the Fed to Blame for the Housing Price Bubble?	375
BOX: Ireland and the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis	379
Height of the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis and the Decline of Aggregate Demand	379
WHY THE 2007–2009 FINANCIAL CRISIS DID NOT LEAD TO A DEPRESSION ..	381
Aggressive Federal Reserve Actions	381
POLICY AND PRACTICE: Nonconventional Monetary Policy and the Monetary Transmission Mechanism	382
Worldwide Government Intervention Through Bailouts	383
Aggressive Fiscal Policy	384
POLICY AND PRACTICE: Japan’s Lost Decade, 1992–2002	385
POLICY RESPONSE TO ASSET-PRICE BUBBLES	386
Types of Asset-Price Bubbles	386
POLICY AND PRACTICE: Debate Over Central Bank Response to Bubbles ..	387
Regulatory Policy Responses to Asset Bubbles	388
SUMMARY	389
KEY TERMS	389
REVIEW QUESTIONS	390
PROBLEMS	390

Chapter 16

Fiscal Policy and the Government Budget	396
PREVIEW	396
THE GOVERNMENT BUDGET	396
Government Spending	397
Revenue	399
Budget Deficits and Surpluses	399
Government Budget Constraint	400
SIZE OF THE GOVERNMENT DEBT	400
Growth of U.S. Government Debt over Time	400
POLICY AND PRACTICE: The Entitlements Debate: Social Security and Medicare/Medicaid	402
International Comparison: The Size of Government Debt	404
FISCAL POLICY AND THE ECONOMY IN THE LONG RUN	404
Why High Government Debt Is Not a Burden	404
Why Government Debt Is a Burden	405
POLICY AND PRACTICE: Tax Smoothing	407
FISCAL POLICY AND THE ECONOMY IN THE SHORT RUN	407
Aggregate Demand and Fiscal Policy	407
Expenditure and Tax Multipliers	408
POLICY AND PRACTICE: The 2009 Debate over Tax-Based Versus Spending-Based Fiscal Stimulus	409
Aggregate Supply and Fiscal Policy	410
Supply-Side Economics and Fiscal Policy	411
Balancing the Budget: Expansionary or Contractionary?	412
POLICY AND PRACTICE: Two Expansionary Fiscal Contractions: Denmark and Ireland	412
BUDGET DEFICITS AND INFLATION	413
Government-Issued Money	413
Revenue from Seignorage	414
POLICY AND PRACTICE: The Euro Area's Stability and Growth Pact: A Greek Tragedy?	414
BUDGET DEFICITS AND RICARDIAN EQUIVALENCE	415
Implications of Ricardian Equivalence	416
Objections to Ricardian Equivalence	416
Bottom Line on Ricardian Equivalence	417
POLICY AND PRACTICE: The Bush Tax Cuts and Ricardian Equivalence	418
SUMMARY	418
KEY TERMS	419
REVIEW QUESTIONS	419
PROBLEMS	420

Chapter 16 Web Appendix**Other Measures of the Government Budget Deficit**

Go to the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin

Chapter 17

Exchange Rates and International Economic Policy	423
PREVIEW	423
FOREIGN EXCHANGE MARKET AND EXCHANGE RATES	423
Foreign Exchange Rates	424
The Distinction Between Real and Nominal Exchange Rates	424
BOX: MACROECONOMICS IN THE NEWS: Foreign Exchange Rates	425
The Importance of Exchange Rates	426
Foreign Exchange Trading	427
EXCHANGE RATES IN THE LONG RUN	428
Law of One Price	428
Theory of Purchasing Power Parity	428
BOX: Big Macs and PPP	429
EXCHANGE RATES IN THE SHORT RUN	430
Supply Curve for Domestic Assets	431
Demand Curve for Domestic Assets	431
Equilibrium in the Foreign Exchange Market	432
ANALYSIS OF CHANGES IN EXCHANGE RATES	432
Changes in the Demand for Domestic Assets	432
APPLICATION: The Subprime Financial Crisis and the Dollar	435
APPLICATION: Why Are Exchange Rates So Volatile?	438
AGGREGATE DEMAND AND SUPPLY ANALYSIS OF CHANGES IN EXCHANGE RATES	438
INTERVENTION IN THE FOREIGN EXCHANGE MARKET	440
Foreign Exchange Intervention	440
Intervention and the Exchange Rate	441
POLICY AND PRACTICE: A Day at the Federal Reserve Bank of New York's Foreign Exchange Desk	442
FIXED EXCHANGE RATE REGIMES	443
Fixed Exchange Rate Regime Dynamics	443
The Policy Trilemma	445
APPLICATION: How Did China Accumulate over \$2 Trillion of International Reserves?	446
TO PEG OR NOT TO PEG	447
Advantages of Exchange-Rate Pegging	447
Disadvantages of Exchange-Rate Pegging	447
POLICY AND PRACTICE: The Collapse of the Argentine Currency Board	449

SUMMARY	450
KEY TERMS	450
REVIEW QUESTIONS	451
PROBLEMS	451

Chapter 17 Web Appendix A The Interest Parity Condition

Go to the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin

Chapter 17 Web Appendix B Speculative Attacks and Foreign Exchange Crises

Go to the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin

PART SEVEN **MICROECONOMIC FOUNDATIONS OF MACROECONOMICS** **454**

Chapter 18

Consumption and Saving	456
PREVIEW	456
THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN CONSUMPTION AND SAVING	456
INTERTEMPORAL CHOICE AND CONSUMPTION	457
The Intertemporal Budget Constraint	457
The Intertemporal Budget Constraint in Terms of Present Discounted Value ...	459
Preferences	460
Optimization	461
THE INTERTEMPORAL CHOICE MODEL IN PRACTICE: INCOME AND WEALTH	462
Response of Consumption to Income	462
Response of Consumption to Wealth	463
Consumption Smoothing	464
THE INTERTEMPORAL CHOICE MODEL IN PRACTICE: INTEREST RATES	464
Interest Rates and the Intertemporal Budget Line	464
The Optimal Level of Consumption and the Intertemporal Budget Line	465
Borrowing Constraints	466
THE KEYNESIAN THEORY OF CONSUMPTION	468
The Keynesian Consumption Function: Building Blocks	468
Keynesian Consumption Function	469
The Relationship of the Keynesian Consumption Function to Intertemporal Choice	469
THE PERMANENT INCOME HYPOTHESIS	469
The Permanent Income Consumption Function	470
Relationship of the Permanent Income Hypothesis and Intertemporal Choice ..	470
POLICY AND PRACTICE: The 2008 Tax Rebate	471

THE LIFE-CYCLE HYPOTHESIS	472
Life-Cycle Consumption Function	472
Saving and Wealth Over the Life Cycle	473
APPLICATION: Housing, the Stock Market, and the Collapse of Consumption in 2008 and 2009	475
TWO MODIFICATIONS OF THE THEORY: THE RANDOM WALK HYPOTHESIS AND BEHAVIORAL ECONOMICS	475
The Random Walk Hypothesis	475
Behavioral Economics and Consumption	476
POLICY AND PRACTICE: Behavioral Policies to Increase Saving	477
SUMMARY	478
KEY TERMS	479
REVIEW QUESTIONS	479
PROBLEMS	480
Chapter 18 Appendix	
Income and Substitution Effects: A Graphical Analysis	483
SUMMARY	484
REVIEW QUESTIONS AND PROBLEMS	484
Chapter 19	
Investment	486
PREVIEW	486
DATA ON INVESTMENT SPENDING	486
THE NEOCLASSICAL THEORY OF INVESTMENT	487
Determining the Level of Capital Stock	488
User Cost of Capital	488
Determining the Desired Level of Capital	489
From the Desired Level of Capital to Investment	490
Changes in the Desired Level of the Capital Stock	492
Summary: Neoclassical Theory of Investment	495
INVENTORY INVESTMENT	498
Motivation for Holding Inventories	498
The Theory of Inventory Investment	499
TOBIN'S q AND INVESTMENT	500
Tobin's q Theory	500
Tobin's q Versus Neoclassical Theory	500
APPLICATION: The Stock Market and Boom and Bust in "New Economy" Investment, 1995–2001	501
RESIDENTIAL INVESTMENT	502
Determination of Housing Prices	502
From House Prices to Residential Investment	503
Changes in the Demand for Housing	504
Summary: Residential Investment	505

APPLICATION: Boom and Bust in the Housing Market, 2001–2009	507
POLICY AND PRACTICE: U.S. Government Policies and the Housing Market	510
SUMMARY	511
KEY TERMS	511
REVIEW QUESTIONS	512
PROBLEMS	512
Chapter 20	
The Labor Market, Employment, and Unemployment	514
PREVIEW	514
DEVELOPMENTS IN THE U.S. LABOR MARKET	514
Employment Ratio	514
Unemployment Rate	516
Real Wages	517
SUPPLY AND DEMAND IN THE LABOR MARKET	518
The Demand Curve for Labor	518
The Supply Curve	518
Equilibrium in the Labor Market	519
RESPONSE OF EMPLOYMENT AND WAGES TO CHANGES IN LABOR	
DEMAND AND LABOR SUPPLY	520
Changes in Labor Demand	520
Changes in Labor Supply	521
APPLICATION: Why Has Labor Force Participation of Women Increased? ...	522
APPLICATION: Why are Returns to Education and Income Inequality Increasing?	523
DYNAMICS OF UNEMPLOYMENT	525
Flows Into and Out of Employment Status	525
Duration of Unemployment	527
CAUSES OF UNEMPLOYMENT	527
Frictional Unemployment	527
POLICY AND PRACTICE: Unemployment Insurance and Unemployment ...	528
Structural Unemployment	529
Wage Rigidity	529
POLICY AND PRACTICE: Minimum Wage Laws	530
BOX: Efficiency Wages and Henry Ford	531
NATURAL RATE OF UNEMPLOYMENT	532
Changes in the Natural Rate of Unemployment	532
APPLICATION: Why Are European Unemployment Rates Generally Much Higher Than U.S. Unemployment Rates?	534
SUMMARY	536
KEY TERMS	536

REVIEW QUESTIONS	537
PROBLEMS	537

PART EIGHT **MODERN BUSINESS CYCLE ANALYSIS AND MACROECONOMIC POLICY** **540**

Chapter 21	
The Role of Expectations in Macroeconomic Policy	542
PREVIEW	542
RATIONAL EXPECTATIONS AND POLICY MAKING	542
Adaptive Expectations	543
Rational Expectations	543
Microeconomic Rationale Behind the Theory	544
Rational Expectations Theory and Macroeconomic Analysis	544
Rational Expectations Revolution	545
LUCAS CRITIQUE OF POLICY EVALUATION	545
Econometric Policy Evaluation	546
APPLICATION: The Consumption Function	546
POLICY CONDUCT: RULES OR DISCRETION?	547
Discretion and the Time-Inconsistency Problem	547
Types of Rules	548
The Case for Rules	548
POLICY AND PRACTICE: The Political Business Cycle and Richard Nixon ...	549
The Case for Discretion	550
POLICY AND PRACTICE: The Demise of Monetary Targeting in Switzerland	550
Constrained Discretion	551
THE ROLE OF CREDIBILITY AND A NOMINAL ANCHOR	551
Benefits of a Credible Nominal Anchor	551
Credibility and Aggregate Demand Shocks	552
Credibility and Aggregate Supply Shocks	554
APPLICATION: A Tale of Three Oil Price Shocks	555
APPROACHES TO ESTABLISHING CENTRAL BANK CREDIBILITY	557
Inflation Targeting	557
POLICY AND PRACTICE: Will the Federal Reserve Adopt Inflation Targeting?	558
Appoint “Conservative” Central Bankers	559
POLICY AND PRACTICE: The Appointment of Paul Volcker, Anti-Inflation Hawk	560
Increase Central Bank Independence	560
SUMMARY	562
KEY TERMS	562

REVIEW QUESTIONS .....	.563
PROBLEMS .....	.563
Chapter 22	
Modern Business Cycle Theory .....	.566
PREVIEW .....	.566
REAL BUSINESS CYCLE MODEL .....	.567
Productivity Shocks and Business Cycle Fluctuations .....	.568
Solow Residuals and Business Cycle Fluctuations .....	.568
Employment and Unemployment in the Real Business Cycle Model .....	.569
Objections to the Real Business Cycle Model .....	.570
NEW KEYNESIAN MODEL .....	.571
Building Blocks of the New Keynesian Model .....	.571
Business Cycle Fluctuations in the New Keynesian Model .....	.574
Objections to the New Keynesian Model .....	.576
A COMPARISON OF BUSINESS CYCLE MODELS .....	.576
How Do the Models Differ? .....	.576
Short-Run Output and Price Responses: Implications for Stabilization Policy ...	.578
POLICY AND PRACTICE: Management of Expectations and	
Nonconventional Monetary Policy .....	.581
Anti-Inflation Policy .....	.582
BUSINESS CYCLE MODELS WITH FINANCIAL FRICTIONS .....	.584
Shift in the <i>IS</i> Curve .....	.584
Shift in the Aggregate Demand Curve and the Effect on Output and Inflation ..	.586
Effect on Real Interest Rates .....	.586
The Role of Financial Frictions in Business Cycles .....	.586
APPLICATION: Financial Frictions and the 2007–2009 Recession .....	.586
SUMMARY .....	.588
KEY TERMS .....	.588
REVIEW QUESTIONS .....	.588
PROBLEMS .....	.589

Chapter 22 Web Appendix

The New Classical Model

Go to the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin

Epilogue	592
Policy and Practice: Where Do Macroeconomists Agree	
and Disagree? .....	.592
PREVIEW .....	.592
WHERE MACROECONOMISTS AGREE .....	.592
Inflation is Always and Everywhere a Monetary Phenomenon .....	.593
The Benefits of Price Stability .....	.593
No Long-Run Trade-off Between Unemployment and Inflation .....	.593

CONTENTS

The Crucial Role of Expectations .....	.594
The Taylor Principle .....	.595
The Time Inconsistency Problem .....	.595
Central Bank Independence .....	.596
Commitment to a Nominal Anchor .....	.596
Credibility .....	.596
Institutions Rule .....	.597
WHERE MACROECONOMISTS DISAGREE .....	.597
Flexibility of Wages and Prices .....	.597
How Much Time It Takes to Get to the Long Run .....	.597
Sources of Business Cycle Fluctuations .....	.598
Effectiveness of Stabilization Policy .....	.599
Cost of Reducing Inflation .....	.599
The Dangers of Budget Deficits .....	.600
THE FUTURE OF BUSINESS CYCLE THEORY .....	.601
SUMMARY .....	.602
KEY TERMS .....	.602

Web Chapter**Financial Crises in Emerging Market Economies**

Go to the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin

PREVIEW**DYNAMICS OF FINANCIAL CRISES IN EMERGING MARKET ECONOMIES**

Stage One: Initiation of Financial Crisis

Stage Two: Currency Crises

Stage Three: Full-Fledged Financial Crisis

APPLICATION: Crisis in South Korea, 1997–1998

APPLICATION: The Argentine Financial Crisis, 2001–2002

**BOX: When an Advanced Economy Is like an Emerging Market Economy:
The Icelandic Financial Crisis of 2008**

POLICY AND PRACTICE: Preventing Emerging Market Financial Crises

SUMMARY**KEY TERMS****REVIEW QUESTIONS AND PROBLEMS**

GLOSSARY	G-1
INDEX	I-1

There has never been a more exciting time to teach macroeconomics. The recent worldwide financial crisis cast a spotlight on macroeconomics and has prompted instructors worldwide to rethink their teaching of the course. Students today enter the intermediate macroeconomic course knowing the relevance of the business cycle—what is happening in their world *right now* in the wake of the most severe recession since World War II. The silver lining of these trying economic times is the ability to draw on this familiarity and the rich tapestry of recent economic events to enliven macroeconomic theory.

Macroeconomics: Policy and Practice focuses on the policy issues currently debated by the media and public at large. Building on my expertise in macroeconomic policy making at the Federal Reserve, I highlight the techniques used by policy makers in practice. I ground this applied approach to intermediate macroeconomics with a careful, step-by-step development of all models.

POLICY AND PRACTICE

This book emphasizes policy and practice in macroeconomics by providing theoretical frameworks geared to discussing the most exciting, current, major policy debates in the macroeconomics field. The best way to teach macroeconomics is by continually exposing the student to cases and applications so they *really* understand the underlying theory.

Over 40 in-chapter Applications show students how to apply theory to real-world examples. Examples of these applications include those on the Great Inflation from 1965 to 1982, the 2007–2009 financial crisis, the impact of oil prices on real wages and the stock market, why income inequality has been growing over time, and why some countries are rich and others poor. In addition, a special set of over 30 Policy and Practice cases explore specific examples of actual policies and how they were executed. These include such topics as how the Federal Reserve uses the Taylor rule, nonconventional monetary policy during the 2007–2009 financial crisis, the political business cycle and Richard Nixon, the Euro area’s stability and growth pact, and China’s one-child policy. These Applications and Policy and Practice cases provide critically important perspectives on current events, domestic and global issues, and historical episodes.

A DYNAMIC APPROACH TO MACROECONOMICS

Analyzing today’s hot-button policy issues requires approaching macroeconomic theory with the models that researchers and policy makers employ. The central modeling element in *Macroeconomics: Policy and Practice* is a powerful, dynamic aggregate demand and supply (AD/AS) model that highlights the interaction of inflation and economic activity. In this model, inflation is on the vertical axis (as opposed to the price level).

Given the vital importance of this model, I build it step-by-step across Chapters 9–13:

- Chapter 9 develops the first building block of the aggregate demand and supply model, the *IS* curve.

- Chapter 10 describes how monetary policy makers set real interest rates with the *monetary policy (MP) curve*, which describes the relationship between inflation and real interest rates. It then uses the *MP* curve and the *IS* curve to derive the aggregate demand curve.
- Chapter 11 uses the Phillips curve to derive the aggregate supply curve.
- Chapter 12 assembles the building blocks from preceding chapters to develop the aggregate demand and supply model and puts this model to immediate use with Applications analyzing business cycle fluctuations in the United States and abroad.
- Chapter 13 shifts perspective by showing how the aggregate demand and supply model can help us understand the issues policy makers confront when they attempt to stabilize inflation and output fluctuations.

The aggregate demand and supply model with inflation on the vertical axis therefore serves as the sole engine for analysis of short-run fluctuations. Students benefit from this exclusive focus and careful development of a single model: Relying on the dynamic AD/AS model continually reinforces their understanding of the model and provides a unified framework for all analysis.

The dynamic AD/AS model includes many of the essential elements of the ISLM model, including developing the *IS* curve in Chapter 9 and illustrating the determination of interest rates in the money market through the interaction of money demand and supply in Chapter 10. The dynamic AD/AS model has the advantage that it directly allows a dynamic analysis of the interaction of inflation and economic activity, a key feature of modern macroeconomic analysis.

THE INTERACTION OF FINANCE AND MACROECONOMICS

The financial crisis that hit the world economy from 2007 to 2009 made abundantly clear the interaction between finance and macroeconomics. Two full chapters on finance and macroeconomics provide a coherent approach to key topics such as financial system dynamics and asymmetric information and demonstrate their relevance in macroeconomic analysis. Chapter 14, “The Financial System and Economic Growth,” shows how a well-functioning financial system promotes economic growth and develops tools that are then used in Chapter 15, “Financial Crises and the Economy,” to examine how disruptions to the financial system affect aggregate demand and the economy, with a particular emphasis on the root causes, effects, and policy responses to the financial crisis of 2007–2009. An additional Web Chapter, “Financial Crises in Emerging Market Economies,” expands the analysis of economic fluctuations to economies that have recently opened up their markets to the outside world.

FOCUS ON ECONOMIC GROWTH

The explosion of research on economic growth in recent years is an exciting development in the macroeconomics field with direct relevance to the question of why some countries have slow economic growth and stay poor, while others have rapid economic growth and prosper. I discuss the Solow model in detail in Chapter 6 and present endogenous growth theory and the importance of institutions to economic growth in Chapter 7. As mentioned previously, Chapter 14 includes additional material on economic growth.

AN INTERNATIONAL PERSPECTIVE

Topical coverage and applications integrate an international dimension throughout *Macroeconomics: Policy and Practice*. For example, Chapter 4's analysis of the interaction of saving and investment discusses open and closed economies together, rather than in separate chapters. International trade and the impact of net exports on aggregate demand appears immediately in the AD/AS model in Part 4, as opposed to in a separate chapter, and the textbook applies the aggregate demand and supply model to analyze the impact of the 2007–2009 financial crisis in the UK, Ireland, and China. The Web chapter on emerging market economies provides further international perspective.

TABLE OF CONTENTS OVERVIEW

We begin our study with an introduction to the study of macroeconomics. Chapter 1 describes the questions that macroeconomists seek to answer and the data they analyze, raising key policy questions that will be the focus of the remaining chapters of this book. Chapter 2 examines how economists define and measure the most important macroeconomic data.

In Part 2, we construct some basic frameworks that will serve as building blocks for our analysis in the rest of the book, including production and the productive capacity of an economy (Chapter 3), the relationship between saving and investment and how it affects the amount of wealth in the economy and real interest rates (Chapter 4), and the link between money, inflation, and nominal interest rates and why inflation is costly (Chapter 5).

Part 3 explores why some countries have slow economic growth and stay poor, while others have rapid economic growth and prosper. Chapter 6 develops the Solow growth model, while Chapter 7 delves into the sources of economic growth by examining in more detail how advances in technology and the development of institutions promotes economic growth.

In Part 4, we move to short-run economic fluctuations in aggregate output, unemployment, and inflation. Chapter 8 provides an introduction to the study of short-run economic fluctuations by describing the characteristics of the business cycle. As described earlier, Chapters 9–11 develop the elements of the aggregate demand and supply model with inflation on the vertical axis. Chapter 12 assembles the overall model and provides a number of applications for immediate reinforcement; Chapter 13 then employs the model to understand the choices policy makers face if they seek to stabilize inflation and output fluctuations.

In Part 6 we turn to the important role that finance plays in macroeconomics in both the long and the short run. Chapter 14 focuses on the long run, showing how a well-functioning financial system promotes economic growth and building a framework for Chapter 15's look at how finance can affect the economy in the short run. Chapter 15 analyzes the dynamics of financial crises and then applies this analysis to explaining both the most recent worldwide financial crisis as well as earlier episodes in U.S. history.

Part 7 delves deeper into macroeconomic policy. Chapter 16 discusses fiscal policy, including the government budget and its relationship with government debt and the long- and short-run effects of budget deficits, tax cuts, and government spending. Chapter 17 examines international economic policy by developing a supply and demand analysis of how exchange rates are determined and then discusses the effects of exchange rate fluctuations on the economy.

Part 8 develops microeconomic analysis of households' and firms' behavior to bolster understanding of macroeconomic relationships featured earlier in the book. Chapter 18 discusses the microeconomic foundations of consumption and saving, Chapter 19 develops and applies microeconomic models of investment behavior, and Chapter 20 focuses on the labor market. (Some professors may choose to assign these chapters up front in their courses after Chapters 1–3.)

We end the book in Part 9 by discussing the latest developments in business cycle theory that have arisen from a greater focus on microeconomic foundations of macroeconomic analysis. Chapter 21 uses rational expectations to discuss how expectations influence macroeconomic policy. Chapter 22 describes the two competing business cycle theories that developed in the wake of rational expectations theory—the real business cycle model and the new Keynesian model—as well as recent efforts to bring financial frictions into macroeconomic models. The epilogue outlines how these new approaches to business cycle theory and recent research on what drives economic development have affected where macroeconomists agree and disagree about the conduct of macroeconomic policy.

A FLEXIBLE STRUCTURE

Macroeconomics: Policy and Practice offers a highly flexible structure with many different paths that instructors can take to tailor the book to their course needs. Most instructors will begin by assigning Chapters 1–4. For a long-run emphasis, instructors can then assign Chapters 5–7. Instructors wishing to cover the short run first could instead proceed directly to Part 4.

The core chapters that most instructors will teach in their courses are in the first four parts of the book, Chapters 1–13. Instructors can assign subsequent chapters as they so choose or skip them entirely, allowing a focus on the particular areas of macroeconomics that match each instructor's course goals. Suggested outlines for semester-long courses with varying emphases follow. (Quarter-long courses would typically use three or four fewer of the optional chapters.)

- *Course Starting with a Long-Run Analysis:* Chapters 1–13, and up to six of the remaining eleven chapters.
- *Course Starting with Micro Foundations and Long-Run Analysis:* Chapters 1–3, 18–20, 4–13, and up to three of the remaining eight chapters.
- *Course Starting with Short-Run Analysis:* Chapters 1–5, 8–13, 6–7, and up to six of the remaining eleven chapters.
- *Course Starting with Micro Foundations and Short-Run Analysis:* Chapters 1–3, 18–20, 4–5, 8–13, 6–7 and up to three of the remaining eight chapters.
- *Course Focusing on the Micro Foundations of Modern Business Cycle Analysis:* Chapters 1–3, 18–20, 4–5, 8–13, 21–22 and up to two of the remaining ten chapters.
- *Course with International Focus:* Chapters 1–13, 17, Web chapter on emerging market economies, and up to four of the remaining nine chapters.
- *Course with Finance Focus:* Chapters 1–15 and up to four of the remaining seven chapters.

INTEREST-GENERATING FEATURES

Motivating the study of macroeconomics means bringing it to life through a wide variety of pedagogical features.

Previews at the beginning of each chapter tell students where the chapter is heading, why specific topics are important, and how they relate to other topics in the book.

Applications apply the analysis in each chapter to explain important real-world situations.

Policy and Practice cases explore specific examples of actual policies and how they were executed.

Macroeconomics in the News boxes introduce students to relevant news articles and data that are reported daily in the press and explain how to read them.

Boxes highlight interesting material, including historical episodes and recent events.

Summary tables are useful study aids recapping key points.

Key statements are important points set in boldface italic type so that the student can easily find them for later references.

Graphs with detailed captions demonstrate the interrelationship of the variables and are central to the illustrations of policy analysis. Innovative color-blended arrows guide students' analysis of the meaning of shifting curves.


Summary at the end of each chapter lists the main points covered.

Key terms, important words or phrases, are boldface when they are defined for the first time and listed by page number at the end of the chapter.

End-of-chapter questions and problems guide students' mastery of the material, with a particular emphasis on real-world applications.

SUPPLEMENTAL RESOURCES SIMPLIFY TEACHING AND LEARNING

A variety of comprehensive supplemental resources accompany this book for professors and students.

 **MyEconLab** is the premier online assessment and tutorial system, pairing rich online content with innovative learning tools. The MyEconLab course for *Macroeconomics: Policy and Practice* includes all the review questions and problems from the textbook. As a special feature, all Policy and Practice cases and Applications are also offered in MyEconLab along with three to four assessment questions to test students' understanding of the key concepts. Look for these exercises within each chapter in a separate section called "Applications."

Students and MyEconLab

The MyEconLab online homework and tutorial system puts students in control of their own learning through a suite of study and practice tools correlated with the online, interactive version of the textbook and other media tools. Within MyEconLab's structured environment, students practice what they learn, test their understanding, and then pursue a study plan that MyEconLab generates for them based on their performance on practice tests.

Instructors and MyEconLab

MyEconLab provides flexible tools that allow instructors to easily and effectively customize online course materials to suit their needs. Instructors can create and assign tests, quizzes, or homework assignments. MyEconLab saves time by automatically grading questions and tracking results in an online grade book. After registering for MyEconLab, instructors also have access to downloadable supplements.

Additional MyEconLab Features

- **Mishkin Interviewed on the Financial Crisis.** Watch video footage from a recent interview with the author, complete with assignable questions.
- **Weekly News Updates.** Each week, a relevant and current article from a newspaper or journal is posted with discussion questions.
- **Research Navigator** (CourseCompass version only). Extensive help on the research process and exclusive databases of accredited and reliable source material, including the *Financial Times* and peer-reviewed journals.

For more information and to register, please visit www.myeconlab.com.

Additional Instructor Resources

The Instructor's Manual, an online supplement prepared by Martin Pereyra of University of Missouri and the author, offers chapter overviews, outlines and objectives, and the answers to end-of-chapter questions and problems. Additionally, the Instructor's Manual includes resources for each chapter that tie in to the Applications and Policy and Practice features of the chapter, including discussion questions that professors can use in class with students; references to interesting outside materials such as newspaper and journal articles and macroeconomic data; and links to websites with related real-world examples. The Instructor's Manual is available electronically in Microsoft Word format and PDF format.

The PowerPoint Presentations, prepared by Jim Lee of Texas A & M University–Corpus Christi, provide all figures and tables from the text, as well as brief lecture notes that follow the structure and sequence of the text. They include coverage of the main topics of the chapter, organized by A-head, the key terms and equations from the chapter, and coverage of the Applications and Policy and Practice features in the chapter.

The Test Item File, prepared by Paul Kubik of DePaul University, Victor Valcarcel of Texas Tech University, and Brian Trinique of University of Texas–Austin, provides 75 multiple-choice questions and 10 short-answer questions for each chapter. The questions provide a mix of numerical, graphical, and conceptual approaches of all chapter topics. In addition, the questions are MyEconLab-compatible and follow the Association to Advance Collegiate Schools of Business (AACSB) tagging procedures. The Test Item File is available electronically in Microsoft Word format as well as in computerized TestGen format files that may be used with TestGen test-generating software. This test-generating program permits instructors to edit, add, or delete questions from the test bank; analyze test results; and organize a database of tests and student results, allowing for flexibility and ease of use.

Blackboard and WebCT Online Courses. Pearson also offers fully customizable course content for the Blackboard and WebCT course management systems that includes a link to the MyEconLab software hosting all of the course materials.

Additional Student Resources

The Study Guide, prepared by Aaron Jackson of Bentley University and accuracy reviewed by Quentin Duroy of Denison University, includes for each chapter a summary that provides explanations of all key terms and equations, 15 multiple-choice questions with brief explanations, 10 short-answer questions with brief explanations, and 2 practice problems with worked out graphical and/or numerical answers. The Study Guide is available in print format.

The Companion Website, located at www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin, features Web appendices on a wide variety of topics, as well as a Web chapter: Financial Crises in Emerging Market Economies.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

There are many people to thank on this project. I have been blessed with two extraordinary editors on this project: Noel Seibert, my acquisitions editor, and Rebecca Ferris-Caruso, my development editor. Many thanks as well to members of the production, editorial, and marketing team at Pearson: Kathryn Dinovo, Alison Eusden, Carolyn Terbush, David Theisen, and Kathleen McLellan. I also want to thank Neil Mehrotra and Ozge Akinci for very helpful research assistance and Daniel Sorid for giving me the student's perspective while providing me with invaluable editing. I have also received insightful comments from my colleagues, Marc Giannoni and Mark Gertler.

This book has been thoroughly accuracy checked through several rounds. I would also like to thank the accuracy reviewers, Jim Eaton and David Beckworth, for their extraordinary efforts and attention to detail. In addition, I have received thoughtful comments from outside reviewers, editorial board members, focus group participants, community call participants, and class testers, who are listed below.

Reviewers:

Gilad Aharonovitz, *Washington State University*

S. Nuray Akin, *University of Miami*

Lian An, *University of North Florida*

S. Boragan Aruoba, *University of Maryland*

Elizabeth Asiedu, *University of Kansas*

Nursel Aydiner-Avsar, *University of Utah*

Lance Bachmeier, *Kansas State University*

David Beckworth, *Texas State University*

Cihan Bilginsoy, *University of Utah*

Nicola Borri, *Boston University*

Michael Carew, *Baruch College of CUNY*

Joel D. Carton, *Florida International University*

Marcelle Chauvet, *University of California*

Darian Chin, *California State University—Los Angeles*

Olivier Coibion, *College of William and Mary*

Firat Demir, *University of Oklahoma*

James Devine, *Loyola Marymount University*

John Dogbey, *Ohio University*

Fred Donatelli, *Binghamton University*

Abdunasser Duella, *California State University–Fullerton*
Quentin Duroy, *Denison University*
Amitava Krishna Dutt, *University of Notre Dame*
Jim Eaton, *Bridgewater College*
Ryan Edwards, *Queens College*
Sharon Erenburg, *Eastern Michigan University*
Alexander Field, *Santa Clara University*
Hamilton Fout, *Kansas State University*
Jean Gauger, *The University of Tennessee*
Ronald D. Gilbert, *Texas Tech University*
George Heitmann, *Muhlenberg College*
Yu Hsing, *Southeastern Louisiana University*
Ralph D. Husby, *University of Illinois at Urbana–Champaign*
Kim Huynh, *Indiana University–Bloomington*
Murat Iyigun, *University of Colorado–Boulder*
Aaron L. Jackson, *Bentley University*
Barry Jones, *Binghamton University*
Bryce Kanago, *University of Northern Iowa*
Cem Karayalcin, *Florida International University–University Park*
Arthur Kartman, *San Diego State University*
John Keating, *University of Kansas*
Elizabeth Sawyer Kelly, *University of Wisconsin–Madison*
Young Se Kim, *University of North Texas*
Paul Kubik, *DePaul University*
Ken Kuttner, *Williams College*
Leonard Lardaro, *University of Rhode Island*
Jim Lee, *Texas A & M University–Corpus Christi*
David I. Levine, *University of California–Berkeley*
Dennis Patrick Leyden, *University of North Carolina at Greensboro*
T. K. Lim, *Carnegie Mellon University*
Bernard Malamud, *University of Nevada–Las Vegas*
Kathryn G. Marshall, *California Polytechnic State University*
Bruce McGough, *Oregon State University*
W. Douglas McMillin, *Louisiana State University*
Ellen E. Meade, *American University*
Diego Mendez-Carbajo, *Illinois Wesleyan University*
Fabio Milani, *University of California–Irvine*
Olivier Morand, *University of Connecticut*
Jon Nadenichek, *California State University–Northridge*
Kanda Naknoi, *Purdue University*
John Neri, *University of Maryland*
Farrokh Nourzad, *Marquette University*
Phacharaphot Nuntramas, *San Diego State University*
Iordanis Petsas, *University of Scranton*
David E. Rapach, *Saint Louis University*
Dan Rickman, *Oklahoma State University*
Joseph Santos, *South Dakota State University*
Andrei Shevchenko, *Michigan State University*
Mark Siegler, *California State University–Sacramento*

Tara Sinclair, *The George Washington University*
 Georg Strasser, *Boston College*
 Jack Strauss, *St. Louis University*
 Aditi Thapar, *New York University*
 Rebecca Achee Thornton, *University of Houston*
 Brian Trinique, *University of Texas–Austin*
 Kwok Pin Tsang, *Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University*
 Michelle Turnovsky, *University of Washington*
 Geetha Vaidyanathan, *University of North Carolina–Chapel Hill*
 Victor Valcarcel, *Texas Tech University*
 Ann Villamil, *University of Illinois*
 Charles S. Wassell, *Central Washington University*
 Bill Yang, *Georgia Southern University*
 Ben Young, *University of Missouri*
 Wei-Choun Yu, *Winona State University*

Editorial Advisory Board:

Joel D. Carton, *Florida International University*
 Jim Eaton, *Bridgewater College*
 Murat Iyigun, *University of Colorado–Boulder*
 Aaron L. Jackson, *Bentley University*
 Elizabeth Sawyer Kelly, *University of Wisconsin–Madison*
 Kathryn G. Marshall, *California Polytechnic State University*
 Olivier Morand, *University of Connecticut*
 Mark Siegler, *California State University–Sacramento*
 Brian Trinique, *University of Texas–Austin*
 Michelle Turnovsky, *University of Washington*
 Geetha Vaidyanathan, *University of North Carolina–Chapel Hill*
 Victor Valcarcel, *Texas Tech University*
 Bill Yang, *Georgia Southern University*

Focus Group Participants:

Francis Ahking, *University of Connecticut*
 Serife Nuray Akin, *University of Miami*
 Lian An, *University of North Florida*
 James Arias, *Georgia College and State University*
 Nursel Aydinler-Avsar, *University of Utah*
 Michael D. Bauer, Economist, *Federal Reserve Bank of San Francisco*
 David Beckworth, *Texas State University*
 Emma Bojinova, *Canisius College*
 Mark Brady, *San Jose State University*
 Michael Buckley, *Fordham University*
 Susanne Buesselmann, *Wayne State University*
 Bolong Cao, *Ohio University*
 Piyaphan Changwatchai, *University of Utah*
 Adhip Chaudhuri, *Georgetown University*
 May Collins, *Mira Costa College*
 William Craighead, *Wesleyan University*
 Chetan Dave, *New York University–Abu Dhabi*

Stephen Davis, *Southwest Minnesota State*
Dennis Debrecht, *Carroll University*
Justin Dubas, *Texas Lutheran University*
Dennis Edwards, *Coastal Carolina University*
Noha Emara, *Barnard College, Columbia University*
Merton Finkler, *Lawrence University*
Layton Franko, *Queens College*
Lise Frulio, *Northwest Arkansas Community College*
Tim Fuerst, *Bowling Green State University*
Sarah Ghosh, *University of Scranton*
Satyajit Ghosh, *University of Scranton*
Chris Gingrich, *Eastern Mennonite University*
Vance Ginn, *Texas Tech University*
Roy Gobin, *Loyola University*
Nick Gomersall, *Luther College*
Michael J. Gootzeit, *University of Memphis*
Steven Greenlaw, *University of Mary Washington*
Alan Gummerson, *Florida International University*
Marwa Hassan, *Rutgers University*
Scott Hegerty, *Canisius College*
Kolver Hernandez, *University of Delaware*
Kim Huynh, *University of Indiana*
Miren Ivankovic, *Anderson University*
Brian Jacobsen, *Wisconsin Lutheran College*
Louis Johnston, *College of Saint Benedict Saint John's University*
Jason Jones, *Furman University*
Lillian Kamal, *University of Hartford*
Bryce Kanago, *University of Northern Iowa*
Leonie Karkoviata, *University of Houston*
Ben Kim, *University of Nebraska–Lincoln*
Ruby Kishan, *Texas State University–San Marcos*
Todd Knoop, *Cornell College*
Gregory Krohn, *Bucknell University*
Krishna Kumar, *Duke University*
Kenneth Kuttner, *Williams College*
Susan Laury, *Georgia State University*
Jim Lee, *Texas A&M–Corpus Christi*
Jialu Liu, *Indiana University–Bloomington*
Gregory Lubiani, *Southwest Tennessee Community College*
Guangyi Ma, *Texas A & M University*
Karen Maguire, *University of Colorado–Boulder*
John McArthur, *Wofford College*
Shahriar Mostashari, *Campbell University*
Kanda Naknoi, *Purdue University*
Esen Onur, *California State University–Sacramento*
Biru Paksha Paul, *State University of New York at Cortland*
Nate Peach, *Colorado State University*
William Perkins, *Manhattanville College*
Reza Ramazani, *Saint Michael's College*

John Rasmus, *Diablo Valley Community College*
 Luisa Blanco Raynal, *Pepperdine University*
 Malcolm Robinson, *Thomas More College*
 Jack Russ, *San Diego State University*
 Subarna Samanta, *College of New Jersey*
 Mike Sandberg, *University of Florida*
 Amy Schmidt, *Saint Anselm College*
 Andrei Shevchenko, *Michigan State University*
 Fahlino Sjuib, *Framingham State College*
 Rachael Small, *University of Colorado–Boulder*
 Bill Smith, *University of Memphis*
 Issoufou Soumaila, *Texas Tech University*
 Mark Steckbeck, *Campbell University*
 Herman Steckler, *George Washington University*
 Paul Stock, *University of Mary Hardin–Baylor*
 Ellis Tallman, *Oberlin College*
 Wendine Thompson-Dawson, *Monmouth College*
 Jay Tontz, *Diablo Valley College*
 Raúl Velázquez, *Manhattan College*
 Bhavneet Walia, *Nicholls State University*
 Anne Wenzel, *San Francisco State University*
 Grace Yan, *Oklahoma State University–Tulsa*
 Chenygu Yang, *University of Central Florida*
 Mark A. Yanochik, *Georgia Southern University*
 Janice Yee, *Worcester State College*
 Elizabeth Anne York, *Meredith College*

Class Testers:

Michael Buckley, *Fordham University*
 Michael Carew, *Baruch College of CUNY*
 Jim Eaton, *Bridgewater College*
 Jean Gauger, *The University of Tennessee*
 Aaron L. Jackson, *Bentley University*
 Jason Jones, *Furman University*
 Susan Laury, *Georgia State University*
 John McArthur, *Wofford College*
 Shahriar Mostashari, *Campbell University*
 Kanda Naknoi, *Purdue University*
 Ellis Tallman, *Oberlin College*
 Victor Valcarcel, *Texas Tech University*

Finally, I want to thank my extended family, who enables me to be so productive because they give me so much joy: my wife Sally, my two children, Matthew and Laura, my god daughters, Alba, Glenda, and Norma, their husbands, Isaac, Andy, and Sergio, and their two children Robbie and Sophie.

I dedicate this book to my mother, who is still sharp as a tack and as fun as always, although she has just turned ninety.

Frederic S. Mishkin

ABOUT THE AUTHOR



Frederic S. Mishkin is the Alfred Lerner Professor of Banking and Financial Institutions at the Graduate School of Business, Columbia University. He is also a research associate at the National Bureau of Economic Research and past president of the Eastern Economics Association. Since receiving his Ph.D. from the Massachusetts Institute of Technology in 1976, he has taught at the University of Chicago, Northwestern University, Princeton University, and Columbia. He has also received an honorary professorship from the People's (Renmin) University of China. From 1994 to 1997, he was executive vice president and director of research at the Federal Reserve Bank of New York and an associate economist of the Federal Open Market Committee of the Federal Reserve System. From September 2006 to August 2008, he was a member (governor) of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.

Professor Mishkin's research focuses on monetary policy and its impact on financial markets and the aggregate economy. He is the author of more than twenty books, including *The Economics of Money, Banking, and Financial Markets*, Ninth Edition (Pearson Addison-Wesley, 2010), *Financial Markets and Institutions*, Sixth Edition (Pearson Addison-Wesley, 2009); *Monetary Policy Strategy* (MIT Press, 2007); *The Next Great Globalization: How Disadvantaged Nations Can Harness Their Financial Systems to Get Rich* (Princeton University Press, 2006); *Inflation Targeting: Lessons from the International Experience* (Princeton University Press, 1999); *Money, Interest Rates, and Inflation* (Edward Elgar, 1993); and *A Rational Expectations Approach to Macroeconometrics: Testing Policy Ineffectiveness and Efficient Markets Models* (University of Chicago Press, 1983). In addition, he has published more than 200 articles in such journals as *American Economic Review*, *Journal of Political Economy*, *Econometrica*, *Quarterly Journal of Economics*, *Journal of Finance*, *Journal of Money, Credit and Banking* and *Journal of Monetary Economics*.

Professor Mishkin has served on the editorial board of *American Economic Review* and has been an associate editor at *Journal of Business and Economic Statistics*, *Journal of Applied Econometrics*, *Journal of Economic Perspectives*, and *Journal of Money, Credit and Banking*; he also served as the editor of the Federal Reserve Bank of New York's *Economic Policy Review*. He is currently an associate editor (member of the editorial board) at five academic journals, including *Journal of International Money and Finance*; *International Finance*; *Finance India*; *Review of Development Finance*; and *Emerging Markets, Finance and Trade*. He has been a consultant to the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, the World Bank, and the International Monetary Fund, as well as to many central banks throughout the world. He was also a member of the International Advisory Board to the Financial Supervisory Service of South Korea and an advisor to the Institute for Monetary and Economic Research at the Bank of Korea. Professor Mishkin was a Senior Fellow at the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation's Center for Banking Research and was an academic consultant to and serves on the Economic Advisory Panel of the Federal Reserve Bank of New York.

Part One

Introduction

Chapter 1

The Policy and Practice of Macroeconomics

Chapter 2

Measuring Macroeconomic Data



Part One Introduction

We begin with an introduction to the study of macroeconomics. Chapter 1 describes the questions that macroeconomists seek to answer and the data they seek to explain, raising key policy questions that will be the focus of the remaining chapters of this book: How can poor countries get rich? Is saving too low? Do government budget deficits matter? How costly is it to reduce inflation? How can we make financial crises less likely? How active should stabilization policy be? Should macroeconomic policy follow rules? Are global trade imbalances a danger? Chapter 2 examines how economists define and measure the most important macroeconomic data.

In keeping with our focus on key policy issues and the techniques policymakers use in practice, we will analyze the following specific examples in Policy and Practice cases:

- “Can GDP Buy Happiness?”
- “Policy and Overstatements of the Cost of Living”

The Policy and Practice of Macroeconomics

Preview

What are your career plans after graduation? Many factors beyond your grades and choice of a major affect the ultimate path you take. When you graduate from college, will jobs be plentiful or will a high unemployment rate (as occurred in the aftermath of the 2007–2009 recession) make it a challenge to find work? Will overall prices be rising rapidly, so you will need more money to pay for your expenses next year? Will the value of the U.S. dollar decline so that it will be more expensive to travel abroad? Should you worry about the current high government budget deficits? Jumping ahead, will the economy grow rapidly over the next thirty years, so your children will be better off than you? We will address the economics underlying the answers to these questions throughout this book.

In this chapter, we set the stage for your exploration of the policy and practice of macroeconomics. We start the chapter by examining what macroeconomists do and what data they seek to explain. We then preview the policy issues that we explore throughout this book.

The Practice of Macroeconomics

In formal terms, **macroeconomics** is the study of economic activity and prices in the overall economy of a nation or a region. Macroeconomic research draws heavily on **microeconomics**, which looks at the behavior of individual firms, households, or markets.¹

¹We will explore the microeconomic foundations of macroeconomics in Chapters 18 to 20 of this book.

The Process: Developing Macroeconomic Models

Macroeconomists try to explain how the overall economy works by using an **economic theory**, a logical framework to explain a particular economic phenomenon. Economic theory involves developing an **economic model**, a simplified representation of the economic phenomenon that takes a mathematical or graphical form. The development of an economic theory or model typically involves five steps:

1. Identify an interesting economic question. For example, a macroeconomist might want to understand why the unemployment rate rises or falls over time, or why workers' wages in real terms (in terms of the goods and services they can actually buy) rise more rapidly during certain periods, but not others.
2. Specify the variables to be explained by the model, as well as the variables that explain them. A variable that a macroeconomist wants to explain is referred to as an **endogenous variable**, because it is explained *inside* the model he or she is building (and thus has the *endo* prefix). She would then identify a set of factors, called **exogenous variables** that are used to explain the endogenous variable, but are taken as given and thus are viewed as determined *outside* the model. (This is why they have the *exo* prefix.)

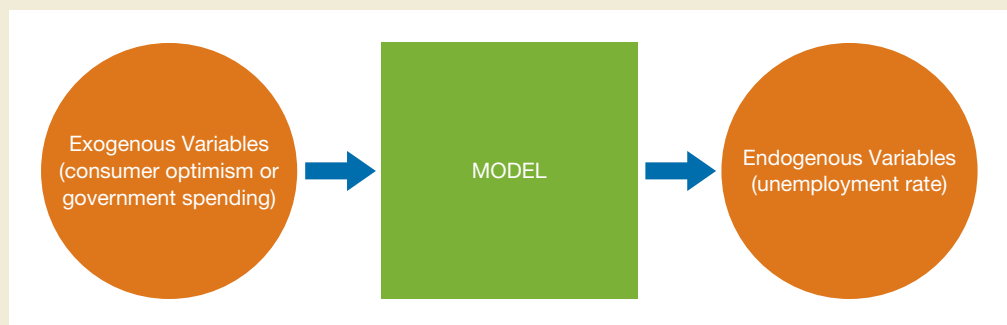
For example, in explaining the endogenous variable (the unemployment rate), the macroeconomist might specify consumer optimism or government spending as exogenous variables that are taken as given. Or if he or she were interested in explaining real wage growth, the endogenous variable, the macroeconomist might choose the rate of technological progress or the power of unions as the exogenous variables. The schematic diagram in Figure 1.1 illustrates the relationship between endogenous and exogenous variables in an economic model.

3. Posit a set of equations or graphical analysis to connect movements in the exogenous variables to the endogenous variables. For example, we might create a formula showing how, all else being equal, a 10% increase in government spending would change the unemployment rate. This formula is our model.

FIGURE 1.1

Variables in Macroeconomic Models

The model is a set of equations or a graphical analysis that explains movements in the endogenous variables—variables that are explained by the model—as a result of changes in the exogenous variables—given factors not determined by the model.



4. Compare the conclusions of the model with what actually happens. For example, if the model is designed to explain the unemployment rate, we would compare the model's predictions to actual unemployment data in prior years. If the conclusions do not match this historical data, return to step 2 and change the model.
5. If the data are well explained, use the model to make further predictions, say on where the unemployment rate will head a year from now and suggest policies to lower it.

The iterative process of comparing a model to actual data, making improvements along the way, raises new economic questions and advances knowledge in macroeconomics. We will look at the interaction of data and macroeconomic models as we proceed through this book, highlighting how the field of macroeconomics has evolved over time. We will also see how well macroeconomic models explain the data by looking at numerous applications featuring the U.S. and world economies throughout every chapter.

The Purpose: Interpreting Macroeconomic Data

Macroeconomists, and in turn macroeconomic models, focus in particular on three economic data series: *real GDP*, the *unemployment rate*, and the *inflation rate*. We look at each in turn.

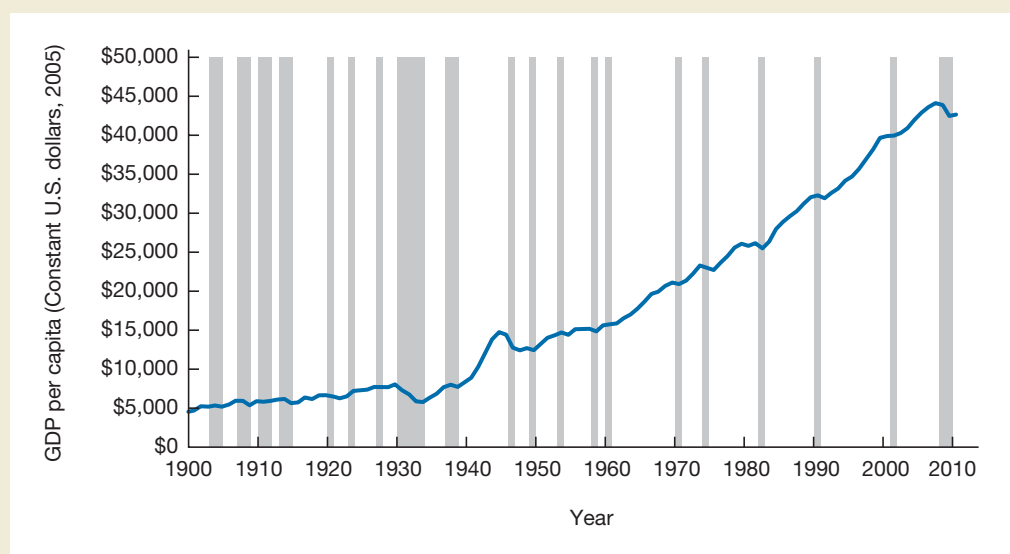
REAL GDP. **Real Gross Domestic Product (GDP)** measures the output of actual goods and services produced in an economy over a fixed period, usually a year. As we will see in Chapter 2, real GDP also equals the total amount of real income of every person and firm in the economy.

Figure 1.2 shows real GDP per person in the U.S. economy from 1900–2010 and has two important attributes. (To account for changes in the purchasing power of a dollar, we treat all goods and services as if they were sold at prices from the year 2005.) First,

FIGURE 1.2

U.S. Real GDP Per Capita, 1900–2010

Due to business cycle fluctuations, real GDP per person has grown substantially but not smoothly, over time. We represent recessions with the shaded areas. Depressions are severe declines in real GDP, the most notable being the Great Depression (1929–1933).



Sources: Bureau of Economic Analysis. www.bea.gov/national/nipaweb/SelectTable.asp?Selected=N; and for data before 1929, Maddison, Angus. *Historical statistics*. <http://www.ggdc.net/maddison/>

notice in Figure 1.2 that real GDP per person has grown substantially over time. In 1900, the average U.S. person earned nearly \$5,000. Today, this number has risen by more than a factor of eight, to around \$40,000. U.S. citizens today have far more income than their great grandparents did, and have been getting richer and richer over time. What explains this rise in income? Economic growth, the subject of Chapters 6, 7, and 14 of this book, is one of the most important topics in macroeconomics.

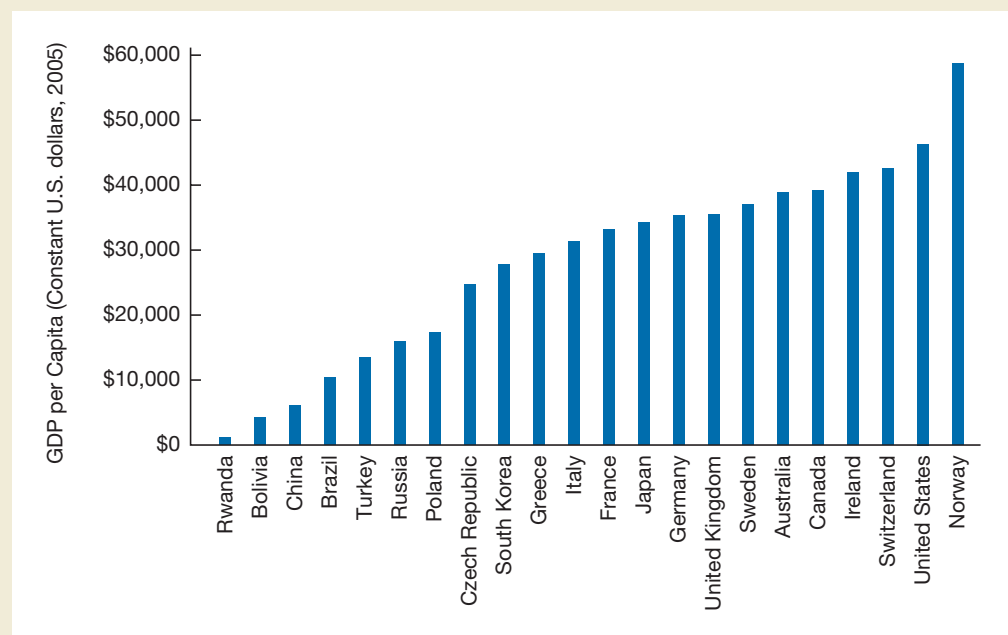
Second, notice in Figure 1.2 that real GDP grows unevenly over time and fluctuates around a trend. Fluctuations in real GDP are called a **business cycle**, which represents recurrent up and down movements in economic activity that differ in how regular they are. When economic activity declines and real GDP per person falls, there is a **recession**. In Figure 1.2, recession periods are marked by the shaded areas—and are frequent phenomena. When the decline in real GDP is severe, a recession is classified as a **depression**. The most notable of these is the Great Depression that lasted from 1929 until 1933. What causes recessions and particularly depressions is another of the most-studied questions in macroeconomics. We study short-run fluctuations in economic activity in Chapters 8–13.

So far we have only looked at real GDP per person in the United States. Figure 1.3 compares real GDP per person in a number of countries. As you can see, there are huge differences from country to country. Rwanda has a real GDP per person of just over \$300, which is less than one-hundredth of U.S. real GDP. Macroeconomists study factors that affect real GDP over time. South Korea, for example, in 1960 had a real GDP per person of \$1,500 that was actually lower than that of Bolivia. Today, Bolivia remains poor, while South Korea has moved into the rich countries' club, with its ranking of per person real GDP in the top quarter of all nations. South Korea turned around its prospects through very high economic growth rates. We focus on why some countries are so rich and others so poor and how countries can improve their prospects in Chapters 6, 7, and 14.

FIGURE 1.3

Cross-Country Comparison of Real GDP per Capita in 2009

Real GDP per person varies widely across countries. Rwanda has a real GDP per person of under \$400, which is less than one-hundredth of U.S. real GDP, which is over \$40,000.



Source: World Bank. *World development indicators*. <http://web.worldbank.org/WBSITE/>

UNEMPLOYMENT RATE. The **unemployment rate** measures the percentage of workers looking for work, but who do not have jobs, at a particular point in time. When unemployment is high, households suffer a loss of income and may even find themselves unable to meet basic needs for food and shelter.

Figure 1.4 shows the U.S. unemployment rate from 1929–2010. Notice that the unemployment rate always remains well above zero, indicating that even during good times, there is always some unemployment. In addition, in Figure 1.4 the unemployment rate fluctuates substantially and rises sharply during the shaded areas denoting recessions. In 1933 during the Great Depression, the unemployment rate climbed to 25%. The most recent recession starting in 2007, although not nearly as severe, still resulted in the largest rise in unemployment in the post–World War II period, with the unemployment rate rising by six percentage points, peaking at over 10%. What happens in labor markets to drive up unemployment during contractions in economic activity? We will seek answers to this question in Chapters 9–12 and 20.

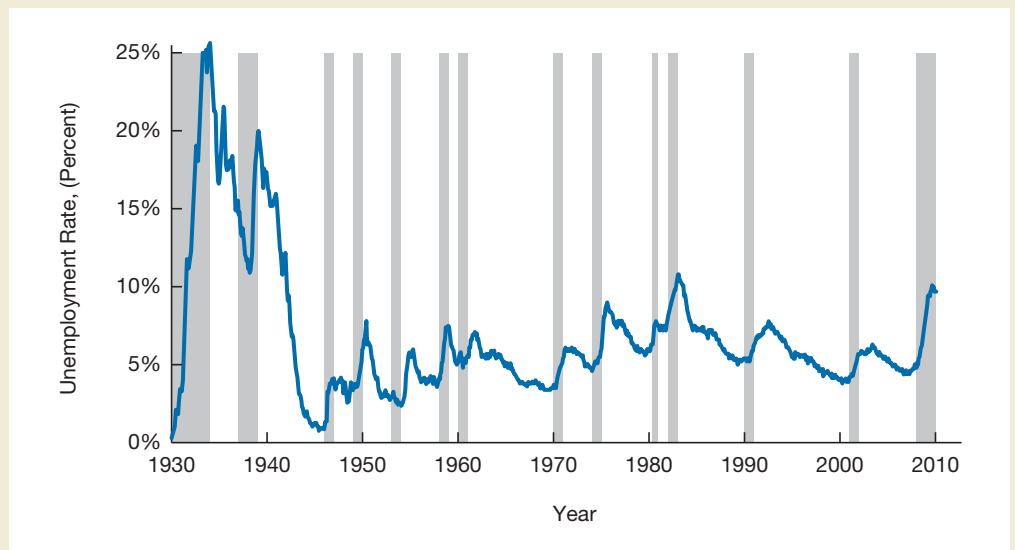
Figure 1.5 compares the average unemployment rates over the past decade for different countries. Poland’s nearly 16% unemployment rate is more than four times that of Norway, indicating the wide variation across countries. We will study the characteristics of labor markets that lead to high average unemployment rates in some countries but not others in Chapter 20.

INFLATION. **Inflation** or the **inflation rate** tells us how rapidly the overall level of prices is rising. Notice in Figure 1.6 that up until World War II, the inflation rate was on average about zero, and was often negative, a situation referred to as **deflation**. In the late 1960s, inflation rose and remained quite high for an extended period of time through the early 1980s, a period economists often refer to as the Great Inflation. We will address the causes of inflation and its historical peaks in Chapters 9–13.

FIGURE 1.4

U.S. Unemployment Rate, 1929–2010

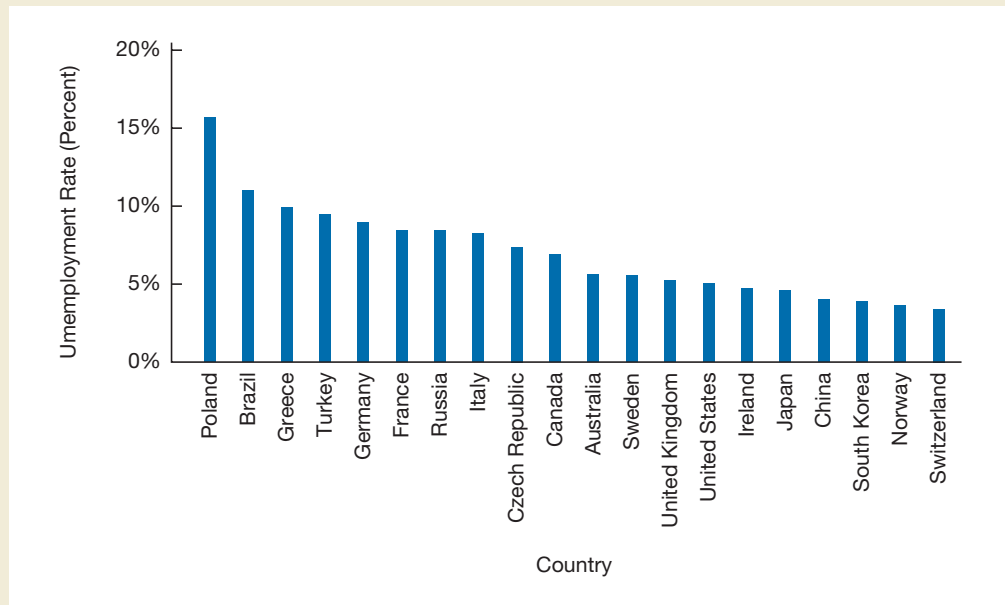
The unemployment rate always remains well above zero and has substantial fluctuations and rises sharply during recessions, denoted by the shaded areas.



Sources: Bureau of Labor Statistics. <http://data.bls.gov/cgi-bin/surveymost?ln>; and data prior to 1948, National Bureau of Economic Research. *Macro history database, income and employment*. www.nber.org/databases/macrohistory/contents/chapter08.html

FIGURE 1.5**Cross-Country Comparison of Average Unemployment Rates, 2000–2010**

The average unemployment rates over the past decade for a number of countries show much variation. For example, Poland's 15.7% unemployment rate is more than four times higher than Norway's 3.6% unemployment rate.

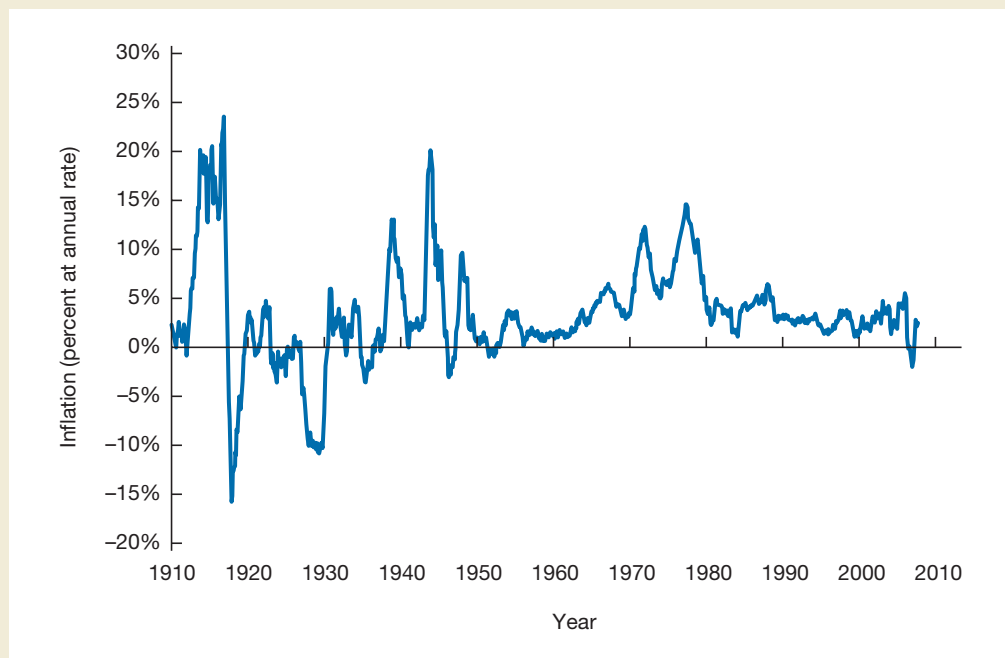


Source: International Monetary Fund. *International financial statistics*. www.imfstatistics.org/imf/

A changing price level complicates decision making for consumers, businesses, and government, and this uncertainty can hamper economic growth. Consider a shop owner who finds that he or she can raise prices and make more profit. The owner might conclude that demand for his or her goods is rising and invest in expanding the store. If

FIGURE 1.6**U.S. Inflation Rate, 1914–2010**

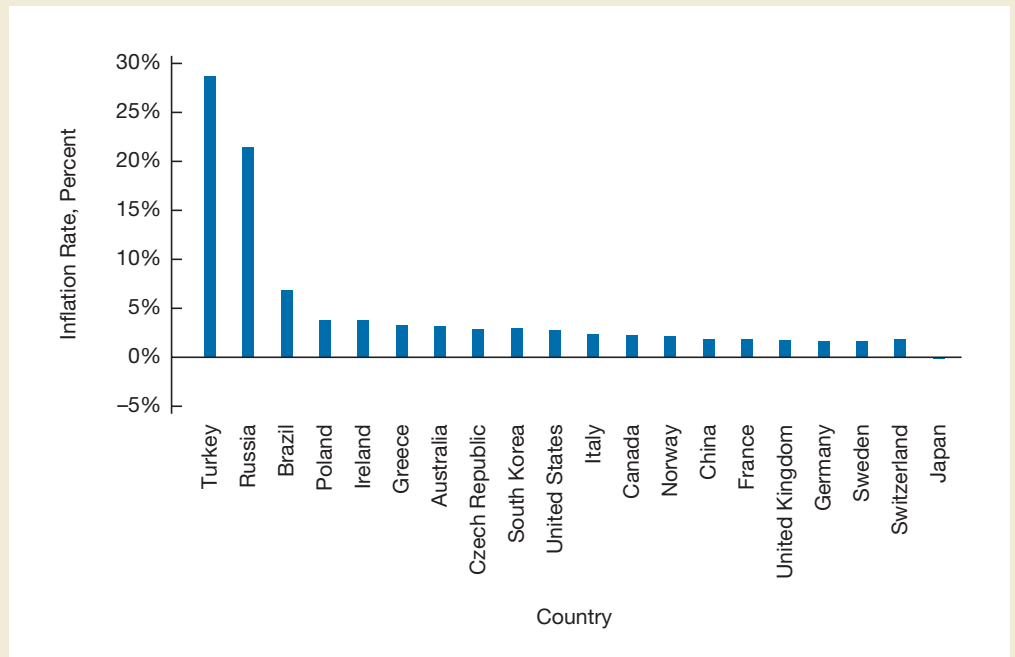
Up until World War II, the average inflation rate was near zero. In the late 1960s, inflation rose and remained quite high for an extended period of time through the early 1980s, the period of the Great Inflation.



Source: Bureau of Labor Statistics. <http://data.bls.gov/cgi-bin/surveymost?cu>

FIGURE 1.7
Cross-Country
Comparison of
Average Inflation
Rates, 2000–2010

Countries' average inflation rates over the past decade have differed, with most countries having inflation rates averaging less than 5% at an annual rate, but some, such as Turkey and Russia, with inflation rates well above that.



Source: International Monetary Fund. *International financial statistics*. www.imfstatistics.org/imf/

the overall price level is rising and demand for his or her goods hasn't changed, the decision to expand the shop could backfire.

Figure 1.7 shows that the average inflation rates over the past decade for a number of countries have differed substantially. What makes some countries more prone to inflation than others? Some countries have experienced super high inflation rates, which we refer to as **hyperinflation**. Zimbabwe (not shown in the figure) is the most recent extreme example with its inflation rate soaring to over two million percent at an annual rate. Why do some countries experience hyperinflation? We will pursue these questions in Chapters 4 and 16.

Macroeconomic Policy

The careful work to develop economic models and analyze key data is not simply an academic exercise: the underlying goal is to determine what policies can produce better macroeconomic outcomes. We will look at numerous specific examples of how macroeconomic policy is practiced in the Policy and Practice cases that appear throughout the text. We now set the stage by previewing several policy issues that are of particular concern to macroeconomists.

How Can Poor Countries Get Rich?

It's a simple insight that high economic growth enables poor countries to become rich. Nonetheless, designing policies to achieve economic growth is one of the greatest challenges facing macroeconomists. If it were easy to raise growth rates in poor countries,

policymakers could eliminate much of world poverty. Doing so might even help create a more stable world in which the threat of terrorism would diminish.

Numerous questions are central to growth-stimulating policies. What institutions in a country foster economic growth? Will policies to encourage the development of a more efficient financial system significantly raise economic growth rates? What role does education play in economic growth? How important are policies to encourage research and development in fostering economic growth? While there are not always clear-cut answers to these questions we will see in Chapters 6, 7, and 14 that macroeconomics has a lot to say about policies to achieve high economic growth.

Is Saving Too Low?

As Figure 1.8 shows, the percentage of income saved by U.S. citizens—known as the U.S. personal saving rate—has become much lower in recent years. Most countries have appreciably higher saving rates than the United States, with some countries like China having very high rates, above 50%. Figure 1.9 compares average saving rates over the last decade for a number of countries.

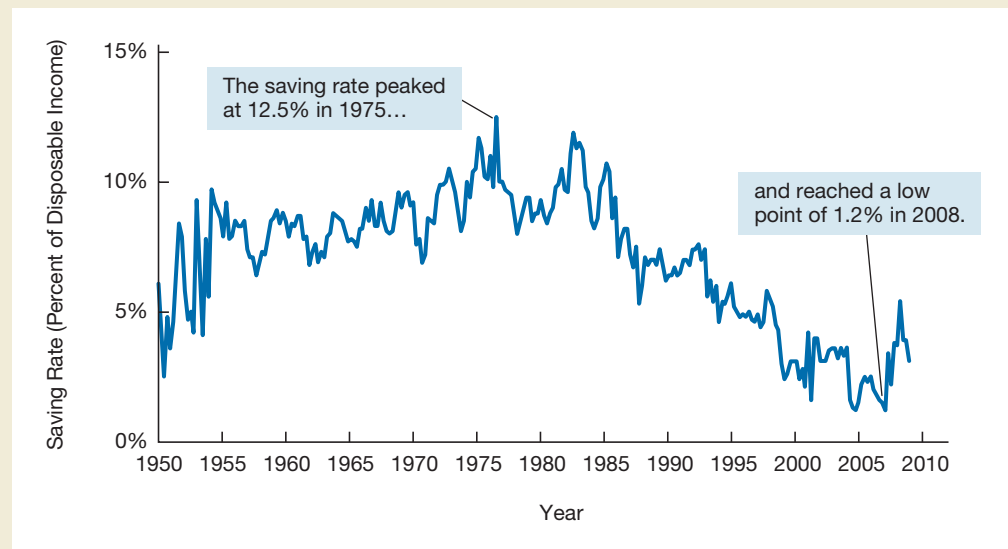
We will see in Chapters 4, 6, and 16 that higher saving rates translate into higher investment, which boosts economic growth and the long-run level of real GDP. When households have very low saving, they lack a cushion to cope with severe economic downturns. During the most recent recession, many U.S. households had so little savings that they found themselves unable to pay their bills and were forced to declare bankruptcy.

We will see in Chapters 4 and 18 that households will save more if the returns to saving are high. Tax policy is one way to increase the returns to saving. For example, governments can lower income taxes for households that put money into saving vehicles such as 401(k)s. Alternatively, governments can make consumption more costly through national sales taxes or give tax breaks to businesses that contribute to employee pensions.

FIGURE 1.8

U.S. Personal Saving Rate, 1950–2010

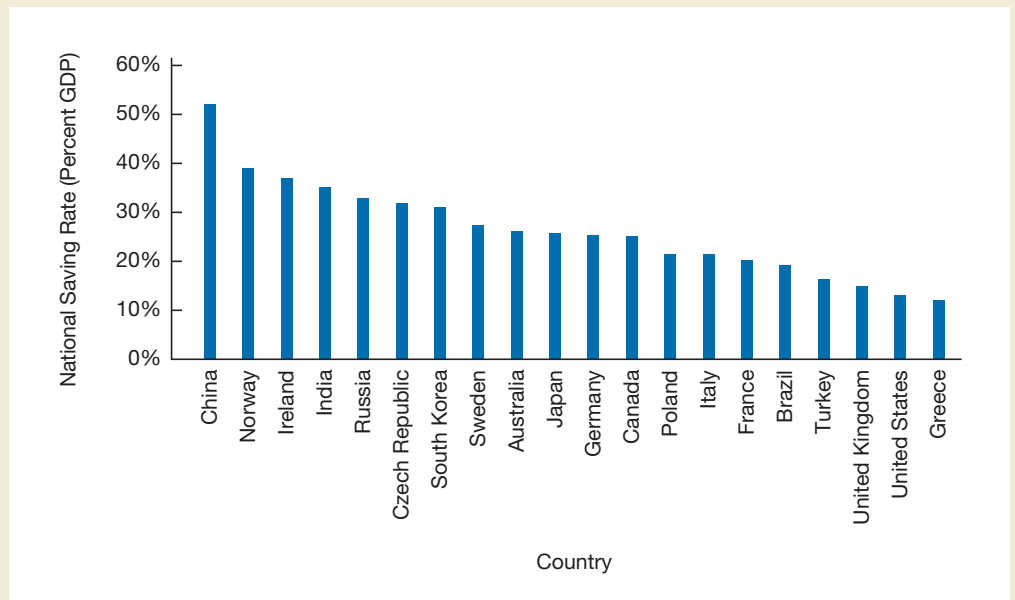
The U.S. saving rate has declined in recent years.



Source: Bureau of Economic Analysis. www.bea.gov/national/nipaweb/TableView.asp?SelectedTable=58&Freq=Qtr&FirstYear=2007&LastYear=2009

FIGURE 1.9**Average Saving Rate for a Number of Countries**

Most countries have appreciably higher saving rates than the United States, with some countries like China exceeding 50%.



Source: National Saving Rate, % of GDP, 2007. World Bank, *World development indicators*, <http://web.worldbank.org/WBSITE/EXTERNAL/DATASTATISTICS/0,,contentMDK:20398986~menuPK:64133163~pagePK:64133150~piPK:64133175~theSitePK:239419,00.html>

Do Government Budget Deficits Matter?

Government budget deficits, an excess of government spending relative to revenue, widened to over 10% of GDP after a severe recession in late 2007, their highest levels since World War II, as shown in Figure 1.10. The sea of red ink since has caused many commentators to worry about the future of America and propose drastic actions. Will budget deficits lead the government to go broke? Will they burden future generations with higher taxes to repay debt issued to fund these deficits? Will the government print money to finance its profligate spending and cause runaway inflation?

To cut the deficit, some propose tightening **fiscal policy** (policymakers' decisions to raise taxes), cut government spending, or both. Others say the budget deficit doesn't pose a danger and warn that tighter fiscal policy can do more harm than good. Are drastic actions required to get deficits under control? Massive recent U.S. government budget deficits—matched in many other countries throughout the world—have raised the stakes on the debate about government budget deficits. We will address the issue in Chapter 16.

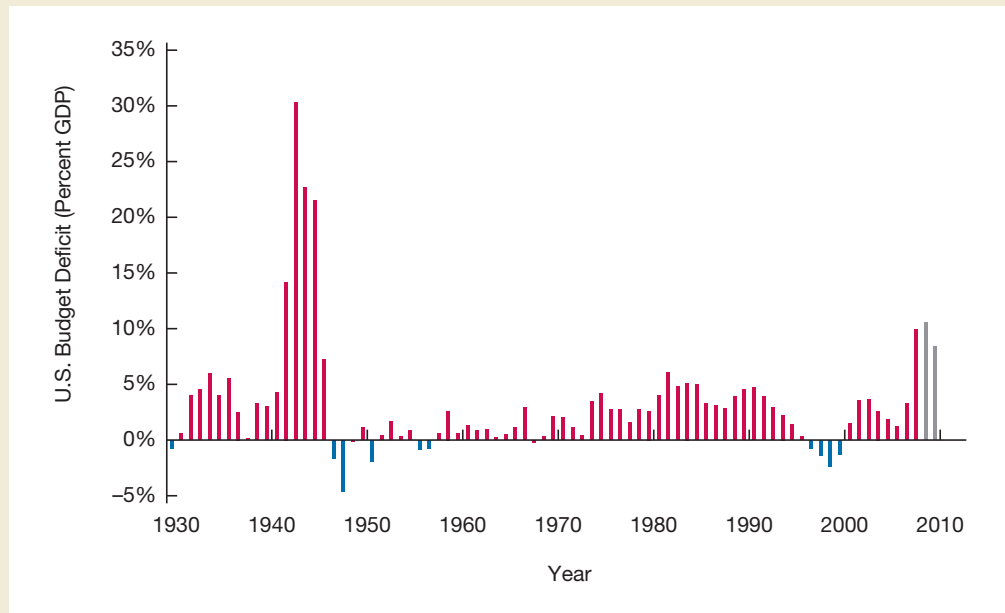
How Costly Is It to Reduce Inflation?

By the end of the 1970s, the inflation rate in the United States and many other countries exceeded 10%, a period often referred to as the Great Inflation. Some macroeconomists proposed policies to fight the inflation; many others argued that these steps would be too painful, reducing output and triggering high unemployment rates. During the recession of 2007–2009, the inflation rate fell to zero. But many were concerned that the price level could soar when the economy started to recover.

The job of keeping inflation in check is core to the mission of U.S. Federal Reserve and other **central banks**, the government agencies that oversee banking systems. Central

FIGURE 1.10**U.S. Government Budget Deficits, 1930–2011**

After a brief period in the 1990s when the government budget was in surplus, government budget deficits started to widen. These deficits become massive—over 10% of GDP—in the wake of the severe 2007–2009 recession.



Source: GPO Access. 2009. *Economic report of the president*. www.gpoaccess.gov/eop/tables09.html. (Budget deficits for 2010 and 2011 are projections.)

banks also conduct **monetary policy**, the management of the amount of money in the economy and interest rates. Given the challenges of fighting inflation, central bankers spend a great deal of time investigating monetary policy frameworks to control the price level. We will examine the issue of how costly it is to keep inflation low and how to conduct monetary policy to contain inflation in Chapters 13 and 22 of this book.

How Can We Make Financial Crises Less Likely?

Starting in 2007, the United States and many other countries throughout the world experienced a major **financial crisis**, a large-scale disruption in financial markets characterized by sharp declines in the prices of **assets** (property that includes bonds, stocks, art, land, etc.) and business failures. Financial crises are always accompanied by sharp economic downturns, as we saw in 2007–2009. We discuss the roots of financial crises and actions to make them less likely in Chapter 15.

How Active Should Stabilization Policy Be?

An important goal for macroeconomic policy is to minimize business cycle fluctuations and stabilize economic activity, commonly referred to as **stabilization policy**. One group of economists, known as *activists*, advocates the use of policies to eliminate excessive unemployment whenever it develops. In contrast, another group of economists, known as *nonactivists*, argues that the economy has a self-correcting mechanism that will quickly restore an economy in recession to a healthy condition. Activist policies, nonactivists say, could kick in at the wrong time, producing undesirable fluctuations in economic activity and inflation. For their part, activists think that doing nothing will leave too many people out of work for too long.

When recessions occur, as happened in 2007–2009, the debate between activists and nonactivists becomes very heated. We examine this issue in detail in Chapters 13, 21, and 22.

Should Macroeconomic Policy Follow Rules?

Another dimension of the debate on stabilization policy is whether policymakers should conduct policy in a *discretionary manner*—that is, react as they see fit as the situation evolves—or with *rules*—a binding plan that specifies in advance how policy will respond to data on variables such as inflation and unemployment. As we will analyze in Chapter 21 on the role of expectations in macroeconomic policy, discretionary policy can lead to a set of short-run policies that produce bad long-run outcomes, such as high inflation. Rule-determined policy can avoid these bad outcomes by making sure that policy accounts for appropriate long-run considerations, making good long-run outcomes more likely. However, rules can put policymakers in a straightjacket, and changes in the structure of the economy may make a rule obsolete. Are rules made to be broken?

The long-standing debate over rules versus discretion in macroeconomics is an important focus of Chapters 21 and 22 of this book.

Are Global Trade Imbalances a Danger?

In the 2000s, the U.S. economy was running large trade deficits in which it was purchasing far more goods and services from abroad than foreigners were buying from it. Massive amounts of capital flowed into the United States to fund U.S. spending, especially from China, which was running large trade surpluses. These global trade imbalances left the United States increasingly indebted to foreigners and provided the capital inflows to help fuel a boom in housing purchases. The subsequent bust in the housing market after 2006 was a key factor in the recession of 2007–2009, the most severe recession in the United States since the Great Depression of the 1930s.

We will explore what causes global trade imbalances in Chapters 4 and 16 and see what government policies can be used to reduce them. We will also see in Chapter 15 why these imbalances can be dangerous and help fuel financial crises like the one in the 2007–2009 period.

How We Will Study Macroeconomics

I hope that the policy questions in this chapter have piqued your interest and have convinced you that studying macroeconomics will be a worthwhile enterprise.

Emphasis on Policy and Practice

This textbook will introduce you to the policy and practice of macroeconomics by developing several macroeconomic models to help you understand how the aggregate economy works. Because theory without practice is inherently sterile, this book will emphasize the policy and practice of macroeconomics, both by using the models developed here in a large number of applications, which are separately broken out in the text, and with the Policy and Practice cases mentioned earlier. This exposure to real-world examples will help you appreciate that economics is far more than abstract theories: it is

a powerful way of thinking that can help you understand the world—and your own economic options—better.

Concluding Remarks

I have been a practicing macroeconomist for over thirty years now. I fell in love with macroeconomics as an undergraduate in a similar course to the one you are taking here (taught by the famous Robert Solow mentioned prominently in this book). I have had the privilege of applying my knowledge to policy and practice as a Federal Reserve official in exciting periods: from 1994 to 1997, when I was an executive vice president and director of research at the Federal Reserve Bank of New York, and from 2006 to 2008, when I was a governor of the Federal Reserve System. I hope that your progress through the chapters outlined will help you understand what is happening in the overall economic environment, and perhaps foster the enthusiasm for this subject that I have had for most of my life.

SUMMARY

1. The practice of macroeconomics involves examining macroeconomic data and then developing an economic theory or model to explain it. The key economic data series that macroeconomists try to explain are real GDP, the unemployment rate, and inflation.
2. Several policy issues that receive the most attention from macroeconomists are as follows: Is saving too low? How can we help poor countries to get rich? Do government budget deficits matter? How costly is it to reduce inflation? How can we prevent financial crises? How active should stabilization policy be? Should macroeconomic policy follow rules? What can be done about global trade imbalances? We will address all of these policy issues in the coming chapters.
3. This textbook will introduce you to the policy and practice of macroeconomics by developing several macroeconomic models and applying them to real-world examples and data.

KEY TERMS

assets, p. 12	exogenous variables, p. 4	macroeconomics, p. 3
business cycles, p. 6	financial crisis, p. 12	microeconomics, p. 3
central banks, p. 11	fiscal policy, p. 11	monetary policy, p. 12
deflation, p. 7	government budget deficits, p. 11	Real Gross Domestic Product (GDP), p. 5
depression, p. 6	hyperinflation, p. 9	recession, p. 6
economic model, p. 4	inflation, p. 7	stabilization policy, p. 12
economic theory, p. 4	inflation rate, p. 7	unemployment rate, p. 7
endogenous variables, p. 4		

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Preview

1. What macroeconomic conditions, issues, and events can shape your future?

The Practice of Macroeconomics

2. What is the distinction between endogenous variables and exogenous variables in economic models?
3. What is the five-step process for developing macroeconomic models?
4. What three macroeconomic data series are of particular interest to macroeconomists? Why?
5. What is the business cycle? Which part of the business cycle is of particular concern to macroeconomists? Why?
6. What happens to the overall level of prices during periods of inflation and deflation?

Macroeconomic Policy

7. What is a nation’s saving rate and why is it an important concern for macroeconomists?
8. What is a government budget deficit? Why are macroeconomists concerned with budget deficits?
9. Explain the difference between fiscal policy and monetary policy. What are some of the reasons these macroeconomic policies are used?
10. What is stabilization policy? What two important debates occur among macroeconomists regarding its use, and who are the parties to these debates?
11. What are global trade imbalances and why do economists focus on them?

PROBLEMS

All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

The Practice of Macroeconomics

1. Sciences other than economics also design models to explain the behavior of endogenous variables based on assumptions about the environment and changes in exogenous variables. Suppose you have to design a model that links child obesity and diabetes.
 - a) Which one would be the exogenous variable? Which one would be the endogenous variable?
 - b) Can you think of other exogenous variables?
2. Suppose your model predicts that overweight children have an 80% higher risk of suffering from diabetes in their adult life. If data shows that overweight children do not suffer from diabetes as predicted by your model (i.e., data shows a lower than 80% probability), which would your next step be?
3. The following table shows Spain’s (annualized) quarterly real GDP growth rates for the 2007–2009 period. (Roman numbers refer to quarters.)

Variable	2007	2007	2007	2007	2008	2008
	I	II	III	IV	I	II
Real GDP	7.6	7.3	6.5	6.4	5.6	4.6
Variable	2008	2008	2009	2009	2009	2009
	III	IV	I	II	III	IV
Real GDP	3.1	0.5	−0.1	−4.1	−4.5	−3.3

- a) Plot real GDP growth rate in a graph. Can you identify a trend in the data?
- b) Based on the data shown, can you identify the beginning (i.e., the year and the quarter) of the current recession?
4. Unemployment is a very important topic in macroeconomics. A high unemployment rate means that a lot of individuals willing to work cannot find a job. This is bad for the economy, as some resources (i.e., labor) remain idle. Comment on the effect that being unemployed has on an individual.

Macroeconomic Policy

5. During the 1970s most Latin American countries ran huge budget deficits. As their governments resorted to printing money (increasing the money supply) to pay for these deficits, very high inflation rates resulted. As a consequence, real GDP declined or remained constant during the 1980s. Comment on the relationship between budget deficits, inflation, and real GDP growth.
6. Assume that a civil war erupts in a given country, creating chaos and destroying most of the economy's infrastructure (e.g., roads, businesses, and telecommunications).
 - a) What would be the effect on economic growth?
 - b) How do you think a civil war affects incentives to invest in that country?
7. The recent subprime financial crisis is a good example of how important the financial system is for the performance of any economy. Usually the immediate effects of a financial crisis include a decrease in asset prices, business failures, and more difficult access to credit for both firms and households. Comment on the consequences that a financial crisis will have on unemployment and economic growth.
8. The United States has been experiencing very low or even negative savings rate during the recent past. If this situation persists, what does it mean for future generations?
9. A Council of Economic Advisers post on January 15, 2010, stated that "The American Recovery and Reinvestment Act [...] was the boldest countercyclical fiscal action in American history. [...] the Administration is committed to taking every responsible measure to spur job creation." Comment on the characteristics of the Obama administration's economic policy. Is it an activist or nonactivist policy?
10. The Federal Reserve took swift action to help restore the United States financial system after the subprime financial crisis started in fall 2007. The various instruments used by the Federal Reserve were highly criticized for fueling expectations of higher inflation rates. What is the effect of monetary policy on expectations about inflation?
11. Consider the difficult task of raising children. One of the most widely recognized challenges of such activity is to properly balance rules and ad-hoc decisions. Constantly breaking rules might send the wrong message to a kid, while strictly enforcing rules every time might result in excessive punishments. The debate about the conduct of macroeconomic policy is not significantly different from this example.
 - a) Comment on the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009. Can this Act be characterized as discretionary policy?
 - b) Is it possible for this set of policies to affect the incentives of financial intermediaries or other major economic agents?



MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time and you are better prepared for your exams.

Here's how it works:

1. Register and log in at www.myeconlab.com
2. Click on "Take a Test" and select Sample Test A for this chapter.
3. Take the diagnostic test. MyEconLab will grade it automatically and create a personalized Study Plan so you see which sections of the chapter you should study further.
4. The Study Plan will serve up additional practice problems and tutorials to help you master the specific areas on which you need to focus. By practicing online, you can track your progress in the Study Plan.
5. After you have mastered the sections, go to "Take a Test" and select Sample Test B for this chapter. Take the test and see how you do!



2

Measuring Macroeconomic Data

Preview

It is easy to take macroeconomic data for granted, especially when print and electronic media bombard us with economic facts and figures. When the most recent recession started in 2007, the latest releases of economic statistics quickly indicated that the economy was weakening. In contrast, when the Great Depression of the 1930s began, economists did not have immediate access to data indicating the severity of the situation. Economists recognized that better data was needed, to both inform the public and guide policymakers. Economists like Simon Kuznets, with his colleagues at the U.S. Department of Commerce, developed the National Income and Product Accounts in the 1930s. What became known as *national income accounting* may not sound very exciting—after all, whoever thinks that accounting is exciting—but it has been called one of the great inventions of the twentieth century.¹ In 1971, Simon Kuznets was awarded a Nobel Prize for his role in inventing national income accounting.

In this chapter we examine how economists define and measure the most important data in macroeconomics, areas critical to your gaining a full understanding of macroeconomics. In this chapter, we will examine the following questions: How do we measure economic activity, and specifically *gross domestic product*, a broad measure of economic activity? What are the key components of gross domestic product? How do we measure inflation and does it tell us how rapidly the cost of living is rising? What is unemployment and how do we measure it? What are interest rates and which measures of interest rates are the most important in macroeconomics?

¹See Paul Samuelson and William Nordhaus, “GDP: One of the Great Inventions of the Twentieth Century,” *Survey of Current Business* (January 2000): 6–9.

Measuring Economic Activity: National Income Accounting

Gross domestic product (GDP), the total value of goods and services produced in an economy, is the broadest measure of economic activity. We add up the value of all the goods and services produced in one year—say, from cell phones, automobiles, textbooks, DVDs, computers, haircuts, and rock concerts—to determine GDP. The U.S. Bureau of Economic Analysis (part of the U.S. Commerce Department) calculates GDP on a quarterly basis with data provided by other government agencies such as the Census Bureau and the Bureau of Labor Statistics. U.S. GDP is currently around \$15 trillion, that is, over \$40,000 per person.

There are several alternate definitions and approaches for measuring GDP. Our initial definition of GDP is in terms of goods and services produced. We will also define GDP in terms of expenditure and income: GDP is the total income of everyone in the economy, and is also the total amount of expenditure for goods and services in the economy. These various GDP definitions are equivalent because the total income in an economy must equal the total amount of expenditure, which equals total production. This reasoning makes intuitive sense because there is a buyer and a seller for every good or service produced in the economy. When you pay \$15 for a haircut at your local barbershop, your \$15 expenditure is \$15 of income for the barber, who has produced the \$15 haircut.

National income accounting, an accounting system to measure economic activity and its components, shows the relationship among the expenditure, income, and production methods of measuring GDP. We express national income accounting in the **fundamental identity of national income accounting**:

$$\text{Total Production} = \text{Total Expenditure} = \text{Total Income} \quad (1)$$

Equation 1 says that any of the three approaches—production, expenditure, or income—should give the same answer when computing GDP. Let's calculate GDP with each of these approaches to refine our definitions of GDP.

Measuring GDP: The Production Approach

In the **production approach**, we define GDP as the current *market value* of all *final* goods and services *newly produced* in the economy during a *fixed period* of time. Each of these italicized phrases indicates key principles that we will examine in detail.

Market Value

An economy produces countless goods and services. This fact raises the age-old question, “How do we compare apples with oranges?” If the economy produces one billion apples and two billion oranges, would you be just as satisfied if it instead produced two billion apples and one billion oranges? If the economic value of apples and oranges is the same, the answer is yes: the total number and value of apples and oranges produced is the same amount, three billion. Because prices of various goods and services are rarely identical, we use national income accounting, which bases the economic value of

a good or service on its market value, that is, the price it sells for. To calculate the value of output in the economy, you weigh each good and service by its current market price and add them up. In the case of apples and oranges, GDP would be as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{GDP} &= (\text{price of apples} \times \text{quantity of apples}) \\ &+ (\text{price of oranges} \times \text{quantity of oranges}) \end{aligned}$$

If apples and oranges each sold for \$1, then total output for apples and oranges would indeed be the same in both cases, \$3 billion ($2 \text{ billion} \times \$1 + 1 \text{ billion} \times \$1 = 1 \text{ billion} \times \$1 + 2 \text{ billion} \times \1). But if apples sold for 50 cents and oranges for \$2, then the total output of apples and oranges would differ in the two cases. In the first case, total output would be \$3 billion ($2 \text{ billion} \times \$0.50 + 1 \text{ billion} \times \2), while in the second, it would be \$4.5 billion ($1 \text{ billion} \times \$0.50 + 2 \text{ billion} \times \2).

NONMARKET GOODS AND SERVICES. Unfortunately, for the ease of computing accurate measures of GDP with national income accounting, not all goods and services produced in the economy are sold in markets that provide a market price. Some of these nonmarket goods and services are left out of measures of GDP by necessity. Many household services that are produced within a family or by friends—cleaning, cooking, child care—would be included if it were easy to measure them.

UNDERGROUND ECONOMY. Nonmarket goods and services produced in the *underground economy* are also not counted in GDP. In the **underground economy**, goods and services produced are hidden from the government, either because they are illegal (drugs or prostitution) or because the person producing the goods and services is avoiding paying taxes on the income he or she receives (the carpenter who is paid in cash and does not declare it on his or her tax return). In some countries, the underground economy (also sometimes referred to as the “black market economy”) is very large and as a percentage of the economy it differs substantially among countries. Italy, an example among rich countries, is notorious for tax avoidance, so its GDP is likely to be understated relative to other countries because of the large size of its underground economy.

IMPUTED VALUES FOR NONMARKET GOODS AND SERVICES. Many other nonmarket goods and services lacking a market price are counted in GDP by determining an **imputed value**, an estimate of what the price of the good or service would be if it were traded in a market. For example, an important component of GDP is housing services. When you rent your college apartment, there is a market price that you pay and so it is easy to include it in GDP. But what if, instead, you owned the apartment? A home owner is getting housing services, just as a renter is. To impute the value of these services, the Department of Commerce, which computes GDP, assumes that in effect the homeowner is paying rent to him- or herself. A homeowner’s imputed value is the rental price of comparable housing in the market.

The existence of nonmarket goods and services suggests that GDP is an imperfect measure of output produced in the economy. An especially large component of GDP that is not traded in the market is goods and services provided by the government, such as national defense, police, firefighting, and education. The standard practice is to value these services at the cost of providing them. The imputed value of a police officer giving out traffic tickets, for example, is the wages he or she is paid when doing traffic duty.

Final Goods and Services

Production of goods and services typically occurs in stages. We classify goods and services into two types: **intermediate goods and services** are used up entirely in the stages of production, whereas **final goods and services** are the end goods in the production process.

To illustrate, suppose that Intel produces \$400 of microprocessors to go into the Mac that Apple sells for \$1,500 and it costs \$50 to ship the Mac to the computer store where you buy it. The \$400 of microprocessors are an intermediate good, the \$50 of shipping is an intermediate service, and the \$1,500 Mac is a final good. Would it make sense to include all these goods and services in GDP? No. We only include the \$1,500 Mac, the final good, in GDP. Otherwise, there would be double counting because the cost of the intermediate goods and services used in producing the Mac are already included in the price for the final good. That is, GDP should include only the market value of final goods and services.

VALUE-ADDED TECHNIQUE AND GDP. One important technique for calculating the value of all final goods and services produced in the economy is with **value added**, the value of a firm's output minus the cost of the intermediate goods purchased by the firm. By adding up the value added for each firm, we get the final value of the goods and services produced. In our Mac example, the value added for the producer of microprocessors is \$400, while the value added for the shipping firm is \$50 (assuming that it did not use any intermediate goods). The value added for Apple is the final price of the Mac minus the cost of the intermediate inputs, \$1,500 minus the \$400 cost of the microprocessors and the \$50 cost of shipping; that is, \$1,050. The sum of the value-added items for each of these firms—\$1,050 plus \$400 plus \$50—is \$1,500, the same value as the final good, the Mac. Now imagine adding up all the value added in the economy to determine the total value of final goods and services in the economy. This approach is likely to include all final goods and services in the economy, but appropriately excludes intermediate goods.

CAPITAL GOODS AND GDP. There are some subtleties as to when to classify goods as intermediate versus final goods. Suppose a robot is manufactured to install windshields in new automobiles. Is it an intermediate good or a final good? Although the robot is used to help produce new cars, it is not used up in producing the car and will keep on installing windshields for many years. The robot is a **capital good**, a good that is produced in the current period to be used in the production of other goods that is not used up in the stages of production. We classify new capital goods as final goods and thus include them in GDP because they are not included in spending on other final goods and yet their production is certainly part of economic activity.

INVENTORY INVESTMENT AND GDP. Inventories—firms' holdings of raw materials, unfinished goods, and unsold finished goods—are another type of good that are not used up in the current period. The change in inventories over a given period of time, say a year, is referred to as **inventory investment**. We include inventory investment in GDP for the same reason that we include capital goods: an increase in the level of inventories means that there has been an increase in economic activity. For example, suppose that at the beginning of the year, Apple has \$1 billion of microprocessors and \$1 billion of finished Mac computers on hand, for a total of \$2 billion of inventories. At

the end of the year, it has \$1.5 billion of microprocessors and \$1.5 billion of finished Macs in stock. Its level of inventories has increased from \$2 billion to \$3 billion, an increase of \$1 billion. This \$1 billion increase in inventories is the inventory investment for that year and we add it into GDP.

Newly Produced Goods and Services

GDP should only include goods and services that are newly produced in the current period; it excludes those that were produced in previous periods. If you buy a three-year-old car from a used car lot, there is no increase in production of automobiles: the cost of the used car is *not included* in GDP. The car was already counted in GDP when its original owner purchased it new. However, the value of the services provided by the car dealership that sold you the used car is included in GDP.

Fixed Period of Time

We calculate GDP over a fixed period of time such as a quarter or a year. For example, GDP for the year 2012 tells us the value of final goods and services produced over the course of 2012. GDP is a **flow**, an amount *per* a given unit of time, in contrast to a **stock**, a quantity *at* a given point in time. (Note that the *stock* concept is not to be confused with the term *common stock*, such as a share of IBM.) The concept of stocks versus flows is vitally important in economics and is discussed in the box, “Stocks Versus Flows.”

Although we see from the discussion in this section that the technical difficulties in measuring GDP are serious, there is an even deeper question of whether GDP provides an appropriate measure of how well an economy is doing, as the following Policy and Practice case indicates.

Policy and Practice



Can GDP Buy Happiness?

You won't find Bhutan anywhere near the top of the list of wealthiest nations. But in 1972, the king of Bhutan said his tiny South Asian nation would rank much higher if it were measured not by gross domestic product, but by “gross national happiness,” incorporating factors such as spirituality and culture. At the time, his idea sounded ludicrous to most economists. But over the years, many governments began to acknowledge that GDP is an inadequate—albeit highly useful—measure of well-being.

Starting in 1990, the United Nations began to rank countries on a so-called human development index: a combination of life expectancy, education, literacy, educational participation, and GDP. By this measure, in 2009 the United States ranked thirteenth, below Canada and Ireland, countries whose GDP per person is well below that of the United States. (Bhutan ranked 132.) In 2008, a French economic commission led by Nobel Prize winner Joseph Stiglitz called for significant modifications to GDP and the development of a new generation of national statistics to measure factors such as political freedom, physical safety, and work–life balance. The proposal was taken up by the Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development, a body of the world's richest countries. In spite of these efforts, per-capita GDP remains the most broadly accepted measurement of national well-being.

Stocks Versus Flows

Throughout this book, we will discuss many macroeconomic variables, some of which are stocks and the other flows. Understanding the difference between them is critical to avoiding confusion when we study macroeconomics.

To see the difference between a stock and a flow, consider the classic example of a bathtub, shown in Figure 2.1. Stocks and flows are clearly related: a stock is often an accumulation of flows over time. If the faucet has been running for a half hour with a *flow* of one gallon per minute and the tub was initially empty, then the *stock* of water in the tub will be thirty gallons, that is, thirty minutes times the flow of one gallon per minute. The most important flow variable we have discussed in this chapter is GDP, which always has to be thought of as an amount produced *per year* or *per quarter*. Examples of stocks and flows that are related include the following: inventory investment, a flow, which accumulates into the stock of

inventories; saving, a flow, which accumulates into a person's wealth; and fixed investment, a flow, which accumulates into the economies' capital stock.

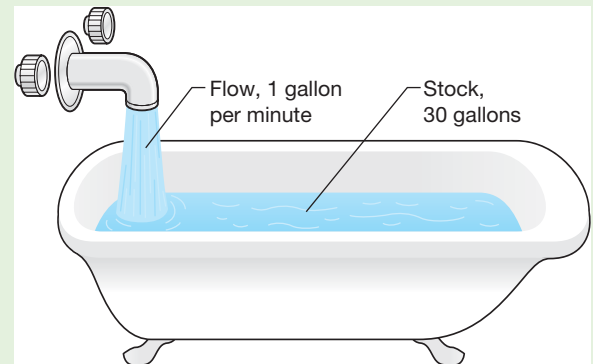


FIGURE 2.1
Stocks Versus Flows

The water coming out of the faucet is a *flow* (one gallon per minute), while the amount of water in the tub is a *stock* (thirty gallons).

Measuring GDP: The Expenditure Approach

We now turn to our second technique for computing GDP: with the **expenditure approach**, GDP is the total spending on currently produced final goods and services in the economy. The expenditure approach allows us to get information on the different components of spending that add up to GDP. The national income accounts divide spending into four basic categories: *consumption expenditure*, *investment*, *government purchases (spending)*, and *net exports*, each of which we will discuss in turn. The national income accounts add up these four categories of spending to determine GDP in the **national income identity**.

$$Y = C + I + G + NX \quad (2)$$

where,

- Y = GDP = total production (output)
- C = consumption expenditure
- I = investment
- G = government purchases of goods and services
- NX = net exports = exports – imports

Equation 2 is one of the most fundamental equations in macroeconomics, and we will make use of it many times throughout this book. Table 2.1 provides 2009 data from the U.S. economy on these four components and some subcomponents.

TABLE 2.1**GDP and Its Components, 2009**

	Billions of Dollars	Percent of GDP
Personal consumption expenditure (C)	10,089	70.8
Consumer durables	1,035	7.3
Nondurable goods	2,220	15.6
Services	6,834	47.9
Investment (I)	1,629	11.4
Fixed investment	1,389	9.7
Inventory investment	-121	-0.9
Residential investment	361	2.5
Government purchases (G)	2,931	20.6
Federal	1,145	8.0
State and local	1,786	12.5
Net exports (NX)	-393	-2.7
Exports	1,564	11.0
Minus imports	1,957	13.7
Total = GDP (Y)	14,256	100.0

Source: Bureau of Economic Analysis. Table 1.1.5. www.bea.gov/national/nipaweb/SelectTable.asp?Selected=Y

Note: Numbers may not add up to the totals due to rounding.

Consumption Expenditure

Consumption expenditure (also referred to as **personal consumption expenditure** and **consumption**) is the total spending for currently produced consumer goods and services. Consumption expenditure is by far the largest component of GDP and was 70.8% of GDP in 2009 (see Table 2.1). We can break it down into three basic categories:

1. *Consumer durables* are goods purchased by consumers that last a long time (are *durable*), such as automobiles, electronic goods, and appliances.
2. *Nondurable goods* are short-lived consumer goods such as food, housing services (but not purchases of houses, which are part of investment), gasoline, and clothing.
3. *Services* are purchased by consumers; examples include haircuts, education, medical care, air travel, and financial services.

Investment

Investment is spending on currently produced capital goods that are used to produce goods and services over an extended period of time. Investment was 11.4% of GDP in 2009. We can break it down into three basic categories:

1. *Fixed investment*, also referred to as *business fixed investment*, is spending by businesses on equipment (machines, computers, furniture, and trucks) and structures (factories, stores, and warehouses).
2. *Inventory investment* is the change in inventories held by firms. If inventories are increasing, inventory investment is positive, but if they are decreasing, inventory investment is negative.



Meaning of the Word *Investment*

Economists use the word *investment* somewhat differently than other people do. When noneconomists say that they are making an investment, they are normally referring to the purchase of common stocks or bonds, purchases that do not

necessarily involve newly produced goods and services. But when economists speak of investment spending, they are referring to the purchase of physical assets such as *new* machines or new houses—purchases that add to GDP.

3. *Residential investment* is household purchases of *new* houses and apartments. (We do not include purchases of existing housing in GDP because they were produced in earlier periods.) Houses and apartments are capital goods for households because they produce a service (a roof over our heads) over an extended period of time. Indeed, for most of us, housing is the most important purchase we ever make in our lives.

Government Purchases

Government purchases is spending by the government—whether federal, state, or local—on currently produced goods and services. Government purchases were 20.6% of GDP in 2009. Although most of the media attention focuses on federal spending, as you can see from Table 2.1, more spending is done by state and local governments than the federal government.

GOVERNMENT CONSUMPTION VERSUS GOVERNMENT INVESTMENT.

Government purchases that appear in GDP includes purchases of goods (highways, military equipment, and computers) and services (rangers for national parks, police, health care, and education). We refer to government purchases for short-lived goods and services like health care and police as **government consumption**, whereas spending for capital goods like buildings and computers represents **government investment**.

TRANSFERS AND GDP. Government payments for Social Security, Medicare, and unemployment insurance benefits are **transfers** from one segment of society—healthy, working people—to another segment—the elderly, sick, and jobless. Because they are not payments in exchange for currently produced goods and services, they are not included in government purchases, G , or GDP. Interest payments on government debt are also not made in exchange for goods and services, so we exclude them from government purchases, G , and GDP.

Net Exports

Net exports are exports minus imports: that is, the value of currently produced goods and services exported, or sold to other countries, minus the value of goods and services imported, or purchased from abroad. It is easy to see why exports should be included in GDP. But why must we subtract imports out to get a correct measure of GDP? The answer is that spending on imports is included in consumption

expenditure, investment, and government purchases, but imports are not produced in the United States.²

Net exports have been quite negative in recent years, -2.7% of GDP in 2009, because U.S. citizens buy more foreign goods and services than foreigners buy U.S. goods and services. For example, exports at 11.0% of GDP in 2009 were substantially less than imports, 13.7% of GDP. We also refer to net exports as the **trade balance**; the negative trade balance in 2009 is often discussed in the media by saying that the United States has been running a large trade deficit.

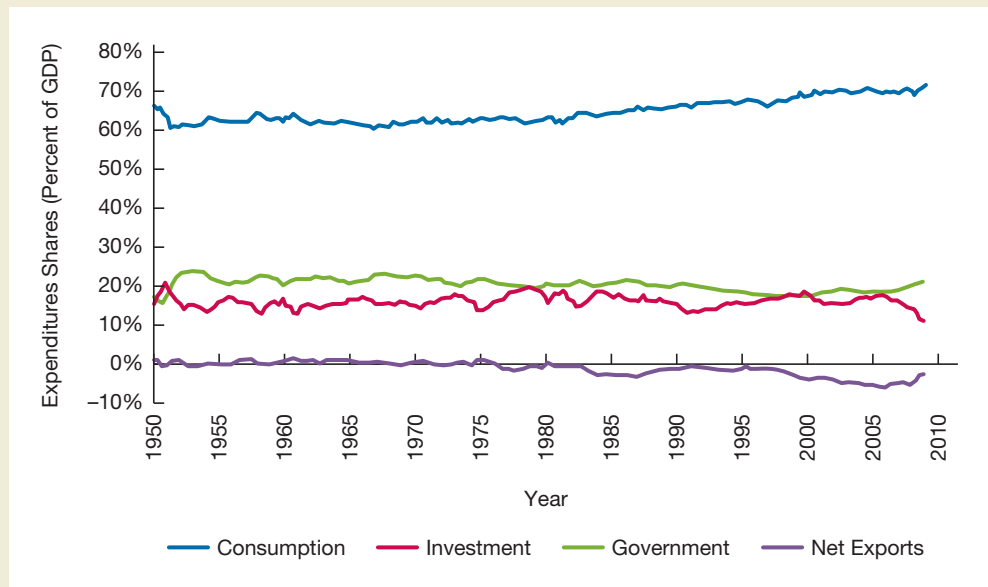
Changes in the Spending Components of GDP over Time

Figure 2.2 shows how the different expenditure components as a percentage of GDP have changed over the last sixty years. Four interesting facts are apparent from looking at Figure 2.2.

FIGURE 2.2

Expenditure Components of U.S. GDP, 1950–2010

Over the past sixty years, U.S. consumption expenditure rose steadily as a share of GDP and investment was much more volatile than other components of GDP. Government purchases remained quite stable over the past sixty years at around 20% of GDP, while net exports were near zero or negative, with the trade deficit worsening over time.



Source: Bureau of Economic Analysis. Table 1.1.10, www.bea.gov/national/nipaweb/SelectTable.asp?Selected=Y

²Another way to see why the imports have to be subtracted from exports and so have net exports as a component of GDP is to recognize that domestic output equals consumption, investment, and government purchases on domestically produced goods, marked with a subscript *d*, plus foreign spending on domestically produced goods, that is, exports, *EX*:

$$Y = C_d + I_d + G_d + EX$$

Total consumption expenditure, investment, and government purchases have an additional component of foreign produced goods, i.e., imports, denoted by an *im* subscript, so adding in these terms and then subtracting them again means that we can rewrite GDP as follows:

$$Y = (C_d + C_{im}) + (I_d + I_{im}) + (G_d + G_{im}) + EX - (C_{im} + I_{im} + G_{im})$$

Then since we can write total consumption expenditure, investment, and government purchases as $C = (C_d + C_{im})$, $I = (I_d + I_{im})$, and $G = (G_d + G_{im})$, while total imports is $IM = (C_{im} + I_{im} + G_{im})$:

$$Y = C + I + G + EX - IM$$

Which, since net exports equals exports minus imports, i.e., $NX = EX - IM$, we can rewrite as

$$Y = C + I + G + NX$$

1. Consumption expenditure grew steadily as a share of GDP from 1970 to 2010, rising from 63% of GDP to over 70%. Why the consumption expenditure share had this positive trend is one of the questions that macroeconomics seeks to explain, which we will turn to in Chapter 18.
2. Investment is much more volatile than other components of GDP. We will explain why this occurs in Chapter 19 on investment. Because of its high volatility, even though the average size of investment relative to GDP is only a third that of consumption expenditure, investment plays a very large role in explaining fluctuations in economic activity.
3. Despite claims that the government has expanded in size, government purchases have actually remained quite stable at around 20% of GDP over the past sixty-year period. Transfer payments, which are not included in government purchases, have grown relative to government purchases, giving the impression that the government has expanded in size.
4. In most years, net exports have been negative and the United States has been running a trade deficit. Just a few years ago, the trade deficit climbed to over 5% of GDP.

Different countries have different sizes of expenditure components relative to GDP, as the box entitled “An International Comparison of Expenditure Components,” suggests.

Measuring GDP: The Income Approach

The third way of measuring GDP, the **income approach**, involves adding up all the incomes received by households and firms in the economy, including profits and tax revenue to the government.

Categories of Income

Table 2.2 shows the major categories of U.S. income in 2009 and how they have changed over time. We will discuss each major category in turn.

1. *Compensation of employees* includes both the wages and salaries of employees (excluding the self-employed), and employee benefits, which include payments for health insurance and retirement benefits. As Table 2.2 indicates, employee compensation is the largest category of income, 54.7% of GDP in 2009. Although wages and salaries have been declining relative to GDP, total compensation relative to GDP has stayed nearly constant over time because the declining share of wages and salaries has been offset by increasing employee benefits.
2. *Other income* includes income of the self-employed, income that individuals receive from renting their properties (which includes royalty income on books and music), and the net interest earned by individuals from businesses and foreign sources (interest income minus the interest that they pay). In addition, the other income category includes indirect business taxes like the sales tax because these taxes need to be added to net income of business to yield their total income. Other income was 22.4% of GDP in 2009.
3. *Corporate profits* is made up of the profits after (income) taxes of corporations. It was 9.2% of GDP in 2009.



An International Comparison of Expenditure Components

Other countries have very different shares of consumption, investment, government purchases, and net exports relative to GDP, as Figure 2.3 indicates. The United States differs from all the other countries in the table by having the highest share of GDP going to consumption, the lowest

share going to investment, and the most negative share of net exports. China stands out by having by far the lowest share of consumption and the highest share of investment. China also has the largest share of net exports.

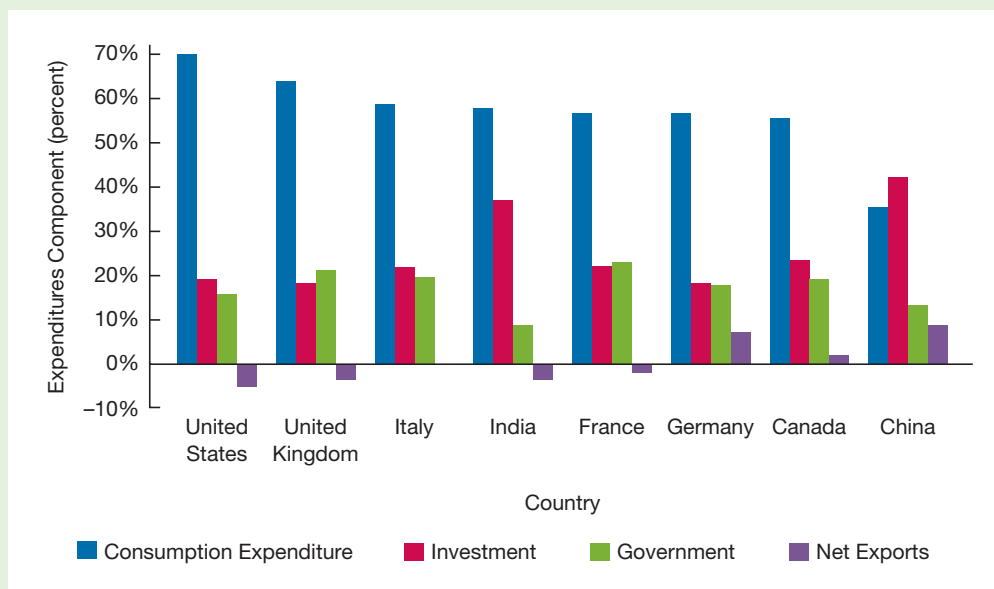


FIGURE 2.3

Shares of Expenditure Components for Different Countries

The United States differs from all the other countries by having the highest share of GDP going to consumption expenditure, the lowest share going to investment, and the most negative share going to net exports. China has the lowest share of consumption, the highest share of investment, and the largest share of net exports.

Source: OECD and for China estimates from *National Bureau of Statistics*. The data are for the year 2007.

TABLE 2.2

Income Approach to GDP, 2009

	Billions of Dollars	Percent of GDP
Compensation of employees	7,792	54.7
Other income	3,187	22.4
Corporate Profits	1,309	9.2
Total = National income	12,288	86.2
Depreciation	1,864	13.1
Total = Gross national product (GNP)	14,361	100.7
Net factor income	-104.9	-0.7
Total = Gross domestic product (GDP)	14,256	100.0

Source: Bureau of Economic Analysis. Tables 1.12 and 1.7.5. www.bea.gov/national/nipaweb/SelectTable.asp?Selected=Y

Note: Numbers do not add up to the totals because the statistical discrepancy is ignored.

4. *Net factor income* equals wages, profits, and rent (called *factor income*) paid to U.S. residents by foreigners minus factor income paid by U.S. residents to foreigners. When U.S. residents get more factor payments from abroad than they pay out, their overall income goes up. Net factor income is typically very small and was -0.7% of GDP in 2009.
5. *Depreciation* is the loss of value of capital from wear and tear or because capital has been scrapped because it is obsolete. To obtain the net income of businesses, depreciation was subtracted out, so in order to compute gross income, we have to add it back into GDP. If we do not add depreciation back into GDP, then we call the measure **net domestic product**. Depreciation was 13.1% of GDP in 2009.

Income Measures

By adding up the various items in Table 2.2, we get several measures of income reported in the national income accounts. We add up the first three items to obtain **national income**. We then add depreciation to obtain **gross national product (GNP)**, which measures the total income earned by U.S. residents.³ However, some of this income is not produced domestically, but rather is earned from wages, rents, and profits from production abroad. To get a domestically produced measure of gross product, gross *domestic* product (GDP), we have to add net factor income, which is negative, to gross *national* product (GNP), as Table 2.2 indicates. In 2009, U.S. GDP was \$14.3 trillion dollars.

Private disposable income, the amount of income the private sector has available to spend, is another important income measure that is a key determinant of the level of private sector spending. **Private disposable income** equals the income received by the private sector, plus payments made to the private sector by the government, minus taxes paid to the government. More precisely,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Private Disposable Income} = & \text{GDP} & (3) \\ & + \text{net factor income} \\ & + \text{transfer payments received from the government} \\ & + \text{interest payments on government debt} \\ & - \text{taxes} \end{aligned}$$

The government also has disposable income available to spend, **net government income**, which equals the following:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Net Government Income} = & \text{taxes} & (4) \\ & - \text{transfers} \\ & - \text{interest payments on government debt} \end{aligned}$$

Adding Equations 3 and 4 together, we see that private disposable income plus net government income equals GDP plus net factor payments from foreigners, which is gross national product, GNP.

³We have ignored *statistical discrepancy*, which is the difference between the production-based measure of GDP and the income-based measure of GDP because the statistical discrepancy item is usually small. In 2009, the statistical discrepancy was \$209.2 billion, 1.4% of GDP. Because we have left statistical discrepancy out of Table 2.2, the items in the table do not add up to 100% of GDP.

Real Versus Nominal GDP

Now that we have established how macroeconomists determine GDP, let's examine how to use this data for analysis. Refining the GDP data involves separating changes in economic activity from changes in prices.

Nominal Variables

So far, all of the income, expenditure, and production variables we have been discussing are measured at current market (*nominal*) prices and are referred to as **nominal variables**. Market prices allow us to sum up different goods and services to get a measure of GDP, which more accurately should be called **nominal GDP**. However, nominal variables, such as nominal GDP, have one huge disadvantage: they don't tell us what is happening to economic activity over time if prices are changing. If, for example, all prices of goods and services in the economy doubled, then nominal GDP would as well, but the actual quantity of goods produced, and hence economic activity, would be unchanged. When you see an increase in nominal GDP, it could be rising because the quantity of goods and services are rising, or alternatively because the prices of goods and services are rising, or both.

Real Variables

A measure of an economic variable in terms of quantities of actual goods and services is called a **real variable**. The measure of GDP that tells us how economic activity is changing over time is *real GDP* and it is the value of goods and services produced using constant prices rather than current prices, as is the case for nominal GDP. In other words, real GDP is the GDP measure that is adjusted for changes in the average level of prices in the economy, referred to as the **price level**. Real GDP tells us the total amount of output (actual goods and services) produced in an economy. We can write the relationship between real GDP and nominal GDP as follows:

$$\text{Real GDP} = \frac{\text{Nominal GDP}}{\text{Price Level}} \quad (5)$$

or

$$\text{Nominal GDP} = \text{Price Level} \times \text{Real GDP} \quad (6)$$

To calculate real GDP for the year 2012, let's return to the example of an economy that only produces apples and oranges. We can calculate GDP with all prices set at the values they had in a given year, called a *base year*, say, the year 2005:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Real GDP in 2012} = & (\text{price of apples in 2005} \times \text{quantity of apples in 2012}) \\ & + (\text{price of oranges in 2005} \times \text{quantity of oranges in 2012}) \end{aligned}$$

If apples sold for 50 cents and oranges for \$2 in 2005, with 1 billion of each produced in 2012, the calculation of real GDP would be as follows:

$$\text{Real GDP in 2012} = (\$0.50 \times 1 \text{ billion}) + (\$2 \times 1 \text{ billion}) = \$2.5 \text{ billion}$$

If the quantity of apples produced rose to 2 billion with the number of oranges produced rising to 1.5 billion, then Real GDP for 2013 would be as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Real GDP in 2013} &= (\text{price of apples in 2005} \times \text{quantity of apples in 2013}) \\ &\quad + (\text{price of oranges in 2005} \times \text{quantity of oranges in 2013}) \\ &= (\$0.50 \times 2 \text{ billion}) + (\$2 \times 1.5 \text{ billion}) = \$4.0 \text{ billion}\end{aligned}$$

Because we kept prices in these calculations at their base-year values, we see that changes in real GDP can only occur if quantities of goods and services produced change. This relationship is exactly what we would want if a measure of GDP is to be an accurate measure of economic activity: changes in *real* GDP provide information on whether economic well-being is improving, while *nominal* GDP frequently does not. Economists quote real GDP in terms of base-year prices. For example, we would say that real GDP in 2013 is \$4 billion in 2005 dollars.

If you just looked at the raw data on GDP, you might conclude that every winter the economy goes into recession, when in reality output tends to fall in cold and snowy months. To get a clearer assessment, economic statistics are **seasonally adjusted**, the process by which economists adjust the data to subtract out the usual seasonal fluctuations using advanced statistical techniques.

Chain-Weighted Measures of Real GDP

If prices of some important goods changed dramatically relative to other goods, using a fixed base-year for prices when calculating real GDP can produce misleading results. Between 2005 and 2011, for instance, computer prices fell far more rapidly than other goods. Using the prices for computers from a base year of 2005 would weigh computers too heavily in real GDP calculations relative to using a more recent year as a base year. In 1996, the Bureau of Economic Analysis decided to fix this problem by switching to **chain-weighted measures** of GDP in which it allows the base year to change continuously. This means that percentage change in real GDP over a year, say, from 2012 to 2013, is calculated with average prices for goods and services for the 2012–2013 period, that is, the base year is the average of 2012–2013. Then for 2013–2014, the change in real GDP is calculated using a base year that is the average of 2013–2014. Thus every year, the base year is advanced by one year. After calculating these growth rates, we “chain” them together—that is, the level of real GDP is increased each year by the growth rate calculated in this way, so that the level of real GDP can be compared for any two dates. This process in effect updates the relative prices of goods and services every year so that their prices don’t get too far out of date.⁴

Measuring Inflation

Inflation, a topic we introduced in Chapter 1, is one of the most important variables that macroeconomists study. Measuring inflation involves different measures of the price level that we refer to as **price indexes**. We first look at the GDP deflator

⁴For nominal GDP and the pre-1996 procedure for calculating real GDP, the national income identity, $Y = C + I + G + NX$, holds exactly. The real components of chain-weighted real GDP, however, don’t add up exactly to real GDP. If you are interested in looking at the share of these GDP components, you should do the calculation with nominal measures. If you are interested in how economic activity in each category of spending is increasing, then you should look at the real, chain-weighted measures.

because it comes directly out of our calculation of real GDP. We then discuss the PCE deflator and the *consumer price index*, which is the most widely reported price index in the media.

GDP Deflator

From either Equation 5 or Equation 6, notice that we can write the price level as the ratio of nominal GDP to real GDP:

$$\text{Price Level} = \frac{\text{Nominal GDP}}{\text{Real GDP}} \quad (7)$$

Nominal GDP divided by real GDP is known as the **GDP deflator** or the **implicit price deflator for GDP**. The name *deflator* comes from the fact that, as we see in Equation 7, this measure *deflates* nominal GDP to obtain real GDP.

The GDP deflator is always calculated so that it equals 100 in the base year. We thus calculate the GDP deflator for a given year as follows:

$$\text{GDP deflator for year } y = 100 \times \frac{\text{Nominal GDP in Year } y}{\text{Real GDP in year } y} \quad (8)$$

For example, if nominal GDP in 2013 is \$15 trillion and real GDP in 2005 dollars is \$12 trillion, then the GDP deflator for 2013 is $100 \times (\$15 \text{ trillion}/\$12 \text{ trillion}) = 125$, which means that the price level as measured by the GDP deflator has risen 25% from 2005 to 2013.

PCE Deflator

Another widely used measure of the price level, particularly by the Federal Reserve, is the **personal consumption expenditure (PCE) deflator**, which we calculate in the same way as the GDP deflator, but only for the personal consumption expenditure component of GDP.

$$\text{PCE deflator for year } y = 100 \times \frac{\text{Nominal PCE in year } y}{\text{Real PCE in year } y} \quad (9)$$

Because the PCE is based on the prices of consumer goods, it is closer to measuring what the consumer price index measures, which we will discuss next.

Consumer Price Index

The **consumer price index (CPI)** is a measure of the average prices of consumer goods and services. Think of it as a cost of living index. The Bureau of Labor Statistics (part of the U.S. Department of Labor) calculates the CPI monthly. In contrast, the GDP deflator is calculated quarterly by the Bureau of Economic Analysis, while the PCE deflator is calculated monthly by the same organization.

DETERMINING THE BASKET OF GOODS. The Bureau of Labor Statistics collects prices on thousands of consumer goods and services. How does it average all these prices to get a price index? A simple average would be inaccurate because the prices of some goods and services are far more important to a consumer's budget than others. For

example, the average consumer spends a lot more on gas than he or she does on other items such as apples. The solution is that the Bureau of Labor Statistics determines what people actually buy with an expenditure survey and then compiles a “basket of goods” that the average urban consumer buys. For example, they might determine that the average urban consumer buys ten gallons of gas per week and two apples. They multiply each quantity by each current price and then compare this calculation to one done with prices from a base year, which, by definition, has an index of 100.

CALCULATING CPI. To illustrate, let’s assume that the basket of goods for the average consumer consists of ten gallons of gas and two apples. The calculation of the CPI for 2012 with a base year of 2005 would then be as follows:

$$\text{CPI for 2012} = 100 \times \frac{(10 \times \text{price of gas per gallon in 2012}) + (2 \times \text{price of apples in 2012})}{(10 \times \text{price of gas per gallon in 2005}) + (2 \times \text{price of apples in 2005})}$$

Although the consumer price index attracts much attention in the media, it can seriously overstate the cost of living, causing important policy implications.

Policy and Practice



Policy and Overstatements of the Cost of Living

The CPI is used in most labor contracts and in determining some government payments, such as Social Security benefits. Substantial measurement errors in the CPI could have important policy implications, particularly if increases in the CPI overstate increases in the cost of living. Consider three scenarios.

1. Suppose the government indexes payments to the CPI, so that payments automatically rise by the same percentage as the CPI. If increases in the CPI overstate increases in the cost of living, there could be substantial overpayments.
2. If the CPI inflation rate overstates the true inflation rate, policymakers may take steps to reduce CPI inflation more than is necessary, say, by overly tightening monetary policy by raising interest rates.
3. If the CPI overstates the increase in the cost of living, households’ real income will be understated. The CPI may indicate that families are doing worse than is really the case, which could lead to policy actions such as redistributing income through the tax system.

A 1995 government commission headed by Michael Boskin of Stanford University investigated the accuracy of CPI inflation measures. The commission’s 1996 report concluded that increases in the CPI might overstate increases in the cost of living on the order of one percentage point, and maybe a little higher. How could this be? For one, consumers can find substitutes for goods that become suddenly expensive. Second, price increases often reflect quality improvements in goods, a fact the CPI often ignores. And third, the introduction of new goods can improve consumer choice and reduce the cost of living without showing up in CPI. For example, in the 1980s, a family of six might have needed to buy two cars. With the introduction of the minivan, it could spend less on one car.

In response to the Boskin commission's findings, the Bureau of Labor Statistics changed the way it constructs the CPI to reduce both substitution and quality adjustment bias. Nonetheless, researchers still estimate that the bias in the CPI inflation rate is still on the order of $\frac{1}{2}$ –1% per year.⁵

Inflation Rate

We define the *inflation rate* precisely as the percentage rate of change of the price level over a particular period. We can write it as follows:

$$\pi_t = \frac{P_t - P_{t-1}}{P_{t-1}} = \frac{\Delta P_t}{P_{t-1}} \quad (10)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \pi_t &= \text{inflation rate in period } t \\ P_t &= \text{price level at time } t \\ P_{t-1} &= \text{price level at time } t-1 \end{aligned}$$

If the price level—whether we measure it with a price index like the GDP deflator, the PCE deflator, or the CPI—rises from 100 to 102 over a year, then the inflation rate is $2\% = (102 - 100)/100 = 0.02$. If it rises to 103 the next year, then the inflation rate for that year is $1\% = (103 - 102)/102 = 0.01$.

Different price indices do sometimes lead to different inflation rates, as Figure 2.4 shows over the 1950–2010 time period in the United States. However, inflation rates using these different measures do move pretty closely together and tell similar stories, showing a sharp rise in inflation in the 1970s and early 1980s, which was subsequently reversed thereafter.

Percentage Change Method and the Inflation Rate

Alternatively, we can obtain the inflation rate using the fact that ***the percentage change of a product of a number of variables is approximately equal to the sum of the percentage changes of each of these variables***. In the case of the product of two variables, we write this fact as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Percentage Change in } (x \times y) &= (\text{Percentage Change in } x) \\ &+ (\text{Percentage Change in } y) \end{aligned} \quad (11)$$

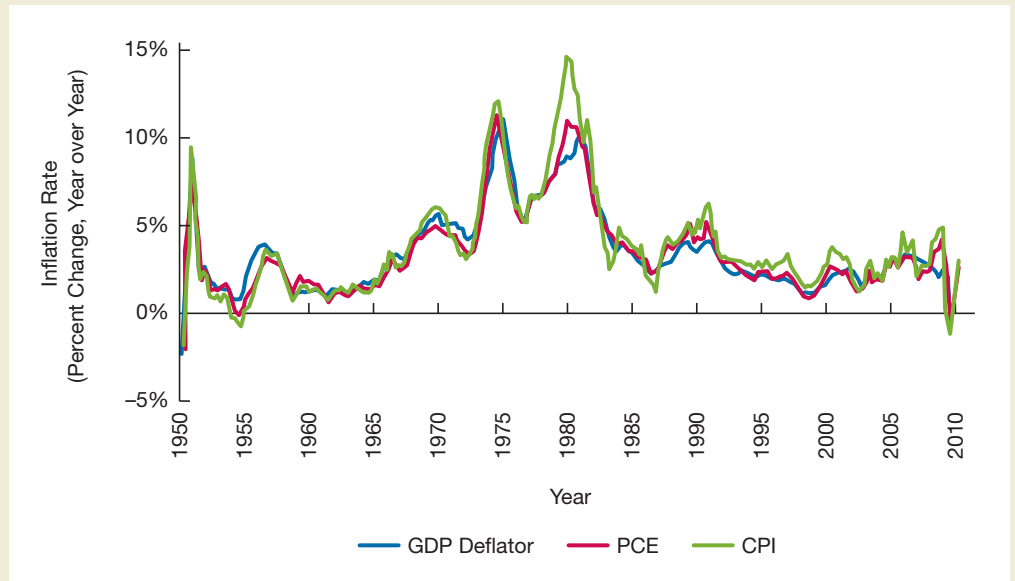
Applying this fact to Equation 6, which stated that nominal GDP equals the price level times real GDP, leads to the following:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Percentage Change in Nominal GDP} &= (\text{Percentage Change in the Price Level}) \\ &+ (\text{Percentage Change in Real GDP}) \end{aligned}$$

⁵See David Lebow and Jeremy Rudd, "Measurement Error in the Consumer Price Index: Where Do We Stand?" *Journal of Economic Literature* (March 2003): 159–201; and Robert J. Gordon, "The Boskin Commission Report: A Retrospective One Decade Later," NBER Working Paper No. 12311, June 2006.

FIGURE 2.4**U.S. Inflation Rates with Different Price Indexes, 1950–2010**

The GDP deflator, the PCE deflator, and CPI sometimes lead to different inflation rates. However, inflation rates using these different measures do move pretty closely together and tell similar stories, showing a sharp rise in inflation in the 1970s and early 1980s and a downward trend from the late 1980s onward.



Source: Bureau of Economic Analysis. www.bea.gov/national/nipaweb/SelectTable.asp?Selected=Y

The percentage change in the price level is the inflation rate, while the percentage changes in nominal and real GDP are the growth rate of these variables. As a result, we can rewrite the preceding equation as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Growth Rate of Nominal GDP} &= (\text{Inflation Rate}) \\ &+ (\text{Growth Rate of Real GDP}) \end{aligned} \quad (12)$$

If the growth rate of real GDP is 3% and the inflation rate is 2%, then the growth rate of nominal GDP is approximately 5%. Alternatively, by rearranging and subtracting the growth rate of real GDP from both sides of Equation 12, we obtain the following:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Inflation Rate} &= (\text{Growth Rate of Nominal GDP}) \\ &- (\text{Growth Rate of Real GDP}) \end{aligned} \quad (13)$$

By calculating growth rates of both nominal and real GDP, we can determine the inflation rate in terms of the GDP deflator. In the example, we can calculate the inflation rate of 2% as the 5% growth rate of nominal GDP minus the 3% growth rate of real GDP.

Measuring Unemployment

The *unemployment rate* is one of the most closely followed economic statistics because it provides an indication of what is happening in the labor market and how well the economy is utilizing its resources—in this case labor.

The unemployment rate (or civilian unemployment rate) is the percentage of people in the civilian population (which excludes those in the military or in prison) who want to work but who do not have jobs and are thus unemployed. The Bureau of Labor Statistics

computes the unemployment rate every month from a survey of about 60,000 households (see the Macroeconomics in the News box, “Unemployment and Employment”). The survey classifies each adult (over age 16) in one of three categories.

1. *Employed*, if the person is working, either full time or part time, during the past week, or was temporarily away from his or her job because of illness, vacation, or the inability to get to work because of bad weather.
2. *Unemployed*, if the person did not work during the past week, but had looked for a job over the previous four weeks, or was waiting to return to a job from which he or she had been laid off.
3. *Not in the labor force*, if the person did not work during the past week and had not looked for a job over the previous four weeks.

Those not in the labor force are of two types. Those who would like to work but have given up looking are **discouraged workers**. The other type is those who voluntarily have left the labor force—such as full-time students, retirees, or people who have chosen to stay at home, either raising children or taking care of the house.

The **labor force** (civilian) is as follows:

$$\text{Labor Force} = \text{Number of Employed} + \text{Number of Unemployed} \quad (14)$$

The unemployment rate is then calculated as follows:

$$\text{Unemployment Rate} = \frac{\text{Number of Unemployed}}{\text{Labor Force}} \quad (15)$$

Although this measure of the unemployment is the standard one reported in the media, measuring the unemployment rate is far from straightforward. The standard way of reporting the unemployment rate described previously does not give a full picture of what is happening in labor markets. Workers who have dropped out of the labor force because they have been unable to get a job are not counted as being unemployed, even though they want to work and are clearly suffering. Similarly, other workers are counted as employed even if they have only been able to get a part-time (less than forty hours a week) job when they would have preferred to work full time. A case can be made to view these types of workers as unemployed. As a result, the Bureau of Labor Statistics has calculated additional measures of unemployment that count as unemployed discouraged workers, marginally attached workers, and part-time workers, and finds that this measure of the unemployment rate (denoted by U-6) is often much higher than the most commonly reported unemployment rate. For example, in April 2010 the conventionally measured unemployment rate averaged 9.9%, but the broader U-6 measure averaged 17.1%, painting a far direr picture of the situation in labor markets.

Two other important statistics are the **labor-force participation rate**, the percentage of the adult civilian population in the labor force,

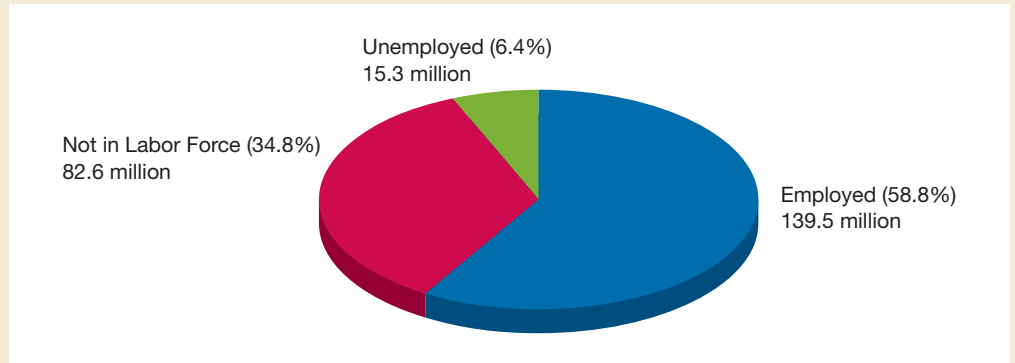
$$\text{Labor-Force Participation Rate} = \frac{\text{Labor Force}}{\text{Adult Population}} \quad (16)$$

and the **employment ratio**, the percentage of the adult civilian population employed,

$$\text{Employment Ratio} = \frac{\text{Employed}}{\text{Adult Population}} \quad (17)$$

FIGURE 2.5**Unemployment in the Adult Civilian Population, 2010**

The pie chart divides U.S. adult civilian population into the three categories in April 2010 based on employment status.



Source: Bureau of Labor Statistics. www.bls.gov/cps

The pie chart in Figure 2.5 breaks the April 2010 adult civilian population into the three categories. From this data, we can calculate the labor force, the unemployment rate, the labor-force participation rate, and the employment ratio in April 2010.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Labor Force} &= 139.5 + 15.3 = 154.8 \text{ million} \\
 \text{Unemployment Rate} &= 15.3 / 154.8 = 9.9\% \\
 \text{Labor-Force Participation Rate} &= 154.8 / 237.4 = 65.2\% \\
 \text{Employment Ratio} &= 139.5 / 237.4 = 58.8\%
 \end{aligned}$$

MACROECONOMICS IN THE NEWS

Unemployment and Employment

The Bureau of Labor Statistics releases a report called *The Employment Situation* (found at www.bls.gov/news.release/empsit.nr0.htm) with the data on the labor force, employment, and unemployment rate every month. This report presents statistics by age and race, so that we can calculate unemployment rates for different segments of the population, using two different surveys.

The unemployment rate that is reported in the media and is described in the text is based on the *household survey* of 60,000 households. An alternative survey, the *establishment survey*, collects responses from around 150,000 business *establishments* on employment, average hourly and weekly earnings, and hours worked. Sometimes these two surveys give a very different picture of what is happening in the labor market. For example, according to the establishment survey, the first year and a half after the 2001 recession ended was a “jobless recovery,”

with employment declining by one million jobs. In contrast, the household survey indicated that employment rose by over one million jobs during the same period.

Why do the two surveys sometimes give a different picture of conditions in the labor market? One reason is that the household survey counts *workers*, not jobs, while the establishment survey does the opposite. If a worker holds two jobs, he or she is counted twice in the establishment survey, but not in the household survey. Another reason is that the household survey counts the self-employed as working, while the establishment survey does not. A third reason is that the establishment survey is more extensive than the household survey: it covers more workers. The difference in the results from the two surveys illustrates that economic statistics can never be completely accurate and that we must always interpret them carefully.

The data thus tell us that 65.2% of the population were in the labor force, 58.8% were employed, and 9.9% were unemployed. As we will see in Chapter 20, there have been dramatic changes in the labor markets over the past fifty years, with the labor-force participation rates falling over time for men but increasing for women.

Measuring Interest Rates

Interest rates are another prominent variable that macroeconomists study, so understanding how they are measured is important. An **interest rate** is the cost of borrowing, or the price paid for the rental of funds (usually expressed as a percentage of the rental of \$100 per year). If, for example, you lend \$100 to a friend and he or she agrees in one year's time to pay you \$105—\$5 for the rental of the funds and \$100 for repayment of the loan—then the interest rate is 5%.

Types of Interest Rates

There are many different types of debt securities with **bonds**, which make payments on a regular basis for a specified period of time, being the most prominent. Interest rates vary in the economy depending on the liquidity of the security (how easy and quick it is to sell) and its credit risk (the uncertainty about whether you will get paid back). We describe some of the most important interest rates that you read about in the newspaper in the Macroeconomics in the News box, “Interest Rates.” Luckily, except in very

MACROECONOMICS IN THE NEWS

Interest Rates

There are a number of interest rates that receive a lot of media attention. The most important ones are:

Prime rate: The base rate on corporate bank loans to “prime” (credit-worthy) borrowers. It is a good indicator of the cost of business borrowing from banks.

Federal funds rate: The interest rate charged on overnight loans between banks (referred to as federal funds because the loans are of deposits that are held at the Federal Reserve). The Federal Reserve targets this rate to conduct monetary policy.

London Inter-Bank Offered Rate (LIBOR): The interest rate that banks in London offer each other for inter-bank loans. It is a good indicator of short-term interest rate developments in international markets.

Treasury bill rate: The interest rate on U.S. Treasury bills (government bonds with

maturities of less than one year). Interest rates on Treasury bills are a general indicator of short-term interest-rate movements.

Ten-year Treasury bond rate: The interest rate on U.S. Treasury bonds with ten years to maturity. It is a general indicator of long-term interest rate movements.

Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation rate: The interest rate on Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation guaranteed mortgages, often called conforming mortgages. It is an indicator of the cost of financing residential mortgages.

These interest rates are reported daily in newspapers such as the *Wall Street Journal*. For historical data on these series, see the Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis's FRED database (<http://research.stlouisfed.org/fred2/>).

unusual times, most interest rates move together, so throughout this book we usually treat all interest rates as being identical. We therefore talk about only one interest rate, *the* interest rate.

Real Versus Nominal Interest Rates

An interest rate you read about in the newspaper is a **nominal interest rate** because it makes no allowance for inflation. The **real interest rate** is the amount of extra purchasing power a lender must be paid for the rental of his or her money. Hence, the real interest rate is the interest rate that is adjusted by subtracting expected changes in the price level (inflation) to accurately reflect the real cost of borrowing. This definition of the real interest rate is more precisely referred to as the *ex ante real interest rate* because it is adjusted for *expected* changes in the price level. The *ex ante* real interest rate is the interest rate that is most relevant to economic decisions, and typically is what economists mean when they make reference to the “real” interest rate. The interest rate that is adjusted for *actual* changes in the price level is called the *ex post real interest rate*. It describes how well a lender has done in real terms *after the fact*.

FISHER EQUATION. The **Fisher equation**, named for Irving Fisher, one of the great monetary economists of the twentieth century, defines the real interest rate in precise terms by stating that the nominal interest rate i equals the real interest rate plus the expected rate of inflation π^e :⁶

$$i = r + \pi^e \quad (18)$$

Rearranging terms, we find that the real interest rate equals the nominal interest rate minus the expected inflation rate:

$$r = i - \pi^e \quad (19)$$

To see why this definition makes sense, let us first consider a situation in which you have made a one-year loan with a 4% interest rate ($i = 4\%$) and you expect the price level to rise by 6% over the course of the year ($\pi^e = 6\%$). As a result of making the loan, at the end of the year you will have 2% less in real terms—that is, in terms of real goods and services you can buy. In this case, the Fisher definition indicates that the interest rate you have earned in terms of real goods and services is as follows:

$$r = 4\% - 6\% = -2\%$$

As a lender, you are clearly less eager to make a loan in this case, because in terms of real goods and services you have actually earned a negative interest rate of 2%. By contrast,

⁶The Fisher equation in Equation 18 is actually an approximation. A more precise formulation of the Fisher equation is as follows:

$$i = r + \pi^e + (i \times \pi^e)$$

because

$$1 + i = (1 + r)(1 + \pi^e) = 1 + r + \pi^e + (r \times \pi^e)$$

And subtracting 1 from both sides gives us the first equation in the footnote. For small values of r and π^e , the term $(r \times \pi^e)$ is so small that we can ignore it in Equation 18 in the text.

as the borrower, you fare quite well because at the end of the year, the amounts you will have to pay back will be worth 2% less in terms of goods and services—you as the borrower will be ahead by 2% in real terms. **When the real interest rate is low, there are greater incentives to borrow and invest, but fewer incentives to lend.**

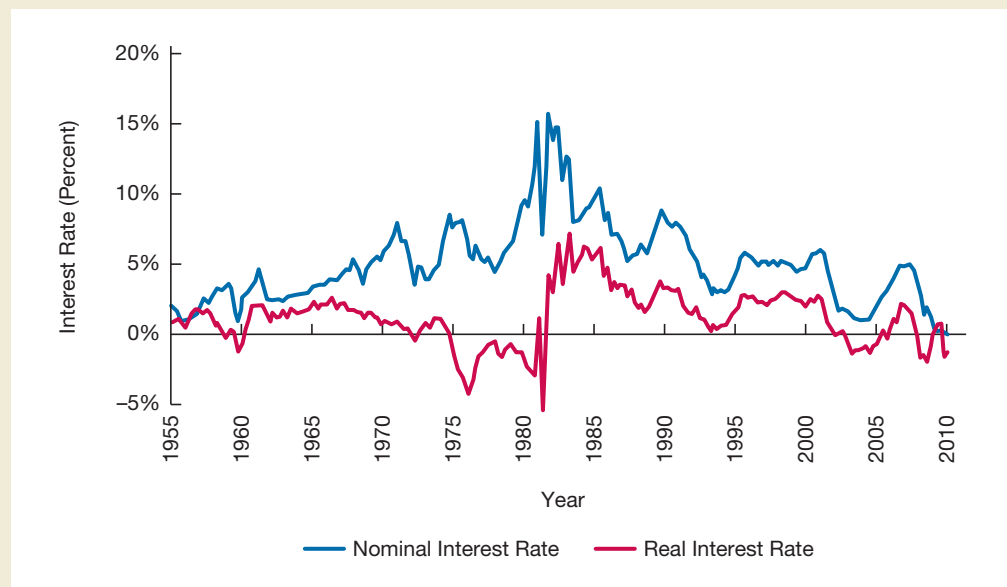
The Important Distinction Between Real and Nominal Interest Rates

The real interest rate, which reflects the real cost of borrowing, is likely to be a better indicator of the incentives to borrow, invest, and lend than nominal interest rates. That is, real interest rates appear to be the best guide to how people will be affected by what is happening in **credit markets**, the markets where households and businesses get funds (credit) from each other. Figure 2.6, which presents estimates from 1955 to 2010 of the real (*ex ante*) and nominal interest rates on three-month U.S. Treasury bills (a short-term Treasury security with three months till maturity), shows that nominal and real rates often do not move together. (This is also true for nominal and real interest rates in the rest of the world.) In particular, when U.S. nominal rates were high in the 1970s, real rates were actually extremely low—often negative. By the standard of nominal interest rates, you would have thought that credit market conditions were tight in this period, because it was expensive to borrow. However, the estimates of the real rates indicate that you would have been mistaken. In real terms, the cost of borrowing was actually quite low.

The learning of definitions and how data is measured is not always the most exciting of pursuits. Nonetheless, the work we have done in this chapter is crucial to understanding the macroeconomic phenomenon that we examine in the rest of the book.

FIGURE 2.6
Real and Nominal Interest Rates (Three-Month Treasury Bill), 1955–2010

Nominal and real interest rates often do not move together. When U.S. nominal rates were high in the 1970s, real (*ex ante*) rates were actually extremely low—often negative.



Source: FRED, Federal Reserve Economic Data, Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis; Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System; <http://research.stlouisfed.org/fred2/series/TB3MS?cid=116Data>; accessed September 30, 2010; with the real interest rate calculated using the procedure outlined in Mishkin, Frederic S. 1981. The real interest rate: An empirical investigation. *Carnegie-Rochester Conference Series on Public Policy* 15: 151–200.

SUMMARY

1. Gross domestic product (GDP) is the total market value of all final goods and services newly produced in the economy. We measure GDP in three ways: the production approach, the expenditure approach, and the income approach.
2. The production approach measures GDP by adding up the market value of all goods and all *final* goods and services that are *newly produced* in the economy over a *fixed period* of time.
3. The expenditure approach measures GDP by adding up the total spending on currently produced final goods and services in the economy. With this approach there are four basic categories of expenditure: consumption expenditure, investment, government purchases, and net exports. The fundamental identity of national income accounting says that GDP equals the sum of consumption expenditure, investment, government purchases and net exports, that is, $Y = C + I + G + NX$.
4. The income approach measures GDP by adding up all the incomes received by households and firms in the economy, including profits and tax revenue to the government. In this approach, there are eight categories of income: compensation of employees, net operating surplus of businesses, rental income, indirect taxes, net interest, statistical discrepancy, depreciation, and net factor income.
5. Interpreting GDP requires distinguishing between real and nominal GDP. Real GDP provides the most information about the level of economic activity and equals nominal GDP adjusted for changes in the price level.
6. The inflation rate is the percentage rate of change of the price level, measured by a price index, over a particular period of time. The most popular price indexes are the consumer price index (CPI), the GDP deflator, and the personal consumption expenditure (PCE) deflator. There is a link between inflation, nominal GDP, and real GDP: the growth rate of nominal GDP equals the sum of the inflation rate and the growth rate of real GDP.
7. The unemployment rate is the percentage of people in the civilian population who want to work but are unemployed. The labor-force participation rate is the percentage of the adult civilian population in the labor force, and the employment ratio is percentage of the adult civilian population that are employed.
8. The real interest rate is the nominal interest rate minus the expected rate of inflation, that is, $r = i - \pi^e$. It is a better measure of the incentives to borrow, invest, and lend than the nominal interest rate, and it is a more accurate indicator of the tightness of credit market conditions than the nominal interest rate.

KEY TERMS

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| bond, p. 38 | government purchases, p. 25 | national income accounting, p. 19 |
| capital good, p. 21 | gross domestic product (GDP), p. 19 | national income identity, p. 23 |
| chain-weighted measures, p. 31 | gross national product (GNP), p. 29 | net domestic product, p. 29 |
| credit markets, p. 40 | implicit price deflator for GDP, p. 32 | net exports, p. 25 |
| consumer price index (CPI), p. 32 | imputed value, p. 20 | net government income, p. 29 |
| consumption, p. 24 | income approach, p. 27 | nominal GDP, p. 30 |
| consumption expenditure, p. 24 | interest rate, p. 38 | nominal interest rate, p. 39 |
| discouraged workers, p. 36 | intermediate goods and services, p. 21 | nominal variables, p. 30 |
| employment ratio, p. 36 | inventories, p. 21 | personal consumption expenditure, p. 24 |
| expenditure approach, p. 23 | inventory investment, p. 21 | personal consumption expenditure (PCE) deflator, p. 32 |
| final goods and services, p. 21 | investment, p. 24 | price indexes, p. 31 |
| Fisher equation, p. 39 | labor force, p. 36 | price level, p. 30 |
| flow, p. 22 | labor-force participation rate, p. 36 | private disposable income, p. 29 |
| fundamental identity of national income accounting, p. 19 | national income, p. 29 | production approach, p. 19 |
| GDP deflator, p. 32 | | real interest rate, p. 39 |
| government consumption, p. 25 | | |
| government investment, p. 25 | | |

real variable, p. 30
 seasonally adjusted, p. 31
 stock, p. 22

trade balance, p. 26
 transfers, p. 25

underground economy, p. 20
 value added, p. 21

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Measuring Economic Activity: National Income Accounting

1. What is the fundamental identity of national income accounting? What is its significance?

Measuring GDP: The Production Approach

2. How is GDP defined in the production approach to measuring economic activity? Explain how economists at the U.S. Department of Commerce's Bureau of Economic Analysis account for the production of goods and services that are not sold in markets, the production of intermediate goods and services, and the purchase of used goods and imported goods and services.
3. Distinguish between a flow measure and a stock measure. Which type of measure is GDP?
4. Why are capital goods and inventories treated differently from intermediate goods in the production approach to measuring GDP?

Measuring GDP: The Expenditure Approach

5. Identify the four major expenditure components in the national income identity and discuss the major subcategories of each component.

Measuring GDP: The Income Approach

6. What are the main types of income included in national income? Why doesn't national income equal GDP?

Real Versus Nominal GDP

7. How do macroeconomists distinguish between nominal and real values of variables? Does nominal GDP or real GDP provide a better picture of changes in economic activity and economic well-being? Why?
8. Describe the GDP deflator and the personal consumption expenditure deflator.

Measuring Inflation

9. What is the consumer price index, who calculates it, and how is it calculated and used to measure the inflation rate?

Measuring Unemployment

10. What does the unemployment rate measure, who calculates it, and how is it calculated?

Measuring Interest Rates

11. Explain the differences between nominal and real interest rates and between ex ante and ex post real interest rates.

PROBLEMS

All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Measuring Economic Activity: National Income Accounting

1. Is it correct to assume that total income equals total expenditure for a household? What about for the whole economy?

Measuring GDP: The Production Approach

2. The inhabitants of Pandora value their environment (e.g., forests, springs, breathable air, etc.) twice as much as the inhabitants of Utopia. Suppose that the value added for all goods and services increases by the same amount in both countries, but has a negative effect on the environment (e.g., pollution).
 - a) According to the production approach to the measurement of GDP, is this good or bad?
 - b) Are both countries necessarily better off? Which country benefits more for sure?
 - c) The inhabitants of Utopia are very concerned about income distribution, which is not that important for the inhabitants of Pandora. If the increase in value added resulted in further wealth concentration, how will this affect your answers to b)?

Measuring GDP: The Expenditure Approach

3. Consider the expenditure approach to the measurement of GDP. For each of the following situations, decide if that transaction will affect GDP and if so, in which expenditure category will it be included.
 - a) A household purchase of a home built in 1985.
 - b) A household purchase of a newly built dishwasher.
 - c) A farmer purchases a new tractor to work his or her field.
 - d) A disabled individual receives a transfer from the U.S. government.
 - e) The U.S. Department of Defense buys ten helicopters just built in Brazil.

Measuring GDP: The Income Approach

4. Use the following table based on BEA data from the fourth quarter of 2009 (billions of dollars) to calculate items a) and b):
 - a) Other income
 - b) Net factor income

Compensation of employees	7,773
Corporate profits	1,468
National income	12,466
Gross domestic product	14,453
Gross national product	14,560
Factor income to the rest of the world	511

Real Versus Nominal GDP

5. Mario and Lucia are discussing current economic data printed in the morning newspaper. Mario is quite happy about the fact that nominal GDP has increased at a steady rate for the last two years and asserts that this is very good news, since it means that they are better off than a few years ago. Lucia warns Mario about his conclusions and suggests that she

has observed a steady increase in many prices during the same period, which might undermine Mario's conclusion. Based on this information:

- a) Who do you think is right? Explain why.
- b) Is it possible that Mario and Lucia could be worse off than two years ago?

Measuring Inflation

6. Based on surveys conducted by the BLS, the CPI basket assigns a weight of approximately 15% to transportation spending. Suppose you walk to your workplace every day and you do not use any other means of transportation.
 - a) With everything else the same, if the price of transportation services increases by 10%, by how much would the CPI increase?
 - b) Is the CPI measuring the true change in your cost of living?
7. Suppose that Apple Inc. manufactures a new generation of iPhones that include the ability to know if your interlocutor is lying. Assuming that the price of this good will be higher than the currently marketed iPhone, comment on the CPI's capability to correctly measure the corresponding change in the cost of living.

Measuring Unemployment

8. Use the accompanying table to calculate the following statistics for Brazil:
 - a) Labor force
 - b) Labor-force participation rate
 - c) Unemployment rate
9. Refer to the previous exercise for data and assume that three million unemployed individuals become "discouraged" and decide not to look for a job anymore. Calculate the new unemployment rate for Brazil.

Adult Population (millions)	140
Unemployed (millions)	7
Employed (millions)	88

Measuring Interest Rates

10. Suppose you take out a loan at your local bank and the nominal interest rate is 12%. The bank expects the inflation rate to be 4% during the life of your loan.
 - a) What is the bank's ex ante real interest rate?
 - b) What is the bank's ex post real interest rate if the inflation rate happens to be larger than 4% during the life of this loan?
 - c) As a borrower, would you benefit from a higher or lower actual inflation rate?



myeconlab

MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.

Part Two

Macroeconomic Basics

Chapter 3

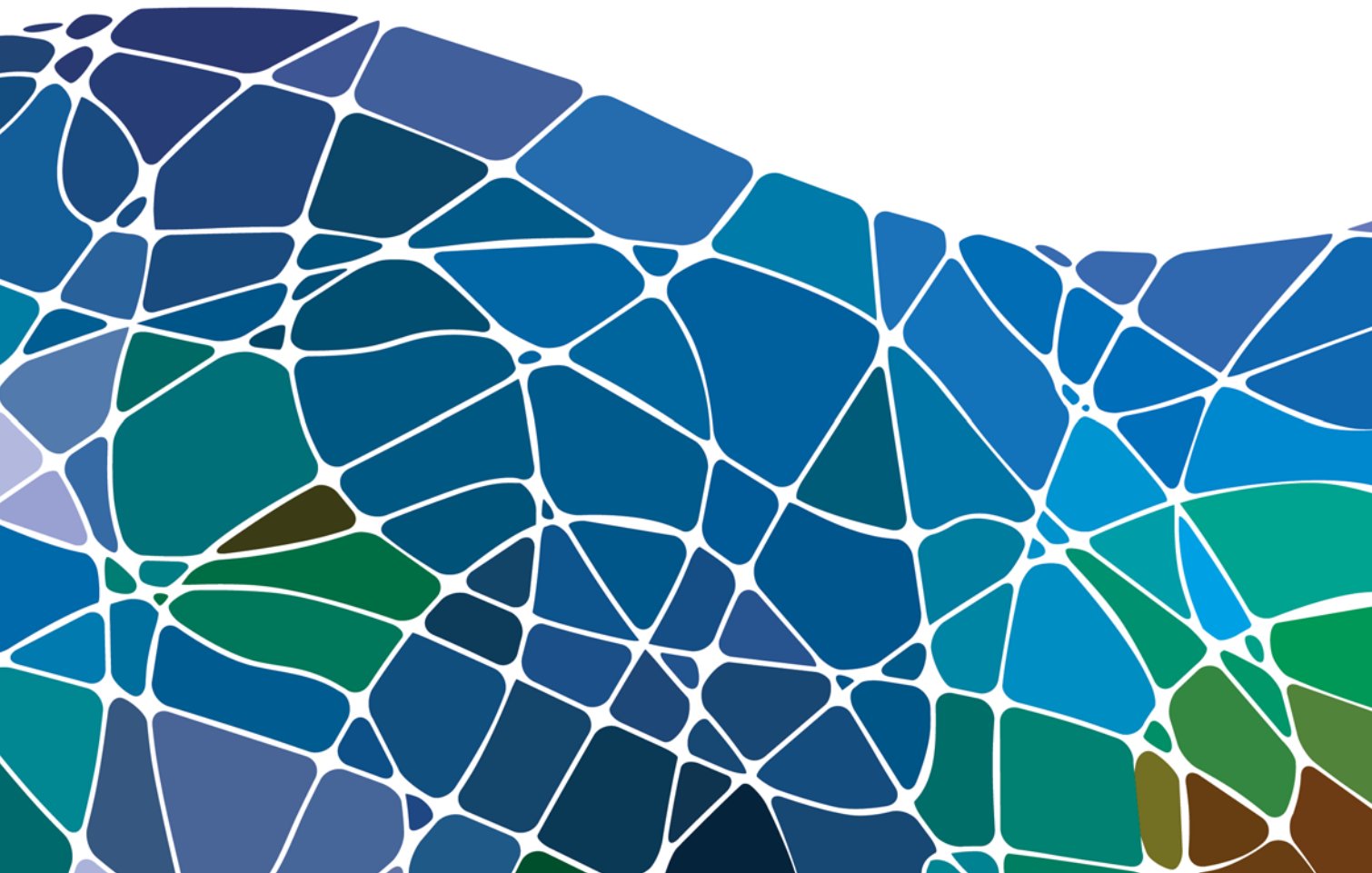
Aggregate Production and Productivity

Chapter 4

Saving and Investment in Closed and Open Economies

Chapter 5

Money and Inflation



Part Two Macroeconomic Basics

We will now turn to constructing some basic frameworks that will serve as building blocks for our analysis in the rest of the book. Chapter 3 provides a framework for understanding production and thus the productive capacity of an economy. Chapter 4 and its appendix describe the relationship between saving and investment and how it affects the amount of wealth in the economy and real interest rates. Chapter 5 examines the link between money, inflation, and nominal interest rates, and discusses why inflation is costly. Its appendix outlines how the money supply is determined.

We will examine applications in each chapter to make the critical connection between theory and real-world practice:

- “Why Are Some Countries Rich and Others Poor?”
- “Explaining Real Wage Growth”
- “Oil Shocks, Real Wages, and the Stock Market”
- “How the United States Became the Largest Net Debtor in the World”
- “The Twin Deficits”
- “The Global Saving Glut”
- “Testing the Quantity Theory of Money”
- “Testing the Fisher Effect”
- “The Great Depression Bank Panics and the Money Supply, 1930–1933”

In keeping with our focus on key policy issues and the techniques policymakers use in practice, we will also analyze the following specific examples in Policy and Practice cases:

- “Government Policies to Stimulate Saving”
- “Crowding Out and the Debate over the 2009 Fiscal Stimulus Package”



3

Aggregate Production and Productivity

Preview

Traveling abroad, you will find stark differences in standards of living. Europeans and Americans live similarly well—yet if you travel to sub-Saharan Africa, you will see abject poverty and people living without the necessities of shelter, healthcare, and nutritious food. The average American produces over fifteen times that of a Nigerian, despite Nigeria's oil wealth. Why are Americans wealthy while Nigerians are poor? To answer questions like this, we first need to understand why some nations produce more than others. An economy's productive capacity—its ability to create goods and services—is central to the well-being of its citizens.

This chapter provides a framework for understanding production in the overall (aggregate) economy. After examining the fundamental *factors* of production, we will look at what determines their prices and the income they generate, as well as their share of national income.

Determinants of Aggregate Production

As you learned in Chapter 2, real gross domestic product (GDP) measures the amount of goods and services produced in an economy. Real GDP is determined by 1) the amount of inputs, or **factors of production**, that go into the production process, and 2) the *production function*, which tells us how much is produced from given quantities of the factors of production.

Factors of Production

In modern economies, the two most important factors of production are *labor* and *capital*. Economists measure **labor** by summing the number of hours people work, or person-hours, which we will denote by L . However, to simplify our discussion throughout the chapter, we will assume that the hours each person works are constant, so that we can use the number of workers as the unit for the labor input. **Capital** is the quantity

of structures and equipment—such as factories, trucks, and computers—that workers use to produce goods and services, which we will denote by K . It is measured by the value of the capital stock in real terms, that is, in constant dollars. For now, we will overlook other factors of production—raw materials, energy, and land—so we can first establish a basic framework.

Economists often put bars over letters in models to signify that the quantity is exogenous, that is, it is taken as given, a convention that we will use throughout this book. In this chapter we will assume that the quantity of capital and labor available in the economy is fixed, so

$$\begin{aligned}K &= \bar{K} \\L &= \bar{L}\end{aligned}$$

In later chapters, we will relax this assumption and let these quantities vary over time. For simplicity, we will also assume for now that all of the capital and labor in the economy is fully utilized. We will see later on that factors of production are not fully utilized when people lose their jobs and factories sit idle.

Production Function

Given the quantities of labor and capital, how much output can an economy produce? The answer is provided by the **aggregate production function** (also referred to as the **production function**), which is a description of how much output, Y , is produced for any given amounts of factor inputs, such as K and L . We present the production function as follows:

$$Y = F(K, L) \tag{1}$$

with the F representing the function that translates K and L into a quantity of real output.

Cobb-Douglas Production Function

We can build on the basic idea of a production function by making two observations. First, an efficient, developed economy will generally produce more with the same quantity of capital and labor than an inefficient, primitive economy. Second, the shares of labor and capital income in the U.S. economy have remained relatively constant over time at about 70% labor and 30% capital, an observation we'll explore in more depth later.¹ The **Cobb-Douglas production function** incorporates both of these ideas:

$$Y = F(K, L) = AK^{0.3}L^{0.7} \tag{2}$$

The A variable describes **productivity** or, more precisely, **total factor productivity**, telling us how *productive* capital and labor are. In other words, it tells us how much output an economy can produce given one unit of capital and one unit of labor. If total

¹The more general form of the Cobb-Douglas production function is written as $Y = F(K, L) = AK^\alpha L^{1-\alpha}$. As will be demonstrated later in the chapter, the α exponent on K is equal to the capital share of national income, while the $1 - \alpha$ exponent on L is the labor share of national income. The choice of the value of $\alpha = 0.3$ is based on researchers' estimates from historical data.

factor productivity, A , goes up by 5%, then for the same amount of labor and capital, the total amount of goods and services produced in the economy increases by 5% under the Cobb-Douglas function.

We can also view productivity from the perspective of an economy's workers. We define **labor productivity** as the amount of output produced per unit of labor. Economists measure labor productivity by dividing measured output by the amount of labor input. This straightforward process leads the media to rely on labor productivity rather than total factor productivity. But it has drawbacks. For example, labor productivity can rise even when the productivity of labor and capital together are falling. For example, if Microsoft placed super-automatic espresso machines in every cubicle, its workers might produce slightly more software than before. It would be hard, however, to argue that the espresso machines were an efficient use of capital. Unlike labor productivity, total factor productivity takes into account how productive labor and capital are together. Throughout the text, when we discuss productivity, we will always be referring to total factor productivity.

We can directly measure the real level of output (Y), capital (K), and labor (L). The same is not true of total factor productivity, A . Thankfully, with the help of algebra, we can solve for A when given values for Y , K , and L , by dividing both sides of Equation 2 by $K^{0.3}L^{0.7}$ to yield the following:²

$$A = \frac{Y}{K^{0.3}L^{0.7}} \quad (3)$$

Suppose that an economy has output, in constant (real) dollars (Y), of \$10 trillion, capital (K), of \$10 trillion, and labor (L) of 100 million workers. We then calculate A as follows:

$$A = \frac{10}{10^{0.3}100^{0.7}} = 0.20$$

The production function is then:

$$Y = 0.20 \times K^{0.3}L^{0.7} \quad (4)$$

Application

Why Are Some Countries Rich and Others Poor?

The production function is a powerful concept that will have many uses in our study of macroeconomics. Here we use it to start answering a fundamental question: Why are some countries so rich and others so poor?

We measure how rich or poor a country is by its per capita income. For simplicity, we will assume that every citizen works, so that per capita income is the same as average income (output) per worker, Y/L . (We make this simplifying assumption because, although not everyone works, differences in income per worker provide a fair measure of the differences in per capita income.)

²As we will discuss in Chapter 6, this measure of total factor productivity is referred to as a Solow residual.

We find income per worker, denoted by y , by dividing both sides of the Cobb-Douglas production function in Equation 2 by L :³

$$y = \frac{Y}{L} = \frac{AK^{0.3}L^{0.7}}{L} = \frac{AK^{0.3}}{L^{0.3}} = Ak^{0.3} \quad (5)$$

where $k = K/L =$ capital per worker.

Equation 5 thus tells us that income per worker equals the total factor productivity term A multiplied by the capital per worker, raised to the power 0.3. Assuming that the workers and population are the same, the production function then indicates that there are two sources of differences in per capita income: 1) the productive efficiency of the economy represented by the total factor productivity term A , and 2) the amount of capital per person. To make a country richer, our analysis suggests that policymakers should increase productive efficiency and capital per person. But which should be the higher priority?

Table 3.1 allows us to distinguish between the effects of productivity and capital levels on an economy's relative wealth. It shows the per capita income of ten countries relative to the United States (with all values for the United States set to 1.00). As column 2 shows, the value of k of 1.14 for Japan indicates that Japan has 14% more capital per person than the United States. Column 3 indicates that if the United States and Japanese economies were equally productive (so that we can assume $A = 1.00$ for both countries and so y would equal $k^{0.3}$), we would expect Japan with $k^{0.3} = 1.04$ to have a 4% greater per capita income than the United States. But, as the fourth column shows, total factor productivity, A , in Japan is actually 69% of U.S. productivity. As a result, Japan's actual per capita output in column 5, as calculated from Equation 5, $y = Ak^{0.3}$, is 0.71—that is, 29% less than the United States. In other words, Japan's per capita income is lower than the United States due to the lower productivity of its economy, not its quantity of capital per person.

TABLE 3.1

Per Capita Income Relative to the United States for Different Countries

Country	Capital per Person	$k^{0.3}$	Total Factor Productivity, A	Per Capita Income, $y = Ak^{0.3}$
Argentina	0.26	0.67	0.53	0.36
Brazil	0.13	0.55	0.41	0.22
China	0.13	0.54	0.37	0.20
France	0.79	0.93	0.74	0.69
Germany	0.87	0.96	0.76	0.73
India	0.05	0.40	0.22	0.09
Italy	0.92	0.97	0.69	0.67
Japan	1.14	1.04	0.69	0.71
Nigeria	0.01	0.26	0.22	0.06
United Kingdom	0.67	0.89	0.85	0.75
United States	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00

Source: Penn World Tables. The data is for the year 2007. Capital calculated as last period capital net of depreciation plus investment starting in 1960. Initial capital calculated by perpetual inventory method. Capital per person is taken as the ratio relative to the United States. Per capita income is GDP per capita relative to the United States. TFP is per capita income divided by capital raised to 0.3 (column 2).

³Note that $y = Y/L$ is also labor productivity and so Equation 5 not only provides information about the sources of per capita income growth, it also tells us about the sources of labor productivity growth. Equation 5 thus demonstrates that labor productivity can increase either because total factor productivity, A , increases, or because capital per worker, k , increases.

The poorer countries at the top of Table 3.1 tell a somewhat different story. China, for example, has substantially less capital per person, at only 13% of the U.S. level. This fact partially explains why China is poorer than the United States. But productivity also plays a big role. As the third column shows, Chinese per capita income would be 54% of the U.S. level if China were just as productive. In fact, per capita income in China is only 20% of United States per capita income, since Chinese total factor productivity is just 37% of the U.S. level.

Notice in Table 3.1 that column 4 is always a smaller fraction than column 3, indicating that lower per capita income stems more from low total factor productivity than from low capital. The conclusion from our analysis of Table 3.1 is therefore as follows: ***the shortfall of per capita income in other countries relative to the United States is due more to lower productivity than it is to lower amounts of capital per person.***



Cobb-Douglas Production Function Characteristics

The Cobb-Douglas production function has two particularly attractive characteristics that give it a prominent role in the study of macroeconomics: 1) it displays *constant returns to scale*, and 2) it has *diminishing marginal product*. We explain each of these points in turn and examine them with historical data.

CONSTANT RETURNS TO SCALE. The Cobb-Douglas production function displays **constant returns to scale**: if you increase all the factor inputs by the same percentage, then output increases by exactly the same percentage. Put simply, doubling the inputs doubles the output, which makes intuitive sense. If a company can build 1,000 vehicles a month with one fully staffed factory, it should be able to produce 2,000 vehicles a month with two identical fully staffed factories.

We can verify that constant returns to scale are true for the Cobb-Douglas production function by substituting $2\bar{K}$ and $2\bar{L}$ into Equation 4:

$$\begin{aligned} Y &= F(2\bar{K}, 2\bar{L}) = 0.20(2\bar{K})^{0.3}(2\bar{L})^{0.7} \\ &= 0.20 \times (2^{0.3}2^{0.7}) \times \bar{K}^{0.3}\bar{L}^{0.7} = (2^{(0.3+0.7)}) \times F(\bar{K}, \bar{L}) \\ &= (2^{1.0}) \times F(\bar{K}, \bar{L}) = 2 \times F(\bar{K}, \bar{L}) \end{aligned}$$

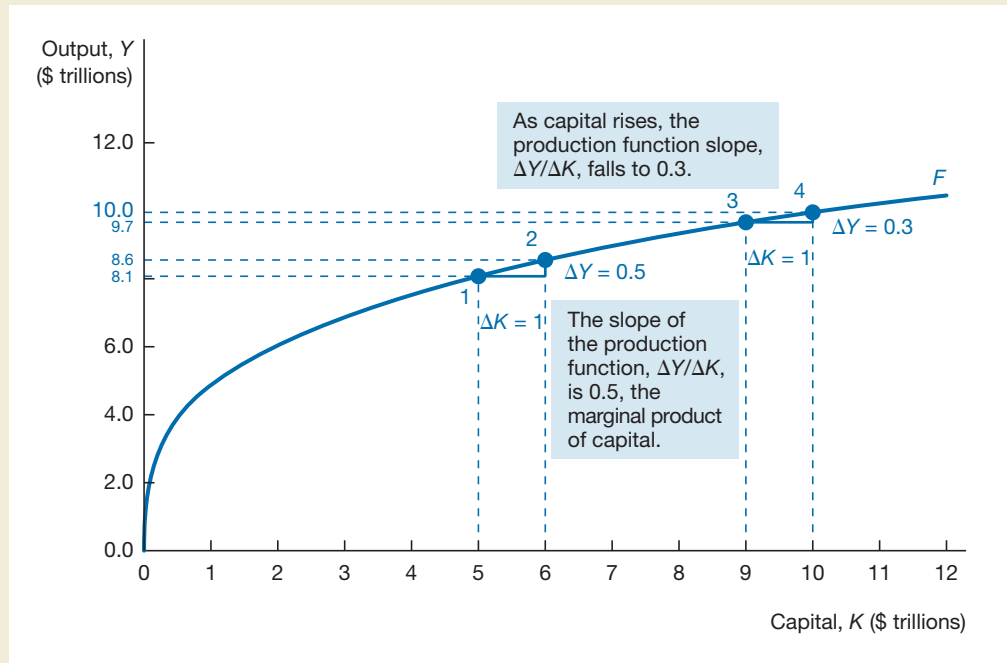
DIMINISHING RETURNS. The Cobb-Douglas production function has **diminishing marginal product**, which means that as the amount of one factor input increases, holding other inputs constant, the increased amount of output from an extra unit of the input (its **marginal product**) declines. To illustrate, let's write down the production function for a given amount of labor input, say, 100 million workers.

$$Y = 0.20 \times K^{0.3}(100)^{0.7} = 0.20 \times K^{0.3}(25.1) = 5.0 \times K^{0.3} \quad (6)$$

Figure 3.1 plots the production function relating output to capital. Notice that the production function is upward sloping: as capital increases, output goes up. Further, as capital increases, the slope, $\Delta Y/\Delta K$, falls. For example, going from point 1 to point 2, the capital stock rises from \$5 to \$6 trillion for a change, ΔK , of \$1 trillion. This rise in capital then leads to output rising from \$8.1 trillion to \$8.6 trillion, for a change of \$0.5 trillion. The slope at point 1 is then 0.5 ($\Delta Y/\Delta K = 0.5/1.0$). Now let's look at the slope at point 3, where the capital stock is \$9 trillion and output is \$9.7 trillion. In going to point 4, where the capital stock rises by \$1 trillion, output rises to \$10 trillion. The slope at point 3 is then $\Delta Y/\Delta K = 0.3/1.0 = 0.3$, which is less than the 0.5 slope at point 1.

FIGURE 3.1**Production Function Relating Output and Capital**

The production function for an amount of labor = 100 million workers. It is upward sloping—as capital increases, output goes up—and it displays diminishing marginal product of capital—as capital increases, the slope, $\Delta Y/\Delta K$, falls.



The slope of the production function $\Delta Y/\Delta K$, the **marginal product of capital (MPK)**, indicates how much output increases for each additional unit of capital, holding other inputs constant. Thus another way to describe the slope of the production function is that *as the capital stock increases, the marginal product of capital declines*. In other words, there is diminishing marginal product of capital.

We can demonstrate the same effect when the other input, labor, increases. We write down the production function for a given amount of capital, say \$10 trillion.

$$Y = 0.20(10)^{0.3} L^{0.7} = 0.20 (2.0) L^{0.7} = 0.4 L^{0.7} \quad (7)$$

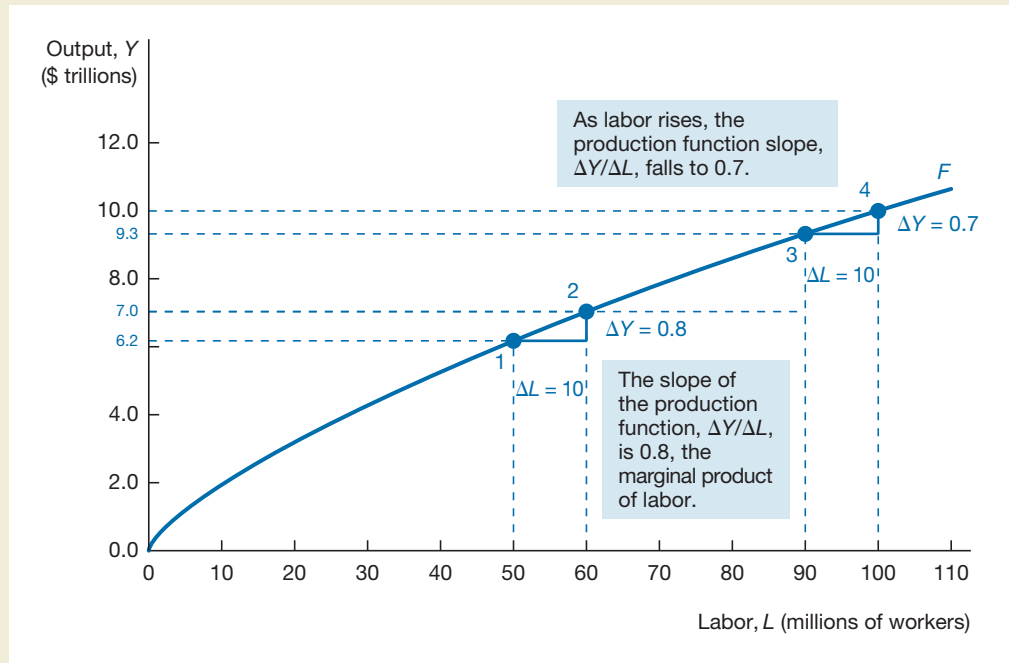
which is plotted in Figure 3.2.

Figure 3.2 shows the production function that relates output to labor when the capital stock is fixed at \$10 trillion. As Figure 3.2 shows, the slope of the production function, $\Delta Y/\Delta L$, is the **marginal product of labor (MPL)**, and it indicates how much output increases for each additional unit of labor, holding capital constant at \$10 trillion. For example, going from point 1 to point 2 it's evident that the amount of labor rises from fifty to sixty million workers for a change, ΔL , of ten million. This rise in labor then leads to output rising from \$6.2 to \$7.0 trillion, for a change of \$0.8 trillion. The slope at point 1 is then 0.08 ($\Delta Y/\Delta L = 0.8/10$). At point 3, the amount of labor is ninety million workers and output is \$9.3 trillion. In going to point 4, where the amount of labor rises by ten million workers, output rises to \$10 trillion. The slope at point 3 is then $\Delta Y/\Delta L = 0.7/10 = 0.07$, which is less than the 0.08 slope at point 1. Just as with capital there is diminishing marginal product of labor, that is, *as the amount of labor input increases, the marginal product of labor declines*. As we add more of an input, its marginal product decreases.

To illustrate, think about what happens if you have to write a term paper with very little capital, say, just a pen and paper. Because handwriting a paper is time-consuming,

FIGURE 3.2**Production Function Relating Output and Labor**

The production function is for an amount of capital of \$10 trillion. It is upward sloping—as labor increases, output goes up—and it displays diminishing marginal product of labor—as labor increases, the slope, $\Delta Y/\Delta L$, falls.



you might have little time to research and produce a not-very-good five-page paper. With a desktop computer, you could write a higher-quality paper that's ten pages long, leading to a better grade. If you had the desktop and a laptop computer, you could be even more productive, since you could type your great thoughts even when away from home and might write a twelve-page paper. Notice how adding the first computer allowed you to write five more pages, while adding the second computer increased the paper's size by only two pages. The marginal product of capital is still positive, but it will have fallen, just as the production function indicates.

CALCULATING THE MARGINAL PRODUCT OF CAPITAL AND LABOR. We can calculate the marginal product of capital and labor from Equations 6 and 7 with a little bit of calculus.⁴ The marginal product of capital and labor is as follows:⁵

$$MPK = 0.3 Y/K \quad (8)$$

⁴Equation 8 comes directly from differentiating Equation 6 with respect to K .

$$\begin{aligned} dY/dK &= 0.3 \times 5.0K^{(0.3-1)} = 0.3 \times 5.0/K^{0.7} = 0.3 \times 5.0 Y/(5.0K^{0.3}K^{0.7}) \\ &= 0.3 \times Y/K \end{aligned}$$

Equation 9 comes directly from differentiating Equation 7 with respect to L .

$$\begin{aligned} dY/dL &= 0.7 \times 0.4L^{(0.7-1)} = 0.7 \times 0.4/L^{0.3} = 0.7 \times 0.4Y/(0.4L^{0.7}L^{0.3}) \\ &= 0.7 \times Y/L \end{aligned}$$

⁵These calculations can be used to show how marginal products change with changes in A , K , or L . Substituting for Y using the production function from Equation 2, $MPK = 0.3AK^{0.3}L^{0.7}/K = 0.3AL^{0.7}/K^{0.7}$. As K goes up, the denominator rises and so the marginal product of capital, MPK , necessarily falls, showing that there is diminishing marginal product of capital. On the other hand, if A or L rises, then the numerator rises and so the marginal product of capital rises. Similarly, $MPL = 0.7AK^{0.3}L^{0.7}/L = 0.7AK^{0.3}/L^{0.3}$. As L goes up, the denominator increases and the marginal product of labor, MPL , also falls, indicating that there is diminishing marginal product of labor. If A or K rises, then the numerator rises and so the marginal product of labor rises.

and

$$MPL = 0.7 Y/L \quad (9)$$

Changes in the Production Function: Supply Shocks

So far we have been assuming an economy's production function remains constant over time. The production function can shift, however, which we refer to as a **supply shock**, a change in the output an economy can produce from the same amount of capital and labor. In other words, a supply shock involves a change in A , total factor productivity. **Positive (or favorable) supply shocks** result in an increase in the quantity of output produced for given combinations of capital and labor, while **negative (or adverse) supply shocks** lead to a decline in the quantity of output produced from given quantities of capital and labor. Negative shocks are less common, but can occur if, for example, burdensome government regulations make the economy less productive.

TYPES OF SUPPLY SHOCKS. Supply shocks come in several varieties that we will discuss in turn.

1. **Technology Shocks:** Technological advances, such as the development of a faster computer chip, can raise the A parameter in the production function in Equation 2 so that total factor of productivity rises.
2. **Natural Environment Shocks:** Blizzards, droughts, floods, earthquakes, and hurricanes can slow construction activity to a grind, reducing output for a given level of capital and labor. An unusually warm winter may have the opposite effect.
3. **Energy Shocks:** Energy is an important factor of production separate from capital or labor. When energy supplies are disrupted—for example, when OPEC cuts back on the production of oil to raise prices—firms use less energy, causing the amount of output the economy produces to fall for a given quantity of capital and labor.

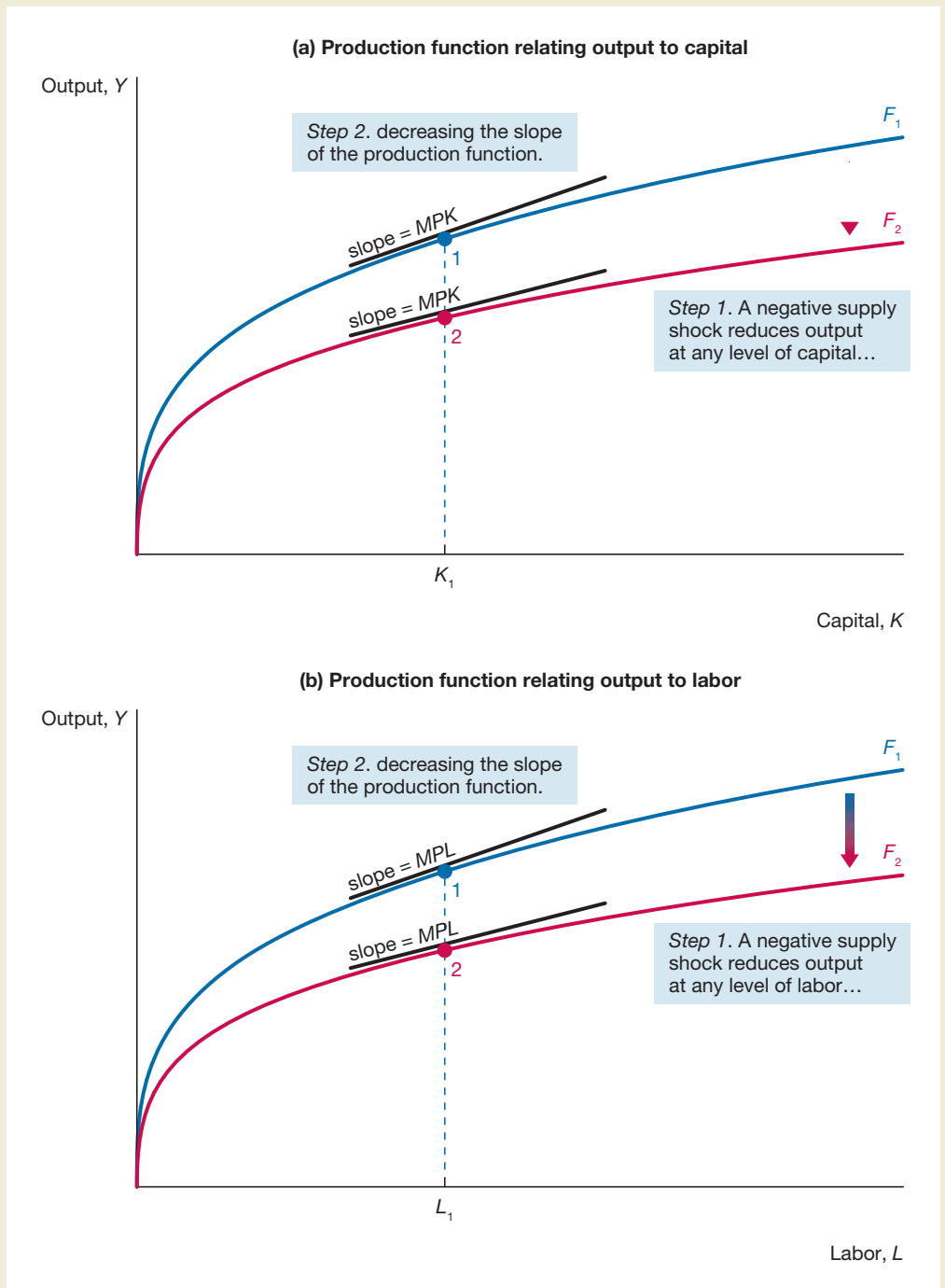
EFFECT OF A SUPPLY SHOCK. We can clearly see the effect of a supply shock on the aggregate production function by considering a Middle Eastern war that disrupts global oil supplies. This negative supply shock reduces output for any given level of capital and labor and so causes A to fall. As a result, in panels (a) and (b) of Figure 3.3, the production function shifts downward from F_1 to F_2 . In addition, as you can see in Figure 3.3, for any given quantities of labor or capital, say K_1 and L_1 , when moving from point 1 to point 2, the slope of the production function also declines—that is, the marginal product of both capital and labor fall.⁶ When the negative supply shock causes the level of output to fall for a given quantity of capital and labor, the decline in the numerators in both Equations 8 and 9 means marginal product of capital and labor both fall.

Supply shocks therefore have the following impact: **a negative supply shock causes the aggregate production function to shift downward and also causes the marginal products of capital and labor to fall.** Reversing the reasoning we have the following: **a positive supply shock causes the aggregate production to shift upward and raises the marginal products of capital and labor.**

⁶We can also confirm this downward slope directly from Equations 8 and 9, which show that because Y is in the numerators of both equations, as Y falls when the production function shifts downward, the marginal products of capital and labor also fall.

FIGURE 3.3**Response of the Production Function to a Negative Supply Shock**

A negative supply shock shifts the production function downward from F_1 to F_2 in both panels (a) and (b). At any given level of capital, say, K_1 , the slope of the production function in panel (a), the marginal product of capital, declines when the production function shifts from F_1 to F_2 . At any given level of labor, say, L_1 , the slope of the production function in panel (b), the marginal product of labor, declines when the production function shifts from F_1 to F_2 .



Determination of Factor Prices

The production function enables us to make some interesting predictions about the level of wages and rental costs of capital. This will also help us to see how the economy distributes national income to workers and capital owners. We conduct this analysis under a *classical framework*, assuming the economy has *perfect competition* and is at its long-term equilibrium level. By **perfect competition**, we mean that firms take market prices as given because they are not large or powerful enough to charge more than the market price for their goods or services. Also firms are not powerful enough to pay their workers less than the market wage, nor are groups of workers, such as unions, powerful enough to get wages above the market wage. By long-run equilibrium, we mean here that everyone who wants work can find it, and all factories and other capital are utilized, so that quantity of labor and capital supplied equals quantity demanded. These assumptions, of course, may not hold at every moment in every country, but they serve as useful benchmarks to understand how factor prices are determined.

Demand for Capital and Labor

The more capital and labor employed by firms, the more they can produce and sell. But adding additional capital and labor adds costs, reducing profit.

ECONOMIC PROFITS. **Economic profits** are the revenue from selling goods and services, minus the costs of the inputs.⁷ Key components of economic profit include the following:

1. *The revenue from selling goods and services* is the average level of the prices of goods and services, P , times the amount of goods and services sold, Y : using the production function, the revenue $P \times Y$ is $P \times F(K,L)$.
2. *The cost of using capital* is the price paid to rent the capital, often referred to as the **rental price of capital**, R , times the amount of capital, K , that is RK .⁸
3. *The cost of labor* is the price of labor, the **wage rate**, W , times the amount of labor, L , that is WL .

We write nominal economic profits (or cost), as follows:

$$P \times F(K,L) - RK - WL.$$

However, what firms and households care about are profits in terms of what they can buy, that is real economic profits. We divide the preceding expression by the price level, P , to get real economic profits, Π :

$$\Pi = F(K,L) - (R/P)K - (W/P)L$$

We define the **real rental price (or cost) of capital**, r_c , as the rental price of capital in terms of goods and services, which is the nominal rental price of capital divided by the

⁷Note that economic profits differ from accounting profits because most firms own their own capital and so we add the capital bill, RK , to economic profits to determine accounting profits.

⁸The concept of the rental price of capital is intuitively thought of as the rental payments that the owner of a unit of capital receives each period from the person or business that uses the capital. For example, the rent that a student pays for his or her apartment is the rental price of capital for the apartment. Similarly the wage rate is the rent that a worker receives from supplying his or her labor each period.

price level—that is, $r_c = (R/P)$. Similarly the **real wage rate** is the wage in term of goods and services, which can be written as the nominal wage rate divided by the price level, $w = (W/P)$.⁹ Hence the expression for real economic profits can be written as:

$$\Pi = F(K,L) - r_c K - wL \quad (10)$$

We can maximize the real profit function subject to choices about K and L through calculus¹⁰ or intuition; here we take the intuitive route. Profit maximization implies first that **firms will want an amount of capital that will make the marginal product of capital equal to the real rental price of capital:**

$$MPK = r_c \quad (11)$$

Maximizing profits also implies that **firms will hire an amount of labor that will make the marginal product of labor equal to the real wage rate:**

$$MPL = w \quad (12)$$

Let's first examine the result in Equation 11. When firms have too little capital—consider firms in a poor African country with rudimentary factories—they can produce and sell significantly more by outfitting their factories with machines and other capital. The boost in revenue vastly outweighs the cost of the capital itself. Or, as an economist might say, the marginal product of capital exceeds the real rental cost of capital, $MPK > r_c$, so that adding more capital raises profits. As firms add more capital, the effect of the diminishing marginal product of capital kicks in, so that each additional unit of capital boosts revenue by less and less. Eventually, as more capital is added, the marginal product of capital just equals the real rental cost of capital and $MPK = r_c$. At this point, firms will stop adding capital, because doing so would reduce profit.

What if firms kept adding capital even after this point, so that there was a surplus of capital in the economy? At this point, the marginal product of capital will be very low and below the real rental cost of capital $MPK < r_c$. Firms could increase their profits by reducing the amount of capital, since the cost is above the extra revenue it produces. Firms will therefore keep cutting the amount of capital until the marginal product of capital, MPK , rises up to the real rental price of capital r_c and Equation 11 holds.

The same type of argument explains why the condition in Equation 12 also holds. If firms have very little labor in their factories, the marginal product of labor will be higher than the real wage rate, $MPL > w$. Adding workers increases profits since the additional revenue from the output they produce will exceed their wage cost. Firms

⁹We denote the real rental cost of capital as r_c to distinguish it from r , the real rate of interest, which is the notation used later in the text, because although they are related, they do differ.

¹⁰To get the first-order conditions, we partially differentiate the profit function in Equation 10 with respect to K and L and set the partial derivatives to zero. Doing this for capital,

$$\partial\Pi/\partial K = \partial Y/\partial K - r_c = MPK - r_c = 0$$

Rearranging terms, the first-order condition for capital is as follows:

$$MPK = r_c$$

Going through the same computation for labor,

$$\partial\Pi/\partial L = \partial Y/\partial L - w = MPL - w = 0$$

Rearranging terms, the first-order condition for labor is as follows:

$$MPL = w$$

will then keep adding workers until the marginal product of labor falls to the real wage rate and Equation 12 holds where $MPL = w$. Similarly, if the marginal product of labor is below the real wage rate, $MPL < w$, then firms would rationally lay workers off because the revenue the extra workers generate is below their wage cost. Firms will shed enough workers to raise the marginal product of labor MPL to the level of the real wage w .

We can summarize the conclusion from the profit-maximizing conditions in Equations 11 and 12 in a slightly different way: ***firms demand additional quantities of each factor of production (labor and capital) until the marginal product of that factor falls to its real factor price.***

DEMAND CURVE ANALYSIS. In panels (a) and (b) of Figure 3.4, we plot the marginal product of both labor and capital. The MPL and MPK curves are downward sloping: as the quantity of the factor increases, diminishing marginal product implies that the marginal product for that factor falls. Since the quantity of the factor demanded occurs at the point where the marginal product equals the real factor price, the marginal product curves indicate the quantity of the input demanded for any given real factor price. Hence the marginal product of labor curve is also the demand curve for labor, and we therefore mark it both as MPL and D^L in panel (a), while the marginal product of capital curve is the demand curve for capital and we label it as MPK and D^K in panel (b).

Supply of Capital and Labor

Now that we've established the quantity of capital and labor firms will demand and plotted the demand curves, we consider the supply side of the picture.

Recall that a supply curve shows the relationship between the quantity of the factor supplied and any given real factor price. As we mentioned earlier, we will assume that the quantity of capital and labor are given at fixed values, \bar{L} and \bar{K} . The quantity supplied of each of these factors then remains unchanged for any given factor price. We portray the supply curves for labor and capital, marked as S^L and S^K in Figure 3.4 panels (a) and (b), as vertical lines at \bar{L} and \bar{K} , respectively.

Factor Market Equilibrium

As you'll recall from your principles of economics course, with a supply and a demand curve, we can now study the *market equilibrium*, in which the amount that firms are willing to buy (*demand*) equals the amount that the owners of the factors of production are willing to sell (*supply*) at a given price. In the factor markets, market equilibrium is achieved when the quantity of the factor demanded equals the quantity of the factor supplied. Equilibrium in the market for labor means

$$D^L = S^L \quad (13)$$

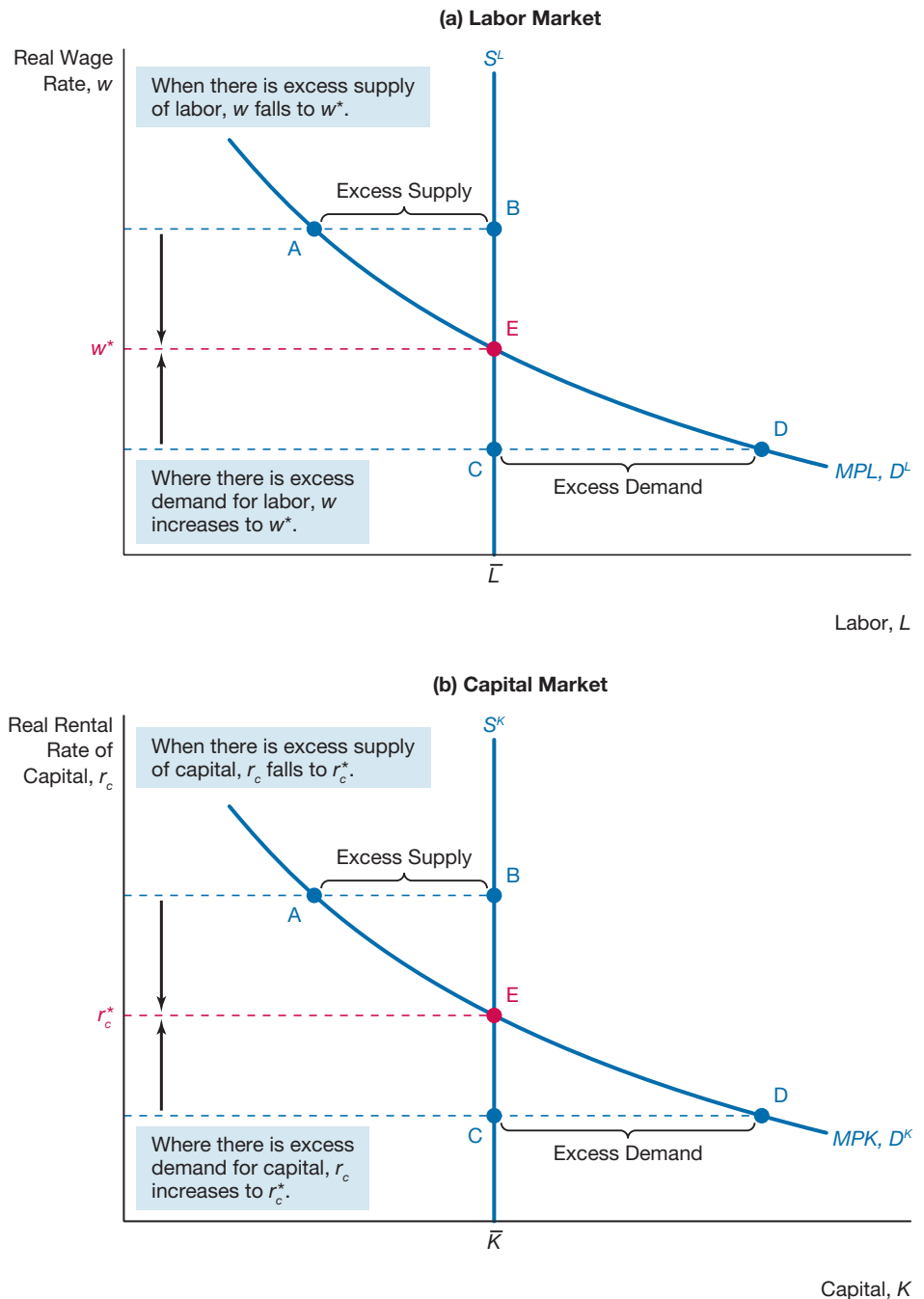
And in the capital market, it means

$$D^K = S^K \quad (14)$$

In Figure 3.4 panels (a) and (b), the equilibrium in both markets occurs at point E, at which the real wage rate is w^* and the real rental price of capital is r_c^* .

FIGURE 3.4**Supply and Demand Analysis of the Factor Markets**

The marginal product curves for both capital and labor are downward sloping and are the same as the demand curves for capital and labor. Equilibrium in panels (a) and (b) occurs at point E where the quantity of the factor demanded equals the quantity of the factor supplied. The equilibrium real wage rate in panel (a) is w^* and the equilibrium real rental price of capital in panel (b) is r_c^* . When the real factor price is above the equilibrium price, the quantity supplied at point B is greater than the quantity demanded at point A, and the resulting condition of excess supply causes the factor price to fall, as shown by the downward arrow. When the real factor price is below the equilibrium price, the quantity supplied at point C is less than the quantity demanded at point D, and the resulting condition of excess demand causes the factor price to rise, as shown by the upward arrow.



EXCESS SUPPLY. The concept of market equilibrium is useful because there is a tendency for the market to head toward it. In panels (a) and (b) of Figure 3.4, notice what happens when we have a real factor price that is above the equilibrium price: the quantity demanded of the factor at point A is less than the quantity supplied at point B. We call this situation where the quantity demanded of a factor is less than the quantity supplied a condition of **excess supply**. Because the owners of the factors want to sell more of them than firms demand, their price will fall, which is why the downward arrows are drawn in panels (a) and (b) of Figure 3.4. As long as the factor price remains above the equilibrium price, there will continue to be an excess supply of the factor, and the price will continue to fall. This decline will only stop when the factor price has reached the equilibrium price of w^* and r_c^* in Figure 3.4 panels (a) and (b).

EXCESS DEMAND. Now let's look at what happens when the factor price is below the equilibrium price at points C and D in panels (a) and (b) of Figure 3.4. The quantity demanded of the factor is above the quantity supplied, so we are in a condition of **excess demand**. Firms now want to buy more of the factor than owners of the factors want to sell, driving up the price of the factors, as illustrated by the upward arrows in Figure 3.4 panels (a) and (b). The price only stops rising when the excess demand for the factor is eliminated at the equilibrium price.

Distribution of National Income

Now that we understand how the returns to factors of production are determined, we can draw some conclusions about how the economy distributes national income to workers and capital owners.

The income paid to labor in real terms, real labor income, is the real wage times the quantity of labor. As we have shown previously, the real wage equals the marginal product of labor, $w = MPL$. Thus,

$$\text{Real Labor Income} = wL = MPL \times L$$

We know from Equation 9 that $MPL = 0.7 Y/L$ and substituting this in for MPL in the preceding equation we get,

$$\text{Real Labor Income} = 0.7 (Y/L) \times L = 0.7Y \quad (15)$$

Similarly, the income paid to owners of capital in real terms, known as real capital income, is the real rental price of capital times the quantity of capital, $r_c K$. The real rental price of capital equals the marginal product of capital, $r_c = MPK$, so

$$\text{Real Capital Income} = r_c K = MPK \times K$$

From the marginal product of capital calculation from Equation 8, $MPK = 0.3 Y/K$, we can substitute in for MPK in the preceding equation,

$$\text{Real Capital Income} = 0.3 (Y/K) \times K = 0.3Y \quad (16)$$

As you might expect, adding real labor and capital income together yields $Y (= 0.7Y + 0.3Y)$, the total amount of output produced in the economy, which we saw in

Chapter 2, equals national income, the sum of real labor income and real capital income. Therefore,

$$\text{National Income} = Y = 0.7Y + 0.3Y = \text{Real Labor Income} + \text{Capital Income} \quad (17)$$

National income is thus divided between payments to labor and the payments to capital, with the size of these payments determined by the marginal products of labor and capital.

Another way of looking at how income is distributed to capital and labor is to look at the shares of national income, which involves dividing Equations 15 and 16 by Y :

$$\text{Labor Income Share} = wL/Y = 0.7Y/Y = 0.7 \quad (18)$$

$$\text{Capital Income Share} = r_c K/Y = 0.3 Y/Y = 0.3 \quad (19)$$

The labor income share of 0.7 is the value of the exponent on labor in the Cobb-Douglas production function that we defined in Equation 2, while the capital income share of 0.3 is the value of the exponent on capital in the production function. Most importantly, if the Cobb-Douglas production function is correct, then **the shares of labor income and capital income in national income do not change even as the total level of income rises and falls**. This prediction from the Cobb-Douglas production function is exactly what we see in the data: labor's share in national income has been remarkably steady at around 70% of national income over the last sixty years.

The Cobb-Douglas production function has the sensible property that aggregate production displays constant returns to scale. In addition, it is consistent with the empirical fact that the shares of national income going to capital and labor have remained pretty constant despite an economy that has grown substantially over the last sixty years. As the following two applications show, the Cobb Douglas production function can also help explain real wage growth and the effect of oil price shocks on the stock market.

Application

Explaining Real Wage Growth

While the wages of American workers have risen over the decades, the rate of change has varied quite considerably over time. As Table 3.2 indicates, real wages—including nonsalary compensation such as health and pension benefits—on average grew 2.3% per year from 1959 to 1973, but only 0.7% over the next twenty-two years. Since then, from 1995 to 2009, real wage growth accelerated, averaging 1.6% per year. What explains the changing trend rate of growth in real wages?

Our analysis of factor price determination provides the answer. As shown by Equation 9, real wages are determined by the marginal product of labor: $w = MPK = 0.7 (Y/L)$. The term

TABLE 3.2
Growth in Labor
U.S. Productivity
and Real Wages

Period	Growth rate of labor productivity (%)	Growth Rate of real wages (%)
1959–1973	2.9	2.3
1973–1995	1.4	0.7
1995–2009	3.1	1.6

Source: Bureau of Labor Statistics. <http://data.bls.gov/PDQ/outside.jsp?survey=pr>

Y/L , output per unit of labor, is labor productivity,¹¹ and the fact that real wages are proportional to labor productivity implies that real wages and labor productivity should grow at close to the same rate. Indeed, the numbers in Table 3.2 bear out this relationship. Notice the very close correspondence between the growth rate of real wages and the growth rate of labor productivity. As labor productivity growth slowed from 2.9% to 1.4% after 1973, real wage growth declined from 2.3% to 0.7%. As labor productivity growth climbed from 1.4% to 3.1% after 1995, real wage growth jumped from 0.7% to 1.6%.

Economists debate the causes of the labor productivity growth slow down after 1973. One possible factor is the sharp rise in energy prices that occurred around that time. After 1995, productivity gains from personal computers and information technology seem to have fueled productivity growth. Although we are not entirely sure what shaped the trend in labor productivity growth, changes in the trend rate of growth of real wages are clearly related to the trend rate of growth of labor productivity.



Application

Oil Shocks, Real Wages, and the Stock Market

The U.S. economy has experienced three oil price shocks in the last forty years. After each, both real wages and stock market prices fell. Our supply and demand analysis of factor prices can help explain why a sudden rise in oil prices could trigger these outcomes.

Earlier we saw that a negative supply shock reduces the marginal product of labor for any given level of labor and capital (Figure 3.3). Hence, the demand curve for labor shifts down and to the left from D_1^L to D_2^L , as shown in panel (a) of Figure 3.5. With labor supply fixed at \bar{L} , equilibrium in the labor market moves from point 1 to point 2, and the real wage rate falls from w_1 to w_2 . This prediction of our supply and demand analysis is borne out in the data. In the aftermath of the first oil price shock in 1973–1974, real wages fell 1.9%. When the second oil shock hit in 1979–1980, real wages again fell, by 1.1%. The most recent oil price shock in 2007–2008 was followed by a decline in real wages of 2.4%.

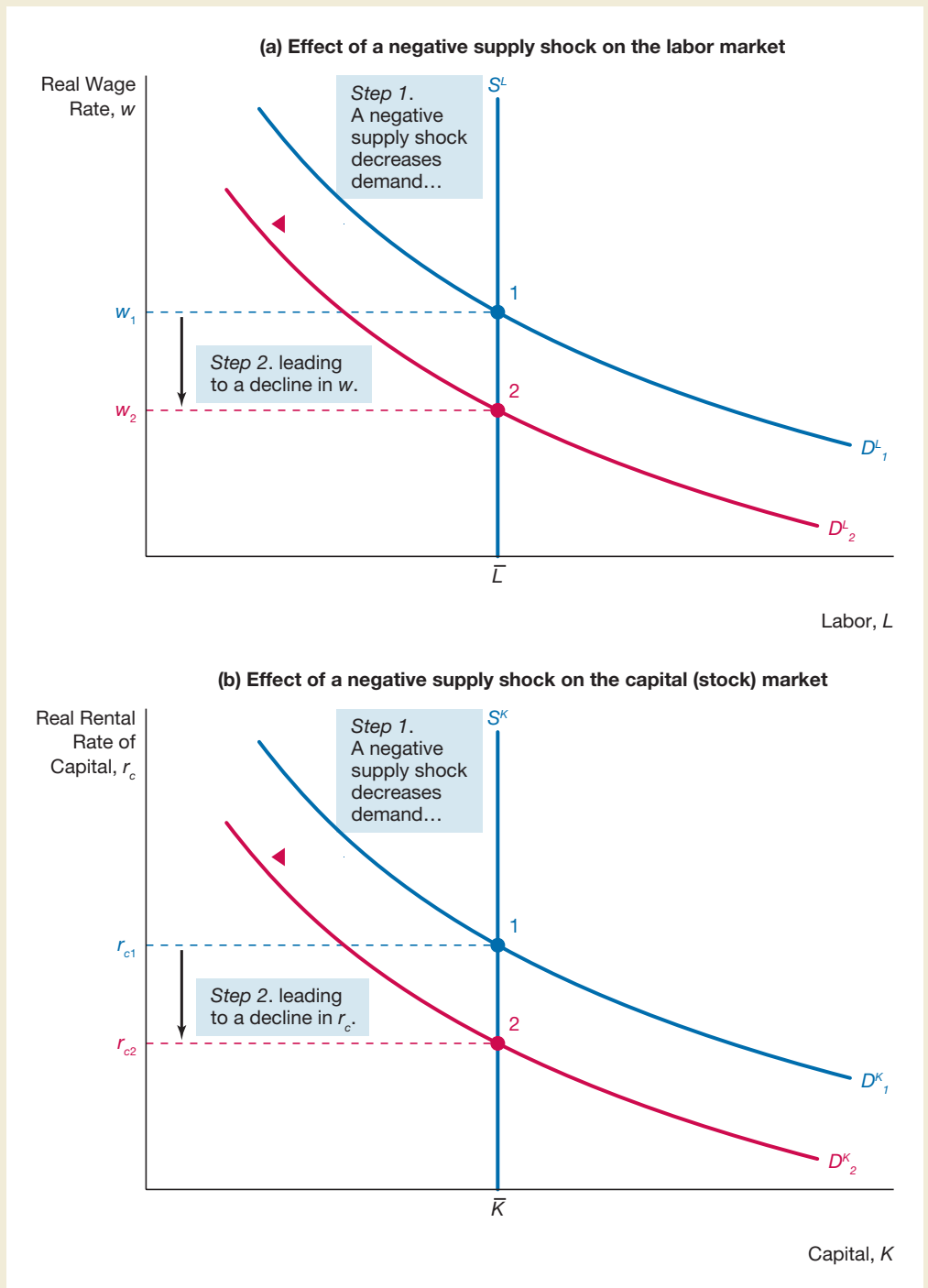
Negative supply shocks also reduce the marginal product of capital, so the demand curve for capital shifts down and to the left, from D_1^K to D_2^K , in Figure 3.5 panel (b). With the supply of capital fixed in the short term, we would expect the real rental price of capital to fall from r_{c1} to r_{c2} . Think of common stocks as a claim on the income generated by firms' capital: the decline in the real rental price of capital suggests that stock prices will fall when the rental income from capital has fallen. Indeed, this is exactly what happened. From 1973 to 1975, after the first oil shock, stock prices declined by around 25%. After the second oil shock in 1979–1980, the stock market declined again, falling by 7% from 1980 to 1981. The most recent oil shock in 2007–2008 coincided with a 50% decline in the stock market from 2007 to 2009. While a financial crisis in that period contributed to the sharp decline in stock prices, the oil shock may have exacerbated the losses.

If you are an investor or a worker—and you'll probably soon be both—negative supply shocks in the oil market are not welcome events.

¹¹To keep things simple, we have used the number of workers as the unit of labor. However, because the amount of hours that people work has changed over time, it is more accurate to define the quantity of labor as the total number of hours worked, which equals the number of workers times the average number of hours they work. In this case, the unit of labor used to compute labor productivity is hours worked, so that labor productivity is measured as output per hours worked.

FIGURE 3.5**Effect of a Negative Supply Shock on Real Wage and the Real Rental Price of Capital**

A negative supply shock reduces the marginal product of labor for any given level of labor and capital. In panel (a), the demand curve for labor shifts down and to the left from D_1^L to D_2^L and the real wage rate falls from w_1 to w_2 at the new equilibrium of point 2. A negative supply shock also leads to a decline in the marginal product of capital, shifting the demand curve for capital down and to the left from D_1^K to D_2^K in panel (b). At the new equilibrium, point 2, the real rental price of capital falls from r_{c1} to r_{c2} , leading to a stock market decline.



Concluding Remarks

Our analysis of the production function and the determination of factor prices paves the way for an examination of long-run macroeconomic issues, including the relative wealth and growth rates of countries, in Part 3. It also is a basic building block for Part 4 of this book, which focuses on short-run fluctuations in the economy. The analysis will tell us how much the economy can produce when its resources are fully utilized, that is, when it is at full employment.

SUMMARY

1. The aggregate production function tells us how much output an economy produces for given amounts of factor inputs, capital and labor. The Cobb-Douglas production function, $Y = F(K, L) = AK^{0.3}L^{0.7}$, displays constant returns to scale: when all the factor inputs increase by the same percentage, aggregate output increases by exactly the same percentage. The Cobb-Douglas production function also displays diminishing marginal product: as the amount of a specific factor input increases, holding other inputs constant, its marginal product decreases. Positive supply shocks result in an increase in the quantity of output and marginal products of factors for any given combination of capital and labor, while negative supply shocks do the opposite.
2. Profit maximization indicates that firms demand a quantity of each factor of production (labor and capital) up until the marginal product of that factor falls to its real factor price, that is, $MPK = R/P = r_c$ and $MPL = W/P = w$. Hence, the marginal product curves for each factor are also the demand curves for each factor. Factor prices are determined at the intersection of the demand and supply curves for each factor.
3. National income is divided between the payments to capital and the payments to labor, with the size of these payments determined by the marginal products of capital and labor. Capital and labor income shares of national income do not change even as the level of income grows over time.

KEY TERMS

adverse supply shock, p. 54	excess demand, p. 60	perfect competition, p. 56
aggregate production function, p. 48	excess supply, p. 60	positive supply shock, p. 54
capital, p. 47	factors of production, p. 47	production function, p. 48
Cobb-Douglas production function, p. 48	favorable supply shock, p. 54	productivity, p. 48
constant returns to scale, p. 51	labor, p. 47	real rental price (cost) of capital, p. 56
diminishing marginal product, p. 51	labor productivity, p. 49	real wage rate, p. 57
economic profits, p. 56	marginal product, p. 51	rental price (cost) of capital, p. 56
	marginal product of capital, p. 52	supply shock, p. 54
	marginal product of labor, p. 52	total factor productivity, p. 48
	negative supply shock, p. 54	wage rate, p. 56

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Determinants of Aggregate Production

1. What relationship does the aggregate production function portray? Which of the production function's variables are endogenous and which are exogenous?
2. How does total factor productivity differ from labor productivity?
3. Explain each symbol or term in the Cobb-Douglas production function. Which element

- in the production function cannot be measured directly? How is it measured?
4. Explain the two characteristics of the Cobb-Douglas production function that make it particularly useful to macroeconomists.
 5. What are supply shocks and from what sources can they arise? Distinguish between positive and negative supply shocks.

Determination of Factor Prices

6. What are factor prices? What classical assumptions are used in explaining how they are determined?
7. Explain each term in the profit function for a firm.
8. What rule do firms follow to determine how much of each input to hire in order to maximize profits?
9. Why do the factor demand and supply curves have their particular slopes?
10. Explain how an equilibrium factor price is established in a factor market if there is either an excess demand for the factor or an excess supply of the factor.

Distribution of National Income

11. What determines the distribution of national income between payments to labor and capital?

PROBLEMS

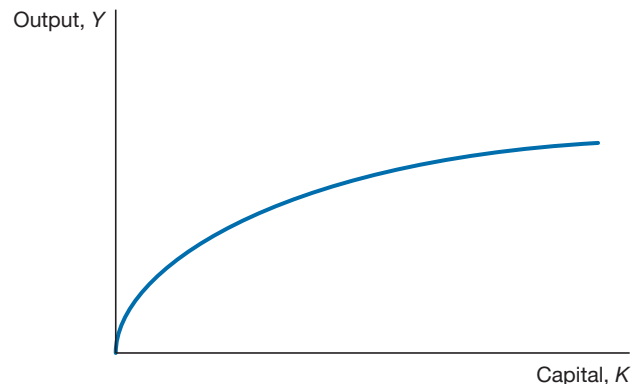
All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Determinants of Aggregate Production

1. Consider the following production function $Y = F(K, L) = A(2K + 3L)$. Does this production function exhibit constant returns to scale? (Hint: Replace K and L by $2K$ and $2L$ respectively and check if $F(2K, 2L) = 2F(K, L)$.)
2. Consider the following production function: $Y = F(K, L) = AK^{0.4}L^{1.0}$
 - a) Calculate the marginal product of labor.
 - b) Does this production function exhibit diminishing marginal product of labor?
3. Suppose Equation 2 represents the production function of both Mexico and Spain. Use the following information to answer the next questions.

Country	$L =$ Population (millions)	$K =$ Capital (trillion)	$Y =$ Output (trillion)
Mexico	105	0.18	1.0
Spain	45	0.74	1.7

 - a) Calculate total factor productivity for both countries using Equation 3.
 - b) Calculate per capita income for both countries.
 - c) Explain the difference in per capita income.
4. The figure below represents the production function relating output to capital in the United States. Suppose unusual weather conditions result in a higher than expected crop yield in the midwestern states.
 - a) Draw the new production function in the same graph.
 - b) What is the effect on the marginal product of capital?

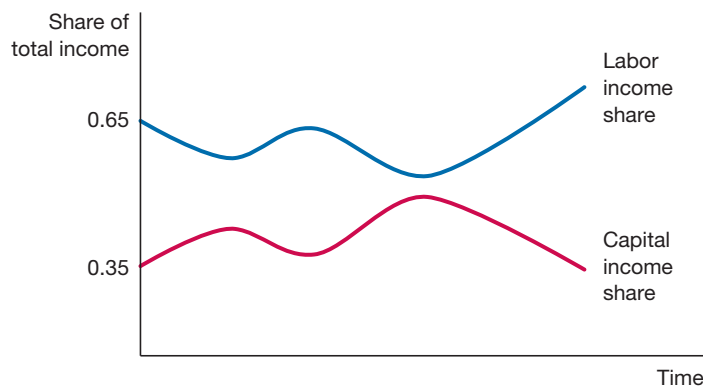


Determination of Factor Prices

5. A manufacturer of toys is employing fifty workers and using fifteen pieces of equipment to assemble toys. Currently, the marginal product of labor is \$5 and the marginal product of capital is \$25. Assuming the market prices for labor and capital are \$12 and \$20 respectively, answer the following:
- Is this firm maximizing its profit?
 - What should this firm do with respect to its employees and its use of equipment?
6. Assume that the marginal product of labor is given by the following expression:
- $$MPL = \frac{52}{L^{0.3}} \quad (L \text{ is measured in millions}).$$
- What is the marginal product of labor when $L = 80$ million?
 - Determine the equilibrium real wage if the labor supply equals 100 million workers ($\bar{L} = 100$).
7. Assume that the marginal product of capital is given by the following expression:
- $$MPK = \frac{60}{K^{0.7}} \quad (K \text{ is measured in trillions}).$$
- Graph the demand curve for capital and find the equilibrium real rental rate of capital if capital supply is ten trillion.
 - Suppose a positive supply shock hits the economy, and is now $MPK = \frac{70}{K^{0.7}}$. Draw the new demand curve and calculate the new equilibrium real rental rate of capital.

Distribution of National Income

8. Suppose an economy has total income of \$8 trillion, where total labor income equals \$6 trillion and capital income equals \$2 trillion. Which are the values of the exponents on labor and capital using a Cobb-Douglas production function?
9. Suppose that you work at the statistical office of a given country. The following graph plots estimates of the labor and capital income shares for that country over time.
- Your boss suggests that a Cobb-Douglas production function could be a good representation of that country's income. Is your boss right?
10. Suppose that the following Cobb-Douglas production function represents the economy of Chile: $Y = F(K, L) = AK^{0.4}L^{0.6}$. Assuming Chile's national income equals \$170 billion, calculate real labor income and real capital income.



MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.



4

Saving and Investment in Closed and Open Economies

Preview

In recent years, U.S. workers have saved little of what they earned. Indeed, in 2007, the U.S. *private saving rate*, the percentage of income Americans tuck away each year, sank to its lowest level in the postwar period. U.S. households are in good company with their limited saving habits: the U.S. government has been spending far more than it receives from tax revenue, leading to large government budget deficits and severely negative *government saving rates*. What do these low saving rates and government budget deficits mean for the U.S. economy? Will living beyond our means make the country poorer in the future? If so, how might the government encourage more private saving? Should we worry that government budget deficits will shrink the capital stock and generate large imbalances in foreign trade?

In this chapter, we answer these questions by tracing the relationship between saving and investment. We take a long-run perspective in which wages and prices are flexible. We will see that lower saving leads to lower investment, slowing the growth of the capital stock and indeed making the United States poorer in the future. We will also see that lower saving leads to greater borrowing from foreigners, requiring future debt payments that reduce the wealth of Americans.

Relationship Between Saving and Wealth

Any child with an allowance and a piggy bank intuitively knows that *income*, *saving*, and *wealth* are intimately related. Over time, even a child with a very low allowance can fill up a piggy bank with quarters by spending less on comic books and candy and saving more.

Similarly, in the adult world, financial success is about more than income. We also need to determine **wealth**, a person's holdings of assets (such as bonds, stocks,

houses, and fine art) minus his or her liabilities, the amount he or she owes (such as mortgages, car loans, and credit card balances). A lawyer fresh out of law school who earns a \$150,000 salary at a top law firm but is saddled with student loans is surely not as well off as a rich kid with a \$2 million trust fund who brings in \$125,000 per year in income.

What is true for a child, adult, or household is also true for a country. To paint a full picture of a country's economy, we need to know a country's income, or GDP, over a specific period, as well as its **national wealth**, a country's holdings of assets minus its liabilities at a particular point in time. Just as with the child and the piggy bank, a country with a high saving rate will amass national wealth over time. We begin with a look at three national saving measures that figure prominently in macroeconomics.

Private Saving

Private saving equals private disposable income minus consumption expenditure. We calculate private disposable income, Y_D , as GDP, Y , minus net taxes, T (taxes minus government transfers minus interest payments on the debt):

$$Y_D = Y - T \quad (1)$$

Thus we can write private saving, S_p , as disposable income, $Y - T$, minus consumption expenditure, C :

$$S_p = Y - T - C \quad (2)$$

We subtract consumption expenditure from disposable income because it represents spending for current needs that does not produce higher income in the future and so will not add to wealth. The other component of private spending, investment, includes purchases of capital goods that do add to future income and wealth. As a result, we do not subtract investment from disposable income.

The **private saving rate** is the proportion of private disposable income that is saved, S_p/Y_D . As you can see in Figure 4.1, the private saving rate has declined dramatically since the 1980s, creating serious macroeconomic issues we will study later in the book.

Government Saving

Government purchases consists of two components: **government investment**, I_G , spending on capital goods like highways and schools that add to the capital stock and promote economic growth, and **government consumption**, C_G , government spending on current needs. In other words,

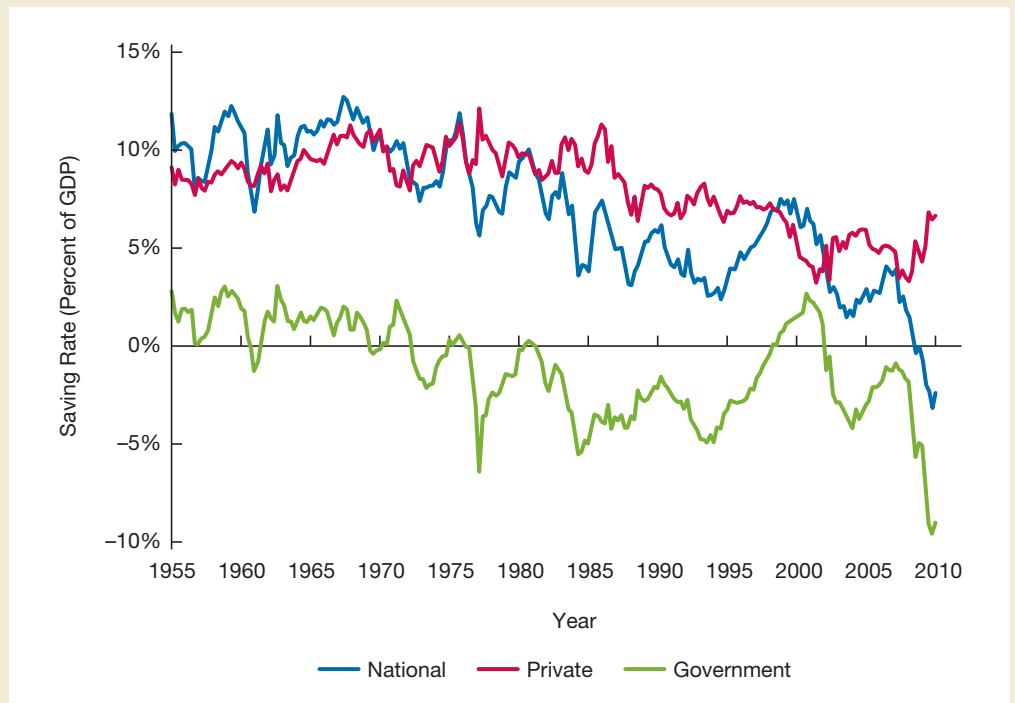
$$G = C_G + I_G$$

Government saving equals net government income less government consumption. For all practical purposes, we can think of net government income as taxes net of transfers, T , so we can write government saving as follows:

$$S_G = T - C_G$$

FIGURE 4.1**Three Measures of the Saving Rate in the United States, 1955–2010**

The private saving rate declined dramatically from the 1980s through the mid-2000s, only rising since 2007. Starting in the early 2000s, the government has been dissaving at a very high rate, leading to a decline in the national saving rate.



Source: Bureau of Economic Analysis. www.bea.gov/national/nipaweb/SelectTable.asp?Selected=N#S5

Deciding what is government consumption versus government investment is not clear cut. For example, the government's purchases of military equipment for war could be viewed as an investment in the nation's long-term prosperity, or short-term spending on current needs with little long-term benefit. Hence, before 1996, the national income accounts lumped government consumption and investment into government purchases, G . Because of these ambiguities, throughout this book, we will use the old definition of government saving that subtracts government purchases from net taxes:

$$S_G = T - G \quad (3)$$

The government's tax receipts minus its outlays equals its **budget surplus**, $T - G$. This amount is identical to government saving. When government outlays are greater than government receipts, we say the government budget is in deficit and, as Equation 3 indicates, the government is also dissaving. Notice in Figure 4.1 that from 2001 to 2010, the government has been dissaving at a high (and increasing) rate.

National Saving

We calculate **national saving** by summing private saving and government saving. Adding Equations 2 and 3 together causes the T terms to cancel out, so national saving, S , is:

$$S = Y - C - G \quad (4)$$

In other words, national saving equals GDP minus spending on current needs, which includes consumption expenditure and government purchases. The **national saving rate** is the share of national income saved by the government and households, or S/Y . Because both private saving and government saving have been decreasing relative to income, the national saving rate has fallen as well, as Figure 4.1 shows. To keep the terminology simple throughout the rest of the chapter, unless we are describing a particular type of saving, when we use the term saving, S , we are referring to national saving.

Many governments have worried that their countries' low saving rates will make them poorer in the future, which we discuss in the following Policy and Practice case.

Policy and Practice



Government Policies to Stimulate Saving

Governments stimulate saving through four main methods.

Tax Consumption. A high tax on consumption encourages consumers to spend less and save more, thereby amassing wealth. But how do you tax consumption? A straightforward way is to impose a national sales tax. If, for example, you have to pay a 5% tax on every item that you buy, you will think twice about your purchases and may decide to save more. Most U.S. states impose a sales tax, but there is no national sales tax. Similar to a sales tax is a **value-added tax**, which is a tax that is paid by a producer on the difference between what it receives for its goods and services minus the costs. As we saw in Chapter 2, the sum of all the value added on a good is the final value of that good. Consequently, a value-added tax on all firms has the same effect as a tax on the price a consumer pays for that good, and so should encourage saving in exactly the same way. Most European countries, as well as Canada, have value-added taxes, which is one reason why they have higher saving rates than the United States. Many economists who believe that the U.S. national saving rate is too low are supporters of a value-added or national sales tax.

Provide Tax Incentives for Saving. In 1974, the U.S. government created tax-sheltered accounts known as Individual Retirement Accounts (IRAs) to provide households a tax break for depositing money into a savings account. The income a household deposits into these accounts is exempt from income taxes, thereby lowering the household's tax bill. This tax break thus encourages the household to save more, increasing national saving. The effectiveness of these tax breaks on overall saving is controversial. If a household would have saved the amount even without a tax shelter like an IRA, then the IRA deposit would not substantially affect national saving.

Increase Return on Saving. Measures that increase the return on assets like common stock increase the incentives for households to save. In 2003, for example, the Bush administration proposed legislation that was subsequently passed that lowered the tax that investors pay on capital gains, the difference between the sale and purchase price of an asset like a stock or a house. In addition, the Bush administration lowered the income tax rate on certain classes of dividends paid on common stock.

Reduce Budget Deficits. Reducing budget deficits increases national saving—but in recent years, the opposite has occurred. Budget deficits have skyrocketed in many countries throughout the world because politicians have not restrained government spending.

Uses of Saving

Where does saving go? We can find the answer using the national income identity discussed in Chapter 2, $Y = C + I + G + NX$. Substituting $C + I + G + NX$ in for Y in Equation 4 results in the following:

$$S = (C + I + G + NX) - C - G = I + NX \quad (5)$$

We refer to Equation 5 as the **uses-of-saving identity**, which tells us that saving either goes into investment—acquiring capital goods and boosting the capital stock—or, alternatively, into net exports—selling goods to foreigners in exchange for foreign currency assets. In other words, a nation that saves can invest in its capital stock or acquire assets from foreigners.

By subtracting I from both sides of Equation 5, we can rewrite the identity as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} S - I &= NX \\ \text{Net Capital Outflow} &= \text{Trade Balance} \end{aligned} \quad (6)$$

NET CAPITAL OUTFLOW. We refer to the $S - I$ term, the difference between saving and investment, as **net capital outflow** (or *net foreign investment*), so Equation 6 is the **net capital outflow identity**. If saving is greater than investment, then the excess saving is invested abroad and so constitutes a net capital outflow, that is, more capital flows from the domestic economy to foreigners than flows into the domestic economy from abroad. If, on the other hand, investment is greater than saving, the excess of investment over saving is financed by borrowing abroad. We can say that net capital outflow is negative, or that there is a capital inflow.

TRADE BALANCE. We also refer to the net exports NX term of Equation 6 as the *trade balance*.¹ When NX is positive, the trade balance is positive and we say that the country is running a **trade surplus**. If China sells more goods and services abroad than it buys, the net capital flow identity in Equation 6 tells us that it is sending capital abroad that finances foreigners' net purchases of Chinese goods and services. If, on the other hand, NX is negative, as has been true in the United States for many years, we say the country is running a **trade deficit**. Americans buy more goods and services from abroad than foreigners buy from us, creating a negative trade balance. For Equation 6 to hold, we must have a net capital inflow, which finances these purchases by borrowing from abroad. The trade balance is reported periodically in the **balance of payments accounts**,

¹The trade balance is closely related to another concept that you hear reported in the media, the *current account balance*. The current account balance is the trade balance plus net factor payments to domestic residents from foreigners and net unilateral transfers. Because net factor payments and net unilateral transfers are quite small, we can treat the current account balance and the trade balance as the same thing.

a bookkeeping system for recording all receipts and payments that have a direct bearing on the movement of funds between a nation (private sector and government) and foreign countries (see the Macroeconomics in the News box, “The Balance of Payments Accounts”).

EXAMPLE: LINK BETWEEN NET CAPITAL OUTFLOWS AND THE TRADE BALANCE.

To illustrate the relationship between net capital outflows and the trade balance from the net capital outflow identity of Equation 6, let’s consider what happens when Apple Computer sells an iPod to a British consumer for 100 pounds. At the current exchange rate, say \$2 per pound, the iPod is valued at \$200. U.S. net exports and the U.S. trade balance now goes up by \$200, while Apple finds that it has an extra 100 pounds in its bank account in the UK. Consider Apple’s following options:

1. *Apple keeps the 100 pounds in the British bank.* Apple is in effect making a loan to the British bank of the 100 pounds (worth \$200) and so the net capital outflow is \$200, as the net capital outflow identity in Equation 6 suggests.
2. *Apple, in search of a higher return, uses the 100 pounds to buy a share of stock in a British company like Rolls-Royce.* Apple’s money is now being used to finance Rolls-Royce’s activities, which is another form of a net capital outflow.
3. *Apple uses the proceeds to help set up an Apple store in the UK.* Apple thus adds to its holdings of British assets, which creates a net capital outflow.
4. *Apple deposits the 100 pounds in its local American bank.* There will still be a net capital outflow—the U.S. bank will do something with the 100 pounds, like making a loan to a British company.

In all four scenarios, the net capital outflow identity holds: the increase in net exports of \$200 is matched by an increase in capital outflows of \$200.

MACROECONOMICS IN THE NEWS

Balance of Payments Accounts

The Bureau of Economic Analysis (BEA), a division of the U.S. Department of Commerce, produces quarterly data on the balance of payments accounts. The BEA releases data around two and a half months after the end of the quarter and revises data every year in June to incorporate more complete and accurate information. You can find this data on the BEA Web site, www.bea.gov, by clicking on “Balance of Payments” under the “International” heading.

Although the BEA produces the complete balance of payments only quarterly, it produces and releases the trade balance data monthly, about a month to a month and a half after the month reported on. Because net exports are an important component of GDP and also tell us what is happening to net capital outflows, the announcement of trade balance data often receives a lot of media attention.

FIGURE 4.2**Ratio of U.S. Wealth to Income, 1955–2010**

Wealth is highly influenced by values of asset holdings: from 2001 to 2007, despite a low private saving rate, the stock market boom increased Americans' wealth to income ratio, while the crisis from 2007–2009 led to declines.



Source: Federal Reserve Flow of Funds. www.federalreserve.gov/releases/z1/

The Link Between Saving and Wealth

The uses-of-saving and net capital outflow identities in Equations 5 and 6 are important because they show how saving is linked to wealth. As we already noted, saving can either finance investment or net exports. When saving finances net exports, the net capital outflow identity of Equation 5 shows that there is a net capital outflow and Americans have increased their holdings of foreign assets by more than foreigners have increased their holdings of U.S. assets. The net holdings of foreign assets (American-owned foreign stocks, bonds, bank accounts, factories, etc., minus foreign-owned U.S. assets) is called **net foreign assets**, and an increase in net foreign assets is clearly an increase in wealth.

Although there is a direct link between saving and wealth, wealth can change even if there is no saving. We saw in Figure 4.1, for example, that Americans have had very low private saving rates in recent years. Does this mean that personal wealth has not increased in the United States? The answer is no, as Figure 4.2 indicates. Despite low private saving rates from 2001 to 2007, Americans' wealth relative to disposable income rose steadily. Indeed, sometimes the opposite occurs. For example, in 2008, Americans' net worth plummeted, and yet the private saving rate jumped up.

What explains these movements in wealth that are not associated with saving? The answer is that the valuation of assets fluctuates substantially in the short run. In the very low saving years from 2001 to 2007, both the stock market and the housing market boomed, so that the value of Americans' holdings of stocks and houses increased dramatically. Thus wealth increased substantially even though Americans saved very little. On the other hand, in 2008, both the stock market and housing market collapsed, leading to over a 20% decline in Americans' personal wealth even though the American

private saving rate started to increase. The evidence from the 2000s suggests that changes in wealth can affect saving, a link we will discuss further in Chapter 18 when we examine what determines consumption.

Application

How the United States Became the Largest Net Debtor in the World

Up until the 1980s, the United States was the largest net creditor in the world, with Americans owning far more foreign assets than foreigners owned of U.S. assets. However, as Figure 4.3 indicates, starting in the late 1970s, net foreign assets relative to U.S. GDP began to fall at a fairly steady pace. By 2008, net foreign debt—U.S. debt to foreigners minus foreign debt to Americans, which is the opposite of net foreign assets—was over \$3.5 trillion, or 24% of GDP. How did the United States go from being the largest net creditor in the world to the largest net debtor?

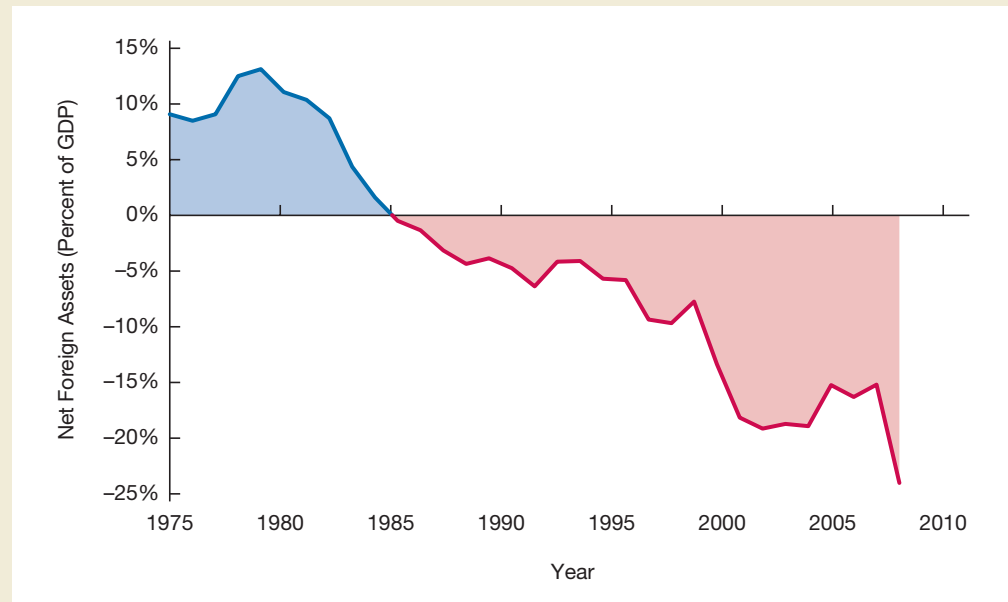
The net capital outflow identity provides insights. Specifically, Equation 6 indicates that the trade balance, NX , is equal to net capital outflows, $S - I$. Figure 4.4 shows trends in the U.S. national saving, investment, and trade balance from 1960 to 2010. From 1960 until the mid-1970s, saving and investment generally moved closely together. Saving generally remained above investment so that the trade balance was in surplus, as we can see in Figure 4.4. Starting in the late 1980s, U.S. national saving began to fall dramatically from levels near 10% of GDP to levels below zero by 2009, while investment fell by far less. The trade balance went sharply into deficit, reaching a peak of 6.1% in 2005.

The net capital outflow identity indicates that the large trade deficits starting in the 1980s triggered substantial capital inflows into the United States, sending Americans' holdings of net foreign assets lower. Figure 4.3 supports this relationship: net foreign assets turned negative in 1986, and continued to decline thereafter. The trade deficit has finally

FIGURE 4.3

Net Foreign Assets in the United States, 1975–2008

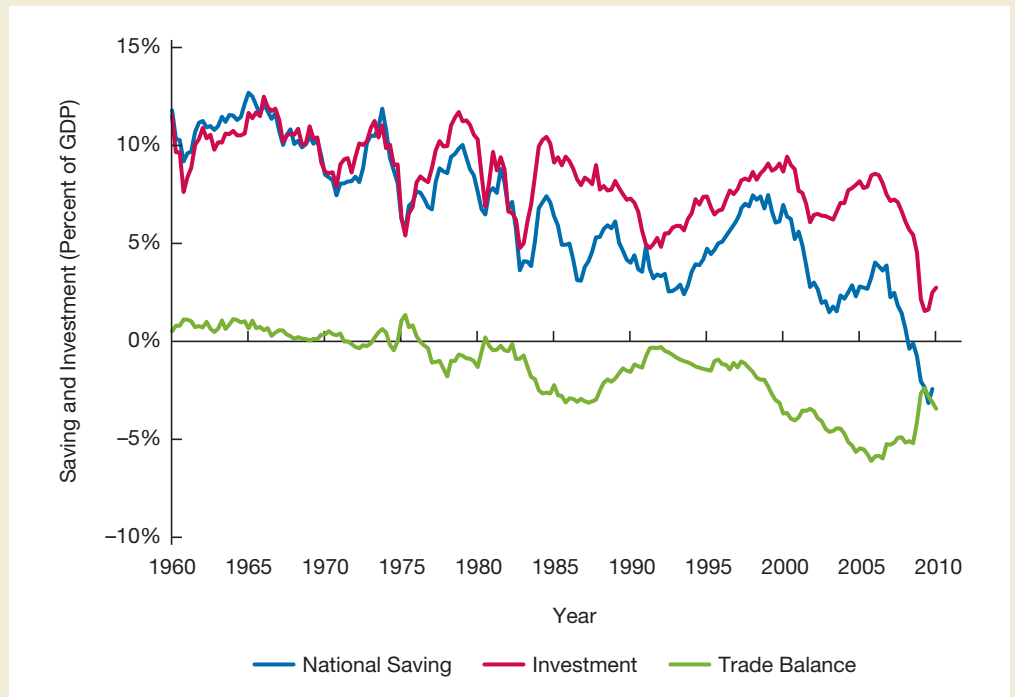
Starting in the late 1970s, net foreign assets relative to GDP in the United States began to fall at a fairly steady pace so that by 2008, net foreign assets measured negative 24% of GDP.



Source: Bureau of Economic Analysis. www.bea.gov/international/index.htm#iip

FIGURE 4.4 U.S. National Saving, Investment, and the Trade Balance, 1960–2010

The trade balance was in surplus from the 1960s to the 1970s, with the saving rate slightly higher than investment. The trade surplus turned into a deficit starting in the late 1980s when U.S. national saving began to fall dramatically from levels near 10% of GDP to levels below zero by 2009, while investment fell by far less.



Source: Bureau of Economic Analysis. www.bea.gov/national/nipaweb/SelectTable.asp?Selected=N#S5

begun to shrink in recent years, as Figure 4.4 shows—yet because the trade balance is still negative, net foreign assets continue to fall. When this decline will turn around is anyone's guess. It is clear, though, that the United States is going to be a net debtor to the rest of the world for a very long time.



Saving, Investment, and Goods Market Equilibrium in a Closed Economy

We now look at the link between saving and investment in the long run when all prices are flexible and have fully adjusted to exogenous shocks, so that aggregate output is determined by the production function in Chapter 3. We examine the link between saving and investment by asking what happens when the goods market is in equilibrium. To keep things simple, we start with a **closed economy**, an economy that is closed to international trade with zero net exports ($NX = 0$).

Saving and Investment Equation

Because net exports are zero in a closed economy, there are three components of GDP: consumption expenditure, C , investment, I , and government purchases, G . The total demand for goods and services in a closed economy is $C + I + G$. If the goods market is

in equilibrium, this demand will equal the amount of goods and services produced, Y . Goods market equilibrium therefore occurs when

$$Y = C + I + G \quad (7)$$

When we subtract C and G from both sides of Equation 7 and recognize that national saving S from Equation 4 is $Y - C - G$, we can rewrite the condition for goods market equilibrium as follows:

$$\begin{array}{rcc} S & = Y - C - G = & I \\ \text{Saving} & = & \text{Investment} \end{array} \quad (8)$$

The real interest rate, the inflation-adjusted cost of borrowing, keeps the market for saving and investment in equilibrium. This rate, which also describes the real benefit of saving, adjusts to maintain an equilibrium where desired saving equals desired investment. We now look separately at saving and investment to see how they relate to the real interest rate.

Saving

We will explore the factors that determine consumption expenditure in detail in Chapter 18. For now, we will assume that the amount consumers want to spend is a function of three factors: disposable income ($Y - T$), the real interest rate, (r), and **autonomous consumption** (\bar{C}), the amount of consumption expenditure that is unrelated to either disposable income or the real interest rate. We can write the relationship of consumption expenditure to disposable income and the real interest rate as follows:

$$C = \bar{C} + C(Y - T, r) \quad (9)$$

+ -

The plus sign below $Y - T$ indicates that as disposable income increases, consumption expenditure rises, while the minus sign below r indicates that as real interest rates rise, consumption expenditure falls. As disposable income rises, consumers have more income to spend, increasing their desired amount of consumption expenditure. Rising real interest rates encourage consumers to save more and spend less, since they can earn a higher return on their saving.

We treat government fiscal policy as an exogenous variable, meaning it is determined by political considerations, which is beyond the scope of our model.

$$G = \bar{G} \quad (10)$$

$$T = \bar{T} \quad (11)$$

For simplicity, we also treat the level of capital and labor as exogenous, fixed at \bar{K} and \bar{L} . We can input those factors into the production function described in Chapter 3 to determine the level of long-run aggregate output. Long-run aggregate output is therefore also an exogenous variable, which we fix at \bar{Y} . Putting this together,

$$Y = F(\bar{K}, \bar{L}) = \bar{Y} \quad (12)$$

Recognizing that saving $S = Y - C - G$ and substituting in from Equations 9–12, we can describe the desired amount of saving as follows:

$$S = \bar{Y} - \bar{C} - C(\bar{Y} - \bar{T}, r) - \bar{G} \quad (13)$$

We've now built a fully functioning economic model for desired saving, with four exogenous variables— \bar{Y} , \bar{C} , \bar{T} , and \bar{G} —and an endogenous variable, the real interest rate, r . Notice also how changes in r change the level of C , which in turn affects the saving rate. If r rises, consumption expenditure falls. Lower consumption means higher saving. Thus, we can say that r is negatively correlated with C , and C is negatively correlated with saving. Hence, r is positively correlated with saving. With this model in hand, we plot desired saving against the real interest rate. The positive relationship between saving and the real interest rate produces the upward-sloping saving curve S shown in Figure 4.5. The slope of S matches our intuition about how interest rates affect saving by making consumption more costly.

Investment

As we concluded from our discussion of marginal product of capital in Chapter 3, firms and households will make investments as long as they expect to earn more from the investment than the rental cost of capital, that is, the interest cost of the loan to finance the investment. We think of both the benefits and interest costs in terms of the value of real goods and services, and so the interest rate that is most relevant to investment decisions is the real interest rate. For example, suppose Ford is thinking about buying a \$100,000 car-painting robot that will increase profits by \$10,000 per year in real terms. If it faces a 6% real interest rate on the \$100,000 loan to finance the purchase of the robot, it will pay \$6,000 per year in interest. The net gain is \$4,000 per year. It makes sense for Ford to make the investment and so it will go ahead and buy the robot. On the other hand, if the real interest is 15%, then the cost per year of financing the purchase is \$15,000. The \$10,000 in profits won't cover this amount, so Ford won't make the investment. Similarly, suppose you are thinking about buying a \$100,000 house. You are more likely to buy the house when real interest rates are lower, say at 6%, than when they are at 15%. At the lower rate, you'd pay \$6,000 in real terms, versus \$15,000 a year at real terms at the higher rate.

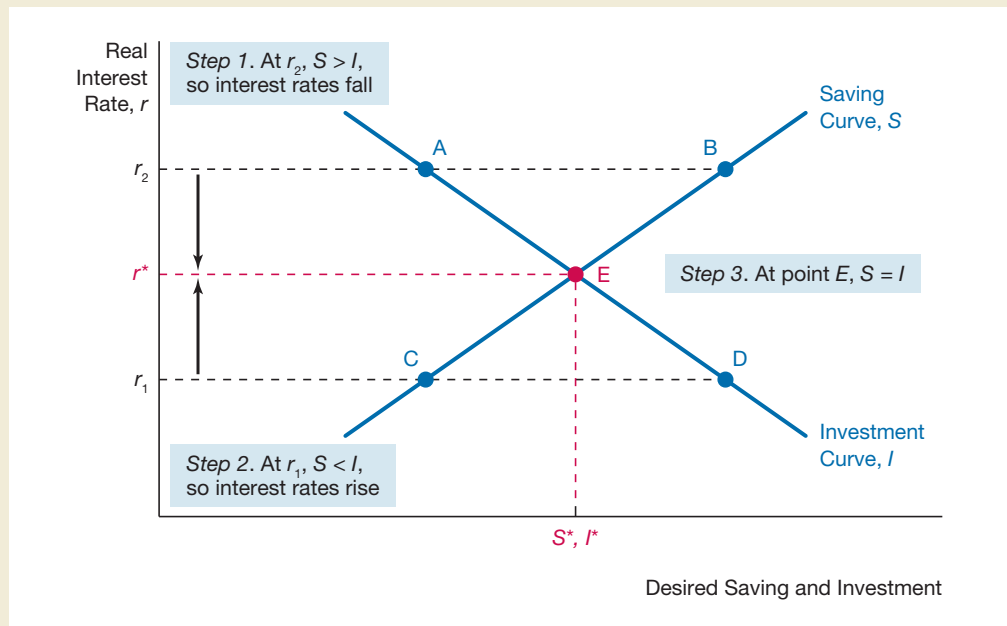
Would real interest rates matter to household and firm investment decisions even if they have surplus funds and do not need to borrow? The answer is yes. For example, what if Ford has the \$100,000 and doesn't need to take out a loan to purchase the robot. Instead of buying the robot, it could purchase an asset like a bond. If the real interest rate for the bond is high, say, 15%, then Ford would earn \$15,000 per year in real terms by buying the bond, which is greater than the \$10,000 it earns from the robot. So, as before, it would not make the investment. Alternatively, if the real interest rate were 6%, then the \$10,000 Ford earns by purchasing the robot exceeds the \$6,000 it would earn on the bond and so it will now make the robot investment.

The conclusion from our analysis is the following: **as real interest rates fall, households and firms are more likely to make investments, and so the desired level of investment in the economy will rise.** We represent the increasing level of desired investment as the real interest rate falls with the downward-sloping curve marked by I in Figure 4.5, which can be written as the investment function:

$$I = \bar{I} + I(r) \quad (14)$$

FIGURE 4.5**The Saving-Investment Diagram: Equilibrium in the Goods Market**

Goods market equilibrium occurs at point E, the intersection of the saving and investment curves, where the real interest rate is r^* . At the interest rate r_2 , desired investment at point A is less than desired saving at point B: potential investors want to borrow less than savers want to lend and so the real interest rate will fall to r^* . Similarly, if the real interest rate is r_1 , then desired investment at point D is greater than desired saving at point C: investors will want to borrow more than savers are willing to lend and the real interest rate will rise to r^* .



Where \bar{I} is **autonomous investment** (investment unrelated to the real interest rate) and the minus sign below r indicates that as the real interest rate increases, investment falls.

Goods Market Equilibrium

The goods market equilibrium condition, $S = I$, occurs at point E at the intersection of the saving and investment curves in Figure 4.5, which we refer to as the **saving-investment diagram**. The real interest rate that keeps the goods market in equilibrium is r^* . If the interest rate is above r^* , say at r_2 , then desired investment at point A is less than desired saving at point B, and the goods market will not be in equilibrium. Now potential investors are willing to borrow less than savers are willing to lend and so lenders will be willing to lower rates to make more loans. The real interest rate will therefore fall, as the downward arrow indicates. Similarly, if the real interest rate is less than r^* at r_1 , then desired investment at point D is greater than desired saving at point C and so investors will want to borrow more than savers are willing to lend and the real interest rate will rise, as the upward arrow indicates. Only when the real interest rate is at r^* at point E will the goods market be in equilibrium and the real interest rate will remain unchanged.

Response to Changes in Saving and Investment in a Closed Economy

How does the economy respond to changes in saving and investment? To examine this question, we look at changes in saving and investment levels graphically. As you learned in your principles of economics course when you studied supply and demand, it is always important to distinguish movements along a curve from shifts in the curve. Only shifts in curves produce a change in the equilibrium quantities and price. This insight is also true in our analysis of saving and investment.

We have seen that the desired amount of saving is determined by \bar{Y} , \bar{C} , \bar{T} , \bar{G} , and r . Because the level of aggregate output \bar{Y} in the long run is determined by the amount of capital and labor in the economy and the technology available, we take \bar{Y} as given. Changes in desired saving when the real interest rate changes is a *movement along* the saving curve and does not cause the saving curve to shift. However, changes in \bar{C} , \bar{T} , and \bar{G} can affect the amount of desired saving and thus *shift* the saving curve. We begin by looking at what happens when autonomous consumption changes.

Changes in Saving: Autonomous Consumption

If consumers become more optimistic, say, they think their job prospects will be better in the future, they might decide to spend more regardless of the real interest rate or disposable income. As a result, autonomous consumption expenditure \bar{C} would rise. Alternatively, a change in their preferences might cause households to become reckless and extravagant, so autonomous consumption might rise and consumers will save less at any given real interest rate. The saving curve will then shift to the left from S_1 to S_2 in panel (a) of Figure 4.6 and the equilibrium will move from point 1 to point 2. The rise in autonomous consumption will then cause the amount of saving and investment to fall to S_2 and I_2 and the equilibrium real interest rate will rise to r_2 .

On the other hand, if consumers become more pessimistic or become more conservative and so want to save more, then autonomous consumption will fall and saving will rise at any given real interest rate. In this case, the saving curve will shift rightward from S_1 to S_2 in panel (b) of Figure 4.6: saving and investment will rise to S_2 and I_2 and the equilibrium real interest rate will fall to r_2 . We thus have the following result: ***a rise in autonomous consumption causes saving and investment to fall and the real interest rate to rise in the long run, while a fall in autonomous consumption causes saving and investment to rise and the real interest rate to fall.***

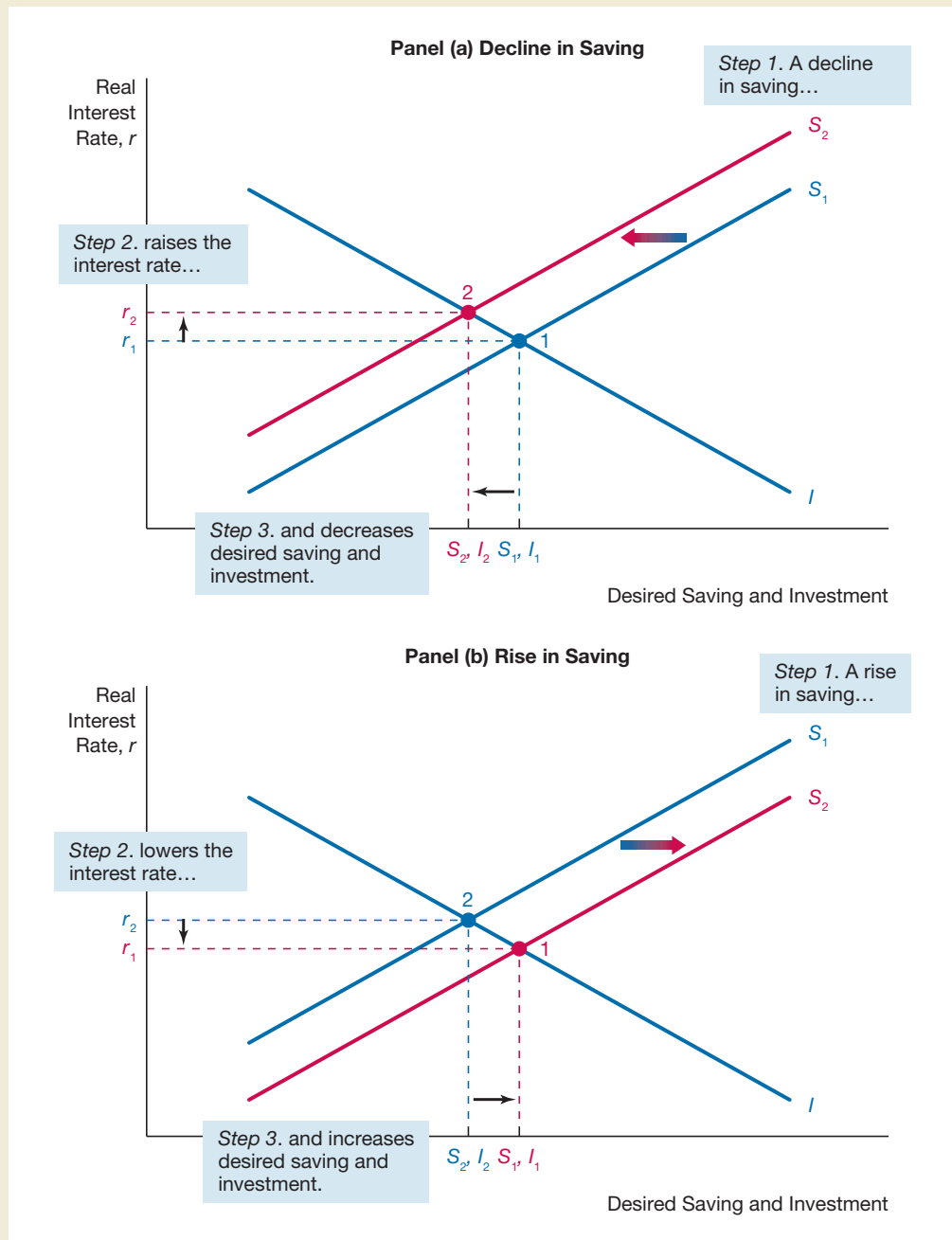
Changes in Saving: Effects of Fiscal Policy

Changes in fiscal policy—such as a change in taxes \bar{T} or government purchases \bar{G} —can also affect the amount of desired saving at any given real interest rate and thus shift the saving curve.

CHANGES IN TAXES. If the government raises taxes, then households will have less income to spend and so will consume less at any given real interest rate. The result is that saving, $S = Y - C - G$, will increase at any given real interest rate and the saving curve will shift to the right from S_1 to S_2 in panel (b) of Figure 4.6. The equilibrium will

FIGURE 4.6**Response to Change in Saving**

Changes in saving from factors such as autonomous consumption expenditure, government spending, or taxes shift the saving curves in panels (a) and (b). A decrease in saving in panel (a) causes the amount of saving and investment to fall to S_2 and I_2 and the equilibrium real interest rate to rise to r_2 . An increase in saving in panel (b) causes the amount of saving and investment to rise to S_2 and I_2 and the equilibrium real interest rate to fall to r_2 .



then move from point 1 to point 2. The rise in taxes will cause the amount of saving and investment to rise to S_2 and I_2 , and the equilibrium real interest rate will fall to r_2 . On the other hand, if the government lowers taxes, then households will have more disposable income and so will spend more, decreasing saving at any given real interest rate. In this case, the saving curve will shift leftward from S_1 to S_2 in panel (a) of Figure 4.6: saving and investment will fall to S_2 and I_2 and the equilibrium real interest rate will rise to r_2 . The result is the following: **a rise in taxes causes saving and investment to**

rise and the real interest rate to fall in the long run, while a fall in taxes causes saving and investment to fall and the real interest rate to rise.

CHANGES IN GOVERNMENT PURCHASES. Now suppose that the government decides to increase its purchases. The rise in government spending will result in a fall in saving at any given real interest rate because $S = Y - C - G$, so that the saving curve will shift to the left, as in panel (a) of Figure 4.6. Saving and investment will then fall to S_2 and I_2 and the equilibrium real interest rate will rise to r_2 . We call this result from our saving-investment analysis **crowding out** because the rise in government spending causes private investment to fall as government spending increases. If, on the other hand, the government cuts spending, then the saving curve will shift to the right as in panel (b) of Figure 4.6: saving and investment will rise and the equilibrium interest rate will fall. We then have the following conclusion: **a rise in government spending causes saving and investment to fall and the real interest rate to rise in the long run, while a decline in government spending causes saving and investment to rise and the real interest rate to fall.**

CHANGES IN GOVERNMENT SAVING. Another way to see the effect of changes in fiscal policy is to recognize that government saving is $S_G = T - G$, which is identical to the budget surplus. Hence a rise in the budget surplus, either from a rise in taxes or a decrease in government spending, leads to higher government saving and higher national saving S .² A higher budget surplus therefore shifts the saving curve to the right, as in panel (b) of Figure 4.6, leading to a rise in saving and investment and a fall in the real interest rate. A decline in taxes or a rise in government spending that leads to a budget deficit, on the other hand, causes government saving to fall, as illustrated by panel (a) of Figure 4.6. The saving curve shifts to the left and saving and investment fall, while the real interest rate rises. We summarize the results on fiscal policy as follows: **increases in government budget deficits (government dissaving) cause saving and investment to fall in the long run and real interest rates to rise.**

Because government budget deficits can lead to crowding out of private investment and higher real interest rates, attempts to use fiscal policy to stimulate the economy are very controversial, as the following Policy and Practice case indicates.

Policy and Practice



Crowding Out and the Debate over the 2009 Fiscal Stimulus Package

Early in 2009, the Obama administration proposed and Congress passed a \$787 billion fiscal stimulus package to promote economic recovery from the recession that started in 2007. Since the weakened economy was already generating lower tax revenue, the increased spending pushed up budget deficits to over \$1 trillion. As a result, the deficit level relative to GDP reached a fifty-year high.

²Although a rise in taxes increases government saving, $S_G = T - G$ it lowers private saving, $S_p = Y - T - C$. However, government saving rises one-for-one with taxes, while private saving falls by less than one-for-one because the rise in taxes causes consumption to fall, so $(T + C)$ rises by less than the increase in T . An increase in government saving at any given real interest rate therefore leads to a rise in national saving, $S = S_G + S_p$.

Critics of the fiscal stimulus package worried that the huge government budget deficits would lead to a rise in interest rates and a decline in investment. They feared that the slow capital stock growth would reduce the future productive capacity of the American economy and make the nation as a whole poorer.

Although the 2009 fiscal stimulus package had potential benefits in terms of increasing employment and output (see Chapters 9 and 13), our saving-investment analysis indicates that we should take these criticisms seriously. If the fiscal stimulus package produces ongoing, huge government budget deficits and government dissaving, it would generate a leftward shift of the saving curve, as in panel (a) of Figure 4.6, which would lead in the long run to a crowding out of investment and higher real interest rates. Even if the Obama fiscal stimulus package were successful in stimulating the U.S. economy in the short run (a topic we will discuss in later chapters), it could have important negative long-run consequences for the U.S. economy if it leads to continuing large budget deficits. Saving-investment analysis suggests that governments must not forget about the long-run consequences of budget deficits in thinking about the use of fiscal stimulus packages to manage the economy.

Changes in Autonomous Investment

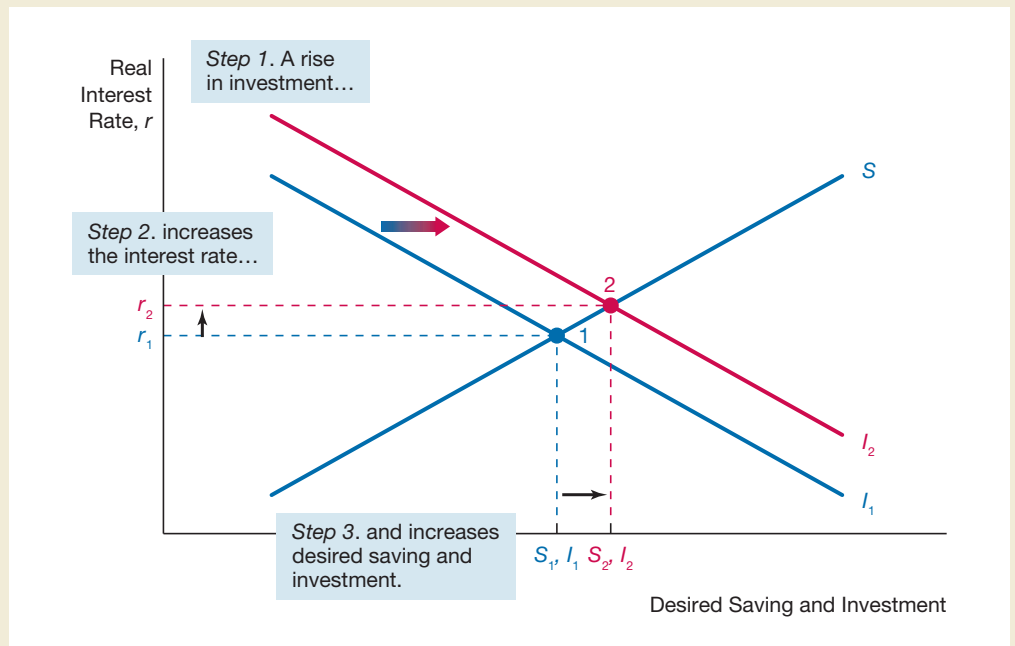
Changes in desired investment as the real interest rate changes are movements along the investment curve that do not change the equilibrium level of real interest rates. However, changes in desired investment that are unrelated to real interest rates, that is autonomous investment, \bar{I} , do cause the investment curve to shift, which leads to a change in equilibrium real interest rates.

There are several reasons that autonomous investment and the investment curve could shift. First, businesses might become more optimistic about the future and so expect higher returns from their investments. Then at any given interest rate, they would be more likely to find investments that are profitable and desired investment would rise. The result would be a rightward shift of the investment curve from I_1 to I_2 in Figure 4.7. Alternatively, changes in the tax code, such as an **investment tax credit**, which gives businesses a tax break when they make an investment in physical capital, encourage businesses to expand investment at any given real interest rate and also shift the investment curve to the right.

Notice in Figure 4.7 that the rightward shift of the investment curve causes the equilibrium to move from point 1 to point 2. Investment will then rise to S_2 and I_2 and the equilibrium real interest rate will also rise to r_2 . **An increase in business optimism or a change in the tax code that increases autonomous investment causes saving, investment, and the real interest rate to rise.** Similar reasoning indicates that **when businesses become more pessimistic or the government raises taxes on investment, lowering autonomous investment, the investment curve will shift to the left, and so saving, investment, and the real interest rate will fall.**

FIGURE 4.7**Response to a Rise in Investment**

A rise in investment (either because of an increase in business optimism or a change in the tax code that encourages investment) shifts the investment curve to I_2 , moving the equilibrium to point 2, increasing desired saving and investment to S_2 and I_2 , and raising the equilibrium real interest rate to r_2 .



Saving, Investment, and Goods Market Equilibrium in an Open Economy

Now we are ready to modify our saving-investment diagram to analyze what happens in **open economies**, which are open to trade and flows of capital across their borders.

Perfect Capital Mobility and the Open Economy

We will assume that the open economy does not have any restrictions on flows of capital between domestic and foreign residents or vice versa, a situation we describe as **perfect capital mobility**. With perfect capital mobility, the domestic real interest rate, r , must be the same as the **world real interest rate**, r^w , the real interest rate found in world markets.

$$r = r^w \quad (15)$$

If the domestic real interest rate r were above the world real interest rate r^w , then with no barriers to capital flows, domestic residents (which include the government) would just borrow abroad at the world real interest rate r^w . Alternatively, if the domestic real interest rate were below the world real interest rate, domestic residents would only lend to foreigners and earn the world interest rate r^w . Since borrowing or lending would only occur at the world real interest rate r^w , the domestic real interest rate will not deviate from the world real interest rate, as in Equation 15.

Goods Market Equilibrium in an Open Economy

In an open economy with international trade, net exports NX will no longer be zero. The total demand for goods and services in an open economy is therefore now $C + I + G + NX$. If the goods market is in equilibrium, this demand will equal the amount of goods and services produced, Y . Goods market equilibrium therefore occurs when:

$$Y = C + I + G + NX \quad (16)$$

By subtracting C and G from both sides of Equation 16 and again recognizing that national saving S from Equation 4 is $Y - C - G$, we can rewrite the condition for goods market equilibrium in an open economy as follows:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} S & = & Y - C - G = \\ \text{Saving} & & \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{rcl} I & + & NX \\ = & \text{Investment} & + \text{Net Exports} \end{array} \quad (17)$$

By subtracting I from both sides, we can write the goods market equilibrium condition alternatively as follows:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} NX & = & S - I \\ \text{Net Exports} & & \text{Saving} - \text{Investment} \end{array} \quad (18)$$

which looks like the net capital flow identity of Equation 6, but is now an equilibrium condition.

Saving, Investment, and the Trade Balance in a Small Open Economy

We will now look at a **small open economy**, an economy that is open to trade and to flows of capital across its borders and that is “small” relative to the world economy, so that whatever happens in this economy has no effect on the world real interest rate. For a small open economy, we can take the world real interest rate, denoted by r^w , as given.

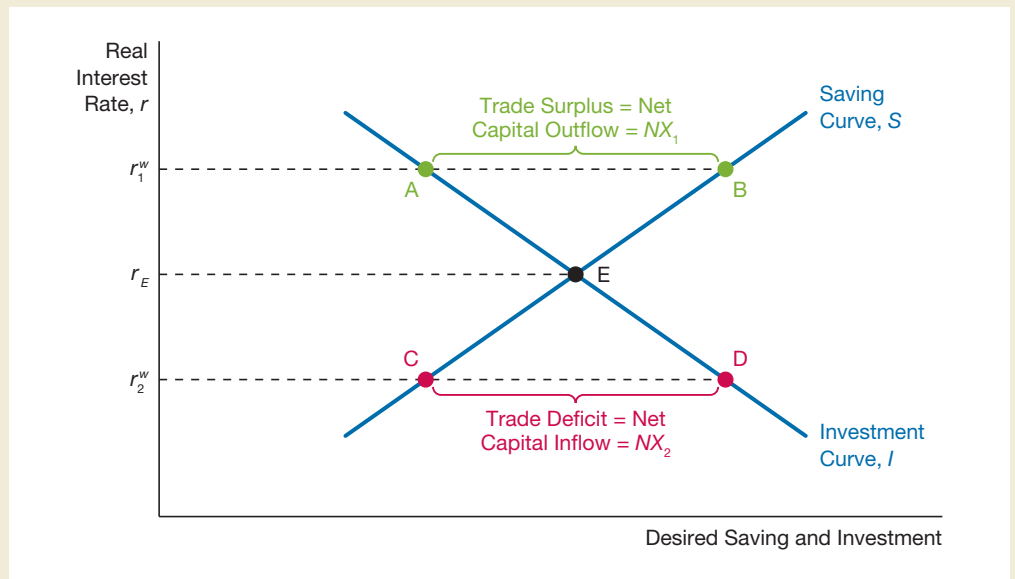
We start with the small open economy because the analysis is relatively straightforward and because many of the results carry over to **large open economies**, like the United States or the Eurozone (the European countries that have adopted the euro as their currency), which are open to trade and capital flows, but are sufficiently large that their saving and investment decisions do influence the world real interest rate. We will discuss large open economies later in the chapter and in an appendix.

Goods Market Equilibrium in a Small Open Economy

We begin by identifying saving and investment when the goods market is in equilibrium in a small open economy. Figure 4.8 uses a similar saving-investment diagram to the one we used for a closed economy with the same saving and investment curves as in Figure 4.5. Recognize that equilibrium does not occur when saving equals investment, as in the closed economy. Instead, it occurs when desired saving *minus* desired investment equals net exports, as in Equation 18.

FIGURE 4.8**Saving-Investment Diagram in a Small Open Economy**

Equilibrium occurs when desired saving minus desired investment equals net exports at the world real interest rate. At the world real interest rate r_1^w , desired saving at point B is higher than desired investment at point A: the difference between the two is a positive value of net exports. Equilibrium in the goods market in a small open economy then occurs at a real interest rate of r_1^w , where the economy is running a trade surplus of NX_1 . At the world real interest r_2^w , investment now rises to point D and is greater than saving at point C, and net exports equals NX_2 , a negative number: there is a net capital inflow and a trade deficit.



GOODS MARKET EQUILIBRIUM: TRADE SURPLUS. Suppose that the world real interest rate in Figure 4.8 is at r_1^w , which is above where the saving and investment curves intersect at r_E , the real interest rate if the economy were closed. With the domestic real interest rate equal to r_1^w , desired saving at point B is higher than desired investment at point A, and the difference between the two is a positive value of net exports. Equilibrium in the goods market in a small open economy then occurs at a real interest rate of r_1^w , where the economy is running a trade surplus of NX_1 . The domestic residents are lending to foreigners, so there is a net capital outflow because saving exceeds investment. The net capital outflow and the lending to foreigners means that domestic residents are increasing their wealth by acquiring more net foreign assets.

To better understand goods market equilibrium in the small open economy, let's compare what is happening in the small open economy to a closed economy. In a closed economy, the real interest rate would have been driven down to r_E to equate saving and investment because the excess saving would have no place to go. In the small open economy, however, the domestic real interest rate cannot fall below r_1^w because domestic residents would not be willing to lend at a lower interest rate than they can get abroad. Instead domestic residents would lend the excess saving, the trade surplus of NX , to foreigners, as Figure 4.8 indicates.

GOODS MARKET EQUILIBRIUM: TRADE DEFICIT. But what if the world real interest rate in Figure 4.8 falls to r_2^w , which is below r_E , so that the domestic real interest rate falls to r_2^w ? Investment now rises to point D and is greater than saving at point C, and so $S - I$, which equals NX , is a negative number, meaning that the economy is running a trade deficit. Domestic residents now need to borrow the amount of the trade deficit to fund the excess investment the economy is engaged in, so there is a net capital inflow. When domestic residents borrow abroad and there is a net capital inflow, net foreign assets are falling and the country's wealth will decrease.

What could cause world real interest rates to fall from r_1^w to r_2^w ? The answer lies in our analysis of the closed economy. Think of the economy of the world as a whole as a closed economy: the goods market is in equilibrium for the world economy when desired world saving equals desired world investment. Thus the analysis in Figures 4.5 through 4.7 applies to the world economy, so changes in autonomous consumption expenditure, investment, and fiscal policy for the world as a whole determine the real interest rate. The analysis for the closed economy therefore tells us that a rise in world saving—from a decline in world autonomous consumption expenditure, a decline in government spending throughout the world, or a rise in world taxes—or alternatively a decline in world investment would lead to a fall in the world real interest rate from r_1^w to r_2^w .

Connection Between the World Economy and Small Open Economy

Because Figure 4.8 shows that the decline in world real interest rates from r_1^w to r_2^w leads to an increase in investment and a decline in net exports and net capital outflows, we have the following result: **increases in world saving (from a decline in world autonomous consumption expenditure, an increase in world taxes, or a decline in government spending throughout the world) or decreases in world investment cause the domestic real interest rate to fall, domestic investment to rise, and net capital outflows (net exports) to fall.** What goes on in the rest of the world is therefore an important determinant of a country's investment, trade balance, and capital flows.

Response to Changes in Saving and Investment in a Small Open Economy

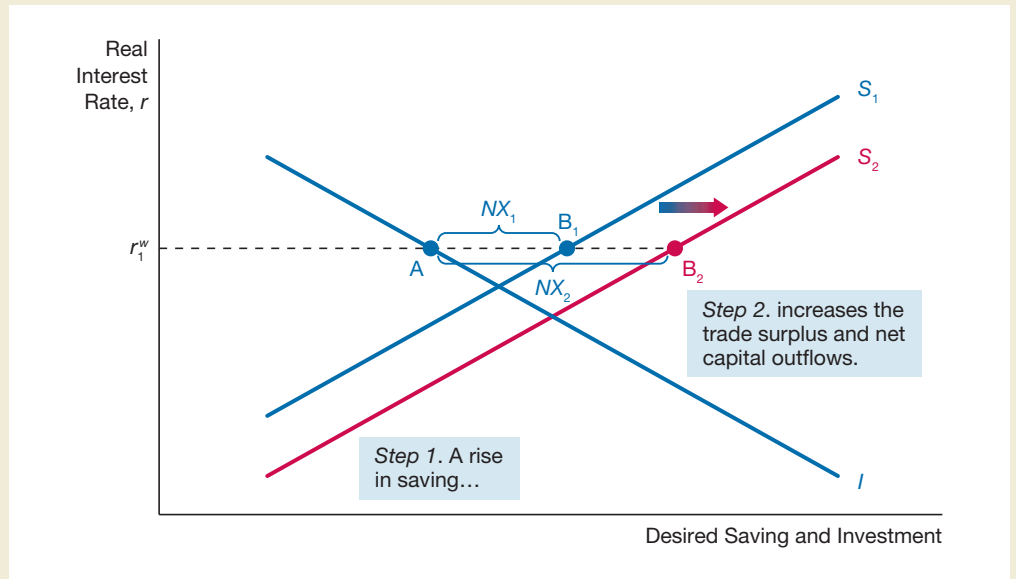
Now that we understand how to determine saving, investment, and the trade balance, we can examine what happens when there is a change in domestic saving or investment.

Changes in Domestic Saving

As we saw in our analysis of the closed economy, a decline in autonomous consumption expenditure or a rise in government saving (resulting from a rise in taxes or a decline in government spending) causes the saving curve to shift to the right from S_1 to S_2 in Figure 4.9. With world and, hence, domestic real interest rates unchanged at r_1^w , the amount of desired saving increases from point B_1 to B_2 . The distance between point A and point B_2 is larger than from point A to point B_1 , so $S - I$ has increased, thereby raising net exports from NX_1 to NX_2 and increasing the trade surplus. The higher amount of excess saving leads to an increase in lending to foreigners so net capital outflow

FIGURE 4.9**Response to a Rise in Saving in a Small Open Economy**

A rise in saving (either from a decline in autonomous consumption expenditure or a rise in government saving) shifts the saving curve from S_1 to S_2 . With the world and hence domestic real interest rate unchanged at r_1^w , the amount of desired saving increases from point B_1 to B_2 . At NX_2 , net exports rise, increasing the trade surplus and net capital outflows.



increases, as do net foreign assets. The result is the following: ***an increase in saving in the small open economy (from a decrease in autonomous consumption expenditure, a rise in government saving from a rise in taxes, or a decline in government spending) leads to a higher trade balance (increase in the trade surplus or a shrinkage of the trade deficit) and an increase in net capital outflows.*** Similar reasoning indicates that ***a decrease in saving leads to a decline in the trade balance (a shrinkage in the trade surplus or an increase in the trade deficit) and a decrease in net capital outflows.***

How does the response to a shift in the saving curve differ from what happens in the closed economy? In the closed economy, an increase in saving represented by a rightward shift in the saving curve, for example, leads to a fall in the real interest rate and a rise in investment. In the small open economy, the domestic and world real interest rates do not change. As a result, the rightward shift in the saving curve does not lead to a change in investment; instead the excess saving spills over to an increase in net exports and a greater net capital outflow. However, in both the closed and open economies, the increase in saving leads to an increase in wealth. In the closed economy, the increase in investment from the increase in saving leads to a higher capital stock, which increases the productive capacity of the economy and so makes the country richer; in the small open economy, it leads to an increase in net foreign assets, which also makes the country richer.

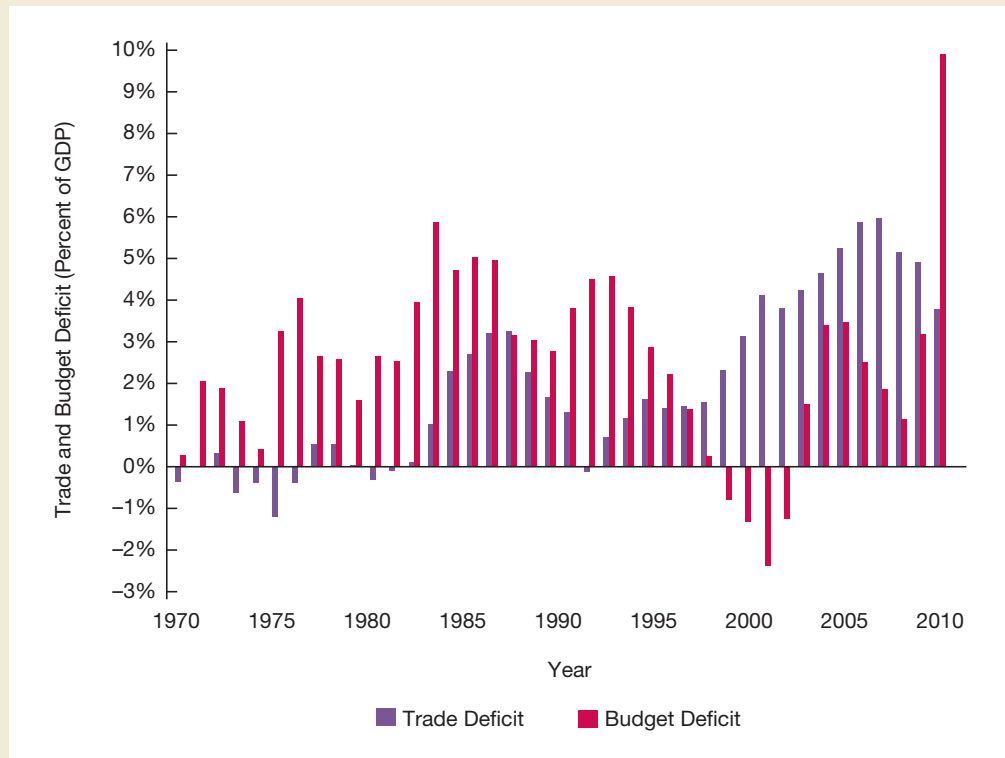
Application

The Twin Deficits

From 1979 to 1983, U.S. government saving declined sharply because the budget deficit for combined government (federal and state and local) went from under 2% of GDP to nearly 6% of GDP (the red colored areas in Figure 4.10). Starting in 1979, the defense buildup started under President Jimmy Carter led to an increase in federal government spending.

FIGURE 4.10**The Twin Deficits, 1970–2010**

U.S. government saving declined sharply from 1979 to 1983 when the government budget deficit went from under 2% of GDP to nearly 6% of GDP (the orange bars). At the same time, the U.S. economy began to display a large trade deficit (the purple bars), leading to the twin deficits. However, in the late 1990s during the Clinton administration, both the federal and the combined government budget went into surplus and yet the trade deficit continued to rise.



Source: Bureau of Economic Analysis. www.bea.gov/national/nipaweb/SelectTable.asp?Selected=N#55

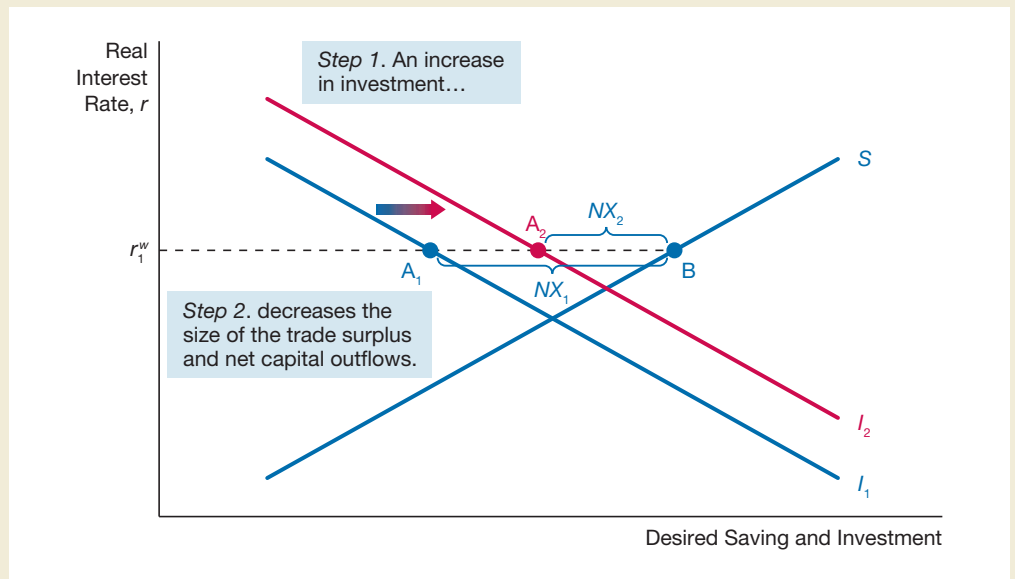
Then the Reagan administration's Economic Recovery Act of 1981 sharply cut income tax rates, leading to a 2% decline in tax revenue. What impact would the resulting government budget deficit have on the trade deficit?

Our analysis in Figure 4.9 indicates that this decline in government saving would lead to a decrease in saving represented by a leftward shift of the saving curve and hence a decline in the trade balance. Sure enough, the U.S. economy began to display a large trade deficit, as we can see in Figure 4.10.

Economists call the phenomenon of a simultaneous trade deficit and government budget deficit **twin deficits**, and our saving-income analysis explains why they occur. However, the twin deficit phenomenon is not the only explanation for trade deficits. For example, we see in Figure 4.10 that in the late 1990s and early 2000s during the Clinton administration, both the federal and the combined government budget went into surplus and yet the trade deficit continued to rise. Our analysis suggests that other factors such as consumers' willingness to spend and invest also affect the trade balance. Indeed in the late 1990s, private saving declined, while investment surged during the boom of the late 1990s. Our model, however, suggests that the budget surpluses at that time kept the trade deficit from growing even larger.

FIGURE 4.11**Response to a Rise in Investment in a Small Open Economy**

If optimistic businesses decide to increase investment, the investment curve shifts to the right from I_1 to I_2 . Desired investment increases from point A_1 to A_2 and the difference between saving and investment now decreases, leading to a decline in net exports from NX_1 to NX_2 and a decrease in net capital outflows.



Changes in Investment

Suppose that businesses become more optimistic and so autonomous investment rises. The investment curve shifts to the right from I_1 to I_2 in Figure 4.11. At the unchanged domestic and world real interest rate of r_1^w , desired investment increases from point A_1 to A_2 and so the difference between saving and investment now decreases, leading to a decline in net exports from NX_1 to NX_2 . The smaller amount of excess saving and smaller trade surplus means that domestic residents have less to lend to foreigners and so net capital outflows decrease. **An increase in autonomous investment causes a decline in the trade balance (the trade surplus to shrink or the trade deficit to increase) and lowers net capital outflows.** Net capital outflows decrease in this case, but wealth does not decline: although holdings of net foreign assets are lower than they otherwise would be, they are offset by the higher domestic capital stock that results from the increase in investment.

Large Versus Small Open Economies

Our analysis of the small open economy ignores the possible effects of changes in saving and investment in a large open economy, like the United States, on world interest rates. The saving-investment analysis for large open economies is somewhat more complicated than the analysis we have done so far for closed and small open economies (see the chapter appendix). However, we can compare the results for the shifts in the saving and investment curves in a large versus a small open economy to see whether the effect on the trade balance and net capital outflows is the same whether the economy is small or large. We find that: **An increase in desired saving for a small or large open economy leads to an increase in the trade balance and an increase in net capital outflows, while an increase in desired investment leads to a decrease in the trade balance and a decrease in net capital outflows.**

The difference between the small and large economy frameworks is that shifts in saving and investment *do* affect the domestic real interest rate in a large open economy, but *not* in a small open economy. The reason for this difference is that the world interest rate *is* affected by shifts in domestic saving and investment in a large open economy, but is *not* affected by such shifts in a small open economy. ***In a large open economy, a rise in desired saving leads to a fall in the domestic real interest rate, while a rise in desired investment leads to a rise in the domestic real interest rate.*** This effect on domestic real interest rates and the actual levels of saving and investment is therefore similar to what we found for a closed economy.

Looking at the results in this way leads to the following conclusion. ***We can think of a large open economy as being a mix of a small open economy and a closed economy: the direction of the effect of shifts in saving and investment on the trade balance and net capital flows are the same as in a small open economy, while the direction of the effect on the domestic real interest rate and the actual levels of saving and investment are the same as in a closed economy.*** For this reason, many economists discuss what happens in large open economies like the United States using both the simple small open economy or closed economy frameworks presented in this chapter. To analyze what determines the trade balance and net capital outflows, the small open economy framework gives the right answer; to analyze what determines the domestic real interest rate and the actual levels of saving and investment, the closed economy model gives the right answer.

SUMMARY

1. Three saving measures figure prominently in macroeconomics: private saving ($S_P = Y - T - C$), government saving ($S_G = T - G$), and national saving ($S = Y - C - G = S_P + S_G$), which is the sum of the other two. The net capital outflow identity says that net capital outflow, the difference between saving and investment, equals net exports: $S - I = NX$. The uses-of-saving identity indicates that saving is linked to wealth because it either goes into investment, which adds to physical capital, or into net capital outflow, which adds to a country's net foreign assets.
2. In a closed economy, the goods market is in equilibrium when saving equals investment, $S = I$, at the intersection of the saving and investment curves.
3. An increase in saving (from either a decrease in autonomous consumption, a decrease in government purchases, or an increase in taxes) shifts the saving curve to the right and leads to a lower real interest rate and higher saving and investment. An increase in autonomous investment shifts the investment curve to the right and leads to a rise in investment, saving, and the real interest rate.
4. In an open economy, the domestic real interest rate equals the world real interest rate. Goods market equilibrium occurs when net exports equals saving minus investment: $NX = S - I$.
5. Increases in world saving or decreases in world investment cause the domestic real interest rate to fall, domestic investment to rise, and net capital outflows (net exports) to fall.
6. An increase in saving in a small open economy leads to a higher trade balance and an increase in net capital outflows. An increase in desired investment causes a decline in the trade balance and lowers net capital outflows.
7. A large open economy is a mix of a small open economy and a closed economy: the direction of the effect of shifts in saving and investment on the trade balance and net capital flows are the same as in a small open economy, while the direction of the effect on the domestic real interest rate and the actual amounts of saving and investment are the same as in a closed economy.

KEY TERMS

- | | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| autonomous consumption, p. 76 | large open economy, p. 84 | saving-investment diagram, p. 78 |
| autonomous investment, p. 78 | national saving, p. 69 | small open economy, p. 84 |
| balance of payments accounts, p. 71 | national saving rate, p. 70 | trade deficit, p. 71 |
| budget surplus, p. 69 | national wealth, p. 68 | trade surplus, p. 71 |
| closed economy, p. 75 | net capital outflow, p. 71 | twin deficits, p. 88 |
| crowding out, p. 81 | net capital outflow identity, p. 71 | uses-of-saving identity, p. 71 |
| government consumption, p. 68 | net foreign assets, p. 73 | value-added tax, p. 70 |
| government investment, p. 68 | open economy, p. 83 | wealth, p. 67 |
| government saving, p. 68 | perfect capital mobility, p. 83 | world real interest rate, p. 83 |
| investment tax credit, p. 82 | private saving, p. 68 | |
| | private saving rate, p. 68 | |

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Relationship Between Saving and Wealth

1. Describe the two components of national saving and explain how saving affects national wealth.

Saving, Investment, and Goods Market Equilibrium in a Closed Economy

2. What determines the desired amounts of national saving and investment? What relation between desired saving and desired investment is required for goods market equilibrium and how is this condition reached?

Response to Changes in Saving and Investment in a Closed Economy

3. What causes desired saving to increase? What effects will an increase in desired saving have in a closed economy?
4. What is crowding out?

Saving, Investment, and Goods Market Equilibrium in an Open Economy

5. Distinguish between a closed and an open economy. How do the conditions required for goods market equilibrium differ in the two types of economies?
6. What determines the world real interest rate? Why must the domestic real interest rate be the same as the world rate?

Saving, Investment, and the Trade Balance in a Small Open Economy

7. How does a small open economy differ from a large open economy?
8. What determines whether a small open economy will have a trade surplus or a trade deficit?
9. What happens in a small open economy if there is an increase in domestic saving?

Response to Changes in Saving and Investment in a Small Open Economy

10. What is the effect of an increase in domestic saving or domestic investment on the trade balance and net capital outflows?

Large Versus Small Open Economies

11. How are the effects of changes in domestic saving and investment for large open economies similar to those for small open economies and closed economies?

PROBLEMS

All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Relationship Between Saving and Wealth

1. Suppose Japan has a GDP of \$5 trillion, and that its national savings rate is 25%.
- Calculate Japan's national saving.
 - Calculate Japan's government saving if private saving is \$800 billion.

Saving, Investment, and Goods Market Equilibrium in a Closed Economy

2. Assume you have saved \$20,000 and that you are considering a couple of options. One of them is to use these funds as a down payment to buy a newly built house. The other one is to buy a U.S. savings bond.
- Which option will add to the economy's capital stock and which one will not? Explain why.
 - How would a decrease in the real interest rate affect your decision?

Response to Changes in Saving and Investment in a Closed Economy

3. Consider the (rather implausible) scenario in which the U.S. government phases out all Social Security transfers to retirees. Assuming the goods market is in equilibrium, graph the new saving curve and comment on the effects on the level of saving, investment, and the real interest rate.
4. The financial crisis that hit the United States first and then the world economy starting in fall 2007 meant that the future prospects of many firms looked gloomy at best for some time. Comment on the effect of a recession on the investment curve (only) and on the level of savings, investment, and the equilibrium real interest rate. Show your answers using a graph.
5. On March 23, 2010, President Obama signed into law a major overhaul of the U.S. health-care system. The Congressional Budget Office estimated that this legislation will reduce the U.S. government budget deficit by around \$140 billion for the next ten years. Comment on the effect of this legislation on the saving curve (graph the new equilibrium).

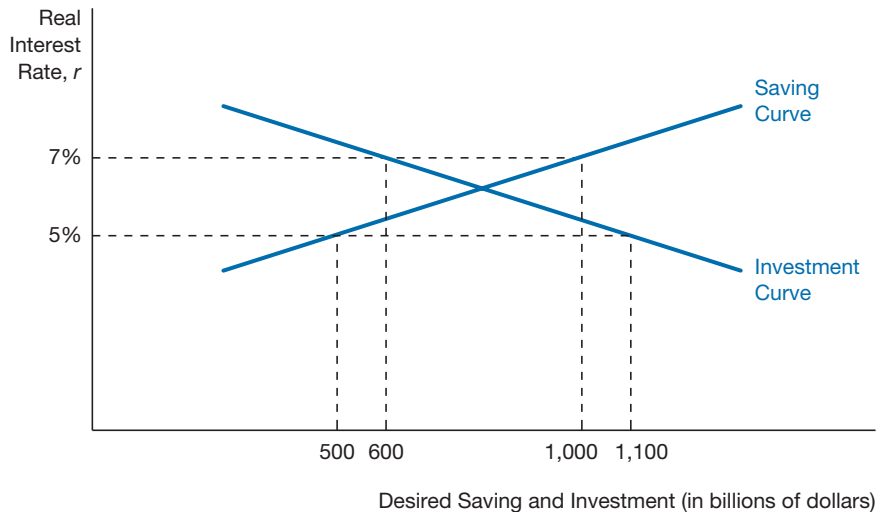
Saving, Investment, and Goods Market Equilibrium in an Open Economy

6. Suppose Japan has a GDP of \$5 trillion, and that its national savings rate is 25%. Assuming Japan is an open economy,
- calculate Japan's investment if net exports are 1% of GDP.
 - calculate Japan's exports if imports are valued at \$650 billion.

7. Consider the following diagram of a small open economy:

a) Calculate net exports and the capital outflow when the world real interest rate is 7%.

b) Calculate net exports and the capital outflow when the world real interest rate is 5%.



Response to Changes in Saving and Investment in a Small Open Economy

8. Consider a small open economy that is currently running a trade surplus. Answer the following questions using a graphic representation of desired saving and investment in the small open economy:

a) Is the world real interest rate higher or lower than the real interest rate that would prevail if this was a closed economy?

b) What would be the effect of an autonomous decrease in investment on the trade balance?

9. Comment on the effect of a decrease in autonomous investment on wealth when the economy can be considered a

a) closed economy.
b) small open economy.

Large versus Small Open Economies

10. Comment on the effect of an increase in the government budget surplus (or a decrease in the government budget deficit) on the real interest rate, desired saving, and net exports for a

a) large open economy.

b) small open economy.



MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.



Chapter 4

Appendix

Saving and Investment in Large Open Economies

Our analysis of the small open economy provided many useful results that apply to any open economy. For a large open economy like the United States, this analysis ignores the possible effects of shifts in U.S. saving and investment on world interest rates. We will now look at goods market equilibrium when we break up the world into two large economies, the domestic economy, denoted by d , and the rest of the world, denoted by row .

Goods Market Equilibrium in Large Open Economies

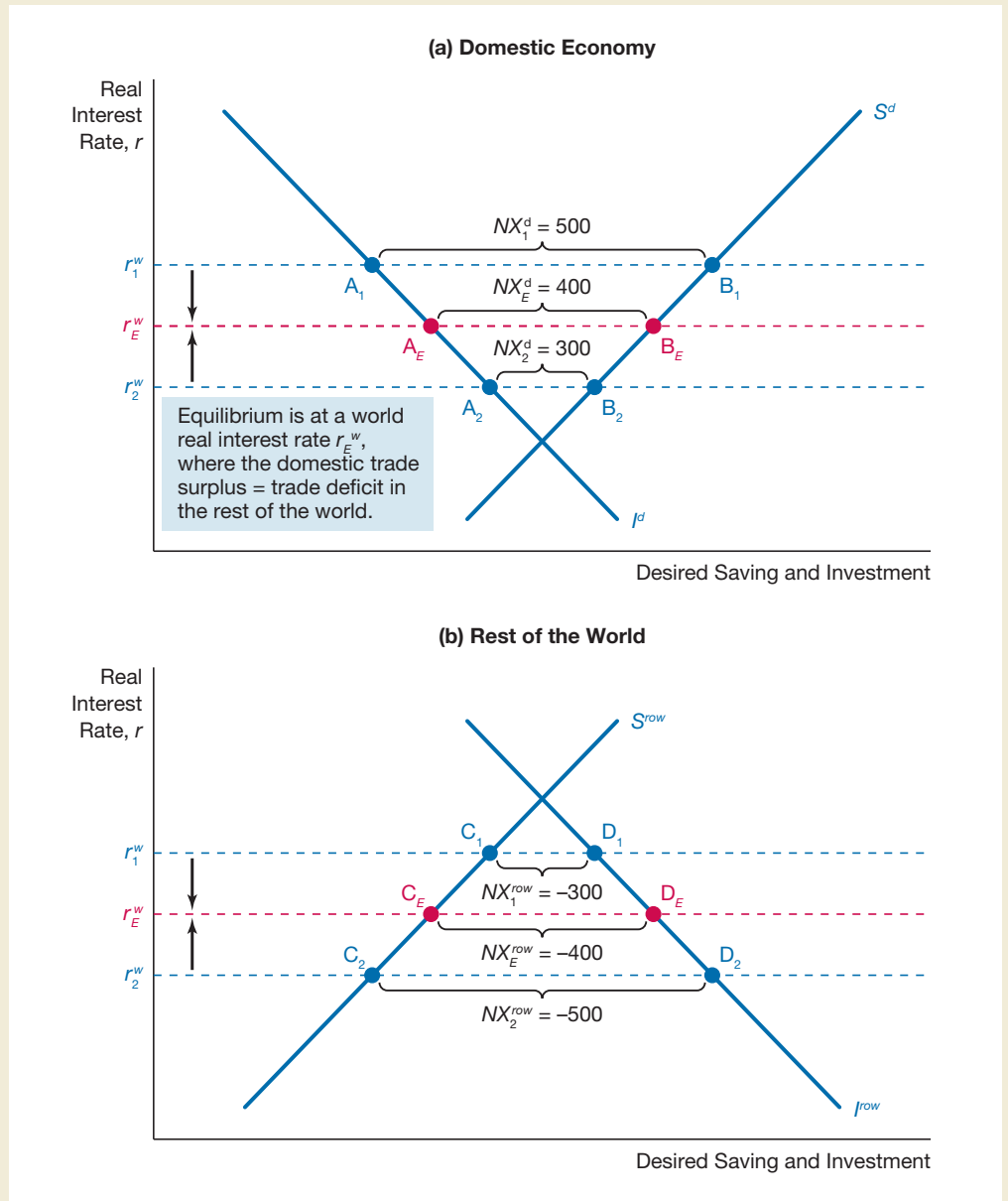
The economy of the world as a whole is a closed economy, so the world real interest rate is determined by the goods market equilibrium condition that desired world saving equals desired world investment. Translating this condition to two large economies implies that the excess of desired saving over desired investment in one economy—that is, its amount of foreign lending—must be matched by the excess of desired investment over desired saving in the other economy—that is, the amount of borrowing from foreigners that the other economy undertakes. Alternatively, we can say that the trade surplus in one economy must equal the trade deficit in the other or, equivalently, that net capital outflows from one economy must match the net capital inflows from all the others.

Figure 4A1.1 illustrates how this process works with saving and investment curves for the two economies. Suppose that the world real interest rate is at r_1^w . Panel (a) shows what is happening in the domestic economy. At the world real interest rate of $r_1^w = r_1^d$, domestic desired saving at point B_1 is greater than domestic desired investment at point A_1 . As a result, the domestic economy is running a trade surplus of NX_1^d , which for illustration purposes, we will say is \$500 billion. The excess saving in the domestic economy of \$500 billion then means that domestic residents want to lend this amount to foreigners.

FIGURE 4A1.1

Equilibrium in Large Open Economies

Equilibrium occurs when the world interest rate is at r_E^w where the trade surplus (net capital outflow) of \$400 billion in the domestic economy in panel (a) equals the trade deficit (net capital inflow) of \$400 billion in the rest of the world in panel (b).



For the world economy described in panel (b), the same world real interest rate of $r_1^w = r_1^{row}$ leads to desired investment in this economy at point D_1 exceeding desired saving at point C_1 . The rest of the world is running a trade deficit of NX_1^{row} , which we can see is \$300 billion. This trade deficit is less than the trade surplus in the domestic economy of \$500 billion. But because the trade surplus in the domestic economy is greater than the trade deficit in the rest of the world, the domestic economy wants to lend more than the rest of the world wants to borrow. As a result, the world real interest rate will fall, as the downward arrows in both panels (a) and (b) indicate.

When will the world real interest rate stop falling? Only when it reaches r_E^w . At $r_E^d = r_E^w$, desired domestic saving at point B_E in panel (a) is greater than desired domestic investment at point A_E by \$400 billion, while desired investment in the rest of the world at point D_E is greater than desired saving in the rest of the world at point C_E by \$400 billion as well. Now the trade surplus in the domestic economy of $NX_E^d = \$400$ billion equals the trade deficit in the rest of the world of $NX_E^{row} = \$400$ billion, and so the amount of domestic residents' desired lending at \$400 billion is equal to the amount of borrowing sought by the rest of the world. The goods market is now in equilibrium for the entire world.

Now suppose the world real interest rate were at r_2^w , which is below r_E^w . Then at $r_2^d = r_2^w$, desired domestic saving at point B_2 in panel (a) is greater than desired domestic investment at point A_2 by \$300 billion, while desired investment in the rest of the world at point D_2 is greater than desired saving in the rest of the world at point C_2 by \$500 billion. Now the trade surplus in the domestic economy of $NX_2^d = \$300$ billion is less than the trade deficit in the rest of the world of $NX_2^{row} = \$500$ billion. Domestic residents' desired lending of \$300 billion is less than the \$500 billion amount of borrowing that the rest of the world wants. Because the rest of the world wants to borrow more funds than the domestic economy wants to lend, the world real interest rate will rise, as the upward arrows in both panels (a) and (b) indicate. Only when the world real interest rate settles at r_E^w will it have no tendency to change and world goods market equilibrium will be satisfied.

Changes in Domestic Saving

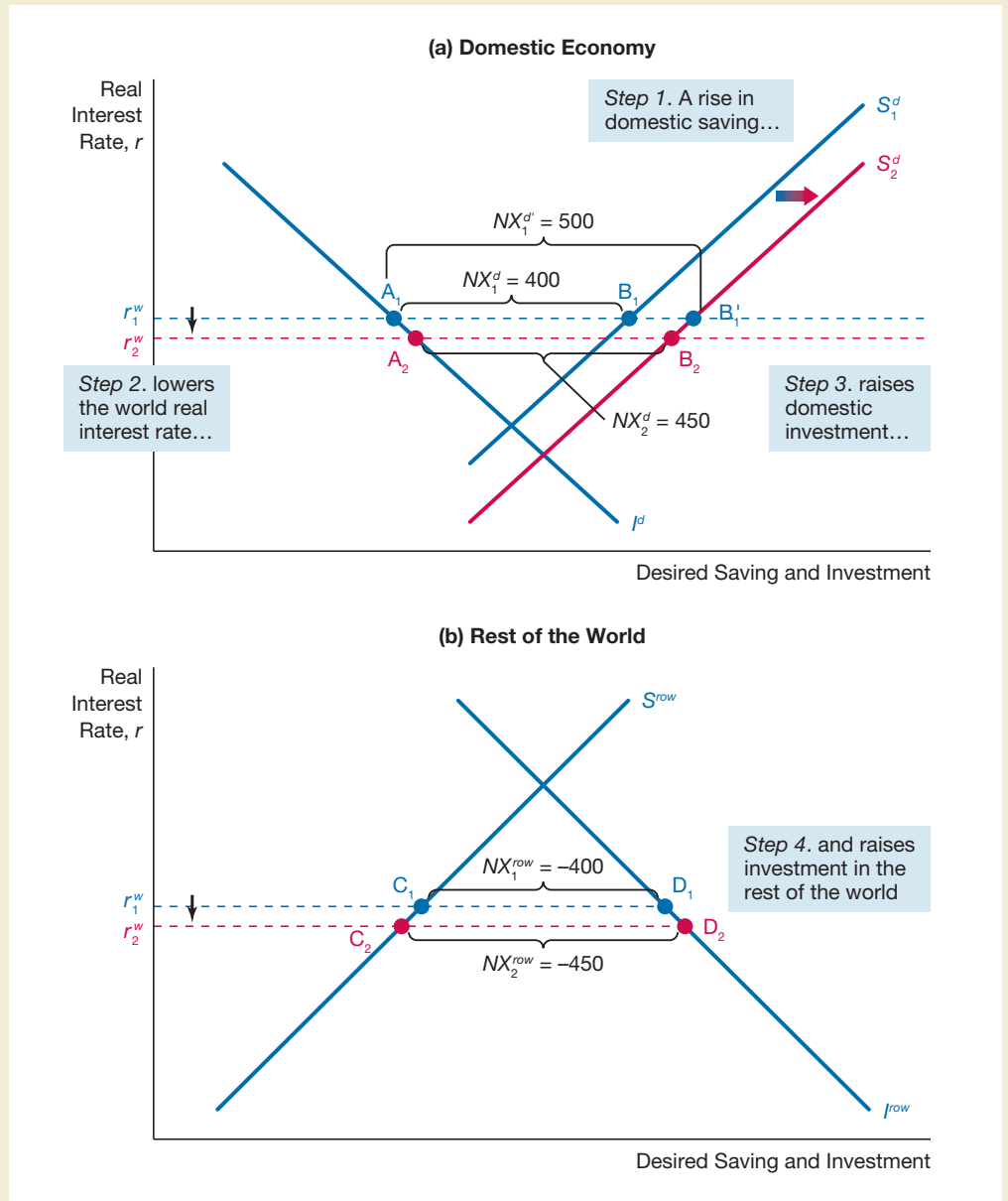
Now let's look at what happens when desired saving increases in the domestic economy because of a decline in autonomous consumption expenditure, a tax increase, or a decline in government purchases. The domestic saving curve shifts to the right from S_1^d to S_2^d in panel (a) of Figure 4A1.2. The domestic trade surplus at any given world real interest rate will now rise. The goods market will no longer be in equilibrium because at r_1^w the trade surplus at \$500 billion in the domestic economy will exceed the trade deficit of \$400 billion in the rest of the world. Because domestic residents will want to lend more than the rest of the world wants to borrow, the world real interest rate will fall, as the downward arrow indicates. Only when it reaches a level of r_2^w will the goods market be back in equilibrium. At r_2^w , the trade surplus in the domestic economy falls to NX_2^d of \$450 billion and the trade deficit in the rest of the world NX_2^{row} rises to \$450 billion. The amount of lending domestic residents want to do is equal to the amount of borrowing the rest of the world wants. We also see that the decline in the world real interest rate causes a rise in both domestic investment at point A_2 and investment in the rest of the world at point D_2 . **A rise in domestic saving (from a decrease in autonomous consumption expenditure, a rise in taxes, or a cut in government purchases)**

1. **raises the trade surplus and net capital outflows in the domestic economy,**
2. **raises the trade deficit and capital inflows in the rest of the world,**
3. **lowers world interest rates, and**
4. **raises investment in both the domestic economy and the rest of the world.**

FIGURE 4A1.2

Response to a Rise in Domestic Saving in a Large Open Economy

A rise in domestic saving in panel (a) increases the domestic trade surplus at any given world real interest rate. At r_1^w in panels (a) and (b), the \$500 billion trade surplus in the domestic economy (marked as $NX_1^d = 500$) will exceed the \$400 billion trade deficit in the rest of the world. Because domestic residents will now want to lend more than the rest of the world wants to borrow, the world real interest rate will fall to r_2^w . Equilibrium occurs when the trade surplus of \$450 billion at NX_2^d in panel (a) equals the \$450 billion trade deficit at NX_2^{row} in panel (b). The decline in the world real interest rate causes a rise in both domestic investment at point A_2 in panel (a) and investment in the rest of the world at point D_2 in panel (b).



Application

The Global Saving Glut

In 2005, Ben Bernanke, now the Chairman but then a governor of the Federal Reserve, gave a famous speech in which he coined the term “global saving glut.” He was trying to explain two puzzling phenomena at the time: the very low U.S. real interest rates and the very large trade deficits. In the speech he conjectured that the source of both phenomena might be the

huge increase in saving in Asian countries such as China. Does our analysis of large open economies here support his conjecture?

Indeed it does. To illustrate, let's assume that the large domestic economy in panel (a) of Figure 4A1.2 is China. The surge in saving in China would shift the domestic saving curve to the right from S_1^d to S_2^d in panel (a). As we see in the figure, this rightward shift would have several effects. First, it would cause net exports in China to rise, which would be matched by an increase in the trade deficit in the rest of the world, including the United States. Second, for the excess saving in China to reach equilibrium with the excess investment in the rest of the world, the world real interest rate would fall, thereby driving down real interest rates in the United States. Third, the lower domestic real interest rate resulting from the lower world real interest rate would lead to an increase in the actual level of investment in the United States and the rest of the world. This analysis matches the actual events that transpired: the global saving glut provides a coherent explanation for what at first looked like a very puzzling phenomena.

The very low real interest rates were an important source of the housing boom that engulfed the world up until 2006. Unfortunately, when the housing boom came to an end and the housing market crashed, the world economy, starting in 2007, experienced the worst financial crisis since the Great Depression period of the 1930s, which we will discuss in detail in Chapter 15. The global saving glut's contribution to the worst contraction of world economic activity since the 1930s has led many economists and international organizations to worry that global imbalances caused by excess saving in countries like China pose a threat to the health of the world economy.



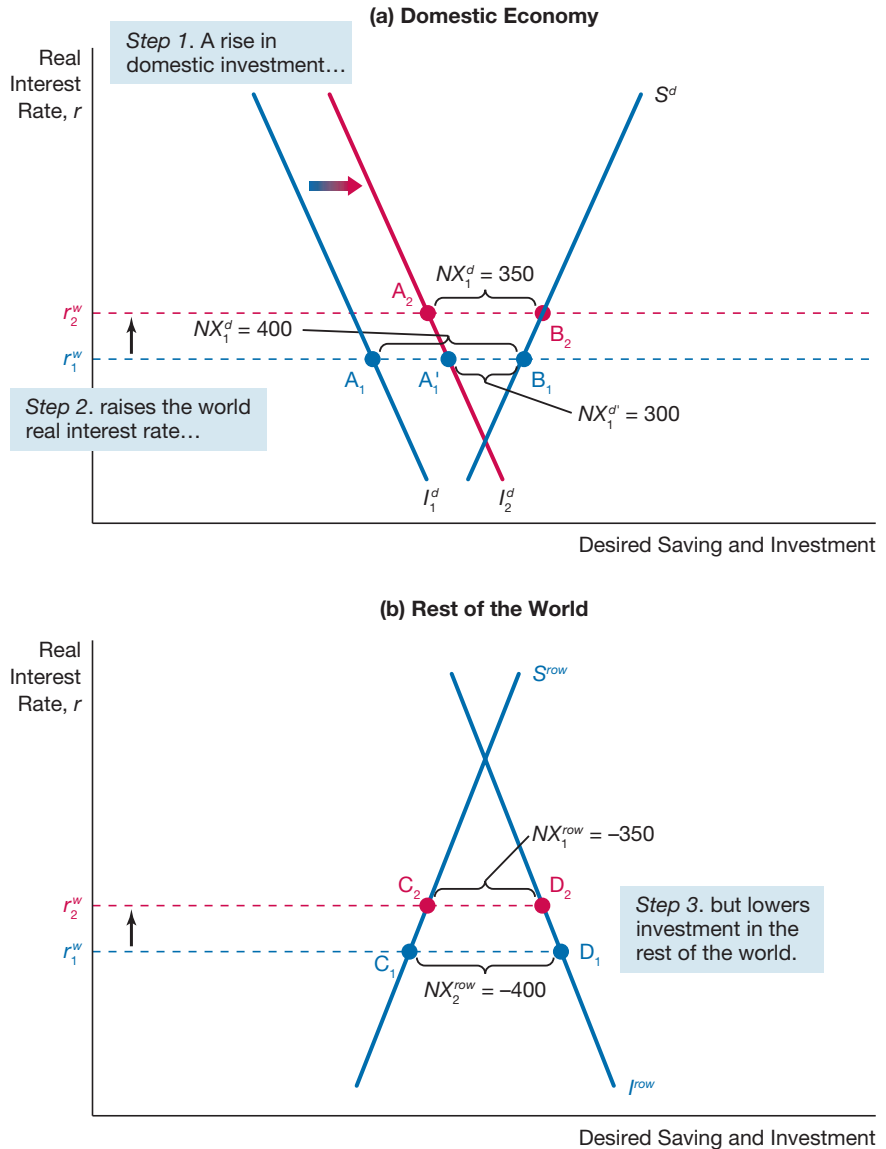
Changes in Domestic Investment

Now let's look at what happens when desired investment increases, say, because of a surge in business optimism in a large open economy. The domestic investment curve shifts to the right from I_1^d to I_2^d in panel (a) of Figure 4A1.3. The domestic trade surplus at any given world real interest rate will now fall. The goods market will no longer be in equilibrium because at r_1^w the trade surplus at \$300 billion in the domestic country will be less than the trade deficit of \$400 billion in the rest of the world. Because domestic residents will now want to lend less than the rest of the world wants to borrow, the world real interest rate will rise, as the upward arrow indicates. Only when it reaches a level of r_2^w will the goods market be back in equilibrium. At r_2^w , the trade surplus in the domestic economy falls to NX_2^d of \$350 billion and the trade deficit in the rest of the world NX_2^{row} falls to \$350 billion. The amount of lending domestic residents desire is equal to the amount of borrowing the rest of the world wants. The increase in domestic investment at point A_2 , which causes the world real interest rate to rise, leads to a fall in investment to the rest of the world at point D_2 . **An increase in domestic desired investment lowers the trade surplus and net capital outflows in the domestic economy, lowers the trade deficit and capital inflows in the rest of the world, raises world interest rates, and lowers investment in the rest of the world.**

FIGURE 4A1.3

Response to a Rise in Domestic Investment in a Large Open Economy

A rise in domestic investment increases investment in panel (a). The domestic trade surplus at any given world real interest rate will now fall. At r_1^w in panels (a) and (b), the \$300 billion trade surplus in the domestic economy (marked as $NX_1^d = 300$) is less than the \$400 billion trade deficit in the rest of the world. Because domestic residents will now want to lend less than the rest of the world wants to borrow, the world real interest rate will rise to r_2^w . Equilibrium occurs when the trade surplus of \$350 billion at NX_2^d in panel (a) equals the \$350 billion trade deficit at NX_2^{row} in panel (b). The increase in domestic investment at point A_2 leads to a fall in investment to the rest of the world at point D_2 .

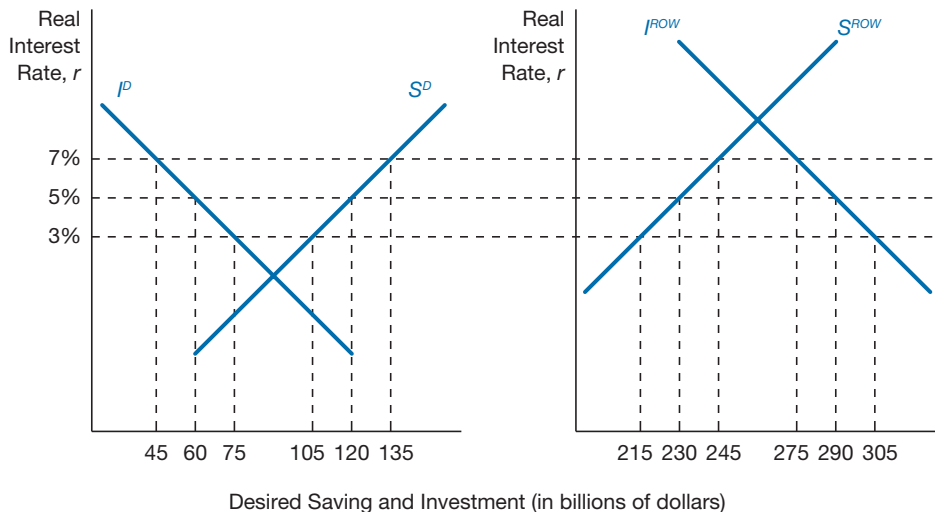


SUMMARY

- In large open economies, a rise in domestic saving
 - raises the trade surplus and net capital outflows in the domestic economy,
 - raises the trade deficit and capital inflows in the rest of the world,
 - raises investment in both the domestic economy and the rest of the world,
 - lowers world interest rates.
- In large open economies, an increase in domestic desired investment
 - lowers the trade surplus and net capital outflows in the domestic country,
 - lowers the trade deficit and capital inflows in the rest of the world,
 - raises world interest rates, and lowers investment in the rest of the world.

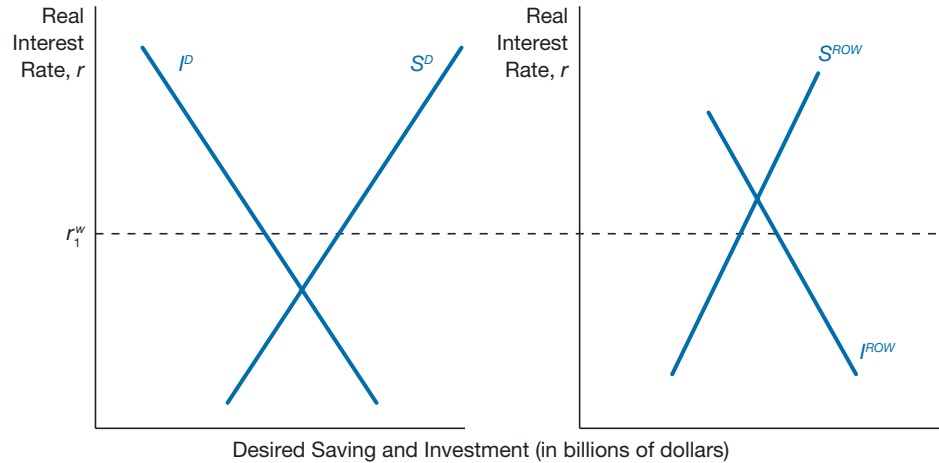
REVIEW QUESTIONS AND PROBLEMS

- Considering the world as two large open economies, a domestic economy and the rest of the world, what condition is required for goods market equilibrium? How is this condition achieved?
- How will a fall in domestic investment affect the trade surplus and net capital outflows in the domestic economy, the trade deficit and capital inflows in the rest of the world, investment in both economies, and the world real interest rate?
- What is the effect of a fall in domestic saving on the trade surplus, investment, and interest rates in both the domestic and foreign economies?
- The following graph represents the two large economies (domestic and rest of the world). For each level of the interest rate, calculate the value of the domestic economy's net exports and foreign lending. What would be the equilibrium world interest rate?



5. Consider the following graph, where the equilibrium world interest rate is 4% and the domestic economy is currently running a trade surplus. What would be the effect of a decrease in government expenditure in the

domestic economy? Use the graph to determine changes in the domestic economy investment level and in the equilibrium world interest rate.



6. Investment in the United States declined sharply as a result of the subprime financial crisis. Assuming the United States is a large open

economy, explain how a decrease in investment will affect the equilibrium world interest rate and the U.S. trade surplus.



5

Money and Inflation

Preview

My first car in 1976, a Toyota Corolla, cost a little over \$3,000, while today a Toyota Corolla runs at a price of about \$15,000. Today's \$10 movie went for less than \$2 in 1976, and for \$10 you could have purchased the movie, a buttered popcorn, a soft drink, and even some dinner beforehand. Today's higher costs result from *inflation*, a general rise in the price level.

In graphical form, the swings in the inflation rate over the last half-century look like a roller coaster. Long stretches of moderate price level changes in the 1960s gave way to periods of soaring inflation rates over the next two decades. The inflation rate climaxed at over 13% in 1980, a period known as the Great Inflation, but has tempered since then. In 2009, the price level fell so quickly that inflation actually became negative for a time.

What explains these swings in the inflation rate? How can policymakers stop the price level's roller-coaster ride? Over fifty years ago, economist Milton Friedman famously proposed that "inflation is always and everywhere a monetary phenomenon."¹ Central banks, he argued, could prevent high-inflation episodes by controlling the *quantity of money*.

In this chapter, we will see that the growth rate of the quantity of money does explain inflation in the long run—when prices fully adjust to an equilibrium level—but not very well in the short run. We start the chapter by developing precise definitions of money and describing how it is currently measured. We then examine the link between money, inflation, and interest rates, and then discuss the costs of inflation for households and businesses.

¹Milton Friedman, *Dollars and Deficits* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1968), 39.

What Is Money?

To avoid confusion, we must clarify how economists' use of the word *money* differs from conventional usage.

Meaning of Money

When people talk about money, they usually refer to **currency**, the bills and coins in our pockets. If a sketchy character approaches you and says, "Your money or your life," you would probably hand over all your currency. An economist, on the other hand, might reply, "What exactly do you mean by 'money'?" (And this response might have dire consequences.)

Economists define **money** as an asset that is generally accepted in payment for goods and services or in the repayment of debts. Because checks are also accepted as payment for purchases, deposits in checking accounts are also considered money. Even deposits in savings accounts can function as money if they can quickly and easily be converted into currency or checking account deposits. As you can see, there is no single, precise definition of money for economists.

To complicate matters further, the word *money* is frequently used synonymously with *wealth*. When people say that Donald Trump is rolling in money, they don't just mean he has a high balance in his checking account. They're also referring to his stocks, bonds, houses, and hotels. Economists would say "the Donald" has a great deal of **wealth**, the total collection of property that serves as a store of value. Wealth includes money and other assets, including property such as bonds, common stock, art, land, furniture, cars, and houses.

People also use the word *money* to describe what economists call *income*, as in the sentence, "Hortense would be a wonderful catch; she has a good job and earns a lot of money." Returning to the terminology we discussed in Chapter 2, **income** is a *flow* of earnings per unit of time. Money by contrast is a *stock*: It is a certain amount at a given point of time. If Hortense tells you that her income is \$10,000, you cannot tell whether she earns a lot or a little without knowing whether she earns this \$10,000 per year, month, or day. But if she told you she had \$10,000 in small, unmarked bills in her briefcase, you would know exactly what she meant.

Functions of Money

Whether shells, rocks, gold, or paper (see the box, "Unusual Forms of Money"), money has three primary functions in any economy: as a *medium of exchange*, as a *unit of account*, and as a *store of value*. Of the three, its function as a medium of exchange best distinguishes money from other assets such as stocks, bonds, and houses.

MEDIUM OF EXCHANGE. In almost all market transactions in our economy, money in the form of currency and checks is a **medium of exchange**; it is used to pay for goods and services. The use of money as a medium of exchange promotes economic efficiency by minimizing **transaction costs**, the time and money spent exchanging goods or services. Without money, people would *barter*, or exchange goods and services directly for other goods and services. This process is highly inefficient, since all trades would need to satisfy a "double coincidence of wants." An economics professor, for instance, would have to locate an intellectually curious farmer with whom to exchange food for a lesson on supply and demand, or else grow her own food. With money from teaching, the professor can visit any farmer (or



Unusual Forms of Money

The need for money is so strong that almost every society beyond the most primitive invents it, and many seemingly strange objects have been used as money. American Indians used strings of beads called *wampum* as money, while early American colonists used barrels of tobacco and whisky as money because currency from the mother country, England, was unavailable. The residents on the island of Yap exchanged big stone wheels, up to twelve feet in diameter, as money. Prisoners of

war in a POW camp during World II found barter so inefficient that they made cigarettes their money in the conduct of all trades.* The diversity of forms of money developed over the years is a testament to the inventiveness of the human race and to the development of tools and language.

*See the classic and entertaining article on the development of money in trying circumstances by R.A. Radford, "The Economic Organization of a P.O.W. Camp," *Economica* 12 (November 1945); 189–201.

his representative at the supermarket) to buy food. Money, therefore, promotes economic efficiency by eliminating transaction costs and allowing people to specialize in what they do best. Money is an essential lubricant for a smoothly running economy.

UNIT OF ACCOUNT. Just as we measure weight in pounds and distance in miles, we measure the value of goods and services in terms of money. Money provides a **unit of account**, or measure of value in the economy. It is far more convenient to indicate the price of all goods or services in terms of money than in terms of other goods and services. How confusing would it be if economics lectures were priced in terms of a number of hamburgers, while hamburgers were priced in terms of a number of apples? Suppose a professor, who doesn't like hamburgers but does like apples, wants to know how many apples he or she could buy after giving one lecture. The professor would need to go through a complicated calculation that might make that hamburger appealing after all.

STORE OF VALUE. Money also functions as a **store of value**; it is a repository of purchasing power that lasts over time. A store of value saves purchasing power from the time income is received until the time it is spent. This function of money is useful because most of us do not want to spend our income immediately upon receiving it, but rather prefer to wait until we have time or the desire to shop.

Stocks, bonds, property, and jewelry also store wealth, and many such assets can appreciate in value over time. Nevertheless, money is still desired as a store of value because of its use as a medium of exchange. This makes money the most **liquid** of all assets, which means it does not have to be converted into a medium of exchange to immediately make purchases.

The Federal Reserve System and the Control of the Money Supply

We now go on to conduct a brief look at how the amount of money in the economy, also known as the **money supply**, is determined (with a more detailed discussion in the appendix to this chapter). But before we do, we need to discuss the key player in the

money supply process, the central bank of the United States, which is officially known as the **Federal Reserve System** (or more commonly as the **Fed**). It is comprised of the twelve *Federal Reserve banks*, and the *Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System*.² Besides conducting monetary policy, the Fed's duties include issuing currency, clearing checks, and providing supervisory oversight of the financial system.

Federal Reserve Banks

The Federal Reserve System is divided into twelve districts. Each district has one main Federal Reserve bank, which may have branches in other cities in the district. We show the locations of these districts, the Federal Reserve banks, and their branches in Figure 5.1.

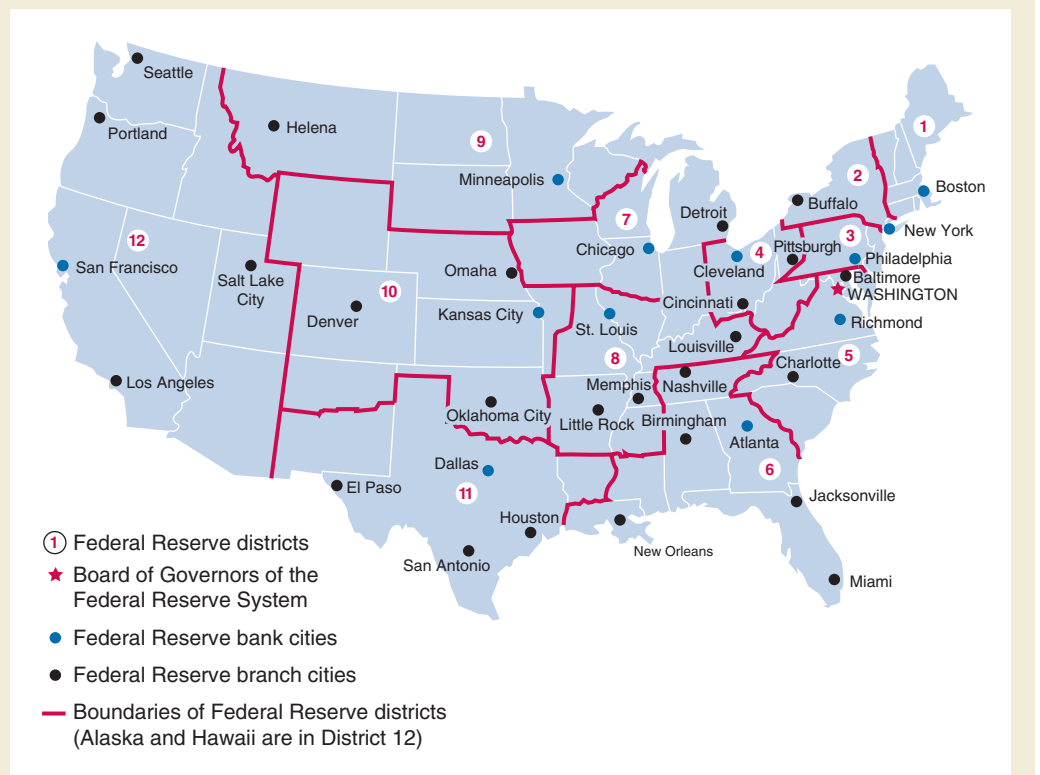
The twelve Federal Reserve banks are involved in monetary policy in two key ways: five of the twelve bank presidents each have a vote in the **Federal Open Market Committee (FOMC)**, which directs open market operations (the purchase and sale of government securities that affect both interest rates and the amount of liquidity in the banking system). The Federal Reserve Bank of New York always has a vote in the FOMC, making it the most important of the banks. The other four votes allocated to the district banks rotate annually among the remaining eleven presidents.

FIGURE 5.1

Federal Reserve System

The Federal Reserve System is made up of twelve Federal Reserve Banks and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, which is in Washington, DC.

Source: Federal Reserve Bulletin.



²For more detail on the structure of the Federal Reserve System and the European Central Bank, see Chapter 13, "Central Banks and the Federal Reserve System," in Frederic S. Mishkin, *The Economics of Money, Banking and Financial Markets* (Boston: Addison-Wesley, 2010), 315–343.

Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System

At the head of the Federal Reserve System is the seven-member **Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System**, headquartered in Washington, DC. Each governor is appointed by the president of the United States and confirmed by the Senate. The chairman of the Board of Governors serves a four-year, renewable term.

The Board of Governors is actively involved in decisions concerning the conduct of monetary policy. All seven governors are members of the FOMC and vote on the conduct of open market operations. Because there are only twelve voting members on this committee (seven governors and five presidents of the district banks), the Board has the majority of the votes. The chairman of the Board, currently Ben Bernanke, advises the president of the United States on economic policy, testifies in Congress, and represents the Federal Reserve System in the media. The chairman and other governors may also represent the United States in negotiations with foreign governments on economic matters. The Board has a staff of professional economists (larger than those of individual Federal Reserve banks) that provides economic analysis to inform the Board's decisions.

Federal Open Market Committee (FOMC)

The FOMC usually meets eight times a year (about every six weeks) and makes decisions regarding the conduct of open market operations that influence the money supply and interest rates. Indeed, the FOMC is often referred to as the “Fed” in the press: when the media say that the Fed is meeting, they actually mean that the FOMC is meeting. The committee consists of the seven members of the Board of Governors, the president of the Federal Reserve Bank of New York, and the presidents of four other Federal Reserve banks. The chairman of the Board of Governors also presides as the chairman of the FOMC. Even though only the presidents of five of the Federal Reserve banks are voting members of the FOMC, the other seven presidents of the district banks attend FOMC meetings and participate in discussions. Hence they have some input into the committee's decisions.

Up until recently, the Federal Reserve System had no rivals in terms of its importance in the central banking world. However, that situation changed in 1999 with the start up of the European Central Bank described in the box, “The European Central Bank.”

Control of the Money Supply

We will discuss the Fed's role in monetary policy in detail in Chapters 10 and 13—for now we will provide a bit of intuition about how the Federal Reserve controls the amount of money in the economy. The Fed carries this out primarily through the purchase and sale of government bonds in **open market operations**. A more detailed discussion of how the Federal Reserve controls the money supply is discussed in the appendix to this chapter, but for now, we will provide just a bit of intuition for the process. When the Fed buys a government bond from a bank, it pays for the bond with dollars, increasing the amount of dollars in the bank. Armed with this additional liquidity, banks can make additional loans to households and businesses that are deposited into checking accounts, increasing the level of checkable deposits. Since these deposits are included in the money supply, an open market purchase increases the money supply. Similar reasoning indicates that when the Fed sells government bonds, it takes in dollars from the public and reduces the money supply.

The European Central Bank

Europe patterned its system of central banks after the Federal Reserve System. The *European Central Bank (ECB)*, housed in Frankfurt, Germany, is run by an Executive Board similar in structure to the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve. Its six members, including a president and vice president, are appointed to eight-year, nonrenewable terms. The *National Central Banks (NCBs)* have similar functions to the Federal Reserve Banks. And a *Governing*

Council, composed of the Executive Board and the presidents of the National Central Banks, is similar to the FOMC. The Council meets monthly to take up decisions on monetary policy. Each country appoints the president of its own National Central Bank, although the Executive Board members are selected by a committee of heads of state of all the European Monetary Union countries.



Measuring Money

Our previous discussion of the functions of money suggests that money is defined by people's behavior. Money is what people *believe* others will accept for payment. This behavioral definition does not tell us which assets in our economy we should consider money. To measure money, we need a precise definition that tells us exactly which assets to include.

The Federal Reserve's Monetary Aggregates

The Fed relies on two measures of the money supply called **monetary aggregates** (see Table 5.1) that it evaluates over time to reflect available financial products.

TABLE 5.1

Measures of the Monetary Aggregates

	Value as of March 2010 (\$ billions)
M1 = Currency	\$ 871.6
+ Traveler's checks	\$ 5.0
+ Demand deposits	\$ 445.6
+ Other checkable deposits	\$ 390.0
Total M1	= \$1,712.2
M2 = M1	
+ Small-denomination time deposits	\$1,105.0
+ Savings deposits and money market deposit accounts	\$4,935.1
+ Money market mutual fund shares (retail)	\$ 759.8
Total M2	= \$8,512.1

Source: Components of M1 and M2, seasonally adjusted, March 2010. Federal Reserve Board of Governors. Money Stock Measures, H.6. www.federalreserve.gov/releases/h6/current/h6.htm

MACROECONOMICS IN THE NEWS

The Monetary Aggregates

Every week on Thursday, the Federal Reserve publishes the data for M1 and M2 in its H-6 release and these numbers are often reported on

in the media. The H-6 release can be found at www.federalreserve.gov/releases/h6/current/h6.htm.



M1. The Fed's narrowest measure of money, **M1**, includes only the most liquid assets: currency, traveler's checks, demand deposits, and checking account deposits. Table 5.1 shows the components of M1 for March 2010. The *currency* component of M1 includes only paper money and coins in the hands of the nonbank public: it does not include cash that is held in ATMs or bank vaults. Surprisingly, there is more than \$2,000 cash in circulation for each U.S. citizen (see the box "Where Is All the U.S. Currency?"). The *demand deposits* component includes business checking accounts that do not pay interest as well as traveler's checks issued by banks. The traveler's checks component includes those issued by nonbanks. The *other checkable deposits* item covers the remainder of checking accounts, such as interest-bearing checking accounts held by households. These assets are clearly money because individuals can use them directly as a medium of exchange.

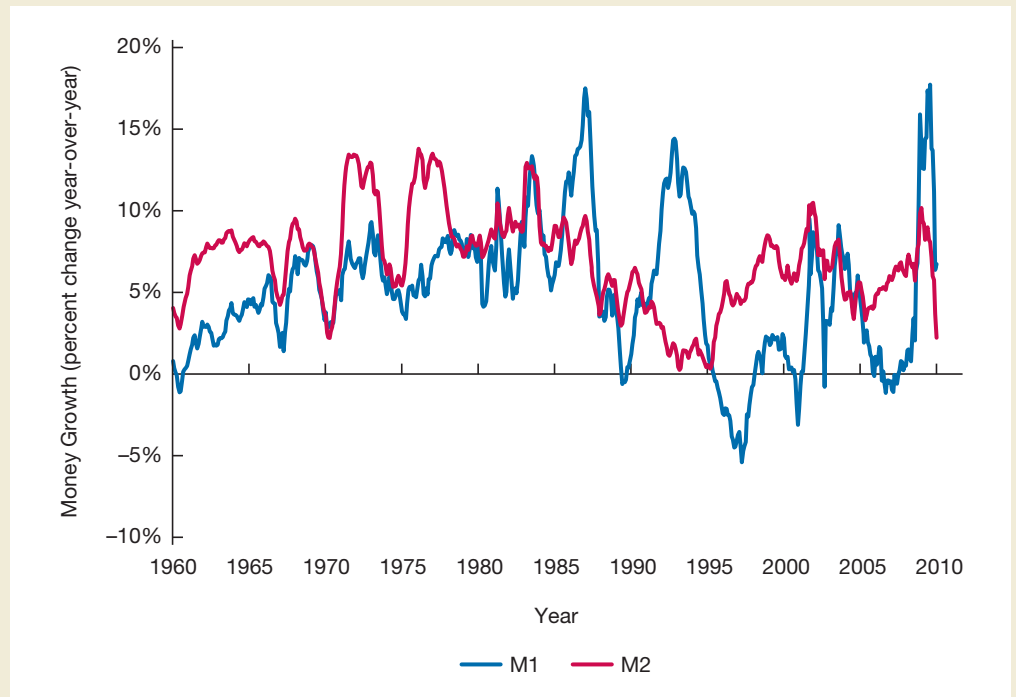
M2. The **M2** monetary aggregate includes all of M1, plus several less liquid asset types, such as money market deposit accounts and money market mutual fund shares with check-writing features. It includes savings deposits, which can be taken out of the bank at any time, as well as certificates of deposit in denominations of less than \$100,000. Certificates of deposit (CDs) are referred to as time deposits, since they can only be redeemed without penalty at a fixed maturity date. Table 5.1 shows the value of M2 for March 2010.

The Fed's Use of M1 Versus M2 in Practice

But which measure of the money supply—M1 or M2—does the Fed use to inform policy decisions? It's not obvious which monetary aggregate is a better measure of money and Table 5.1 indicates that there is significant difference (\$6.8 trillion dollars) between the two measures. But if M1 and M2 tend to move in parallel, the Fed could use trends in either monetary aggregate to predict future economic performance and conduct policy. Figure 5.2 plots the growth rates of M1 and M2 from 1960 to 2010. Notice how the two monetary aggregates rise and fall in tandem through the 1980s, and show a higher average growth rate during the Great Inflation of the 1970s than in the more moderate 1960s. Yet there are some glaring discrepancies where the movements of these aggregates regularly diverge. Contrast M1's high rates of growth from 1992 to 1994 with the much lower growth of M2. Also notice that from 2004 to 2007, M2's growth rate increased slightly, while M1 sharply decelerated and went negative. In 2009, M1 growth surged to over 15% from near zero the year before, while M2 growth only rose slightly. Given how different a story the two aggregates tell about the course of monetary policy in recent years, the Federal Reserve focuses on interest rates rather than money supply in conducting monetary policy.

FIGURE 5.2**Growth Rates of M1 and M2, 1960–2010**

The timing of the rise and fall of the growth rates of M1 and M2 are roughly similar. There are, however, periods such as 1992–1994 and 2004–2007 when they move in opposite directions, providing conflicting information about the course of monetary policy.



Source: Federal Reserve Economic Database (FRED). Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis. <http://research.stlouisfed.org/fred2/categories/25>, accessed September 30, 2010.

Where Is All the U.S. Currency?

The \$872 billion in outstanding U.S. currency in 2010 is enough for every U.S. citizen to hold \$2,800 in cash. That's a surprisingly large number, since currency is bulky, can be easily stolen, and pays no interest. Do you know anyone who carries \$2,800 in his or her pockets? We have a puzzle: Where are all these dollars and who is holding them?

Criminals are one group who hold a lot of dollars. If you were engaged in an illegal activity, you would not conduct your transactions with traceable checks that are a potentially powerful piece of evidence against you. That explains why the TV mobster Tony Soprano had so much cash in his backyard. Some businesses

also like to retain a lot of cash because operating as a cash business helps them avoid declaring income (which is also an illegal activity) on which they would have to pay taxes.

Foreigners are the other group who routinely hold U.S. dollars. In many countries, people do not trust their own currency because they often experience high inflation, which erodes the value of that currency; these people hold U.S. dollars to protect themselves against this inflation risk. Lack of trust in the ruble, for example, has led many Russians to hoard enormous amounts of U.S. dollars. Russians, Argentines, Chinese, and Kazakhs hold the largest number of dollars outside the United States.

Quantity Theory of Money

Now that we have a clear understanding of money and the money supply, we will examine how changes in the money supply affect the economy over both short and long periods of time. We begin with a look at the long run and utilize the *quantity theory of money*, which links a country's total income to its supply of money. This theory is the product of the **classical economists**, also known as **classicals**, who assumed that wages and prices were completely flexible—that is, they completely adjust to their long-run equilibrium where supply equals demand.

American economist Irving Fisher gave the clearest exposition of this theory in his influential book, *The Purchasing Power of Money*, published in 1911. Fisher examined the link between the total quantity of money M (the money supply) and the total amount of spending on final goods and services produced in the economy, $P \times Y$, where P is the price level and Y is aggregate output (income). (Recall from Chapter 2 that total spending $P \times Y$ is the same as aggregate nominal income for the economy, nominal GDP.)

Velocity of Money and the Equation of Exchange

The concept that provides the link between M and $P \times Y$ is called the **velocity of money** (also more simply referred to as *velocity*), the average number of times per year that a dollar is spent, or turns over, in buying goods and services produced in the economy. We calculate velocity V by dividing total spending $P \times Y$ by the quantity of money M :

$$V = \frac{P \times Y}{M} \quad (1)$$

If, for example, nominal GDP ($P \times Y$) in a year is \$10 trillion and the quantity of money is \$2 trillion, velocity is 5, meaning that the average dollar bill is spent five times in purchasing final goods and services in the economy.

By multiplying both sides of Equation 1 by M , we obtain the **equation of exchange**, which relates nominal income to the quantity of money and velocity:

$$M \times V = P \times Y \quad (2)$$

The equation of exchange states that the quantity of money multiplied by the number of times that this money is spent in a given year must equal nominal income (the total nominal income spent on goods and services in that year).³

As it stands, Equation 2 is nothing more than an identity—a relationship that is true by definition. It does not tell us, for instance, that when the money supply M changes, nominal income $P \times Y$ changes in the same direction. A rise in M , for example, could be

³Fisher actually first formulated the equation of exchange in terms of the nominal value of transactions in the economy, PT :

$$MV_T = PT$$

where P = average price per transaction
 T = number of transactions conducted in a year
 $V_T = PT/M$ = transactions velocity of money

Because the nominal value of transactions T is difficult to measure, the quantity theory has been formulated in terms of aggregate output Y so that $T = vY$, where v is a constant of proportionality. Substituting vY for T in Fisher's equation of exchange yields $MV_T = vPY$, which we can write as Equation (2) in the text, in which $V = V_T/v$.

offset by a fall in V that leaves $M \times V$ and therefore $P \times Y$ unchanged. Converting the equation of exchange, an *identity*, into a *theory* of how to determine nominal income requires an understanding of the factors that determine velocity.

DETERMINANTS OF VELOCITY. Irving Fisher reasoned that velocity is determined by the institutions in an economy that affect the way individuals conduct transactions. For example, the introduction of credit cards allowed millions of U.S. shoppers to use plastic instead of cash, requiring less money in the economy. With less money needed for the same level of nominal income, M fell relative to $P \times Y$ and velocity $(P \times Y)/M$ increased. Conversely, if it is more convenient for purchases to be paid for with cash or checkable deposits (both of which are money), more money is used to conduct the transactions generated by the same level of nominal income and velocity falls. Fisher took the view that the institutional and technological features of the economy change velocity only gradually, so he expected velocity to be reasonably constant in the short run.

THE DEMAND FOR MONEY. Another way of interpreting Fisher's quantity theory is in terms of the **demand for money**, the quantity of money that people want to hold.

Because the quantity theory of money tells us how much money is held for a given amount of nominal spending, it is in fact a theory of the demand for money. To illustrate, let's first divide both sides of the equation of exchange by V to yield the following:

$$M = \frac{1}{V} \times PY$$

When the money market is in equilibrium, money supply equals money demand, so we can replace M in the equation by M^d . In addition, since in the quantity theory of money velocity is assumed to be constant, we can replace $1/V$ with a constant k . Substituting in k for $1/V$ and M^d for M and then dividing both sides of the equation by P leads to the quantity theory of money demand:

$$\frac{M^d}{P} = k \times Y \quad (3)$$

This equation tells us that the demand for *real money balances*, that is, the quantity of money that people want to hold in terms of the goods and services that it can purchase, is proportional to income.

From the Equation of Exchange to the Quantity Theory of Money

Fisher's view that velocity is fairly constant in the short run, so that $V = \bar{V}$, transforms the equation of exchange into the **quantity theory of money**, which states that nominal income (spending) is determined solely by movements in the quantity of money M .

$$P \times Y = M \times \bar{V} \quad (4)$$

The quantity theory equation above, indicates that when the quantity of money M doubles, $M \times \bar{V}$ doubles and so must $P \times Y$, the value of nominal income. To illustrate,

let's assume that velocity is 5, nominal income (GDP) is initially \$10 trillion, and the money supply is \$2 trillion. If the money supply doubles to \$4 trillion, the quantity theory of money tells us that nominal income will double to \$20 trillion ($= 5 \times \4 trillion).

The Classical Dichotomy

Because classical economists (including Irving Fisher) viewed wages and prices as flexible, they believed prices of goods and services and factor prices would fully adjust to the levels that equate the supply and demand for each good or service in the long run. As we saw in Chapter 3, this would mean that the level of output produced in the economy would be solely determined by the aggregate production function and the quantities of factors available. Consequently, the amounts of goods and services produced in an economy in the long run is not affected by the price level—and this is also true for real factor prices, such as real wages and the real rental cost of capital. This view is known as the **classical dichotomy** because it indicates that in the long run there is a complete separation (*dichotomy*) between the real side of the economy and the nominal side (which changes with the price level).

Quantity Theory and the Price Level

The classical dichotomy tells us that we can take aggregate output as given, so we assign Y in the quantity theory of money, Equation 4, the constant value of \bar{Y} . Dividing both sides of Equation 4 by \bar{Y} , we can then write the price level as follows:

$$P = \frac{M \times \bar{V}}{\bar{Y}} \quad (5)$$

The quantity theory of money theory as represented by Equation 5 implies that if M doubles, P must also double in the short run because \bar{V} and \bar{Y} are constant. In our example, if aggregate output is \$10 trillion, velocity is 5, and the money supply is \$2 trillion, then the price level equals 1.0.

$$P = 1.0 = \frac{\$2 \text{ trillion} \times 5}{\$10 \text{ trillion}} = \frac{\$10 \text{ trillion}}{\$10 \text{ trillion}}$$

When the money supply doubles to \$4 trillion, the price level must also double to 2.0 because

$$P = 2.0 = \frac{\$4 \text{ trillion} \times 5}{\$10 \text{ trillion}} = \frac{\$20 \text{ trillion}}{\$10 \text{ trillion}}$$

Classical economists relied on the quantity theory of money to explain movements in the price level. In their view, **changes in the quantity of money lead to proportional changes in the price level.**

According to the quantity theory analysis, a country's central bank determines the general price level in the long run because it controls the supply of money. Furthermore, a central bank's work in adjusting the money supply has no impact on real variables, an implication economists refer to as the **neutrality of money**. However, as we will see later in Part 4, many economists reject the neutrality of money in the short run.

Quantity Theory and Inflation

We now transform the quantity theory of money into a theory of inflation. Using the helpful mathematical fact we discussed in Chapter 2 that the percentage change ($\% \Delta$) of a product of a number of variables is approximately equal to the sum of the percentage changes of each of these variables, we can rewrite the equation of exchange as follows:

$$\% \Delta M + \% \Delta V = \% \Delta P + \% \Delta Y$$

Subtracting $\% \Delta Y$ from both sides of the preceding equation, and recognizing that the inflation rate, π , is the growth rate of the price level, that is, $\% \Delta P$,

$$\pi = \% \Delta P = \% \Delta M + \% \Delta V - \% \Delta Y$$

Since we assume velocity is constant, its growth rate is zero, so the quantity theory of money is also a theory of inflation:

$$\pi = \% \Delta M - \% \Delta Y \quad (6)$$

Because the percentage change in a variable at an annual rate is the same as the growth rate in that variable, this equation can also be stated in words: ***the quantity theory of inflation indicates that the inflation rate equals the growth rate of the money supply minus the growth rate of aggregate output.*** For example, if the aggregate output is growing at 3% per year and the growth rate of money is 5%, then inflation is 2% ($= 5\% - 3\%$). If the Federal Reserve increases the money growth rate to 10%, then the quantity theory of inflation in Equation 6 indicates that the inflation rate will rise to 7% ($= 10\% - 3\%$).

Application

Testing the Quantity Theory of Money

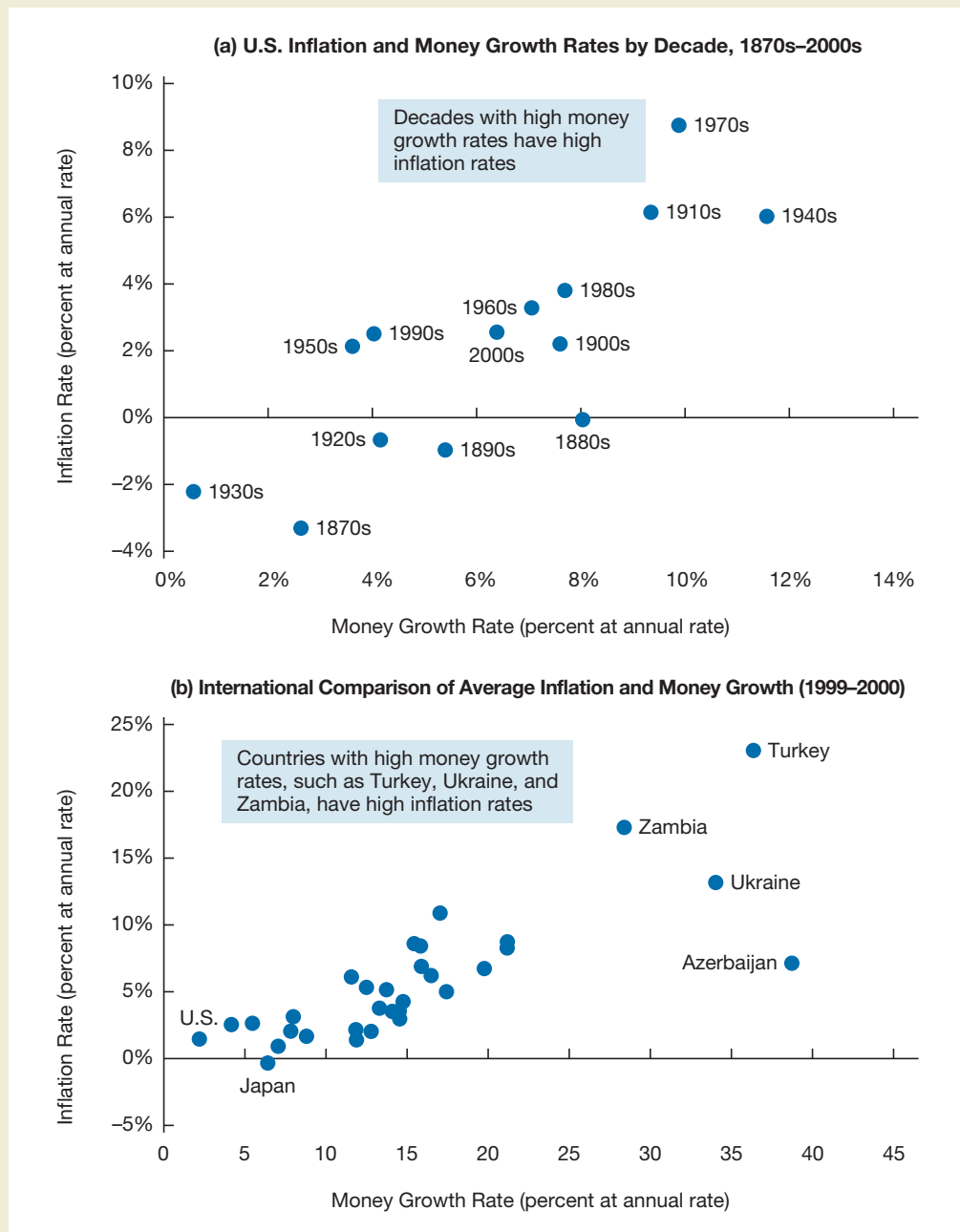
Now that we have fully outlined the quantity theory of money, let's put it to the test with actual data over the long and short runs.

The Quantity Theory of Money in the Long Run. The quantity theory of money provides a long-run theory of inflation because it is based on the assumption that wages and prices are flexible. Figure 5.3 panel (a) plots ten-year averages of U.S. inflation rates against the ten-year average rate of U.S. money growth ($M2$) from 1870 through 2000. Since the growth rate of aggregate output Y over ten-year periods does not vary very much, Equation 6 indicates that the ten-year inflation rate should be the ten-year money growth rate minus a constant (the rate of aggregate output growth). Thus there should be a strong positive relationship between inflation and money growth rates—and this relationship is borne out in panel (a) of Figure 5.3. Decades with higher growth rates of the U.S. money supply typically see higher average inflation rates.

Does the quantity theory also explain differing long-run inflation rates across countries? It certainly does. Panel (b) of Figure 5.3 plots the average inflation rate over the ten-year period from 1999 to 2009 against the ten-year money growth rate for several countries. Note that countries with high money growth, such as Turkey, Ukraine, and Zambia, tend to have higher inflation.

FIGURE 5.3**Relationship Between Inflation and Money Growth**

In panel (a), decades with higher money growth rates (the 1910s, the 1940s, and the 1970s) typically have a higher average inflation rate. This relationship also holds in panel (b), where we examine the ten-year inflation and money growth rates from 1999–2009 for various countries.

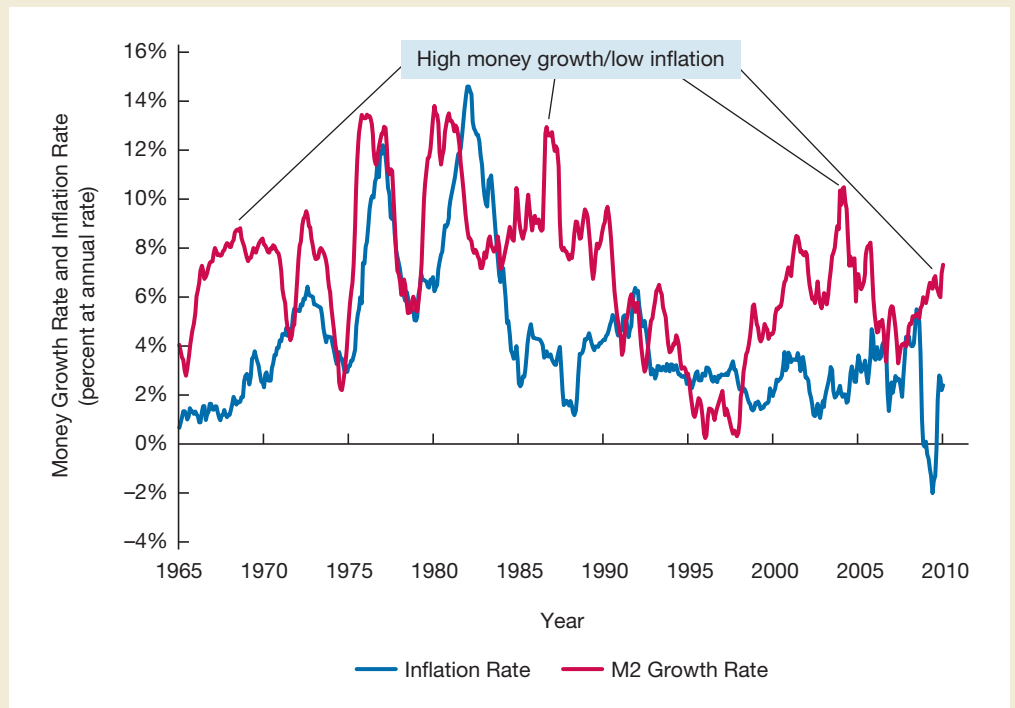


Sources: For panel a), Milton Friedman and Anna Schwartz, *Monetary trends in the United States and the United Kingdom: Their relation to income, prices, and interest rate, 1867–1975*, Federal Reserve Economic Database (FRED), Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis, <http://research.stlouisfed.org/fred2/categories/25> and Bureau of Labor Statistics at <http://data.bls.gov/cgi-bin/surveymost?cu>. For panel b) International Financial Statistics. International Monetary Fund. www.imfstatistics.org/imf/

The Quantity Theory of Money in the Short Run. Does the quantity theory of money provide a good explanation of short-run inflation fluctuations as well? Figure 5.4 provides evidence on the link between money growth and inflation in the short run by plotting the annual U.S. inflation rate from 1965 to 2010 against the annual money ($M2$) growth rate. (The money supply lags by two years to allow for the time it takes for changes in money

FIGURE 5.4**Annual U.S. Inflation and Money Growth Rates, 1965–2010**

Plots of the annual U.S. inflation rate against the annual money ($M2$) growth rate from two years earlier (to allow for lagged effects from money growth to inflation) do not support a short-run link between inflation and money growth. There are many years (1963–1967, 1983–1985 and 2003–2005) where money growth is high, yet inflation is low.



Sources: FRED, Federal Reserve Economic Data, Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis; Bureau of Labor Statistics, <http://research.stlouisfed.org/fred2/categories/25>; accessed September 30, 2010.

growth to affect inflation.) The relationship between inflation and money growth on an annual basis is not strong at all. There are many years—such as 1963–1967, 1983–1985, 2003–2005, 2008–2009—where money growth is high, but inflation is low. Indeed, it is hard to see a positive correlation at all between money growth and inflation in Figure 5.4.

The conclusion is that **Milton Friedman's statement that "inflation is always and everywhere a monetary phenomenon" is accurate in the long run, but is not supported by the data for the short run.** This insight tells us that the classical assumption that wages and prices are completely flexible may not be a good assumption for short-run fluctuations in inflation and aggregate output. For this reason, we relax this assumption in Part 4 of the book when we develop models of short-run inflation and output fluctuations.



Hyperinflation

Periods of extremely rapid price increases of more than 50% per month (over 1,000% per year) are called **hyperinflation**. Many economies—both poor and developed—have experienced hyperinflation over the last century, but the United States has been spared such turmoil. One of the most extreme examples of hyperinflation throughout world history occurred recently in Zimbabwe in the 2000s, and it is discussed in the Policy and Practice case that follows.

The Zimbabwean Hyperinflation

The source of high money supply growth that causes hyperinflations to occur is typically fiscal imbalances, a topic that we will discuss in more detail in Chapter 16, and the hyperinflation in Zimbabwe that started in the early 2000s is no exception. After the expropriation of farms, which were redistributed to supporters of Robert Mugabe, the president of the country, agricultural output plummeted, and along with it tax revenue. The result was that the government's expenditures now greatly exceeded revenues. The government could have obtained revenues to cover its expenditures by raising taxes, but given the depressed state of the economy, generating revenue in this way was both hard to do and would have been politically unpopular. Alternatively, the government could have tried to finance its expenditure by borrowing from the public, but given the distrust of the government, this was not an option. There was only one route left: the printing press. The government could pay for its expenditures simply by printing more currency (increasing the money supply) and using it to make payments to individuals and businesses. This is exactly what the Zimbabwean government did and the money supply began to increase rapidly.

As predicted by the quantity theory, the surge in the money supply led to a rapidly rising price level. In February 2007, the Reserve Bank of Zimbabwe, the central bank, outlawed price increases on many commodities. Although this tactic has been tried before by governments in countries experiencing hyperinflations, it has never worked: criminalizing inflation cannot stop inflation when the central bank keeps on printing money. In March 2007, the inflation rate hit a record of over 1,500%. By 2008, Zimbabwe's official inflation rate was over two million percent (but unofficially over ten million percent). In July of 2008, the Zimbabwean central bank issued a new \$100 billion bank note. That's a lot of zeros, but don't be too impressed. One of those bills could not even buy a bottle of beer. Zimbabwean currency became worth less than toilet paper.

In 2009, the Zimbabwean government allowed the use of foreign currencies like the dollar for all transactions, but the damage had already been done. The hyperinflation wreaked havoc on the economy, and an extremely poor country became even poorer.

Inflation and Interest Rates

As we discussed in Chapter 2, the Fisher equation states that the nominal interest rate i equals the real interest rate r plus the expected rate of inflation π^e ,

$$i = r + \pi^e \quad (7)$$

Under the classical dichotomy, real variables like r are unaffected by inflation or expected inflation. Indeed, as we saw in Chapter 4, in the long run when wages and

prices are flexible, the real interest rate is determined by the interaction of saving and investment. So in the long run, when the classical view of inflation holds and the level of the real interest rate is given, we would expect that nominal interest rates would move one-for-one with expected inflation, as the Fisher equation suggests. For example, if the real interest rate is 2% and expected inflation is 3%, then the nominal interest rate should be 5%. If expected inflation rises to 10%, then the nominal interest rate would rise to 12%.

The Fisher equation and the classical dichotomy produce a theory of interest rates called the **Fisher effect**: when expected inflation rises, interest rates will rise. Irving Fisher was the first economist to point out the relationship of expected inflation and interest rates.

Application

Testing the Fisher Effect

How accurate is the prediction from the Fisher analysis in the United States and abroad? Notice in Figure 5.5 panel (a) that expected U.S. inflation over the coming year and the (nominal) interest rate on three-month Treasury bills have moved together since 1955. As expected inflation rose from the 1950s to the early 1980s, and the three-month Treasury bill rate climbed from the 2% level to peak at 15%. When expected inflation declined to the 2–3% level in the mid-1990s, the interest rate on three-month Treasury bills also came down to around the 5% level. The pattern holds in most, but not all, periods. For example, from 1981 to 1983, expected inflation fell precipitously without a corresponding drop in the Treasury bill rate. In addition, during the period from the early 1990s until the mid-2000s, inflation was much steadier than the Treasury bill rate. The U.S. evidence thus demonstrates that ***the Fisher effect prediction that nominal interest rates rise along with expected inflation is accurate in the long run, but over shorter time periods, expected inflation and nominal interest rates do not always move together.***

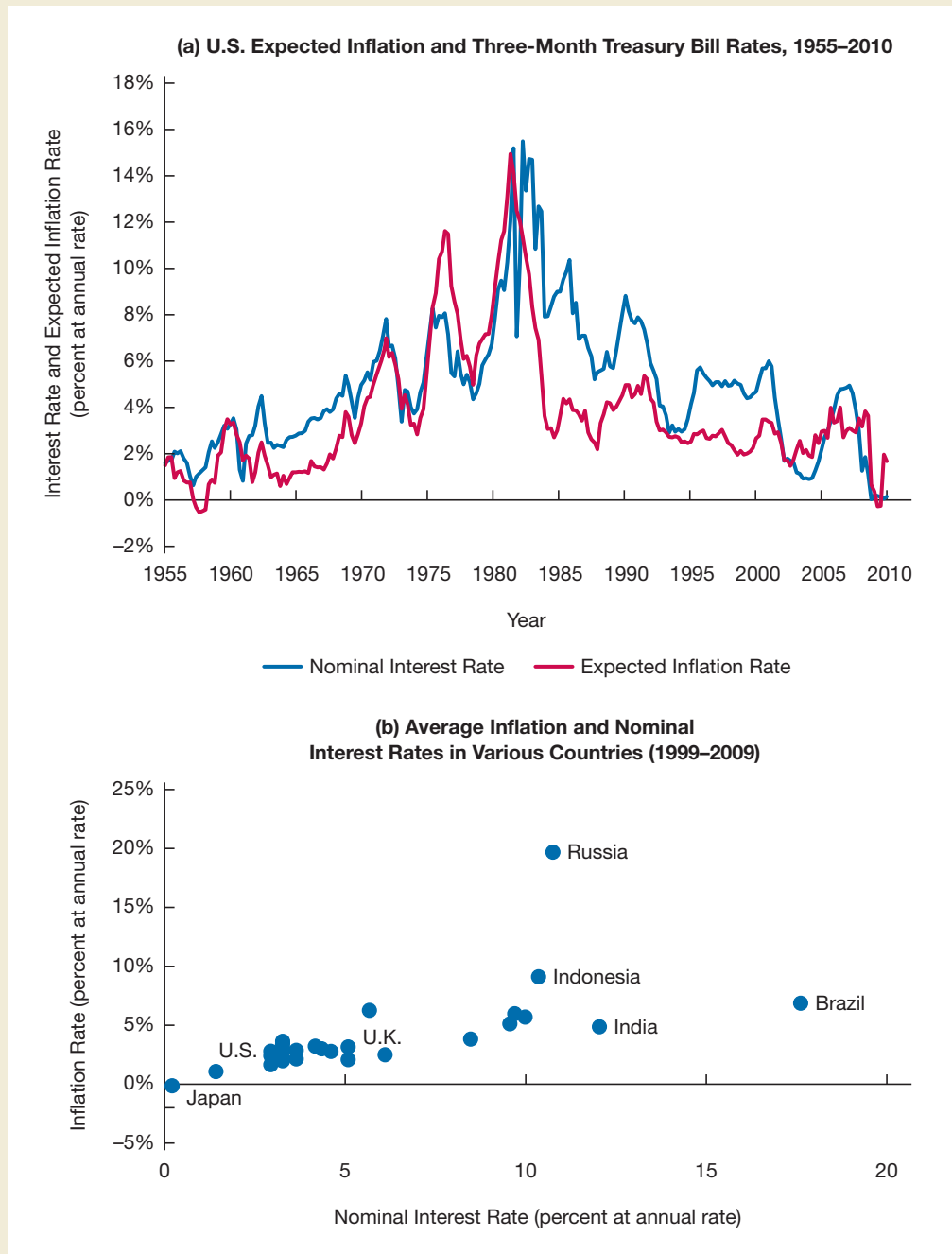
The support for a strong Fisher effect relationship in the long run is further borne out by Figure 5.5 panel (b), which represents a selection of countries. The chart plots each country's average nominal interest rate over the ten-year period from 1999 to 2009 against the average inflation rate over the same ten-year period. (The ten-year average is a fair approximation of expected inflation over the same period.) There is a reasonably close association between the two, with high-inflation countries such as Indonesia also displaying high nominal interest rates.

Since nominal interest rates are determined by inflation expectations, they, too, are a monetary phenomenon. The quantity theory of inflation suggests that for a central bank to keep nominal interest rates low, it needs to prevent the money supply from growing at too rapid a rate. No wonder that financial market participants who bet on the level of interest rates keep a close eye on the Federal Reserve to see whether it will pursue policies to control inflation.

FIGURE 5.5

Expected Inflation and the Nominal Interest Rate

In panel (a), the long-run trend is consistent with the Fisher effect, but there are short-run periods when the Treasury bill rate does not track movements in expected inflation. Panel (b) also supports the long-run relationship in plots of average nominal interest rates and inflation rates over the ten-year period from 1999–2009 across a number of countries.



Sources: For panel (a) FRED, Federal Reserve Economic Data, Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis; Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System; <http://research.stlouisfed.org/fred2/series/TB3MS?cid=116>; accessed September 30, 2010; the estimated expected inflation rate is estimated using the procedure outlined in Mishkin, Frederic S. 1981. The real interest rate: An empirical investigation. *Carnegie-Rochester Conference Series on Public Policy* 15: pp. 151–200. This procedure involves estimating expected inflation as a function of past interest rates, inflation, and time trends. For panel (b) International Monetary Fund. International Financial Statistics. www.imfstatistics.org/imf/

The Cost of Inflation

So far in this chapter, we have focused on the causes of inflation. But we have to ask, what are its consequences? Inflation imposes two types of costs on the economy: costs from anticipated inflation and costs from unanticipated inflation. We look at each in turn.

Costs of Anticipated Inflation

Suppose that inflation has been running at a steady, but high rate of 10% for a long period of time, so that the 10% inflation rate is fully anticipated by the public. At first glance, why should there be any costs from the 10% inflation rate? Although prices on the things you buy would be going up every year at a 10% rate, you expect your employer to pay you at least 10% more each year, which will prevent your real wage from declining and allow you to purchase the same quantities of goods and services. What about your savings? The Fisher effect analysis indicates that nominal interest rates should rise to compensate for the increase in the price level every year, so the real interest rate on your savings account should also be unaffected.

In a world in which the classical dichotomy holds, and inflation has no effect on the real side of the economy, fully anticipated inflation should not affect your well-being. However, even in the long run, the classical dichotomy may not be completely correct, so a perfectly anticipated inflation can be costly for five reasons:

SHOE-LEATHER COSTS. When inflation is high, nominal interest rates rise to compensate for the increase in the price level. As a result, it is more costly for you to hold cash in your pocket because it doesn't earn any interest. For example, say inflation increases nominal interest rates from 7% to 12%. Cash kept in your wallet can now earn an additional 5% in interest, say in a savings account at a bank, which might prompt you to make a trip to the bank to put the cash into this account. The time and fuel spent on these trips are called **shoe-leather costs** by economists, because they bring to mind that too many trips can wear out your shoes. During hyperinflations, firms pay their workers more than once a day, and households shop far more frequently than they otherwise would. This inefficiency can impose very high shoe-leather costs on the economy.

MENU COSTS. High inflation, even if perfectly anticipated, requires that firms change prices frequently. Higher anticipated inflation therefore leads to costs associated with changing prices, which are referred to as **menu costs**. Menu costs cover more than printing new restaurant menus. They include advertising new prices to customers, relabeling goods with new price tags, and informing salespeople.

TAX DISTORTIONS. In practice, tax rates do not adjust fully to anticipated inflation, creating a cost for investors. To illustrate, suppose the price level doubles and your \$1,000 of Apple stock doubles in value to \$2,000. You are no better off when you sell it because the goods and services you can buy with the proceeds are unchanged. Nonetheless you would pay a 15% capital gains tax, or \$150, on the appreciation of the stock. This tax distortion might discourage investment when inflation is high.

INCREASED VARIABILITY OF RELATIVE PRICES. Because firms competing in the same market do not always change prices at the same time, higher inflation can cause high variability in relative prices. This high variability creates inefficiencies in the economy, because relative prices are more likely to be higher or lower than they should

be in the absence of inflation. For example, say that Louis Vuitton updates prices for its handbags only in November, and Christian Dior updates them only in January. In a year of high inflation, the relative prices of the two brands of handbags would become severely misaligned in the month of December, so that few consumers would buy a Louis Vuitton bag in that month. When the timing of purchases is distorted by high inflation, there is an inappropriate allocation of resources in the economy.

LOSS OF THE DOLLAR YARDSTICK. When prices fluctuate, businesses and households have a tough time comparing the relative costs of goods and services. If a Toyota Corolla's price increases from \$15,000 to \$16,500, while a Dell computer's price jumps from \$800 to \$880, which is now a relatively better deal? Not everybody will immediately see that the prices of both goods went up by 10%—and some consumers might mistakenly think that relative prices have changed and therefore make poor changes in their spending decisions. A constant price level provides a *dollar yardstick*: a simplified price comparison where a change in the price of a good is a change in its real price. The consistent length of a yardstick makes it easy to compare the size of different items. Similarly, having low inflation keeps the dollar yardstick the same length and enables consumers to readily compare the prices of goods and services, benefiting firms and households.

Costs of Unanticipated Inflation

Although costs of anticipated inflation might be substantial, the costs of inflation that are a surprise are likely to be even higher. There are several costs from unanticipated inflation.

INCREASED UNCERTAINTY. Inflation that turns out to be different than you anticipated is likely to lead to incorrect investment and savings decisions that are costly to both you and the economy. To illustrate, let's begin by looking at the costs of unanticipated inflation with the case of lower-than-anticipated inflation. Suppose that you expect the inflation rate to be 10% next year, but in fact it turns out to be less, say, 5%. Consider two financial transactions:

1. Purchase a certificate of deposit. If your certificate of deposit was paying you 12%—10% for the expected inflation adjustment and 2% for the real interest rate—you would end up with a windfall. Instead of earning 2% in real terms, you now earn 7% ($= 12\% - 5\%$). If you had known you would have earned such a high return, you would have saved even more. Your inability to foresee the lower inflation was costly.
2. Take out a car loan. If you took out a car loan at 12% and the inflation rate turned out to be 5% instead of 10%, the real cost of the loan is now 7% ($= 12\% - 5\%$), not 2% ($= 12\% - 10\%$) as you expected. If you knew that the cost of the loan were going to be that high, you might have decided not to borrow and instead deferred your car purchase.

Now let's examine the case of higher-than-anticipated inflation. Suppose that the inflation rate turns out to be higher than expected, say, 15%.

1. Purchase a certificate of deposit. You would have earned a negative 3% return in real terms on the certificate of deposit ($= 12\% - 15\%$) and you would wish you had saved less.
2. Take out a car loan. The car loan would now have a very low cost in real terms, negative 3% ($= 12\% - 15\%$), so you would regret not borrowing and investing more money.

Unanticipated inflation can also distort decisions about how much to work and how much labor a firm should employ. Suppose you and your boss expect the inflation rate to increase by 10% over the coming year. You received a 10% pay hike to compensate for the expected price increase. The inflation rate increase turned out to be 5%, so you received an unanticipated increase in your real wage of 5% and are eager to increase your work hours. Your boss who has ended up paying 5% more in real terms than she expected would prefer to reduce your hours, or might regret hiring you at all.

Unanticipated inflation therefore can lead to costly decisions on savings, investment, and the amount of labor that is supplied or demanded, leading to a less efficient economy. Furthermore, most people dislike uncertainty, so unanticipated fluctuations in inflation make both you and your boss worse off.

INCREASED VARIABILITY OF RELATIVE PRICES. We already have seen that anticipated inflation can lead to increased variability of prices, which makes the economy less efficient. This problem can be even worse when inflation is unanticipated. When inflation is anticipated, firms that set prices infrequently find that the relative prices of their products get more out of line over time. But because they expect a certain amount of inflation, they have some ability to devise plans for minimizing the resulting cost. If, on the other hand, inflation is unanticipated, firms may have trouble recognizing when the prices they have set are changing relative to other prices. For example, suppose that the 15% inflation rate is 5% *greater* than the 10% rate a firm expected. When it raises prices by 10%, it may find that the demand for its product is temporarily higher than expected and may increase production. However, in reality, the long-run demand for the product did not go up—instead the relative price fell temporarily by 5%—and so demand will fall back down again. If the firm understood this, it might not have ramped up production. Thus inflation that is higher than expected could lead to overproduction.

Now suppose that the inflation rate increases by 5%, which is 5% *lower* than the 10% the firm expected. When the firm raises prices by 10%, it will find that demand is falling off and may cut production. But the long-run demand for the product actually did not decrease; instead the relative price of the firm's product rose temporarily, unbeknownst to the firm. The firm again may make the wrong production decision. Unanticipated inflation therefore has the potential to sharply increase the variability of relative prices, creating inefficiency in the economy and a substantial misallocation of resources.

INFLATION UNCERTAINTY IS HIGHER WHEN THE LEVEL OF INFLATION IS HIGH. Historical data indicates that when inflation is high, the variability of inflation rises as well. Economists are not completely sure why this is the case, but it may be that higher levels of inflation increase uncertainty in the economy and lead to large swings in unanticipated inflation. We have seen that high uncertainty and big fluctuations in unanticipated inflation impose high costs on the economy. Thus a higher level of inflation raises these costs and can be very burdensome on the economy.

SUMMARY

1. Money is anything that is generally accepted in payment for goods and services or in the repayment of debts and has three functions: a medium of exchange, a unit of account, and a store of value.
2. The structure of the Federal Reserve System consists of twelve regional Federal Reserve banks and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System. The Federal Open Market Committee (FOMC),

which meets about every six weeks, make the decisions about monetary policy. The Federal Reserve controls the money supply primarily through the purchase and sale of government bonds, called open market operations. An open market purchase puts dollars into the hands of the public and so increases the money supply, while an open market sale does the opposite.

3. M1 is the narrowest measure of money and includes currency, traveler's checks, demand deposits, and other checkable deposits. M2 adds to M1 other assets that are not quite as liquid: small-denomination time deposits, savings deposits, money market deposit accounts, and money market mutual fund shares. Different measures of money tend to move together, but there are periods when this is not the case.
4. The quantity theory of money as expressed by the equation of exchange, $M \times V = P \times Y$, indicates that nominal spending is determined solely by movements in the quantity of money. The classical dichotomy indicates that, in the long run, changes in the money supply and the price level do not affect real variables, so that there is a complete separation between the real and nominal sides of the economy. The quantity theory indicates that 1) changes in the quantity of money lead to proportional changes in the price level, because $P = (M \times \bar{V})/\bar{Y}$, and 2) the inflation rate is the growth rate of the money supply minus the growth rate of aggregate output—that is, $\pi = \% \Delta M - \% \Delta Y$. These implications of the quantity theory are borne out in the data in the long run, but not the short run.
5. Hyperinflations have happened to many countries over the last hundred years, with the recent Zimbabwean hyperinflation being one of the most severe in history.
6. The Fisher equation, $i = r + \pi^e$, and the classical dichotomy lead to the conclusion that when expected inflation rises, interest rates rise along with it. This prediction holds true in the long run, but over shorter time periods, expected inflation and nominal interest rates do not always move together.
7. There are five costs from anticipated inflation: shoe-leather costs, menu costs, tax distortions, increased variability of relative prices, and the loss of the dollar yardstick. The costs of unanticipated inflation are likely to be even higher and include increased uncertainty and increased variability of relative prices. When the level of inflation is higher, the inflation uncertainty is higher as well.

KEY TERMS

Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, p. 106	Federal Reserve System (Fed), p. 105	money, p. 103
classical dichotomy, p. 112	Fisher effect, p. 117	money supply, p. 104
classicals (classical economists), p. 110	hyperinflation, p. 115	neutrality of money, p. 112
currency, p. 103	income, p. 103	open market operations, p. 106
demand for money, p. 111	liquid, p. 104	quantity theory of money, p. 111
equation of exchange, p. 110	M1, p. 108	shoe-leather costs, p. 119
Federal Open Market Committee (FOMC), p. 105	M2, p. 108	store of value, p. 104
	medium of exchange, p. 103	transaction costs, p. 103
	menu costs, p. 119	unit of account, p. 104
	monetary aggregates, p. 107	velocity of money, p. 110
		wealth, p. 103

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

What Is Money?

1. Describe the three primary functions money performs in an economy.

The Federal Reserve System and the Control of the Money Supply

2. What are open market operations? What open market operation can the Federal Reserve conduct to increase the money supply?

Quantity Theory of Money

4. What key assumption of classical economists provides the basis for their analysis of the relationship between money and other economic variables?
5. What is the relationship between velocity and the equation of exchange?

Hyperinflation

8. What is hyperinflation? What has been the main cause of hyperinflation episodes?

The Cost of Inflation

10. What are the costs of anticipated and unanticipated inflation?

PROBLEMS

All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

What Is Money?

1. In the movie *The Count of Monte Cristo* (2002) a scene shows the main character paying for an estate in France using a wagon full of silver and gold coins. During the 1800s it was not common for people to pay for a house using this method, but gold and silver pieces were quite extensively used as a mean of payment.
 - a) What method of payment do you think was most probably used to buy a house, even in the 1800s?
 - b) Why do you think we do not use silver and gold coins as the preferred mean of payment anymore?
2. It is not unusual to find a business that displays a sign “no personal checks, please.” Based on this observation, comment on the relative degree of liquidity of a checking account and currency.
3. Most of the time it is quite difficult to separate the three functions of money. Money performs its three functions at all times, but sometimes we can stress one in particular. For each of the following situations, identify which function of money is emphasized.
 - a) Brooke accepts money in exchange for performing her daily tasks at her office, since she knows she can use that money to buy goods and services.

Measuring Money

3. What are the M1 and M2 monetary aggregates?

6. What are the classical dichotomy, the quantity theory of money, and the neutrality of money?
7. How is the quantity theory of money converted into a theory of inflation? According to this theory, what determines the inflation rate?

Inflation and Interest Rates

9. What is the Fisher effect? What is its significance?

- b) Tim wants to calculate the relative value of oranges and apples, and therefore checks the price per pound of each of these goods quoted in currency units.
- c) Maria is currently pregnant. She expects her expenditures to increase in the future and decides to increase the balance in her savings account.

Measuring Money

4. Consider the following table with data about monetary aggregates (billions of dollars, seasonally adjusted data):

Date	M1	M2
Feb. 2009	1,562.1	8,340.7
Aug. 2009	1,648.3	8,413.4
Nov. 2009	1,685.6	8,509.1
Feb. 2010	1,710.4	8,518.6

Source: Federal Reserve System (H.6)

- a) Calculate the annualized growth rate of M1 and M2 for the following periods: Feb. 2009–Feb. 2010 (one year), Aug. 2009–Feb. 2010 (six months), and Nov. 2009–Feb. 2010 (three months).
- b) Comment on the growth rates of these monetary aggregates.
5. Assume that you are interested in earning some return on idle balances you usually keep in your checking account and decide to buy some money market mutual fund shares by writing a check. Comment on the effect of your action (everything else the same) on M1 and M2.

Quantity Theory of Money

6. Inhabitants of Pandora use stone beads as money. On average, every stone bead is used five times per year to carry out transactions. The total supply of beads is forty million.
- a) What is the level of aggregate spending in Pandora according to the quantity theory of money?
- b) Suppose now that the inhabitants of Pandora use less money to conduct the same number of transactions (i.e., each individual carries fewer beads). What is the effect on the velocity of money?
7. Plot the following table on a graph measuring average money growth rates on the horizontal

axis and average inflation rates on the vertical axis (data is for the period 1991–2000, from the Inter-American Development Bank). Inflation is measured using the CPI and the monetary aggregate considered is M1.

	Argentina	Bolivia	Chile	Mexico
Inflation rate	21.43%	9.17%	9.52%	18.70%
Money growth rate	25.93%	8.56%	12.83%	20.96%

Does this data support the quantity theory of money?

The Cost of Inflation

8. Currently many banks offer online services that save customers a trip to the bank. In addition, ATMs and debit cards allow depositors twenty-four-hour access to their balances. Comment on the effects of online banking and ATMs on shoe-leather costs.
9. These days many firms post their catalogs or their product prices on the internet. In addition, most retailers have adopted bar codes to keep track of their inventories and implement price changes. Comment on the effect of these technologies on menu costs.

10. Suppose Alex earned \$500 (nominal capital gain) from selling stock he bought ten years ago. During the last ten years prices increased significantly, which means that Alex's real capital gain is only \$300. If the tax applied to capital gains is 35%,
- a) calculate Alex's real after tax capital gain if the tax is applied to his nominal capital gain.
 - b) calculate Alex's real after tax capital gain if the tax is applied to his real capital gain.

**myeconlab****MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.**

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.

Chapter 5

Appendix

The Money Supply Process

From 1930 to 1933, the money supply fell 25% and the economy experienced deflation, leading to the most severe economic contraction in U.S. history, with the unemployment rate rising to 25%. Why did the money supply fall so precipitously during this period? What role did the Federal Reserve play in this contraction of the money supply?

To answer these questions and better understand how the Federal Reserve controls the money supply, this appendix outlines the money supply process.

The Fed's Balance Sheet

We start our discussion of the money supply process by seeing how a central bank, in this case the Federal Reserve, changes its balance sheet, composed of assets and liabilities. Here we discuss a simplified balance sheet that includes four items that are essential to our understanding of the money supply process.

Federal Reserve System	
Assets	Liabilities
Government securities	Currency in circulation
Discount loans	Reserves

Liabilities

Currency in circulation and reserves are often referred to as *monetary liabilities* on the Fed's balance sheet. Increases in either will lift the size of the money supply, all else equal. The sum of the Fed's monetary liabilities and the U.S. Treasury's monetary liabilities (Treasury currency in circulation, primarily coins) is the **monetary base**. When discussing the monetary base, we will focus only on the Fed's monetary liabilities because the monetary liabilities of the Treasury account for less than 10% of the base.

1. *Currency in circulation.* The Fed issues currency (those green-and-gray pieces of paper in your wallet that say "Federal Reserve Note" at the top).

Currency in circulation is the amount of currency in the hands of the public. Currency held by depository institutions is also a liability of the Fed, but is counted as part of the reserves.

2. *Reserves.* All banks have an account at the Fed in which they hold deposits. **Reserves** consist of deposits at the Fed plus currency that is held in bank vaults, known as *vault cash*. Reserves are assets for the banks but liabilities for the Fed, because the banks can demand payment on them at any time and the Fed is required to satisfy its obligation by paying Federal Reserve notes. An increase in reserves leads to an increase in the level of deposits and hence in the money supply.

Total reserves fall into two categories: reserves that the Fed requires banks to hold (**required reserves**) and any additional reserves the banks choose to hold (**excess reserves**). For example, the Fed might require that for every dollar of deposits at a depository institution, a certain fraction (say, ten cents) must be held as reserves. This fraction (10%) held as reserves is called the **required reserve ratio** and is denoted as rr .

Assets

Changes in the asset items lead to changes in reserves and consequently to changes in the money supply. The two key asset items in the Fed's balance sheet are as follows:

1. *Government securities.* This category of assets covers the Fed's holdings of securities issued by the U.S. Treasury. The Fed provides reserves to the banking system by purchasing securities, thereby increasing its holdings of these assets. An increase in government securities held by the Fed leads to an increase in the money supply.
2. *Discount loans.* The Fed provides reserves to the banking system by making discount loans to banks. Banks refer to the discount loans they take out as *borrowings from the Fed* or, alternatively, as *borrowed reserves*. These loans appear as a liability on banks' balance sheets. An increase in discount loans can also be the source of an increase in the money supply. The **discount rate** is the interest rate the Fed charges banks for these loans.

Control of the Monetary Base

The *monetary base* (also called **high-powered money**) equals currency in circulation, C , plus the total reserves in banking system, R . We express the monetary base MB as

$$MB = C + R$$

The Federal Reserve exercises control over the monetary base through its purchases or sales of government securities in the open market, called open market operations, and through its extension of discount loans to banks.

Federal Reserve Open Market Operations

The Fed changes the monetary base primarily through its open market operations. A purchase of bonds by the Fed is called an **open market purchase**, and a sale of bonds by the Fed is called an **open market sale**.

To illustrate an open market purchase, suppose that the Fed purchases \$100 of bonds from a bank and pays for them with a \$100 check. To analyze this transaction, we use a tool called a **T-account**, a simplified balance sheet, with lines in the form of a T, that lists only the changes that occur in assets and liabilities starting from some initial balance sheet position. Just like a balance sheet, both sides of the T-account must balance. The bank will either deposit the check in its account with the Fed or cash it in for currency, which will be counted as vault cash. Either action means that the bank will find itself with \$100 more reserves and a \$100 reduction in its holdings of securities. The T-account for the banking system, then, is as follows:

Banking System			
Assets		Liabilities	
Securities	−\$100		
Reserves	+\$100		

The Fed, meanwhile, finds that its liabilities have increased by the additional \$100 of reserves, while its assets have increased by the \$100 of additional securities that it now holds. Its T-account is as follows:

Federal Reserve System			
Assets		Liabilities	
Securities	+\$100	Reserves	+\$100

This open market purchase increases reserves by \$100, the amount of the open market purchase. Because there has been no change of currency in circulation, the monetary base has also risen by \$100, so we see that the monetary base changes one-for-one with the Fed's holdings of securities.

Shifts from Deposits into Currency

Even if the Fed does not conduct open market operations, a shift from deposits to currency will affect the reserves in the banking system. However, such a shift will have no effect on the monetary base.

Let's suppose that Alicia (who opened a \$100 checking account at the First National Bank) finds tellers abusive in all banks and she closes her account by withdrawing the \$100 balance in cash, vowing never to deposit it in a bank again. The effect on the T-account of the nonbank public is as follows:

Nonbank Public			
Assets		Liabilities	
Checkable deposits	−\$100		
Currency	+\$100		

The banking system loses \$100 of deposits and hence \$100 of reserves:

Banking System			
Assets		Liabilities	
Reserves	−\$100	Checkable deposits	−\$100

For the Fed, Alicia's action means that there is \$100 of additional currency circulating in the hands of the public, while reserves in the banking system have fallen by \$100. The Fed's T-account is as follows:

Assets	Liabilities
	Currency in circulation +\$100
	Reserves -\$100

The net effect on the monetary liabilities of the Fed is a wash; the monetary base is unaffected by Alicia's disgust at the banking system. But reserves are affected. Random fluctuations of reserves can occur as a result of random shifts into currency and out of deposits, and vice versa. The same is not true for the monetary base, making it a more stable variable than reserves.

Discount Loans

So far we have examined changes in the monetary base solely as a result of open market operations. However, the monetary base is also affected when the Fed makes a discount loan to a bank. When the Fed makes a \$100 discount loan to the First National Bank, the bank is credited with \$100 of reserves from the proceeds of the loan. The following T-accounts illustrate the effects on the balance sheets of the banking system and the Fed:

Banking System		Federal Reserve System	
Assets	Liabilities	Assets	Liabilities
Reserves +\$100	Discount loans +\$100 (borrowings from the Fed)	Discount loans +\$100 (borrowings from the Fed)	Reserves +\$100

The monetary liabilities of the Fed have now increased by \$100, and the monetary base, too, has increased by this amount. However, if a bank pays off a loan from the Fed, thereby reducing its borrowings from the Fed by \$100, the T-accounts of the banking system and the Fed are as follows:

Banking System		Federal Reserve System	
Assets	Liabilities	Assets	Liabilities
Reserves -\$100	Discount loans -\$100 (borrowings from the Fed)	Discount loans -\$100 (borrowings from the Fed)	Reserves -\$100

The net effect on the monetary liabilities of the Fed, and hence on the monetary base, is a reduction of \$100. We see that the monetary base also changes one-for-one with the change in the borrowings from the Fed.

Overview of the Fed's Ability to Control the Monetary Base

We have established that two primary factors determine the monetary base: open market operations and discount lending. The Fed completely controls the amount of open market purchases or sales by placing orders in the bond markets. Banks, however,

decide how much to borrow from the discount window, although the Fed does influence their decision by setting the discount rate.

Therefore, we can split the monetary base into two components: one that the Fed can control completely and another that is less tightly controlled. The less tightly controlled component is the amount of the base that is created by discount loans from the Fed. The remainder of the base, called the *nonborrowed monetary base*, is under the Fed's control, because it results primarily from open market operations. The **nonborrowed monetary base** is the monetary base minus banks' borrowing from the Fed (discount loans), which we refer to as **borrowed reserves**.

Multiple Deposit Creation: A Simple Model

When the Fed supplies the banking system with \$1 of additional reserves, deposits increase by a multiple of this amount—a process called **multiple deposit creation**. Because the money supply is made up of currency plus deposits, multiple deposit creation shows how increases in the monetary base lead to a multiple expansion of the money supply.

Deposit Creation: The Single Bank

Suppose that the \$100 open market purchase described earlier was conducted with the First National Bank. After the Fed has bought the \$100 bond from the First National Bank, the bank finds that it has an increase in reserves of \$100. To analyze what the bank will do with these additional reserves, assume that the bank does not want to hold excess reserves because it earns no interest on them. We begin the analysis with the following T-account:

First National Bank	
Assets	Liabilities
Securities	-\$100
Reserves	+\$100

Because the bank has no increase in its checkable deposits, required reserves remain the same, and the bank finds that its additional \$100 of reserves has increased excess reserves by \$100. Let's say that the bank decides to make a loan equal in amount to the \$100 increase in excess reserves. When the bank makes the loan, it sets up a checking account for the borrower and puts the proceeds of the loan into this account. In this way, the bank alters its balance sheet by increasing its liabilities with \$100 of checkable deposits and at the same time increasing its assets with the \$100 loan. The resulting T-account looks like this:

First National Bank	
Assets	Liabilities
Securities	-\$100
Reserves	+\$100
Loans	+\$100
	Checkable deposits
	+\$100

The bank has created checkable deposits by its act of lending. Because checkable deposits are part of the money supply, the bank's act of lending has, in fact, created money.

In its current balance sheet position, the First National Bank still has excess reserves and so might want to make additional loans. However, these reserves will not stay at

the bank for very long. The borrower took out a loan not to leave \$100 idle at the First National Bank but to purchase goods and services from other individuals and corporations. When the borrower makes these purchases by writing checks, they will be deposited at other banks, and the \$100 of reserves will leave the First National Bank. **A bank cannot safely make loans for an amount greater than the excess reserves it has before it makes the loan.**

The final T-account of the First National Bank is as follows:

First National Bank			
Assets		Liabilities	
Securities	−\$100		
Loans	+\$100		

First National Bank converted the \$100 increase in reserves into additional loans of \$100 plus an additional \$100 of deposits that have made their way to other banks. (Borrowers deposit all the checks written on accounts at the First National Bank in banks rather than converting them into cash, because we are assuming that the public does not want to hold any additional currency.) Now let's see what happens to these deposits at the other banks.

Deposit Creation: The Banking System

To simplify the analysis, let us assume that the \$100 of deposits created by the First National Bank's loan is deposited at Bank A and that this bank and all other banks hold no excess reserves. Bank A's T-account becomes

Bank A			
Assets		Liabilities	
Reserves	+\$100	Checkable deposits	+\$100

If the required reserve ratio, rr , is 10%, this bank will now find itself with a \$10 increase in required reserves, leaving it \$90 of excess reserves. Because Bank A (like the First National Bank) does not want to hold on to excess reserves, it will make loans for the entire amount. Its loans and checkable deposits will then increase by \$90. When the borrower spends the \$90 of checkable deposits, the checkable deposits and the reserves at Bank A will decrease by this same \$90 amount. The net result is that Bank A's T-account will look like this:

Bank A			
Assets		Liabilities	
Reserves	+\$10	Checkable deposits	+\$100
Loans	+\$90		

If the money spent by the borrower to whom Bank A lent the \$90 is deposited in another bank, such as Bank B, the T-account for Bank B will be as follows:

Bank B			
Assets		Liabilities	
Reserves	+\$90	Checkable deposits	+\$90

The checkable deposits in the banking system have increased by another \$90, for a total increase of \$190 (\$100 at Bank A plus \$90 at Bank B). In fact, the distinction between Bank A and Bank B is not necessary to obtain the same result on the overall expansion of deposits. If the borrower from Bank A writes checks to someone who deposits them at Bank A, the same change in deposits would occur. The T-accounts for Bank B would just apply to Bank A, and its checkable deposits would increase by the total amount of \$190.

Bank B will want to modify its balance sheet further. It must keep 10% of \$90 (\$9) as required reserves and has 90% of \$90 (\$81) in excess reserves available for loans. Bank B will make an \$81 loan to a borrower, who spends the proceeds from the loan. Bank B’s T-account will be as follows:

Assets		Liabilities	
Reserves	+\$ 9	Checkable deposits	+\$90
Loans	+\$81		

The \$81 spent by the borrower from Bank B will be deposited in another bank (Bank C). Consequently, from the initial \$100 increase of reserves in the banking system, the total increase of checkable deposits in the system so far is \$271 (= \$100 + \$90 + \$81).

Following the same reasoning, if all banks make loans for the full amount of their excess reserves, further increments in checkable deposits will continue (at Banks C, D, E, and so on), as depicted in Table 5A1.1. Therefore, the total increase in deposits from the initial \$100 increase in reserves will be \$1,000: the increase is tenfold, the reciprocal of the 10% (0.10) required reserve ratio.

If the banks choose to invest their excess reserves in securities, the result is the same. If Bank A had taken its excess reserves and purchased securities instead of making loans, its T-account would have looked like this:

Assets		Liabilities	
Reserves	+\$10	Checkable deposits	+\$100
Securities	+\$90		

TABLE 5A1.1

Creation of Deposits (assuming 10% reserve requirement and a \$100 increase in reserves)

Bank	Increase in Deposits (\$)	Increase in Loans (\$)	Increase in Reserves (\$)
First National	0.00	100.00	0.00
A	100.00	90.00	10.00
B	90.00	81.00	9.00
C	81.00	72.90	8.10
D	72.90	65.61	7.29
E	65.61	59.05	6.56
F	59.05	53.14	5.91
.	.	.	.
.	.	.	.
.	.	.	.
Total for all banks	1,000.00	1,000.00	100.00

When the bank buys \$90 of securities, it writes a \$90 check to the seller of the securities, who in turn deposits the \$90 at a bank such as Bank B. Bank B's checkable deposits increase by \$90, and the deposit expansion process is the same as before. ***Whether a bank chooses to use its excess reserves to make loans or to purchase securities, the effect on deposit expansion is the same.***

As you can see, a single bank creates deposits only up to the amount of its excess reserves. But as each bank makes a loan and creates deposits, the reserves find their way to another bank, which uses them to make additional loans and create additional deposits. This process continues until the initial increase in reserves results in a multiple increase in deposits.

Critique of the Simple Model

Though our model of multiple deposit creation seems to imply that the Federal Reserve exercises complete control over the level of checkable deposits, in reality it does not for two reasons:

1. If loan proceeds are held as cash and never deposited in a bank, then the loan will not cause multiple deposit expansion and the money supply will not increase as our model predicts.
2. If banks choose not to lend or buy securities to the capacity of their excess reserves, the full expansion of deposits predicted by the simple model of multiple deposit creation again does not occur.

The preferences of depositors and banks have a clear influence on the level of deposits and therefore the money supply that our simple model does not address.

Factors that Determine the Money Supply

Our critique of the simple model indicates the need to expand our analysis to discuss all the factors that affect the money supply. Let's look at changes in each factor in turn, holding all other factors constant.

Changes in the Nonborrowed Monetary Base

We have established that the Fed's open market purchases increase the nonborrowed monetary base (MB_n) and its open market sales decrease it. Holding all other variables constant, an increase in MB_n arising from an open market purchase increases the amount of the monetary base and reserves, so that multiple deposit creation occurs and the money supply increases. Similarly, an open market sale that decreases MB_n shrinks the amount of the monetary base and reserves, thereby causing a multiple contraction of deposits and the money supply to decrease. ***We have the following result: the money supply is positively related to the nonborrowed monetary base MB_n .***

Changes in Borrowed Reserves from the Fed

An increase in discount loans from the Fed provides additional borrowed reserves, and thereby increases the amount of the monetary base and reserves, so that multiple deposit creation occurs and the money supply increases. If banks reduce the level of their discount loans, all other variables held constant, the monetary base and amount of reserves fall, and the money supply decreases. The result is that ***the money supply is positively related to the level of borrowed reserves, BR, from the Fed.***

Changes in the Required Reserve Ratio

If the required reserve ratio on checkable deposits increases while all other variables such as the monetary base stay the same, there is less multiple deposit expansion, and hence the money supply falls. If, on the other hand, the required reserve ratio falls, multiple deposit expansion is higher and the money supply rises.

We now have the following result: ***the money supply is negatively related to the required reserve ratio rr*** . In the past, the Fed sometimes used reserve requirements to affect the size of the money supply. In recent years, however, reserve requirements have become a less important factor in the determination of the money multiplier and the money supply.

Changes in Currency Holdings

As shown before, checkable deposits undergo multiple expansion while currency does not. Hence, when borrowers convert checkable deposits into currency, holding the monetary base and other variables constant, there is a switch from a component of the money supply that undergoes multiple expansion to one that does not. The overall level of multiple expansion declines and the money supply falls. On the other hand, if currency holdings fall, there is a switch into checkable deposits that undergo multiple deposit expansion, so the money supply rises. This analysis suggests that ***the money supply is negatively related to currency holdings***.

Changes in Excess Reserves

When banks increase their holdings of excess reserves, reserves are no longer being used to make loans, ceasing multiple deposit creation and causing a contraction of the money supply. If, on the other hand, banks chose to hold less excess reserves, loans and multiple deposit creation will go up and the money supply will rise. ***The money supply is therefore negatively related to the amount of excess reserves***.

Overview of the Money Supply Process

We now have a model of the money supply process in which all three of the players—the Federal Reserve System, depositors, and banks—directly influence the money supply.

As a study aid, Table 5A1.2 shows the money supply response to the five factors discussed previously and gives a brief synopsis of the reasoning behind them. We group the

TABLE 5A1.2
Money Supply
Response

Player	Variable	Change in Variable	Money Supply Response	Reason
Federal Reserve System	Nonborrowed monetary base	↑	↑	More <i>MB</i> for deposit creation
	Borrowed reserves	↑	↑	More <i>MB</i> for deposit creation
	Required reserve ratio	↑	↓	Less multiple deposit expansion
Depositors	Currency holdings	↑	↓	Less multiple deposit expansion
Depositors and banks	Excess reserves	↑	↓	Less loans and deposit creation

Note: Only increases (↑) in the variables are shown. The effects of decreases on the money supply would be the opposite of those indicated in the “Money Supply Response” column.

variables by the player or players who are the primary influence behind the variable. The Federal Reserve, for example, influences the money supply by controlling the first three variables (called tools of the Fed). Depositors influence the money supply through their decisions about their holdings of currency, while banks influence the money supply by their decisions about excess reserves. However, because depositors' behavior influences bankers' expectations about deposit outflows, which as we will see affects banks' decisions to hold excess reserves, we also list depositors as a player determining excess reserves.

Application

The Great Depression Bank Panics and the Money Supply, 1930–1933

The bank failures of 1929 to 1933 highlight the destructive force of reductions in the money supply on the economy.

In 1930, banks were failing at a higher rate than in 1929, but not dramatically higher. Suddenly, in the final two months of 1930, the U.S. economy experienced a **bank panic**, in which there were simultaneous failures of multiple banks, in this case more than 750 banks with total deposits of \$550 million. Depositors anticipated substantial losses on deposits (because at the time there was no federal deposit insurance as there is today, which insures depositors against losses), and so they sought to shift their holdings into currency. The result, as shown in Figure 5A1.1, was a rise in the ratio of currency to deposits, the currency ratio, denoted by c .

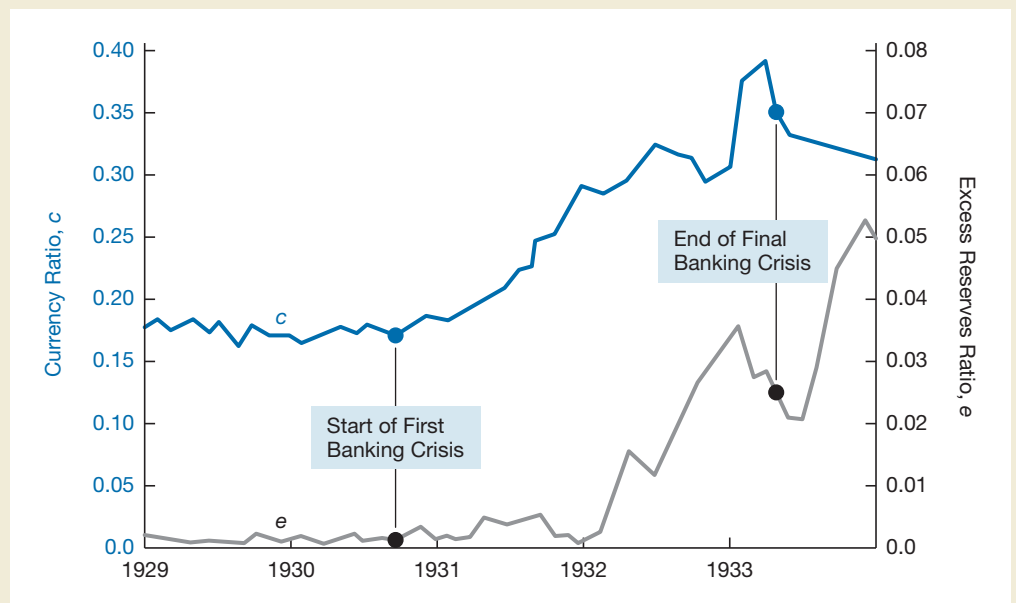
To protect themselves from a rapid outflow of deposits, banks substantially increased their holdings of excess reserves. As a result, the ratio of excess reserves to deposits, the excess reserves ratio denoted by e in Figure 5A1.1, rose. Indeed, between October 1930 and January 1931, both c and e rose, with e more than doubling.

Our money supply model analysis predicts that when e and c increase, the money supply will contract. The rise in c reduces the overall level of multiple deposit expansion, leading to a decline in the money supply. Rising e reduces the amount of reserves available to support

FIGURE 5A1.1

Excess Reserves Ratio and Currency Ratio, 1929–1933

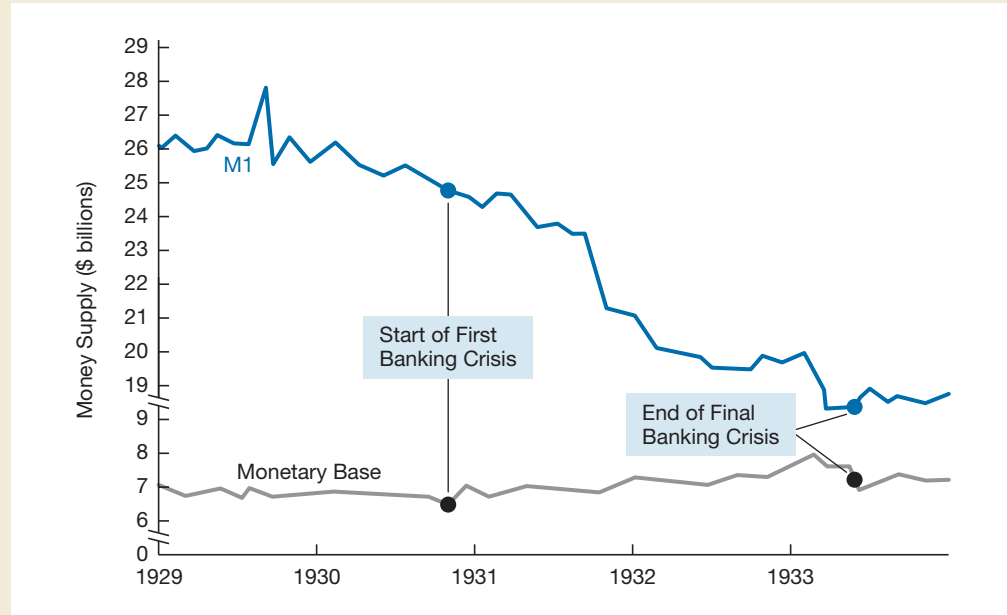
With the banking panics that started in the fall of 1930, the currency ratio, c , and the excess reserve ratio, e , rose substantially.



Sources: Federal Reserve Bulletin; and Friedman, Milton and Anna Jacobson Schwartz. 1963. *A monetary history of the United States, 1867–1960*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 333.

FIGURE 5A1.2**M1 and the Monetary Base, 1929–1933**

The rise in the currency and excess reserves ratios, c and e , from 1930 to 1933 resulted in a decline in the money multiplier, which led to a 25% fall in M1, even though the monetary base rose by 20% over this period.



Source: Friedman, Milton and Anna Jacobson Schwartz. 1963. *A monetary history of the United States, 1867–1960*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 333.

deposits and also causes the money supply to decrease. Thus our model predicts that the rise in e and c after the onset of the first banking crisis would result in a decline in the money supply—a prediction borne out by the evidence in Figure 5A1.2.

As banking crises persisted through 1933, both c and e continued to rise as our model predicts. By the end of the crises in March 1933, the money supply (M1) had declined by over 25%—by far the largest decline in all of American history—and it coincided with the nation’s worst economic contraction (see Chapter 15). Remarkably, such a dramatic decrease in the money supply occurred despite a 20% rise in the level of the monetary base during the period, illustrating just how important changes in c and e are during bank panics. It also highlights how depositor and bank behavior can complicate the Fed’s critical role of conducting monetary policy.



The Money Multiplier

The analysis to this point in this appendix is sufficient for you to understand how the money supply process works. For those of you who are more mathematically inclined, we can derive all of the results using a concept called the **money multiplier**, denoted by m , which tells us how much the money supply changes for a given change in the monetary base. The relationship between the money supply, M (in this case, the M1 definition); the money multiplier, m ; and the monetary base, MB , is as follows:¹

$$M = m \times MB \quad (1)$$

¹For a derivation of the money multiplier for the M2 definition of money, see the Web appendix to Chapter 14 in Frederic S. Mishkin, *The Economics of Money, Banking and Financial Markets*, 9th edition, which can be found at <http://wps.aw.com/wps/media/objects/7529/7710171/appendixes/ch14apx2.pdf>

The money multiplier m tells us what multiple of the monetary base is transformed into the money supply. Because the money multiplier is larger than 1, the alternative name for the monetary base, high-powered money, is logical: a \$1 change in the monetary base leads to more than a \$1 change in the money supply.

Deriving the Money Multiplier

Let's assume that the desired holdings of currency, C , and excess reserves, ER , grows proportionally with checkable deposits, D . In other words, we assume that the ratios of these items to checkable deposits are constants in equilibrium, as the braces in the following expressions indicate:

$$c = \{C/D\} = \text{currency ratio}$$

$$e = \{ER/D\} = \text{excess reserves ratio}$$

We will now derive a formula that describes how the currency ratio desired by depositors, the excess reserves ratio desired by banks, and the required reserve ratio set by the Fed affect the multiplier m . We begin the derivation of the model of the money supply with the following equation:

$$R = RR + ER \quad (2)$$

This equation states that the total amount of reserves in the banking system, R , equals the sum of required reserves, RR , and excess reserves, ER .

The total amount of required reserves equals the required reserve ratio, rr , times the amount of checkable deposits, D :

$$RR = rr \times D$$

Substituting $rr \times D$ for RR in the Equation 2 yields an equation that links reserves in the banking system to the amount of checkable deposits and excess reserves they can support:

$$R = (rr \times D) + ER$$

A key point here is that the Fed sets the required reserve ratio rr to less than 1. Thus \$1 of reserves can support more than \$1 of deposits and the multiple expansion of deposits can occur.

Let's see how this works in practice. If excess reserves are held at zero ($ER = 0$), the required reserve ratio is set at $rr = 0.10$, and the level of checkable deposits in the banking system is \$800 billion, then the amount of reserves needed to support these deposits is \$80 billion ($= 0.10 \times \800 billion). Multiple deposit creation enables the \$80 billion of reserves to support ten times this amount in checkable deposits.

Because the monetary base, MB , equals currency, C , plus reserves, R , we can generate an equation that links the amount of the monetary base to the levels of checkable deposits and currency by adding currency to both sides of the equation:

$$MB = R + C = (rr \times D) + ER + C$$

This equation reveals the amount of the monetary base needed to support the existing amounts of checkable deposits, currency, and excess reserves.

To derive the money multiplier formula in terms of the currency ratio $c = \{C/D\}$ and the excess reserves ratio $e = \{ER/D\}$, we rewrite the last equation, specifying C as $c \times D$ and ER as $e \times D$:

$$MB = (rr \times D) + (e \times D) + (c \times D) = (rr + e + c) \times D$$

We next divide both sides of the equation by the term inside the parentheses to get an expression linking checkable deposits, D , to the monetary base, MB :

$$D = \frac{1}{rr + e + c} \times MB \quad (3)$$

Using the M1 definition of the money supply as currency plus checkable deposits ($M = D + C$) and again specifying C as $c \times D$,

$$M = D + (c \times D) = (1 + c) \times D$$

Substituting in this equation the expression for D from Equation 3, we have

$$M = \frac{1 + c}{rr + e + c} \times MB \quad (4)$$

We have derived an expression in the form of our earlier Equation 1. As you can see, the ratio that multiplies MB is the money multiplier, which tells how much the money supply changes in response to a given change in the monetary base (high-powered money). The money multiplier m is thus

$$m = \frac{1 + c}{rr + e + c} \quad (5)$$

It is a function of the currency ratio set by depositors (c), the excess reserves ratio set by banks (e), and the required reserve ratio set by the Fed (rr).

Intuition Behind the Money Multiplier

To get a feel for what the money multiplier means, let us construct a numerical example with realistic numbers for the following variables:

- rr = required reserve ratio = 0.10
- C = currency in circulation = \$400 billion
- D = checkable deposits = \$800 billion
- ER = excess reserves = \$0.8 billion
- M = money supply (M1) = $C + D$ = \$1,200 billion

From these numbers we can calculate the values for the currency ratio c and the excess reserves ratio e :

$$c = \frac{\$400 \text{ billion}}{\$800 \text{ billion}} = 0.5$$

$$e = \frac{\$0.8 \text{ billion}}{\$800 \text{ billion}} = 0.001$$

The resulting value of the money multiplier is as follows:

$$m = \frac{1 + 0.5}{0.1 + 0.001 + 0.5} = \frac{1.5}{0.601} = 2.5$$

The money multiplier of 2.5 tells us that, given the required reserve ratio of 10% on checkable deposits and the behavior of depositors as represented by $c = 0.5$ and banks as represented by $e = 0.001$, a \$1 increase in the monetary base leads to a \$2.50 increase in the money supply ($M1$).

Note that the money multiplier is less than the multiple deposit expansion of 10 in the simple model. Although there is multiple expansion of deposits, there is no such expansion for currency. Thus, if some portion of the increase in high-powered money finds its way into currency, this portion does not undergo multiple deposit expansion. In our simple model earlier in the chapter, we did not allow for this possibility, and so the increase in reserves led to the maximum amount of multiple deposit creation. However, in our current model of the money multiplier, the level of currency does increase when the monetary base MB and checkable deposits D increase because c is greater than zero. As previously stated, any increase in MB that goes into an increase in currency is not multiplied, so only part of the increase in MB is available to support checkable deposits that undergo multiple expansion. The overall level of multiple deposit expansion must be lower, meaning that the increase in M , given an increase in MB , is smaller than the simple model earlier in the chapter indicated.²

Money Supply Response to Changes in the Factors

To complete our analysis, we need to recognize that the monetary base can be divided into two components: the sum of the nonborrowed base, MB_n , and borrowed reserves, BR —that is, $MB = MB_n + BR$. We can rewrite Equation 1 as follows:

$$M = m \times (MB_n + BR) \quad (6)$$

Now we can show algebraically all the results in Table 5A1.2, which shows the money supply response to the changes in the factors.

As you can see from Equation 5, a rise in MB_n or BR raises the money supply M by a multiple amount because the money multiplier m is greater than one. We determine how a rise in the required reserve ratio lowers the money supply by calculating what happens to the value of the money multiplier using Equation 5 in our numerical example when r increases from 10% to 15% (leaving all other variables unchanged). The money multiplier then falls from 2.5 to

$$m = \frac{1 + 0.5}{0.15 + 0.001 + 0.5} = \frac{1.5}{0.651} = 2.3$$

which, as we would expect, is less than 2.5.

Similarly, we can see in our numerical example that a rise in currency lowers the money supply by calculating what happens to the money multiplier when c is raised from 0.50 to 0.75. The money multiplier then falls from 2.5 to

$$m = \frac{1 + 0.75}{0.1 + 0.001 + 0.75} = \frac{1.75}{0.851} = 2.06$$

²Another reason the money multiplier is smaller is that e is a constant fraction greater than zero, indicating that an increase in MB and D leads to higher excess reserves. The resulting higher amount of excess reserves means that the amount of reserves used to support checkable deposits will not increase as much as it otherwise would. Hence the increase in checkable deposits and the money supply will be lower, and the money multiplier will be smaller. However, often e is tiny—around 0.001; the impact of this ratio on the money multiplier can be quite small. But there are periods, such as currently, when e is much larger and so has a more important role in lowering the money multiplier.

Finally, we can see that a rise in excess reserves lowers the money supply by calculating what happens to the money multiplier when e is raised from 0.001 to 0.005. The money multiplier declines from 2.5 to

$$m = \frac{1 + 0.5}{0.1 + 0.005 + 0.5} = \frac{1.5}{0.605} = 2.48$$

Note that although the excess reserves ratio has risen fivefold, there has been only a small decline in the money multiplier. This decline is small, because in recent years e has usually been extremely small, so changes in it have only a small impact on the money multiplier. However, there have been times, particularly during the Great Depression and recent period, when this ratio was far higher, and its movements had a substantial effect on the money supply and the money multiplier.

SUMMARY

1. There are three players in the money supply process: the central bank, banks (depository institutions), and depositors.
2. Four items in the Fed's balance sheet are essential to our understanding of the money supply process: the two liability items, currency in circulation and reserves (which together make up the monetary base), and the two asset items, government securities and discount loans.
3. The Federal Reserve controls the monetary base through open market operations and extension of discount loans to banks and has better control over the monetary base than over reserves.
4. A single bank can make loans up to the amount of its excess reserves, thereby creating an equal amount of deposits. The banking system can create a multiple expansion of deposits, because as each bank makes a loan and creates deposits, the reserves find their way to another bank, which uses them to make loans and create additional deposits. In the simple model of multiple deposit creation in which banks do not hold on to excess reserves and the public holds no currency, the multiple increase in checkable deposits equals the reciprocal of the required reserve ratio.
5. The simple model of multiple deposit creation has serious deficiencies. Decisions by depositors to increase their holdings of currency or of banks to hold excess reserves will result in a smaller expansion of deposits than the simple model predicts. All three players—the Fed, banks, and depositors—are important in the determination of the money supply.
6. The money supply is positively related to the nonborrowed monetary base MB_n , which is determined by open market operations, and the level of borrowed reserves (discount loans) from the Fed, BR . The money supply is negatively related to the required reserve ratio, rr , holdings of currency, and excess reserves. The model of the money supply process takes into account the behavior of all three players in the money supply process: the Fed through open market operations, discount lending, and setting of the required reserve ratio; depositors through their decisions about their holding of currency; and banks through their decisions about excess reserves, which are also influenced by depositors' decisions about deposit outflows.
7. The monetary base is linked to the money supply using the concept of the money multiplier, which tells us how much the money supply changes when there is a change in the monetary base.

KEY TERMS

bank panic, p. 135
 borrowed reserves, p. 130
 discount rate, p. 127
 excess reserves, p. 127
 high-powered money, p. 127
 monetary base, p. 126

money multiplier, p. 136
 multiple deposit creation,
 p. 130
 nonborrowed monetary base,
 p. 130
 open market operations, p. 106

open market purchase, p. 127
 open market sale, p. 127
 required reserve ratio, p. 127
 required reserves, p. 127
 reserves, p. 127
 T-account, p. 128

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND PROBLEMS

1. What is the monetary base? How does the Federal Reserve influence its size?
2. Suppose the Fed buys U.S. Treasury securities from Bank of America. According to the simple model of multiple deposit creation, how does this open market purchase affect the money supply? What are the two basic assumptions of the simple model you have described?
3. Identify the five factors that determine the money supply. For each factor, explain which player(s) in the money supply process—the Federal Reserve, depositors, and banks—control or influence it and how and why it affects the money supply.
4. Use the following information to determine the Fed's balance sheet and calculate the Fed's monetary liabilities:
 - Currency in circulation = \$750 billion
 - Reserves of the banking system = \$850 billion
 - Government securities held by the Fed = \$450 billion
 - Discount loans = \$1,150 billion
5. Use the Fed and the banking system T-accounts to describe the effects of a Fed sale of \$200 million worth of government bonds to a bank that pays with part of its reserves held at the Fed. What would be the effect of this transaction on the Fed's monetary liabilities?
6. Some developing countries have suffered banking crises in which depositors lost part or all of their deposits (in some countries there is no deposit insurance). This type of crisis decreases depositors' confidence in the banking system. What would be the effect of a rumor about a banking crisis on checkable deposits in such a country? What would be the effect on reserves and the monetary base?
7. The Federal Reserve announced the reduction of many lending facilities originally created to extend loans to financial intermediaries during the most difficult years of the recent subprime crisis, like the term auction facility (TAF). What would be the effect of the closing of the TAF on the monetary base?
8. Suppose the Federal Reserve conducts an open market purchase for \$100 million. Assuming the required reserves ratio is 10%, what would be the effect on the money supply in each of the following situations?
 - a) There is only one bank and the bank decides not to make a loan with its excess reserves.
 - b) There is only one bank, and the bank decides to make a loan for the full amount of its excess reserves.
 - c) There are many banks, all of which make loans for the full amount of their excess reserves.
9. Under very particular conditions banks would like to borrow from the Fed and not use these funds to make loans, but rather they would keep them in the form of excess reserves. What would be the effect on the monetary base and the money supply of an increase in discount loans that are kept in the form of excess reserves?
10. Calculate the money multiplier for the following values of the currency, excess reserves, and required reserves ratios (i.e., complete the following table) and explain why the money multiplier decreases when the currency or excess reserves ratio increase:

Currency deposit ratio	0.5	0.7	0.5
Excess reserves ratio	0.01	0.01	0.9
Required reserves ratio	0.08	0.08	0.08
Money multiplier			
11. During the recent 2007–2009 financial crisis in the United States the excess reserves ratio increased to unprecedented values of around 90–100%. At the same time, checkable deposits and currency remained mostly unchanged, whereas the monetary base increased substantially (the Fed did not change the required reserves ratio). Using the money multiplier model, describe how banks' behavior affected the excess reserves ratio, the money multiplier, and the money supply during this period.

Part Three

Long-Run Economic Growth

Chapter 6

The Sources of Growth and the Solow Model

Chapter 7

Drivers of Growth: Technology, Policy, and Institutions



Part Three Long-Run Economic Growth

This part of the book explores one of the most central questions in macroeconomics: why some countries have slow economic growth and stay poor, while others have rapid economic growth and prosper. Chapter 6 and its appendices develop the *Solow growth model*, the basic model used in all modern research on economic growth. Chapter 7 delves into the sources of economic growth by examining in more detail how advances in technology and the development of institutions promote economic growth.

We will examine applications in each chapter to make the critical connection between theory and real-world practice:

- “U.S. Growth Rates in the Postwar Period”
- “Evidence on Convergence, 1960–2009”
- “Does Population Growth Improve Living Standards?”

In keeping with our focus on key policy issues and the techniques policymakers use in practice, we will also analyze the following specific examples in Policy and Practice cases:

- “China’s One-Child Policy and Other Policies to Limit Population Growth”
- “Government Measures to Increase Human Capital”
- “The World Bank’s *Doing Business*”
- “Does Foreign Aid Work?”



6

The Sources of Growth and the Solow Model

Preview

Laptop-toting students in South Korea's gleaming capital city, Seoul, would hardly recognize the country their grandparents knew. In 1960, South Korea was an economic basket case, and Seoul was a poor and congested city lined with scrap-wood shantytowns. The average worker earned today's equivalent of \$5 a day. Western economists concluded that Korea's hopes for revitalization were bleak. Today, we know that assessment couldn't have been farther off the mark. Over the next fifty years, South Korea transformed itself into one of the world's richest nations, and is now a member of the exclusive club of trillion-dollar economies. South Koreans earn ten times what their predecessors did in 1960, drive expensive sedans, and work in air-conditioned offices.

The United States has also experienced extraordinary economic growth. The average U.S. citizen in 1870 lived in what we would consider abject poverty, without indoor plumbing or electric lighting. In 1870, U.S. per capita income in today's dollars was under \$3,000, while today it has grown to well over \$40,000.

The pace of economic growth in South Korea and the United States is highly atypical. Consider Haiti, which in 1960 had around the same GDP as South Korea. Today, Haitians actually earn less than they did fifty years ago, after adjusting for inflation. Discovering why countries like South Korea and the United States thrive while countries like Haiti stagnate is one of the most important goals of macroeconomics. As Nobel prize winner Robert Lucas has put it, "The consequences for human welfare involved in questions like these [about economic growth] are simply staggering."¹

¹Robert Lucas, Jr., "On the Mechanics of Economic Development," *Journal of Monetary Economics* 22 (1988): 5.

We start the chapter by examining *growth accounting*, which builds on the production function we discussed in Chapter 3. From there, we explore the *Solow growth model*, the basis of all modern research on economic growth, and its limitations. We then go beyond the Solow model in the following chapter to look in more detail at the role of technology and institutions in promoting economic growth.

Sources of Economic Growth: Growth Accounting

We begin by developing the production function into a format that allows us to identify the contributors to economic growth.

Growth Accounting Equation

In Chapter 3, we introduced the Cobb-Douglas aggregate production function with constant returns to scale:

$$Y = F(K,L) = AK^{0.3}L^{0.7} \quad (1)$$

where

K = capital stock
 L = labor
 A = available technology (measured by total factor productivity)

Equation 1 shows us how much output Y we can generate from given levels of factors of production and available technology. But what happens when any of the variables— A , K , or L —grows? With some basic math, we can modify the production function to show the relationship between the growth rate of output and the growth rate of the variables in the production function:

$$g_Y = g_A + 0.3g_K + 0.7g_L \quad (2)$$

where

$$g_Y = \frac{\Delta Y}{Y} = \text{growth rate of output}$$

$$g_A = \frac{\Delta A}{A} = \text{growth rate of technology (total factor productivity)}$$

$$g_K = \frac{\Delta K}{K} = \text{growth rate of capital}$$

$$g_L = \frac{\Delta L}{L} = \text{growth rate of labor}$$

Equation 2 is the **growth accounting equation**, the growth version of the production function, which states that the growth rate of output equals the growth rate

of total factor productivity plus the contribution from the growth of both capital and labor.²

The growth accounting equation retains the useful property of diminishing marginal product of capital and labor. If capital grows by 5%, output grows by only $0.3 \times 5\% = 1.5\%$. If the labor force grows by 5%, then output increases by only 3.5% ($= 0.7 \times 5\%$). Productivity, as we saw in our study of the production function, does not suffer from diminishing marginal product. If new inventions boost total factor productivity by 5%, output grows by 5%, too.

Growth Accounting in Practice

Three terms in the growth accounting equation contribute to growth in output:

- Contribution from productivity growth³ = $\Delta A/A$
- Contribution from capital growth = $0.3 \Delta K/K$
- Contribution from labor growth = $0.7 \Delta L/L$

Because it is difficult to directly measure total factor productivity, we must calculate it from measures of Y , K , and L . We do this with Equation 3, derived from solving Equation 1 for A :

$$A_t = \frac{Y_t}{K_t^{0.3}L_t^{0.7}} \quad (3)$$

Note that we introduce a new type of notation in Equation 3, the time subscript, t , where the subscript t indicates the value of total factor productivity at time t . We do this because what happens over time is central in discussing economic growth. We discuss this notation in more detail in the box, “Time Subscripts.”

We also refer to the term A_t as the **Solow residual** because it shows the unexplained (*residual*) part of the production function and was first used in growth accounting by Robert Solow.

²To derive the growth accounting equation, we begin by writing the change in Y as follows:

$$\Delta Y = \frac{\partial Y}{\partial A} \times \Delta A + \frac{\partial Y}{\partial K} \times \Delta K + \frac{\partial Y}{\partial L} \times \Delta L$$

because

$$\partial Y/\partial A = K^{0.3}L^{0.7} = AK^{0.3}L^{0.7}/A = Y/A$$

We can write the preceding equation as follows:

$$\Delta Y = (Y/A) \times \Delta A + MPK \times \Delta K + MPL \times \Delta L$$

Substituting in the calculations for MPK and MPL from Chapter 3 and dividing through by Y then yields the following:

$$\frac{\Delta Y}{Y} = \frac{\Delta A}{A} + 0.3 \frac{\Delta K}{K} + 0.7 \frac{\Delta L}{L}$$

which using the definitions in the text is

$$g_Y = g_A + 0.3 g_K + 0.7 g_L$$

We also could have derived this equation by using the mathematical fact we discussed in Chapter 2 that the growth rate of a variable that is a product of several variables is the sum of the growth rate of the variables, along with the additional mathematical fact that the growth rate of a variable raised to some power is that power times the growth rate of that variable.

³Recall from Chapter 3 that when we talk about productivity, we are always referring to the general concept of total factor productivity, rather than labor productivity, which is more commonly referred to in the media.



Time Subscripts

The subscripts t , $t - 1$, or $t + 1$ tell you in which period something is happening. In previous chapters we have represented variables such as capital, labor, and aggregate output by K , L , and Y without specifying exactly when they

occur. The time subscript allows us to be more specific about the timing of these variables. K_t , L_t , and Y_t , for example, are the capital, labor, and level of aggregate output that occur in time period t .

With the values of A , K , and L in hand, we can compare their levels over time and calculate growth rates for each. For example, let's say that after calculating the Solow residual, over one year the growth rate of productivity, $\Delta A/A$, is 1.5%; the growth rate of the capital stock, $\Delta K/K$, is 2.0%; and the growth rate of the labor input, $\Delta L/L$, is 1.0%.

Using Equation 2, we know that 1.5% productivity growth contributed 1.5% to output growth over the period. The contribution from capital growth is $0.3 \times \Delta K/K = 0.3 \times 2.0\% = 0.6\%$, and the contribution of labor growth is $0.7 \times \Delta L/L = 0.7 \times 1.0\% = 0.7\%$. Thus, output growth equals $1.5\% + 0.6\% + 0.7\% = 2.8\%$. Notice that productivity growth contributed more than half of the total increase in output (because 1.5% is more than half of 2.8%), while capital and labor growth contributed the remainder.

Application

U.S. Growth Rates in the Postwar Period

Let's apply the growth accounting methodology to identify the sources of U.S. economic growth since World War II. Figure 6.1 divides 1948–2008 into three periods: 1948–1973, 1974–1995, and 1996–2008. The left-hand (blue) bars in each sub period represent output growth. The next three bars for each sub period represent the contribution to output growth from productivity (purple), capital (red), and labor inputs (green).

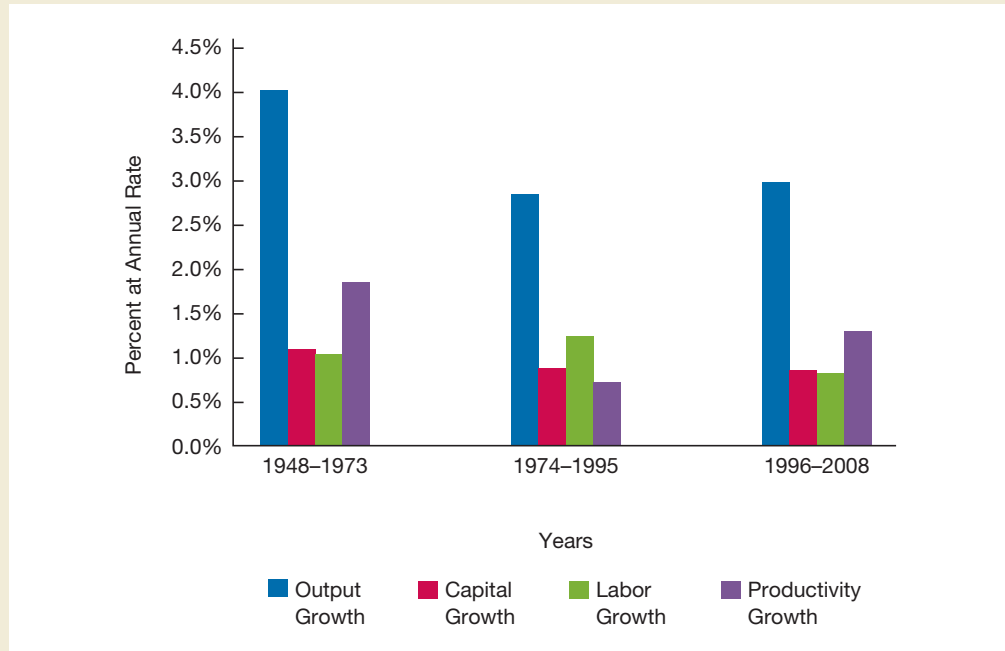
The U.S. economy grew rapidly until 1973 at a 4.0% growth rate, but then slowed considerably until 1995 to 2.9% growth. What explains this slowdown? It couldn't be capital growth, whose contribution to growth dropped only slightly from 1.1% to 0.9%. Nor could it be labor growth, whose contribution to output growth grew from 1.1% to 1.2% as women flooded into the labor force (a trend discussed further in Chapter 20). The decline in the output growth rate can only be from a slowdown of productivity. Indeed, annual productivity growth rates fell from 1.8% before 1973 to 0.7% in the 1974–1995 period.

Economists still hotly debate the causes of this productivity slowdown. Some note that oil prices began rising in 1973, and that the country began spending a lower proportion of its GDP on research and development. Still others point to the economy's transition from primarily manufacturing to service production as well as increases in environmental and other government regulations. One unconventional argument is that the advance of information technology prompted a painful period of industrial restructuring, temporarily suppressing productivity growth.

Despite slower growth of capital and labor, the average economic growth rate actually rose slightly from the 1974–1995 period to the 1996–2008 period (2.9% to 3.0%). Information

FIGURE 6.1**Sources of U.S. Economic Growth**

The first bar, in blue, for each period shows the annual average growth rate for output, while the next three show the contribution to output growth from productivity growth (purple), the growth in capital (red), and the growth in labor inputs (green), respectively. Comparing sub periods, the growth rate of output varies considerably, mostly due to swings in productivity growth rates.



Sources: Bureau of Economic Analysis. www.bea.gov/national/nipaweb/SelectTable.asp?Selected=N; and Economic Report of the President. www.gpoaccess.gov/eop/tables10.html. Productivity growth is computed as Solow residual using capital share of 30%.

technology played a major part in getting this outcome. The average rate of productivity growth increased from 0.7% to 1.3% as businesses increased efficiency with computer hardware and software. The magnitude of growth was so unlike what was seen in the two previous decades that commentators of the period referred to this time as the **new economy**.



Cross-Country Differences in Growth Accounting Rates

Growth accounting also indicates that different economies often have very different reasons for high output growth. To illustrate, consider the case of Hong Kong, Singapore, South Korea, and Taiwan, known as the Asian Tigers for their rapid rates of economic growth after 1960. These economic “tigers” followed very different paths to prosperity. In Singapore, where per-capita GDP grew at 7% a year from 1960 to 1990, very high growth rates of capital accounted for virtually all of its output growth. In contrast, Hong Kong’s 6% per-capita GDP growth over the same period was driven by very high productivity growth, which averaged over 2% per year.⁴ The citizens of Hong Kong and Singapore now are among the richest people in the world.

⁴For an analysis of why the sources of growth were so different in these two cities, see Alwyn Young, “A Tale of Two Cities: Factor Accumulation and Technical Change in Hong Kong and Singapore,” *NBER Macroeconomics Annual* 7 (1992): 13–54. Note that Young’s results are controversial. See Chang-Tai Hsieh, “What Explains the Industrial Revolution in East Asia? Evidence from the Factor Markets,” *American Economic Review* 92, no. 3 (June 2002): 502–526, who argues that capital accumulation may have been overstated in Singapore so that productivity growth may have been much higher in Singapore than Young suggests.

Research in economic growth seeks to explain such differences in growth rates between countries. For example, David Weil of Brown University divided nations into five categories, from the slowest growing to the fastest growing.⁵ Then, using the growth accounting formula in Equation 2, he estimated the contribution to economic growth in these countries from productivity growth and from **factor accumulation**, or growth in labor and capital. He found that the growth of capital and labor added 0.74% per year to growth in the slowest-growing countries, versus 2.18% per year in the fastest-growing countries. That's a difference of 1.44%. Productivity actually declined for the slowest-growing countries, reducing economic growth by 1.31% per year. For the highest-growth countries, on the other hand, productivity growth contributed 1.22% to economic growth. That's a difference of 2.53%—much higher than the difference of 1.44% between the growth rates of factor accumulation. This analysis indicates that **productivity growth is a more important source of variation in growth rates across countries than is factor accumulation.**

The Solow Growth Model

Although growth accounting identifies the sources of economic growth, it does not explain why capital accumulation occurs, or why there is growth in labor inputs or in productivity. To get at those questions, we turn to the **Solow growth model**, which explains how saving rates and population growth determine capital accumulation, which in turn determine economic growth. Robert Solow developed the model over fifty years ago—and earned a Nobel prize for his work.⁶

Building Blocks of the Solow Growth Model

We begin building the Solow model by looking at the economy in per-worker terms. Assume the economy has a fixed level of labor, L . If output at time t is Y_t , then output per worker is Y_t/L_t , which we will represent with the lowercase y_t . In the same way, consumption expenditure per worker is $c_t = C_t/L_t$ and investment per worker is $i_t = I_t/L_t$. The amount of capital per worker, $k_t = K_t/L_t$, plays a very prominent role in the Solow model, and we will refer to it as the **capital-labor ratio**.

PRODUCTION FUNCTION. The centerpiece of the Solow growth model is the per-worker aggregate production function with constant returns to scale previously shown in Equation 1. To convert Equation 1 into a per-worker form, we divide both sides by L :

$$y_t = \frac{Y_t}{L_t} = \frac{AK_t^{0.3}L_t^{0.7}}{L_t} = \frac{AK_t^{0.3}}{L_t^{0.3}} = Ak_t^{0.3} \quad (4)$$

The Solow model assumes that A is exogenous, or given, so it does not say anything about how technology changes over time.

⁵See Chapter 7 of David N. Weil, *Economic Growth*, 2nd edition (Boston: Addison-Wesley, 2009).

⁶See Robert M. Solow, "A Contribution to the Theory of Economic Growth," *Quarterly Journal of Economics* (February 1956): 65–94.

FIGURE 6.2**Per-Worker Production Function**

The per-worker production function is upward sloping. As the capital-labor ratio increases, its slope declines because there is diminishing marginal product of capital.

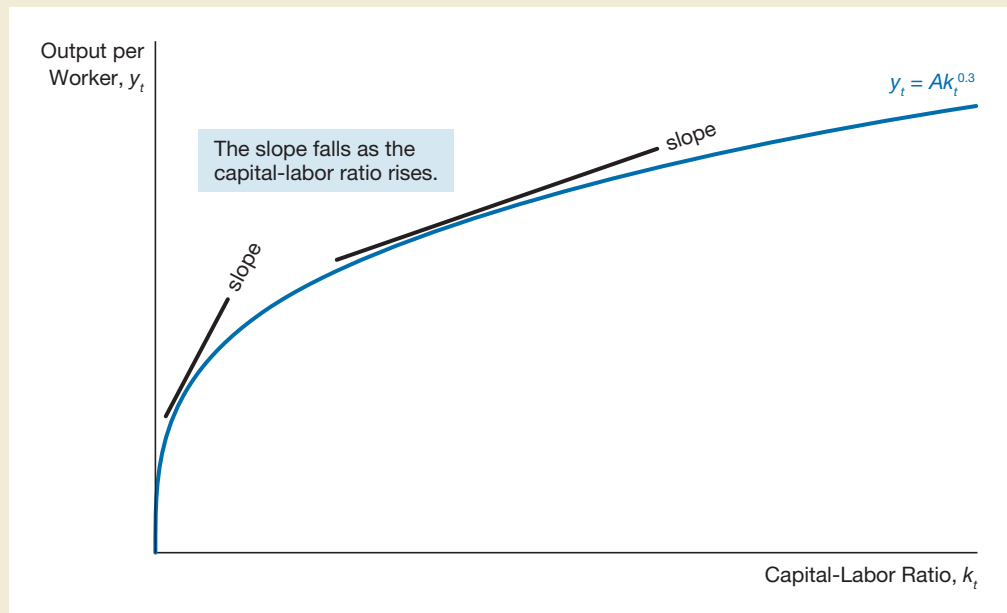


Figure 6.2 is a graphical representation of the per-worker production function. Notice how the per-worker production function slopes upward, indicating that as capital per worker rises, each worker produces more. The bowed-out shape of the curve tells us that the gains from a higher capital-labor ratio tend to diminish. These attributes of the per-worker production function are similar to the aggregate production function we studied in Chapter 3.

INVESTMENT FUNCTION. To simplify our analysis of the demand for goods and services, we will assume that the economy is closed and that government spending is zero. In per-worker terms, this means that the total demand for output is equal to consumption per worker plus investment per worker:

$$y_t = c_t + i_t \quad (5)$$

In developing his model, Solow assumed that consumers save a fixed fraction s , the **saving rate**, of their income each year, so that saving per worker, $y - c$, is

$$y_t - c_t = sy_t \quad (6)$$

Since from Equation 5, $i_t = y_t - c_t$

$$i_t = sy_t \quad (7)$$

which is the familiar result that investment equals saving in a closed economy that we saw in Chapter 4. This equation tells us that investment is proportional to output, with s as the fraction of output that goes into investment.

Substituting the per worker production function, $y_t = Ak_t^{0.3}$, into Equation 7, we get the **investment function**, which reveals the relationship between per capita investment and the per capita capital stock when investment equals saving.⁷

$$i_t = sAk_t^{0.3} \quad (8)$$

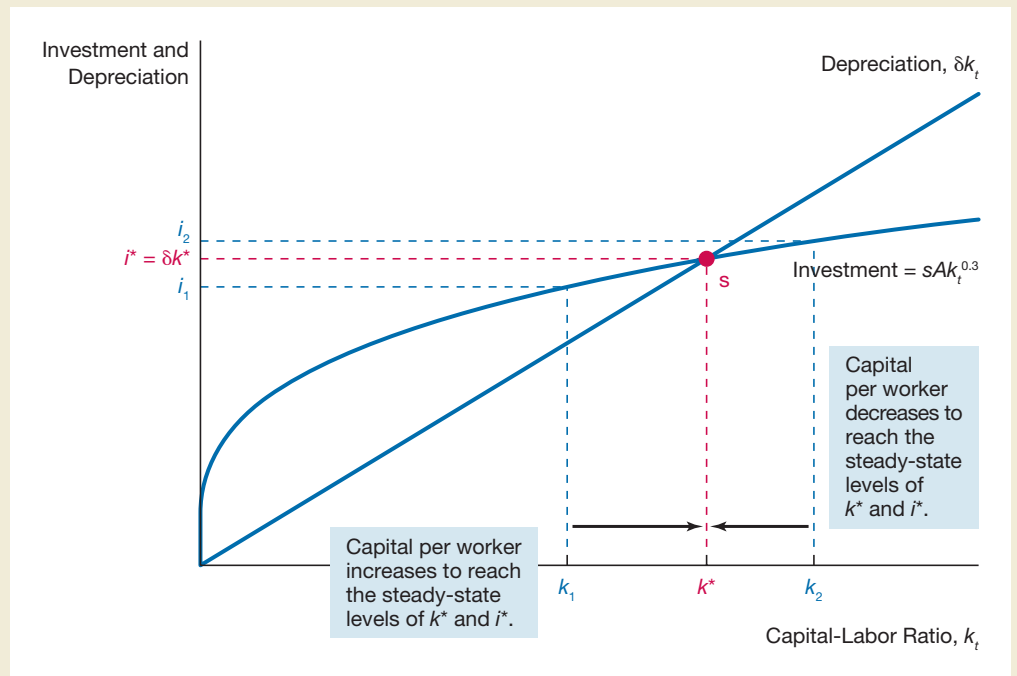
We show the plot of the investment function—that is i_t against k_t —in Figure 6.3. It has a similar bowed-out shape to the production function in Figure 6.3, and it is always below the production function because the saving rate is always between zero and one.

CAPITAL ACCUMULATION. Two forces determine changes in the capital stock: investment and *depreciation*. Investment is the purchase of new factories and machines that adds to the capital stock. **Depreciation** is the loss of capital from the wearing out of machines and factories over time. The Solow model assumes that a constant fraction δ of capital called the **depreciation rate** wears out each year. For example, if on average a unit of capital lasts twenty years, then the economy's depreciation rate is 5% per year and δ is 0.05. Because we assume the amount of depreciation is a constant fraction of the capital stock, depreciation per worker equals δk_t . When we plot depreciation per worker against capital per worker, k_t , it is a straight line with a slope of δ , as is shown in Figure 6.3.

FIGURE 6.3

The Solow Diagram

The steady-state level of the capital-labor ratio occurs at the intersection of the investment function and the depreciation line at point S. If capital per worker is initially at k_1 , capital per worker rises over time to k^* . If capital per worker is initially at k_2 , capital per worker falls over time to k^* .



⁷The investment function in this chapter differs from the one in Chapters 4 and 9 because it assumes that the goods market is in equilibrium when saving equals investment.

Capital accumulation—the change in the capital stock per worker $\Delta k_t = k_{t+1} - k_t$ —equals new capital investment, i_t , minus the loss in wear and tear of old capital, or depreciation, δk_t :

$$\begin{array}{rcccl} \Delta k_t & = & i_t & - & \delta k_t \\ \text{Change in capital stock} & = & \text{Investment} & - & \text{Depreciation} \\ \text{per worker} & & \text{per worker} & & \text{per worker} \end{array} \quad (9)$$

Equation 9, which says that the change in the capital stock equals investment minus depreciation, is the **capital-accumulation equation**. Substituting in for investment from the investment function, we can rewrite this equation as follows:

$$\Delta k_t = sAk_t^{0.3} - \delta k_t \quad (10)$$

THE STEADY STATE. The **steady state**, where capital per worker k_t comes to rest and stops changing, occurs when $\Delta k_t = 0$:

$$0 = sAk_t^{0.3} - \delta k_t$$

By adding δk_t to both sides of the preceding equation, we derive the condition describing when the steady state occurs:

$$\begin{array}{rcccl} sAk_t^{0.3} & = & \delta k_t & & \\ \text{Investment} & = & \text{Depreciation} & & \end{array} \quad (11)$$

In other words, when the capital stock per worker is in its steady state, investment and depreciation are identical. We show this relationship graphically by plotting the investment function and depreciation line. At the point of intersection, capital per worker is at its steady state. We label this point k^* in Figure 6.3, which is also known as the **Solow diagram**.

Dynamics of the Solow Growth Model

If an economy invests more than it loses through depreciation, its capital stock will grow. On the other hand, if its capital stock depreciates more than it invests, the capital stock will decline. This intuitive relationship between investment, depreciation, and capital helps to explain how the capital-labor ratio reaches its steady-state k^* .

Suppose that an economy's initial capital-labor ratio is at k_1 , which is less than k^* . As Figure 6.3 shows, investment at i_1 is greater than depreciation at δk_1 , so Δk_t is greater than zero and k_t rises. Capital per worker will increase each period, as the rightward arrows indicate, until Δk_t returns to zero. This occurs when investment, $sAk_t^{0.3}$, equals depreciation, δk_t , or where the investment function and the depreciation line intersect at $k_t = k^*$.

Now suppose the initial amount of capital per worker is at k_2 , which is greater than k^* . Investment at i_2 is smaller than depreciation at δk_2 , so Δk_t is less than zero and k_t falls. Capital per worker k_t will keep on falling, as the leftward arrows indicate, until Δk_t returns to zero when investment equals depreciation at $k_t = k^*$.

We can take the analysis a step further by asking how output per worker changes as k_t moves toward its steady-state level. We know intuitively that if k_t is below the

steady-state level, capital per worker will rise toward its steady state over time. With more capital per worker, total output per worker will rise as well. As k_t reaches its steady state, output per worker will reach its own steady state, y_t .

We show this relationship graphically in Figure 6.4 by adding the production function $y_t = Ak_t^{0.3}$ to the Solow diagram. If capital per worker is initially at k_1 , output per worker is at $y_1 = Ak_1^{0.3}$ at point 1. However, since $k_1 < k^*$, capital per worker rises to k^* , and over time output rises to $y^* = Ak^{*0.3}$ at point S (for steady state).

What about consumption per worker? Because $y_t = c_t + i_t$, consumption per worker is the difference between the output curve and the investment function, as shown in Figure 6.4. As income rises to y^* , notice that consumption also rises. We can see this relationship even more directly by recognizing that since $i_t = y_t - c_t = sy_t$,

$$c_t = (1 - s)y_t.$$

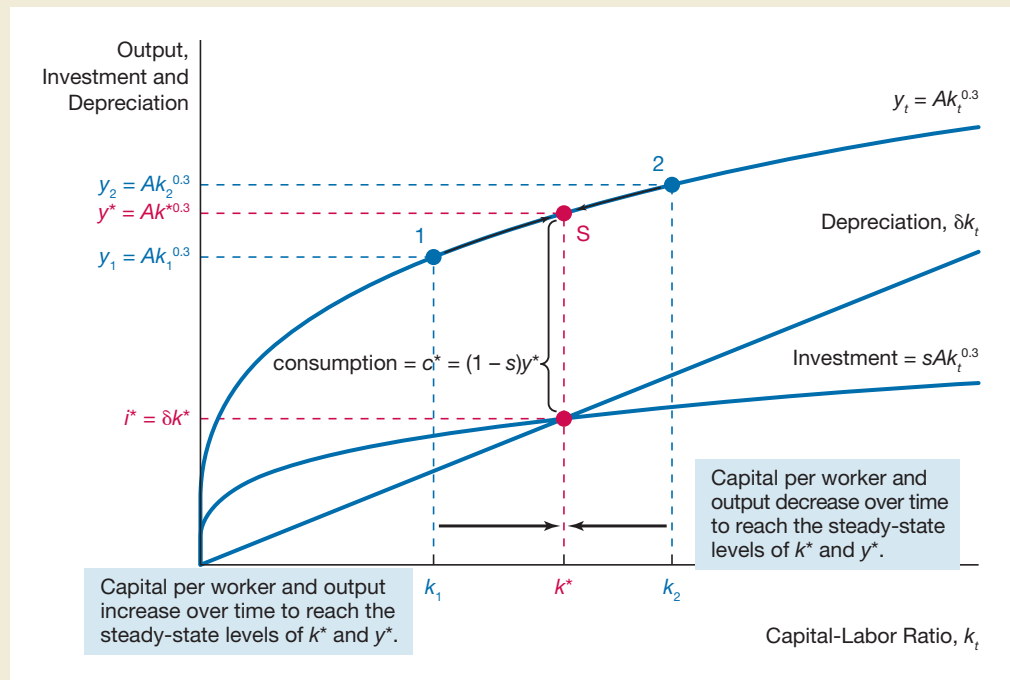
Thus as y_t rises, consumption per worker, c_t , rises until it gets to the steady state when $y_t = y^*$ and $c^* = (1 - s)y^*$. If, on the other hand, capital per worker is initially at k_2 , where output per worker is $y_2 = Ak_2^{0.3}$ at point 2, capital per worker now falls. Over time output falls to y^* . Similarly, consumption per worker c^* falls until it reaches $(1 - s)y^*$.

The dynamics of the Solow model give us a full understanding of the steady state. **The steady state at k^* , c^* , and y^* is where the economy will move to and stay if it initially starts away from the steady state at $k_t = k^*$. In other words, the steady state is where the economy converges in the long run and so is the long-run equilibrium for the economy.** We provide some further intuition about the steady state in the box, “The Bathtub ‘Model’ of the Steady State.”

FIGURE 6.4

Output and Consumption in the Solow Model

The steady-state level of k^* is reached at the intersection of the investment function $i_t = sAk_t^{0.3}$ and the depreciation line, δk_t . At this level of k^* , the steady-state level of output per capita, y^* , is at point S and the steady-state level of consumption per capita is c^* .





The Bathtub “Model” of the Steady State

In Chapter 2, we used the analogy of a bathtub to illustrate the difference between stocks and flows. The same analogy is very useful to provide intuition about the steady state in the Solow model.

In the Solow model, the flow into the bathtub is the amount of investment, $sAk_t^{0.3}$, which we represent by the flow from the faucet in Figure 6.5. The flow out of the bathtub is depreciation, δk_t , which we represent with the flow from the drain. The amount of water in the tub is the stock of capital per worker, k_t . As the capital accumulation

equation (Equation 10) indicates, when investment is greater than depreciation, $sAk_t^{0.3} > \delta k_t$, the flow into the tub is greater than the flow out, so the water level, k_t , is rising. Similarly, when investment is smaller than depreciation, $sAk_t^{0.3} < \delta k_t$, the inflow is less than the outflow and so the water level, k_t , is falling. Only when investment equals depreciation, $sAk_t^{0.3} = \delta k_t$, so that the water flowing into the tub equals the water flowing out of the tub, does the water level stop falling or rising so it is in a steady state at $k_t = k^*$.

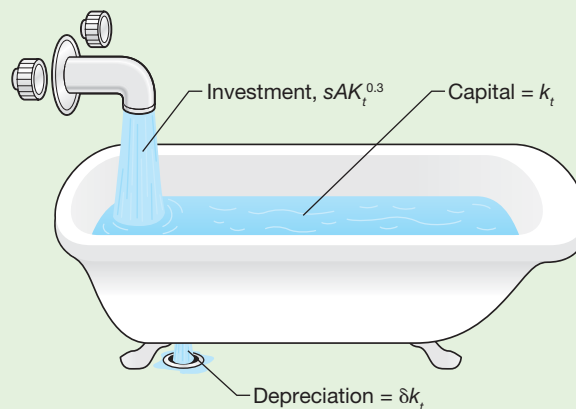


FIGURE 6.5

“Bathtub Model” of the Steady State

The inflow from the faucet into the bathtub is the amount of investment, $sAk_t^{0.3}$, while the outflow from the drain is depreciation, δk_t . The water in the tub is the stock of capital per worker, k_t , and it reaches a steady state, k^* , where it is neither rising or falling, when the outflow equals the inflow—that is, when $sAk_t^{0.3} = \delta k_t$.

Convergence in the Solow Model

If economies have the same aggregate production function, ratio of workers to the total population, and saving rate, the Solow model suggests that economies that start with different capital-labor ratios tend to converge to the steady state and end up with similar levels of per capita income. Similar economies will then experience **convergence**—that is, countries with different initial levels of per capita income will gravitate to a similar level of per capita income. Countries with low initial levels of capital and output per worker, $k_t < k^*$ and $y_t < y^*$, will grow rapidly because k_t and y_t will rise until they are both at their steady-state values of k^* and y^* . On the other hand, countries with high initial levels of capital and output per worker, $k_t > k^*$ and $y_t > y^*$, will grow slowly because k_t and y_t will fall until they are both at their steady-state values of k^* and y^* .

Application

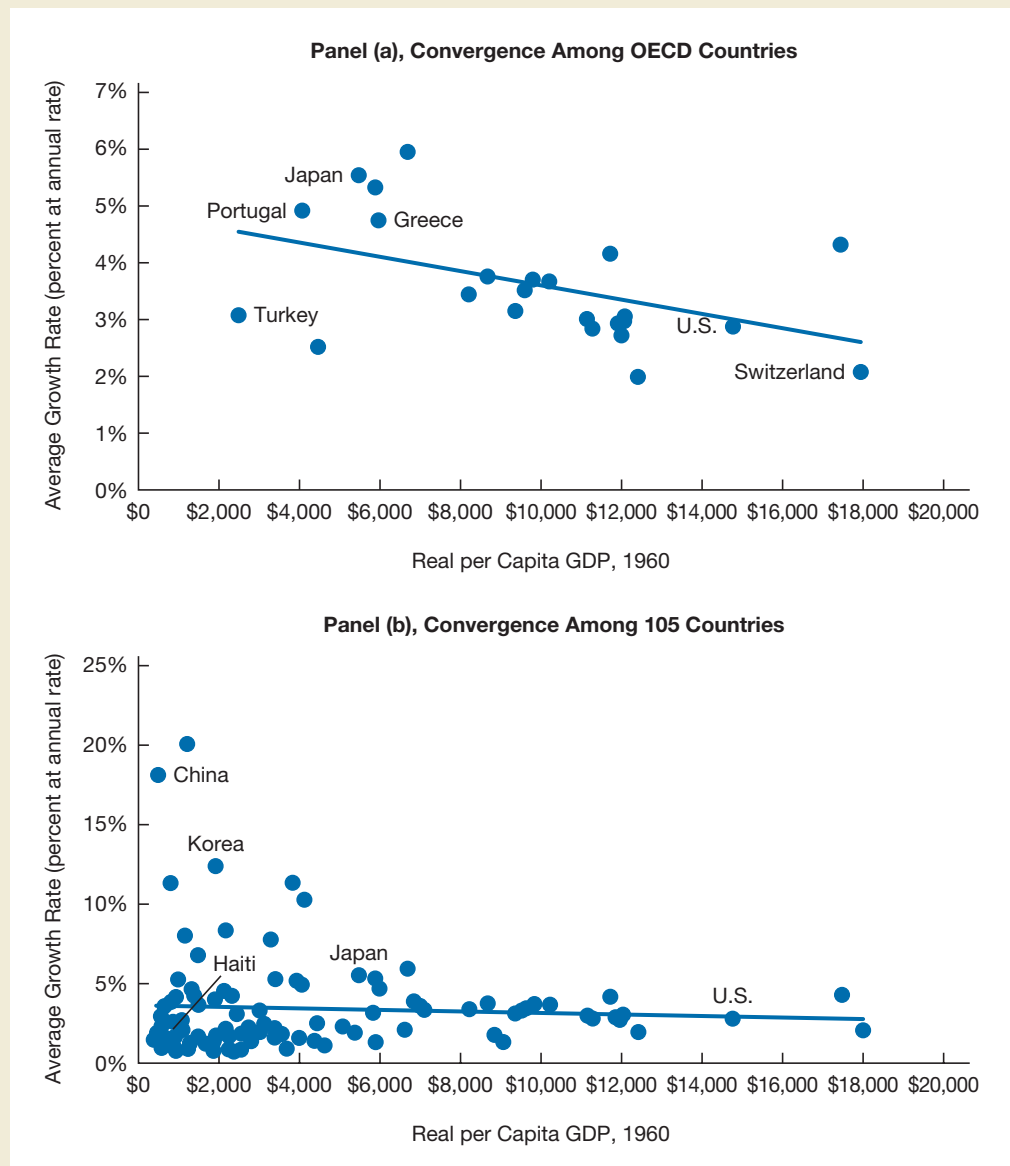
Evidence on Convergence, 1960–2009

Let's test the theory of convergence by examining two groups of countries from 1960 to 2009: a subset of wealthy nations and a large mix of rich and poor nations. Panel (a) of Figure 6.6 displays strong evidence of convergence among the wealthy nations that belong to the Organization of Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD). Countries that had very high GDP per capita in 1960, such as Switzerland and the United States, tended to have low growth rates from 1960 to 2009. Countries such as Japan, Greece, and Portugal, which had low per capita income in 1960, have high growth rates.

FIGURE 6.6

Evidence on Convergence, 1960–2009

Panel (a) provides strong evidence of convergence in the OECD countries. Countries that had very high GDP per capita in 1960, such as Switzerland and the United States, tend to have low growth rates from 1960 to 2009, while countries such as Japan, Greece, and Portugal, which had low per capita income in 1960, have high growth rates. Panel (b) seeks to identify convergence in a larger group of 105 countries. There is almost no relationship between the initial level of real GDP per capita and growth rates from 1960 to 2009.



Sources: Penn World Tables. http://pwt.econ.upenn.edu/php_site/pwt_index.php; and The World Bank. World Development Indicators. <http://data.worldbank.org/data-catalog>

which had low per capita income in 1960, have high growth rates. Convergence is especially vivid after devastating destruction from wars, as the box, “War, Destruction, and Growth Miracles,” suggests.

However, when we extend the analysis to a group of 105 rich and poor countries in panel (b) of Figure 6.6, evidence of convergence breaks down. We can see almost no relationship between the initial level of per capita income and growth rates from 1960 to 2009. Many countries, such as Haiti, start out very poor and stay very poor. Others, such as Japan and South Korea, start poor, but get rich. Something else besides a movement toward the same steady state must explain these outcomes. The answer is that many economies are not similar, and as we will see in detail in Chapter 7, the difference mostly has to do with differences in productivity, which the Solow model treats as identical across countries.⁸



War, Destruction, and Growth Miracles

World War II left the cities of Germany and Japan completely destroyed, citizens destitute, and the capital stock eviscerated. At the war’s conclusion, Germans had less than a quarter of the income of Americans, while Japanese per-capita income was just 15% of the U.S. level.

The Solow growth model predicts that the capital stock of economies with very low levels of capital per worker will rise very rapidly toward its steady state, boosting income per worker. History proves out this prediction, as both Germany and Japan went through post-war growth miracles. Japan’s per capita GDP grew at an over 8% annual rate from 1948 to 1972, while West Germany’s grew at nearly a 6% rate.

By 1972, both economies had achieved per-capita income very close to that of the United States, suggesting that they were near their steady-state level. Just as the Solow model predicts, their economies began to grow at a slower level, closer to the rates of growth in other rich countries.

Research also suggests that convergence occurs in regions within a country. One graphic example is the nuclear bombing of Hiroshima and Nagasaki at the very end of World War II. Given the immense devastation in these cities, the cities’ capital stocks declined sharply relative to other parts of Japan. Yet within fifteen to thirty years, both cities experienced very rapid economic growth and converged in both size and per capita income to other regions of Japan damaged less in the war. There were similarly rapid rates of growth after the Vietnam war in the country’s heavily bombed Quang Tri province. Thirty years after the war, the province’s income per capita had reached parity with the rest of the country.*

*See Donald R. Davis and David Weinstein, “Bones, Bombs and Break Points: The Geography of Economic Activity,” *American Economic Review* 92 (December 2002): 1269–89; and Edward Miguel and Gerard Roland, “The Long-Run Impact of Bombing Vietnam,” NBER Working Paper No. 11954, January 2006.

⁸The convergence concept applies to “similar” economies that have the same production function, population growth, and saving rate. If economies have different production functions, population growth, and saving rates, then the Solow model still indicates that they will move to a steady state, but the steady state will differ among countries. Another way of describing this is that the Solow model predicts *conditional convergence* for dissimilar economies—that is, these economies will converge to a particular steady state that is determined by their production function, population growth, and saving rate.

Saving Rate Changes in the Solow Model

We saw in Chapter 4 that changes in households' desire to save affect investment. The Solow growth model produces the same result—and also indicates how the change in the saving rate affects capital accumulation and the level of output.

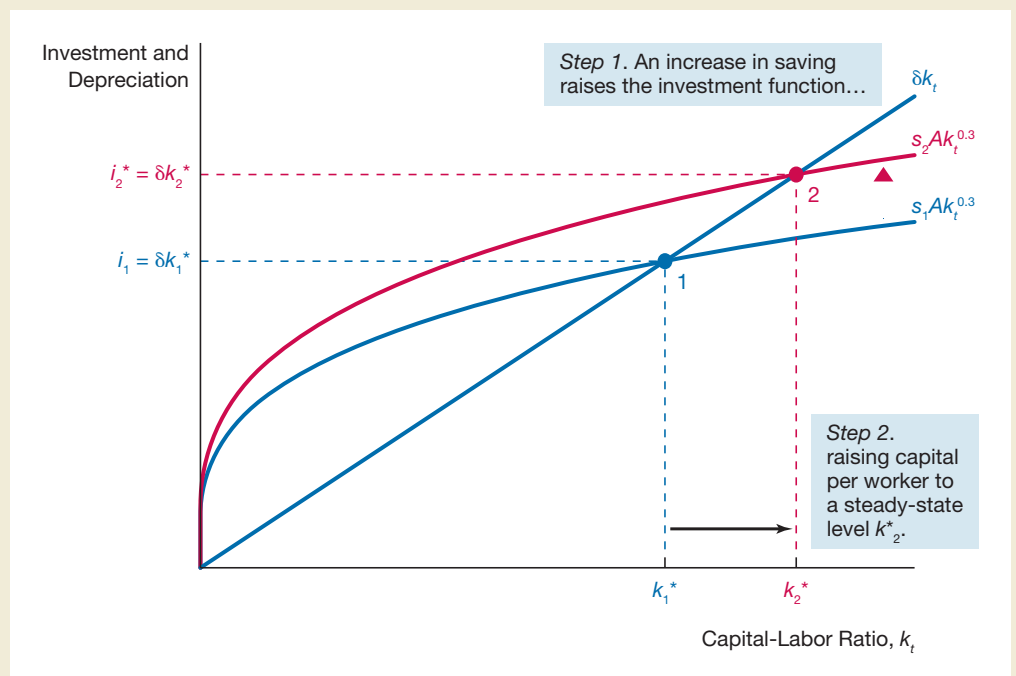
Suppose the U.S. economy is at its steady-state level of capital k_1^* when consumers suddenly decide they must save more for their old age. The increased desire to save raises the saving rate parameter from s_1 to s_2 and, as we see in Figure 6.7, shifts the investment function up from $s_1Ak_t^{0.3}$ to $s_2Ak_t^{0.3}$. Now at an initial level of k_1^* , investment is greater than depreciation, so Δk_t is positive and capital per worker k_t begins to rise. As the rightward arrows indicate, k_t will keep on rising until it reaches k_2^* , where investment is now equal to depreciation so the economy has reached its steady state. With a higher level of capital per worker, output per worker eventually rises to $y_2^* = Ak_2^{0.3}$. **The increase in saving results in higher steady-state levels of capital and output per worker.**⁹

Although the Solow growth analysis indicates that the growth rates of capital and output per worker will rise *temporarily* while the economy is moving toward the steady state, it does not indicate that these growth rates rise *permanently*. Once the economy reaches its steady state, the growth rates of capital and output per worker return to zero. **Changes in the saving rate affect the level of capital and output per worker, but not the long-run growth rate of these variables.** In other words, the Solow model has a *level effect*, but not

FIGURE 6.7

Response to an Increase in the Saving Rate

An increase in the saving rate from s_1 to s_2 shifts the investment function upward from $s_1Ak_t^{0.3}$ to $s_2Ak_t^{0.3}$. At an initial level of k_1^* , investment is greater than depreciation, so capital per worker k_t rises until it reaches k_2^* , where investment is now equal to depreciation so the economy has reached its steady state.

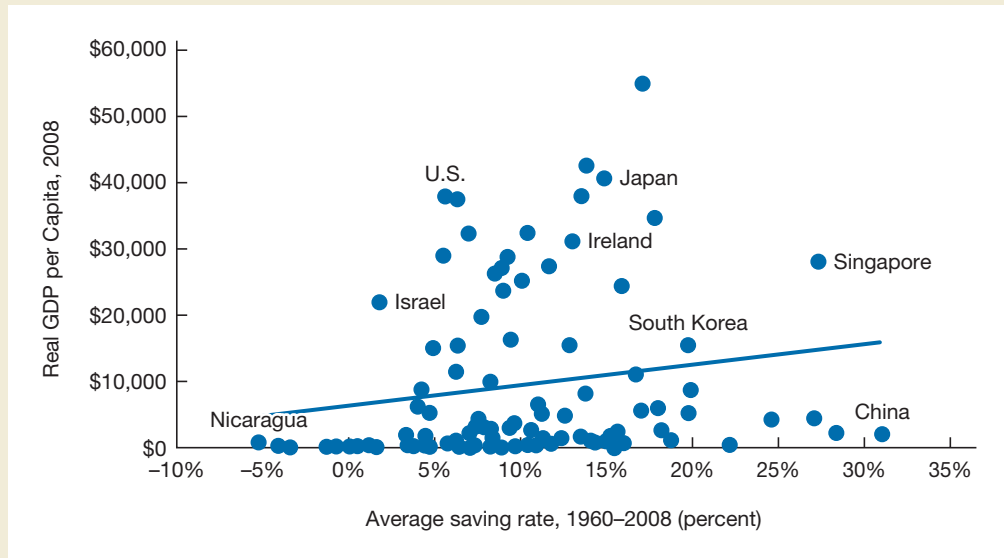


⁹Although a higher saving rate s leads to a higher level of output per worker, consumption per worker does not always rise as the saving rate rises. There is a level of the saving rate that produces the highest level of consumption per worker, as we discuss in the first appendix to this chapter.

FIGURE 6.8**International Evidence on the Relationship of per Capita Income and the Saving Rate**

The plot of income per capita against the saving rate for nearly one hundred countries supports the prediction from the Solow model that countries that save more have higher per capita income.

Countries like Singapore and South Korea, which have high saving rates, also have high per capita income, while countries like Nicaragua and Mozambique have both a low saving rate and low per capita income.



Sources: Penn World Tables. http://pwt.econ.upenn.edu/php_site/pwt_index.php; and The World Bank. World Development Indicators. <http://data.worldbank.org/data-catalog>

a *growth effect*, from changes in the saving rate. This characteristic is due to the diminishing marginal product of capital. As capital rises, it becomes less productive: after the saving rate changes, the economy settles into a steady state in which the capital-labor ratio remains constant.

Assuming that the ratio of workers to the population is similar across countries, we would expect that ***the higher a country's national saving rate and hence the higher its level of investment relative to income, the higher its per capita income.*** Figure 6.8 plots income per capita against the saving rate for nearly one hundred countries; for example, Nicaragua has a very low saving rate and very low income, while Singapore has a very high saving rate and high income. As the theory predicts, countries with high national saving rates generally have high per capita income.¹⁰

Population Growth in the Solow Model

In the Solow framework we've developed, economies that reach the steady state stop growing. Yet since modern times, economic growth has persisted almost everywhere in the world. It must be that our model is not yet complete. In this section, we will add labor force growth into the Solow model and in the next section we will add technology growth.

¹⁰Although the evidence in Figure 6.9 supports the prediction from the Solow model, the positive correlation between the saving rate and income per capita could be the result of reverse causality: wealthy populations that earn well above subsistence levels of income are able to save more.

Population Growth and the Steady State

Population growth increases the size of the labor force over time, fueling economic growth. We assume that the ratio of workers to the population stays constant, so the number of workers in the labor force grows at the same rate as the overall population, at a constant rate of n . In the United States, n equals around 1%.

When the number of workers is growing and the capital stock is kept constant, there is **capital dilution**, growth in the labor force that leads to less capital per worker. For example, if the number of workers is growing at 1% per year, the number of machines must grow 1% per year to keep the capital-labor ratio constant. In other words, net investment would have to be 1% of the capital stock. If the net investment were zero, then the capital stock per worker would fall by 1% of the capital stock per year.

We can show this effect by subtracting capital dilution nk_t from the capital-accumulation formula in Equation 10:¹¹

$$\Delta k_t = sAk_t^{0.3} - \delta k_t - nk_t = sAk_t^{0.3} - (\delta + n)k_t \quad (12)$$

Population growth affects capital accumulation in much the same way as depreciation. Depreciation lowers k_t because the capital stock is used up from wear and tear, while population growth lowers k_t by increasing the number of workers per unit of capital.

The steady-state equation changes only slightly. First, we replace the depreciation rate δ with $\delta + n$ in the analysis. Hence, we replace the depreciation term δk_t with a term reflecting depreciation *and* capital dilution, $(\delta + n)k_t$, in the Solow diagram. The modified Solow diagram in Figure 6.9 shows that the steady-state level of the capital-labor ratio k^* is now at the intersection of the investment function and the $(\delta + n)k_t$ line. As before, the economy always moves toward the steady-state value of k^* :

1. If the capital-labor ratio is below k^* , say, at k_1 , then investment is greater than $(\delta + n)k_t$ and so k_t rises.
2. If the capital-labor ratio is above k^* , say, at k_2 , then investment is above $(\delta + n)k_t$ and k_t falls.

At the steady state, k_t is constant, but output, capital, and labor are all growing over time at a rate of n . As the number of workers grows at n , the capital stock also grows at rate n , so that the amount of capital per worker stays constant. With both capital and labor growing at n , output also grows at this same rate.¹²

The addition of population to the Solow model helps explain how economies can sustain growth in total output, but it does not explain why output *per person* keeps growing. Even with population growth, the capital-labor ratio eventually reaches a steady-state value of k^* , and output per worker also goes to a steady-state value of $y^* = AK^{*0.3}$.

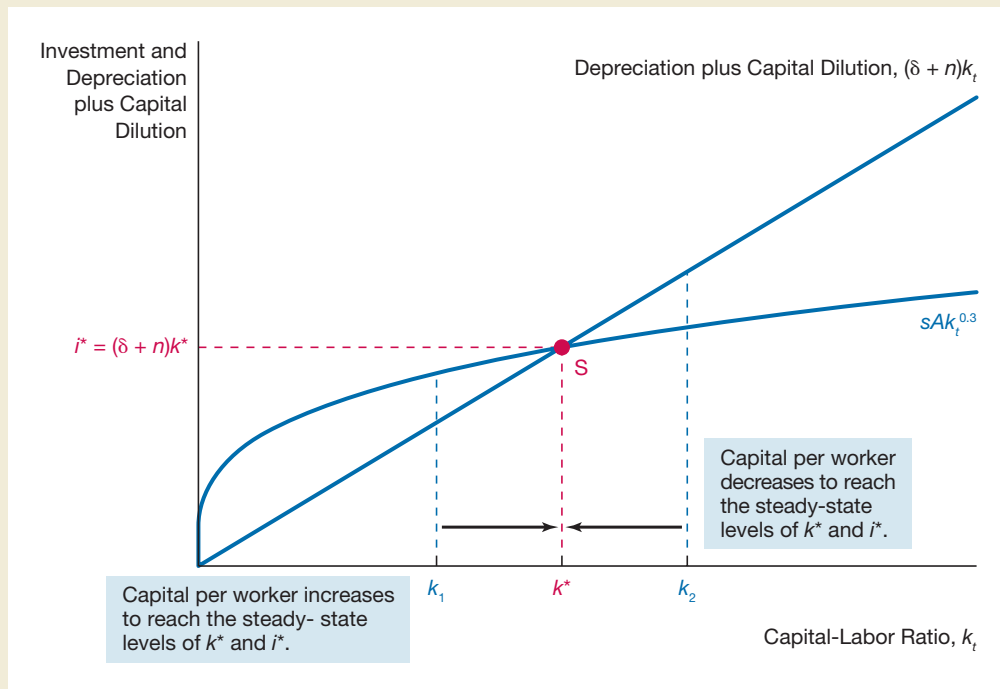
¹¹We can derive this equation formally by using calculus. The rate of change of the capital-labor ratio is $dk/dt = d(K/L)/dt$. Using the chain rule of calculus, $dk/dt = (1/L)dK/dt - (K/L^2)dL/dt$. Given that $dK/dt = I - dK$ and $(dL/dt)/L = n$, suitable algebraic manipulation yields Equation 12.

¹²To see that capital and output also grow at the same rate as labor, that is, n , recognize that capital per worker $k_t = K_t/N_t$ where N_t is population. With k_t constant at the steady state at k^* , the numerator, K_t , must grow at the same rate as the denominator, N_t , that is, at the rate n . Similarly with k_t constant at the steady state at k^* , $y_t = Y_t/N_t$ is also constant at y^* , so the numerator, Y_t , must also grow at the same rate as the denominator, N_t , that is, at the rate n .

FIGURE 6.9

Solow Diagram with Population Growth

The steady-state level of the capital-labor ratio k^* is at point S, the intersection of the investment function and the $(\delta + n)k_t$ line. If the capital-labor ratio is below k^* at k_1 , then investment is greater than $(\delta + n)k_t$ and so k_t rises. If the capital-labor ratio is above k^* at k_2 , then investment is above $(\delta + n)k_t$ and k_t falls.



Changes in Population Growth

What happens to per-capita output when the population growth suddenly rises? Since the economy will have more workers with the same amount of capital, each worker has less capital with which to work. As a result, output per worker falls. The Solow model suggests, then, that high population growth lowers the average person’s standard of living.

We show this result in Figure 6.10. When population growth rises from n_1 to n_2 , it shifts up the depreciation and capital dilution line from $(\delta + n_1)k_t$ to $(\delta + n_2)k_t$. At the previous steady state k_1^* , investment is less than depreciation and capital dilution, $(\delta + n)k_t$, so $\Delta k_t < 0$. The capital-labor ratio falls, eventually moving to k_2^* . Although the growth rate of output and capital have risen from n_1 to n_2 , output per worker falls because $y_2^* = Ak_2^{*0.3}$ is below $y_1^* = Ak_1^{*0.3}$.

As long as labor force and total population grow at the same rate, the Solow model indicates that in the steady state **higher population growth lowers the level of output per person.**

Population Growth and Real GDP Per Capita

Does the evidence support the Solow result that higher population growth makes the average person in a country poorer? The scatter plot of personal GDP per capita against population growth rates in nearly a hundred countries in Figure 6.11 provides support for the Solow proposition. Countries with low rates of population growth, like Italy and Japan, have higher income per person than countries with high population growth such as the Ivory Coast and Jordan.

FIGURE 6.10
Response to a Rise in the Population Growth Rate

When the population growth rate rises from n_1 to n_2 , the depreciation and capital dilution $(\delta + n)k_t$ line swings up from $(\delta + n_1)k_t$ to $(\delta + n_2)k_t$. At k_1^* , investment is less than depreciation and capital dilution, $(\delta + n)k_t$ and so the capital-labor ratio falls, eventually moving it to k_2^* .

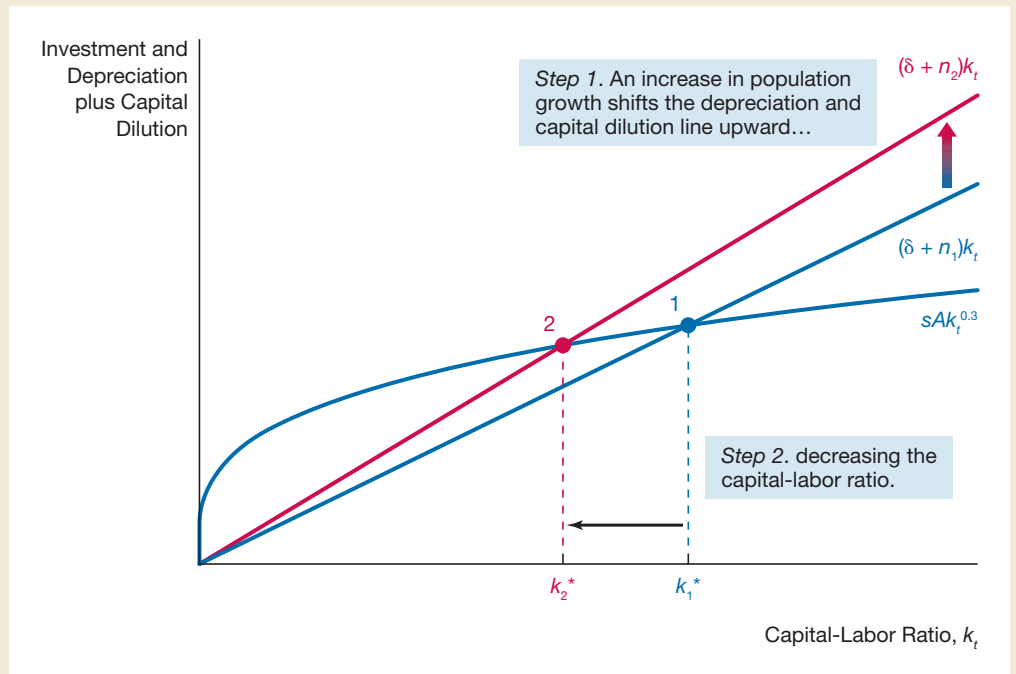
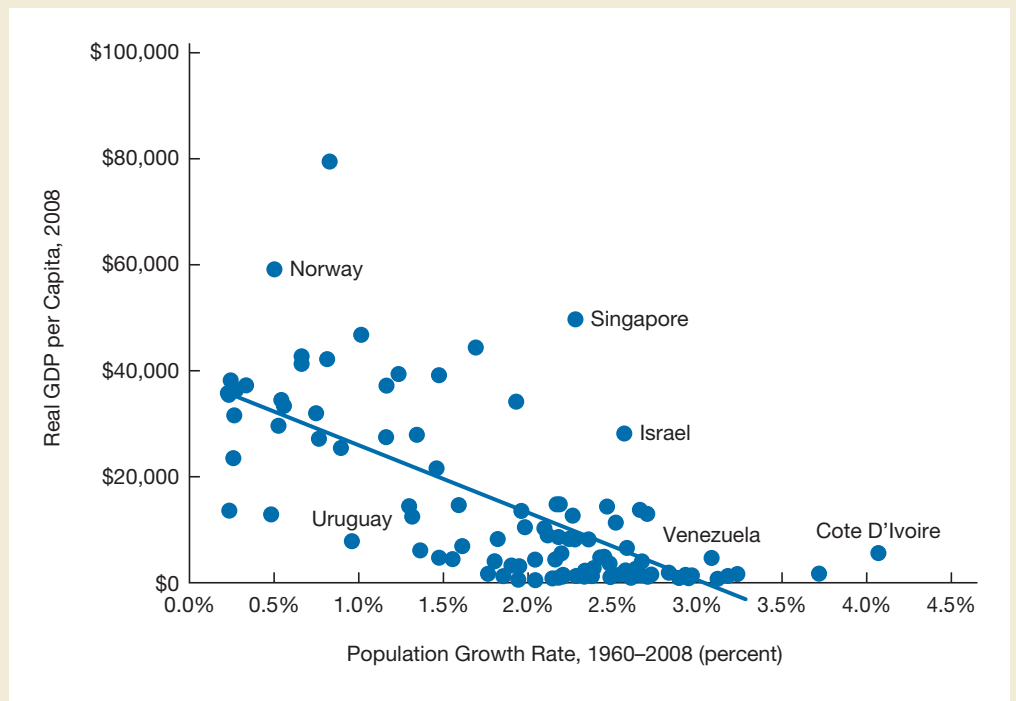


FIGURE 6.11
International Evidence on the Relationship of Population Growth and Income per Capita

The scatter plot of income per person against population growth rates in nearly a hundred countries provides some support for the Solow proposition that higher population growth leads to lower per capita income. Countries with low rates of population growth, like Italy and Japan, have higher income per person than countries with high population growth such as Cote D'Ivoire and Jordan.



Source: The World Bank. World Development Indicators. <http://data.worldbank.org/data-catalog>

This view has led some policy makers to propose policies to limit population growth, as the next Policy and Practice case indicates. The interpretation is highly controversial. Many economists believe that causation does not run from lower population growth to higher per capita income, but rather the opposite way. As people get richer, they prefer to have fewer children and gain access to birth control, and so fertility rates decline. Other models of economic growth we will consider in the next chapter yield a different view than the Solow model: they imply that higher population growth could actually produce higher income per capita because it stimulates technological advance.

Policy and Practice



China's One-Child Policy and Other Policies to Limit Population Growth

Many countries, particularly poor ones, have implemented policies to limit population growth. Some have taken the policy to an extreme through forced sterilizations. Others take a more benign approach, providing citizens with birth control and running campaigns to encourage smaller families. But the most famous (or infamous, depending on your point of view) is the Chinese government's "one-child" policy. Starting in 1979, couples with more than one child were ostracized, charged penalties, and denied access to preferential housing and wage hikes. The policy lowered fertility rates by over 70%, but has sparked controversy. Many people view the one-child policy as an interference with a basic human right to make decisions about reproduction.

Productivity Growth in the Solow Model

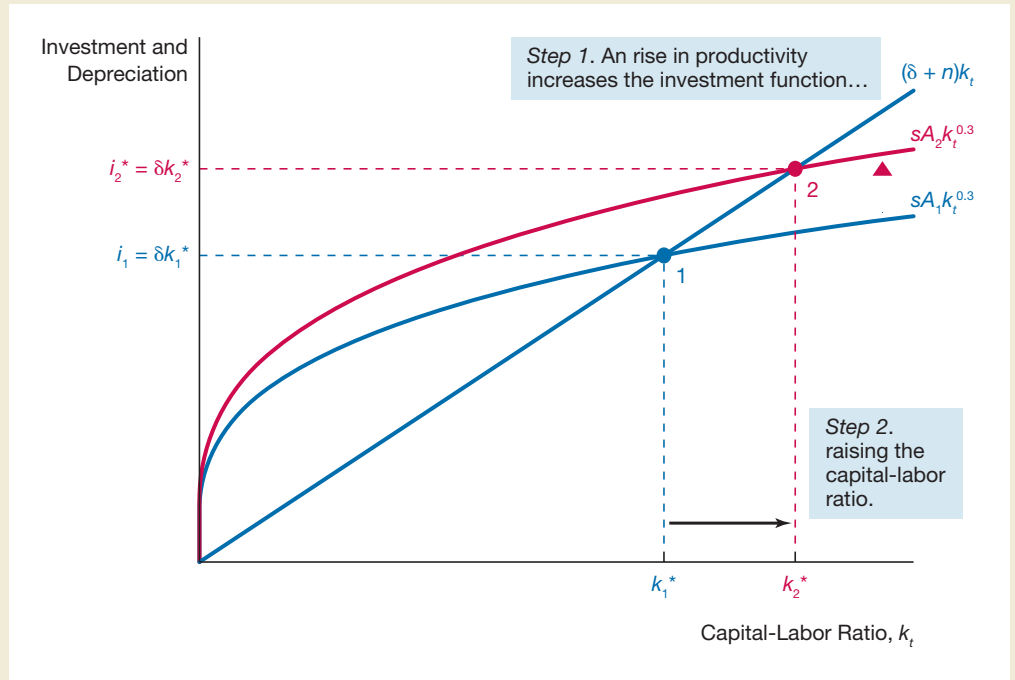
The Solow model has yet to explain why economies display sustained increases in the standard of living over time. To get there, we need to add growth in productivity, A , to the Solow model.

Technology Growth and the Steady State

Adding productivity growth into the Solow model is quite straightforward. Equation 12 for capital accumulation still holds true and so the Solow diagram does not change at all. Now let's look at what happens if the discovery of a superfast memory chip creates a leap in computer technology so that productivity increases from A_1 to A_2 . With higher productivity and therefore higher output at each level of k_t , the investment function shifts up from $sA_1k_t^{0.3}$ to $sA_2k_t^{0.3}$ in Figure 6.12. The rise in investment at any level of k_t means that at the old steady-state level of the capital-labor ratio, k_1^* , investment is greater than depreciation plus capital dilution, and so $\Delta k_t > 0$ and k_t rises. Only when k_t reaches the new steady state of k_2^* , where investment equals depreciation plus capital dilution, does $\Delta k_t = 0$ and k_t stop rising. Output per worker, $y_2^* = sA_2k_2^{*0.3}$, is now higher for two reasons. First, k_2^* is higher, as Figure 6.12 indicates, but also A_2 is higher. In other words, ***the direct effect of higher productivity on output per person is amplified by the additional positive effect from a higher capital-labor ratio.***

FIGURE 6.12**Response to a Rise in Productivity**

When productivity increases from A_1 to A_2 , the investment function shifts up from $sA_1k_t^{0.3}$ to $sA_2k_t^{0.3}$. At the old steady-state level of the capital-labor ratio, k_1^* , investment is greater than depreciation plus capital dilution, and so k_t rises until it reaches the new steady state of k_2^* , where investment equals depreciation plus capital dilution. Because the capital-labor ratio rises as does the production function, steady state output increases more than one-for-one with the increase in A .



The Solow model does not explain *why* productivity A grows over time. That said, given a constant growth rate of productivity, say, at g , output and capital per worker will grow at a sustained rate faster than g . In the second appendix to this chapter, we solve the Solow model algebraically and find that the Cobb-Douglas production function implies that output and capital per worker grow at a rate of $1.43g$. That is, a productivity growth rate of 1% leads to a growth rate of living standards of 1.43%, meaning there is an amplification effect of 43%.

Summing Up the Solow Model

The Solow model has proved to be one of the most durable and useful models in macroeconomics. We will now step back and summarize the results in the Solow model and discuss its limitations.

Solow Model: The Results

The Solow model describes a steady state of the variables k^* , c^* , and y^* toward which the economy moves in the long run. There are four basic conclusions from this analysis:

1. Economies with similar production functions and saving rates that have low initial per capita income will have higher growth rates, while those with high initial per capita income will have lower growth rates.
2. A higher rate of saving, and hence a higher level of investment relative to income, leads to higher levels of capital and output per worker, but does not affect the long-run growth rate of these variables.

3. Higher population growth lowers the level of output per person.
4. Increases in productivity have amplified effects on per capita income because there is a direct effect through the production function and an additional positive effect from a higher capital-labor ratio.

Solow Model: Limitations

The results of our analysis indicate that the Solow model can help us understand why some countries are rich and others poor. However, *it does a poor job explaining sustained increases in the standard of living*, a central feature of modern economies. Only productivity growth can explain sustained growth in standards of living in the Solow model. But productivity growth is exogenous, that is, determined outside the model. Put plainly, productivity growth in the Solow model comes out of nowhere.

In the next chapter, we will explore additional theories of economic growth that try to explain both the level and growth rate of productivity. Our ability to do so is crucial, as we have already seen that productivity growth is more important than factor accumulation as a source of variation in growth rates across countries.

SUMMARY

1. Growth accounting is the growth version of the production function. It indicates that there are three contributions that add up to growth in GDP: the contribution from productivity growth, $\Delta A/A$, the contribution from capital growth, $0.3\Delta K/K$, and the contribution from labor growth, $0.7\Delta L/L$. The growth accounting equation is $g_Y = g_A + 0.3g_K + 0.7g_L$, where $g_Y = \Delta Y/Y$, $g_A = \Delta A/A$, $g_K = \Delta K/K$, and $g_L = \Delta L/L$.
2. Growth accounting demonstrates that productivity growth is a more important source of variation in growth rates across countries than factor accumulation.
3. The Solow growth model focuses on explaining how capital accumulation occurs and the role that it plays in producing economic growth. It shows that an economy reaches a steady state in the long run at the level of the capital-labor ratio where investment equals depreciation plus capital dilution, that is, where $\Delta k_t = 0 = sAk_t^{0.3} - (\delta + n)k_t$.

An important implication of the Solow model is that there is convergence: countries with different levels of per capita income will gravitate to a similar level. Economies that have low initial per capita income will have higher growth rates, while those with high initial per capita income will have lower growth rates.

4. In the Solow model, a higher saving rate, and hence a higher level of investment relative to income, leads to higher steady-state levels of capital and output per worker, but does not affect the long-run growth rate of these variables.
5. In the Solow model population growth can explain why economies have sustained growth in output, but does not explain why output per person grows at a sustained pace. Higher population growth lowers the level of output per person.
6. Increases in productivity raise output by more than the increase in productivity, directly by raising output and indirectly by raising the capital-labor ratio.

KEY TERMS

capital-accumulation equation, p. 152
 capital dilution, p. 159
 capital-labor ratio, p. 149
 convergence, p. 154
 depreciation, p. 151

depreciation rate, p. 151
 factor accumulation, p. 149
 growth accounting equation, p. 145
 investment function, p. 151
 new economy, p. 148

saving rate, p. 150
 Solow diagram, p. 152
 Solow growth model, p. 149
 Solow residual, p. 146
 steady state, p. 152

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Sources of Economic Growth: Growth Accounting

1. According to the growth accounting equation, what are the three sources that contribute to economic growth?

The Solow Growth Model

2. In the per worker production function, what determines the level of output per worker? Which one of these factors does the Solow growth model consider to be exogenous?
3. Why does the per worker production function have its particular shape and slope?
4. What determines the amount of investment per worker and capital accumulation in the Solow growth model?
5. What are the two determinants of the steady-state level of capital per worker? Why does capital per worker move to this steady-state level?

Saving Rate Changes in the Solow Model

6. Beginning from a steady state in the Solow growth model, explain how an increase in the saving rate will affect the levels and growth rates of capital and output per worker.

Population Growth in the Solow Model

7. How does population growth affect the steady-state levels of capital and output per worker?
8. In the Solow growth model, which variables are exogenous and which are endogenous?

Productivity Growth in the Solow Model

9. How does an increase in total factor productivity affect output per worker?

Summing Up the Solow Model

10. What are the four basic results of the Solow growth model? What is the model's chief weakness?

PROBLEMS

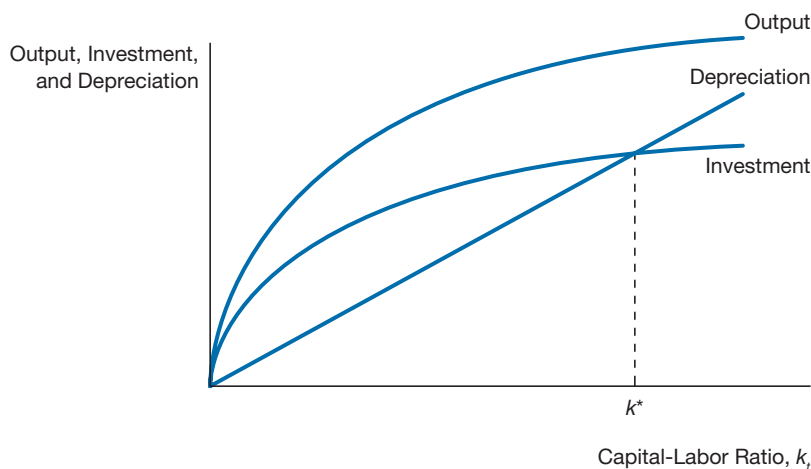
All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Sources of Economic Growth: Growth Accounting

- Suppose that the economy of India can be represented by the following production function: $Y = AK^{1/3}L^{2/3}$. During 2009 India's technological growth (Solow residual) was 4%. The growth rates of the capital and labor input stocks were 3% in both cases.
 - Calculate India's output growth for 2009.
 - What is the contribution of productivity growth to total output growth (in percentage terms)?
- Suppose two countries have the same growth rates of their capital and labor inputs. These factors contribute two percentage points to their respective countries' total output growth rates. Output growth rates are 2.5% for country 1 and 4.5% for country 2.
 - Explain the difference in total output growth between these two countries.
 - Calculate productivity growth for both countries.

The Solow Growth Model

- Assume that the per-worker production function is $y_t = 2k_t^{0.5}$. The saving and depreciation rate rates are estimated at 0.2 and 0.04, respectively.
 - Calculate the capital-labor ratio steady state for this economy.
 - Calculate consumption per worker at the steady state.
- The following graph describes Chile's economy before the devastating earthquake of February 27, 2010. Assume Chile was its steady-state capital-labor ratio before the earthquake.
 - On the same graph, identify the new capital-labor ratio immediately after this event.
 - Describe how the capital-labor ratio will change in the aftermath of Chile's earthquake.



Saving Rate Changes in the Solow Model

- Consider the effects of an increase in the saving rate on the United States capital-labor ratio, according to the Solow model.
 - What would be the immediate effect of a saving rate increase on the capital-labor ratio? What would be the long run effect?
 - Do you think it is worth it to increase the saving rate? If so, by how much? (Would you save 95% of your income?)

Population Growth in the Solow Model

6. Assume that low standards of living (i.e., low capital-labor ratios, in the Solow model's terms) are the reason that some countries exhibit high fertility rates. Comment on the effect of population control policies to reduce fertility rates. Explain why you think such policies will be effective or not.
7. One of the most well-known population control policies is the one-child policy implemented by China since the late 1970s. Comment on the side effects of such a policy. This policy has been dubbed a success, since fertility rates dropped by a considerable amount. Do you agree with this type of population control?
8. Based on the Solow model's conclusions about population growth, comment on the effects of immigration on a country's
 - a) aggregate output level.
 - b) capital-labor ratio.

Productivity Growth in the Solow Model

9. Start by graphing the U.S. steady state capital-labor ratio and label it k_{1900}^* (draw only the investment and the depreciation and capital dilution curves).
 - a) On the same graph show the effects of the following:
 - The massive immigration wave of the early 1900s
 - The increase in productivity derived from new technologies that occurred at the same time
 - b) Find the new steady state capital-labor ratio considering that output per worker in the United States grew at a positive rate between 1900 and 1910 and label it k_{1910}^{SS} .

Summing up the Solow Model


10. Start by drawing a given country's steady state, using only the investment and the depreciation and capital dilution curves. On the same graph do the following:
 - a) Consider the effects of an immigration wave of individuals that exhibit both higher saving and fertility rates than the current population. Draw the new curves.
 - b) Identify the new steady state capital-labor ratio level. Is it necessarily higher or lower than the previous steady state?



MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.



Chapter 6

Appendix A

The Golden Rule Level of the Capital-Labor Ratio

We have seen that a higher saving rate s leads to a higher level of output per worker. Does this conclusion mean that more saving is always better? Clearly not, since s of 100% would leave no income left over for buying food or shelter. To identify the saving rate that produces the highest level of economic well-being, we use the Solow model to compare steady states at different saving rates.

Steady States at Different Capital-Labor Ratios

Consumption per worker is a natural choice for maximizing the economic well-being of workers in an economy in the steady state.¹ After all, people care more about the amount of goods and services they consume than the amount of capital or output in the economy. Policy makers may try to influence the national saving rate to maximize consumption per worker in the steady state.

But what saving rate achieves this? To answer this question, the policy maker needs to identify the steady-state level of the capital-labor ratio that maximizes consumption per worker, which is known as the **Golden Rule capital-labor ratio**. The name is a reference to the Bible, which states that “you should do unto others, as you would have them do unto you.” In economic terms, policy makers should weigh the well-being of all future generations equally. In this case, you would want all generations to have the same maximum level of consumption, which is achieved when the steady state capital-labor ratio leads to the highest level of consumption per worker.

¹There is clearly more to life than just consumption. People also care about the amount of leisure they have and we are ignoring such considerations here.

Golden Rule Capital-Labor Ratio

To determine the Golden rule capital-labor ratio, which we will denote by k_G^* , we need to compare steady-state levels of consumption per worker, c^* , for different capital-labor ratios, k^* . We start by recognizing that since $y = c + i$, we can write consumption per worker in the steady state as follows:

$$c^* = y^* - i^* \quad (1)$$

where the $*$ indicate values at the steady state. In other words, consumption per worker at the steady state is just income minus investment per worker at the steady state. The value of income per worker at the steady state is straightforward: it comes directly out of substituting k^* into the production function:

$$y^* = Ak^{*0.3} \quad (2)$$

At the steady state, the capital stock is not changing. As we saw in Equation 12 in the chapter, investment must be equal to depreciation plus capital dilution, i.e.,

$$i^* = (\delta + n)k^* \quad (3)$$

We plot the steady-state levels of y^* and i^* against the steady-state level of k^* in panel (a) of Figure 6A1.1. Substituting Equations 2 and 3 into Equation 1,

$$c^* = Ak^{*0.3} - (\delta + n)k^* \quad (4)$$

The difference between y^* and i^* , which equals the steady state level of consumption per worker, c^* , is shown by the colored area between the y^* and i^* curves in panel (a) of Figure 6A1.1, and is also shown in panel (b).

Notice in panel (a) that c^* is at its maximum value c_G^* when the slope of the production function curve, which is the marginal product of capital, is equal to the slope of the depreciation plus capital dilution line, which is $\delta + n$, the depreciation rate plus the rate of population growth. The Golden Rule level of the capital-ratio, k_G^* , occurs when²

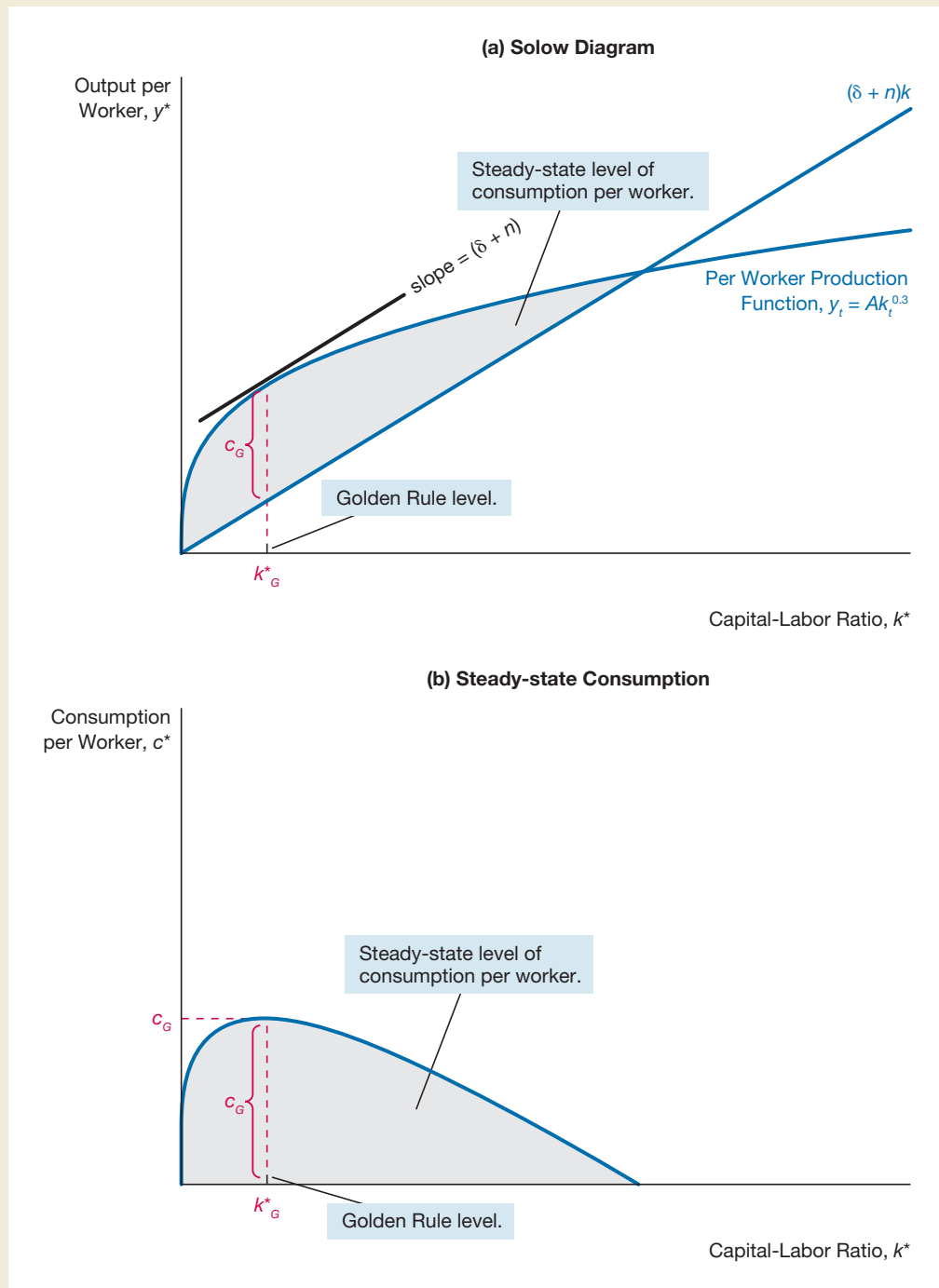
$$\begin{array}{l} MPK \\ \text{Marginal Product of Capital} \end{array} = \begin{array}{l} \delta \\ \text{Depreciation Rate} \end{array} + \begin{array}{l} n \\ \text{Population growth rate} \end{array} \quad (5)$$

²We can also derive this condition using calculus. From Equation 1, $c^* = y^* - i^*$. To maximize c^* , differentiate this equation with respect to k^* and set it to zero. That is, $dc^*/dk^* = dy^*/dk^* - (\delta + n) = 0$. This equation thus produces the condition $dy^*/dk^* = \delta + n$. Since dy^*/dk^* is the marginal product of capital, this condition is the same as in the text. Note that we need to modify this condition when adding productivity growth to the Solow model.

FIGURE 6A1.1

The Golden Rule Level of the Capital-Labor Ratio

In panel (a), steady-state consumption per worker, c^* (shown in panel (b)), is at its maximum value at k_G^* when the slope of the production function curve, the marginal product of capital, equals the slope of the depreciation plus capital dilution line, $\delta + n$.



To see why the condition in Equation 5 makes sense, let's consider what happens when $k^* < k_G^*$. In this case, the marginal product of capital is higher than the depreciation rate plus the population growth rate. Adding another unit of k^* adds more output, MPK , than the increase in investment, $\delta + n$, so that consumption, c^* , must rise. On the other hand, if $k^* > k_G^*$, $MPK < \delta + n$, adding another unit of k^* increases output by

MPK , which is less than the increase in investment, $\delta + n$, so that consumption, c^* , falls. Consumption per worker in the steady state, c^* , therefore reaches a maximum at $k^* = k_G^*$.

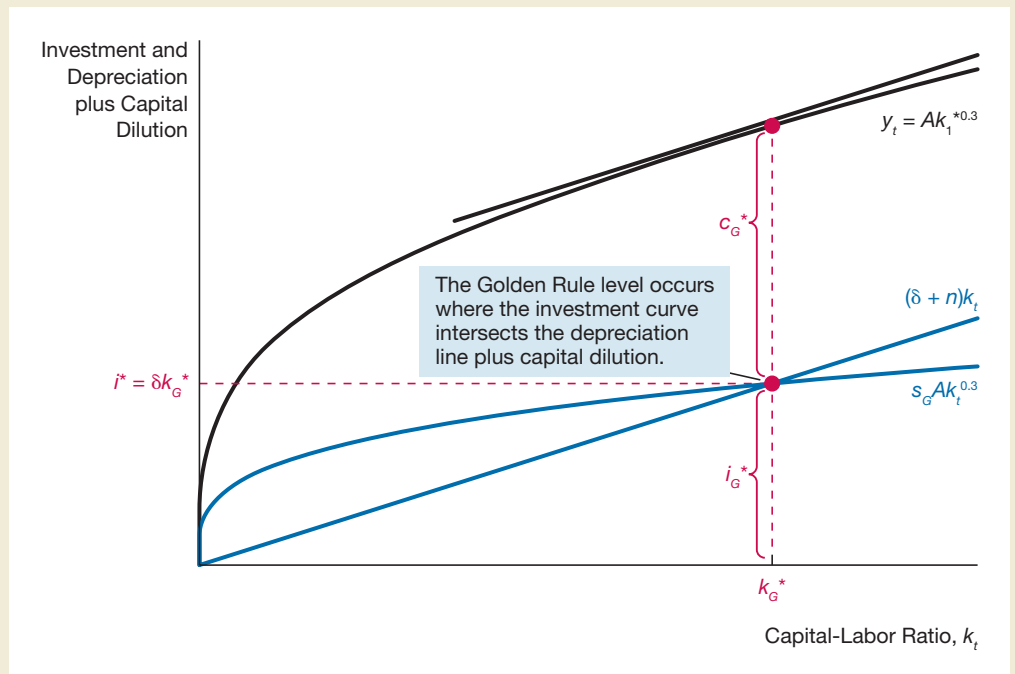
Implications of the Golden Rule Capital-Labor Ratio

What saving rate would a policy maker choose if he or she wants the economy to get to the Golden Rule capital-labor ratio? Figure 6A1.2 provides the answer. The Golden Rule level of the saving rate, s_G , is the one that causes the investment function, $s_G A k_t^{0.3}$, to intersect with the depreciation plus capital dilution line, $(\delta + n)k_t$, at the Golden Rule level of the capital-labor ratio, k_G^* . If the saving rate were higher than s_G , then the intersection of the investment curve and the depreciation line would be at a steady-state level of k^* that would be higher than k_G^* , and so the steady-state level of consumption per worker would fall. Similarly, if the saving rate was lower than s_G , then the intersection of the investment curve and the depreciation line would be at $k^* < k_G^*$, and the steady-state level of consumption per worker would also fall. When the saving rate is at s_G , consumption per worker is at its highest value.

FIGURE 6A1.2

The Golden Rule Level of the Saving Rate

The Golden Rule level of the saving rate, s_G , leads to an investment function, $s_G A k_t^{0.3}$, that intersects with the depreciation plus capital dilution line, $(\delta + n)k_t$, at the Golden Rule level of the capital-labor ratio, k_G^* .



SUMMARY

1. The Golden Rule level of the capital-labor ratio is the level of the capital-labor ratio that maximizes consumption per worker in the steady state.
2. It occurs when $MPK = \delta + n$, that is, when the marginal product of capital equals the depreciation rate plus the population growth rate.
3. The Golden Rule level of the saving rate, s_G , is the one that causes the investment function, $s_G A k_t^{0.3}$, to intersect with the depreciation plus capital dilution line, $(\delta + n)k_t$, at the Golden Rule level of the capital-labor ratio, k_G^* .


KEY TERMS

Golden Rule capital-labor ratio,
p. 168

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND PROBLEMS

1. What distinguishes the Golden Rule capital-labor ratio from other possible capital-labor ratios? What determines whether the economy will operate at the Golden Rule capital-labor ratio?
2. What would be the consequences for future generations of a saving rate that is lower than the Golden Rule level of the savings rate?
3. What would be the effect on the Golden Rule capital-labor ratio of an increase in the population growth rate?
4. What would be the effect on the Golden Rule capital-labor ratio of a decrease in the depreciation rate?
5. The following table contains information about the marginal product of capital corresponding to each capital-labor ratio (measured as the value of the capital stock per capita). Use it to determine the Golden Rule capital ratio if the depreciation rate is 5% and the population growth rate is 2%.
6. One of the goals of the Obama administration is to develop and encourage the use of new technologies, in particular, in the energy industry. What would be the effect of an increase in technology on the Golden Rule capital-labor ratio?

K	\$4,500	\$5,000	\$5,500	\$6,000	\$6,500
MPK	10%	9%	8%	7%	6%



Chapter 6

Appendix B

The Algebra of the Solow Growth Model

An algebraic analysis of the Solow model allows us to directly obtain all the results found in the body of the chapter.

Solving for the Steady State

The capital-accumulation equation when population growth is included is as follows:

$$\Delta k_t = sAk_t^{0.3} - \delta k_t - nk_t = sAk_t^{0.3} - (\delta + n)k_t \quad (1)$$

And the condition for the steady state when $\Delta k_t = 0$ is as follows:

$$sAk^{*0.3} = (\delta + n)k^* \quad (2)$$

Solving for k^* ,

$$\begin{aligned} k^{*0.7} &= k^{*(1-0.3)} = \frac{sA}{\delta + n} \\ k^* &= \left(\frac{sA}{\delta + n} \right)^{(1/0.7)} = \left(\frac{sA}{\delta + n} \right)^{1.43} \end{aligned} \quad (3)$$

Substituting Equation 3 into the per-worker production function to get output per worker, y^* :

$$y^* = A \left[\left(\frac{sA}{\delta + n} \right)^{1.43} \right]^{0.3} = A^{[1+(1.43 \times 0.3)]} \left(\frac{s}{\delta + n} \right)^{(1.43 \times 0.3)} = A^{1.43} \left(\frac{s}{\delta + n} \right)^{0.43} \quad (4)$$

SUMMARY AND RESULTS

The following two results that we derived graphically now come directly out of Equations 3 and 4:

1. Because the saving rate s is in the numerator in Equations 3 and 4, a rise in s indicates that both k^* and y^* rise—that is, a higher saving rate leads to a higher capital-labor ratio and higher output per worker.
2. Because the rate of population growth, n , is in the numerator in Equations 3 and 4, a rise in n indicates that both k^* and y^* fall—that is, higher population

growth leads to a lower capital-labor ratio and a lower level of output per worker.

A third result that is mentioned in the chapter also comes directly from Equations 3 and 4.

3. Because the productivity term A is raised to the 1.43 power in Equations 3 and 4, a rise in productivity growth of 1% leads to a rise in the capital-labor ratio and output per worker by 1.43%, an amplification effect of 43%.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND PROBLEMS

1. Use the following table to find the steady-state values of the capital-labor ratio and output (i.e., complete the table) if the per-worker production function is $y_t = 2k_t^{0.3}$:

s	Saving rate	0.3
δ	Depreciation rate	0.05
n	Population growth rate	0.02
A	Technology	2
k^*	Steady state capital-labor ratio	
y^*	Steady state output	

2. Refer to the previous problem and assume now that the saving rate increases to 50%. Calculate the new steady state values of the

capital-labor ratio and output. Explain your answer graphically.

3. Refer to Problem 1 for data and assume now that the population growth rate increases to 5%. Calculate the new steady state values of the capital-labor ratio and output. Explain your answer graphically and compare the new values of the capital-labor ratio and output per worker to those obtained in Problem 1.
4. Use the graphic representation of the Solow growth model to explain why an increase in the technology factor A leads to a more than proportional increase in both the capital-labor ratio and output per worker.



7

Drivers of Growth: Technology, Policy, and Institutions

Preview

In the last chapter, we used the Solow model to examine the role of capital accumulation in determining why some countries have experienced high economic growth, while others have not grown at all, leaving their citizens mired in abject poverty. A deeper question remains: Why do capital and productivity grow at rapid rates in some countries but not in others?

To answer this question, we start the chapter by discussing how technology differs from the conventional production inputs of capital and labor, which we discussed in the previous chapter. We will then explore policies to promote productivity growth, such as building physical infrastructure (roads and ports), increasing the knowledge and skills of workers, and providing incentives to stimulate research and development. We will also explore why the right set of basic *institutions*—including *property rights* and an effective legal system—is key to attaining high growth in capital and productivity, and hence to economic growth. Rich countries like those in Western Europe, Japan, and the United States feature strong institutions that promote economic growth, while poor nations in parts of Africa, the Middle East and elsewhere have weak institutional frameworks, leaving large fractions of their populations unnecessarily stuck at low levels of income.

Finally, to understand more deeply why policies to promote institutional development and productivity growth are so crucial to improvement in living standards (economic growth) we develop a theory of economic growth that analyzes productivity changes *endogenously* through technological advancement.

Technology as a Production Input

An important conclusion from both growth accounting and the Solow growth model is that increases in total factor productivity, A , are a key driver of economic growth. Up until now, we have treated capital and labor as the only inputs of production and the productivity

term, A , as *exogenous*, or given. We now put aside that assumption and look at A , which we can also think of as technology—because technology is what increases the efficiency of the use of capital and labor—as an input of production, similar to capital and labor.

Technology Versus Conventional Production Inputs

To explain what causes A to grow over time, we first need to understand that technology differs from the conventional production inputs, capital and labor, in an important way. Capital and labor are physical things, or *objects*, while technology is a set of instructions, designs, or *ideas*. Objects are **rival** in their use, because when they are used in one activity, they cannot be used in another. Ideas, on the other hand, can be used by multiple people in more than one activity simultaneously, so we call them **nonrival**. For example, you and your roommate cannot both use the same computer to write a term paper at the same time, nor can you simultaneously write a term paper and wait tables in a restaurant. Your capital and labor are *objects*. A suggestion for a term paper topic posted on the Web might be used by many students across the country: it is an *idea*. Technology is a set of ideas, making it a special form of capital that is nonphysical, nonrivalrous, and endlessly reusable.

Technology and Excludability

A big idea—say, using bed nets to repel mosquitoes and thus prevent malaria—can sweep the world and improve standards of living everywhere. The flipside of the nonrivalry of ideas is their low *excludability*. That is, a technology cannot be padlocked like a factory and kept from unauthorized use. More formally, **excludability** is the ability of the owner of a piece of property to deny its use to others unless they pay for it. Owners of capital earn a rate of return by renting out excludable items, so investments in them can have high pay-offs. On the other hand, it is hard to keep unauthorized users from using a technology, reducing the potential benefits you can reap from producing it. This nonexcludability may discourage investment in technology, which has important implications for policy, as we shall see next.

Policies to Promote Productivity

Our analysis of the Solow model indicates that policies promoting saving and productivity can lead to higher standards of living. We have already discussed policies to stimulate saving in Chapter 4: we now focus on government policies that stimulate productivity.

Building Infrastructure

The responsibility to lay roads and build ports and bridges often falls to governments, since such costly projects wouldn't be economical for any individual firm. Investments in public infrastructure have generated high economic returns and have raised living standards.¹

But just how much should governments spend on physical infrastructure? In 2009, the Obama administration cited the sad state of many U.S. roads and bridges as a rationale for its 2009 stimulus package. It argued that government spending on infrastructure had fallen too low, leading to some devastating bridge collapses over recent years. Critics,

¹For example, see David A. Aschauer, "Is Public Expenditure Productive?" *Journal of Monetary Economics* (March 1989) and John Fernald, "Roads to Prosperity? Assessing the Link Between Public Capital and Productivity," *American Economic Review* 89 (3): 619–636.

however, dispute evidence that infrastructure investments boost productivity and income. It may be instead that governments spend more on infrastructure in periods of rapid economic growth. Also, the government may overspend on infrastructure projects. It is tempting for businesses to contribute to political campaigns, or even pay bribes, to win contracts for infrastructure building, creating a recipe for wasteful spending.

The Interstate Highway System is one successful example of government spending on infrastructure. The Interstate Highway System, formally named the Dwight D. Eisenhower National System of Interstate and Defense Highways, is the largest highway system in the world with nearly 50,000 miles of roads. It is also the largest public works program in history, costing several hundred billion in today's dollars. The Eisenhower administration sought legislation to create this system, which was started in 1956 and was largely completed by 1990. The Interstate Highway System has promoted tourism (almost all of us have taken family vacations using the system) and has substantially reduced the cost of shipping goods from one part of the country to another. Without the Interstate Highway System, U.S. productivity would likely be much lower and the U.S. way of life would be substantially different.

Increasing Human Capital

So far we have focused on two factors of production in discussing economic growth, physical capital and labor. However, another kind of capital, **human capital**, the knowledge and skills that workers have built up through education and training programs, has a very large effect on productivity. For example, scientists require many years of education and experience in the lab before they can produce new technology. Research finds that human capital is at least as important as physical capital in explaining differences in per-capita GDP across countries.²

With higher education and training, workers are much more productive and therefore earn much higher wages. You will be glad to know that your college education leads to a **college premium**, a higher wage for college graduates relative to high-school graduates. The return to education has risen substantially since 1980, with the college premium rising from 50% to 80% today—so it is well worth your while to study hard and stay in school. (We will discuss why this college premium has increased in Chapter 20).

Policy and Practice



Government Measures to Increase Human Capital

For most of the twentieth century, the United States set the global gold standard for educating its populace. Building on its global lead in providing free elementary education, the United States in the early part of the century invested heavily in universal high school education. By mid-century, its colleges and universities had become the world's best. The rest of the world lagged badly behind for much of the century. Fewer than 40% of older European teenagers attended secondary schools in the 1950s, compared with over 70% of older U.S. teenagers.

As our productivity model would predict, investments in human capital through education spending made a sizable impact on economic growth. Between

²For a discussion of research on the effect of human capital on productivity and economic growth, see David N. Weil, *Economic Growth* (Boston; Addison-Wesley, 2008).

1915 and 2005, educational improvements in the U.S. labor force accounted for about 15% of real per-capita GDP growth, or about 0.34 percentage points of growth a year. Data strongly suggests that without an educated population, countries will struggle to become productive members of the global economy. In a study of 114 nations, economists Claudia Goldin and Lawrence Katz of Harvard University identified a positive correlation between enrollment levels in secondary school and real GDP.³ They noted, however, that educational improvements alone were not guaranteed to make a poor country wealthy.

The rest of the world has learned its lesson from U.S. successes. Today, even poor nations invest large sums in education, and wealthy regions like Europe have largely caught up to U.S. educational achievements. In a 2006 study of twenty-six wealthy nations, eighteen nations graduated a greater proportion of citizens from high school than did the United States. U.S. educational achievements began to stagnate in the 1970s, sparking a debate about whether the country had hit some natural limit on educational achievement, or whether a new educational strategy—perhaps focusing on quality, and less on quantity of schooling—was required.

Nevertheless, the United States continues to allocate large sums to finance education. With a budget of around \$7 billion, the federally funded Head Start Program supports local schools and other organizations that provide comprehensive child development services for poor pre-school children, giving them a leg up that will help them succeed when they go to elementary school. State and local governments spend on the order of \$500 billion annually to provide fifty million children free public school education up through twelfth grade. Also, the government funds many colleges and universities and subsidizes loans to students who cannot afford college.

While not a direct investment in human capital, government spending on public health has the effect of keeping workers healthier and more productive. For example, in 2009, the U.S. government spent \$1 billion dollars alone on a new swine flu vaccine to contain the outbreak of this pandemic. Government spending on health care has become one of the largest items in the federal budget and is now close to \$1 trillion per year.

Encouraging Research and Development

The importance of technology to economic growth suggests that countries can improve their standards of living by devoting increased resources to research and development (R&D). Private companies recognize the value of investing in research and spend a great deal on R&D. For instance, in 2009 Google invested \$2.8 billion, or more than 12% of its revenue, in R&D. But because technology has the downside that it may be nonexcludable—that is, others can make use of it without paying for it—many economists believe that the private sector naturally underspends on R&D. Government encouragement of R&D is therefore less controversial among economists than is government spending on infrastructure.

There are three basic ways that governments can encourage R&D: government spending on R&D, government tax incentives, and *patents*.

³Claudia Goldin and Lawrence F. Katz, *The Race Between Education and Technology* (Cambridge, Mass: Belknap Press of Harvard University Press, 2008).

GOVERNMENT SPENDING ON R&D. Governments can directly increase R&D by engaging in research and development at government facilities. For example, many technological innovations have come from government labs, including nuclear power, jet planes, and the electronic computer. Governments also provide grants to universities and private researchers for basic research through agencies such as the National Science Foundation and the National Institutes of Health. Governments recognize that research universities can be an important source of economic growth for particular regions. For example, Boston has gained tremendously from having top research universities in its local area, such as Harvard University, MIT, Tufts, Boston University, and Brandeis. Similarly, Silicon Valley grew up around Stanford University. And India's own high-tech hub, Bangalore, flourished around the highly prestigious Indian Institute of Science. State and local governments, as well as the U.S. federal government, give direct subsidies to research universities. In recent years, Europeans have increased their support for research universities, recognizing the benefits that have accrued in the United States.

TAX INCENTIVES FOR R&D. Because private businesses are likely to be more efficient than the government at producing practical R&D that can be utilized immediately in developing new products and technology, governments also encourage R&D by giving private businesses tax breaks for research. U.S. tax credits for R&D were first implemented with the Economic Recovery Act of 1981. Congress has renewed these credits several times over the intervening years. Companies that qualify for the credit can deduct 20% of their research expenses above a base amount that is determined by historical expenses over a base period.

Almost all advanced economies offer some form of tax incentive for R&D. These incentives go beyond the form of tax credits by allowing firms to deduct 100% and sometimes more of their research expenses from their income in calculating their taxes. Other incentives involve allowing firms to depreciate their machinery and equipment that is involved in R&D at a higher rate than normal, thereby reducing their tax bill.

PATENTS. Another approach to managing the nonexcludability of technology is to grant intellectual property rights to the inventor through a system of **patents** that give inventors the sole right to use, make, or sell licensing rights to others for a set period of time, typically around twenty years. For example, a drug company that earns a patent on a cholesterol-lowering medicine can sue anyone else who tries to produce that drug without permission for decades. These property rights help the business earn higher profits and recoup the investment it made in research and development, and encourage others to invest in R&D.

Patents are not a new idea. Indeed, at the very founding of the United States, the Constitution authorized Congress to enact laws to “promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries.” For example, firms in the drug industry have spent billions on research to develop drugs such as Lipitor or Tamiflu because their sole right to produce them for a number of years has provided them with enormous profits.

Effective design of a patent system is crucial. If patents are given too freely or for too long a period, technological growth may slow since patent owners might refuse to share their knowledge or charge prohibitively high prices to license its use. Particularly worrisome in recent years has been the rise of colorfully named “patent trolls,” who buy up patents and then try to extract large payments from companies that try to develop or use similar technologies. On the other hand, if the patent right

is difficult to enforce, or patents are not given for certain types of inventions, then there might not be enough investment in R&D. Alternatively, the inventor may be unwilling to share ideas with others in publicly available patent applications, thereby hindering technological advance. For example, the Coca-Cola Company has chosen to keep its soda formula a secret, rather than disclose it in a patent application, because it does not believe its patent rights would be enough to keep competitors from making use of it. Patents that do not give sufficient rights to the inventor may therefore leave technology nonexcludable, and so weaken the incentives for R&D and technological progress.

Institutions and Property Rights

We now go on to analyze the role of *institutions* in economic growth. **Institutions** are a set of rules, organizations, and customs that govern the behavior of individuals and firms. The most basic and fundamental set of institutions that affect economic growth are **property rights**, the protection of property from expropriation by the government or other parties. People require property rights to have incentives to make investments. Otherwise, the fruits of their investments (the profits) could be easily taken away. A farmer who does not have clear-cut ownership of his land, or who worries that armed marauders may take away his crops or farm equipment, is unlikely to buy enough seeds, fertilizer, and tractors to boost his farm's production. Weak property rights thus lead to low investment, and low accumulation of capital.

In this section, we outline the key characteristics of legal systems to enforce property rights and examine the key obstacles that they face.

The Legal System and Property Rights

Residents of advanced nations like the United States often take property rights for granted. The founding fathers and their British forbearers understood the importance of property rights to the success of the economy, and a vast body of U.S. law protects private property. The government cannot take your property when it wants to; people who steal property are jailed; and people who make use of our property (either physical or intellectual, that is, property based on ideas) without our permission can be sued in courts of law.

Property rights are established by the writing and enforcement of legal contracts. Strong property rights, needed to provide incentives to invest and accumulate capital, therefore require a legal system that operates quickly and at low cost. Douglass North, recipient of the Nobel Prize for his work on the role of institutions in economic development, has emphasized the importance of the legal system to economic growth: "The inability of societies to develop effective, low-cost enforcement of contracts is the most important source of both historical stagnation and contemporary underdevelopment in the Third World."⁴

There are several elements of an effective legal system: the ability to enforce contracts, adequate resources, and lawyers.

ABILITY TO ENFORCE CONTRACTS. Enacting a good system of laws is the first step in creating strong property rights. Not all legal systems are alike in this regard. A legal system based on **common law**, in which the law is continually reinterpreted by judges,

⁴Douglass North, *Institutions, Institutional Change, and Economic Development* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1990), 54.

came from English law. The common-law legal system is in use in the United Kingdom and its former colonies, including the United States, Canada, Australia, and New Zealand, as well as in India and many countries in Africa. Alternative legal systems based on the Napoleonic code, which was first developed in France, determine the law primarily by statutes. The Napoleonic legal system spread to much of continental Europe during the Napoleonic wars at the beginning of the nineteenth century. The German and Swedish legal systems have elements of both the Napoleonic and the English common law systems, with laws determined by statutes that are subject to substantial modification by judges.

The English common law system is particularly effective at enforcing contracts because it is able to evolve with changing economic circumstances. Countries with legal systems derived from English common law outperform those with systems based on the Napoleonic code in terms of financial development and economic growth, with the performance of the German and Swedish systems somewhere in between.⁵ (See Table 7.1 for a list of countries and their style of legal system.) It also matters how the legal system was imposed on a country to begin with, a subject the box, “Geography, the Legal System and Economic Growth,” explores.

ADEQUATE RESOURCES. A well-functioning legal system requires sufficient funding for courts and qualified judges. India’s legal system, for example, is based on the English common-law system, which suggests it should be a strong protection of property rights. However, India’s legal system is starved for resources and is incredibly overburdened. In India it takes many years to settle lawsuits. There are millions of backlogged cases in higher courts, many of which are ten years old or older. In Brazil, the airline Lufthansa was still in court almost a quarter of a century after the filing of an infamous wrongful-termination lawsuit.

TABLE 7.1**Legal System Origins**

English Common Law	Napoleonic Law	German/Swedish
Australia	Argentina	Austria
Botswana	Brazil	Switzerland
Canada	Chile	Germany
U.K.	Cote d’Ivoire	Denmark
Hong Kong	Egypt	Japan
India	Spain	Korea
Ireland	France	Finland
Jamaica	Greece	Iceland
Singapore	Haiti	Taiwan
United States	Italy	Norway
South Africa	Turkey	Sweden

Source: Beck, Thorsten, Demirguc-Kunt, Asli, & Levine, Ross. 2003. **Law, endowments, and finance.** *Journal of Financial Economics* 70, no. 2 (November): 137–18.

⁵See Rafael La Porta, Florencio Lopez-d-Silanes, Andrei Shleifer, and Robert W. Vishny, “Legal Determinants of External Finance,” *Journal of Finance* 52 (1997): 1131–50; Rafael La Porta, Florencio Lopez-d-Silanes, Andrei Shleifer, and Robert W. Vishny, “Law and Finance,” *Journal of Political Economy* 106 (1998): 1113–55; and Thorsten Beck and Ross Levine, “Legal Institutions and Financial Development,” in *Handbook for New Institutional Economics*, eds. Claude Menard and Mary M. Shirley (Norwell MA: Kluwer Academic Publishers, 2005).



Geography, the Legal System, and Economic Growth

Geography plays an important role in economic growth. Countries with tropical climates closer to the equator have slower economic growth than countries with temperate climates that are farther from the equator.*

Colonies with tropical climates—for example, in the Caribbean, Africa, and on the Indian subcontinent—could not be settled by large numbers of Europeans because the death rates from native diseases were so high. The legal systems in these colonies were modified to benefit the small number of Europeans that ran the countries and to enable them to exploit the countries' resources and local populations. As a result, legal systems in these countries were relatively ineffective at protecting the property rights of the average person, and became a serious handicap to growth as colonies became independent. On the other hand, in temperate climates, larger numbers of Europeans were able to settle in a colony, as in North America, and they were better able to resist exploitation by the home country. (The American Revolution is a dramatic manifestation of this point.) After independence, the legal systems in these countries effectively protected property rights and promoted high

rates of economic growth. Indeed, differences in the quality of legal systems resulting from different patterns of European settlement can explain three-quarters of the differences in income per person between former colonies.

The variations in how colonies were settled explain why even countries whose legal systems were originally based on the British system, with its emphasis on protection of property rights, have shown such different economic performance. The United States, Canada, Australia, and New Zealand, with predominantly European populations that could resist exploitation, ended up with highly effective legal systems and prospered. On the other hand, former British colonies such as Jamaica, India, Pakistan, and Nigeria, where Europeans made up only a small fraction of the population, ended up with much less effective legal systems and have remained poor.

*See Daron Acemoglu, Simon Johnson, and James A. Robinson, "The Colonial Origins of Comparative Development: An Empirical Investigation," *American Economic Review* 91 (2001): 1369–1401; and William Easterly and Ross Levine, "Tropics, Germs and Crops: How Endowments Influence Economic Development," *Journal of Monetary Economics* 50 (2003).

ACCESS TO LAWYERS. Love them or hate them, lawyers are needed to promote property rights. When someone encroaches on your land or makes use of your property without your permission, you turn to a lawyer to stop them. Lawyers are necessary to protect your investments, and knowing you can hire one encourages you to invest in property in the first place. Without lawyers, there would be little to no investment, and thus little economic growth.

Obstacles to Effective Property Rights

Countries with strong property rights laws on the books must still enforce them to ensure a flow of investment in the economy. We will now look at obstacles to property rights systems, including corruption, costly legal processes, and greedy government officials.

CORRUPTION. Corruption, which is endemic in many less-developed countries, is a key obstacle to a well-functioning property rights system. If judges can be bribed, then property rights can be expropriated by the highest bidder for the judge's "services." An entrepreneur with a good idea or investment cannot protect it from the rich and powerful, those who can use the courts as a weapon to take it away and reap any rewards for themselves.

If a government official has to be bribed to allow you to conduct your business, he or she has in effect appropriated part of the value of your property. Corruption is like a cancer in the body of an economy: it weakens and sickens the economy by reducing the incentives for entrepreneurs to make investments and work hard to make profits. Corruption creates much uncertainty for entrepreneurs left wondering if the bribe money is sufficient and if there will be future demands. Research finds that both lower investment relative to GDP and lower economic growth are associated with increases in corruption.⁶

THE HIGH COST OF ESTABLISHING LEGAL BUSINESSES. The high cost of setting up a legal business is another barrier to establishing clear property rights in many developing countries. In countries like the United States, opening a legal business is a simple procedure that requires filling out a form and paying a nominal licensing fee. But, as Peruvian economist Hernando De Soto documented in his fascinating book *The Mystery of Capital*, setting up a business in a less-developed country can be a nightmare.⁷ To legally register a small garment workshop with one worker in Peru required 289 days, working six hours a day, at a total cost of \$1,231—a figure thirty-one times the monthly minimum wage. In contrast, setting up a similar U.S. business takes only a few days at a small fraction of the cost. Peru may be an extreme example, but this problem is endemic in less-developed countries. These barriers to legally registering businesses allow only the rich to operate legal businesses and are a serious impediment to economic growth.

Policy and Practice



The World Bank's *Doing Business*

Stimulated by Hernando De Soto's pioneering work on the barriers to setting up a legal business, the World Bank in 2003 began to publish an annual report entitled *Doing Business*. The latest report covers ten types of indicators in over 180 countries drawn from two types of data: 1) reading of laws and regulations, and 2) time and motion studies, along with official fees, to estimate the cost in terms of time and money for achieving a goal such as setting up a legal business.

The *Doing Business* reports provide useful indicators of how easy it is to conduct business throughout the world, and they have spawned a massive amount of research on how barriers to conducting business affect economic growth. Even more importantly, the *Doing Business* reports have encouraged governments to strengthen property rights and make it easier for businesses to operate. Low *Doing Business* rankings have led many governments to pursue reforms of their regulations to streamline the process of setting up legal businesses and to make it easier to enforce contracts, thereby improving their country's ranking. For example, countries such as Colombia and Egypt have moved up sharply in the *Doing Business* rankings as a result of adopting an extensive reform agenda. Many economists consider the *Doing Business* initiative at the World Bank to be one of its most effective policies to promote economic growth and eradicate poverty in poor countries.

⁶See, for example, Paolo Mauro, "Corruption and Economic Growth," *Quarterly Journal of Economics* 110 (1995): 681–712; and Jakob Svensson, "Eight Questions about Corruption," *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 19, no. 5 (2005): 19–42.

⁷Hernando De Soto, *The Mystery of Capital: Why Capitalism Triumphs in the West and Fails Everywhere Else* (New York: Basic Books, 2000).

THE GRABBING HAND. Simply enacting property laws on the books does not guarantee their enforcement. Government officials in many less-developed countries can arbitrarily expropriate an idea, a business, or an investment for personal gain. Robert Mugabe, the president of Zimbabwe, has impoverished his country by expropriating land and giving it to his cronies. When land can be taken away from a landowner without adequate compensation, landowners will stop investing in their land and farm production will fall. Zimbabwe, once a highly successful producer of farm products that exported over 700,000 tons of corn in 1990, now exports less than one-twentieth of this amount. Andrei Shleifer of Harvard University and Robert Vishny of the University of Chicago have coined the term “the grabbing hand” to describe the often rapacious behavior of such governments, which have been given the name *kleptocracies* because they steal from their citizens in a variety of ways.⁸

Kleptocracies have been particularly common in Africa since former European colonies gained independence in the 1960s. This characteristic explains, in large part, why Africa has failed to keep up with other regions in its economic growth and has even seen a decline of income per person and an increase in poverty in many countries. Haiti, the poorest country in the Americas, has suffered a similar fate. The Duvaliers, Papa Doc, and Baby Doc, dictators from 1957 to 1986, were notorious for stealing on a grand scale. Years of strife and misrule in Haiti prevented investment in stronger building materials. As a result, this poor infrastructure became a death sentence for the hundreds of thousands of Haitians who died in the 2010 earthquake. Meanwhile, a much more powerful earthquake in Chile a few months later killed only a tiny fraction of the number killed in Haiti, in no small part because Chile had invested in quake-resistant buildings.

Property rights will also not exist if the rule of the gun supersedes the rule of law. Continual wars and rebellions diminish property rights because the threat of force allows aggressors to take property. We usually think of the cost of war in terms of the number of dead and wounded, but the economic cost is horrendous as well. Because the threat of war or rebellion makes it hard to retain the profits from productive investment, investment will not occur. A continual state of warfare, in addition to years of kleptocratic rule, also goes a long way toward explaining the awful growth experience of many of the countries of sub-Saharan Africa since they gained independence in the 1960s.

Policy and Practice



Does Foreign Aid Work?

One of the most hotly debated policy issues today is whether rich countries should increase the amount of aid they direct to poorer countries. The percentage of GDP that rich countries currently give to foreign countries in aid for economic development is paltry: foreign aid as a percentage of gross national income in rich countries is below 0.2% and is below 0.05% in the United States. Prominent economists like Jeffrey Sachs of Columbia University and his colleagues at the United Nations Millennium Project have argued that a “big push” in public investments funded by a doubling of foreign aid would enable African countries to escape their poverty trap. In his book *The End of Poverty*, Sachs even argues that, if rich countries would increase their foreign aid budgets to between \$135 and \$195 billion over the next

⁸Andrei Shleifer and Robert W. Vishny, *The Grabbing Hand: Government Pathologies and Their Cures* (Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press, 1998).

decade, they could eliminate extreme global poverty (defined as income of less than \$1 per day).⁹ Is increased foreign aid the answer to lifting nations out of poverty?

Many economists are skeptical whether foreign aid helps countries that receive it because they worry that it might encourage governments to act as a grabbing hand, or alternatively remove incentives to develop policies that promote economic growth. Since 1960, over \$500 billion of aid has poured into Africa with little to show for it. In his two books, *The Elusive Quest for Growth* and *The White Man's Burden*, William Easterly of New York University argues that foreign aid usually doesn't work because it does not provide the right incentives.¹⁰ The aid that poor countries receive almost always goes to their governments, and the political elites that run these governments often use the funds to line their own or their friends' pockets or to cement their power. Indeed, aid to poor countries may even make things worse. A particularly notorious case is Zaire (Congo) under the rule of President Mobutu Sese Seko. For twenty-five years Zaire received one loan after another from several international institutions—including eleven (totaling nearly \$2 billion) from the International Monetary Fund alone. Zaire received \$20 billion in foreign aid during Mobutu's rule while he looted the country, leaving a resource-rich nation one of the poorest in the world. With access to increased resources, bad governments are even more likely to stay in power. Empirical evidence finds that kleptocratic policies are more likely when foreign aid and natural resources provide rulers with the means to buy off their opponents and reward their allies.¹¹

On the other hand, some foreign aid has been highly productive. Public health measures funded by foreign aid have led to dramatic improvements in health and life expectancy in developing countries.¹² One of the most successful instances of foreign aid cited by proponents of foreign aid was the Marshall Plan, which helped achieve the reconstruction of Europe after World War II. However, deeper analysis of the Marshall Plan suggests that it worked not because it handed over large amounts of money, but because it created incentives for the European countries to eliminate price controls, pursue fiscal consolidation, improve the functioning of markets, and liberalize trade.¹³

⁹Jeffrey D. Sachs, *The End of Poverty: Economic Possibilities of Our Time* (London: Penguin Press, 2005). Sachs, along with rock stars like Bono, has also successfully campaigned for aid in the form of debt relief for the poorest countries, arguing that only when they escape from their debt burden will these countries be able to put resources into areas that will stimulate development.

¹⁰William Easterly, *The Elusive Quest for Growth: Economists' Adventures and Misadventures in the Tropics* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2001); and *The White Man's Burden: Why the West's Efforts to Aid the Rest Have Done So Much Ill and So Little Good* (New York: Penguin, 2006).

¹¹Daron Acemoglu, James Robinson, and Thierry Verdier, "Kleptocracy and Divide-and-Rule: A Model of Personal Rule" *Journal of the European Economic Association Papers and Proceedings* 2 (April–May 2004): 162–192.

¹²There is quite a bit of controversy over whether foreign aid helps alleviate poverty, even when a country has good governance. For example, see Craig Burnside and David Dollar, "Aid, Policies, and Growth," *American Economic Review* 90, no. 4 (2000): 847–68. However, William Easterly, Ross Levine, and David Rodman, "New Data, New Doubts: A Comment on Burnside and Dollar's 'Aid, Policies, and Growth' (2000)" National Bureau of Economic Research Working Paper 9846 (July 2003) and Raghuram G. Rajan and Arvind Subramanian, "Aid and Growth: What Does the Cross-Country Evidence Really Show?" National Bureau of Economic Research Paper 11513 (July 2005) contest Burnside and Dollar's results because they find that they are not robust.

¹³Barry Eichengreen and Marc Uzan, "The Marshall Plan: Economic Effects and Implications for Eastern Europe and the Former USSR," *Economic Policy* 14 (1992): 13–77 and R. Glenn Hubbard and William Duggan, *The Aid Trap* (New York: Columbia Business School Press, 2009).

Endogenous Growth Theory

To more deeply understand what promotes economic growth, we need to study a theory of what causes technological advancement, that is, what causes growth in A . This theory, which we outline here, is referred to as **endogenous growth theory**, because it explains why advances in technology *endogenously* (from within the system) fuel sustained economic growth. Because Paul Romer was so instrumental in developing this theory, endogenous growth models are often referred to as **Romer models**.¹⁴

Here we outline a simple version of a Romer model that highlights many of the important implications of endogenous growth theory. We extend the Solow model of the last chapter, using many of the same building blocks, but add a key feature—the production of ideas.

Allocation of Labor

The Solow model assumes that all labor, L , is allocated to the production of goods and services. The Romer model changes that assumption and says that some labor, L_p , is devoted to producing goods and services, while the rest, L_A , is devoted to producing new technology, which we will refer to as research and development (R&D). The total amount of labor is fixed at the total amount of the population, \bar{N} .

We can then write total labor, which we assume is the same as the population, \bar{N} , as follows:

$$\bar{N} = L_p + L_A \quad (1)$$

We will assume that a constant fraction, α , of the population is devoted to R&D, so that

$$L_A = \alpha\bar{N} \quad (2)$$

which from Equation 1 implies that the amount of labor devoted to producing goods and services is:

$$L_p = (1 - \alpha)\bar{N} \quad (3)$$

Production Function

The production of goods and services in the Romer model is described with largely the same production function as in the previous chapter. Also, we add time subscripts, t , to reflect variables that can change over time.

$$Y_t = A_t K_t^{0.3} L_t^{0.7} \quad (4)$$

Because labor in Equation 4 is only that subset of labor devoted to producing goods and services, we replace L with L_p to yield the following:

$$Y_t = A_t K_t^{0.3} L_p^{0.7} \quad (5)$$

¹⁴Two of Paul Romer's most important contributions are Paul M. Romer, "Increasing Returns and Long-Run Growth," *Journal of Political Economy* 94 (October 1986): 1002–1037 and "Endogenous Technical Change," *Journal of Political Economy*, 98, Part 2 (October 1990): S71–S102.

Next, we put Equation 5 in terms of output per worker, just as we did in Equation 4 in the previous chapter, but recognize that the workers are the ones engaged in the production of goods and services:

$$y_{Pt} = A_t k_{Pt}^{0.3} \quad (6)$$

Notice that output and capital per worker now have two subscripts, one to indicate that they can change over time, and the other to indicate that they are now defined in terms of workers that are devoted to the production of goods and services:

$$y_{Pt} = \frac{Y_t}{L_P}$$

$$k_{Pt} = \frac{K_t}{L_P}$$

The production function in Equation 6 has the same form as that used in the Solow model so that all the analysis we applied in the previous chapter applies equally here.

Production of Technology

We now assume a very simple form of a production function for technology. Technology is produced by building on old ideas to create new ones, along the lines suggested by the famous quote from Sir Isaac Newton: “If I have seen farther than others, it is because I have stood on the shoulders of giants.” In addition, we assume the increase in technology is proportional to the number of workers that are engaged in research and development, L_A . The production function for technology is thus as follows:

$$A_{t+1} - A_t = \Delta A_t = \chi A_t L_A \quad (7)$$

where the χ term indicates how productive labor is in producing ideas. When χ rises, a unit of labor engaged in research and development produces more knowledge than it did before.

Notice that technology, A_t , is used in producing more technology, ΔA_t , in Equation 7, and also to produce goods and services in Equations 5 and 6. How is this possible? Technology is nonrivalrous, a set of ideas that can be used over and over again to produce both new technology and also goods and services. This nonrivalry of ideas and technology in the Romer model gives technology a one-two punch in economic growth. ***Incorporating nonrivalry into our economic model allows us to explain sustained growth in per-capita income. Without it, as in the Solow model, diminishing returns to capital eventually lead output per capita to come to rest at a steady state without growth.***

Dividing both sides of Equation 7 by A_t and replacing L_A by $\alpha \bar{N}$ from Equation 2, we can write the production function in terms of the growth rate of technology, g_A , as follows:

$$\frac{\Delta A_t}{A_t} = g_A = \chi \alpha \bar{N} \quad (8)$$

This technology production function tells us that the growth rate in technology is positively related to the productivity of research and development (χ), the fraction of the population that is devoted to R&D (α), and the total population in the economy (\bar{N}).

Sustained Growth in the Romer Model

With these building blocks in place, we can see how sustained growth in per-capita income is an implication of the Romer model. From the Solow model, the production function in Equation 6 has a steady state k_p^* :

$$y_{Pt}^* = A_t k_p^{*0.3} \quad (9)$$

Equation 9 tells us that although there is a steady state at k_p^* , y_{Pt}^* will have a time subscript and changes over time because A_t changes over time. We can write this production function in terms of output per person, $y_t = Y_t/\bar{N}$ which can be written as $y_t = y_{Pt} \times (L_p/\bar{N})$.¹⁵ Since $L_p/\bar{N} = (1 - \alpha)$ from Equation 3, we can get an expression for y_t by multiplying Equation 9 by $(1 - \alpha)$:

$$y_t^* = (1 - \alpha)A_t k_p^{*0.3} \quad (10)$$

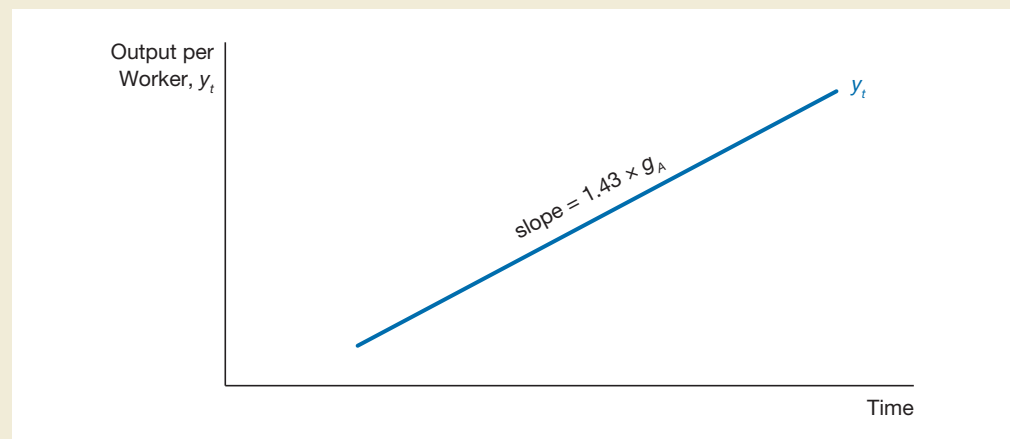
From the production function for technology, we see that the A_t term is growing at a constant rate of g_A and therefore output per worker grows as well. Indeed, from our analysis of the Solow model in the previous chapter, this growth rate in A_t is amplified by a direct effect through the production function and an additional positive effect from a growing capital-labor ratio. The size of this amplification effect with the Cobb-Douglas production function used here was derived to be 1.43 in an appendix in Chapter 6, so with a growth rate of technology of g_A , the per-worker growth rate of output is $1.43 \times g_A$.

In the Romer model, output per person keeps growing, but grows at a *steady rate*. Economists refer to growth at a constant rate as a **balanced growth path**. This constant growth rate contrasts with the Solow model, where output per person eventually reaches a *steady state*, from which it grows no further. We show the Romer model's balanced growth path in Figure 7.1. The vertical axis is a **ratio scale** (also called a **logarithmic scale**) in which equal distances reflect the same percentage change. When we plot a variable in a ratio scale against time, if it is growing at a constant rate per year, then it will appear as a straight line, with the slope representing the rate of growth. We show output per worker, y_t , in the Romer model as a straight line in Figure 7.1, with a slope of $1.43 \times g_A$, indicating that output per worker is growing at that rate.

FIGURE 7.1

Balanced Growth Path in the Romer Model

When plotted against time with a logarithmic scale, output per worker grows at a steady rate of $1.43 \times g_A$, which is a straight line with a slope of $1.43 \times g_A$.



¹⁵You can see this by recognizing that $y_t = Y_t/\bar{N} = (Y/L_p) \times (L_p/\bar{N}) = y_{Pt} \times (L_p/\bar{N})$.

Factors That Affect Endogenous Growth

Three factors in the Romer model can change the economy's growth rate: 1) the fraction of the population that is engaged in R&D, α ; 2) the productiveness of R&D, χ ; and 3) the total population in the economy, \bar{N} . Let's look at how growth responds to changes in each of these factors in turn.

Effects of an Increase in the Fraction of the Population Engaged in R&D, α

Suppose that at time 0, a country decides to devote more resources to developing technology. The fraction of the population engaged in R&D rises from α_1 to α_2 in Figure 7.2. From Equation 8 we see that the growth rate of technology rises from g_{A1} to g_{A2} . As in Figure 7.2, eventually this increasing growth rate will lead to balanced growth where the growth rate of output per capita will rise from $1.43g_{A1}$ to $1.43g_{A2}$. Unlike the last example, there are two additional effects on the production function to consider.

1. As more labor is devoted to R&D production, less labor is devoted to the production of goods and services. Equation 10 indicates that there is an immediate decline in output per capita, as is shown in Figure 7.2.
2. The decline in L_p pushes up the capital-labor ratio k_{pt} . We know from the Solow analysis that over time k_{pt} will decline toward the steady state value of k_p^* so that the growth rate will for a time be below the long-run growth rate of $1.43g_{A2}$. As the capital-labor ratio approaches the steady state over time, the growth rate of the economy will rise toward the long-run growth rate of $1.43g_{A2}$ and the economy will be on a new, higher balanced growth path.

We show the resulting path of per-capita income in Figure 7.2. The reasoning behind the path is a bit complicated. However, the basic conclusion from the analysis is fairly straightforward: **when more resources are devoted to research and development, the level of per-capita output at first falls, but the growth rate of per-capita output will rise permanently.** The analysis in the Romer model therefore suggests a tradeoff to increasing the resources devoted to research and development: short-run living standards decline, while long-run living standards improve as per-capita output grows at a higher, sustained rate.

Endogenous growth theory provides an important rationale for why the government should spend money on R&D. With increased government expenditures on R&D, the resources going to production of technology increase, that is, α rises. As we see from the preceding analysis, this would lead to a permanently higher growth rate of per-capita output.

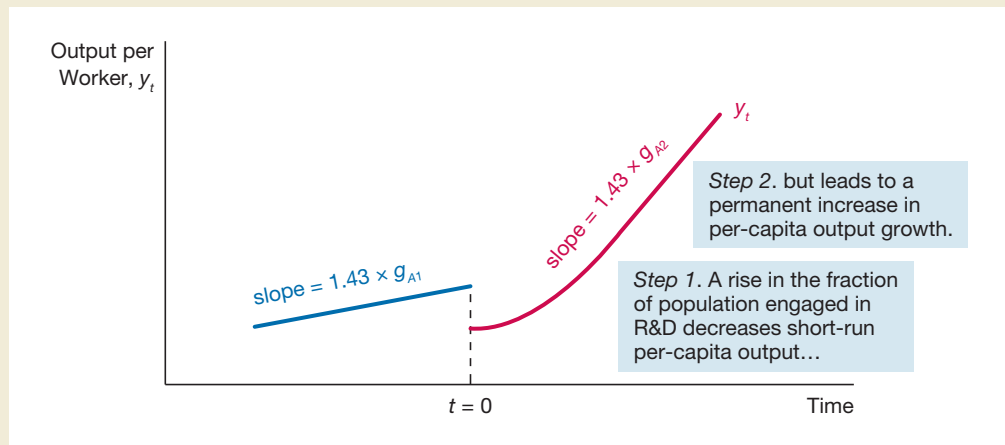
Effect of Changes in the Productiveness of R&D, χ

Inventors have become particularly productive at certain times in history, causing productivity of R&D to suddenly rise. Let's see how the resulting increase in χ , the productivity of R&D, affects growth in income per capita using the Romer model. Suppose that at time 0, marked in Figure 7.3, χ rises from χ_1 to χ_2 . The production function for technology in Equation 8 tells us that the growth rate of technology rises from g_{A1} to g_{A2} . Since there are no changes in the other elements of the production function in Equation 10, steady state k_p^* is unchanged and only the A_t term changes over time. The growth rate of output per capita rises from $1.43g_{A1}$ to $1.43g_{A2}$. The line showing how output per capita is growing over time immediately gets a higher slope, as shown in Figure 7.3, indicating that the economy has

FIGURE 7.2**Response to an Increase in the Fraction of the Population Engaged in R&D**

At time 0, the fraction of the population engaged in R&D rises from α_1 to α_2 , increasing the growth rate of technology from g_{A1} to g_{A2} . At time 0, there is an immediate decline in output per capita.

Because workers move from the production of goods and services to the production of R & D, the capital-labor ratio k_{p_t} at first rises. However, it will fall back down toward the steady-state value of k_p^* so that the growth rate will for a time be below the long-run growth rate of $1.43g_{A2}$. Over time, as the capital-labor ratio approaches the steady state, the growth rate of the economy will rise toward $1.43g_{A2}$, and be on a balanced growth path.



immediately moved to a new, higher balanced growth path. The conclusion: **when R&D becomes more productive, output per capita grows at a more rapid rate.**

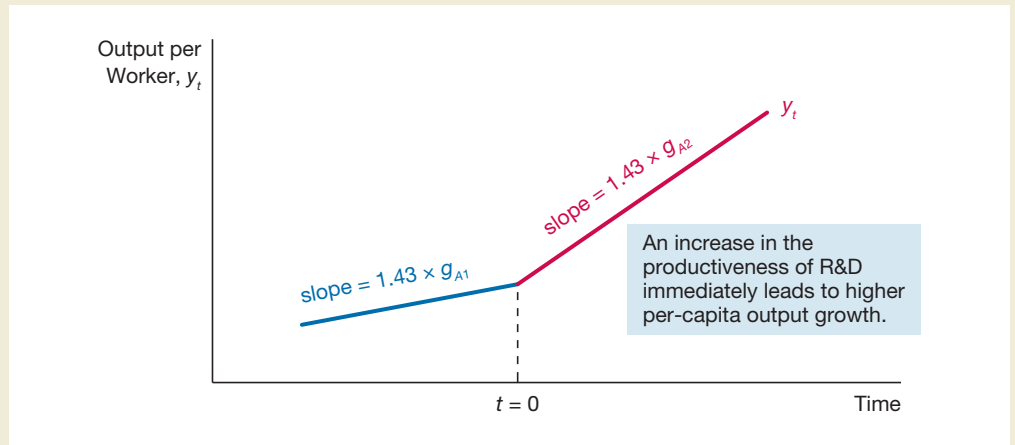
Government policies to make R&D more productive receive strong support from the analysis in endogenous growth theory. Spending on education, which results in an increase in human capital, can make workers in the R&D sector more productive, thus raising χ . As we saw in Figure 7.3, this would lead to a higher growth rate of output per capita, making the nation's citizens richer over time.

Because the private sector is often more efficient than the government in developing new technology, government tax incentives to encourage private spending on R&D rather than direct government spending on R&D, can help improve the efficiency of technology production, thereby increasing χ and economic growth. In addition, tax incentives to spur private spending on R&D can lead to increased resources going into R&D, which raises α and also promotes higher growth in per-capita output.

FIGURE 7.3

Response to a Rise in the Productiveness of R&D

At time 0, the productiveness of R&D rises from χ_1 to χ_2 , raising the growth rate of technology from g_{A1} to g_{A2} . Since there are no changes in the other elements of the production function, steady state k_P^* is unchanged and the growth rate of output per capita rises from $1.43g_{A1}$ to $1.43g_{A2}$. Y_t now has a higher slope, indicating that the economy has immediately moved to a new higher balanced growth path.



Response to an Increase in the Total Population \bar{N}

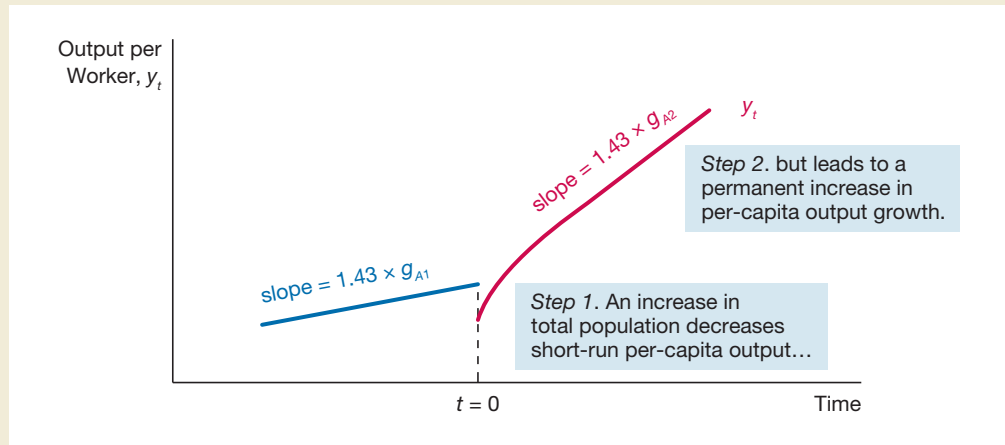
In the Solow model in the previous chapter, we saw that an increase in population lowers the standard of living because it leads to capital dilution. The Romer model, to the contrary, finds there can be improvements in the standard of living from population increases.

To illustrate, suppose that at time 0 there is a surge in immigration that leads to an increase in population from \bar{N}_1 to \bar{N}_2 in Figure 7.4. As in the previous examples, we again see from Equation 8 that the growth rate of technology rises from g_{A1} to g_{A2} . More labor is engaged in producing new technology and, as before, there will eventually be balanced growth where the growth rate of output per capita will rise from $1.43g_{A1}$ to $1.43g_{A2}$. However, the rise in population will lead to an immediate decline in the capital-labor ratio k_{P_t} , so the production function in Equation 10 tells us that output per capita at first falls. Because k_{P_t} has fallen below the steady state value of k_P^* , it will begin to rise so that the growth rate will for a time be above the long-run growth rate of $1.43g_{A2}$. Over time, as the capital-labor ratio approaches the steady state, the growth rate of the economy will fall toward the long-run growth rate of $1.43g_{A2}$.

We show the resulting path of per-capita income in Figure 7.4—and once again the reasoning is a little complicated. However, the basic conclusion holds: **a rise in population at first leads to a decline in per-capita output, but the growth rate of per-capita output will rise permanently.** The Romer model therefore suggests that an increase in population improves living standards in the long run. This result is a very different result from the Solow model, although there is a decline in living standards in the short run.

FIGURE 7.4**Response to an Increase in the Total Population**

At time 0, there is an increase in population from \bar{N}_1 to \bar{N}_2 . The growth rate of technology rises from g_{A1} to g_{A2} . The rise in population leads to an immediate decline in the capital-labor ratio k_{pt} and a fall in per-capita output. Because k_{pt} has fallen below the steady-state value of k_p^* , it will begin to rise so that the growth rate will for a time be above the long-run growth rate of $1.43g_{A2}$. Over time, as the capital-labor ratio approaches the steady state, the growth rate of the economy will fall toward the long-run growth rate of $1.43g_{A2}$ on the balanced growth path.



Application

Does Population Growth Improve Living Standards?

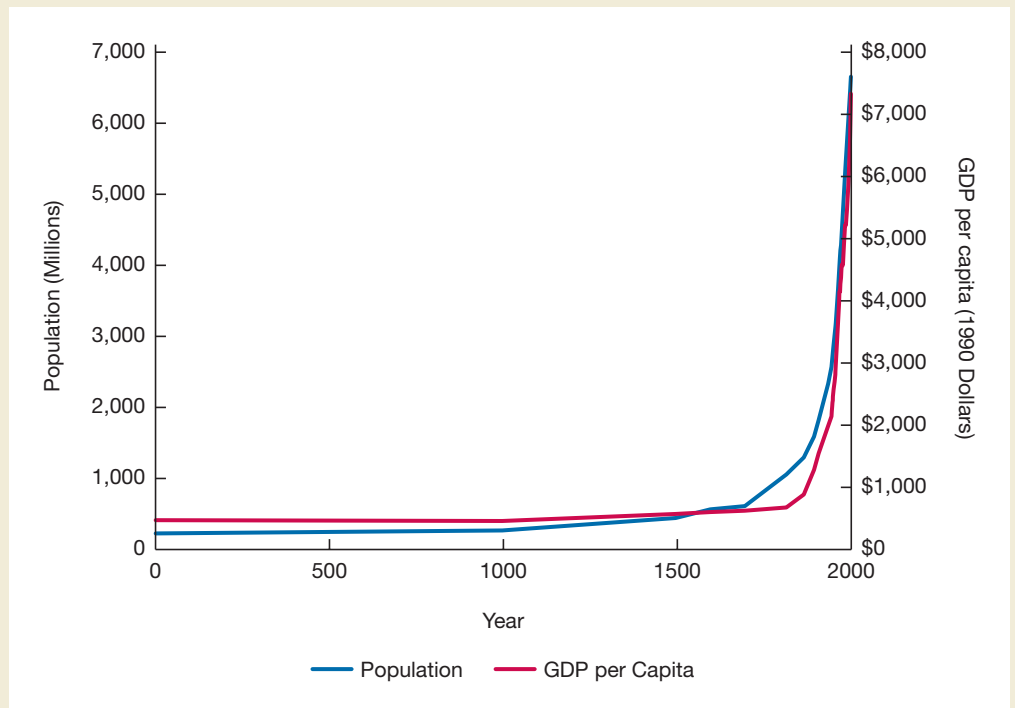
When a country's population grows, does capital dilution lower living standards, as the Solow model predicts, or does the higher rate of technological progress increase living standards, as the Romer model predicts? As strange as it sounds, the conclusions of both models may be correct.

The Romer model's optimistic view of population growth may not apply well to individual countries. Suppose India, a country with a fast-growing population, develops a new process for growing wheat that helps farmers produce more in less time. The process will improve living standards in India. However, the nonrivalry of ideas will lead the technology to spread to its neighbors and eventually around the world. This phenomenon of **technological spillover** might explain why countries with high rates of population growth don't have higher per-capita income (see Figure 6.11 in the last chapter). If the productivity frontier A_t is similar across countries, then the Solow result still holds and rising population will be associated with lower per-capita income.

However, there is evidence that the Romer model's approach to population growth applies better to the world as a whole than the Solow model. As Figure 7.5 shows, the world population has steadily grown from a little over 200 million people at the dawn of the Christian era to over six billion today. Over this very long-run period, annual per-capita GDP rose dramatically, from under \$500 to over \$7,000 currently. This evidence suggests that

FIGURE 7.5**World Population and Per-Capita GDP over the Very Long Run**

World population has steadily grown from a little over 200 million people at the beginning of the Christian era to over six billion today, while per-capita GDP has risen dramatically, from under \$500 to over \$7,000 currently. Higher population appears to be positively associated with higher living standards, as endogenous growth theory predicts.



Source: Maddison, Angus. *Historical statistics, population and per capita GDP levels, 1-2006*. www.ggdc.net/maddison/

higher populations are positively associated with higher living standards, as endogenous growth theory predicts.¹⁶

Indeed, Michael Kremer of Harvard University has produced some tantalizing evidence that suggests that higher populations stimulate technological progress and raise living standards.¹⁷ The melting of the polar ice caps around 10,000 BC separated regions of the world and isolated their populations for thousands of years. Kremer found that the region that began with the highest population, the Eurasian-African landmass, developed more advanced technology and higher per-capita income than the next most populated, the Americas. In turn, the Americas had a higher initial population than Australia, and developed better technology and a higher standard of living. A small island between Australia and Tasmania named Flinders Island had the lowest population at the time of separation and ended up with the fewest technological advances. Indeed, Flinders' population died off by 3,000 BC. Since the separation was exogenous—that is, caused by events outside of human control—the results indicate that population growth causes higher living standards, as endogenous growth theory predicts.



¹⁶On the other hand, it's also possible that causality runs in the other direction, from higher per-capita income to higher population; that is, as humans have grown wealthier, our populations have increased in size. (Economists are renowned for being able to argue both sides.)

¹⁷Michael Kremer, "Population Growth and Technological Change: One Million B.C. to 1990," *Quarterly Journal of Economics* 108 (August 1993): 681–716.

The Romer Model and Saving

A central feature of the Solow model is that an increase in saving leads to a higher level of per-capita income and a temporary increase in economic growth, but does not lead to a sustained rise in economic growth. The Romer model comes to the same conclusion—that saving does not drive endogenous growth—as Figure 7.6 illustrates.

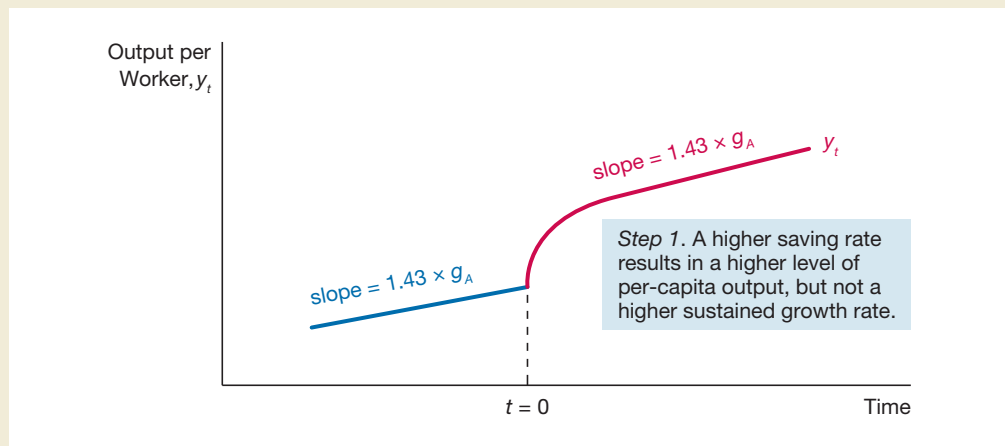
When the saving rate rises at time 0, the growth rate of technology remains unchanged at g_A since none of the variables in the technology production function in Equation 8 change. Over time, though, greater saving generates investment in capital, lifting the capital-labor ratio k_{pt} . The production function in Equation 10 tells us that output per capita will rise, so the growth rate will for a time be above the long-run growth rate of $1.43g_A$. As the capital-labor ratio comes to rest at a higher steady-state value, the economy will return to a balanced growth path where per-capita output is growing at the same rate of $1.43g_A$. We show the path of per-capita output resulting from the rise in the saving rate at time 0 in Figure 7.6. This path shows that **a higher saving rate results in a higher level of output per capita, but not a higher sustained growth rate.**

More sophisticated models of technology production come to a more optimistic conclusion on the effects of saving. In these models, higher saving lifts the steady state capital-labor ratio and also generates investment in productivity-enhancing capital like computers and communications equipment. (In the simple model we have built, technology is a function of labor, not capital.) As saving increases and the capital stock grows, more technology is produced, leading to a more rapid rate of growth for both A_t and per-capita income.¹⁸

FIGURE 7.6

Response to a Rise in the Saving Rate

The saving rate rises at time 0 and the growth rate of technology remains unchanged at g_A . The higher saving rate, which leads to higher investment, results in a higher steady-state value of the capital-labor ratio. Output per capita will rise so that the growth rate will for a time be above the long-run growth rate of $1.43g_A$. Once the capital-labor ratio reaches the new higher steady-state value, it will come to rest and then the economy will be back on the balanced growth path where per-capita output grows at the same rate of $1.43g_A$.



¹⁸For discussion of this research and its implications for growth theory, see David Weil, *Economic Growth*, 2nd edition (Boston: Pearson, Addison-Wesley, 2008); and Charles Jones, *Introduction to Economic Growth* (New York: Norton, 2002).

SUMMARY

1. Technological ideas are an input into production and are nonrivalrous, that is, they can be used over and over again without limit. However, they often have a low level of excludability because it is hard to keep others from using them without permission. As a result, there may not be sufficient incentives to invest in technology.
2. Policies to stimulate productivity include building infrastructure, increasing human capital, government spending on R&D, tax incentives for R&D, and patents.
3. Property rights are the most fundamental institution required for economic growth and require 1) an effective legal system that can enforce contracts with adequate resources and plenty of lawyers, 2) an absence of corruption; 3) a low cost of establishing legal businesses; and 4) an absence of the “grabbing hand” by the government.
4. Endogenous growth theory using the Romer model explains endogenously how technology advances and leads economies to sustained economic growth. Its key equations are the population devoted to R&D, $L_A = \alpha \bar{N}$; the production function for the growth of technology, $\Delta A_t / A_t = g_A = \chi \alpha \bar{N}$; and the production function in terms of output per person, $y_t^* = (1 - \alpha) A_t k_p^{*0.3}$. The Romer model produces a balanced growth path in which output per person grows at a steady rate.
5. Applying the Romer model yields the following results: When R&D becomes more productive, output per capita grows at a more rapid rate. When more resources are devoted to R&D, the level of per-capita output at first falls, but the growth rate of per-capita output will rise permanently. A rise in population at first leads to a decline in per-capita output, but the growth rate of per-capita output will rise permanently. A higher saving rate results in a higher level of output per capita, but not in a higher sustained growth rate.

KEY TERMS

balanced growth path, p. 188

college premium, p. 177

common law, p. 180

endogenous growth theory, p. 186

excludability, p. 176

logarithmic scale, p. 188

human capital, p. 177

institutions, p. 180

nonrival, p. 176

patents, p. 179

property rights, p. 180

ratio scale, p. 188

rival, p. 176

Romer models, p. 186

technological spillover, p. 192

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Technology as a Production Input

1. As an input to production, how does technology differ from labor and capital inputs?

Policies to Promote Productivity

2. What government policies can be used to promote productivity growth?
3. Why may private R&D expenditures be too low?
4. What is a patent? Why do governments grant them?

Institutions and Property Rights

5. What are property rights and how do they influence economic growth?
6. What role does the legal system play in promoting property rights?

Endogenous Growth Theory

7. What shortcoming of the Solow growth model does the Romer model attempt to remedy?
8. Why is sustained per-capita growth possible in the Romer model but not in the Solow model?

Factors that Affect Endogenous Growth

9. In the Romer model, what three factors determine an economy's growth rate?
10. In the Romer model, how does an increase in the fraction of the population engaged in R&D affect the growth rate of per-capita output over time?
11. In the Romer model, how does an increase in total population affect the growth rate of per-capita output over time?
12. What is the impact of an increase in saving in the Romer model?

PROBLEMS

All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Technology as a Production Input

1. Compare the following factors of production in terms of their rivalry and excludability:
 - a) A robot that welds car frames and the idea of building a car in an assembly line
 - b) A recipe to make pancakes and the recipe to manufacture a soda drink

Policies to Promote Productivity

2. The White House website describing the Economic Recovery Act of 2009 states "The Recovery Act [. . .] provides for \$7.2 billion for broadband internet access nationwide, including grants for rural broadband access, expanding computer center capacity, and sustainable broadband adoption initiatives." Is there a good rationale for such a policy? Discuss.
3. Uruguay implemented the One Laptop per Child (OLPC) initiative at the beginning of 2007. This program aimed to give one laptop to every child and teacher in a public primary school. By the second semester of 2009, every child and teacher in a public primary school had a laptop. Comment on the effects of this program on the following:
 - a) Uruguay's human capital stock
 - b) Uruguay's output per capita growth rate
4. How might the effects of government spending on proper sewage infrastructure that results in improved sanitation for crowded cities in poor countries promote economic growth?
5. The International Property Right Index (IPRI) ranks countries according to the significance and protection of both intellectual and physical property rights. What correlation between income per capita growth and the IPRI ranking might you expect? Why?

Institutions and Property Rights

6. Transparency International constructs the Corruption Perception Index (CPI), meant to measure "the perceived level of public-sector corruption in 180 countries and territories around the world." The CPI ranges from 0 (most corrupt) to 10 (least corrupt). Plot the CPI values for these selected countries and their per capita Gross National Income (GNI). Can you explain the trend you observe in the graph?

Country	GNI per capita (2008)	CPI value (2009)
United States	\$47,580	7.5
France	\$42,250	6.9
Sudan	\$ 1,130	1.5
India	\$ 1,070	3.4
Mexico	\$ 9,980	3.3

7. Do you think corruption affects the enforcement of property rights, or is it that badly designed institutions create opportunities for corruption? In other words, does corruption determine the enforcement and design of property rights, or is it the other way around, with causality running from the design of property rights to corruption? Explain your arguments.
8. Do you tend to agree more with Sachs (foreign aid should be increased) or with Easterly (more foreign aid can do more harm than good) in the foreign aid debate? Explain your arguments.

Endogenous Growth Theory

9. Suppose total population is 100 million and 25% is devoted to the production of research and development. Using the simplified version of the Romer model outlined in the chapter, calculate the following:
 - a) Change in technology (ΔA_t), if $\chi = 0.0005$ and $A_t = 20$
 - b) The growth rate of technology
 - c) The per-person output growth rate

Factors that Affect Endogenous Growth

10. Consider the world economy and comment on the effect of the Industrial Revolution on the world growth rate of output per person according to the assumptions of the Romer model.
11. During the late 1960s Chinese authorities imposed the precepts of the “Cultural Revolution” on their people. As a result almost all scholars and researchers were sent to the fields to perform manual agricultural tasks. Comment on the effect this had on the per-person output growth rate, according to the Romer model.
12. Michael Kremer’s research suggests that higher population might stimulate technological progress. How can higher population stimulate technological change?
13. Discuss the validity of the following statement: “Unlike Solow’s model, Romer’s model concludes that changes in the saving rate do not affect the sustained per-capita output growth rate.”



MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.

Part Four

Business Cycles: The Short Run

Chapter 8

Business Cycles: An Introduction

Chapter 9

The *IS* Curve

Chapter 10

Monetary Policy and Aggregate Demand

Chapter 11

Aggregate Supply and the Phillips Curve

Chapter 12

The Aggregate Demand and Supply Model

Chapter 13

Macroeconomic Policy and Aggregate
Demand and Supply Analysis



Part Four Business Cycles: The Short Run

In this part of the book, we move from analyzing the long run to explaining short-run economic fluctuations in aggregate output, unemployment, and inflation. Chapter 8 provides an introduction to the study of short-run economic fluctuations by describing the characteristics of the business cycle. Chapters 9–12 then develop the basic model used throughout this book to explain business cycle fluctuations, the *aggregate demand and supply model*. Chapter 13 uses this model to discuss macroeconomic policy.

Chapter 9 develops the first building block of the aggregate demand and supply model, the *IS* curve, which describes the interaction between real interest rates and aggregate output when the goods market is in equilibrium. Chapter 10 and its appendix describe how monetary policy makers set real interest rates with the *monetary policy (MP) curve*, which describes the relationship between inflation and real interest rates. The chapter then uses the *MP* curve and the *IS* curve to derive the *aggregate demand curve*, a key element in the aggregate demand and supply model that describes the relationship between inflation and aggregate output. Chapter 11 uses the *Phillips curve*, a relationship between the unemployment rate and inflation, to derive the *aggregate supply curve*, the relationship between aggregate output and inflation, the last building block for the aggregate demand and supply model.

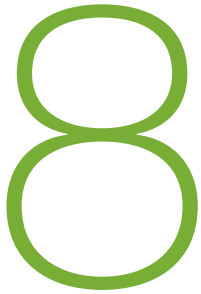
Chapter 12 and its appendices then put all of the building blocks together to develop the aggregate demand and supply model, which we then use to explain business cycle fluctuations in the United States and abroad. The final chapter in this part of the book, Chapter 13, brings policy makers into the picture by examining their policy options for stabilizing inflation and output fluctuations.

We will examine applications in each chapter to make the critical connection between theory and real-world practice:

- “The Vietnam War Buildup, 1964–1969”
- “The Volcker Disinflation, 1980–1986”
- “Negative Demand Shocks, 2001–2004”
- “Negative Supply Shocks, 1973–1975 and 1978–1980”
- “Positive Supply Shocks, 1995–1999”
- “Negative Supply and Demand Shocks and the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis”
- “The United Kingdom and the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis”
- “China and the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis”

In keeping with our focus on key policy issues and the techniques policy makers use in practice, we will also analyze the following specific examples in Policy and Practice cases:

- “The Fiscal Stimulus Package of 2009”
- “Autonomous Monetary Easing at the Onset of the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis”
- “The Phillips Curve Tradeoff and Macroeconomic Policy in the 1960s”
- “The Federal Reserve’s Use of the Equilibrium Real Interest Rate, r^* ”
- “The Activist/Nonactivist Debate over the Obama Fiscal Stimulus Package”
- “The Fed’s Use of the Taylor Rule”



Business Cycles: An Introduction

Preview

Before the Great Recession of 2007, commentators marveled at the persistent strength of the U.S. economy. Except for a single, mild downturn between March and November 2001, the United States enjoyed sixteen years of economic growth, leading some economists to declare the *business cycle*, the up-and-down fluctuations of the aggregate economy, dead and buried. Might the population be spared the lengthy periods of economic trauma experienced by virtually every prior generation?

The collapse of the subprime mortgage market in 2007 dashed these hopes. The economy fell into a slump in December 2007. Nine months later, the disruption to the U.S. financial system became especially severe with the bankruptcy of Lehman Brothers, and the decline in the economy accelerated.

U.S. GDP fell substantially in the fourth quarter of 2008, and by the fourth quarter of 2009, over 10% of those who wanted a job couldn't find one. (By comparison, unemployment rates in the 1990–1991 and 2001 recessions peaked at 7.8% and 5.8%, respectively.) No one talks any more about the end of the business cycle; like death and taxes, it will always be with us.

This chapter introduces the characteristics of business cycles and the country's experiences with them over the past 150 years. We will explore the economic data that underlie the business cycle, such as gross domestic product and the unemployment rate. Finally, we introduce two schools of economic thought, *Keynesian* and *classical economics*, which take sharply different views on how governments should respond to business cycles. In later chapters, we will develop a theory of business cycles and an economic model to explain these fluctuations.

Business Cycle Basics

In their classic book *Measuring Business Cycles*,¹ Arthur Burns and Wesley Mitchell defined **business cycles** as fluctuations in aggregate economic activity in which many economic activities expand and contract together in a recurring, but not a periodic, fashion. In this section, we take a close look at the Burns and Mitchell definition of the business cycle to inform our look at trends in U.S. business cycles over time.

Business Cycle Illustration

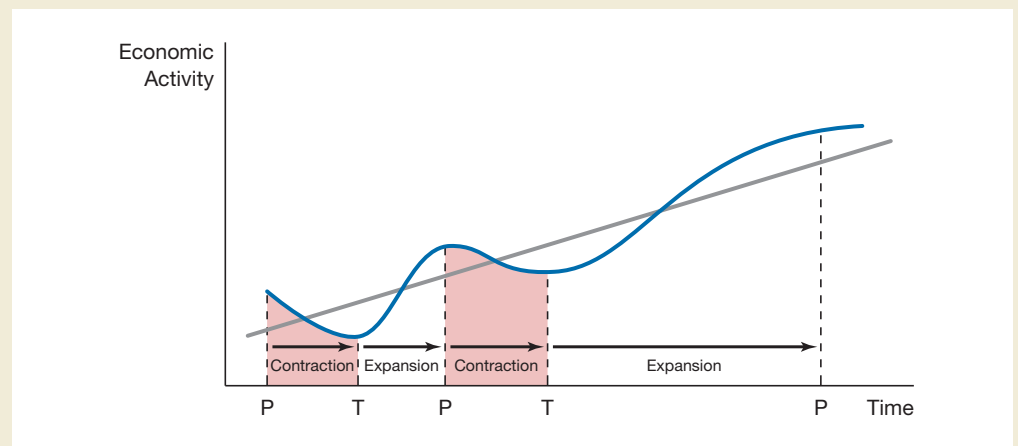
We illustrate the business cycle with a chart of economic activity over time in Figure 8.1. We mark the points on the horizontal axis where the wavy line reaches a **trough**, or low point of economic activity, with a *T*. Points marked with a *P* are the **peaks**, the high points of economic activity. The period from a trough *T* to a peak *P* is a **business cycle expansion** (also called a **boom**), while the period from a peak *P* to a trough *T* is a **business cycle contraction**. Economists often refer to business cycle contractions as recessions, which we defined in Chapter 1 as periods when economic activity declines and real GDP falls. A particularly severe business cycle contraction is a depression. The straight line in Figure 8.1 indicates the trend at which economic activity has grown over time.

As Burns and Mitchell pointed out, business cycles recur—that is, they happen over and over again—but not always at the same magnitude or intervals of the same length. The variability of economic cycles makes them challenging to forecast.

FIGURE 8.1

The Business Cycle

The heavy solid line shows the trend at which economic activity has been growing over time, while the thinner line shows actual aggregate economic activity. The peaks of the cycle are denoted by a *P* on the horizontal axis, and the troughs by a *T*. The period from a trough *T* to a peak *P* is marked as a business cycle expansion, while the period from a peak *P* to a trough *T* is marked as a contraction and is shaded. Note that expansions and contractions have different magnitudes and lengths.



¹Arthur Burns and Wesley Mitchell, *Measuring Business Cycles* (New York: National Bureau of Economic Research, 1946).



Dating Business Cycles

Ask a mechanic in the Bronx about the economy and he will tell you straight away whether it is good or bad, no charts or graphs necessary. Economists also determine the onset of a recession by relying on judgment, as well as economic analysis.

The general economic downturn that characterizes all recessions can surface in a variety of forms, from slipping industrial production to weak consumer spending. Recessions usually begin with lengthy periods of falling real GDP, but not always. During the 2001 recession, GDP never declined more than one quarter in a row. In the most recent recession, the economy deteriorated at least a year before GDP first fell in the final three months of 2008. As a result, the official arbiter of defining the peaks and troughs of the business cycle, the National Bureau of Economic

Research (NBER), dates the recession's onset as December 2007.

You may be surprised that the NBER is not a government agency—it is actually a private, not-for-profit organization. Burns and Mitchell wrote their book on business cycles as NBER employees. In their tradition, the bureau's Business Cycle Dating Committee examines data from a variety of economic activities.² Table 8.1, which we will refer to again, shows the official NBER business cycle dates starting in 1854.

²See the NBER website at www.nber.org/cycles/recessions.html for a member listing of the NBER Business Cycle Dating Committee and the criteria it uses for deciding on business cycle peaks and troughs. The NBER puts particular emphasis on the following data series in dating business cycles: 1) personal income in real terms, 2) employment, 3) industrial production, 4) retail and manufacturing sales, and 5) real GDP.

TABLE 8.1

NBER Business Cycle Dates	Expansion (months from trough to peak)		Contraction (months from peak to trough)	
	Trough	Peak	Trough	Peak
Dec. 1854	30	June 1857	18	
Dec. 1858	22	Oct. 1860	8	
June 1861	46 (Civil War)	Apr. 1865	32	
Dec. 1867	18	June 1869	18	
Dec. 1870	34	Oct. 1873	65	
Mar. 1879	36	Mar. 1882	38	
May 1885	22	Mar. 1887	13	
Apr. 1888	27	July 1890	10	
May 1891	20	Jan. 1893	17	
June 1894	18	Dec. 1895	18	
June 1897	24	June 1899	18	
Dec. 1900	21	Sept. 1902	23	
Aug. 1904	33	May 1907	13	
June 1908	19	Jan. 1910	24	
Jan. 1912	12	Jan. 1913	23	
Dec. 1914	44 (WWI)	Aug. 1918	7	
Mar. 1919	10	Jan. 1920	18	
July 1921	22	May 1923	14	
July 1924	27	Oct. 1926	13	
Nov. 1927	21	Aug. 1929	43 (Depression)	
Mar. 1933	50	May 1937	13 (Depression)	
June 1938	80 (WWII)	Feb. 1945	8	
Oct. 1945	37	Nov. 1948	11	
Oct. 1949	45 (Korean War)	July 1953	10	
May 1954	39	Aug. 1957	8	
Apr. 1958	24	Apr. 1960	10	
Feb. 1961	106 (Vietnam War)	Dec. 1969	11	

Trough	Expansion (months from trough to peak)	Peak	Contraction (months from peak to trough)
Nov. 1970	36	Nov. 1973	16
Mar. 1975	58	Jan. 1980	6
July 1980	12	July 1981	16
Nov. 1982	92	July 1990	8
Mar. 1991	120	Mar. 2001	8
Nov. 2001	73	Dec. 2007	18
June 2009	—		—

Source: NBER Web site. www.nber.org/cycles/main.html

Co-Movement and Timing of Economic Variables

Many economic activities expand and contract together over time. This coincident movement, or co-movement, of individual economic variables is central to the Burns and Mitchell definition of a business cycle.

CO-MOVEMENT OF ECONOMIC VARIABLES. Economists use specific terms to describe the movement of variables over the business cycle. A **procyclical** economic variable moves up during expansions and down during contractions—that is, in the same direction as aggregate economic activity. In contrast, **countercyclical** economic variables move opposite to aggregate economic activity—that is, down during expansions and up during contractions. A variable is **acyclical** when its ups and downs do not consistently coincide with those of the business cycle.

TIMING OF VARIABLES. Economists also characterize macroeconomic variables by their timing relative to the business cycle. A **leading variable** reaches a peak or trough before the turning points of a business cycle. The turning points of a **lagging variable** occur after the business cycle changes course. A **coincident variable** reaches its peaks and troughs at the same time the business cycle reaches its peaks and troughs.

LEADING ECONOMIC INDICATORS. The timing and cyclicity of some economic variables make them useful gauges of the aggregate economy. A private economic research organization, the Conference Board, combines ten variables into an **index of leading indicators** that some economists use to forecast changes in the economy (see the Macroeconomics in the News box, “Leading Economic Indicators.”)

Macroeconomic Variables and the Business Cycle

We now look in detail at how the more prominent macroeconomic variables move over the business cycle. In later chapters, we will explore the sources of the cyclical fluctuations in these variables to construct a theory of business cycles.

Real GDP and Its Components

Real gross domestic product is such a broad measure of aggregate economic activity that it is sometimes viewed as a proxy for the business cycle itself. Figure 8.2 plots real GDP growth rates, annualized over four quarters, with shading indicating recession

MACROECONOMICS IN THE NEWS

Leading Economic Indicators

The Conference Board's monthly index of leading indicators has turned down before almost every recession, boosting its credibility as a forecasting tool for the business cycle. But there are some good reasons to question the index's predictive power.

For one, the Conference Board regularly revises the index when more accurate data becomes available, sometimes many months after the fact. The initial readings of the data that underlies the index do not predict recessions nearly as well as the revised data. Second,

Conference Board economists change components of the index over time, improving the index's historical record. A true test of the index's performance would use only *real-time* data available at the time—and such research shows that the index is far less accurate than the revised data would suggest at predicting recessions.*

*Francis Diebold and Glenn Rudebusch, "Forecasting Output with the Composite Leading Index: A Real-Time Analysis," *Journal of the American Statistical Association* (September 1991): 603–610.



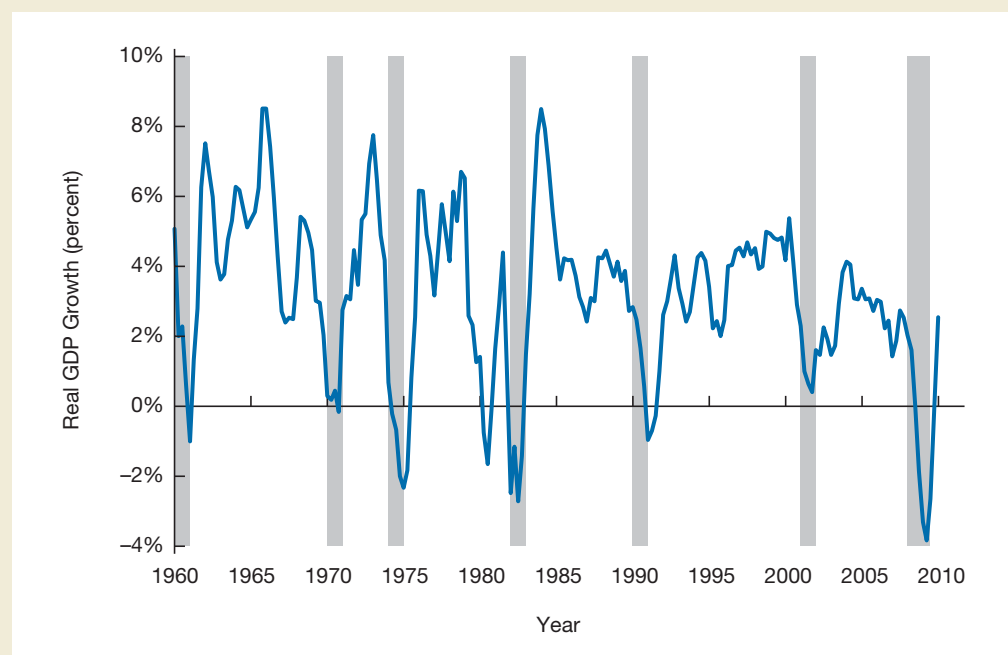
periods (peak to trough). Notice that the recessions of 1973–1975, 1981–1982, and the most recent 2007–2009 were the most severe in the post–World War II period. None of these rivals the Great Depression of 1929–1933 or the 1937–1938 recession in severity.

As you can see from Figure 8.3, two components of real GDP, real consumer spending and investment, are procyclical and coincident. Investment spending is far more

FIGURE 8.2

Real GDP Growth, 1960–2010

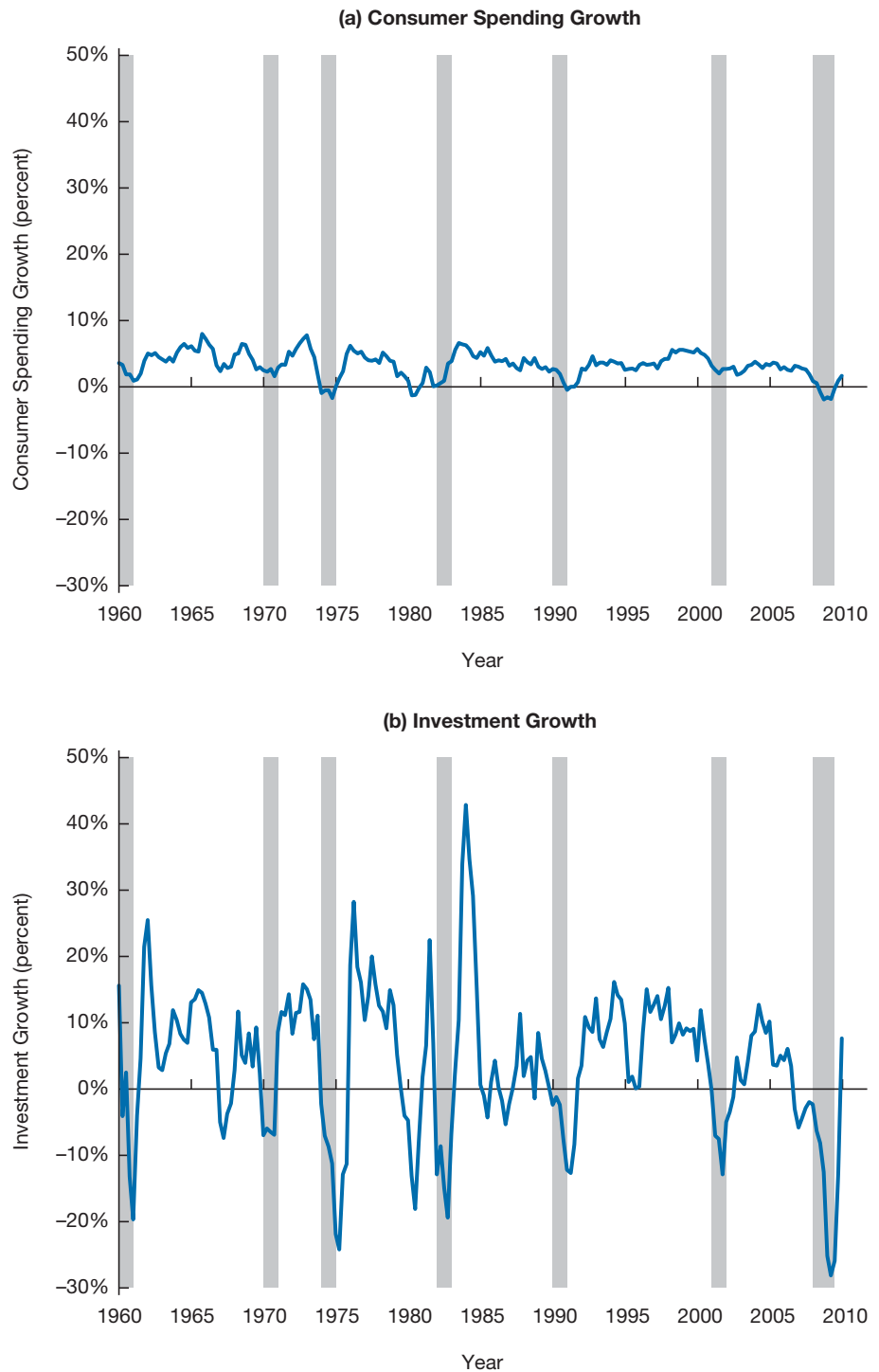
This figure shows the growth rate of GDP from four quarters earlier, with the recession periods (peak to trough) shaded. The recessions of 1973–1975, 1981–1982, and 2007–2009 are the most severe in the post–World War II period, with the recessions of 1960–1961, 1969–1970, 1990–1991, and 2001 much milder.



Source: Bureau of Economic Analysis. National Income and Product Accounts.
www.bea.gov/national/nipaweb/SelectTable.asp?Selected=N

FIGURE 8.3**Consumer Spending and Investment Growth, 1960–2010**

This figure shows the four-quarter growth rates of real consumer spending and investment. (Shaded areas denote recessions.) Both consumer spending (panel a) and investment (panel b) are highly procyclical and coincident variables, but investment is much more volatile than consumer spending.



Source: Bureau of Economic Analysis. www.bea.gov/national/nipaweb/SelectTable.asp?Selected=N

volatile than consumer spending. Investment has always declined in recessions, sometimes by as much as 25%. Meanwhile, consumer spending still grew during the 1969–1970 and the 2001 recessions, though it fell sharply in the 2007–2009 recession.

Unemployment

In recessions, firms hire fewer workers and lay off those they already employ. Not surprisingly, the unemployment rate is highly countercyclical, as Figure 8.4 demonstrates. Since it is not completely clear whether the unemployment rate leads or lags the business cycle, the Conference Board is unwilling to classify its timing.

Inflation

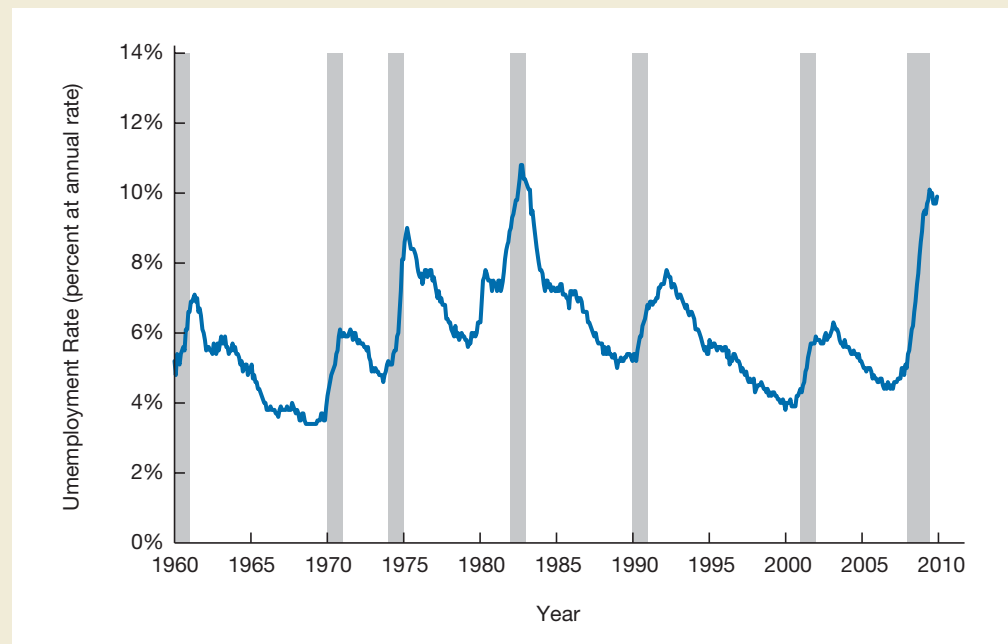
The rate of increase in the price level usually increases during expansions and falls during recessions, making inflation a procyclical variable, as we see in Figure 8.5. However, the inflation rate is lagging—it keeps rising for a time after the peak of the business cycle and falls for a time after the recession is over.

Financial Variables

Financial assets like stocks and bonds also tend to move with the business cycle. Perhaps the best-known financial variable is the stock market (Figure 8.6), which tends to top out before the business cycle's peak and begin to rise before the economy emerges from recession. Of course, falling stock values don't always mean that a recession is on its way. As Nobel Prize-winning economist Paul Samuelson famously quipped, "Wall Street indexes predicted nine of the last five recessions."³

FIGURE 8.4
Unemployment
Rate, 1960–2010

The shaded areas showing recessions indicate that the unemployment rate is highly countercyclical.

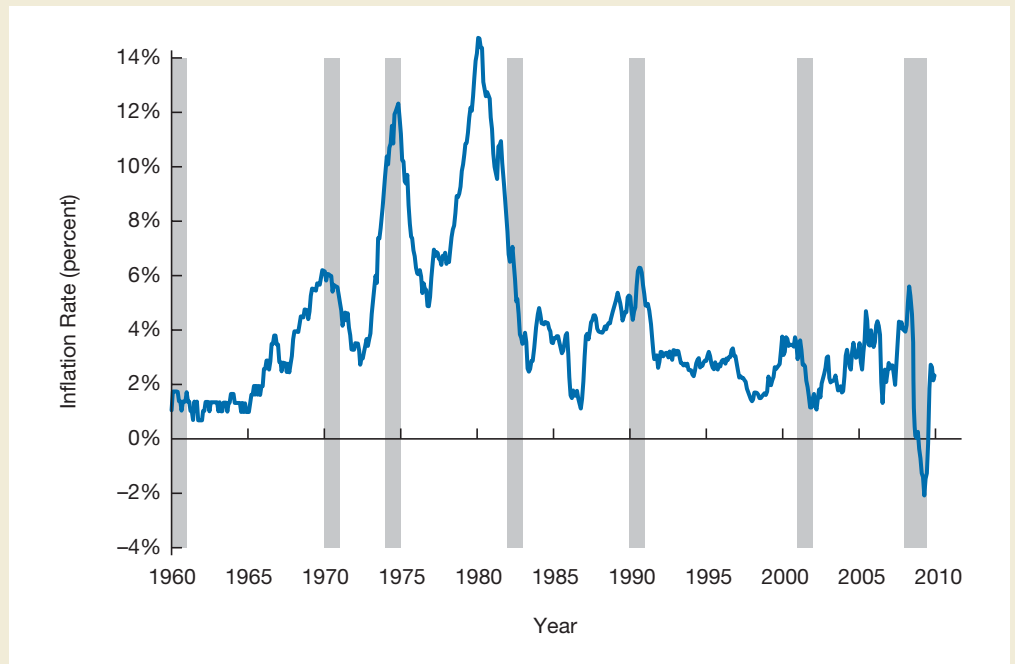


Source: Bureau of Labor Statistics. <http://data.bls.gov/cgi-bin/surveymost?ln>

³*Newsweek*, September 19, 1966.

FIGURE 8.5**Inflation,
1960–2010**

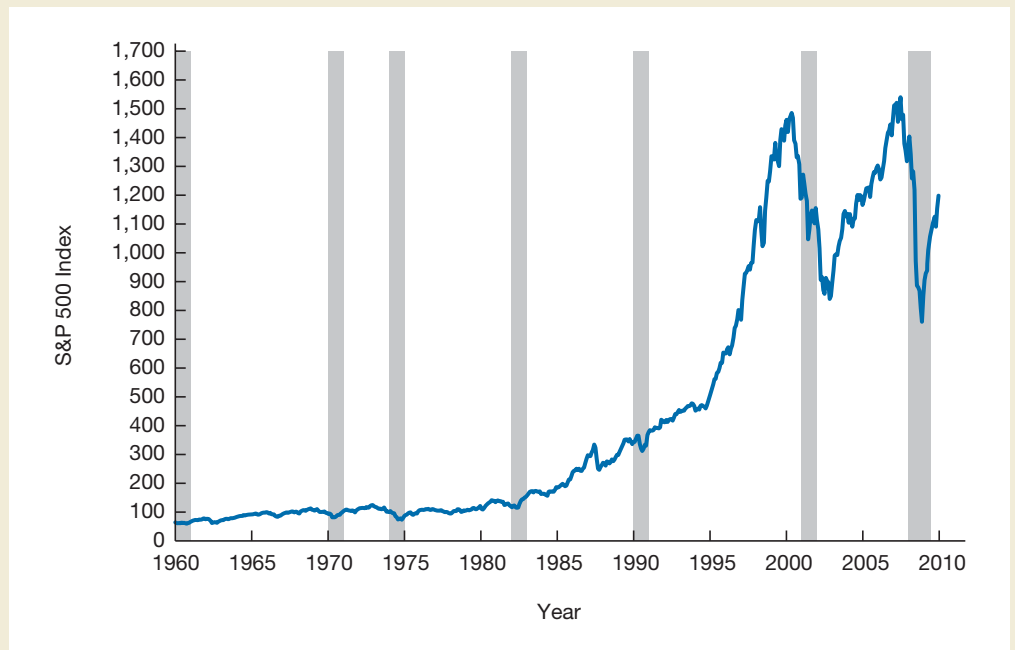
The shaded areas showing recessions indicate that inflation is a procyclical and lagging variable.



Source: Bureau of Labor Statistics. <http://data.bls.gov/cgi-bin/surveymost?cu>

FIGURE 8.6**Stock Prices,
1960–2010**

The shaded areas showing recessions indicate that stock prices (S&P 500 Index) are procyclical and leading.



Source: Yahoo Finance. <http://finance.yahoo.com/q/hp?s=%5EGSPC>

The rate of interest paid on short-term U.S. government bonds, known as Treasury bills, is both procyclical and leading, as shown in Figure 8.7. Economists also look at spreads, or the difference between two interest rates, for clues to the business cycle. In panel (a) of Figure 8.8, the spread between long-term and short-term government bonds is leading and procyclical, and a good predictor of recessions. Panel (b) shows the spread between interest rates on corporate bonds and government bonds. Since companies sometimes run out of money and stop paying interest, investors usually demand higher interest rates for corporate bonds than on government-issued bonds. When the economy is weaker and companies are more likely to run out of money, the spread between the rates paid on corporate bonds and government bonds rises dramatically. This is why we see a rise in this spread during recessions in panel (b).

International Business Cycles

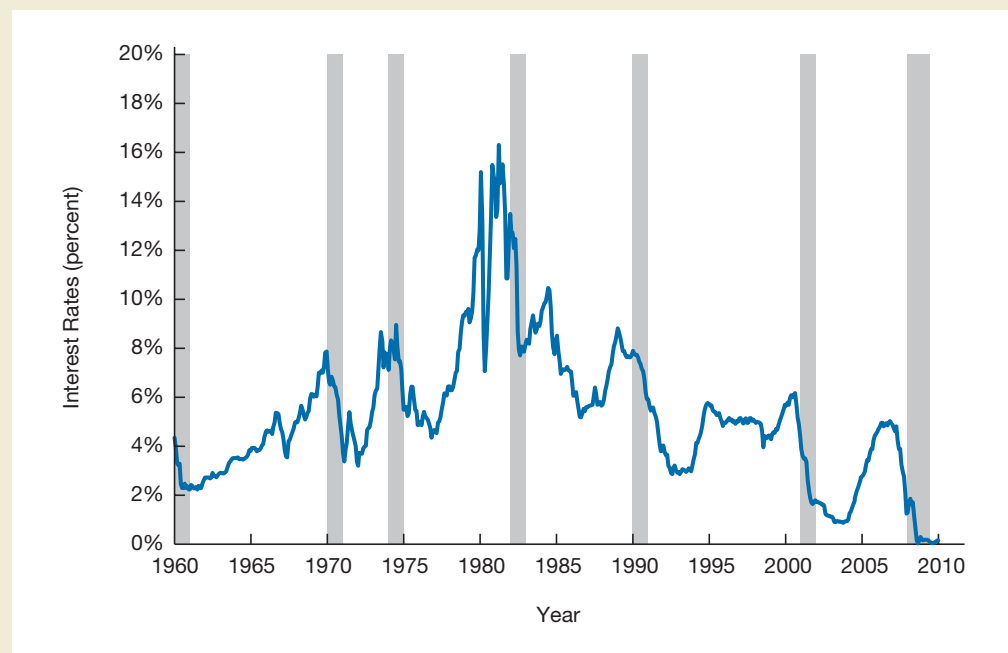
In a heavily globalized economy, the fate of one economy is often intertwined with that of another. When a large economy like the United States is booming, demand for foreign products increases, causing foreign economies to boom as well. It is not surprising then that business cycle fluctuations in the rest of the world are correlated with those in the United States, the largest economy in the world, as Figure 8.9 demonstrates.

For a time, however, some economies, notably China, grew just as fast even when the U.S. economy slowed. Some economists started to talk about a decoupling of business cycles. The recession of 2007–2009, however, spread throughout the world and diminished talk of decoupling.

FIGURE 8.7

Interest Rates on U.S. Treasury Bills, 1960–2010

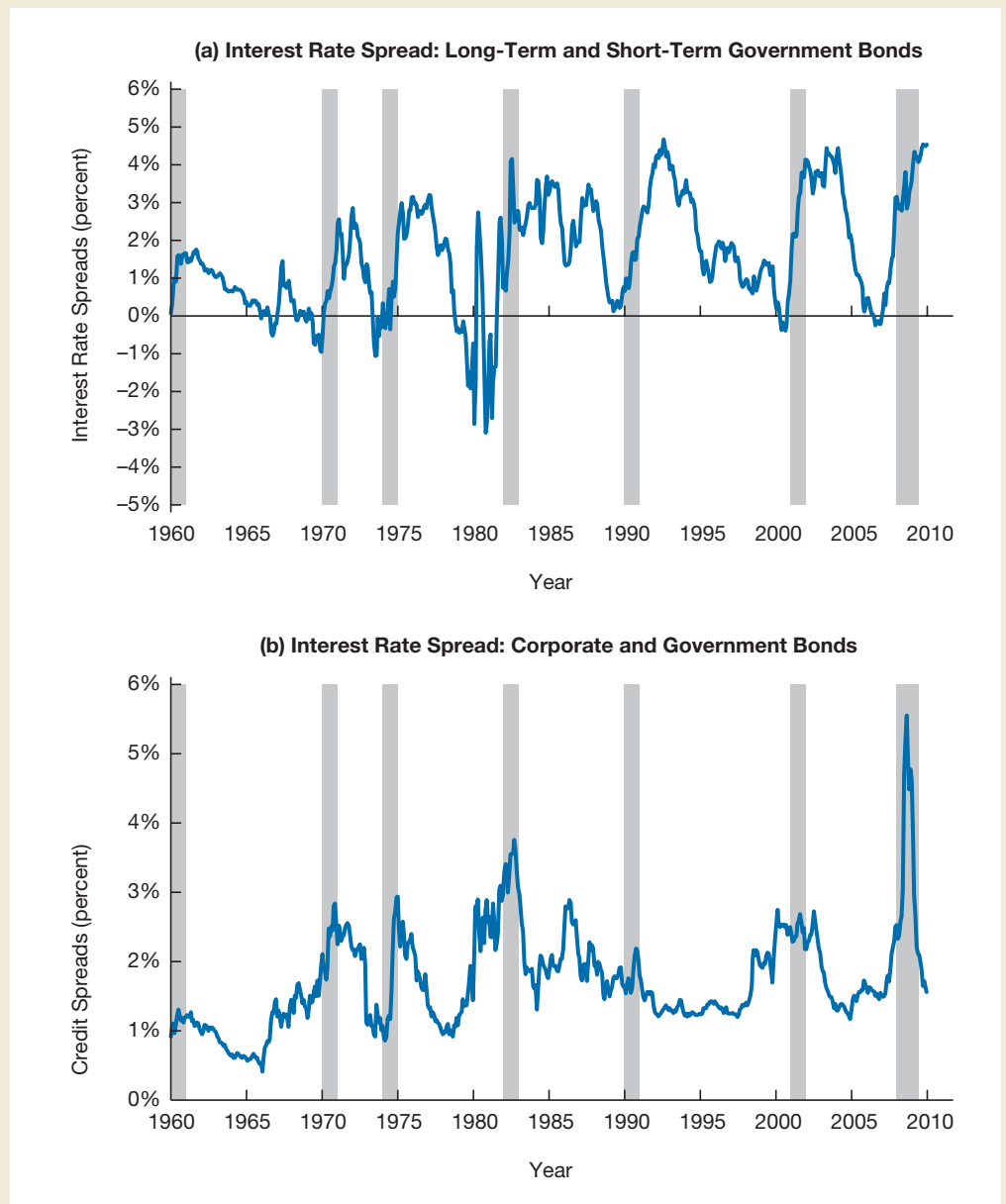
Interest rates (three-month Treasury bill rate) are procyclical and lagging. (Shaded areas represent recessions.)



Source: FRED, Federal Reserve Economic Data, Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis; <http://research.stlouisfed.org/fred2/categories/22>; accessed September 30, 2010.

FIGURE 8.8
Credit Spreads and Spreads Between Long and Short-Term Bonds, 1960–2010

The spread between long- and short-term government bonds in panel (a) is a procyclical and leading variable, while the credit spread (the spread between interest rates on corporate bonds and government bonds) in panel (b) is countercyclical and coincident. The shaded areas in both graphs represent recessions.

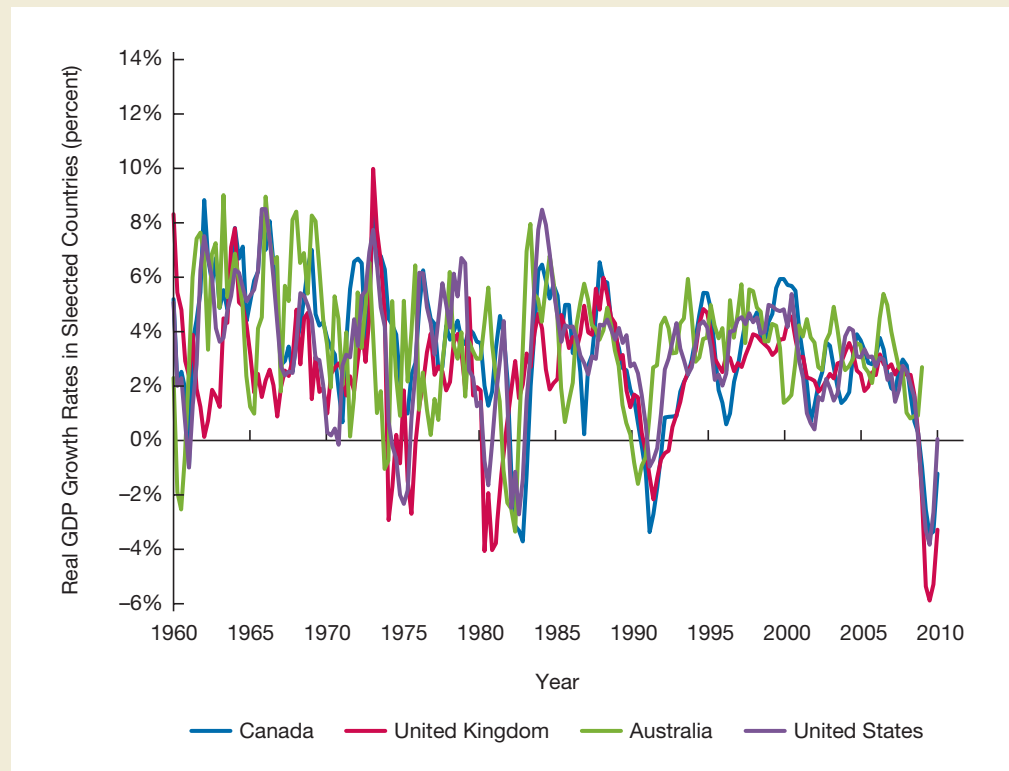


Source: FRED, Federal Reserve Economic Data, Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis; <http://research.stlouisfed.org/fred2/categories/22>; accessed September 30, 2010.

Financial markets throughout the world have also become more integrated over time. Financial disruptions that start in one economy frequently spill over to another. This is exactly what happened in the fall of 2008, when the Lehman Brothers bankruptcy in the United States led to a global financial crisis, with stock prices crashing worldwide and credit spreads rising sharply. The spread of financial disruptions across borders provides another reason why business cycles are correlated across countries. When financial market conditions deteriorate simultaneously in many countries, the negative shock to their economies leads to simultaneous economic contractions.

FIGURE 8.9**International Business Cycles, 1960–2010**

The graph shows four-quarter real GDP growth rates. Business cycles in different countries generally move together.



Source: International Monetary Fund. International Financial Statistics. <http://www.imfstatistics.org/imf/>

A Brief History of U.S. Business Cycles

The severity of the 2007–2009 recession jarred the U.S. psyche and raised questions about the standing of the United States as a role model for the world. The “American Century,” in which the U.S. economy dominated the globe, may be over.

To put the current business cycle episode in perspective, let’s take a tour of U.S. business cycles over the past 150 years. We will refer back to the high-level view of the economy since 1890, shown in Figure 8.10, which illustrates annual real GDP growth, the unemployment rate, and the inflation rate. We will also refer to the NBER’s record of expansions and recessions in Table 8.1.

Pre–World War I

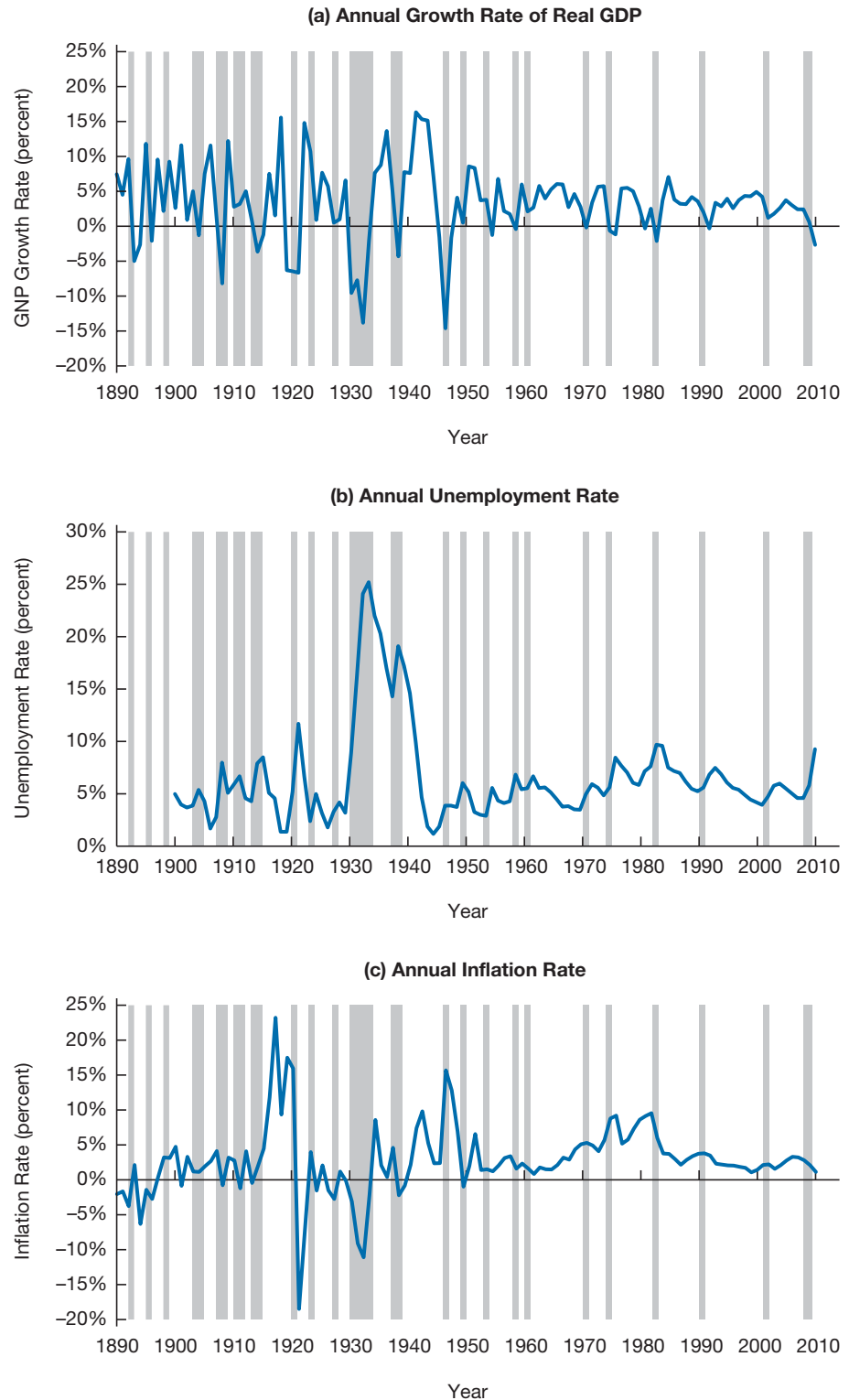
The United States had emerged as a global economic power by the start of World War I in 1914, but not without some battle scars from numerous business cycle downturns. The sixty-five-month contraction from October 1873 to March 1879 is the longest in U.S. history (see Table 8.1). The downturn, which many business cycle historians classify as a depression, began with the failure of a widely respected financial firm, Jay Cooke & Co. Asset prices collapsed and many banks and nonfinancial institutions went out of business. Price levels began falling and a period of deflation,

FIGURE 8.10**Business Cycles in the United States: A Long-Term Perspective, 1890–2009**

Panel (a) shows annual growth rates of real GDP, panel (b) shows the unemployment rate, and panel (c) shows the annual inflation rate.

Source: Balke, Nathan & Robert J. Gordon. 1986.

Appendix B historical data. In *The American business cycle: Continuity and change, 781–850*. National Bureau of Economic Research, Inc (1890–1983 period); and Bureau of Economic Analysis. National Income and Product Accounts. <http://www.bea.gov/national/nipaweb/SelectTable.asp?Selected=N>, U.S. Census Bureau, at <http://www2.census.gov/prod2/statcomp/documents/CT1970p1-05.pdf> and Bureau of Labor Statistics, at <http://data.bls.gov/cgi-bin/surveymost?In>



with zero or negative inflation rates, persisted for the remainder of the century.⁴ In 1893, a string of bank failures prompted a severe, seventeen-month recession that pushed unemployment rates above 15%. In 1907, a severe recession followed the failure of the Knickerbocker Trust Company, one of the largest financial institutions in New York. Congress responded to the 1907–1908 recession by creating the Federal Reserve System.

The Interwar Period and the Great Depression

A sharp, short recession after World War I, caused by the Federal Reserve’s monetary policy actions to halt inflation, lasted from 1920 to 1921 and pushed the unemployment rate above 10%. This period was followed by the “roaring 20s,” which were characterized by strong economic growth and very low inflation.

The end of the 1920s ushered in the most severe economic contraction in U.S. history, the Great Depression. **Bank failures**, which occur when banks cannot pay off depositors and other creditors and thus go out of business, led to a sharp contraction of the U.S. money supply as deposits were converted into currency and businesses found themselves without their accustomed sources of credit. In the end, GDP contracted over 25% and the unemployment rate surged to 25% (see Figure 8.10). An insidious deflation set in, sending the price level down by nearly 30%.

The Great Depression provides insight on how quickly the unemployment rate declines following a severe downturn. From 1933 to 1937, real GDP growth averaged a robust 9%, while the unemployment rate still lingered just shy of 15%. Another economic contraction began in May 1937, driving the unemployment rate back over 20%. Because the unemployment rate never really recovered during the decade, some economic historians consider the whole of the 1930s the Great Depression.

With the coming of World War II to Europe in 1939, the U.S. economy began to boom. The unemployment rate fell sharply to below 2% by the mid-1940s. Considering the 25% unemployment rate in the previous decade, it’s no mystery why many people of that generation associated wars with good economic times.

Post–World War II

The early years following World War II were good ones for the U.S. economy. From 1945 until 1973, the economy enjoyed high growth, generally low inflation, and mild recessions. All downturns lasted less than a year, and the unemployment rate never pierced 7%, as Figure 8.10 shows.

The 106-month expansion from February 1961 until December 1969, driven by wartime expansion, led some economists to declare the end of the business cycle. The expansion produced inflationary pressures that lifted the inflation rate through the early 1980s, peaking at over 14%, leading economists to call this period in the 1970s the **Great Inflation**. Growth slowed and the unemployment rate nudged higher. Recessions became more severe, and recoveries more mild. In the 1973–1975 recession, the quadrupling of oil prices effectively imposed a tax on the economy, sending the economy into a severe recession with an unemployment rate above 8%. New oil shocks

⁴The association of severe economic contractions with financial crises, large-scale disruption in financial markets characterized by sharp declines in asset prices and business failures, recurs throughout U.S. history. We will explore this subject further in Chapter 15.

returned the economy to recession from January 1980 to July 1981. After just twelve months of recovery, the shortest economic expansion cycle on record, the Federal Reserve tried to put an end to lingering, double-digit inflation rates by boosting the **federal funds rate** (the interest rate charged on overnight loans between banks) to double-digit levels. The tightening of interest rates drove the country into what was then the most severe recession since World War II, with the unemployment rate rising above 10%.

The “Great Moderation”

The period of 1984 to 2007 saw only two recessions: one from July 1990 to March 1991, the other from March 2001 to November 2001. Both were only eight months in duration, among the shortest on record (refer back to Table 8.1). Furthermore, the 120-month expansion from March 1991 to March 2001 was the longest in U.S. history. The volatility of real GDP and its components, as well as in inflation, declined both in the United States and abroad, and the period became known as the **Great Moderation**. James Stock of Harvard University and Mark Watson of Princeton University observed that volatility (measured by the standard deviation) fell by 20–40% for many U.S. variables, with a decline of 33% for real GDP and 50% for inflation.⁵ Economists and media commentators alike declared a new era of stability.

The Great Recession of 2007–2009

The Great Moderation period came to an abrupt halt when a financial crisis sparked by defaults on subprime mortgage loans, mortgage loans made to borrowers with poor credit records, struck in August 2007, leading to a record decline of over \$11 trillion in U.S. household wealth in 2008. The unemployment rate climbed by more than five percentage points, from 4.5% in the first quarter of 2007 to 10% in the fourth quarter of 2009. (In the 1981–1982 recession, the unemployment rate increased by a little over three percentage points from 7.4% to 10.7%.) The 2007–2009 recession, the most severe since World War II, pales in comparison with the Great Depression—but it made clear that the business cycle will remain a front-burner concern for economists and policy makers.

We will examine the causes of the Great Recession of 2007–2009 and the effects of policy makers’ response later in this book.

Time Horizons in Macroeconomics

The study of business cycles focuses on short-run economic fluctuations like the ones we have just been describing. What happens to the economy in the long run, that is, over much longer time horizons, further informs our study of business cycles. We now preview the differences between the short and long runs and the models that economists use based on the weight they place on each period in impacting the economy’s overall performance.

⁵James Stock and Mark Watson, “Has the Business Cycle Changed and Why?” *NBER Macroeconomics Annual* (Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press, 2002), 159–218.

Keynesian and Classical Views on Economic Fluctuations

John Maynard Keynes was a great economist who carved out macroeconomics as a distinct field in the 1930s. He questioned the prevailing (*classical*) view that economies moved quickly to their long-run equilibriums when conditions changed. Short-run economic fluctuations, he argued, should be the primary focus of macroeconomists, since it takes a long time to get to the long run. Keynes summed up this idea brilliantly in a widely quoted (and often misunderstood) line: “In the long run, we are all dead.”

Keynes and his followers, who are known as **Keynesians**, argue that the government should pursue active policies to stabilize economic fluctuations. Other economists, often referred to as *classicals*, maintain that the economy moves to the long run quite quickly. For example, as we have seen in Chapter 5, classicals believe that a rise in the quantity of money leads to an immediate rise in the price level, but not to an expansion in economic activity. They therefore believe that the government should focus on policies that promote high long-run economic growth, such as keeping inflation low. Keynesians have also come to realize that what happens in the long run is still very important: even if the long run takes a fairly long time to happen, over many years, the average rate of economic growth has an enormous effect on the well-being of citizens of a nation.

The Short Run Versus the Long Run

How does the short run differ from the long run? Economists make this distinction by focusing on the difference in the behavior of prices over the short and long runs in response to changing economic conditions. In the long run, prices of goods and services as well as the price of labor (wages) adjust all the way to their long-run equilibrium where supply equals demand, so we describe them as completely *flexible*. Economists who believe that prices adjust quickly to their long-run equilibria prefer to analyze macroeconomic issues with **classical models** developed in Parts 2 and 3 of the book, which make use of a flexible-price framework. The flexible-price framework exhibits the *classical dichotomy*, discussed in Chapter 5, in which there is a total separation between real and nominal variables. Changes in nominal variables such as inflation and the money supply have no effect on real variables such as aggregate output (real GDP), real interest rates, saving or investment. Flexible price models that display the classical dichotomy determine aggregate output solely by the production function with given amounts of capital and labor, and determine the interest rate solely by the interaction of saving and investment.

Keynesian economists who focus on the short run observe that prices respond slowly to changes in supply and demand. They address the role of **sticky prices**, which adjust slowly over time to their long-run equilibrium, in their modeling. In the short run when prices have not adjusted to their long-run equilibrium, the classical dichotomy is no longer true. Monetary policy affects inflation and real variables, including aggregate output, the real interest rate, saving, and investment. We typically refer to models with slowly adjusting (sticky) prices as **Keynesian models**, because it was John Maynard Keynes who first developed macroeconomic models in which the classical dichotomy did not hold. As a point of reference, Table 8.2 compares the key distinguishing features of the economic models that focus on the long run versus the short run.

TABLE 8.2

Long-Run Versus Short-Run Models

	Long-Run Models	Short-Run Models
Prices	Flexible, adjust quickly to long-run equilibrium	Sticky, adjust slowly to long-run equilibrium
Model Type	Classical	Keynesian
Relation of Real and Nominal Variables	Total separation with classical dichotomy	Classical dichotomy does not hold
Model Elements	Production function with a given amount of capital and labor determines aggregate output; interest rate determined by the interaction of saving and investment	Monetary policy affects real variables (aggregate output, the real interest rate, saving, and investment)
Policy Focus	Economic growth	Stabilizing fluctuations in real GDP and unemployment rates
Core Chapters in This Book	3–7	9–13

Price Stickiness

To understand why price stickiness occurs, we first need to look at market structure and contrast two views of how markets operate: *perfect competition* and *monopolistic competition*. We will then examine sources of price stickiness and empirical evidence on their impact.

Perfect Competition Versus Monopolistic Competition

In classical models, which include the traditional supply and demand analysis you have seen in other economics courses, we assume that economic actors are price takers whose only decision is how much to buy or sell. Further, we assume that they are purchasing standardized products such as a commonly traded type of soybean or a financial instrument like a U.S. Treasury bond. Suppose a seller tries to charge a little more than a competitor for his soybeans, or a buyer seeks a Treasury bill for less than the market price. Both are likely to be shut out of the marketplace because the equilibrium price prevails. There is **perfect competition** in markets where buyers and sellers are price takers.

Most goods and services are, however, not standardized. Firms typically have some *market (monopoly) power* in either buying or selling. A market is characterized by **monopolistic competition** when firms set prices, even if there is substantial competition in their market. Many economists, especially Keynesians, focus on the importance of monopoly power. For example, the market for laptop computers is highly competitive, but computer manufacturers still have substantial market power. If Dell raises the price of its laptops above those of Hewlett-Packard, you might decide to switch to a HP, but many other consumers will stick with Dell because they like some particular features on Dell laptops.

Sources of Price Stickiness

Why does a company like Dell in a monopolistically competitive market keep its prices fixed for a period of time even when market conditions change? To answer this question, we will now address the sources of price stickiness.

MENU COSTS. **Menu costs**, the costs a firm bears when it changes the price of its goods, are one source of price stickiness. This cost of adjusting prices received its name because of the cost a restaurant incurs when it changes prices and has to print a new menu. Menu costs, however, are far more general: managers must draw up new guidelines to sales people, advertise the new prices to customers, and re-mark prices of goods on shelves and shelf labels. Menu costs are an important source of price stickiness for several reasons:

1. Changing prices is a complex process that involves many hidden costs.
2. Collecting information is costly, so firms and households may engage in **rational inattention** by only making decisions about prices at infrequent intervals because it is rational for them to do so given the time and effort that is required to make these decisions. Firms may only review pricing conditions a few times a year, and households may not immediately notice a price reduction, making firms less likely to cut prices in the first place.
3. Changing prices frequently may alienate customers. If your grocer's fluctuating prices make it difficult to budget your expenses for the week, for instance, you might switch to a different store.

At first glance, menu costs appear to be very small. After all, with modern computers, printing out new menus is relatively cheap nowadays. However, a fascinating study of menu costs in several large supermarket chains illustrates the complexity and magnitude of menu costs.⁶ For the average store, menu costs were substantial: \$105,000 per year, which was 0.70% of an average store's revenue and 35% of its net profits.

Even small menu costs can lead to substantial price stickiness. If Dell sets the price of its laptops a little bit too high in a monopolistically competitive market, it will eventually lose market share to rivals. But for a short period, demand will hardly change, and any benefits to reducing the price will be outweighed by even minimal menu costs. Contrast this outcome with a perfectly competitive market. If, for example, a farmer sets a price for his or her soybeans that is ten cents a bushel too high, the farmer will immediately find that almost no one will buy them and he or she will be forced to store the soybeans at a high cost. The soybean farmer will have to adjust his or her prices immediately when market conditions change, so soybean prices will be completely flexible.

Also, small menu costs also may lead to price stickiness in the face of macroeconomic shocks, even if there is little price stickiness when the shocks come from changes in individual product markets. Dell might respond very quickly to changes in the computer market—say the introduction of a sleeker computer from Apple—but it will not alter its prices quickly when there is a shift in monetary policy. The impact of monetary policy on the demand for Dell products is subtle and won't be nearly as large as what happens in its own market.

⁶Daniel Levy, Mark Bergen, Shantanu Dutta, and Robert Venable, "The Magnitude of Menu Costs: Direct Evidence from Large Supermarket Chains," *Quarterly Journal of Economics* 112 (August 1997): 791–825.

STAGGERED PRICE SETTING. Another source of price stickiness is the phenomenon of **staggered price setting**, when competitors adjust prices at different intervals. Even if demand suddenly rises for new computers, Dell won't raise prices on January 1 if it knows that HP doesn't update its prices until January 15. Then, on January 15, HP might hesitate to raise prices if it knows Dell won't raise its prices until February 1. Prices of computers adjust more slowly with staggered pricing than with synchronized pricing decisions. Staggered prices thus slow down price adjustment and increase the stickiness of prices.

Empirical Evidence on Price Stickiness

Empirical evidence tends to indicate substantial price stickiness in markets. A study by Alan Blinder of Princeton University, for example, asked firms how often they set prices. Blinder found that only 10% of firms changed their prices as often as once a week, while close to 40% changed prices once a year and 10% less than once a year.⁷ Other approaches study actual price changes. Stephen Cecchetti, now of the Bank for International Settlements, found that magazine prices changed very infrequently in response to inflation: with 4% inflation, magazines on average changed their price every six years.⁸ Even more remarkable was that the price of Coca-Cola remained five cents a bottle for over seventy years.⁹

However, not all research indicates prices are sticky. Mark Bills of the University of Rochester and Peter Klenow of Stanford University found that the average time between price changes of 350 categories of goods was just 4.3 months, a far shorter period than the research by Alan Blinder and Stephen Cecchetti indicated.¹⁰ However, even these more frequent price changes do not rule out price stickiness with regard to macroeconomic shocks. Jean Boivin of the Bank of Canada, Marc Giannoni of Columbia University, and Ilian Mihov of INSEAD, for example, found that prices of goods are very sticky in response to monetary policy shocks, while these prices, in contrast, respond quickly to supply and demand shocks in individual markets that affect their prices relative to those on other goods.¹¹

Road Map for Our Study of Business Cycles

In the next four chapters, 9 to 12, we carefully build a basic model, the *aggregate demand-aggregate supply (AD/AS) model*, in which prices are sticky. We will use this basic model throughout the rest of this book to discuss business cycle fluctuations and answer many of the questions posed in this chapter.

⁷Alan S. Blinder, "On Sticky Prices: Academic Theories Meet the Real World," in *Monetary Policy*, ed. N.G. Mankiw (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1994), 117–154.

⁸Stephen G. Cecchetti, "The Frequency of Price Adjustment: A Study of the Newsstand Prices of Magazines," *Journal of Econometrics* 31 (1986): 255–274. Anil Kashyap, "Sticky Prices: New Evidence from Retail Catalogs," *Quarterly Journal of Economics* (February 1995): 245–274, finds similar evidence on the infrequency of price adjustments for individual items in retail catalogs.

⁹Daniel Levy and Andrew Young, "The Real Thing: Nominal Price Rigidity of the Nickel Coke, 1886–1959," *Journal of Money, Credit and Banking* 36 (2004): 765–799.

¹⁰Mark Bills and Peter Klenow, "Some Evidence on the Importance of Sticky Prices," *Journal of Political Economy* (October 2004): 947–985.

¹¹Jean Boivin, Marc Giannoni, and Ilian Mihov, "Sticky Prices and Monetary Policy: Evidence from Disaggregated U.S. Data," *American Economic Review* 99, no. 1 (2009): 350–384.

The initial discussion of the *AD/AS* model leaves out one important group of economic agents that play a prominent role in business cycle fluctuations: policy makers. We will bring policy makers into the *AD/AS* framework in Chapter 13 by discussing their objectives and policies and practices that stabilize economic fluctuations. We will also use the aggregate demand-aggregate supply model to examine how financial crises affect the business cycle in Chapter 15. We will further extend the aggregate demand-aggregate supply model in Chapters 21 and 22 to incorporate the role of expectations in macroeconomic policy and discuss modern business cycle theories, some of which are Keynesian because they assume prices are sticky, while others are more classical because they assume that prices adjust rapidly. Finally, the Epilogue wraps up our analysis by examining state-of-the-art thinking on business cycles and identifying where macroeconomists agree and disagree.

SUMMARY

1. Business cycles are fluctuations in aggregate economic activity in which many economic activities expand and contract together.
2. Over the business cycle, macroeconomic variables are either procyclical, countercyclical, or acyclical. They also are either leading, lagging, or coincident variables. During the period from 1984 to 2007, economic activity became less volatile, and this period has become known as the Great Moderation.
3. Business cycles have been a fact of life in the United States for the last 150 years. Although the recent recession from 2007 to 2009 is the most severe that has been experienced in the post–World War II period, there have been much larger and long-lived economic contractions in 1873, 1929–1933, and 1937–1938.
4. In the long run, prices in the economy are able to adjust all the way to equilibrium levels and are completely flexible. The short run differs from the long run because at least some prices are sticky, that is, they do not adjust immediately. Classical economists believe that the economy goes to the long run quickly and therefore advise that the government should focus on policies to promote economic growth, such as keeping inflation low. Keynesian economists believe that it takes a long time to get to the long run and so advocate active government policies to stabilize economic fluctuations.
5. Prices are sticky because there is monopolistic competition in which firms have some market (monopoly) power in either buying or selling that enables them to set prices, even if there is substantial competition in their market. Prices are slow to adjust either because of menu costs or staggered price setting.

KEY TERMS

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| acyclical, p. 203 | federal funds rate, p. 213 | monopolistic competition, p. 215 |
| bank failures, p. 212 | Great Inflation, p. 212 | peaks, p. 201 |
| boom, p. 201 | Great Moderation, p. 213 | perfect competition, p. 215 |
| business cycles, p. 201 | index of leading indicators, p. 203 | procyclical, p. 203 |
| business cycle contraction, p. 201 | Keynesian models, p. 214 | rational inattention, p. 216 |
| business cycle expansion, p. 201 | Keynesians, p. 214 | staggered price setting, p. 217 |
| classical models, p. 214 | lagging variable, p. 203 | sticky prices, p. 214 |
| coincident variable, p. 203 | leading variable, p. 203 | troughs, p. 201 |
| countercyclical, p. 203 | menu costs, p. 216 | |

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Business Cycle Basics

1. What are business cycles? What are the four parts of a business cycle?

Macroeconomic Variables and the Business Cycle

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Distinguish between procyclical and countercyclical economic variables. 3. Distinguish between leading, lagging, and coincident economic variables. 4. Classify the following economic variables as procyclical or countercyclical and as leading, lagging, or coincident variables: real consumer | <p>spending, real investment spending, unemployment, inflation, S&P 500 Index, spread between long- and short-term interest rates on U.S. government bonds, and spread between interest rates on corporate bonds and government bonds.</p> |
|---|--|

A Brief History of U.S. Business Cycles

5. What were the “Great Inflation” and the “Great Moderation”?

Time Horizons in Macroeconomics

- | | |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6. How do macroeconomists distinguish between flexible and sticky prices and wages? 7. What is the difference between the short run and the long run in macroeconomic analysis? Why do macroeconomists differentiate between the two time horizons? | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 8. How do Keynesian views on macroeconomic fluctuations differ from those of classical macroeconomists? |
|--|---|

Price Stickiness

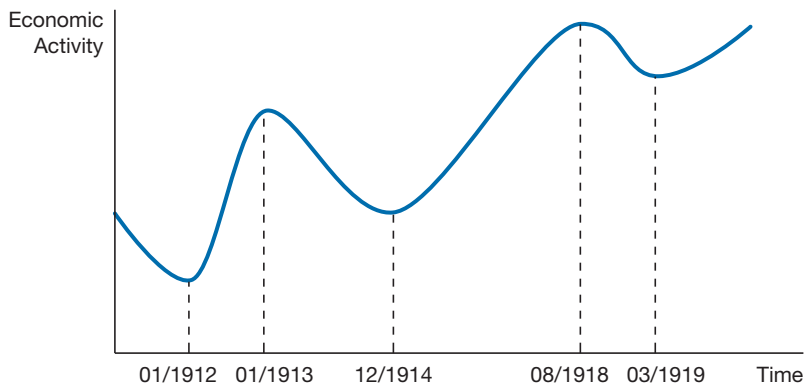
- | | |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 9. How do conflicting views of market structure influence the ideas of classical and Keynesian macroeconomists regarding price and wage | <p>flexibility and how quickly the economy adjusts to long-run equilibrium?</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 10. How do menu costs contribute to sticky prices? |
|---|--|

PROBLEMS

All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Business Cycle Basics

1. Using the accompanying graph, measure the following:
 - a) Expansions (in months from trough to peak)
 - b) Contractions (in months from peak to trough)



2. Discuss the following statement: “Real GDP has decreased for two quarters in a row; we definitely are living through a contraction.”
3. The NBER Business Cycle Dating Committee stated that the U.S. economy entered a recession in December 2007. The S&P/Case-Shiller Home Price Index (a widely used measure of home prices) shows an increase from January 2000 to April 2006. Since then, home prices decreased until May 2009. According to this information
 - a) are home prices a countercyclical, acyclical, or procyclical variable?
 - b) are home prices a leading, lagging, or coincident indicator?
4. Consider the information given in the following table to answer the following questions. Assume the business cycle is entirely determined by changes in real GDP:
 - a) Identify the peak and trough during this period.
 - b) Comment on the timing of the inflation rate and the stock prices index.
5. Refer to the data provided in Problem 4 to answer the following questions:
 - a) Plot real GDP and the stock price index on the same graph.
 - b) Plot the unemployment and inflation rates on the same graph.
 - c) Considering real GDP and the unemployment rate, when would you say that the economy reached its trough? Explain why.
 - d) Considering these four indicators, would you agree that it is possible to determine the business cycle by measuring changes in only one indicator?

Date	Real GDP (billions of \$)	Unemployment (%)	Inflation (%)	Stock Prices Index
January	10,100	4.5	3.4	8,800
February	10,500	4.7	3.6	8,400
March	9,850	5.2	3.8	8,000
April	9,250	5.9	4	8,600
May	9,950	6.3	3.7	9,300
June	11,200	6.1	3.5	10,100

Macroeconomic Variables and the Business Cycle

6. For the variables, real GDP, consumer spending, investment, unemployment, inflation, stock prices, interest rates, and credit spreads, categorize which are procyclical, counter-cyclical, and acyclical, and which are leading, lagging, and coincident.

A Brief History of U.S. Business Cycles

7. Using Table 8.1 (NBER business cycles), identify the longest and shortest expansion and contraction in the United States from December 1854 to November 2001. What are your thoughts about the periodicity and persistence of U.S. business cycles?

Time Horizons in Macroeconomics

8. Discuss the following statement: “When Keynes stated that ‘in the long run, we are all dead’ he meant that we should only focus in the short run and not pay attention to any long-run consequence of our actions, since we will be dead by then and we therefore should not care.”

Price Stickiness

9. For each of the following products, state if they are sold in a perfectly competitive market or in a monopolistically competitive market:
- Dairy products (e.g., milk, cheese, etc.)
 - Cars
10. Suppose that in a given economy all goods and services produced are sold in perfectly competitive markets. Would you represent this economy using the classical or Keynesian approach? Explain why.
11. Do you think that the hourly wage (i.e., the price of labor) is a relatively flexible or a relatively sticky price? Explain why.



myeconlab

MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.



9

The *IS* Curve

Preview

Before the Great Depression, most economists believed in the classical models we discussed in Parts 2 and 3 of this book in which aggregate output, even in the short run, is determined by how much the economy could produce with a given amount of capital and labor. The Great Depression challenged the validity of these classical models: the amount of capital and labor did not change very much yet aggregate output fell precipitously, by 30%, with the unemployment rate rising to 25%. To explain why output fell so dramatically in the Great Depression, John Maynard Keynes—in his revolutionary book, *The General Theory of Employment, Interest, and Money*, published in 1936—presented a new concept: *aggregate demand*, the total amount of output demanded in the economy. He argued that short-run changes in aggregate output, such as the decline during the Great Depression, were determined by changes in aggregate demand. The concept of aggregate demand is a central element in the *aggregate demand-aggregate supply (AD/AS) model*, the basic macroeconomic model for explaining short-run fluctuations in aggregate output that we will build in Chapters 9–12.

In this chapter, we develop the first building block to understand aggregate demand, the *IS curve*, which describes the relationship between real interest rates and aggregate output when the market for goods and services (more simply referred to as the *goods market*) is in equilibrium. We begin by deriving the *IS* curve and then go on to explain what factors cause the *IS* curve to shift. With our understanding of the *IS* curve, we can examine why the economic contraction during the Great Depression was so deep and how the fiscal stimulus package of 2009 affected the economy. Then in later chapters, we make use of the *IS* curve to understand the role of monetary and fiscal policy in economic fluctuations.

Planned Expenditure

We start our analysis by discussing the concept of **planned expenditure**, the total amount of spending on domestically produced goods and services that households, businesses, the government, and foreigners want to make. In contrast, *actual expenditure* is the amount that they actually do spend, which equals the total amount of output produced in the economy. Keynes viewed **aggregate demand**, the total amount of output demanded in the economy, as being the same as planned expenditure. As we shall see shortly, planned expenditure explains the level of aggregate output when the goods market is in equilibrium, that is, when the planned expenditure on goods and services is equal to the actual amount of goods and services produced.

The total amount of planned expenditure (aggregate demand) is the sum of four types of spending:

1. **Consumption expenditure** (C), the total demand for consumer goods and services (e.g., hamburgers, iPods, rock concerts, visits to the doctor, etc.)
2. **Planned investment spending** (I), the total planned spending by businesses on new physical capital (e.g., machines, computers, factories) plus planned spending on new homes
3. **Government purchases** (G), the spending by all levels of government on goods and services (e.g., aircraft carriers, government workers, red tape), not including transfer payments
4. **Net exports** (NX), the net foreign spending on domestic goods and services, equal to exports minus imports

We represent the total planned expenditure (Y^{pe}) with the following equation:

$$Y^{pe} = C + I + G + NX \quad (1)$$

The Components of Expenditure

To understand what determines total planned expenditure in the economy, let's look at each of its components in detail.

Consumption Expenditure

What determines how much you spend on consumer goods and services? Your income is likely the most important factor; if your income rises, you will be willing to spend more. Keynes reasoned similarly that consumption expenditure is related to **disposable income**, the total income available for spending, equal to aggregate income (which, as we saw in Chapter 2, is equivalent to aggregate output Y) minus taxes T , $(Y - T)$.¹

CONSUMPTION FUNCTION. Keynes called the relationship between disposable income Y_D and consumption expenditure C the **consumption function** and expressed it as follows:

$$C = \bar{C} + mpc \times Y_D \quad (2)$$

¹More precisely, taxes T refers to taxes minus net transfers (government payments to households and businesses that are in effect negative taxes). Examples of government transfers are Social Security payments or unemployment insurance payments.

Or alternately,

$$C = \bar{C} + mpc \times (Y - T)$$

The term \bar{C} stands for **autonomous consumption expenditure**, the amount of consumption expenditure that is exogenous (independent of variables in the model, such as disposable income or interest rates). Autonomous consumption is related to consumers' optimism about their future income and household wealth, which induce consumers to increase spending (a topic we will discuss in detail in Chapter 18).

The term mpc , the **marginal propensity to consume**, reflects the change in consumption expenditure that results from an additional dollar of disposable income. Keynes assumed that mpc was a constant between the values of 0 and 1. If, for example, a \$1.00 increase in disposable income leads to an increase in consumption expenditure of \$0.60, then $mpc = 0.6$.

CONSUMPTION EXPENDITURE AND REAL INTEREST RATES. Keynes assumed that consumption expenditure is linearly related to income only. However, as we discuss in more detail in Chapter 18, consumption expenditure should also be negatively related to real interest rates: when the real interest rate is higher, the real return to saving is also higher, and so you will spend less.

We describe the resulting negative relationship between consumption expenditure and the real interest rate, r , by amending the consumption function as follows:

$$C = \bar{C} + mpc \times (Y - T) - cr \quad (3)$$

with c being a parameter that reflects how responsive consumption expenditure is to the real interest rate. Equation 3 says that consumption expenditure is made up of three components: autonomous consumption, the marginal propensity to consume times disposable income, and a term that indicates that how much consumption decreases in response to a rise in the real interest rate.

Planned Investment Spending

Investment spending is another key component of total expenditure. There are two types of investment: *fixed* and *inventory*.

FIXED INVESTMENT. **Fixed investment** is planned spending by firms on equipment (machines, computers, airplanes) and structures (factories, office buildings, shopping centers) and planned spending on new residential housing.

INVENTORY INVESTMENT. **Inventory investment** is spending by firms on additional holdings of raw materials, parts, and finished goods, calculated as the change in holdings of these items in a given time period—say, a year.

Inventory investment is a much smaller component of investment than fixed investment. We discuss it in detail at this juncture because it plays an important role in the determination of aggregate output. To illustrate, consider the following scenarios:

1. Suppose that Ford Motor Company has 100,000 cars sitting in its factory lots on December 31, 2012, ready to be shipped to dealers. If each car has a wholesale price of \$20,000, Ford has an inventory worth \$2 billion.

If by December 31, 2013, its inventory of cars has risen to 150,000 with a value of \$3 billion, its inventory investment in 2013 is \$1 billion, the *change* in the level of its inventory over the course of the year (\$3 billion minus \$2 billion).

2. Now suppose that by December 31, 2013, Ford's inventory of cars has dropped to 50,000 with a value of \$1 billion. Its inventory investment in 2013 is now negative \$1 billion, the *change* in the level of its inventory over the course of the year (\$1 billion minus \$2 billion).
3. Ford may also have additional inventory investment if the level of raw materials and parts that it is holding to produce these cars increases over the course of the year. If on December 31, 2012, it holds \$50 million of steel used to produce its cars and on December 31, 2013, it holds \$100 million, it has an additional \$50 million of inventory investment in 2013.

An important feature of inventory investment is that some inventory investment can be unplanned (in contrast, fixed investment is always planned). Suppose that the reason Ford finds itself with an additional \$1 billion of cars on December 31, 2013, is that \$1 billion less of its cars were sold in 2013 than expected. This \$1 billion of inventory investment in 2013 was unplanned. In this situation, Ford is producing more cars than it can sell, and it will cut production in order to keep from accumulating unsold goods. Adjusting production to eliminate unplanned inventory investment plays a key role in the determination of aggregate output, as we shall see.

PLANNED INVESTMENT SPENDING AND REAL INTEREST RATES. Planned investment spending, a component of planned expenditure, Y^{pe} , is equal to planned fixed investment plus the amount of inventory investment *planned* by firms. Keynes considered the level of the real interest rate a key determinant of planned investment spending.

To understand Keynes's reasoning, we need to recognize that businesses make investments in physical capital (machines and factories) as long as they expect to earn more from the physical capital than the interest cost of a loan to finance the investment. When the real interest rate is high, say, at 10%, fewer investments in physical capital will earn more than the 10% cost of borrowed funds, so planned investment spending will be low. When the real interest rate is low, say, 1%, many investments in physical capital will earn more than the 1% interest cost of borrowed funds. Therefore, when real interest rates and hence the cost of borrowing are low, business firms are more likely to undertake an investment in physical capital and planned investment spending will increase.²

Even if a company has surplus funds and does not need to borrow to undertake an investment in physical capital, its planned investment spending still will be affected by the real interest rate. Instead of investing in physical capital, it could purchase a security, such as a bond. If the real interest rate on this security is high, say, 10%, the opportunity cost (forgone interest earnings) of an investment is high. Planned investment spending will then be low, because the firm would probably prefer to purchase the security and earn the high 10% return than to invest in physical capital. As the real interest rate and the opportunity cost of investing fall, say, to 1%, planned investment spending will increase because investments in physical capital are likely to earn greater income for the firm than the measly 1% the security earns.

²We will examine models of investment in Chapter 19 and discuss in detail the link between real interest rates and investment.

PLANNED INVESTMENT AND BUSINESS EXPECTATIONS. Keynes also believed that planned investment spending is heavily influenced by business expectations about the future. Businesses that are optimistic about future profit opportunities are willing to spend more, while pessimistic businesses cut back their spending. Thus Keynes posited that there is a component of planned investment spending he called **autonomous investment**, \bar{I} , that is completely exogenous (unexplained by variables in his model such as output or interest rates).

Keynes believed that changes in autonomous spending are dominated by these unstable exogenous fluctuations in planned investment spending, which are influenced by emotional waves of optimism and pessimism—factors he labeled “**animal spirits.**” His view was colored by the collapse in investment spending during the Great Depression, which he saw as the primary reason for the economic contraction.

INVESTMENT FUNCTION. Combining Keynes’ two factors that drive investment leads to an investment function, which describes how planned investment spending is related to the real interest rate and autonomous investment. We write it as follows:

$$I = \bar{I} - dr \quad (4)$$

where d is a parameter reflecting how responsive investment is to the real interest rate. Equation 4 says that investment is positively related to business optimism, as represented by autonomous investment, and is negatively related to the real interest rate.

Net Exports

As with planned investment spending, we can think of net exports as being made up of two components, *autonomous net exports* and the part of net exports that is affected by changes in real interest rates.

REAL INTEREST RATES AND NET EXPORTS. Real interest rates influence the amount of net exports through the **exchange rate**, the price of one currency, say, the dollar, in terms of other currencies, say, the euro.³ We will examine a model that explains the link between the exchange rate and real interest rates in Chapter 17, but here we will outline the intuition. When U.S. real interest rates rise, U.S. dollar assets earn higher returns relative to foreign assets. People then want to hold more dollars and so they bid up the value of dollars and thereby increase its value relative to other currencies. Thus a rise in U.S. real interest rates leads to a higher value of the dollar.

A rise in the value of the dollar makes U.S. exports more expensive in foreign currencies so foreigners will buy less of them, thereby driving down net exports. It also makes foreign goods less expensive in terms of dollars, so U.S. imports will rise, also causing a decline in net exports. We therefore see that a rise in the real interest rate, which leads to a rise in the value of the dollar, in turn leads to a decline in net exports.

³If the government pegs the exchange rate to another currency so it is fixed, in what is called a *fixed exchange rate regime* (see Chapter 17), then real interest rates do not directly affect net exports as in Equation 5 and $NX = \bar{NX}$. Note also that a rise in income in the domestic economy leads to a rise in spending on imports and thus causes net exports to decline. Adding a response of net exports to domestic income, Y , or taking out the response of net exports to the real interest rates does not change the basic analysis in the chapter but does lead to a slightly different Equation 10 later in the chapter.

AUTONOMOUS NET EXPORTS. The amount of exports is also affected by the demand by foreigners for domestic goods, while the amount of imports is affected by the demand by domestic residents for foreign goods. For example, if the Chinese have a poor harvest and want to buy more U.S. wheat, U.S. exports will rise. If U.S. consumers discover how good Chilean wine is and want to buy more, then U.S. imports will rise. Thus we can think of net exports as being determined by real interest rates as well as by a component, **autonomous net exports**, \overline{NX} , which is the level of net exports that is treated as exogenous (outside the model).

NET EXPORT FUNCTION. Putting these two components of net exports together leads to a net export function:

$$NX = \overline{NX} - xr \quad (5)$$

where x is a parameter that indicates how net exports respond to the real interest rate. This equation tells us that net exports are positively related to autonomous net exports and are negatively related to the level of real interest rates.

Government Purchases and Taxes

Now we bring the government into the picture. The government affects planned expenditure in two ways: through its purchases and taxes.

FIXED LEVEL OF GOVERNMENT PURCHASES. As we saw in the planned expenditure Equation 1, government purchases adds directly to planned expenditure. Here we assume that government purchases are also exogenous and so just write government purchases as follows:

$$G = \overline{G} \quad (6)$$

which says that government purchases are set at a fixed amount \overline{G} .

TAXES. The government affects spending through taxes because, as we discussed earlier, disposable income is equal to income minus taxes, $Y - T$, and disposable income affects consumption expenditure. Higher taxes T reduce disposable income for a given level of income and hence cause consumption expenditure to fall. The tax laws in a country like the United States are very complicated, so to keep the model simple, we assume that government taxes are exogenous and are a fixed amount \overline{T} .⁴

$$T = \overline{T} \quad (7)$$

⁴For simplicity, we assume here that taxes are unrelated to income. However, because taxes increase with income, we can describe taxes with the following more realistic tax function:

$$T = tY$$

Using this equation instead of Equation 7 in the derivation of Equation 10 later in the chapter would lead to mpc being replaced by $mpc(1 - t)$ in Equation 10.

Goods Market Equilibrium

Keynes recognized that equilibrium would occur in the economy when the total quantity of output produced in the economy equals the total amount of planned expenditure (aggregate demand). That is,

$$Y = Y^{pe} \quad (8)$$

When this equilibrium condition is satisfied, planned spending for goods and services is equal to the amount that is produced. Producers are able to sell all their output and have no reason to change their production because there is no unplanned inventory investment. This analysis explains why aggregate output goes to a certain level by examining the factors that affect each component of planned spending.

Solving for Goods Market Equilibrium

With our understanding of what drives the components of planned expenditure, we can see how aggregate output is determined by using the planned expenditure Equation 1 to rewrite the equilibrium condition in Equation 8 as follows:

$$Y = C + I + G + NX \quad (9)$$

This equilibrium condition says that aggregate output will be the sum of consumption expenditure, planned investment spending, government purchases, and net exports.

Now we can use our consumption, investment, and net export functions in Equations 3, 4, and 5, along with Equations 6 and 7, to determine aggregate output. Substituting in all these equations into the equilibrium condition yields the following:

$$Y = \bar{C} + mpc \times (Y - \bar{T}) - cr + \bar{I} - dr + \bar{G} + \bar{NX} - xr$$

Collecting terms, we can rewrite this equation as follows:

$$Y = \bar{C} + \bar{I} + \bar{G} + \bar{NX} - mpc \times \bar{T} + mpc \times Y - (c + d + x)r$$

Subtracting $mpc \times Y$ from both sides of the equation,

$$Y - mpc \times Y = Y(1 - mpc) = \bar{C} + \bar{I} + \bar{G} + \bar{NX} - mpc \times \bar{T} - (c + d + x)r$$

Then dividing both sides of the equation by $1 - mpc$, we obtain an equation explaining how to determine aggregate output when the goods market is in equilibrium:⁵

$$Y = [\bar{C} + \bar{I} + \bar{G} + \bar{NX} - mpc \times \bar{T}] \times \frac{1}{1 - mpc} - \frac{c + d + x}{1 - mpc} \times r \quad (10)$$

⁵Note that the term $1/(1 - mpc)$ that multiplies \bar{C} is known as the *expenditure multiplier*, while the term $-mpc/(1 - mpc)$ that multiplies \bar{T} is called the *tax multiplier* and it is smaller in absolute value than the expenditure multiplier because $mpc < 1$. We discuss both these multipliers in more detail in Chapter 16.

Deriving the IS Curve

We refer to Equation 10 as the **IS curve** and it shows the relationship between aggregate output and the real interest rate when the goods market is in equilibrium. Equation 10 is made up of two terms. Since mpc is between zero and one, $1/(1 - mpc)$ is positive, so the first term tells us that increases in autonomous consumption, investment, government purchases, or net exports, or a decrease in taxes, leads to an increase in output at any given real interest rate. In other words, the first term tells us about shifts in the IS curve. The second term tells us that an increase in real interest rates results in a decline in output, which is a movement along the IS curve.

Understanding the IS Curve

To get a deeper understanding of the IS curve, we will proceed in several steps. In this section we begin by looking at the intuition behind the IS curve and then discuss a numerical example. We will also see how the IS curve relates to the saving-investment diagram of Chapter 4. Then in the following section, we will outline the factors that shift the IS curve.

What the IS Curve Tells Us: Intuition

The IS curve traces out the points at which the goods market is in equilibrium. For each given level of the real interest rate, the IS curve tells us what aggregate output must be for the goods market to be in equilibrium. As the real interest rate rises, consumption expenditure, planned investment spending, and net exports fall, which in turn lowers planned expenditure; aggregate output must be lower for it to equal planned expenditure and satisfy goods market equilibrium. Hence the IS curve is downward sloping.

What the IS Curve Tells Us: Numerical Example

We can also see what the IS curve tells us with the following numerical example with specific values for the exogenous variables and for the parameters in Equation 10.

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{C} &= \$1.1 \text{ trillion} \\ \bar{I} &= \$1.2 \text{ trillion} \\ \bar{G} &= \$3.0 \text{ trillion} \\ \bar{T} &= \$3.0 \text{ trillion} \\ \bar{N}\bar{X} &= \$1.3 \text{ trillion} \\ mpc &= 0.6 \\ c &= 0.1 \\ d &= 0.2 \\ x &= 0.1\end{aligned}$$

With these values, we can rewrite Equation 10 as follows:

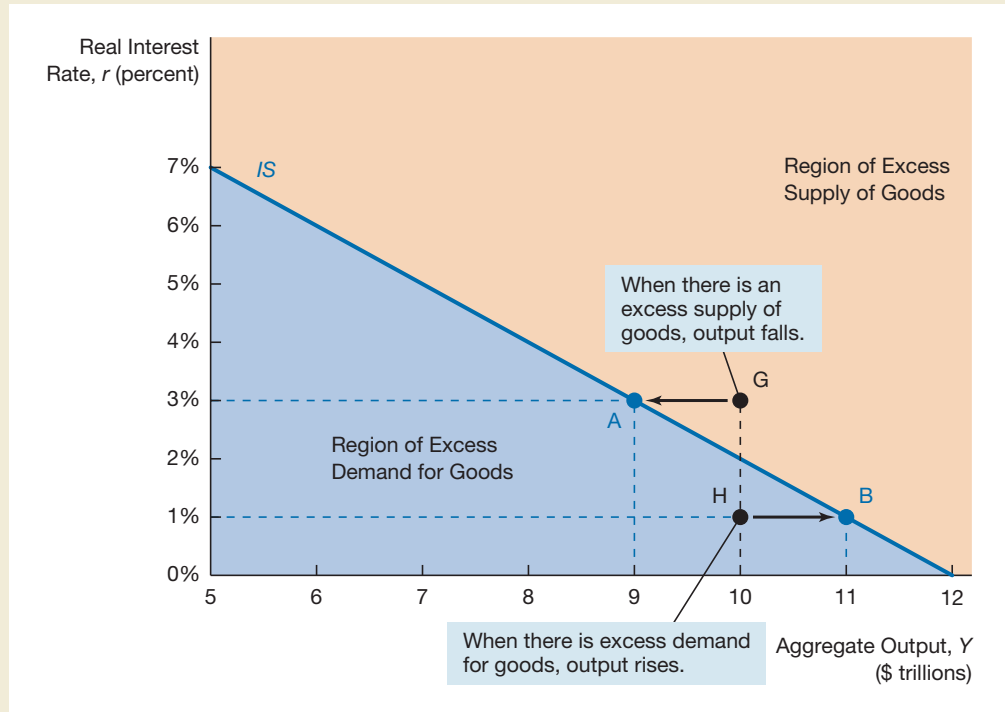
$$Y = [1.1 + 1.2 + 3.0 + 1.3 - 0.6 \times 3.0] \times \frac{1}{1 - 0.6} - \frac{0.1 + 0.2 + 0.1}{1 - 0.6} \times r$$

Plugging these values into Equation 10 yields the IS curve in Figure 9.1:

$$Y = \frac{4.8}{0.4} - \frac{0.4}{0.4} \times r = 12 - r \quad (11)$$

FIGURE 9.1**The IS Curve**

The downward-sloping IS curve represents points at which the goods market is in equilibrium—in this case, points A and B. Notice that output changes as necessary to return to equilibrium. For example, at point G in the orange shaded area there is an excess supply of goods and firms will cut production, decreasing aggregate output to the equilibrium level at point A. At point H in the blue shaded area there is an excess demand for goods, so firms will increase production and aggregate output will increase toward the equilibrium level at point B.



At a real interest rate $r = 3\%$, equilibrium output $Y = 12 - 3 = \$9$ trillion. We plot this combination of the real interest rate at equilibrium output as point A in Figure 9.1. At a real interest rate of $r = 1\%$, equilibrium output $Y = 12 - 1 = \$11$ trillion, which we plot as point B. The line connecting these points is the IS curve and, as you can see, it is downward sloping.

Why the Economy Heads Toward the Equilibrium

The concept of equilibrium is useful only if there is a tendency for the economy to settle there. Let's first consider what happens if the economy is located to the right of the IS curve (the orange shaded area), where there is an excess supply of goods. In Figure 9.1 at point G, actual output is above planned expenditure, firms are saddled with unsold inventory. To keep from accumulating unsold goods, firms will continue cutting production. As long as production is above the equilibrium level, output will exceed planned expenditure firms will continue cutting production, sending aggregate output toward the equilibrium level, as is indicated by the leftward arrow from point G to point A. Only when the economy moves to point A on the IS curve will there be no further tendency for output to change.

What happens if aggregate output is below the equilibrium level of output (the blue shaded area to the left of the IS curve), where there is an excess demand for goods? At point H in Figure 9.1, actual output is below planned expenditure, so firms will want to increase production because inventories are declining more than they desire, and

aggregate output will increase, as shown by the rightward arrow. When the economy has moved to point B on the IS curve, there will again be no further tendency for output to change.

Why the IS Curve Has Its Name and Its Relationship with the Saving-Investment Diagram

To understand the IS curve's name, we need to recognize, that the goods market equilibrium of the IS curve is equivalent to the equilibrium at which desired investment, I , equals desired saving, S , as in Chapter 4.⁶ (Another way of saying this is that the goods market equilibrium that we discuss in this chapter is the same as the goods market equilibrium we discussed with the saving-investment diagram in Chapter 4.)

To illustrate, we look at the situation in which government purchases and net exports are zero ($G = 0$ and $NX = 0$). Then goods market equilibrium occurs when

$$Y = C + I$$

Subtracting C from both sides of the preceding equation yields the following:

$$Y - C = I$$

And since saving, S , is equal to $Y - C$

$$S = I$$

Hence goods market equilibrium occurs when $I = S$ and this is why the IS curve has its name.

Recognizing that the IS curve is the equilibrium at which desired investment equals desired saving provides another way of deriving the IS curve using the saving and investment diagram we developed in Chapter 4. Consider the saving-investment diagram in panel (a) of Figure 9.2. The saving curves are upward sloping because as the real interest rate rises, consumption expenditure falls and saving, $S = Y - C$, rises. The investment curve is downward sloping because as the interest rate rises, planned investment falls.

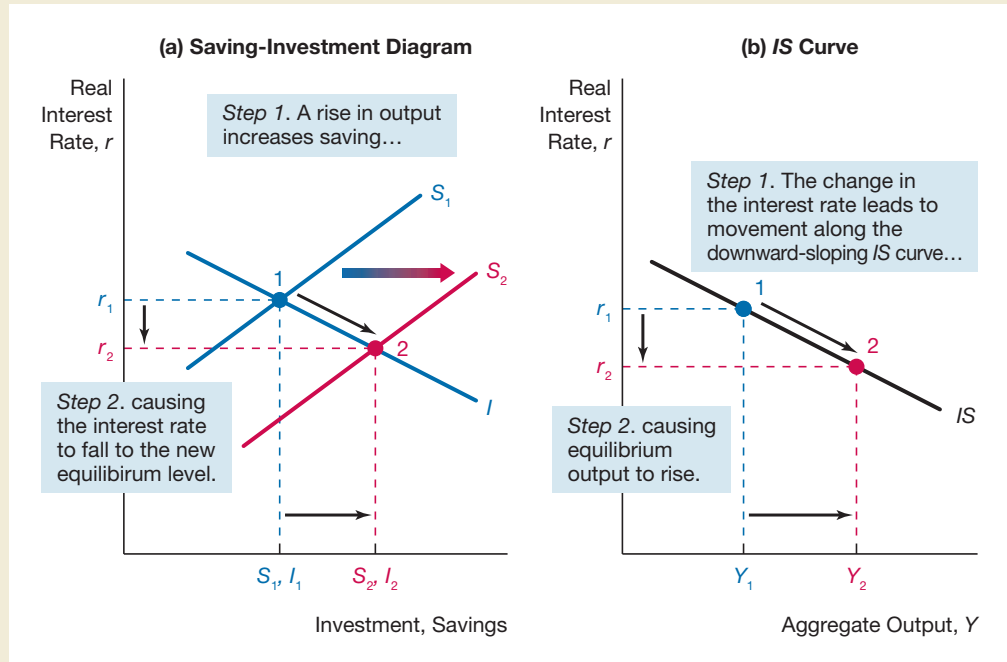
At any given level of the real interest rate r , when there is an increase in aggregate output Y , consumption increases by less than Y because the marginal propensity to consume is less than one. Thus, at any given level of r , an increase in Y will lead to an increase in $Y - C = S$. As we see in panel (a), when output rises, the saving curve shifts to the right from S_1 to S_2 . Panel (a) demonstrates that as equilibrium output rises from Y_1 to Y_2 , the real interest rate falls from r_1 to r_2 . Panel (b) then plots the combinations of r and Y derived from equilibrium points, like 1 and 2 in panel (a), which shows the movement along the downward-sloping IS curve that we saw in Figure 9.1.

⁶The name was given to the IS (an abbreviation for Investment-Saving) curve by Sir John Hicks in his famous paper, "Mr. Keynes and the Classics: A Suggested Interpretation," *Econometrica* (1937): 147–159.

FIGURE 9.2

A Saving-Investment Derivation of the IS Curve

Panels (a) and (b) demonstrate the relationship between savings and investment and the IS curve in response to an increase in output. The rightward shift in the savings curve in panel (a) from S_1 to S_2 lowers the real interest rate, which leads to an increase in aggregate output in panel (b) that causes movement along the IS curve to a new equilibrium level at point 2.



Factors that Shift the IS Curve

You have now learned that the IS curve describes equilibrium points in the goods market—the combinations of the real interest rate and equilibrium output. The IS curve shifts whenever there is a change in autonomous factors (factors independent of aggregate output and the real interest rate). Note that a change in the real interest rate that affects equilibrium aggregate output causes only a *movement* along the IS curve. A *shift* in the IS curve, by contrast, occurs when equilibrium output changes *at each given real interest rate*.

In Equation 10, we identified five candidates as autonomous factors that can shift planned expenditure and hence affect the level of equilibrium output. Although Equation 10 directly tells us how these factors shift the IS curve, we will develop some intuition as to how each autonomous factor does so.

Changes in Government Purchases

Let’s look at what happens if government purchases rises from \$3 trillion to \$4 trillion in Figure 9.3. IS_1 represents the same IS curve that we developed in Figure 9.1. We determine the equation for IS_2 by inputting the \$4 trillion value into Equation 10:

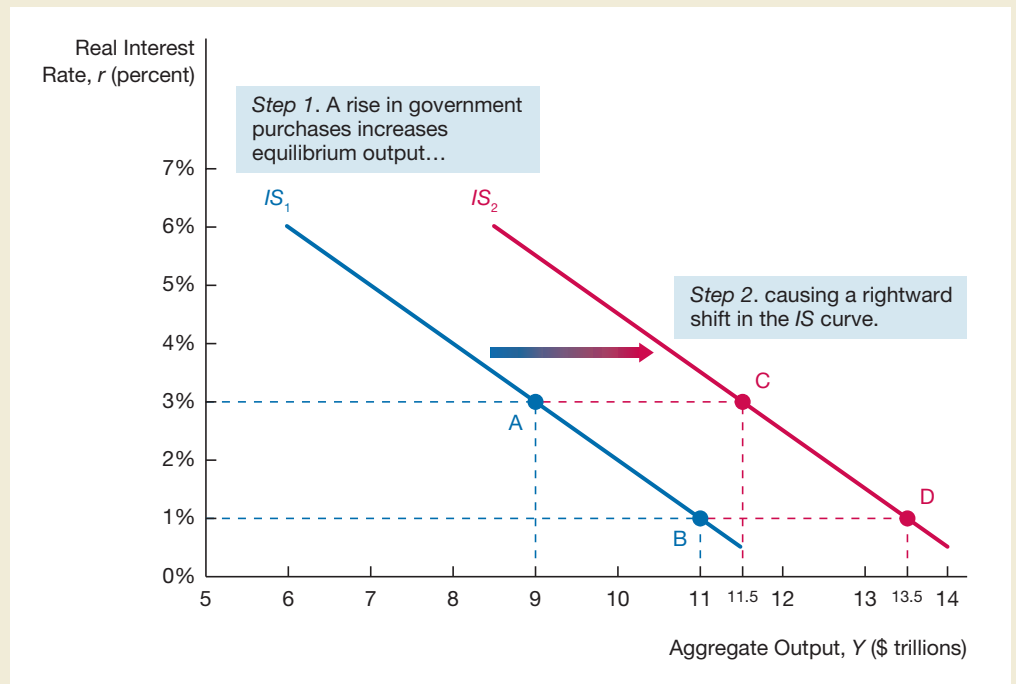
$$Y = [1.1 + 1.2 + 4.0 + 1.3 - 0.6 \times 3.0] \times \frac{1}{1 - 0.6} - r = \frac{5.8}{0.4} - r = 14.5 - r$$

Based on these results, at a real interest rate of $r = 3\%$, equilibrium output $Y = 14.5 - 3 = \$11.5$ trillion, which we mark as point C on Figure 9.3. At a real interest rate $r = 1\%$,

FIGURE 9.3

Shift in the *IS* Curve from an Increase in Government Purchases

IS_1 represents the *IS* curve we derived in Figure 9.1. IS_2 reflects a \$1.0 trillion increase in government purchases. The increase in government purchases causes aggregate output to rise, shifting the *IS* curve to the right by \$2.5 trillion from IS_1 to IS_2 .



equilibrium output has increased to $Y = 14.5 - 1 = \$13.5$ trillion, which we mark as point D. The increase in government purchases therefore shifts the *IS* curve to the right from IS_1 to IS_2 .

An intuitive way to see why an increase in government purchases leads to a rightward shift of the *IS* curve is to recognize that an increase in government purchases causes planned expenditure to increase at any given real interest rate. Since aggregate output equals planned expenditure when the goods market is in equilibrium, ***an increase in government purchases that causes planned expenditure to rise also causes equilibrium output to rise, thereby shifting the IS curve to the right. Conversely, a decline in government purchases causes planned expenditure to fall at any given real interest rate and leads to a leftward shift of the IS curve.***

Application

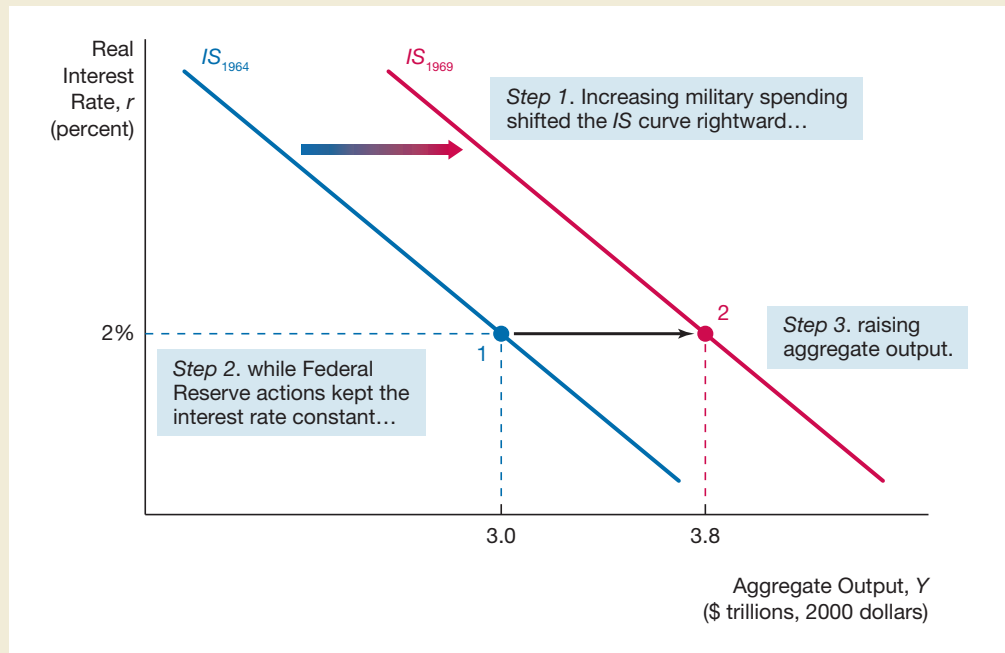
The Vietnam War Buildup, 1964–1969

The United States' involvement in Vietnam began to escalate in the early 1960s. After 1964, the United States was fighting a full-scale war. Beginning in 1965, the resulting increases in military expenditure raised government purchases. How did policy makers make use of the *IS* curve analysis to inform policy?

The rise in government purchases would shift the *IS* curve to the right from IS_{1964} to IS_{1969} in Figure 9.4. Because the Federal Reserve decided to keep real interest rates constant during this period at 2%, equilibrium output rose from \$3.0 trillion (in 2000 dollars) in 1964

FIGURE 9.4**Vietnam War Build Up**

Beginning in 1965, increases in military spending caused the IS curve to shift from IS_{1964} to IS_{1969} . Because the Federal Reserve decided to keep real interest rates constant during this period at 2%, equilibrium output rose from \$3.0 trillion (in 2000 dollars) in 1964 to \$3.8 trillion in 1969, setting the stage for an increase in inflation.



to \$3.8 trillion by 1969, with the unemployment rate falling steadily from 5% in 1964 to 3.4% in 1969. However, all was not well for the economy: the increase in government purchases with the real interest rate constant led to an overheating of the economy that eventually resulted in high inflation. (We will discuss the link between an overheating economy and inflation in the coming chapters.)



Changes in Taxes

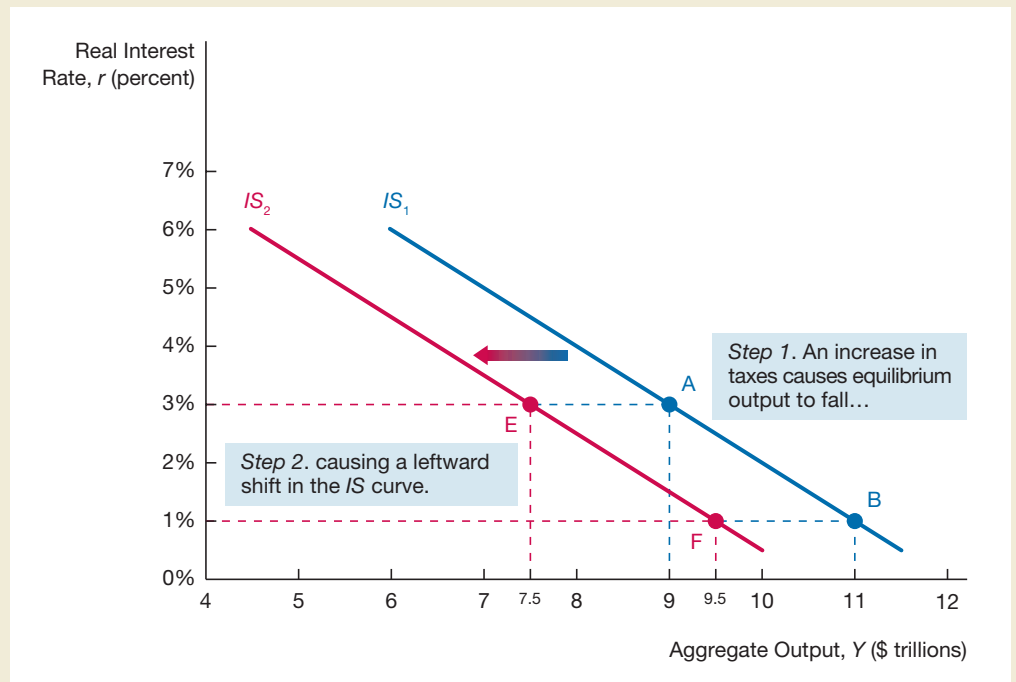
Now let's look at what happens if the government raises taxes from \$3 trillion to \$4 trillion in Figure 9.5. IS_1 represents the same IS curve that we developed in Figure 9.1. We determine the equation for IS_2 by inputting the \$4 trillion value in Equation 10:

$$Y = [1.1 + 1.2 + 3.0 + 1.3 - 0.6 \times 4.0] \times \frac{1}{1 - 0.6} - r = \frac{4.2}{0.4} - r = 10.5 - r$$

At a real interest rate of $r = 3\%$, equilibrium output $Y = 10.5 - 3 = \$7.5$ trillion, which we mark as point E in Figure 9.5. At this real interest rate, equilibrium output has decreased from point A to point E, as shown by the leftward arrow. Similarly, at a real interest rate $r = 1\%$, equilibrium output has decreased to $Y = 10.5 - 1 = \$9.5$ trillion, causing a leftward shift from point B to point F. The IS curve shifts to the left from IS_1 to IS_2 as a result of the increase in taxes.

FIGURE 9.5 Shift in the IS Curve from an Increase in Taxes

IS_1 represents the IS curve we derived in Figure 9.1. IS_2 reflects a \$1.0 trillion increase in government tax revenue. The increase in taxes decreases aggregate output levels by \$1.5 trillion, shifting the IS curve to the left from IS_1 to IS_2 .



We then have the following result: **at any given real interest rate, a rise in taxes causes planned expenditure and hence equilibrium output to fall, thereby shifting the IS curve to the left. Conversely, a cut in taxes at any given real interest rate increases disposable income and causes planned expenditure and equilibrium output to rise, shifting the IS curve to the right.**

Policy makers use both tax and government purchases policies to stimulate the economy when it enters recessions, as the following Policy and Practice case illustrates.

Policy and Practice



The Fiscal Stimulus Package of 2009

In the fall of 2008, the U.S. economy was in crisis. By the time the new Obama administration had taken office, the unemployment rate had risen from 4.7% just before the recession began in December 2007 to 7.6% in January 2009. To stimulate the economy, the Obama administration proposed a fiscal stimulus package that, when passed by Congress, included \$288 billion in tax cuts for households and businesses and \$499 billion in increased federal spending, including transfer payments. As this analysis indicates, these tax cuts and spending increases were

intended to increase planned expenditure, thereby raising the equilibrium level of aggregate output at any given real interest rate and so shifting the IS curve to the right. Unfortunately, things didn't work out as the Obama administration planned. Most of the government purchases did not kick in until after 2010, while the decline in autonomous consumption and investment were much larger than anticipated. The fiscal stimulus was more than offset by weak consumption and investment, with the result that the planned expenditure ended up contracting rather than rising, and the IS curve did not shift to the right, as hoped. Despite the good intentions of the fiscal stimulus package, the unemployment rate ended up rising to over 10% in 2009. Without the fiscal stimulus, however, the IS curve would likely have shifted further to the left, resulting in even more unemployment.

Changes in Autonomous Spending

As you can see in Equation 10, autonomous consumption, investment, and net exports, \bar{C} , \bar{I} , and \bar{NX} , respectively, all are multiplied by the term $1/(1 - mpc)$ in the same way the \bar{G} term is. Thus an increase in any of these variables has the same impact on the IS curve as an increase in government purchases. For this reason, we can lump these variables together as **autonomous spending**, exogenous spending that is unrelated to variables in the model such as output or real interest rates. We look intuitively at how changes in each these variables affects the IS curve in turn.

AUTONOMOUS CONSUMPTION. Earlier in the chapter, we learned that changes in the real interest rate affect consumption expenditure and hence the equilibrium level of output. This change in consumption expenditure merely causes a movement along the IS curve and not a shift. Suppose that consumers find that their wealth has increased when there is a stock market boom or they have become increasingly optimistic about their future income prospects because there has been a positive productivity shock to the economy. Both of these events are autonomous, that is, they are not affected by the level of the real interest rate. ***The resulting rise in autonomous consumption would raise planned expenditure and equilibrium output at any given interest rate, shifting the IS curve to the right. Conversely, a decline in autonomous consumption expenditure causes planned expenditure and equilibrium output to fall, shifting the IS curve to the left.***

AUTONOMOUS INVESTMENT SPENDING. As with consumption expenditure, changes in planned investment spending arising from a change in real interest rates cause a movement along the IS curve and not a shift. An autonomous rise in planned investment spending unrelated to the real interest rate—say, because companies become more confident about investment profitability after the stock market rises—increases planned expenditure. ***An increase in autonomous investment spending therefore increases equilibrium output at any given interest rate, shifting the IS curve to the right. On the other hand, a decrease in autonomous investment spending causes planned expenditure and equilibrium output to fall, shifting the IS curve to the left.***

AUTONOMOUS NET EXPORTS. An autonomous rise in net exports unrelated to the real interest rate—say, because American-made handbags become more chic than French-made handbags, or because foreign countries have a boom and thus buy more

TABLE 9.1

Shifts in the IS Curve from Autonomous Changes in \bar{C} , \bar{I} , \bar{G} , \bar{T} , and \bar{NX}

Variable	Change in Variable	Shift in IS Curve	Reason
Autonomous consumption expenditure, \bar{C}	↑	→	$C \uparrow Y \uparrow$
Autonomous investment, \bar{I}	↑	→	$I \uparrow Y \uparrow$
Government spending, \bar{G}	↑	→	$G \uparrow Y \uparrow$
Taxes, \bar{T}	↑	←	$T \uparrow \Rightarrow C \downarrow Y \downarrow$
Autonomous net exports, \bar{NX}	↑	→	$\bar{NX} \uparrow Y \uparrow$

Note: Only increases (↑) in the variables are shown; the effects of decreases in the variables on aggregate output would be the opposite of those indicated in the last two columns.

U.S. goods—causes planned expenditure to rise. **An autonomous increase in net exports thus leads to an increase in equilibrium output at any given interest rate and shifts the IS curve to the right. Conversely, an autonomous fall in net exports causes planned expenditure and equilibrium output to decline, shifting the IS curve to the left.**

Summary of Factors that Shift the IS Curve

As a study aid, Table 9.1 shows how each factor shifts the IS curve and the reason the shift occurs. Now that we have a full understanding of the IS curve, we can use this building block to examine the relationship between monetary policy and the aggregate demand curve in the following chapter.

SUMMARY

- Aggregate demand, the total amount of goods demanded in the economy, is the same as planned expenditure, which is the sum of four types of spending: consumption expenditure, planned investment spending, government purchases, and net exports. We represent the total planned expenditure (Y^p) with Equation 1: $Y^p = C + I + G + NX$.
- Consumption expenditure is described by the consumption function, which indicates that consumption expenditure will rise as disposable income increases. Consumption expenditure, planned investment spending, and net exports are all negatively related to real interest rates, and are positively related to autonomous consumption, autonomous investment, and autonomous net exports, respectively. The government also affects planned investment expenditure by increased spending, which directly raises planned expenditure, or by taxes, which indirectly affect
- planned expenditure by affecting disposable income and hence consumption expenditure.
- The level of aggregate output when the goods market is in equilibrium is determined by the condition that aggregate output equals planned expenditure.
- The IS curve traces out the combinations of the real interest rate and aggregate output for which the goods market is in equilibrium. The IS curve slopes downward because higher real interest rates lower consumption expenditure, planned investment spending, and net exports and so lower equilibrium output.
- The IS curve shifts to the right when there is a rise in autonomous consumption, a rise in autonomous investment, a rise in government purchases, a fall in taxes, or a rise in autonomous net exports. Movements of these five factors in the opposite direction will shift the IS curve to the left.

KEY TERMS

aggregate demand, p. 223	consumption expenditure, p. 223	<i>IS</i> curve, p. 229
“animal spirits”, p. 226	consumption function, p. 223	marginal propensity to consume, p. 224
autonomous consumption expenditure, p. 224	disposable income, p. 223	net exports, p. 223
autonomous investment, p. 226	exchange rate, p. 226	planned expenditure, p. 223
autonomous net exports, p. 227	fixed investment, p. 224	planned investment spending, p. 223
autonomous spending, p. 236	government purchases, p. 223	
	inventory investment, p. 224	

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Planned Expenditure

1. What are the four components of planned expenditure and why did Keynesian analysis emphasize this concept?

The Components of Expenditure

2. According to the consumption function what variables determine aggregate spending on consumer goods and services? How is consumption related to each of these variables?
3. What are the two types of planned investment spending?
4. How and why do changes in the real interest rate affect planned investment spending?
5. How and why do changes in the real interest rate affect net exports?

Goods Market Equilibrium

6. What condition is required for equilibrium in the goods market?
7. What happens to aggregate output if unplanned inventory investment is either positive or negative?

Understanding the *IS* Curve

8. What does the *IS* curve show? Why does it slope downward?

Factors That Shift the *IS* Curve

9. What causes the *IS* curve to shift?

PROBLEMS

All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Planned Expenditure

1. The Bureau of Economic Analysis valued nominal U.S. gross domestic product (i.e., actual expenditure) at \$14,460 billion at the end of 2009. Suppose that the consumption expenditure was \$10,250 billion, planned investment spending was \$1,680 billion, and government spending was \$2,970 billion.
 - a) Assuming the goods market is in equilibrium, calculate spending in net exports.
 - b) If U.S. imports are valued at \$2,100 billion, calculate spending on U.S. exports.

The Components of Expenditure

2. Assume the following estimates:
 - Autonomous consumption: \$1,625 billion
 - Disposable income: \$11,500 billion
 Using the consumption function in Equation 2, calculate consumption expenditure if an increase of \$1,000 in disposable income leads to an increase of \$750 in consumption expenditure.
3. Calculate the consumption expenditure using the consumption function (as described by Equation 2) and the following estimates:
 - Autonomous consumption: \$1,450 billion
 - Income: \$14,000 billion
 - Taxes: \$3,000 billion
 - Marginal propensity to consume: 0.8
4. Suppose that Dell Corporation has 20,000 computers in its warehouses on December 31, 2009, ready to be shipped to merchants (each computer is valued at \$500). By December 31, 2010, Dell Corporation has 25,000 computers ready to be shipped, each valued at \$450.
 - a) Calculate Dell's inventory on December 31, 2009.
 - b) Calculate Dell's inventory investment in 2010.
 - c) What happens to inventory spending during the early stages of an economic recession?

Factors That Shift the IS Curve

5. In fall 2009, the Obama administration decided to impose tariffs on car tires manufactured in China. As a result, imports of car tires decreased. Considering only the decrease in imports,
 - a) comment on the effect of such a measure on the IS curve.
 - b) show your answer graphically.
 6. On February 17, 2010, the *Wall Street Journal* reported on spending from the stimulus package signed into law a year earlier. Part of that stimulus package (\$93 billion) was paid out in the form of tax credits. However, even though interest rates did not change significantly during that year, aggregate output did not increase. Using the parameters from the numerical exercise on page 229.
 - a) calculate the decrease in autonomous consumption expenditure necessary to offset the effect of the \$93 billion tax cut.
 - b) show your answer graphically (the effect of the tax cut and the decrease in autonomous consumption expenditure).
 7. On Friday, February 19, 2010, the Federal Reserve announced an increase in the discount rate. This announcement was widely interpreted (despite the Federal Reserve's efforts) as a signal that interest rates would increase in the future.
 - a) Comment on the effect of an increase in interest rates on the IS curve.
 - b) Show your answer graphically.
- Use the following information to answer Problems 8 and 9:
In its February 18, 2010, edition, the Wall Street Journal stated, "The dollar strengthened [. . .] and stocks [. . .] followed suit. The Dow industrials rose 40.43 points, or 0.4%."
8. Refer to the previous statement and
 - a) comment only on the effect of the strengthened dollar on the IS curve.
 - b) comment only on the effect of the increase in stock prices on the IS curve.
 9. Referring to Problem 8, what is the combined effect of these two events on the IS curve?



MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.



10

Monetary Policy and Aggregate Demand

Preview

At the height of the financial crisis in December 2008, the Federal Open Market Committee of the Federal Reserve announced a surprisingly bold policy decision that sent markets into a frenzy. The committee lowered the federal funds rate, the interest rate charged on overnight loans between banks, by seventy-five basis points (0.75 percentage points), moving the federal funds rate almost all the way to zero. The whole world wondered if this bold move would jolt the economy out of recession. Would it boost stock market values? Would it trigger higher inflation?

The short-run model of the aggregate economy that we are building step by step will allow us to analyze how a central bank's policy decisions affect the economy. We start this chapter by explaining why monetary policy makers set interest rates to rise when inflation increases, leading to a positive relationship between real interest rates and inflation, which is called the *monetary policy (MP) curve*. Then using the *MP curve* with the *IS curve* we developed in the previous chapter, we derive the *aggregate demand curve*, a key element in the aggregate demand/aggregate supply model framework used in the rest of this book to discuss short-run economic fluctuations.

The Federal Reserve and Monetary Policy

Central banks throughout the world use a very short-term interest rate as their primary policy tool. In the United States, the Federal Reserve conducts monetary policy via its setting of the federal funds rate, the interest rate at which banks lend to each other overnight.

The Federal Reserve controls the federal funds rate by varying the liquidity it provides to the banking system. When it provides more liquidity, banks have more money to lend to each other, and this excess liquidity causes the federal funds rate to fall. When the Fed drains liquidity from the banking system, banks have less to lend and the shortage of liquidity leads to a rise in the federal funds rate. More detail on how the Federal

Reserve sets the federal funds rate is discussed at the end of this chapter, but for now, it is good enough to know that the Federal Reserve has the ability to set the federal funds rate at whatever level it chooses.

The federal funds rate is a *nominal* interest rate, but as we learned in the previous chapter it is the *real* interest rate that affects household and business spending, thereby determining the level of equilibrium output. How does the Federal Reserve's control of the federal funds rate enable it to control the real interest rate, through which monetary policy impacts the economy?

Recall from Chapter 2 that the real interest rate, r , is the nominal interest rate, i , minus expected inflation, π^e .

$$r = i - \pi^e$$

Changes in nominal interest rates can change the real interest rate only if actual and expected inflation remain unchanged in the short run. Here is where sticky prices, which we discussed in Chapter 8, enter the picture. When prices are sticky, changes in monetary policy will not have an immediate effect on inflation and expected inflation. As a result, **when the Federal Reserve lowers the federal funds rate, real interest rates fall; and when the Federal Reserve raises the federal funds rate, real interest rates rise.**

It is important to note that although the Federal Reserve can determine the real interest rate in the short run, it is not able to control the real interest rate in the long run. In the long run, prices are flexible. Recall from Chapter 4 that the real interest rate in the long run is determined by the interaction of saving and investment and *not* by the central bank. Indeed, we will see that the aggregate demand/aggregate supply model comes to exactly the same conclusion when analyzing the economy in the long run.

The Monetary Policy Curve

We have now seen how the Federal Reserve can control real interest rates in the short run. The next step in our analysis is to examine how monetary policy reacts to inflation. The **monetary policy (MP) curve** indicates the relationship between the real interest rate the central bank sets and the inflation rate. We can write this curve as follows:

$$r = \bar{r} + \lambda\pi \quad (1)$$

where \bar{r} is the autonomous component of the real interest rate set by the monetary policy authorities, which is unrelated to the current level of the inflation rate, while λ is the responsiveness of the real interest rate to the inflation rate.

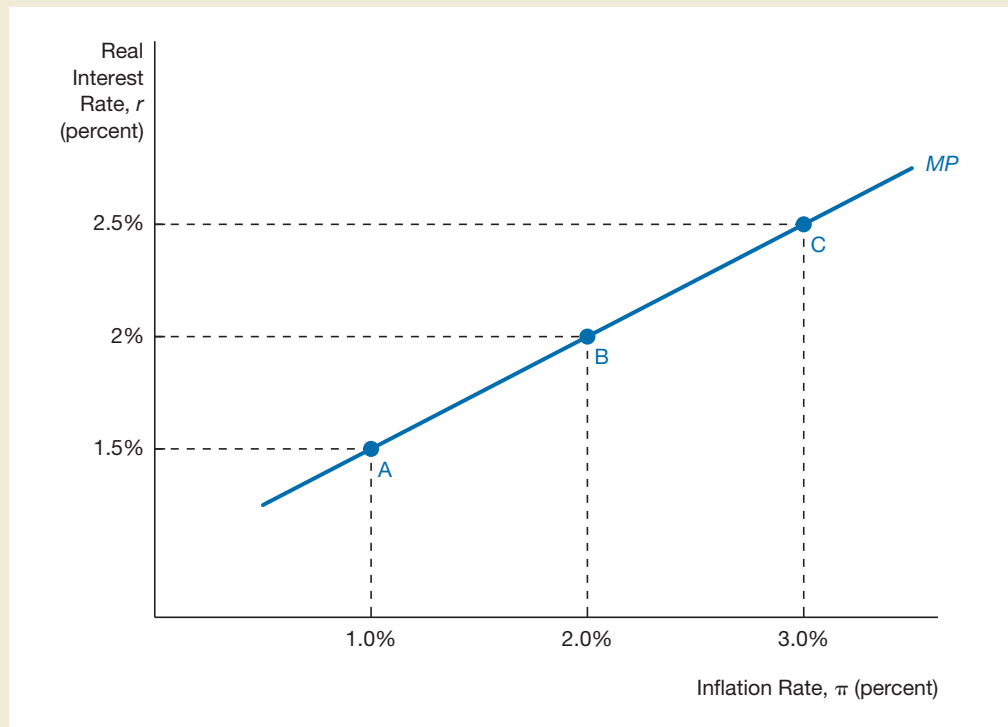
To make our discussion of the monetary policy curve more concrete, Figure 10.1 shows an example of a monetary policy curve MP in which $\bar{r} = 1.0$ and $\lambda = 0.5$:

$$r = 1.0 + 0.5\pi \quad (2)$$

At point A where inflation is at 1%, the Federal Reserve sets the real interest rate at 1.5%, while at point B, where inflation is 2%, the Fed sets the real interest rate at 2%, and at point C, where inflation is 3%, the Fed sets the real interest rate at 2.5%. The line

FIGURE 10.1**The Monetary Policy Curve**

The upward slope of the *MP* curve indicates that the central bank raises real interest rates when inflation rises because monetary policy follows the Taylor principle.



going through points A, B, and C is the monetary policy curve *MP*, and it is upward sloping, indicating that monetary policy raises real interest rates when the inflation rate rises.

The Taylor Principle: Why the Monetary Policy Curve Has an Upward Slope

To see why the *MP* curve has an upward slope, we need to recognize that central banks seek to keep inflation stable. In order to stabilize inflation, monetary policy makers follow the **Taylor principle**, named after John Taylor of Stanford University, in which they raise *nominal* rates by more than any rise in expected inflation so that *real* interest rates rise when there is a rise in inflation, as the *MP* curve suggests.¹ John Taylor and many other researchers have found that monetary policy makers tend to follow the Taylor principle in practice.

To see why monetary policy makers follow the Taylor principle, in which higher inflation results in higher real interest rates, consider what would happen if monetary policy makers instead allowed the real interest rate to fall when inflation rose. In this case, an increase in inflation would lead to a decline in the real interest rate,

¹Note that the Taylor principle differs from the Taylor rule, described in Chapter 13, because it does not provide a rule for how monetary policy should react to conditions in the economy, while the Taylor rule does.

which would increase aggregate output, which would in turn cause inflation to rise further, which would cause the real interest rate to fall further, increasing aggregate output further. Schematically, we can write this as follows:

$$\pi \uparrow \Rightarrow r \downarrow \Rightarrow Y \uparrow \Rightarrow \pi \uparrow \Rightarrow r \downarrow \Rightarrow Y \uparrow \Rightarrow \pi \uparrow$$

The result would be that inflation would continually keep rising and spin out of control. Indeed, this is exactly what happened in the 1970s, when the Federal Reserve did not raise nominal interest rates by as much as inflation rose, so that real interest rates fell. Inflation accelerated to over 10%.²

Shifts in the *MP* Curve

In common parlance, the Federal Reserve is said to tighten monetary policy when it raises real interest rates, and to ease it when it lowers real interest rates. It is important, however, to distinguish between changes in monetary policy that shift the monetary policy curve, which we call autonomous changes, and the Taylor principle-driven changes that are reflected as movements along the monetary policy curve, which are called *automatic* adjustments to interest rates.

Central banks may make autonomous changes to monetary policy for various reasons. They may wish to change the inflation rate from its current value. For example, to lower inflation they could increase \bar{r} by one percentage point, and so raise the real interest rate at any given inflation rate, what we will refer to as an **autonomous tightening of monetary policy**. This autonomous monetary tightening would shift the monetary policy curve upward by one percentage point from MP_1 to MP_2 in Figure 10.2, thereby causing the economy to contract and inflation to fall. Or, the banks may have information above and beyond what is happening to inflation that suggests interest rates must be adjusted to achieve good economic outcomes. For example, if the economy is going into a recession, monetary policy makers would want to lower real interest rates at any given inflation rate, an **autonomous easing of monetary policy**, in order to stimulate the economy and also to prevent inflation from falling. This autonomous easing of monetary policy would result in a downward shift in the monetary policy curve, say by one percentage point from MP_1 to MP_3 in Figure 10.2.

We contrast these autonomous changes with automatic, Taylor Principle-driven changes, a central bank's normal response (also known as an endogenous response) of raising interest rates when inflation rises. These changes to interest rates do not shift the monetary policy curve, and so cannot be considered autonomous tightening or easing of monetary policy. Instead, they are reflected in movements along the monetary policy curve.

The distinction between autonomous monetary policy changes and movements along the monetary policy curve is illustrated by the monetary policy actions the Federal Reserve took at the onset of the 2007–2009 financial crisis in the fall of 2007 (see the Policy and Practice case).

²In an appendix to Chapter 12 we formally demonstrate the instability of inflation when central banks do not follow the Taylor principle.

Autonomous Monetary Easing at the Onset of the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis

When the financial crisis started in August 2007, inflation was rising and economic growth was quite strong. A movement along the MP curve would have suggested that the Fed would continue to keep hiking interest rates, but instead it did the opposite: it began an aggressive lowering of the federal funds rate, despite the continuing high inflation, as shown in Figure 10.3. The Fed thus shifted the monetary policy curve down from MP_1 to MP_3 , as in Figure 10.2. The Fed pursued this autonomous monetary policy easing because the negative shock to the economy from the disruption to financial markets (more about this in Chapter 15) indicated that, despite current high inflation rates, the economy was likely to weaken in the near future and the inflation rate would fall. Indeed, this is exactly what came to pass, with the economy going into recession in December 2007, and the inflation rate falling sharply after July 2008.

FIGURE 10.2

Shifts in the Monetary Policy Curve

Autonomous changes in monetary policy, such as when a central bank changes the real interest rate at any given inflation rate, shift the MP curve. An autonomous tightening of monetary policy that increases the real interest rate shifts the MP curve up to MP_2 , while an autonomous easing of monetary policy that lowers the real interest rate shifts the MP curve down to MP_3 .

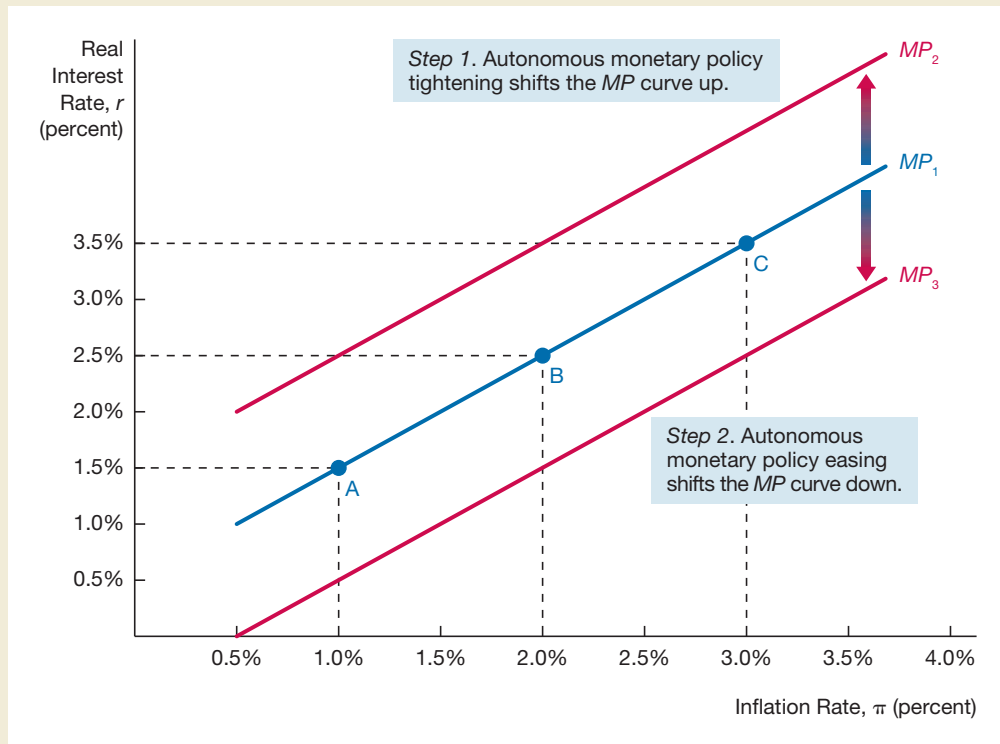
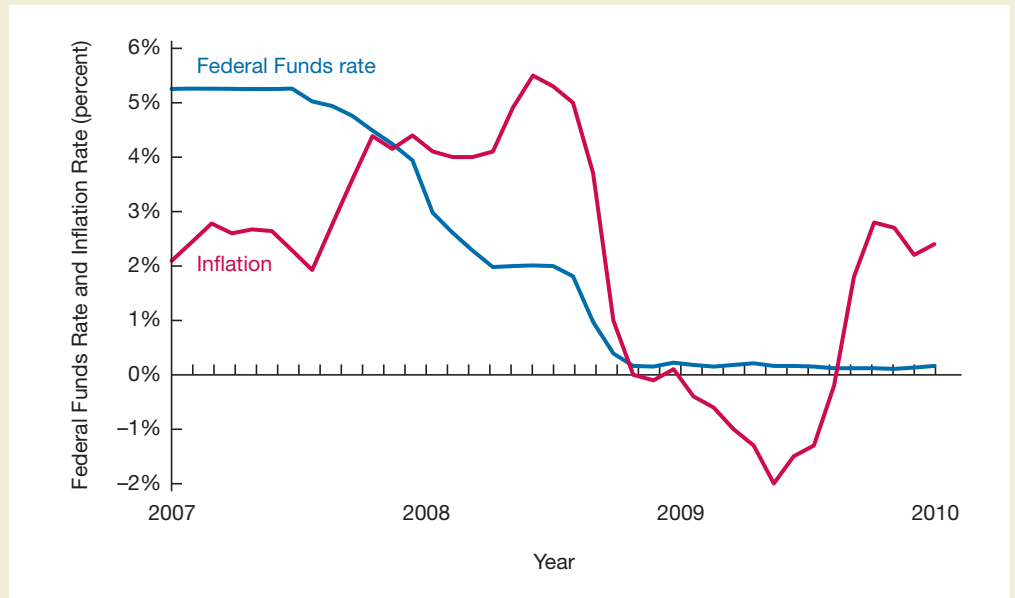


FIGURE 10.3**The Inflation Rate and the Federal Funds Rate, 2007–2010**

The Fed began an aggressive autonomous easing of monetary policy in September 2007, bringing down its policy rate, the federal funds rate, despite the continuing high inflation.



Source: Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis. FRED database. <http://research.stlouisfed.org/fred2/categories/118>

The Aggregate Demand Curve

We are now ready to derive the relationship between the inflation rate and aggregate output when the goods market is in equilibrium, the **aggregate demand curve**. The *MP* curve we developed demonstrates how central banks respond to changes in inflation with changes in interest rates, in line with the Taylor principle. And the *IS* curve we developed in Chapter 9 showed that changes in interest rates, in turn, affect equilibrium output. With these two curves, we can now link the quantity of aggregate output demanded with the inflation rate, given the public's expectations of inflation and the stance of monetary policy. The aggregate demand curve is central to the aggregate demand and supply analysis we develop further in the next two chapters, which allows us to explain short-run fluctuations in both aggregate output and inflation.

Deriving the Aggregate Demand Curve Graphically

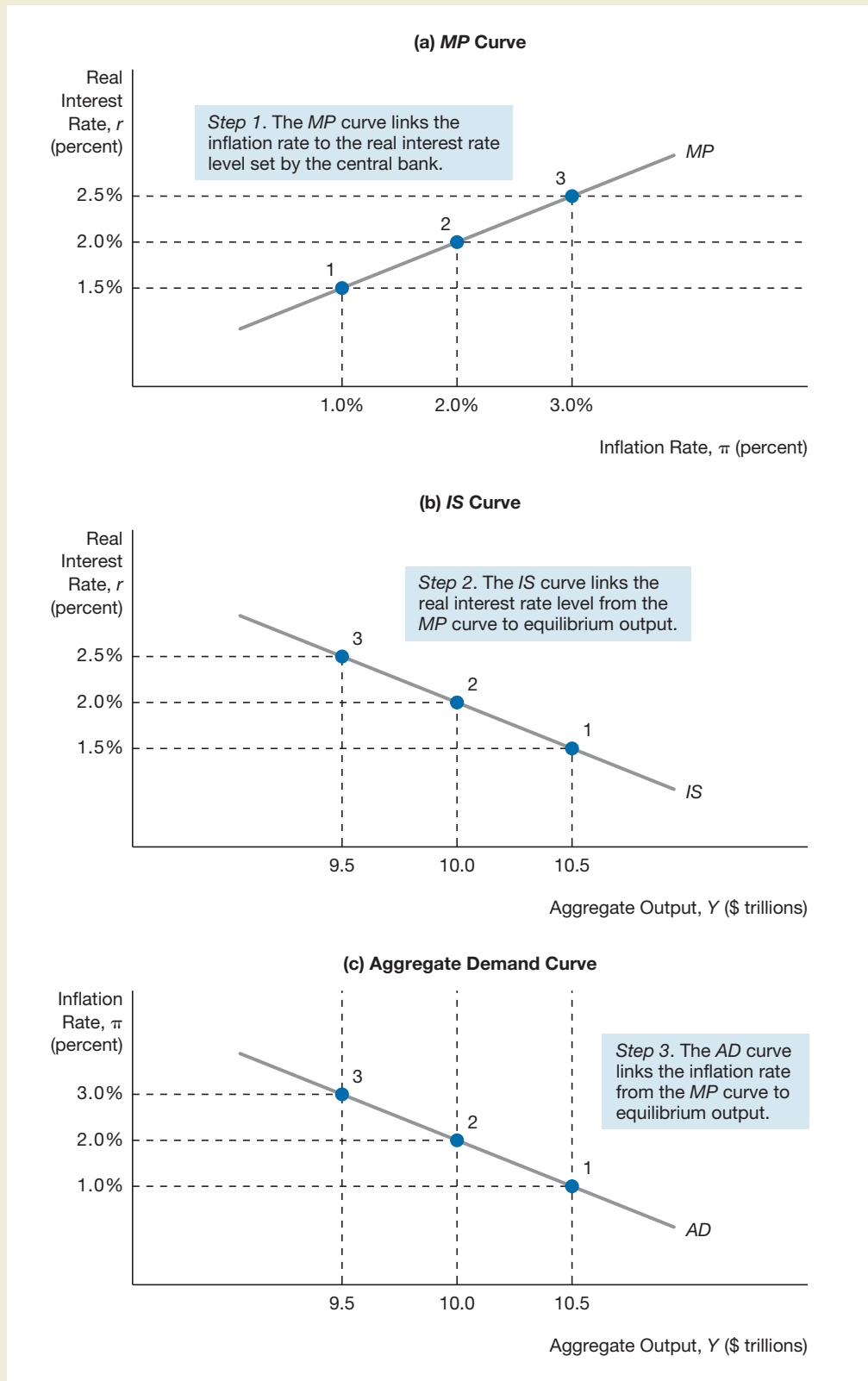
Using the hypothetical *MP* curve from Equation 2, we know that when the inflation rate rises from 1% to 2% to 3%, real interest rates rise from 1.5% to 2% to 2.5%. We plot these points in panel (a) of Figure 10.4 to create the *MP* curve. In panel (b), we graph the *IS* curve described in Equation 11 of Chapter 9 ($Y = 12 - r$). As the real interest rate rises from 1.5% to 2% to 2.5%, the equilibrium moves from point 1 to point 2 to point 3 and aggregate output falls from \$10.5 trillion to \$10 trillion to \$9.5 trillion. In other words, as real interest rates rise, consumption, investment, and net exports decline, leading to a decline in aggregate demand. Panels (a) and (b) demonstrate that as inflation rises from 1% to 2% to 3%, the equilibrium moves from point 1 to point 2 to point 3 in panel (c), and aggregate output falls from \$10.5 trillion to \$10 trillion to \$9.5 trillion.

The line that connects the three points in panel (c) is the aggregate demand curve, *AD*, and it indicates the level of aggregate output corresponding to each of the three real

FIGURE 10.4

Deriving the AD Curve

The *MP* curve in panel (a) shows that as inflation rises from 1.0% to 2.0% to 3.0%, the real interest rate rises from 1.5% to 2.0% to 2.5%. The *IS* curve in panel (b) then shows that higher real interest rates lead to lower planned investment spending and hence aggregate output falls from \$10.5 trillion to \$10.0 trillion to \$9.5 trillion. Finally, panel (c) plots the level of equilibrium output corresponding to each of the three real interest rates: the line that connects these points is the *AD* curve and it is downward sloping.



interest rates consistent with equilibrium in the goods market for any given inflation rate. The aggregate demand curve has a downward slope, because a higher inflation rate leads the central bank to raise real interest rates, thereby lowering planned spending, and hence lowering the level of equilibrium aggregate output.

By using some algebra (see the box, “Deriving the Aggregate Demand Curve Algebraically”), the *AD* curve in Figure 10.4 can be written numerically as follows:

$$Y = 11 - 0.5 \pi \quad (3)$$

Factors That Shift the Aggregate Demand Curve

Movements along the aggregate demand curve describe how the equilibrium level of aggregate output changes when the inflation rate changes. When factors beside the inflation rate change, however, the aggregate demand curve can shift. We first review the factors that shift the *IS* curve, and then consider the factors that shift the *AD* curve.

SHIFTS IN THE *IS* CURVE. We saw in the previous chapter that five factors cause the *IS* curve to shift. It turns out that the same factors cause the aggregate demand curve to shift as well:

1. Autonomous consumption expenditure
2. Autonomous investment spending
3. Government purchases
4. Taxes
5. Autonomous net exports

Deriving the Aggregate Demand Curve Algebraically

To derive the numerical *AD* curve, we start by taking the numerical *IS* curve, Equation 11, from the previous chapter,

$$Y = 12 - r$$

and then substitute in for r from the numerical *MP* curve in Equation 2, $r = 1.0 + 0.5 \pi$, to yield

$$Y = 12 - (1.0 + 0.5 \pi) = (12 - 1) - 0.5 \pi = 11 - 0.5 \pi$$

as in the text.

Similarly, we can derive a more general version of the *AD* curve using the algebraic version of the *IS* curve from Equation 10 in Chapter 9,

$$Y = [\bar{C} + \bar{I} + \bar{G} + \bar{N}\bar{X} - mpc \times \bar{T}] \times \frac{1}{1 - mpc} - \frac{c + d + e}{1 - mpc} \times r$$

and then substitute in for r from the algebraic *MP* curve in Equation 1, $r = \bar{r} + \lambda\pi$, to yield the more general *AD* curve:

$$Y = [\bar{C} + \bar{I} + \bar{G} + \bar{N}\bar{X} - mpc \times \bar{T}] \times \frac{1}{1 - mpc} - \frac{c + d + e}{1 - mpc} \times (\bar{r} + \lambda\pi) \quad (4)$$

We examine how changes in these factors lead to a shift in the aggregate demand curve in Figure 10.5.

Suppose that inflation is at 2.0% and so the MP curve shows that the real interest rate is at 2.0% in Figure 10.5 panel (a). The IS_1 curve in panel (b) then shows that the equilibrium level of output is at \$10 trillion at point A_1 , which corresponds to an equilibrium level of output of \$10 trillion at point A_1 on the AD_1 curve in panel (c). Now suppose there is a rise in, for example, government purchases by \$1 trillion. Panel (b) shows that with the inflation rate and real interest both held constant at 2.0%, the equilibrium moves from point A_1 to point A_2 , with output rising to \$12.5 trillion,³ so the IS curve shifts to the right from IS_1 to IS_2 . The rise in output to \$12.5 trillion means that holding inflation and the real interest rate constant, the equilibrium in panel (c) also moves from point A_1 to point A_2 , and so the AD curve also shifts to the right from AD_1 to AD_2 .

Figure 10.5 shows that **any factor that shifts the IS curve shifts the aggregate demand curve in the same direction**. Therefore, “animal spirits” that encourage a rise in autonomous consumption spending or planned investment spending, a rise in government purchases, a fall in taxes, or an autonomous rise in net exports—all of which shift the IS curve to the right—will also shift the aggregate demand curve to the right. Conversely, a fall in autonomous consumption spending, a fall in planned investment spending, a fall in government purchases, a rise in taxes, or a fall in net exports will cause the aggregate demand curve to shift to the left.

SHIFTS IN THE MP CURVE. We now examine what happens to the aggregate demand curve when the MP curve shifts. Suppose that the Federal Reserve decides to autonomously tighten monetary policy by raising the real interest rate by one percentage point at any given level of the inflation rate because it is worried about the economy overheating. At an inflation rate of 2.0%, the real interest rate rises from 2.0% to 3.0% in Figure 10.6. The MP curve shifts up from MP_1 to MP_2 in panel (a). Panel (b) shows that when the inflation rate is at 2.0%, the higher interest rate results in the equilibrium moving from point A_1 to A_2 on the IS curve with output falling from \$10 trillion to \$9 trillion. The lower output of \$9 trillion occurs because the higher real interest rate leads to a decline in consumption, investment, and net exports, which lowers aggregate demand. The lower output of \$9 trillion then decreases the equilibrium output level from point A_1 to point A_2 in panel (c) and so the AD curve shifts to the left from AD_1 to AD_2 .

Our conclusion from Figure 10.6 is that **an autonomous tightening of monetary policy—that is, a rise in the real interest rate at any given inflation rate—shifts the aggregate demand curve to the left. Similarly, an autonomous easing of monetary policy shifts the aggregate demand curve to the right.**

We have now derived and analyzed the aggregate demand curve—an essential element in the aggregate demand and supply framework that we examine in the next two chapters. We will use the aggregate demand curve in this framework to determine both aggregate output and inflation, as well as to examine events that cause these variables to change.

³As we saw in the numerical example in Chapter 9, a rise in government purchases by \$1 trillion leads to a \$2.5 trillion increase in equilibrium output at any given real interest rate, and this is why output rises from \$10 trillion to \$12.5 trillion when the real interest rate is 2.0%.

FIGURE 10.5

Shift in the AD Curve From Shifts in the IS Curve

At a 2% inflation rate in panel (a), the monetary policy curve indicates that the real interest rate is 2%. An increase in government purchases shifts the IS curve to the right in panel (b). At a given inflation rate and real interest rate of 2.0%, equilibrium output rises from \$10 trillion to \$12.5 trillion, which is shown as a movement from point A₁ to point A₂ in panel (c), shifting the aggregate demand curve to the right from AD₁ to AD₂. Any factor that shifts the IS curve shifts the AD curve in the same direction.

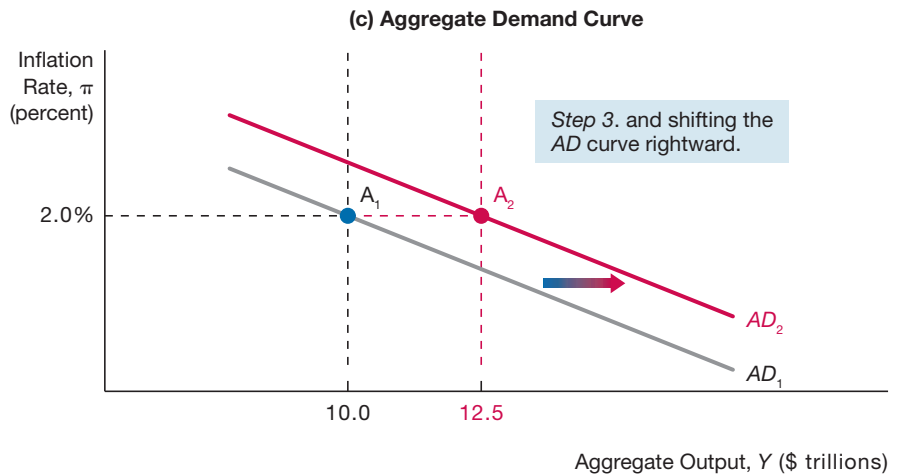
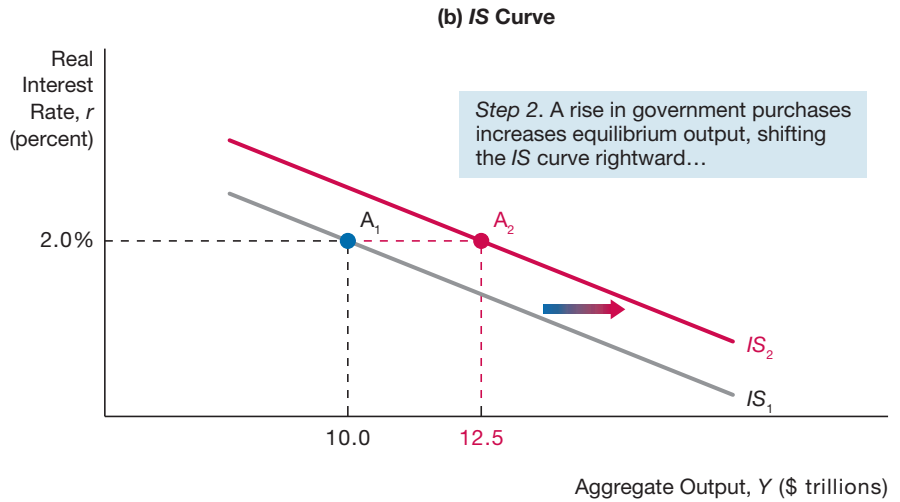
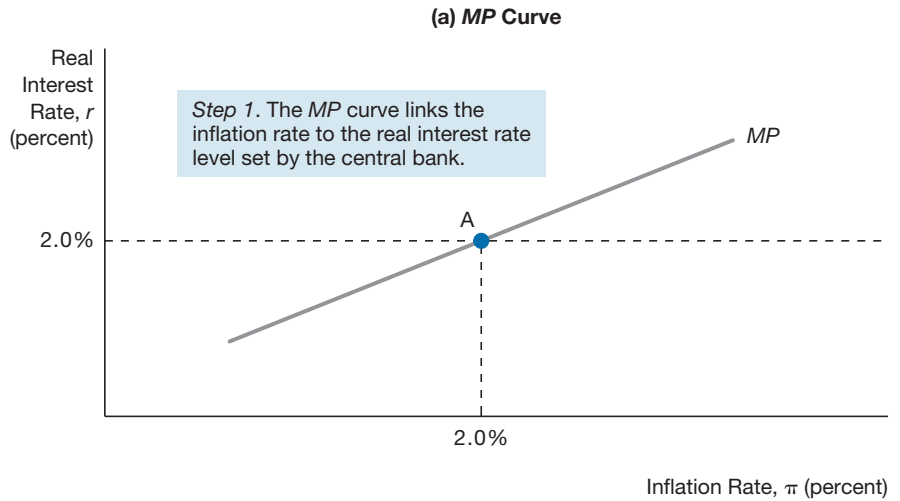
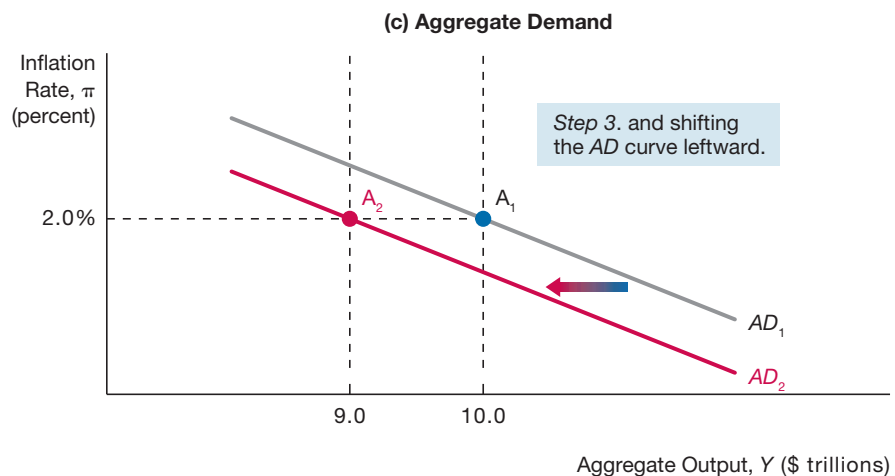
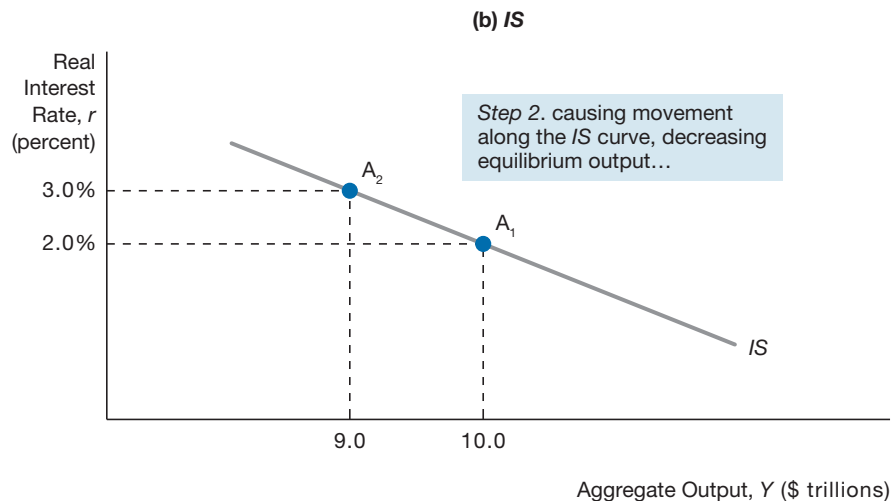
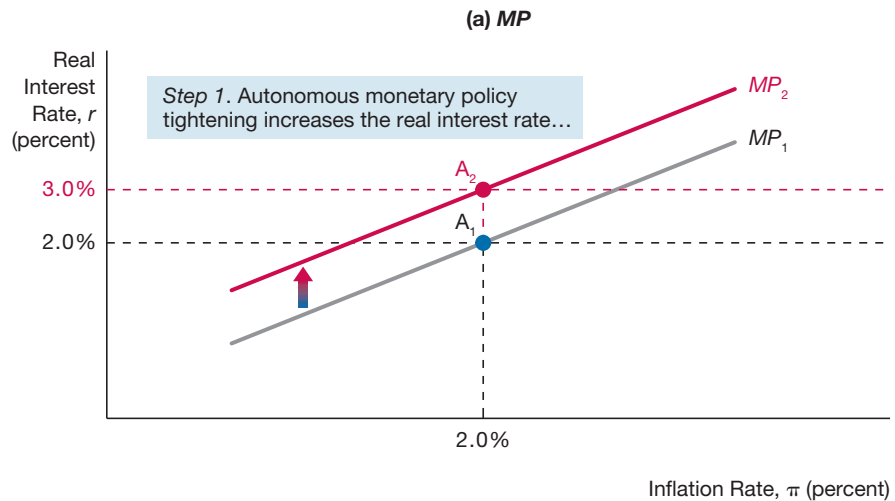


FIGURE 10.6

Shift in the AD Curve from Autonomous Monetary Policy Tightening

Autonomous monetary tightening that raises real interest rates by one percentage point at any given inflation rate shifts the MP curve up from MP_1 to MP_2 in panel (a). With the inflation rate at 2.0%, the higher 3% interest rate results in a movement from point A_1 to A_2 on the IS curve, with output falling from \$10 trillion to \$9 trillion. This change in equilibrium output leads to movement from point A_1 to point A_2 in panel (c), shifting the aggregate demand curve to the left from AD_1 to AD_2 .



The Money Market and Interest Rates

Earlier in the chapter, we gave only a very brief description of how the Federal Reserve sets the federal funds rate. Here we will go into more detail to describe how the Federal Reserve sets this nominal interest rate by analyzing the market for money using the **liquidity preference framework**, which determines the equilibrium nominal interest rate by equating the supply and demand for money.

Liquidity Preference and the Demand for Money

John Maynard Keynes developed a theory of money demand that he described as *liquidity preference theory*—hence the name of the framework—that carefully distinguishes between nominal quantities and real quantities. The nominal quantity of money is in terms of units of currency, like \$50 billion. Liquidity preference theory, however, examines the demand for money in terms of the real goods and services it can buy. So, for example, if the price level doubled, the same \$50 billion would only buy half as many goods. Keynes reasoned that when people decide how much money they want to hold (demand), they consider **real money balances**, the quantity of money in real terms.

In this model, demand for real money balances depends on real income, Y , and the nominal interest rate, i . We present Keynes's liquidity preference theory in equation form as follows:

$$M^d/P = L(i, Y) \quad (5)$$

- +

We refer to Equation 5 as the **liquidity preference function**: The minus sign below i means that as the nominal interest rate, i , rises, the demand for real money balances falls; the plus sign below Y means that as income, Y , rises, the demand for real money balances also rises. (See the chapter appendix for further discussion of Keynesian and other theories of money demand, as well as the empirical evidence on money demand.)

Why would the demand for real money balances have a negative relationship with the nominal interest rate i ? The concept of **opportunity cost** you learned in your principles of economics course, the amount of income forgone (sacrificed) by holding money rather than alternative assets such as bonds, provides the intuition. In Keynes' analysis, money earns little, if any, interest, since it is held as currency or in checking accounts. The opportunity cost of holding money is i , the nominal interest paid on bonds. As the interest rate i rises, it becomes more costly to hold money instead of bonds—that is, the opportunity cost rises—and the quantity of money demanded falls. Note that the demand for real money balances is related to the *nominal* interest rate i , while spending decisions are related to the *real* interest rate.

Real money balances are positively related to income for two reasons.

1. As income rises, households and firms conduct more transactions and so keep more money on hand to make purchases.
2. Higher incomes make households and firms wealthier, and the wealthy tend to hold larger quantities of all financial assets, including money.

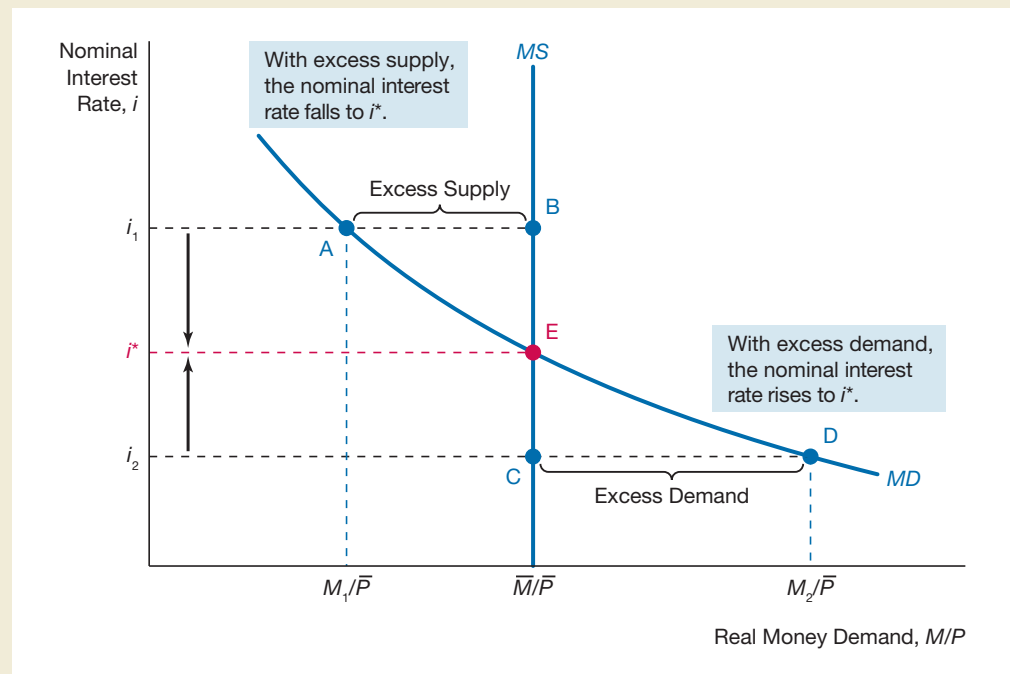
Demand Curve for Money

The first step in our analysis is to use the liquidity preference function to obtain a demand curve that shows the relationship between the quantity demanded of real money balances and the interest rate when we hold all other economic variables, such as income, constant by treating their values as given. Because our analysis is for the short run, we will assume that prices are sticky and so the price level is fixed in the short run at \bar{P} . Referring to Figure 10.7, suppose that for a given level of income, at an interest rate of i_1 , the quantity of real money balances that people want to hold is M_1/\bar{P} , which we mark as point A. As the liquidity preference function shows, lower interest rates encourage firms and households to desire higher quantities of real money balances, since the opportunity cost of holding money falls. When the interest rate falls to i^* , the quantity of real money balances demanded rises to \bar{M}/\bar{P} , marked as point E. As the rate falls to i_2 and the opportunity cost of money declines further, the quantity of real money balances demanded rises again to M_2/\bar{P} , at point D. Connecting these points—A, E, and D—creates the demand curve for real money balances, MD , in Figure 10.7. It slopes downward, since lower interest rates increase the quantity of real money balances demanded, all else being equal.

FIGURE 10.7

Equilibrium in the Money Market

The demand curve for real money balances, MD , slopes downward because as the interest rate and the opportunity cost of holding money falls, the quantity of money demanded rises. The supply curve for real money balances, MS , is vertical because the central bank sets the money supply at \bar{M} and the price level is given at \bar{P} in the short run, so the quantity supplied of real money balances is fixed at \bar{M}/\bar{P} at any given interest rate. Equilibrium in the money market occurs at the intersection of the MD and MS curves at point E and an equilibrium nominal interest rate of i^* .



Supply Curve for Money

A central bank, such the Federal Reserve in the United States, can fix the money supply close to any level it desires by buying or selling government securities in open market operations, which we described in Chapter 5. Imagine that the Fed buys \$1 billion of government securities (bonds) from banks. The Fed pays for the bonds by depositing \$1 billion into accounts that banks must maintain at the central bank. These deposits, which we refer to as **reserves**, represent increased liquidity in the banking system. Flush with additional liquidity from higher reserves, banks loan out more money to their customers, increasing bank deposits. Since these deposits are included in the money supply, as we saw in Chapter 5, the **open market purchase leads to an increase in liquidity and the money supply**. Similar reasoning leads to the conclusion that an **open market sale of government securities leads to a decrease in liquidity and a decrease in the money supply**.

If the Fed can fix the money supply at the level \bar{M} , and the price level is also fixed in the short run at \bar{P} , then the quantity of real money balances supplied, M^s/P , is fixed at \bar{M}/\bar{P} regardless of the interest rate. Thus the supply curve showing the quantity of real money balances supplied at each level of the nominal interest rate is a vertical line, shown in Figure 10.7 as the line MS .

Equilibrium in the Money Market

As the supply and demand analysis you learned in your principles course tells us, market equilibrium occurs when the amount people are willing to buy (quantity demanded) at a given price equals the amount supplied (quantity supplied) at a given price. In the money market, equilibrium occurs when the quantity of real money balances demanded equals the quantity of real money balances supplied:

$$\frac{M^d}{P} = \frac{M^s}{P} \quad (6)$$

In Figure 10.7, equilibrium occurs at point E (for equilibrium), where the demand and supply curves, MD and MS , intersect at an interest rate of i^* . Figure 10.7 demonstrates the tendency of interest rates to return to the equilibrium rate i^* when rates are too high or too low.

RESPONSE TO EXCESS SUPPLY. Once people have satisfied their demand for real money balances, they want to put any additional money into alternative assets like bonds or interest-bearing bank accounts. This condition of *excess supply* of money occurs when the interest rate is higher than the equilibrium level. At the rate i_1 , in Figure 10.7, the quantity of real money balances supplied (point B) is greater than the quantity demanded (point A). As excess money pours into alternative assets, banks and bond issuers will realize they can pay lower rates of interest and still attract the same number of customers. As the downward arrow shows, the issuers of these assets will continue lowering interest rates to the equilibrium level i^* , at which point the excess supply of real money balances is eliminated.

RESPONSE TO EXCESS DEMAND. When people want to hold more money than is available, they will sell alternative assets like bonds and withdraw from interest-bearing bank accounts until they replenish their desired level of real money balances. This scenario of excess demand for money occurs when the interest rate is below the equilibrium interest rate i^* . In Figure 10.7, when the rate is at i_2 , the quantity demanded at point D exceeds the quantity supplied at point C. People will pull money from bonds and bank accounts, inducing banks and bond issuers to raise the interest rates they offer to acquire new sources of funds. Rates will keep rising until they reach the equilibrium level i^* , when the excess demand for money is eliminated.

Changes in the Equilibrium Interest Rate

We can now use the supply and demand framework for the money market to analyze why interest rates change. To avoid confusion, remember the distinction between *movements along* a demand (or supply) curve and *shifts* in a demand (or supply) curve. When quantity demanded changes as a result of a change in the interest rate, there is a *movement along* the demand curve, such as the change in the quantity demanded when we move from point A to E to D in Figure 10.7. A *shift in* the demand (or supply) curve, by contrast, occurs when the quantity demanded (or supplied) changes *at each given interest rate* in response to a change in some other factor besides the interest rate. When changes to one of these factors shifts the supply or demand curve, there will be a new equilibrium value for the interest rate.

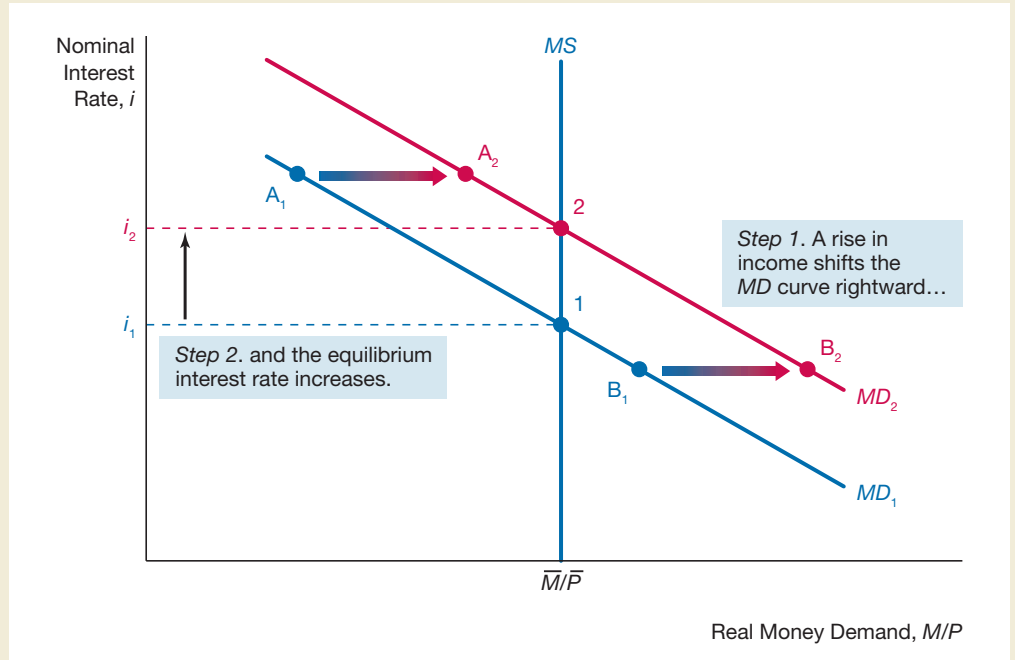
FACTORS THAT SHIFT THE DEMAND CURVE. The liquidity preference function in Equation 5 states that the nominal interest rate i and real income Y determine demand for real money balances. As we've just seen in Figure 10.7, changes in i do not shift the demand curve, they instead lead to movement along the demand curve. A change in Y does shift the demand curve, since the quantity of real money balances demanded changes at any given interest rate. Figure 10.8 illustrates this effect. When income rises, demand for money increases from point A_1 on the initial demand curve to point A_2 at the same level of interest rates. At another level of interest rates, demand for money increases from point B_1 on the initial demand curve to point B_2 . Continuing this reasoning for every point on the initial demand curve MD_1 , we can see that the demand curve shifts to the right from MD_1 to MD_2 .

With the supply of money balances set at $\overline{M}/\overline{P}$ and the supply curve stable at MS , the rightward shift of the demand curve moves the new equilibrium to point 2 at the intersection of the MD_2 curve with the supply curve MS . As you can see, the equilibrium interest rate rises from i_1 to i_2 . **Thus, when income rises (holding other variables constant such as the price level and the quantity of money), interest rates will rise.**

FACTORS THAT SHIFT THE SUPPLY CURVE. The quantity supplied of real money balances, M^s/P , can change, shifting the supply curve, for either of two reasons: 1) the quantity of money supplied by the Federal Reserve, M^s , changes, or 2) the price level, P , changes.

FIGURE 10.8**Response to Shift in the Demand Curve from a Rise in Income**

If income rises, the demand curve shifts to the right from MD_1 to MD_2 as a result of the change in quantity demanded at all interest rates. Equilibrium moves from point 1 to point 2 and the interest rate rises from i_1 to i_2 .



If the Federal Reserve increases the money supply from \bar{M}_1 to \bar{M}_2 , with the price level fixed at \bar{P} , the quantity of real money balances supplied rises at any given interest rate. The supply curve then shifts to the right from MS_1 to MS_2 in panel (a) of Figure 10.9. The equilibrium moves from point 1 down to point 2, where the MS_2 supply curve intersects with the demand curve MD and the equilibrium interest rate falls from i_1 to i_2 . **When the money supply increases (holding other economic variables constant), interest rates will decline.**

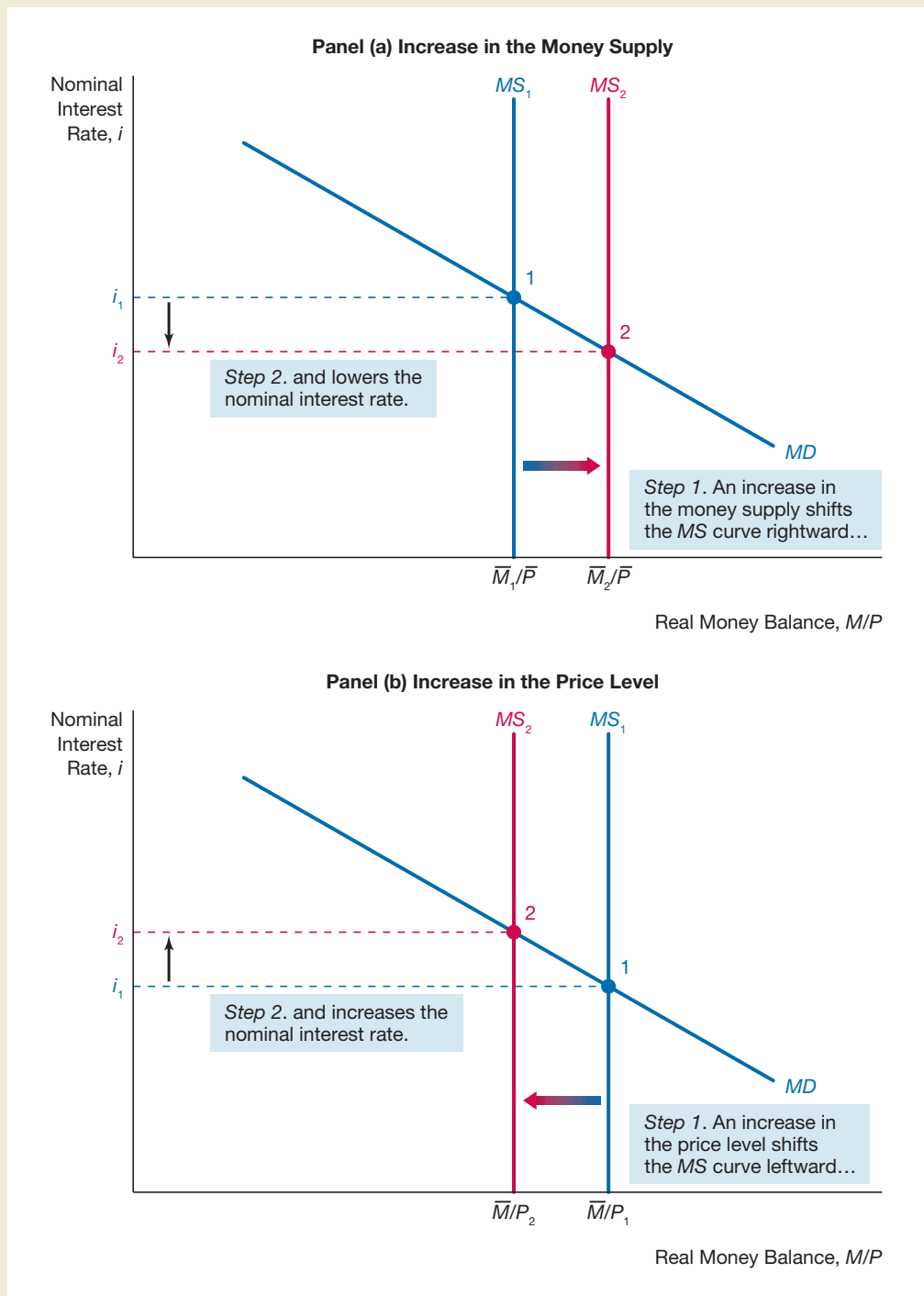
If, holding the money supply constant, the price level rises from \bar{P}_1 to \bar{P}_2 , the quantity supplied of real money balances, M^s/P , falls at any given interest rate. The supply curve then shifts to the left from MS_1 to MS_2 in panel (b) of Figure 10.9, and the equilibrium moves from point 1 up to point 2, with the equilibrium interest rate rising from i_1 to i_2 . **When the price level rises (holding the supply of money and other variables constant), interest rates will rise.**⁴

⁴The liquidity preference analysis here provides another rationale for the Taylor principle when the path of the money supply and inflation expectations are unchanged. A rise in inflation means that the price level will be higher than it otherwise would be and so we are in the situation depicted in panel (b) of Figure 10.9. With the same level of the money supply, the supply of real money balances falls, the MS curves shifts to the left and both nominal and real interest rates rise (because inflation expectations are unchanged). Higher inflation therefore induces a higher real interest rate, as the monetary policy curve indicates.

FIGURE 10.9

Response to Shifts in the Supply Curve

In panel (a), when the money supply rises, the supply curve shifts to the right from MS_1 to MS_2 as a result of the change in quantity supplied at all interest rates. Equilibrium moves from point 1 to point 2 and the interest rate falls from i_1 to i_2 . In panel (b), when the price level rises, the supply curve shifts to the left from MS_1 to MS_2 as a result of the change in quantity supplied at all interest rates. Equilibrium moves from point 1 to point 2 and the interest rate rises from i_1 to i_2 .



SUMMARY

1. When the Federal Reserve lowers the federal funds rate by providing more liquidity to the banking system, real interest rates fall in the short run; and when the Federal Reserve raises rates by reducing the liquidity in the banking system, real interest rates rise in the short run.
2. The monetary policy (*MP*) curve shows the relationship between inflation and the real interest rate arising from monetary authorities' actions. Monetary policy follows the Taylor principle, in which higher inflation results in higher real interest rates, as represented by a movement up along the monetary policy curve. An autonomous tightening of monetary policy occurs when monetary policy makers raise the real interest rate at any given inflation rate, resulting in an upward shift in the monetary policy curve. An autonomous easing of monetary policy and a downward shift in the monetary policy curve occurs when monetary policy makers lower the real interest rate at any given inflation rate.
3. The aggregate demand curve tells us the level of equilibrium aggregate output (which equals the total quantity of output demanded) for any given inflation rate. It slopes downward because a higher inflation rate leads the central bank to raise real interest rates, which leads to a lower level of equilibrium output. The aggregate demand curve shifts in the same direction as a shift in the *IS* curve; hence it shifts to the right when government purchases increase, taxes decrease, "animal spirits" encourage consumer and business spending, or autonomous net exports increase. An autonomous tightening of monetary policy, that is an increase in real interest rates at any given inflation rate, leads to a decline in aggregate demand and the aggregate demand curve shifts to the left.
4. The liquidity preference framework, which analyzes how nominal interest rates are determined as a result of the interaction of the demand and supply of real money balances in the money market, indicates that nominal interest rates rise when income or the price level rises and falls when the money supply is increased.

KEY TERMS

aggregate demand curve, p. 245
 autonomous easing of monetary policy, p. 243
 autonomous tightening of monetary policy, p. 243

liquidity preference framework, p. 251
 liquidity preference function, p. 251
 monetary policy (*MP*) curve, p. 241

opportunity cost, p. 251
 real money balances, p. 251
 reserves, p. 253
 Taylor principle, p. 242

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

The Federal Reserve and Monetary Policy

1. What is the real interest rate? Why can the Fed control the real interest in the short run but not in the long run?

The Monetary Policy Curve

2. What is the monetary policy curve? Why does it slope upward?
3. How does an autonomous tightening or an easing of monetary policy by the Fed affect the *MP* curve?

The Aggregate Demand Curve

4. What is the aggregate demand curve? Why does it slope downward?
5. How do changes in planned expenditures affect the aggregate demand curve?
6. How does an autonomous tightening or easing of monetary policy by the Fed affect the aggregate demand curve?

The Money Market and Interest Rates

7. In Keynes's liquidity preference theory, what variables determine the demand for real money balances? How does the demand for real money balances respond to changes in each of these variables?
8. What are open market operations? How does the Fed use these to increase or decrease the money supply?
9. What condition is required for equilibrium in the money market? Why does the money market move toward equilibrium?
10. What can increase the equilibrium interest rate in the liquidity preference framework?

PROBLEMS

All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

The Monetary Policy Curve

1. Assume the monetary policy curve is given by $r = 1.5 + 0.75 \pi$.
 - a) Calculate the real interest rate when the inflation rate is 2%, 3%, and 4%.
 - b) Plot the monetary policy curve and identify the previous points.
2. Refer to the monetary policy curve described in Problem 1. Assume now that the monetary policy curve is $r = 2.5 + 0.75 \pi$.
 - a) Does the new monetary policy curve represent an autonomous tightening or loosening of monetary policy?
 - b) Plot the new monetary policy curve on the same graph as in the previous problem.

The Aggregate Demand Curve

3. Suppose the monetary policy curve is $r = 1.5 + 0.75 \pi$ and that the IS curve is $Y = 13 - r$.
 - a) Find the expression for the aggregate demand curve.
 - b) Calculate aggregate output when the inflation rate is 2%, 3% and 4%.
 - c) Plot the aggregate demand curve and identify the previous three points.
4. What would be the effect of an increase in U.S. net exports on the aggregate demand curve? Would an increase in net exports affect the monetary policy curve? Explain why or why not.
5. Suppose that the U.S. economy does not recover from the 2007 contraction until 2012, when a new Fed chair is appointed. Suppose his or her approach to monetary policy can be summarized by the following statement: "I care only about increasing employment; inflation has been at very low levels for quite some time; my priority is to ease monetary policy to promote employment."
 - a) Would you expect the monetary policy curve to shift upwards or downwards?
 - b) What would be the effect on the aggregate demand curve?

The Money Market and Interest Rates

6. Assume that the demand for real money balances is given by $\frac{M^d}{P} = \frac{Y}{6} - 150i$ (an interest rate of 2% enters this formula as 2). Suppose that $Y = 12,900$ billion, so that $\frac{M^d}{P} = \frac{12,900}{6} - 150i$ (in billions of \$).
- Calculate the demand for real money balances if the interest rate is 4%, 3%, and 1% respectively.
 - Plot these points on a graph with the nominal interest rate on the vertical axis and the quantity of real money balances in the horizontal axis.
7. Suppose the economy experiences a contraction in aggregate output. How would this event affect the demand curve for real money balances? On the same graph, draw the original and the new demand curve, if necessary.
8. Assuming the demand for real money balances is given by $\frac{M^d}{P} = \frac{Y}{6} - 150i$.
- Find the equilibrium interest rate if the money supply is \$1,700 billion and output equals \$12,900 billion.
 - Find the new equilibrium interest rate if the money supply is \$1,700 billion and output increases to \$13,800 billion.
 - Plot both interest rates and demand curves in the same graph.
9. Consider the money market. Suppose that the U.S. economy finally recovers from the 2007 crisis and aggregate output increases. Describe the effect on the interest rate if the Federal Reserve decides to increase the money supply at the same time that aggregate output increases.



MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.



Chapter 10

Appendix

The Demand for Money

In this appendix, we go into more detail on Keynesian and other theories of the demand for money. In addition, we examine the empirical evidence on the demand for money.

Keynesian Theories of Money Demand

In his famous 1936 book *The General Theory of Employment, Interest and Money*, John Maynard Keynes abandoned the quantity theory view we developed in Chapter 5 that velocity was a constant and developed a theory of money demand that emphasized the importance of interest rates. In his liquidity preference theory, Keynes presented three motives behind the demand for money: the transactions motive, the precautionary motive, and the speculative motive.

Transactions Motive

In the quantity theory approach, individuals are assumed to hold money because it is a medium of exchange that can be used to carry out everyday transactions. Keynes initially accepted the quantity theory view that the transactions component is proportional to income. Later, he and other economists recognized that new methods for payment, referred to as **payment technology**, could also affect the demand for money. For example, credit cards enable consumers to make even very small purchases without needing to hold money. Electronic payments that can be made from investors' brokerage accounts can also reduce money demand. As payment technology advances, the demand for money would be likely to decline relative to income.

Indeed, economists have been predicting a “cashless society” for decades, which would drive money demand to zero. However, the movement to a cashless society has been much slower than many have predicted.

Precautionary Motive

Keynes also recognized that people hold money as a cushion against unexpected needs. Suppose that you have been thinking about buying a new Wii entertainment system and now see that it is on sale at 25% off. If you are holding money as a precaution for just such an occurrence, you can immediately buy it. Keynes argued that the precautionary money balances people want to hold would also be proportional to income.

Speculative Motive

Keynes also believed people choose to hold money as a store of wealth, which he called the *speculative motive*. Because the definition of money in Keynes's analysis includes currency (which earns no interest) and checking account deposits (which typically earn little interest), he assumed that money earns no interest and hence its opportunity cost relative to holding other assets, such as bonds, is the nominal interest rate on bonds, i . As the interest rate i rises, the opportunity cost of money rises (it is more costly to hold money relative to bonds) and the quantity of money demanded falls.

Putting the Three Motives Together

Combining the three motives for holding money balances into a demand for real money balances led to what Keynes called the liquidity preference function, which we presented as Equation 5 in the chapter:

$$\frac{M^d}{P} = L(i, Y) \quad (1)$$

- +

Equation 1 says that the demand for real money balances is negatively related to the nominal interest rate and is positively related to real income.

Later Keynesian economists, such as Nobel Prize winner James Tobin, expanded the analysis and showed that interest rates play a more important role in money demand than even Keynes supposed. They demonstrated that even the transactions and precautionary demand for money would also be negatively related to the interest rate.¹

An important implication of Keynesian theories of money demand is that velocity is not a constant and will fluctuate with changes in interest rates. To illustrate, we write the liquidity preference function as follows:

$$\frac{P}{M^d} = \frac{1}{L(i, Y)}$$

Multiplying both sides of this equation by Y and recognizing that we can replace M^d by M because they must be equal in money market equilibrium, we solve for velocity:

$$V = \frac{PY}{M} = \frac{Y}{L(i, Y)} \quad (2)$$

¹Three famous papers that elaborated on Keynes's approach to the demand for money are as follows: William J. Baumol, "The Transactions Demand for Cash: An Inventory Theoretic Approach," *Quarterly Journal of Economics* 66 (1952): 545–556; James Tobin, "The Interest Elasticity of the Transactions Demand for Cash," *Review of Economics and Statistics* 38 (1956): 241–247; and James Tobin, "Liquidity Preference as Behavior Towards Risk," *Review of Economic Studies* 25 (1958): 65–86. For further discussion of theories of the demand for money, see David Laidler, *The Demand for Money: Theories, Evidence and Problems*, 4th edition (New York: Harper Collins, 1993).

We know that the demand for money is negatively related to interest rates; when i goes up, $L(i, Y)$ declines, and therefore velocity rises. Because interest rates have substantial fluctuations, Keynesian theories of the demand for money indicate that velocity has substantial fluctuations as well. Thus Keynesian theories cast doubt on the classical quantity theory view that nominal income is determined primarily by movements in the quantity of money.

Portfolio Theories of Money Demand

Related to Keynes's analysis of the demand for money are so-called **portfolio theories** of money demand, in which people decide how much of an asset such as money they want to hold as part of their overall portfolio of assets.²

Portfolio Theory

Portfolio theory presents four main determinants of the demand for an asset:

1. *Wealth*, the total resources owned by individuals, including all assets
2. **Expected return**, the return expected on the asset relative to other assets
3. **Risk**, the degree of uncertainty associated with the return on the asset relative to other assets
4. **Liquidity**, the ease and speed with which an asset can be turned into cash relative to other assets

The demand for an asset should be positively related to wealth: as wealth increases, investors have more resources available to purchase assets. The demand for an asset should be positively related to the expected return on the asset relative to other assets, because as the expected return on an asset rises relative to other assets, it becomes more desirable. The demand for an asset is negatively related to risk. Most people do not like risk and are thus said to be **risk averse**, and so find riskier assets less desirable. The demand for an asset is positively related to liquidity, because being able to turn an asset into cash easily and quickly makes it more desirable.

Portfolio Theory and Keynesian Liquidity Preference

Portfolio theory can justify the conclusion from the Keynesian liquidity preference function that the demand for real money balances is positively related to income and negatively related to the nominal interest rate. Income and wealth tend to move together: when income is higher, wealth is likely to be as well, and the demand for real money balances will be higher.

Also, as interest rates rise, the expected return for money does not change. However, the return for bonds, an alternative asset, goes up. Thus, while the expected *absolute* return of money did not change, money's expected return *relative* to bonds went down. In other words, higher interest rates make money less desirable, and the demand for real money balances falls.

²This is the approach taken by Milton Friedman in his famous paper, "The Quantity Theory of Money: A Restatement," in *Studies in the Quantity Theory of Money*, ed. Milton Friedman (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1956), 3–21.

Other Factors That Affect the Demand for Money

Portfolio theory indicates that other factors besides income and the nominal interest rate can affect the demand for money. We look at each of these in turn.

WEALTH. Portfolio theory posits that as wealth increases, investors have more resources to purchase assets, increasing the demand for money. However, when income is held constant, greater wealth has only a small effect on the demand for money. In general, investors will hold only a small amount of money in their investment portfolio, preferring interest-bearing assets with similar risk and liquidity profiles such as money market mutual funds that are not included in measures of money such as M1. Currency and checkable deposits are sometimes said to be **dominated assets**, because investors can hold other assets that pay higher returns and yet are perceived to be just as safe.

RISK. It's hard to imagine an asset less risky than money. Currency will always be accepted, unless there's a revolution and the new government does not accept the old government's currency. And bank deposits are safe as long as there is deposit insurance. In portfolio theory, however, risk is always measured relative to another asset. Thus, if the stock market becomes more volatile, money can become less risky relative to stocks and demand for it will increase. In addition, while money is extremely safe on a nominal basis, its real return (the nominal return minus expected inflation) can become highly variable when inflation becomes very variable. Higher variability in the real return of money lowers demand for money, as people shift into alternative assets known as **inflation hedges**, whose real returns are less affected than that of money when inflation varies. Popular inflation hedges include TIPS (Treasury Inflation Protected Securities), gold, and real estate.

LIQUIDITY OF OTHER ASSETS. In recent years, financial innovation has led to the development of new liquid assets, such as money market mutual funds or home equity lines of credit, that allow households to write checks that are backed by their homes. As these alternative assets become more liquid, the relative liquidity of money falls and so the demand for money would fall as well.

Summary

Our analysis of the demand for money using Keynesian theories and portfolio theories indicates that there are seven factors that affect the demand for money: interest rates, income, payment technology, wealth, riskiness of other assets, inflation risk, and liquidity of other assets. As a study aid, Table 10A1.1 indicates the response of money demand to changes in each of these factors and gives a brief synopsis of the reasoning behind them.

Empirical Evidence on the Demand for Money

Here we examine the empirical evidence on the two key issues that distinguish different theories of money demand and affect their conclusions about whether the quantity of money is the primary determinant of aggregate spending: Is the demand for money sensitive to changes in interest rates and is the demand for money function stable over time?

TABLE 10A1.1

Factors That Determine the Demand for Money

Variable	Change in Money Demand		Reason
Variable	Variable	Response	Reason
Interest rates	↑	↓	Opportunity cost of money rises
Income	↑	↑	Higher transactions
Payment technology	↑	↓	Less need for money in transactions
Wealth	↑	↑	More resources to put into money
Risk of other assets	↑	↑	Money relatively less risky and so more desirable
Inflation risk	↑	↓	Money relatively more risky and so less desirable
Liquidity of other assets	↑	↓	Money relatively less liquid and so less desirable

Interest Rates and Money Demand

We have established that if interest rates do not affect the demand for money, velocity is more likely to be constant—or at least predictable—so that the quantity theory view that aggregate spending is determined by the quantity of money is more likely to be true. However, the more sensitive the demand for money is to interest rates, the more unpredictable velocity will be, and the less clear the link between the money supply and aggregate spending will be. Indeed, there is an extreme case of ultrasensitivity of the demand for money to interest rates, called the **liquidity trap**, in which conventional monetary policy has no direct effect on aggregate spending, because a change in the money supply has no effect on interest rates.³

The evidence on the interest sensitivity of the demand for money is remarkably consistent. Neither extreme case is supported by the data: in situations in which nominal interest rates have not hit a floor of zero, the demand for money is sensitive to interest rates, and there is little evidence that a liquidity trap has ever existed. However, when nominal interest rates fall to zero, they can go no lower. In this situation, a liquidity trap has occurred because the demand for money is now completely flat. Indeed, exactly this situation has occurred in the United States in recent years, which is why the Federal Reserve has had to resort to nonconventional monetary policy.

Stability of Money Demand

If the money demand function, like the one in Equation 1, is unstable and undergoes substantial, unpredictable shifts as Keynes believed, then velocity is unpredictable, and the quantity of money may not be tightly linked to aggregate spending, as it is in the quantity theory. The stability of the money demand function is also crucial to whether the Federal

³If the demand for money is ultrasensitive to interest rates, a tiny change in interest rates produces a very large change in the quantity of money demanded. Hence, in this case, the demand for money is completely flat in the supply and demand diagrams of Chapter 10. Therefore, a change in the money supply that shifts the money supply curve to the right or left results in it intersecting the flat money demand curve at the same unchanged interest rate.

Reserve should target interest rates or the money supply. If the money demand function is unstable and so the money supply is not closely linked to aggregate spending, then the level of interest rates the Fed sets will provide more information about the stance of monetary policy than will the money supply.

Until the early 1970s, evidence strongly supported the stability of the money demand function. However, after 1973, the rapid pace of financial innovation, which changed the items that could be used for money, led to substantial instability in estimated money demand functions. The instability of the money demand function calls into question whether our theories and empirical analyses are adequate. It also has important implications for the conduct of monetary policy, because it casts doubt on the usefulness of the money demand function as a tool to provide guidance to policy makers. In particular, because the money demand function has become unstable, velocity is now harder to predict. Monetary policy makers have found that the money supply does not provide reliable information on the future course of the economy, leading them to think of monetary policy in terms of the setting of interest rates, as reflected by the monetary policy curve. The instability of money demand has thus led to a downgrading of the focus on money supply in the conduct of monetary policy.

SUMMARY

1. John Maynard Keynes suggested three motives for holding money: the transactions motive, the precautionary motive, and the speculative motive. His resulting liquidity preference theory views the transactions and precautionary components of money demand as proportional to income. However, the speculative component of money demand is viewed as sensitive to interest rates as well as to expectations about the future movements of interest rates. This theory, then, implies that velocity is unstable and cannot be treated as a constant.
2. Portfolio theory indicates that not only is the demand for money determined by interest rates, income, and payment technology, as in the Keynesian analysis, but also by wealth, riskiness of other assets, inflation risk, and liquidity of other assets.
3. There are two main conclusions from the research on the demand for money: The demand for money is sensitive to interest rates, but there is little evidence that it is or has been ultrasensitive (liquidity trap). Since 1973, money demand has been found to be unstable, with the most likely source of the instability being the rapid pace of financial innovation. Because the money demand function is found to be both unstable and sensitive to interest rates, velocity cannot be viewed as constant and is not easily predictable. This has led to a downgrading of the focus on money supply in the conduct of monetary policy.

KEY TERMS

dominated assets, p. 263
 expected return, p. 262
 liquidity, p. 262

liquidity trap, p. 264
 inflation hedges, p. 263
 payment technology, p. 260

portfolio theories, p. 262
 risk, p. 262
 risk averse, p. 262

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND PROBLEMS

1. What three motives for holding money did Keynes consider in his liquidity preference theory of the demand for real money balances? Based on these motives, what variables did he think determined the demand for money?
2. According to the portfolio theory of money demand, what are the four factors that determine money demand? What changes in these can increase the demand for money?
3. What evidence is used to assess the stability of the money demand function? What does the evidence suggest about the stability of money demand and how has this affected monetary policy making?
4. Suppose a new “payment technology” allows individuals to make payments using U.S. Treasury bonds (i.e., U.S. Treasury bonds are immediately cashed when needed to make a payment and that balance is transferred to the payee). How do you think this payment technology would affect the transaction components of the demand for money?
5. The use of some payment technologies requires some infrastructure (e.g., merchants need to have access to credit card swiping machines). In most developing countries, this infrastructure is either nonexistent or very costly. Everything else the same, would you expect the transaction component of the demand for money to be greater or smaller in a developing country than in a rich country?
6. In many countries people hold money as a cushion against unexpected needs arising from a variety of potential scenarios (e.g., banking crises, natural disasters, health problems, unemployment, etc.) that are not usually covered by insurance markets. Explain the effect of such behavior on the precautionary component of the demand for money.
7. Suppose the liquidity preference function is given by $L(i, Y) = \frac{Y}{8} - 1,000i$
8. Plot the values of velocity using data from the previous exercise and comment on the volatility (i.e., fluctuations) of velocity.
9. Explain how the following events will affect the demand for money according to the portfolio theory approach to money demand:
 - a) The economy experiences a business cycle contraction.
 - b) Brokerage fees decline, making bond transactions cheaper.
10. Suppose a given country experienced low and stable inflation rates for quite some time, but then inflation picked up and over the past decade has been relatively high and quite unpredictable. Explain how this new inflationary environment would affect the demand for money according to the portfolio theory of money demand. What would happen if the government decides to issue inflation protected securities?
11. Consider the portfolio theory of money demand. How do you think the demand for money will be affected during a hyperinflation (i.e., monthly inflation rates in excess of 50%)?
12. What would be the effect of a stock market crash on the demand for money according to the portfolio theory approach to money demand? (Hint: Consider both the increase in stock price volatility following a market crash and the decrease in wealth of stockholders).
13. Suppose that a plot of the values of M2 and nominal GDP for a given country over forty years shows that these two variables are very closely related. In particular, a plot of their ratio (nominal GDP/M2) yields very stable and easy to predict values. Based on this evidence, would you recommend the monetary authorities of this country to conduct monetary policy by focusing mostly on the money supply rather than on setting interest rates? Explain why.

According to the following table, calculate velocity using Equation 2:

	Period 1	Period 2	Period 3	Period 4	Period 5	Period 6	Period 7
Y (in billions)	12,000	12,500	12,250	12,500	12,800	13,000	13,200
Interest rate	0.05	0.07	0.03	0.05	0.07	0.04	0.06



11

Aggregate Supply and the Phillips Curve

Preview

In the 1960s, the Kennedy and Johnson administrations followed the advice of Nobel Prize winners, Paul Samuelson and Robert Solow, and pursued expansionary macroeconomic policies to raise inflation a little bit, with the expectation that unemployment would be permanently lower. They were disappointed when in the late 1960s and the 1970s, inflation accelerated and yet the unemployment rate stayed uncomfortably high. To understand why they were wrong, we turn to a concept called the *Phillips curve*, which describes the relationship between unemployment and inflation.

In the previous chapter, we derived the aggregate demand curve, which shows the relationship between the inflation rate and the level of aggregate output when the goods market is in equilibrium. But how do we determine aggregate output and inflation? The aggregate demand curve provides half of the story: we also need to factor in the relationship between these two variables that is provided by the *aggregate supply curve*, which we develop in this chapter.

The Phillips curve provides the intuition for the aggregate supply curve. First, we will see how the economic profession's views on the Phillips curve evolved over time and how it has affected thinking about macroeconomic policy. Then we can use the Phillips curve to derive the aggregate supply curve, which will allow us to complete our basic aggregate demand/aggregate supply framework for analyzing short-run economic fluctuations in the next chapter.

The Phillips Curve

In 1958, New Zealand economist A.W. Phillips published a famous empirical paper that examined the relationship between unemployment and wage growth in the United Kingdom.¹ For the years 1861 to 1957, he found that periods of low unemployment were associated with rapid rises in wages, while periods of high unemployment had low growth in wages. Other economists soon extended his work to many other countries. Because inflation is more central to macroeconomic issues than wage growth, they estimated the relationship of unemployment with inflation. The negative relationship between unemployment and inflation they found for many countries became known, naturally enough, as the **Phillips curve**.

The idea behind the Phillips curve is quite intuitive. When labor markets are *tight*—that is, the unemployment rate is low—firms may have difficulty hiring qualified workers and may even have a hard time keeping their present employees. Because of the shortage of workers in the labor market, firms will raise wages to attract needed workers and raise their prices at a more rapid rate.

Phillips Curve Analysis in the 1960s

Because wage inflation feeds directly into overall inflation, in the 1960s, the Phillips curve became extremely popular as an explanation for inflation fluctuations because it seemed to fit the data so well. As shown by panel (a) of Figure 11.1's plot of the U.S. inflation rate against the unemployment rate from 1950 to 1969, there is a very clear negative relationship between unemployment and inflation. The Phillips curve in that period seemed to imply that there is a long-run trade-off between unemployment and inflation—that is, policy makers can choose policies that lead to a higher rate of inflation and end up with a lower unemployment rate on a sustained basis. This apparent trade-off was very influential in policy circles in the 1960s, as we can see in the following Policy and Practice case.

Policy and Practice



The Phillips Curve Tradeoff and Macroeconomic Policy in the 1960s

In 1960, Paul Samuelson and Robert Solow published a paper outlining how policy makers could exploit the Phillips curve tradeoff. The policy maker could choose between two competing goals—inflation and unemployment—and decide how high an inflation rate he or she would be willing to accept to attain a lower unemployment rate.² Indeed, Samuelson and Solow even said that policy makers could achieve a “nonperfectionist” goal of a 3% unemployment rate at what they considered to be a tolerable inflation rate of 4–5% per year. This thinking was influential in the Kennedy and then Johnson administrations, and contributed to the adoption of policies in the mid-1960s to stimulate the economy and bring the unemployment rate down to low levels. At first these policies seemed to be successful because the

¹A.W. Phillips, “The Relationship Between Unemployment and the Rate of Change of Money Wages in the United Kingdom, 1861–1957,” *Economica* 25 (November 1958): 283–299.

²Paul A. Samuelson and Robert M. Solow, “Analytical Aspects of Anti-Inflation Policy,” *American Economic Review* 50 (May 1960, Papers and Proceedings): 177–194.

subsequent higher inflation rates were accompanied by a fall in the unemployment rate. However, the good times were not to last: from the late 1960s through the 1970s, inflation accelerated, yet the unemployment rate remained stubbornly high.

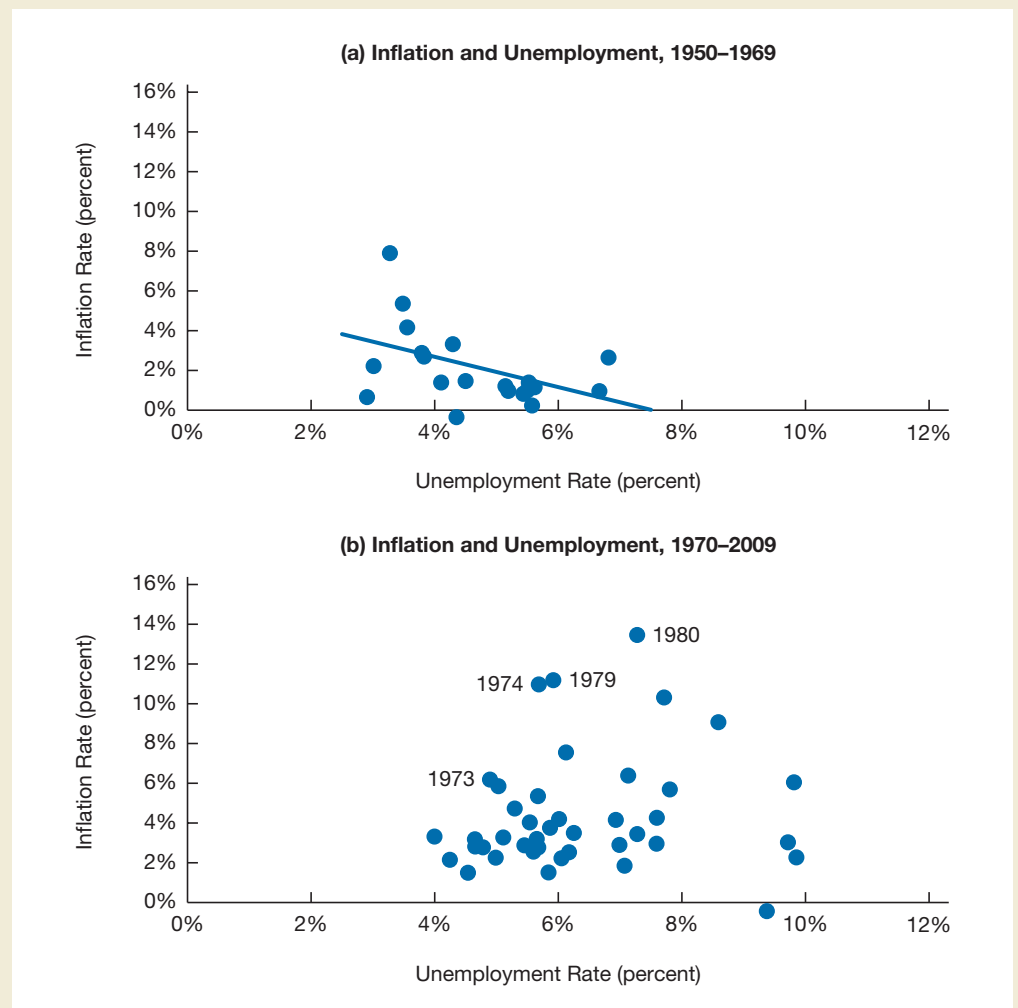
The Friedman-Phelps Phillips Curve Analysis

In 1967 and 1968, Milton Friedman and Edmund Phelps pointed out a severe theoretical flaw in the Phillips curve analysis:³ it was inconsistent with the view that workers and firms care about *real* wages, the amount of real goods and services that wages can purchase, and not *nominal* wages. Thus when workers and firms expect the price level

FIGURE 11.1

Inflation and Unemployment in the United States, 1950–1969 and 1970–2009

The plot of inflation against unemployment over the 1950–1969 period in panel (a) shows that a higher inflation rate was generally associated with a lower rate of unemployment. Panel (b) shows that after 1970, the negative relationship between inflation and unemployment disappeared.



Source: Economic Report of the President. www.gpoaccess.gov/eop/

³Milton Friedman outlined his criticism of the Phillips curve in his 1967 presidential address to the American Economic Association: Milton Friedman, "The Role of Monetary Policy," *American Economic Review* 58 (1968): 1–17. Phelps's reformulation of the Phillips curve analysis was in Edmund Phelps, "Money-Wage Dynamics and Labor-Market Equilibrium," *Journal of Political Economy* 76 (July/August 1968, Part 2): 687–711.

to be rising, they will adjust nominal wages upward so that the real wage rate does not decrease. In other words, wage and overall inflation will rise one-for-one with increases in expected inflation, as well as respond to tightness in the labor market. In addition, the Friedman-Phelps analysis suggested that in the long run the economy would reach the level of unemployment that would occur if all wages and prices were flexible, which they called the *natural rate of unemployment*.⁴ The **natural rate of unemployment** is the full-employment level of unemployment, because there will still be some unemployment even when wages and prices are flexible, as we will show in Chapter 20.

The Friedman-Phelps reasoning suggested a Phillips curve that we can write as follows:

$$\pi = \pi^e - \omega (U - U_n) \quad (1)$$

where π represents inflation, π^e expected inflation, U the unemployment rate, U_n the natural rate of unemployment, and ω the sensitivity of inflation to $U - U_n$. The presence of the π^e term explains why Equation 1 is also referred to as the **expectations-augmented Phillips curve**: it indicates that inflation is negatively related to the difference between the unemployment rate and the natural rate of unemployment ($U - U_n$), a measure of tightness in the labor markets called the **unemployment gap**.

The expectations-augmented Phillips curve implies that long-run unemployment will be at the natural rate level, as Friedman and Phelps theorized. Recognize that in the long run, expected inflation must gravitate to actual inflation, and Equation 1 therefore indicates that U must be equal to U_n .

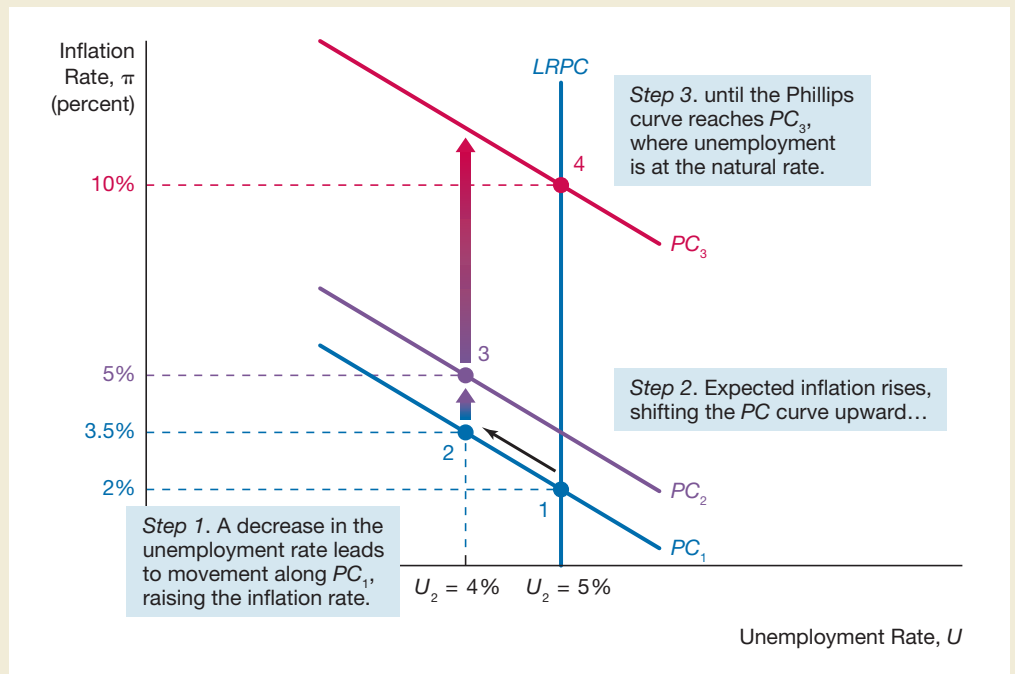
The Friedman-Phelps expectations-augmented version of the Phillips curve displays no long-run tradeoff between unemployment and inflation and is thus consistent with the classical dichotomy that indicates that changes in the price level should not affect the real economy. To show this, Figure 11.2 presents the expectations-augmented Phillips curve, marked as PC_1 , for a given expected inflation rate of 2% and a natural rate of unemployment of 5%. (PC_1 goes through point 1 because Equation 1 indicates that when $\pi = \pi^e = 2\%$, $U = U_n = 5\%$, and its slope is $-\omega$.) Suppose the economy is initially at point 1, where the unemployment rate is at the natural rate level of 5%, but then government policies to stimulate the economy cause the unemployment rate to fall to 4%, a level below the natural rate level. The economy then moves along PC_1 to point 2, with inflation rising above 2%, say to 3%. Expected inflation will then rise as well, so the expectations-augmented Phillips curve will shift upward from PC_1 to PC_2 . Continued efforts to stimulate the economy and keep the unemployment rate at 4%, below the natural rate level, will cause further increases in the actual and expected inflation rates, causing the expectations-augmented Phillips curve to shift upward to PC_2 and to point 3.

When will the expectations-augmented Phillips curve stop rising? Only when unemployment is back at the natural rate level, that is, when $U = U_n = 5\%$. Suppose that this happens when inflation is at 10%; then expected inflation will also be at 10% because inflation has settled down to that level, with the expectations-augmented Phillips curve at PC_3 in Figure 11.2. The economy will now move to point 4, where $\pi = \pi^e = 10\%$, and unemployment is at the natural rate $U = U_n = 5\%$. We thus see

⁴As we will discuss in Chapter 20, there will always be some unemployment that is either *frictional unemployment*, unemployment that occurs because workers are searching for jobs, or *structural unemployment*, unemployment that arises from a mismatch of skills with available jobs and is a structural feature of the labor markets. Thus even when wages and prices are fully flexible, the natural rate of unemployment is at a level above zero.

FIGURE 11.2**The Short- and Long-Run Phillips Curve**

The expectations-augmented Phillips curve is downward sloping because a lower unemployment rate results in a higher inflation rate for any given level of expected inflation. If the economy moves due to a decline in the unemployment rate from point 1 to point 2 on PC_1 , the inflation rate rises. If unemployment remains at 4%, inflation rises further, shifting the short-run expectations-augmented Phillips curve upward to PC_2 and to point 3. Eventually, when the economy reaches point 4, when $\pi^e = \pi = 10\%$, the expectations-augmented Phillips curve, PC_3 , will stop shifting because unemployment is at the natural rate of unemployment. The line connecting points 1 and 4 is the long-run Phillips curve, $LRPC$, and shows that long-run unemployment is at the natural rate of unemployment for any inflation rate.



that in the long run, when the expectations-augmented Phillips curve is no longer shifting, the economy will be on points like 1 and 4. The line connecting these points is thus the **long-run Phillips curve**, which we mark as $LRPC$ in Figure 11.2.

Figure 11.2 leads us to three important conclusions:

1. **There is no long-run trade-off between unemployment and inflation** because, as the vertical long-run Phillips curve shows, a higher long-run inflation rate is not associated with a lower level of unemployment.
2. **There is a short-run trade-off between unemployment and inflation** because with a given expected inflation rate, policy makers can attain a lower unemployment rate at the expense of a somewhat higher inflation rate, as at point 2 in Figure 11.2.

3. **There are two types of Phillips curves, long run and short run.** The expectations-augmented Phillips curves— PC_1 , PC_2 , and PC_3 —are actually short-run Phillips curves: they are drawn for given values of expected inflation and will shift if deviations of unemployment from the natural rate cause inflation and expected inflation to change.

The Phillips Curve After the 1960s

As Figure 11.2 indicates, the expectations-augmented Phillips curve shows that the negative relationship between unemployment and inflation breaks down when the unemployment rate remains below the natural rate of unemployment for any extended period of time. This prediction of the Friedman and Phelps analysis turned out to be exactly right. Starting in the 1970s, after a period of very low unemployment rates, the negative relationship between unemployment and inflation, which was so visible in the 1950s and 1960s, disappeared, as we can see in panel (b) of Figure 11.1. Not surprisingly, given the brilliance of Friedman and Phelps's work, they were both awarded Nobel Prizes.

The Modern Phillips Curve

With the sharp rise in oil prices in 1973 and 1979, inflation jumped up sharply (see panel (b) of Figure 11.1) and Phillips-curve theorists realized that they had to add one more feature to the expectations-augmented Phillips curve. Recall from Chapter 3 that supply shocks are shocks to supply that change the output an economy can produce from the same amount of capital and labor. These supply shocks translate into **price shocks**, that is, shifts in inflation that are independent of the tightness in the labor markets or of expected inflation. For example, when the supply of oil is restricted, as it was following the war between the Arab states and Israel in 1973, the price of oil more than quadrupled and firms had to raise prices to reflect their increased costs of production, thus driving up inflation. Price shocks also could come from a rise in import prices or from **cost-push shocks**, in which workers push for wages higher than productivity gains, thereby driving up costs and inflation. Adding price shocks (ρ) to the expectations-augmented Phillips curve leads to the modern form of the short-run Phillips curve:

$$\pi = \pi^e - \omega(U - U_n) + \rho \quad (2)$$

The modern, short-run Phillips curve implies that wages and prices are sticky. The more flexible wages and prices are, the more they, and inflation, respond to deviations of unemployment from the natural rate; that is, more flexible wages and prices imply that the absolute value of ω is higher, which implies that the short-run Phillips curve is steeper. If wages and prices are completely flexible, then ω becomes so large that the short-run Phillips curve is vertical, and it would be identical to the long-run Phillips curve. In this case, there is no long-run or short-run trade-off between unemployment and inflation.

The Modern Phillips Curve with Adaptive (Backward-Looking) Expectations

To complete our analysis of the Phillips curve, we need to understand how firms and households form expectations about inflation. One simple way of thinking about how firms and households form their expectations about inflation is that they do so by looking at past inflation:

$$\pi^e = \pi_{-1}$$

where π_{-1} is the inflation rate in the previous period. This form of expectations is known as **adaptive expectations** or **backward-looking expectations** because expectations are formed by looking at the past and therefore change only slowly over time.⁵ Substituting π_{-1} in for π^e in Equation 2 yields the following short-run Phillips curve:

$$\begin{array}{rccccccc} \pi & = & \pi_{-1} & - & \omega (U - U_n) & + & \rho & (3) \\ \text{Inflation} & = & \text{Expected} & - & \omega \times \text{Unemployment} & + & \text{Price} \\ & & \text{Inflation} & & \text{Gap} & & \text{Shock} \end{array}$$

This form of the Phillips curve has two advantages over the more general formulation in Equation 2. First, it takes a very simple mathematical form that is convenient to use. Second, it provides two additional realistic reasons why prices might be sticky. One reason comes from the view that inflation expectations adjust only slowly as past inflation changes: inflation expectations are therefore sticky, which results in some inflation stickiness. Another reason is that the presence of past inflation in the Phillips curve formulation can reflect the fact that some wage and price contracts might be backward looking, that is, tied to past inflation, and so inflation might not fully adjust to changes in inflation expectations in the short run.

There is, however, one important disadvantage of the adaptive-expectations form of the Phillips curve in Equation 3: it takes a very mechanical view of how inflation expectations are formed. More sophisticated analysis of expectations formation has important implications for the conduct of macroeconomic policy, as we will see in Chapter 21. For the time being, we will make use of the simple form of the Phillips curve with adaptive expectations, keeping in mind that the π_{-1} term represents expected inflation.

There is another convenient way to look at the adaptive-expectations form of the Phillips curve. By subtracting π_{-1} from both sides of Equation 3, we can rewrite it as follows:

$$\Delta\pi = \pi - \pi_{-1} = -\omega(U - U_n) + \rho \quad (4)$$

Written in this form, the Phillips curve indicates that a negative unemployment gap (tight labor market) causes the inflation rate to rise, that is, accelerate. This relationship is why the Equation 4 version of the Phillips curve is often referred to as an **accelerationist Phillips curve**. With this formulation, the term U_n has another interpretation. Since inflation stops accelerating (changing) when the unemployment rate is at U_n , we also refer to this term as the **non-accelerating inflation rate of unemployment** or more commonly as **NAIRU**.

The Aggregate Supply Curve

To complete our aggregate demand and supply model, we need to use our analysis of the Phillips curve to derive an **aggregate supply curve**, which represents the relationship between the total quantity of output that firms are willing to produce and the inflation rate. In the typical supply and demand analysis, we have only one supply curve,

⁵An alternative, modern form of expectations makes use of the concept *rational expectations*, where expectations are formed using all available information, and so may react more quickly to new information. We discuss rational expectations and their role in macroeconomic analysis in Chapter 21.

but this is not the case in the aggregate demand and supply framework. We can translate the short- and long-run Phillips curves into short-run and long-run aggregate supply curves. We begin by examining the long-run aggregate supply curve. We then derive the short-run aggregate supply curve and see how it shifts over time as the economy moves from the short run to the long run.

Long-Run Aggregate Supply Curve

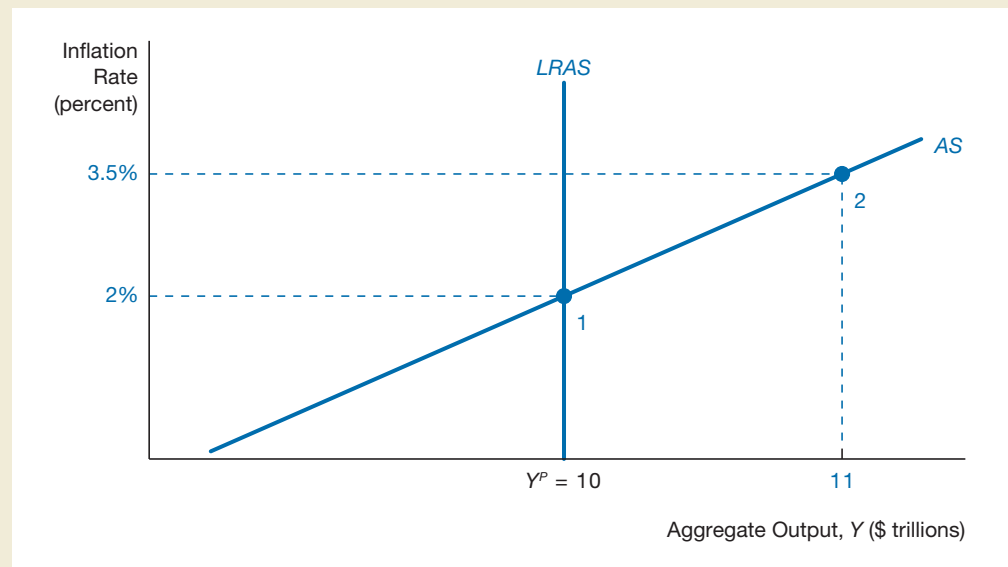
What determines the amount of output an economy can produce in the long run? As we saw in Chapter 3, the key factors that determine long-run output are available technology, the amount of capital in the economy, and the amount of labor supplied in the long run, all of which are unrelated to the inflation rate. The level of aggregate output supplied at the natural rate of unemployment is often referred to as the **natural rate of output**. However, the natural rate of output is more commonly referred to as **potential output** because it is the level of production that an economy can sustain in the long run.

The preceding reasoning indicates that because the long-run Phillips curve is vertical, the long-run aggregate supply curve is as well.⁶ Indeed, the long-run aggregate supply curve (*LRAS*) is vertical at potential output, denoted by Y^P , say, at a quantity of \$10 trillion, as drawn in Figure 11.3. Another way to think about the vertical long-run aggregate supply curve is that when wages and prices can fully adjust, there is a decoupling of the relationship between unemployment and inflation. The classical dichotomy that we discussed in Chapters 5 and 8 indicates that what happens to the price level is divorced from what is happening in the real economy.

FIGURE 11.3

Long- and Short-Run Aggregate Supply Curves

The amount of aggregate output supplied at any given inflation rate is at potential output in the long run, so that the long-run aggregate supply curve *LRAS* is a vertical line at Y^P . The short-run aggregate supply curve, *SRAS*, is upward sloping because as Y rises relative to Y^P , labor markets get tighter and inflation rises. *SRAS* intersects *LRAS* at point 1, where current inflation equals the expected inflation.



⁶Higher inflation can make for a less efficient economy and thus lead to a decline in the quantity of output actually produced. In this case, the long-run aggregate supply curve might have a downward slope. This insight does not change the basic lessons from aggregate demand and supply analysis in any significant way, so for simplicity we will assume that the long-run aggregate supply curve is vertical.

Short-Run Aggregate Supply Curve

We can translate the modern Phillips curve into a short-run aggregate supply curve by replacing the unemployment gap ($U - U_n$) with the **output gap**, the difference between output and potential output ($Y - Y^P$). To do this, we need to make use of a relationship between unemployment and aggregate output that was discovered by the economist Arthur Okun, once the chairman of the Council of Economic Advisors and later an economist with the Brookings Institution.⁷ **Okun's law** describes the negative relationship between the unemployment gap and the output gap.

OKUN'S LAW. We show Okun's law in Figure 11.4, which plots the unemployment gap against the output gap. There is a tight negative relationship between the two variables. When output is above potential so the output gap is positive, the unemployment rate is below the natural rate of unemployment; that is, the unemployment gap is negative. The line through the data points in Figure 11.4 describes this negative relationship, which algebraically is as follows:⁸

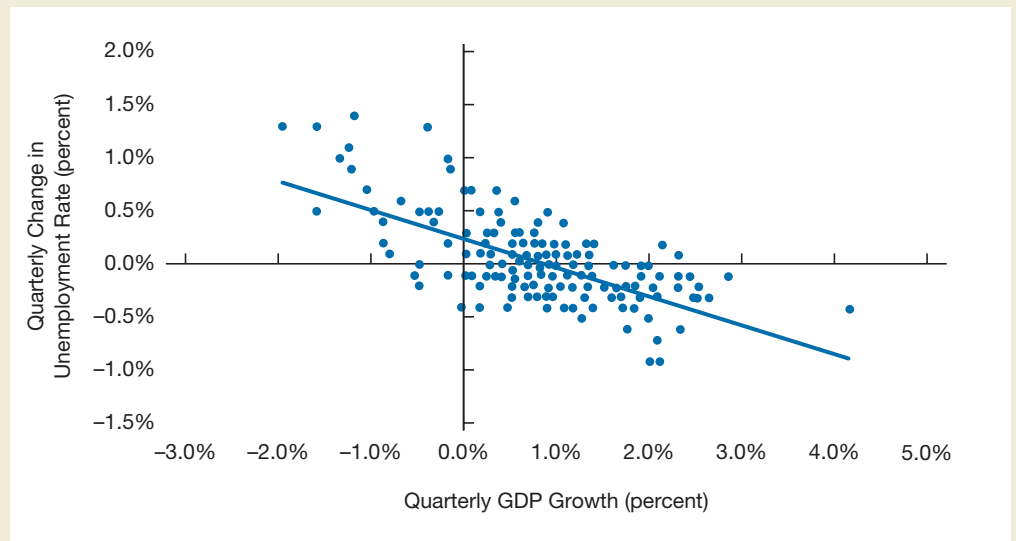
$$U - U_n = -0.5 \times (Y - Y^P) \quad (5)$$

Okun's law thus states that for each percentage point that output is above potential, the unemployment rate is one-half of a percentage point below the natural rate of

FIGURE 11.4

Okun's Law, 1960–2010

The plot of the unemployment gap and the output gap reveals a linear relationship, represented by the solid line with a slope of $-\frac{1}{2}$.



Source: Unemployment, quarterly, 1960–2010 and real GDP growth, quarterly, 1960–2010. Bureau of Labor Statistics and Bureau of Economic Analysis.

⁷Arthur M. Okun, "Potential GNP: Its Measurement and Significance," in *Proceeding of the Business and Economics Section: American Statistical Association* (Washington, D.C.: American Statistical Association, 1962), pp. 98–103; reprinted in Arthur M. Okun, *The Political Economy of Prosperity* (Washington, D.C.: Brookings Institution, 1970), pp. 132–145.

⁸The output gap, $Y - Y^P$, in Okun's law is most accurately expressed in percentage terms, so the units of Y and Y^P would be in logs. However, to keep the algebra simple in this and later chapters, we will treat Y and Y^P as in levels and not in logs both in the Okun's law equation and in the short-run aggregate supply curve developed here.

unemployment. Alternatively, for every percentage point that unemployment is above its natural rate, output is two percentage points below potential output.

Another way of thinking about Okun's law is that a one percentage point increase in output leads to a one-half percentage point decline in unemployment.⁹ Why is the unemployment rate decline only half that of the increase in output? When output rises, firms do not increase employment commensurately with the increase, a phenomenon that is known as *labor hoarding*. Rather they work employees harder, increasing their hours. Furthermore, when the economy is expanding, more people enter the labor force because job prospects are better and so the unemployment rate does not fall by as much as employment increases.

DERIVING THE SHORT-RUN AGGREGATE SUPPLY CURVE. Using the Okun's law Equation 5 to substitute in for $U - U_n$ in the short-run Phillips curve Equation 2 yields the following:

$$\pi = \pi^e + 0.5 \omega (Y - Y^P) + \rho$$

Replacing 0.5ω by γ , which describes the sensitivity of inflation to the output gap, produces the short-run aggregate supply curve:

$$\begin{array}{rcccc} \pi & = & \pi^e & + & \gamma(Y - Y^P) & + & \rho & & (6) \\ \text{Inflation} & = & \text{Expected} & + & \gamma \times \text{Output} & + & \text{Price} & & \\ & & \text{Inflation} & & \text{Gap} & & \text{Shock} & & \end{array}$$

As with the Phillips curve analysis, we need to make an assumption about how expectations of inflation are formed and will assume that they are adaptive so that $\pi^e = \pi_{-1}$. The short-run aggregate supply curve then becomes,

$$\pi = \pi_{-1} + \gamma(Y - Y^P) + \rho \quad (7)$$

Let's assume that inflation last year was at 2%, so that $\pi_{-1} = 2\%$, and that there was no supply shock so $\rho = 0$ and potential output, $Y^P = \$10$ trillion. Let's also assume that the parameter γ , which describes how inflation responds to the output gap, equals 1.5. Then we can write the short-run aggregate supply curve as follows:

$$\pi = 2 + 1.5(Y - 10) \quad (8)$$

⁹To see this algebraically, take the differences of Equation 5 and assume that U_n remains constant (a reasonable assumption because the natural rate of unemployment only changes very slowly over time). Then,

$$\% \Delta U = -0.5 \times (\% \Delta Y - \% \Delta Y^P)$$

where $\% \Delta$ indicates a percentage point change. Since potential output grows at a fairly steady rate of around three percent a year, $\% \Delta Y^P = 3\%$, we can also write Okun's law as follows:

$$\% \Delta U = -0.5 \times (\% \Delta Y - 3)$$

or

$$\% \Delta Y = 3 - 2.0 \times \% \Delta U$$

Hence we can state Okun's law in the following way: for every percentage point rise in output (real GDP), unemployment falls by one-half of a percentage point. Alternatively, for every percentage point rise in unemployment, real GDP falls by two percentage points.

If Y is at potential output, $Y^P = \$10$ trillion, then the output gap, $Y - 10$, is zero. Equation 8 then shows that at a level of output of \$10 trillion, where the output gap is zero, $\pi = 2\%$. We mark this level as point 1 on the short-run aggregate supply curve, AS , in Figure 11.3 on page 274. Note that the short-run supply curve intersects the long-run supply curve at a point where the 2% current inflation rate equals 2% expected inflation.

Now suppose that aggregate output rises to \$11 trillion. Because there is a positive output gap $Y = \$11$ trillion $> Y^P = \$10$ trillion, Equation 8 indicates that inflation will rise above 2% to 3.5%, marked as point 2. The curve connecting points 1 and 2 is the short-run aggregate supply curve, AS , and it is upward sloping. The intuition behind this upward slope comes directly from Okun's law and Phillips curve analysis. When Y rises relative to Y^P and $Y > Y^P$, Okun's law indicates that the unemployment rate falls. With the labor market tighter, the short-run Phillips curve tells us that firms raise their wages at a more rapid rate. Firms will therefore raise their prices at a more rapid rate in turn, causing inflation to rise.

STICKY WAGES AND PRICES IN THE SHORT-RUN AGGREGATE SUPPLY CURVE.

As we saw earlier, the short-run Phillips curve implies wages and prices are sticky. Since we derived the short-run aggregate supply curve from the Phillips curve, sticky wages and prices are embodied in the short-run aggregate supply curve as well. In the short-run aggregate supply curve, the more flexible wages and prices are, the more inflation responds to the output gap. The value of γ would then be higher, which implies that the short-run aggregate supply curve is steeper. When wages and prices are completely flexible, γ becomes so large that the short-run aggregate supply curve becomes vertical and it would then be identical to the long-run supply curve. Completely flexible wages and prices put us back in a classical framework in which aggregate output is always at its potential level.

Shifts in Aggregate Supply Curves

Now that we have derived the long-run and short-run aggregate supply curves, we can look at why each of these curves shifts.

Shifts in the Long-Run Aggregate Supply Curve

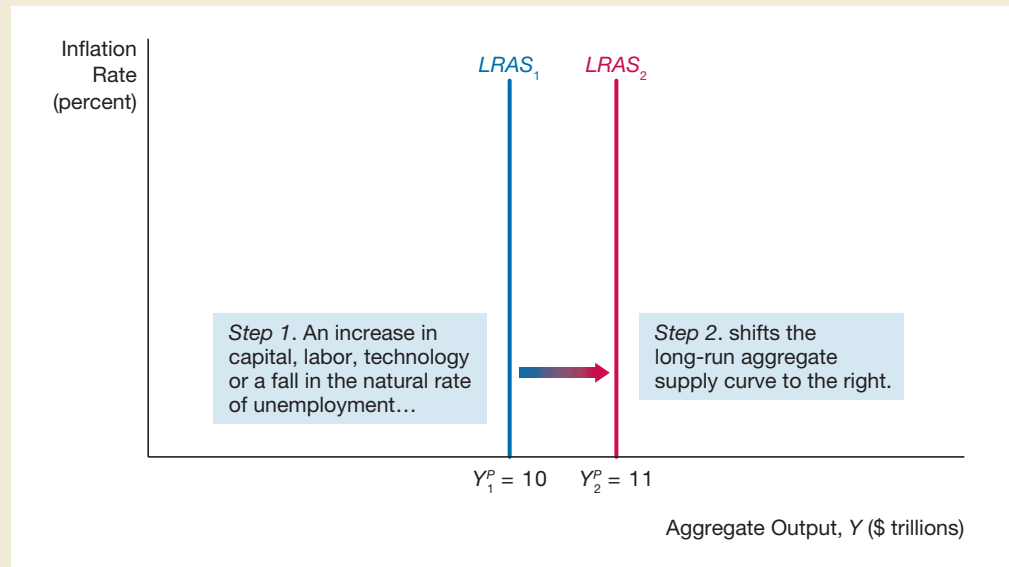
The quantity of output supplied in the long run is determined by the production function we examined in Chapter 3. The production function suggests three factors that cause potential output to change and thus shift the long-run aggregate supply curve: 1) the total amount of capital in the economy, 2) the total amount of labor supplied in the economy, and 3) the available technology that puts labor and capital together to produce goods and services. When any of these three factors increases, potential output rises, say, from \$10 trillion to \$11 trillion, and the long-run aggregate supply curve shifts to the right from $LRAS_1$ to $LRAS_2$, as in Figure 11.5.

Because all three of these factors typically grow fairly steadily over time, Y^P and the long-run aggregate supply curve will keep on shifting to the right at a steady pace. To keep things simple in diagrams later in this and following chapters, when Y^P is growing at a steady rate, we represent Y^P and the long-run aggregate supply curve as fixed.

Another source of shifts in the long-run aggregate supply curve is changes in the natural rate of unemployment. If the natural rate of unemployment declines, labor is

FIGURE 11.5**Shift in the Long-Run Aggregate Supply Curve**

The long-run aggregate supply curve shifts to the right from $LRAS_1$ to $LRAS_2$ when there is 1) an increase in the total amount of capital in the economy, 2) an increase in the total amount of labor supplied in the economy, 3) an increase in the available technology, or 4) a decline in the natural rate of unemployment. An opposite movement in these variables shifts the LRAS curve to the left.



being more heavily utilized, and so potential output will increase. A decline in the natural rate of unemployment thus shifts the long-run aggregate supply curve to the right from $LRAS_1$ to $LRAS_2$, as in Figure 11.5. A rise in the natural rate of unemployment would have the opposite effect, shifting the long-run aggregate supply curve to the left. In Chapter 20 we discuss factors that cause the natural rate of unemployment to change.

Shifts in the Short-Run Aggregate Supply Curve

The three terms on the right-hand side of Equation 6 for the short-run aggregate supply curve suggest that there are three factors that can shift the short-run aggregate supply curve: 1) expected inflation, 2) price shocks, and 3) a persistent output gap.

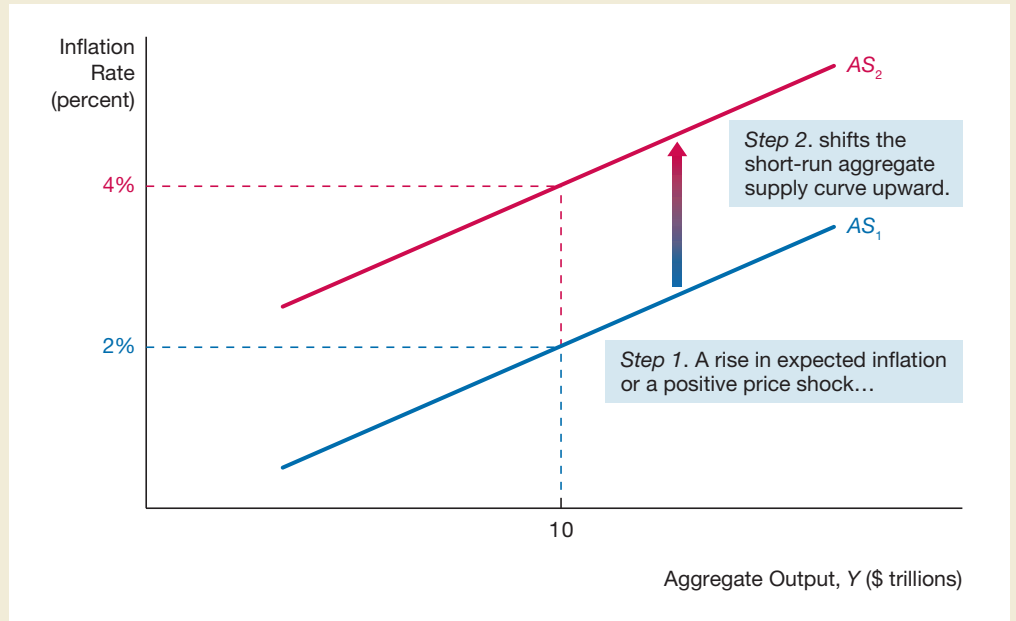
EXPECTED INFLATION. Even though we have written expected inflation as π_{-1} in Equation 6, it is important to recognize that expected inflation might change for reasons that are unrelated to the past level of inflation. For example, what if a newly appointed chairman of the Federal Reserve does not think that inflation is costly and so is willing to tolerate an inflation rate that is two percentage points higher? Households and firms will then expect that the Fed will pursue policies that will let inflation rise by two percentage points in the future. In such a situation, expected inflation will jump by two percentage points and the short-run aggregate supply curve will shift upward and to the left from AS_1 to AS_2 , as in Figure 11.6.

PRICE SHOCK. Suppose that energy prices suddenly shoot up because terrorists destroy a number of oil fields. This supply restriction causes the price shock term in Equation 6 to jump up, and so the short-run aggregate supply curve will shift up and to the left from AS_1 to AS_2 , as in Figure 11.6.

PERSISTENT OUTPUT GAP. We have already seen that a higher output gap leads to higher inflation, causing a movement along the short-run aggregate supply curve. We represent this movement from point 1 to point 2 on the initial short-run aggregate supply

FIGURE 11.6**Shift in the Short-Run Aggregate Supply Curve from Changes in Expected Inflation and Price Shocks**

A rise in expected inflation or a positive price shock of two percentage points shifts the short-run aggregate supply curve upward from AS_1 to AS_2 . (A decrease in expected inflation or a negative price shock would lead to a downward shift of the AS curve.)



curve AS_1 in Figure 11.7. A persistent output gap, however, will cause the short-run aggregate supply curve to shift by affecting expected inflation. To see this, consider what happens if the economy stays at $\$11 \text{ trillion} > Y^P = \10 trillion so the output gap remains persistently positive. At point 2 on the initial short-run aggregate supply curve, AS_1 , output has risen to $\$11 \text{ trillion}$ and inflation has risen from 2% to 3.5%. Expected inflation next period will rise to 3.5% and so the short-run aggregate supply curve next period, AS_2 , will then shift upwards to

$$\pi = 3.5 + 1.5(Y - 10) \quad (9)$$

If output remains at $\$11 \text{ trillion}$ at point 3, then Equation 9 tells us that inflation will rise to 5% [= 3.5% + 1.5(11 - 10)]. As the vertical arrow indicates, the short-run aggregate supply curve will then shift upwards to AS_3 next period:

$$\pi = 5.0 + 1.5(Y - 10) \quad (10)$$

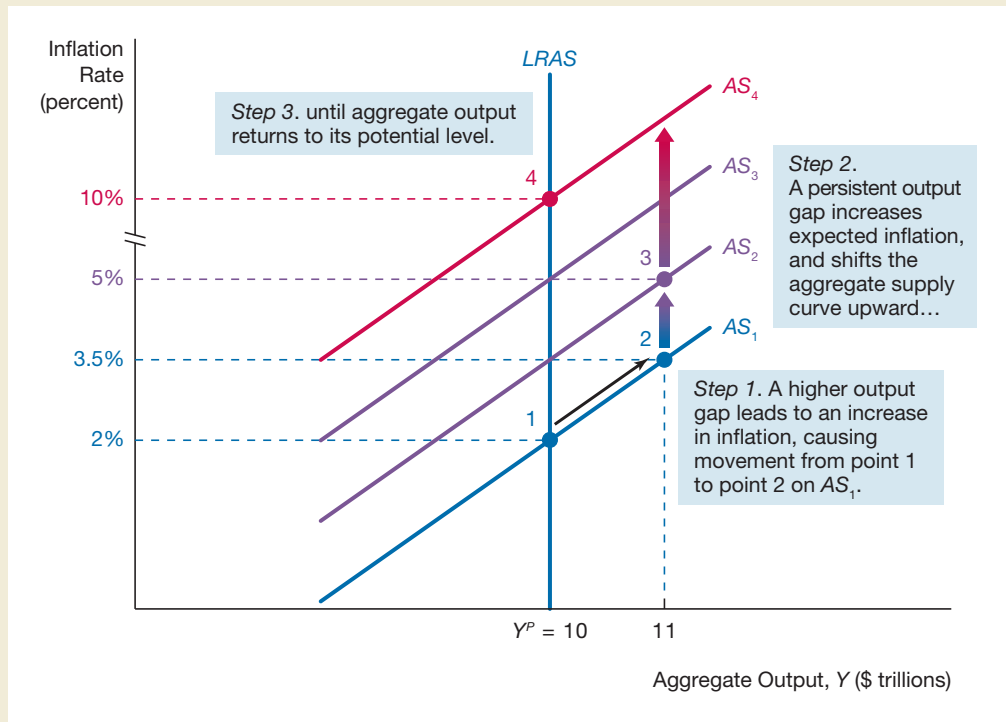
We see that as long as output remains above potential, the short-run aggregate supply curve will keep shifting up and to the left.

When will the short-run aggregate supply curve stop rising? Only when output returns to its potential level and the output gap disappears. Suppose this happens when inflation is at 10% and aggregate output at point 4 is at $Y^P = \$10 \text{ trillion}$. Now expected inflation is at 10% and the output gap is zero, so the aggregate supply curve drawn through point 4, AS_4 , has no further reason to shift.

The same reasoning indicates that if aggregate output is kept below potential for a period of time, $Y < Y^P$, then the short-run aggregate supply curve will shift downward and to the right. This downward shift of the aggregate supply curve will only stop when output returns to its potential level and the economy is back on the long-run aggregate supply curve.

FIGURE 11.7
Shift in the Short-Run Aggregate Supply Curve from a Persistent Positive Output Gap

When output is at \$11 trillion, the economy moves along the AS_1 curve from point 1 to point 2, and inflation rises to 3.5%. If output continues to remain at \$11 trillion where the output gap is positive, the short-run aggregate supply curve shifts up to AS_2 and then to AS_3 . The short-run aggregate supply curve stops shifting up when the economy reaches point 4 on the short-run aggregate supply curve, AS_4 , where $\pi^e = 10\%$ and the output gap is zero.



Now that we have a full understanding of aggregate supply curves and why they shift, we have all the building blocks to develop the aggregate demand and supply analysis in the next chapter.

SUMMARY

1. The Phillips curve, $\pi = \pi^e - \omega(U - U_n) + \rho$, indicates that inflation is negatively related to the unemployment gap and is positively related to expected inflation and price shocks. Although the long-run Phillips curve is vertical—that is, unemployment is at the natural rate of unemployment for any inflation rate—the short-run Phillips curve, which is determined for a given level of expected inflation, is downward sloping (a lower level of the unemployment gap leads to higher inflation). In other words, there is no long-run tradeoff between unemployment and inflation, but there is a short-run tradeoff.
2. The long-run aggregate supply curve is vertical at potential output, Y^P . The short-run aggregate supply curve, $\pi = \pi^e + \gamma(Y - Y^P) + \rho$, slopes upward because as output rises relative to potential output and labor markets tighten, inflation rises. Assuming that expectations of inflation are adaptive so that $\pi^e = \pi_{-1}$, the short-run aggregate supply curve can be written as $\pi = \pi_{-1} + \gamma(Y - Y^P) + \rho$.
3. Four factors cause the long-run aggregate supply curve to shift to the right: 1) a rise in the total amount of capital in the economy, 2) a rise in the total amount of labor supplied in the economy, 3) better available technology that generates more output from the same amount of capital and labor, and 4) a fall in the natural rate of unemployment. Three factors cause the short-run aggregate supply curve to shift upwards: 1) a rise in expected inflation, 2) a price shock that leads to higher inflation, and 3) a positive output gap.

KEY TERMS

accelerationist Phillips curve, p. 273
 adaptive expectations, p. 273
 aggregate supply curve, p. 273
 backward-looking expectations, p. 273
 cost-push shocks, p. 272
 expectations-augmented Phillips curve, p. 270

long-run Phillips curve, p. 271
 natural rate of output, p. 274
 natural rate of unemployment, p. 270
 non-accelerating inflation rate of unemployment (NAIRU), p. 273

Okun's law, p. 275
 output gap, p. 275
 Phillips curve, p. 268
 potential output, p. 274
 price shocks, p. 272
 unemployment gap, p. 270

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

The Phillips Curve

1. What basic relationship does the short-run Phillips curve describe? What trade-offs does this relationship seem to offer policy makers?
2. What basic relationship does the long-run Phillips curve describe? Why does it differ from the short-run Phillips curve relationship?
3. According to the expectations-augmented Phillips curve, what factors determine the rate of inflation? How do changes in each factor affect the short-run Phillips curve?
4. What are adaptive expectations? What justifies the assumption of adaptive expectations in Phillips curve analysis?
5. According to modern Phillips curve analysis, what factors determine the rate of inflation? How do changes in each factor affect the short-run Phillips curve?

The Aggregate Supply Curve

6. What relationship does the aggregate supply curve describe? How is this relationship depicted with the long-run aggregate supply curve?
7. What is Okun's Law? How does it combine with Phillips curve analysis to derive the short-run aggregate supply curve?
8. Why does the short-run aggregate supply curve slope upward?

Shifts in Aggregate Supply Curves

9. What causes the long-run aggregate supply curve to shift?
10. What causes the short-run aggregate supply curve to shift?

PROBLEMS

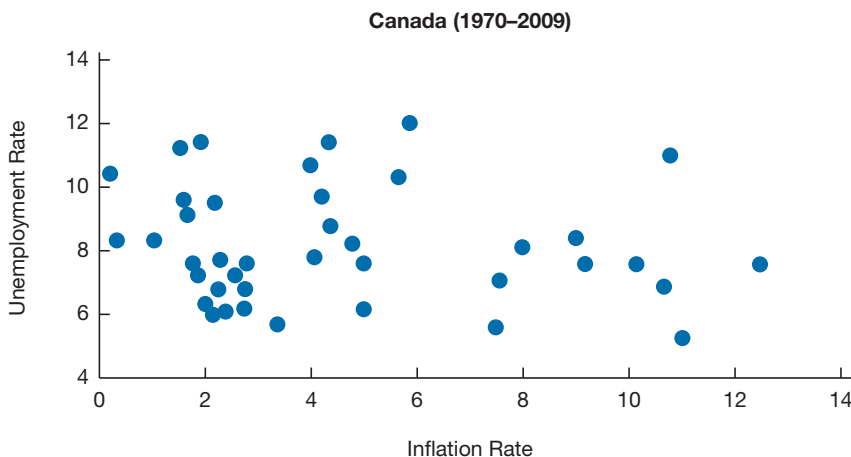
All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

The Phillips Curve

- Plot the Phillips curve for Canada using the following data. Do you find evidence in favor of the Phillips curve for Canada during this period? Explain.

	1960	1961	1962	1963	1964
Inflation Rate (%)	1.4	1	1.1	1.6	1.9
Unemployment Rate (%)	7	7.2	6	5.6	4.7
	1965	1966	1967	1968	1969
Inflation Rate (%)	2.3	3.8	3.6	4.1	4.6
Unemployment Rate (%)	4	3.4	3.8	4.5	4.4

- The following graph shows combinations of inflation and unemployment rates for Canada during the period between 1970 and 2009. Do you find evidence in favor of the Phillips curve for Canada for this period?



- Suppose that the expectations-augmented Phillips curve is given by $\pi = \pi^e - 0.5(U - U_n)$. If expected inflation is 3% and the natural rate of unemployment is 5%, complete the following:
 - Calculate the inflation rate according to the Phillips curve if unemployment is 4%, 5%, and 6%.
 - Plot the previous points in a graph and label the Phillips curve.
 - If wages become more rigid, what would happen to the slope of this Phillips curve?
- During 2007 the U.S. economy was hit by a price shock, when the price of oil increased from around \$60 per barrel to around \$130 by June 2008. Whereas inflation increased during fall 2007 (from around 2.5% to 4.0%), unemployment did not change significantly (it even slightly increased during 2007). Explain the relationship between inflation and unemployment during 2007 using the modern Phillips curve concept.

The Aggregate Supply Curve

- Suppose Okun's law can be expressed according to the following formula: $U - U_n = -0.75 \times (Y - Y^P)$. Assuming potential output grows at a steady rate of 2.5% and that the natural rate of unemployment remains unchanged,
 - calculate by how much unemployment increases when real GDP decreases by one percentage point.
 - calculate by how much real GDP increases when unemployment decreases by two percentage points.

6. Assuming Okun's law is given by $U - U_n = -0.75 \times (Y - Y^P)$ and that the Phillips curve is given by $\pi = \pi^e - 0.6 \times (U - U_n) + \rho$,
- obtain the short-run aggregate supply curve if expectations are adaptive, inflation was 3% last year, and potential output is \$10 trillion (assume $\rho = 0$).
 - calculate inflation when output is \$8, \$10, and \$12 trillion and plot the short-run aggregate supply curve.
7. Using the expression for the short-run aggregate supply curve obtained in the previous problem,
- draw the new short-run aggregate supply curve in the same graph if there is a price shock such that $\rho = 2$. Calculate inflation when output is \$8, \$10, and \$12 trillion respectively.
8. Although Okun's law holds for different countries, more flexible labor markets result in a higher response of unemployment to changes in GDP. During the recent crisis real GDP decreased in the United States, Germany, and France. Considering that the U.S. labor market is more flexible than European labor markets, would you expect the same increase in unemployment in these three countries?

Shifts in Aggregate Supply Curves

9. Internet sites that allow people to post their resumes on line reduce the cost of job search and create opportunities for individuals looking for jobs to be matched with potential employers more quickly. Assume that these uses of the Internet reduce the average amount of time people are unemployed.
- How do you think the Internet has affected the natural rate of unemployment?
 - Show graphically how use of Internet by job searchers and employers affects long-run aggregate supply.
10. During the spring of 2010 Fed officials discussed the possibility of increasing interest rates as a way of fighting potential increases in expected inflation. If the public came to expect higher inflation rates in the future, what would be the effect on the short-run aggregate supply curve? Show your answer graphically.



MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.



12

The Aggregate Demand and Supply Model

Preview

In 2007 and 2008, the U.S. economy encountered a perfect storm. Oil prices more than doubled, climbing to a record high of over \$140 per barrel by July 2008 and sending gasoline prices to over \$4 per gallon. At the same time, defaults by borrowers with weak credit records in the subprime mortgage market seized up the financial markets and caused consumer and business spending to decline. The result was a severe economic contraction at the same time that the inflation rate spiked.

To understand how developments in 2007–2008 had such negative effects on the economy, we now put together the aggregate demand and aggregate supply concepts from the previous three chapters to develop a basic tool, aggregate demand and supply analysis. As with the supply and demand analysis from your earlier economics courses, equilibrium occurs at the intersection of the aggregate demand and aggregate supply curves.

Aggregate demand and supply analysis is a powerful tool for studying short-run fluctuations in the macroeconomy and analyzing how aggregate output and the inflation rate are determined. The analysis will help us interpret episodes in the business cycle such as the recent severe recession in 2007–2009. In addition, in later chapters it will also enable us to evaluate the debates on how economic policy should be conducted.

Recap of the Aggregate Demand and Supply Curves

As a starting point, let's take stock of the building blocks for the aggregate demand and aggregate supply model that we developed across Chapters 9–11 by revisiting the aggregate demand and aggregate supply curves.

The Aggregate Demand Curve

Recall that the aggregate demand curve indicates the relationship between the inflation rate and the level of aggregate output when the goods market is in equilibrium, that is, when aggregate output equals the total quantity of output demanded. We saw in Chapter 10 that the aggregate demand curve is downward sloping because a rise in inflation leads the monetary policy authorities to raise real interest rates to keep inflation from spiraling out of control, which lowers planned expenditure (aggregate demand) and hence the equilibrium level of aggregate output. The negative relationship between inflation and equilibrium output reflected in the downward sloping aggregate demand curve can be illustrated by the following schematic.

$$\pi \uparrow \Rightarrow r \uparrow \Rightarrow I \downarrow, C \downarrow, NX \downarrow \Rightarrow Y \downarrow$$

Factors That Shift the Aggregate Demand Curve

As we saw in Chapter 10, six basic factors that are exogenous to the model can shift the aggregate demand curve to a new position: 1) autonomous monetary policy, 2) government purchases, 3) taxes, 4) autonomous net exports, 5) autonomous consumption expenditure, and 6) autonomous investment. As we examine each case, we ask what happens when each of these factors changes holding the inflation rate constant. As a study aid, Table 12.1 summarizes the shifts in the aggregate demand curve from each of these six factors.

1. *Autonomous Monetary Policy.* When the Federal Reserve autonomously tightens monetary policy, it raises the autonomous component of the real interest rate, \bar{r} , that is unrelated to the current level of the inflation rate. The higher real interest rate at any given inflation rate leads to a higher cost of financing investment projects, which leads to a decline in investment spending and planned expenditure. Higher real interest rates also lead to lower consumption spending and net exports. Therefore the equilibrium level of aggregate output falls at any given inflation rate, as the following schematic demonstrates.

$$\bar{r} \uparrow \Rightarrow I \downarrow, C \downarrow, NX \downarrow \Rightarrow Y \downarrow$$

The aggregate demand curve therefore shifts to the left.

TABLE 12.1

Factors That Shift the Aggregate Demand Curve

Factor	Change	Shift in Demand Curve
Autonomous monetary policy, \bar{r}	↑	←
Government purchases, \bar{G}	↑	→
Taxes, \bar{T}	↑	←
Autonomous net exports, \bar{NX}	↑	→
Consumer optimism, \tilde{C}	↑	→
Business optimism, \tilde{I}	↑	→

Note: Only increases (↑) in the factors are shown. The effect of decreases in the factors would be the opposite of those indicated in the “Shift” column.

2. *Government purchases.* An increase in government purchases at any given inflation rate adds directly to planned expenditure and hence the equilibrium level of aggregate output rises:

$$\bar{G} \uparrow \Rightarrow Y \uparrow$$

As a result, the aggregate demand curve shifts to the right.

3. *Taxes.* At any given inflation rate, an increase in taxes lowers disposable income, which will lead to lower consumption expenditure and planned expenditure, so that the equilibrium level of aggregate output falls:

$$\bar{T} \uparrow \Rightarrow C \downarrow \Rightarrow Y \downarrow$$

At any given inflation rate, the aggregate demand curve shifts to the left.

4. *Autonomous net exports.* An autonomous increase in net exports at any given inflation rate adds directly to planned expenditure and so raises the equilibrium level of aggregate output:

$$\bar{NX} \uparrow \Rightarrow Y \uparrow$$

Thus the aggregate demand curve shifts to the right.

5. *Autonomous consumption expenditure.* When consumers become more optimistic, autonomous consumption expenditure rises and so they spend more at any given inflation rate. Planned expenditure therefore rises, as does the equilibrium level of aggregate output:

$$\bar{C} \uparrow \Rightarrow Y \uparrow$$

The aggregate demand curve shifts to the right.

6. *Autonomous investment.* When businesses become more optimistic, autonomous investment rises and they spend more at any given inflation rate. Planned investment increases and the equilibrium level of aggregate output rises.

$$\bar{I} \uparrow \Rightarrow Y \uparrow$$

The aggregate demand curve shifts to the right.

Short- and Long-Run Aggregate Supply Curves

As we saw in the preceding chapter, the aggregate supply curve, which indicates the relationship between the total quantity of output supplied and the inflation rate, comes in short- and long-run varieties.

Because in the long run wages and prices are fully flexible, the long-run aggregate supply curve is determined by the factors of production—labor and capital—and the technology that is available at the time, as well as the natural rate of unemployment. We typically assume that technology, the factors of production, and the natural rate of unemployment are independent of the level of inflation. As a result, the long-run supply curve is vertical at the level of potential output, Y^P : output higher or lower than this level would cause inflation to adjust until output returned to its potential level.

Because wages and prices take time to adjust to economic conditions—as they are sticky—wages and prices will not fully adjust in the short run to keep output at its

TABLE 12.2**Factors That Shift the Short-Run Aggregate Supply Curve**

Factor	Change	Shift in Supply Curve
Expected inflation, π^e	↑	↑
Price shock, ρ	↑	↑
Output gap, $(Y - Y^P)$	↑	↑

Note: Only increases (↑) in the factors are shown. The effect of decreases in the factors would be the opposite of those indicated in the “Shift” column.

potential level. Instead, output above potential, which means that labor and product markets are tight, will cause inflation to rise above its current level. However, the rise will be limited in the short run, in contrast to the long run. As a result, the short-run aggregate supply curve is upward sloping, but not vertical: as output rises relative to potential, inflation rises from its current level.

Factors that Shift the Long-Run Aggregate Supply Curve

The long-run aggregate supply curve shifts when there are shocks to the natural rate of unemployment and technology or long-run changes in the amounts of labor or capital that affect the amount of output that the economy can produce. Because technology improves over time and factors of production accumulate too, Y^P steadily but gradually moves to the right (for simplicity, we ignore this gradual drift in our analysis).

Factors that Shift the Short-Run Aggregate Supply Curve

Three factors can shift the short-run aggregate supply curve: 1) expected inflation, 2) price shocks, and 3) a persistent output gap. As a study aid, Table 12.2 summarizes the shifts in the short-run aggregate supply curve from each of these three factors.

1. *Expected Inflation.* When expected inflation rises, workers and firms will want to raise wages and prices more, causing inflation to rise. Higher expected inflation thus leads to an upward and leftward shift in the short-run aggregate supply curve.
2. *Price Shocks.* Supply restrictions or workers pushing for higher wages can cause firms to raise prices, which causes inflation to rise and shifts the short-run aggregate supply curve upward and to the left.
3. *Persistent Output Gap.* When output remains high relative to potential output, the output gap is persistently positive ($Y > Y^P$). Labor and product markets remain tight, which raises the current level of inflation from its initial level. As long as the output gap persists, inflation will continue to rise next period as will expected inflation. The positive output gap leads to an upward and leftward shift in the short-run aggregate supply curve.

Equilibrium in Aggregate Demand and Supply Analysis

We can now put the aggregate demand and supply curves together to describe **general equilibrium** in the economy, when all markets are simultaneously in equilibrium at the point where the quantity of aggregate output demanded equals the quantity of aggregate output supplied. We represent general equilibrium graphically

as the point where the aggregate demand curve intersects with the aggregate supply curve. However, recall that we have two aggregate supply curves: one for the short run and one for the long run. Consequently, in the context of aggregate supply and demand analysis, there are short-run and long-run equilibriums. In this section, we illustrate equilibrium in the short and long runs. In following sections we examine aggregate demand and aggregate supply shocks that lead to changes in equilibrium.

Short-Run Equilibrium

Figure 12.1 illustrates a short-run equilibrium in which the quantity of aggregate output demanded equals the quantity of output supplied. In Figure 12.1, the short-run aggregate demand curve AD and the short-run aggregate supply curve AS intersect at point E with an equilibrium level of aggregate output $Y^* = \$10$ trillion and an equilibrium inflation rate $\pi^* = 2\%$. (We derive the equilibrium output and inflation rate algebraically in the box, “Algebraic Determination of the Equilibrium Output and Inflation Rate.”)¹

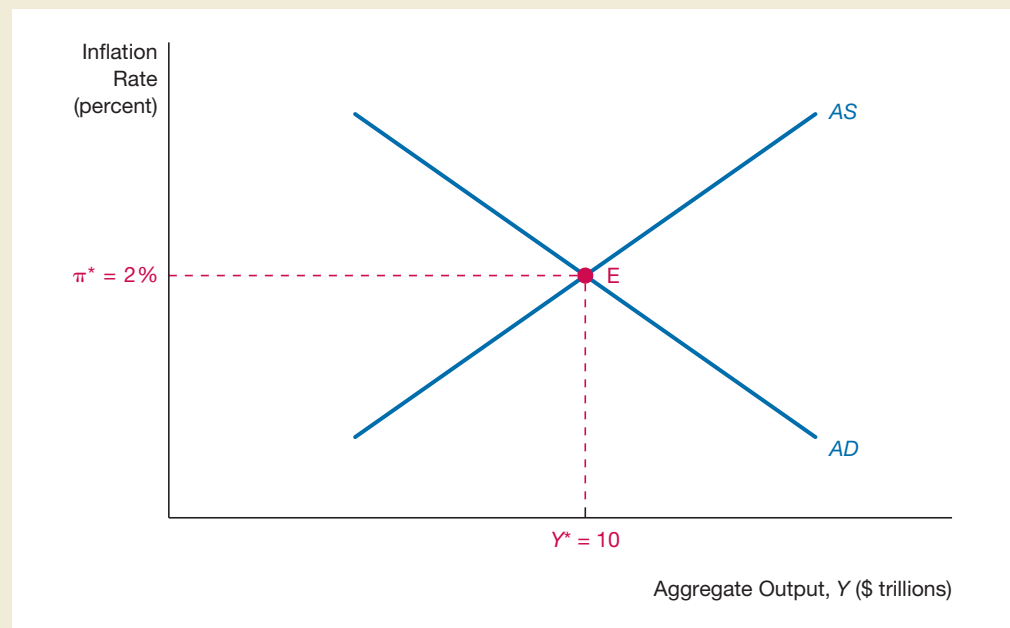
Long-Run Equilibrium

In supply and demand analysis, once we find the equilibrium at which the quantity demanded equals the quantity supplied, there is typically no need for additional analysis. In *aggregate* supply and demand analysis, however, that is not the case. Even when the quantity of aggregate output demanded equals the quantity supplied at the intersection of the aggregate demand curve and the short-run aggregate supply curve, if output differs from its potential level ($Y^* \neq Y^P$), the equilibrium will move over time. To understand why, recall that if the current level of inflation changes from its initial level, the short-run aggregate supply curve will shift as wages and prices adjust to a new expected rate of inflation.

FIGURE 12.1

Short-Run Equilibrium

Short-run equilibrium occurs at point E at the intersection of the aggregate demand curve AD and the short-run aggregate supply curve AS .



¹A Web appendix to this chapter, found at www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin, outlines a more general algebraic analysis of the AD/AS model.



Algebraic Determination of the Equilibrium Output and Inflation Rate

The AD curve in Figure 12.1 is the aggregate demand curve we discussed in Chapter 10,

$$Y = 11 - 0.5\pi \quad (1)$$

The AS curve is the short-run aggregate supply curve described in Chapter 11, where the inflation rate last period is 2%:

$$\pi = 2 + 1.5(Y - 10) \quad (2)$$

To show algebraically that equilibrium occurs where $Y = \$10$ trillion and $\pi = 2\%$, we substitute in for π from Equation 2 into Equation 1 to get,

$$\begin{aligned} Y &= 11 - 0.5[2 + 1.5(Y - 10)] \\ &= 11 - 1 - .75Y + 7.5 \end{aligned}$$

Collecting terms in Y ,

$$Y[1 + .75] = 17.5$$

Dividing both sides by 1.75 shows that equilibrium $Y = \$10$ trillion. Then substituting this value of equilibrium output into the short-run aggregate supply Equation 2 yields the following:

$$\pi = 2 + 1.5(10 - 10) = 2$$

So the equilibrium inflation rate is 2%.

Short-Run Equilibrium over Time

We look at how the short-run equilibrium changes over time in response to two situations: when short-run equilibrium output is initially above potential output (the natural rate of output) and when it is initially below potential output. We will once again assume that potential output equals \$10 trillion.

In panel (a) of Figure 12.2, the initial equilibrium occurs at point 1, the intersection of the aggregate demand curve AD and the initial short-run aggregate supply curve AS_1 . The level of equilibrium output, $Y_1 = \$11$ trillion, is greater than potential output $Y^P = \$10$ trillion. Unemployment is therefore less than its natural rate, and there is excessive tightness in the labor market. As the Phillips curve analysis in Chapter 11 indicates, tightness at $Y_1 = \$11$ trillion drives wages up and causes firms to raise their prices at a more rapid rate. Inflation will then rise above the initial inflation rate, π_1 . Hence, next period, firms and households adjust their expectations and expected inflation is higher. Wages and prices will then rise more rapidly, and the aggregate supply curve shifts up and to the left from AS_1 to AS_2 .

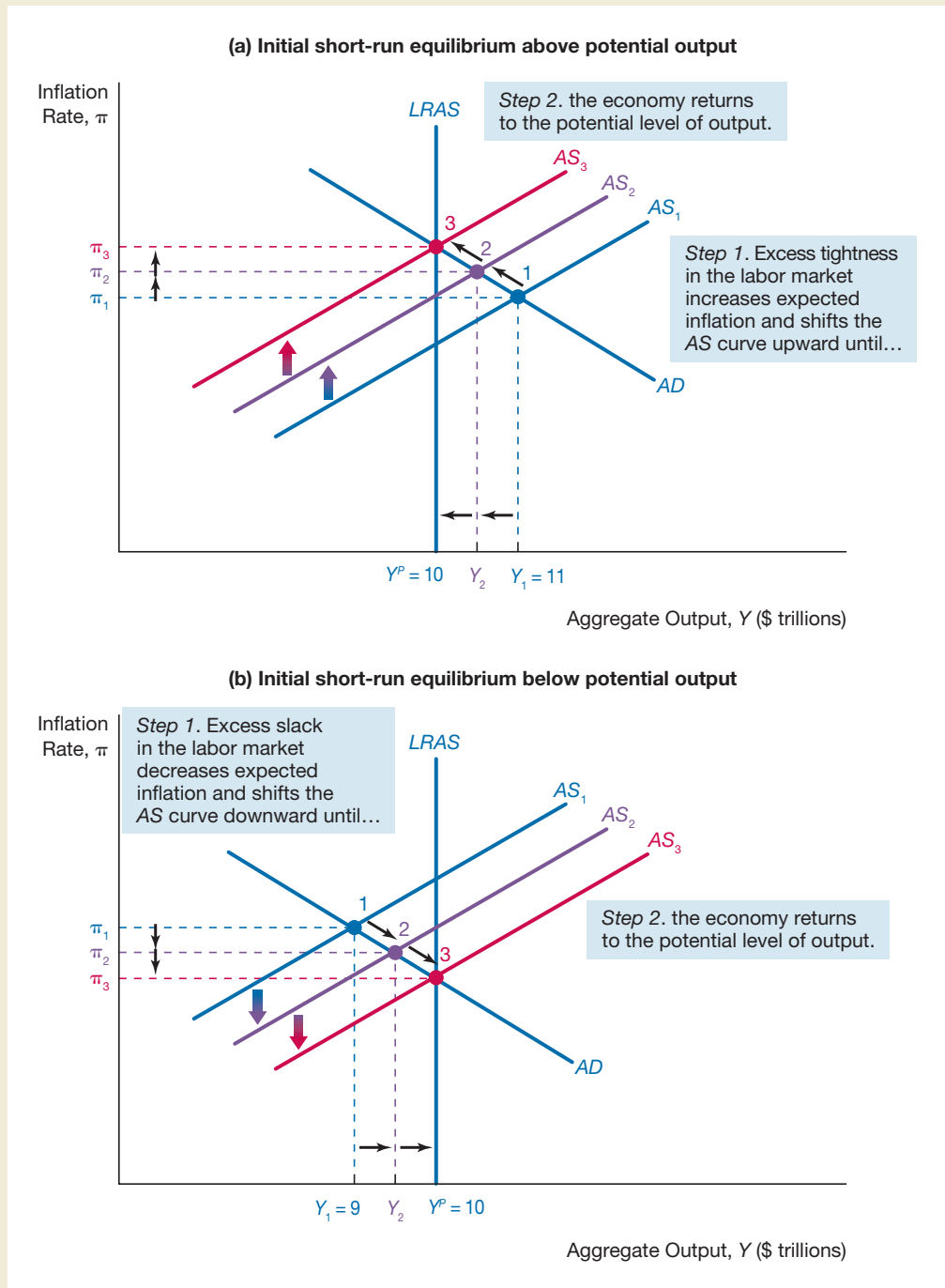
The new short-run equilibrium at point 2 is a movement up the aggregate demand curve and output falls to Y_2 . However, because aggregate output Y_2 is still above potential output Y^P , wages and prices increase at an even higher rate, so inflation again rises above its value last period. Expected inflation rises further, eventually shifting the aggregate supply curve up and to the left to AS_3 . The economy reaches long-run equilibrium at point 3 on the vertical long-run aggregate supply curve ($LRAS$) at Y^P . Because output is at potential, there is no further pressure on inflation to rise and thus no further tendency for the aggregate supply curve to shift.

The movements in panel (a) indicate that the economy will not remain at a level of output higher than potential output of \$10 trillion over time. Specifically, the short-run aggregate supply curve will shift to the left, raise the inflation rate, and cause the economy (equilibrium) to move upward along the aggregate demand curve until it comes to rest at a point on the long-run aggregate supply curve at potential output $Y^P = \$10$ trillion.

FIGURE 12.2

Adjustment to Long-Run Equilibrium in Aggregate Supply and Demand Analysis

In both panels, the initial short-run equilibrium is at point 1 at the intersection of AD and AS_1 . In panel (a), initial short-run equilibrium is above potential output, the long-run equilibrium, so the short-run aggregate supply curve shifts upward until it reaches AS_3 , where output returns to Y^P . In panel (b), initial short-run equilibrium is below potential output, so the short-run aggregate supply curve shifts down until output again returns to Y^P . In both panels, the economy's self-correcting mechanism returns it to the level of potential output.



In panel (b), at the initial equilibrium at point 1, output $Y_1 = \$9$ trillion is below the level of potential output. Because unemployment is now above its natural rate, there is excess slack in the labor markets. This slack at $Y_1 = \$9$ trillion decreases inflation, shifting the short-run aggregate supply curve in the next period down and to the right to AS_2 .

The equilibrium will now move to point 2 and output rises to Y_2 . However, because aggregate output Y_2 is still below potential, Y^P , inflation again declines from its value last

period, shifting the aggregate supply curve down until it comes to rest at AS_3 . The economy (equilibrium) moves downward along the aggregate demand curve until it reaches the long-run equilibrium point 3, the intersection of the aggregate demand curve (AD) and the long-run aggregate supply curve ($LRAS$) at $Y^P = \$10$ trillion. Here, as in panel (a), the economy comes to rest when output has again returned to its potential level.

Self-Correcting Mechanism

Notice that in both panels of Figure 12.2, regardless of where output is initially, it returns eventually to potential output, a feature we call the **self-correcting mechanism**. The self-correcting mechanism occurs because the short-run aggregate supply curve shifts up or down to restore the economy to full employment (aggregate output at potential) over time.

Changes in Equilibrium: Aggregate Demand Shocks

With an understanding of the distinction between the short-run and long-run equilibria, you are now ready to analyze what happens when there are **demand shocks**, shocks that cause the aggregate demand curve to shift. Figure 12.3 depicts the effect of a rightward shift in the aggregate demand curve due to positive demand shocks caused by the following:

- An autonomous easing of monetary policy ($\bar{r} \downarrow$, a lowering of the real interest rate at any given inflation rate)
- An increase in government purchases ($\bar{G} \uparrow$)
- A decrease in taxes ($\bar{T} \downarrow$)
- An increase in net exports ($\bar{NX} \uparrow$)
- An increase in the willingness of consumers and businesses to spend because they become more optimistic ($\bar{C} \uparrow, \bar{I} \uparrow$)

FIGURE 12.3

Positive Demand Shock

A positive demand shock shifts the aggregate demand curve upward from AD_1 to AD_2 and moves the economy from point 1 to point 2, resulting in higher inflation at 3.5% and higher output of \$11 trillion. Because output is greater than potential output, the short-run aggregate supply curve begins to shift up, eventually reaching AS_3 . At point 3, the economy returns to long-run equilibrium, with output at $Y^P = \$10$ trillion and the inflation level rising to 6%.

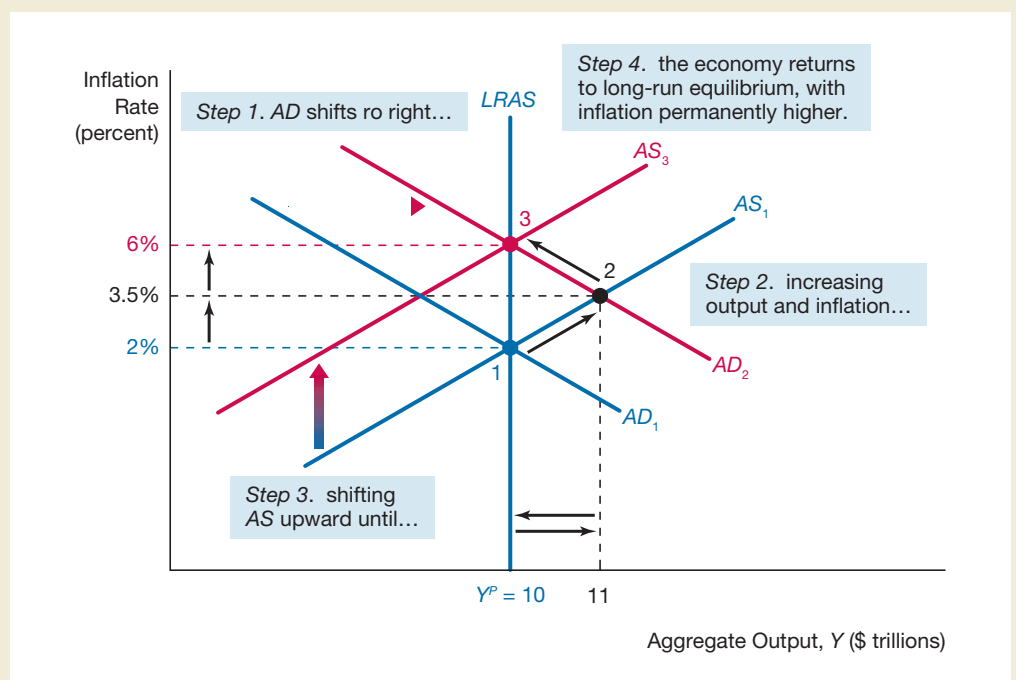


Figure 12.3 shows the economy initially in long-run equilibrium at point 1, where the initial aggregate demand curve AD_1 intersects the short-run aggregate supply AS_1 curve at $Y^P = \$10$ trillion and the inflation rate = 2%. Suppose the aggregate demand curve has a rightward shift of \$2 trillion to AD_2 . The economy moves up the short-run aggregate supply curve AS_1 to point 2, and both output and inflation rise. Algebraically, we can show that output rises to \$11 trillion and inflation rises to 3.5%. However, the economy will not remain at point 2 in the long run, because output at \$11 trillion is above potential output. Inflation will rise, and the short-run aggregate supply curve will eventually shift upward to AS_3 . The economy (equilibrium) thus moves up the AD_2 curve from point 2 to point 3, which is the point of long-run equilibrium where inflation equals 6% and output returns to $Y^P = \$10$ trillion. (The box, “Algebraic Determination of the Response to a Rightward Shift of the Aggregate Demand Curve,” derives these values of the equilibrium output and inflation rate algebraically.) **Although the initial short-run effect of the rightward shift in the aggregate demand curve is a rise in both inflation and output, the ultimate long-run effect is only a rise in inflation because output returns to its initial level at Y^P .**²

We now turn to applying the aggregate demand and supply model to demand shocks, as a payoff for our hard work constructing the model. Throughout the remainder of this chapter, we will apply aggregate supply and demand analysis to a number of



Algebraic Determination of the Response to a Rightward Shift of the Aggregate Demand Curve

We begin our algebraic look at the increase in aggregate demand the same way we did our graphical analysis: suppose that the aggregate demand curve shifts rightward by \$2 trillion to AD_2 , which we represent in equation form as $Y = 13 - 0.5\pi$. Substituting in for $\pi = 2 + 1.5(Y - 10)$, from the AS_1 curve, yields the following:

$$\begin{aligned} Y &= 13 - 0.5 [2 + 1.5(Y - 10)] \\ &= 13 - 1 - 0.75Y + 7.5 \\ &= 19.5 - 0.75Y \end{aligned}$$

Collecting the terms in Y

$$Y(1 + 0.75) = 19.5$$

and dividing both sides of the equation by 1.75 shows that the equilibrium output at point 2 is $19.5/1.75 = \$11$ trillion. Substituting this value of

equilibrium output into the short-run aggregate supply equation, $\pi = 2 + 1.5(Y - 10)$, yields the following:

$$\pi = 2 + 1.5(11 - 10) = 3.5$$

so the equilibrium inflation rate is 3.5%.

Long-run output goes to the potential level of output, so $Y = Y^P = \$10$ trillion. Substituting this value of output into the aggregate demand curve AD_2 , $Y = 13 - 0.5\pi$,

$$10 = 13 - 0.5\pi$$

which we can rewrite as

$$0.5\pi = 13 - 10 = 3$$

Dividing both sides of the equation by 0.5 indicates that $\pi = 6$. Thus at the long-run equilibrium at point 3, the inflation rate is 6% as in Figure 12.3.

²Note the analysis here assumes that each of these positive demand shocks occurs holding everything else constant, the usual *ceteris paribus* assumption that is standard in supply and demand analysis. Specifically this means that the central bank is assumed to not be responding to demand shocks. In Chapter 13, we relax this assumption and allow monetary policy makers to respond to these shocks. As we will see, if monetary policy makers want to keep inflation from rising as a result of a positive demand shock, they will respond by autonomously tightening monetary policy and shifting up the monetary policy curve.

business cycle episodes, both in the United States and in foreign countries, over the last forty years. To simplify our analysis, we always assume in all examples that aggregate output is initially at the level of potential output.

Application

The Volcker Disinflation, 1980–1986

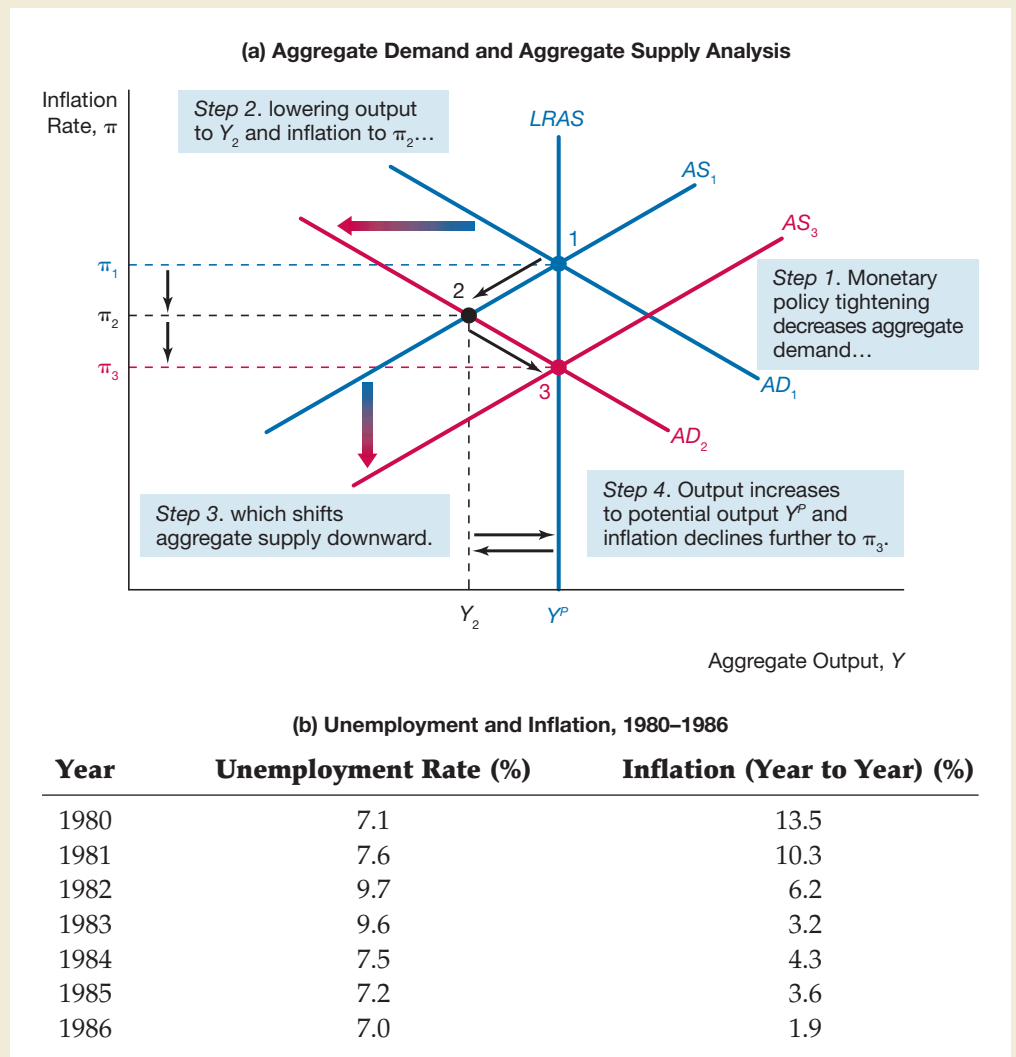
When Paul Volcker became the chairman of the Federal Reserve in August 1979, inflation had spun out of control and the inflation rate exceeded 10%. Volcker was determined to get inflation down. By early 1981, the Federal Reserve had raised the federal funds rate to over 20%, which led to a sharp increase in real interest rates. Volcker was indeed successful in bringing inflation down, as panel (b) of Figure 12.4 indicates, with the inflation rate falling from 13.5% in 1980 to 1.9% in 1986. The decline in inflation came at a high cost: the economy experienced the worst recession since World War II, with the unemployment rate soaring to 9.7% in 1982.

FIGURE 12.4

The Volcker Disinflation

Panel (a) shows that Fed Chairman Volcker's actions to decrease inflation were successful but costly: the autonomous monetary policy tightening caused a negative demand shock that decreased aggregate demand and in turn inflation, resulting in soaring unemployment rates. The data in panel (b) supports this analysis: note the decline in the inflation rate from 13.5% in 1980 to 1.9% in 1986, while the unemployment rate increased as high as 9.7% in 1982.

Source: Economic Report of the President.



This outcome is exactly what our aggregate demand and supply analysis predicts. The autonomous tightening of monetary policy decreased aggregate demand and shifted the aggregate demand curve to the left from AD_1 to AD_2 , as we show in panel (a) of Figure 12.4. The economy moved to point 2, indicating that unemployment would rise and inflation would fall. With unemployment above the natural rate and output below potential, the short-run aggregate supply curve shifted downward and to the right to AS_3 . The economy moved toward long-run equilibrium at point 3, with inflation continuing to fall, output rising back to potential output, and the unemployment rate moving toward its natural rate level. By 1986, Figure 12.4 panel (b) shows that the unemployment rate had fallen to 7% and the inflation rate was 1.9%, just as our aggregate demand and supply analysis predicts.



The next period we will examine, 2001–2004, again illustrates negative demand shocks—this time, three at once.

Application

Negative Demand Shocks, 2001–2004

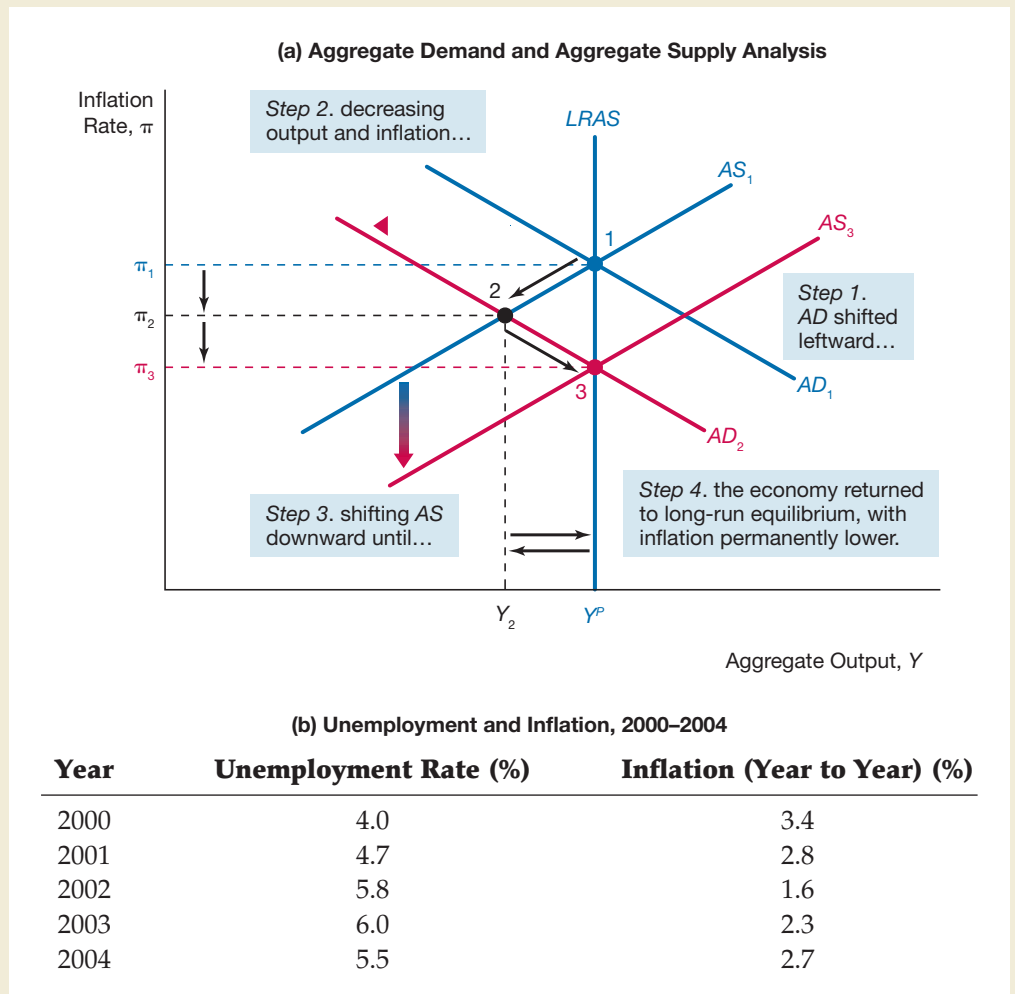
In 2000, the U.S. economy was expanding when it was hit by a series of negative shocks to aggregate demand.

1. The “tech bubble” burst in March 2000 and the stock market fell sharply.
2. The September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks weakened both consumer and business confidence.
3. The Enron bankruptcy in late 2001 and other corporate accounting scandals in 2002 revealed that corporate financial data were not to be trusted. Interest rates on corporate bonds rose as a result, making it more expensive for corporations to finance their investments.

All these negative demand shocks led to a decline in household and business spending, decreasing aggregate demand and shifting the aggregate demand curve to the left from AD_1 to AD_2 in panel (a) of Figure 12.5. At point 2, as our aggregate demand and supply analysis predicts, unemployment rose and inflation fell. Panel (b) of Figure 12.5 shows that the unemployment rate, which had been at 4% in 2000, rose to 6% in 2003, while the annual rate of inflation fell from 3.4% in 2000 to 1.6% in 2002. With unemployment above the natural rate (estimated to be around 5%) and output below potential, the short-run aggregate supply curve shifted downward to AS_3 , as we show in panel (a) of Figure 12.5. The economy moved to point 3, with inflation falling, output rising back to potential output, and the unemployment rate returning to its natural rate level. By 2004, the self-correcting mechanism feature of aggregate demand and supply analysis began to come into play, with the unemployment rate dropping back to 5.5% (see Figure 12.5 panel (b)).

FIGURE 12.5**Negative Demand Shocks, 2001–2004**

Panel (a) shows that the negative demand shocks from 2001–2004 decreased consumption expenditure and investment, shifting the aggregate demand curve to the left from AD_1 to AD_2 . The economy moved to point 2 where output fell, unemployment rose, and inflation declined. The large negative output gap when output was less than potential caused the short-run aggregate supply curve to begin falling to AS_3 . The economy moved toward point 3, where output would return to potential: inflation declined further to π_3 and unemployment falls back again to its natural rate level of around 5%. The data in panel (b) supports this analysis, with inflation declining to around 2% and the unemployment rate dropping back to 5.5% by 2004.



Source: Economic Report of the President.



Changes in Equilibrium: Aggregate Supply (Price) Shocks

The aggregate supply curve can shift from temporary supply (price) shocks in which the long-run aggregate supply curve does not shift, or from permanent supply shocks in which the long-run aggregate supply curve does shift. We look at these two types of supply shocks in turn.

Temporary Supply Shocks

In our discussion of the Phillips curve in Chapter 11, we showed that inflation will rise independent of tightness in the labor markets or of expected inflation when there is a temporary supply shock such as a change in the supply of oil that either causes prices

to rise or to fall. When the temporary shock involves a restriction in supply, we refer to this type of supply shock as a *negative (or unfavorable) supply shock*, and it results in a rise in commodity prices (recall our discussion of negative supply shocks related to technology, the natural environment, and energy in Chapter 3). Examples of temporary negative supply shocks are a disruption in oil supplies, a rise in import prices when a currency declines in value or a cost-push shock from workers pushing for higher wages that outpace productivity costs, driving up costs and inflation. When the supply shock involves an increase in supply, it is called a *positive (or favorable) supply shock*. Temporary positive supply shocks can come from a particularly good harvest or a fall in import prices.

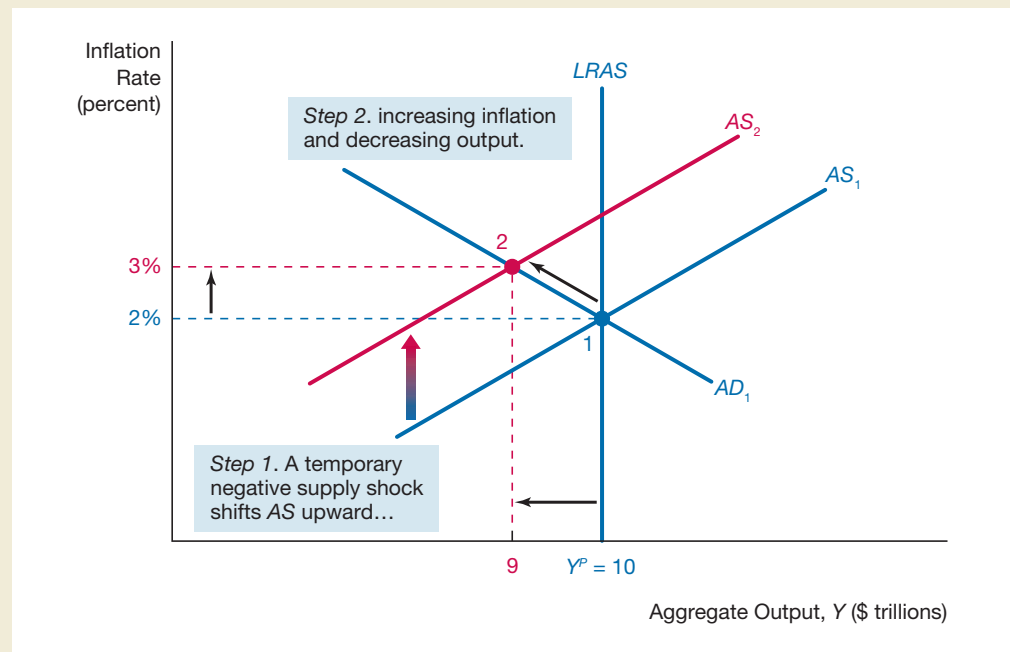
To see how a temporary supply shock affects the economy using our aggregate supply and demand analysis, we start by assuming that the economy has output at its potential level of \$10 trillion and inflation at 2% at point 1. Suppose that there is a temporary negative supply shock because of a war in the Middle East. When the negative supply shock hits the economy and oil prices rise, the price shock term ρ causes inflation to rise above 2% and the short-run aggregate supply curve shifts up and to the left from AS_1 to AS_2 in Figure 12.6.

The economy will move up the aggregate demand curve from point 1 to point 2, where inflation rises above 2% but aggregate output *falls* below \$10 trillion. We call a situation of rising inflation but a falling level of aggregate output, as pictured in Figure 12.6, **stagflation** (a combination of the words *stagnation* and *inflation*). Because the supply shock is temporary, productive capacity in the economy does not change, and so Y^P and the long-run aggregate supply curve $LRAS$ remains stationary at

FIGURE 12.6

Temporary Negative Supply Shock

A temporary negative supply shock shifts the short-run aggregate supply curve from AS_1 to AS_2 and the economy moves from point 1 to point 2, where inflation increases to 3% and output declines to \$9 trillion. Because output is less than potential, the short-run aggregate supply curve begins to shift back down, eventually returning to AS_1 , where the economy is again at the initial long-run equilibrium at point 1.



\$10 trillion. At point 2, output is therefore below its potential level (say at \$9 trillion), so inflation falls and shifts the short-run aggregate supply curve back down to where it was initially at AS_1 . The economy (equilibrium) slides down the aggregate demand curve AD_1 (assuming that the aggregate demand curve remains in the same position) and returns to the long-run equilibrium at point 1 where output is again at \$10 trillion and inflation is at 2%.

Although a temporary negative supply shock leads to an upward and leftward shift in the short-run aggregate supply curve, which raises inflation and lowers output initially, the ultimate long-run effect is that output and inflation are unchanged.

A favorable (positive) supply shock—say an excellent harvest of wheat in the Midwest—moves all the curves in Figure 12.6 in the opposite direction and so has the opposite effects. **A temporary positive supply shock shifts the short-run aggregate supply curve downward and to the right, leading initially to a fall in inflation and a rise in output. In the long run, however, output and inflation will be unchanged (holding the aggregate demand curve constant).**

We now will once again apply the aggregate demand and supply model, this time to temporary supply shocks. We begin with negative supply shocks in 1973–1975 and 1978–1980. (Recall that we assume that aggregate output is initially is at the natural rate level).

Application

Negative Supply Shocks, 1973–1975 and 1978–1980

In 1973, the U.S. economy was hit by a series of negative supply shocks:

1. As a result of the oil embargo stemming from the Arab–Israeli war of 1973, the Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC) engineered a quadrupling of oil prices by restricting oil production.
2. A series of crop failures throughout the world led to a sharp increase in food prices.
3. The termination of U.S. wage and price controls in 1973 and 1974 led to a push by workers to obtain wage increases that had been prevented by the controls.

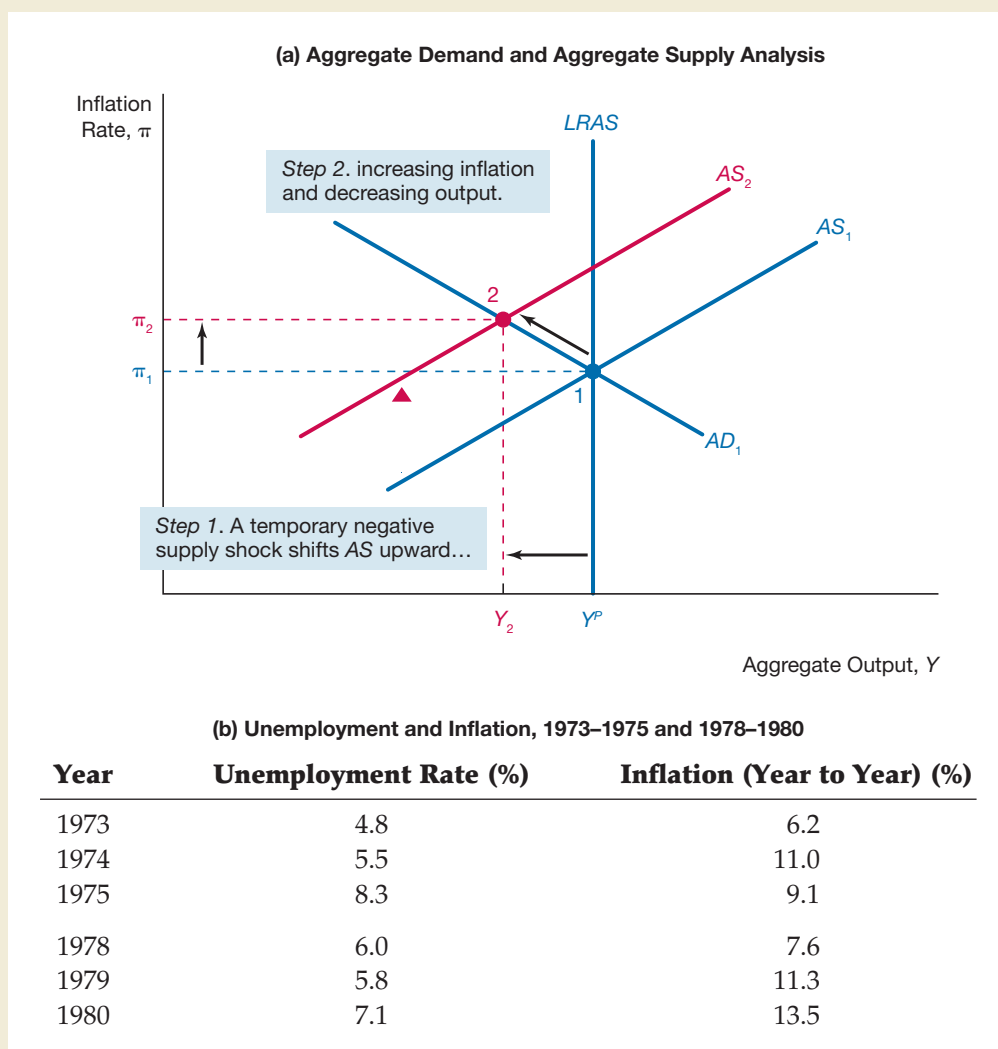
The triple thrust of these events shifted the short-run aggregate supply curve sharply upward and to the left from AS_1 to AS_2 in panel (a) of Figure 12.7, and the economy moved to point 2. As the aggregate demand and supply diagram in Figure 12.7 predicts, both inflation and unemployment rose (inflation by 3 percentage points and unemployment by 3.5 percentage points, as per panel (b) of Figure 12.7).

The 1978–1980 period was almost an exact replay of the 1973–1975 period. By 1978, the economy had just about fully recovered from the 1973–1975 supply shocks, when poor harvests and a doubling of oil prices (as a result of the overthrow of the Shah of Iran) again led to another sharp upward and leftward shift of the short-run aggregate supply curve in 1979. The pattern predicted by Figure 12.7 played itself out again—inflation and unemployment both shot upward.

FIGURE 12.7**Negative Supply Shocks, 1973–1975 and 1978–1980**

Panel (a) shows that the temporary negative supply shocks in 1973 and 1979 led to an upward shift in the short-run aggregate supply curve from AS_1 to AS_2 . The economy moved to point 2, where output fell, and both unemployment and inflation rose. The data in panel (b) supports this analysis: note the increase in the inflation rate from 6.2% in 1973 to 9.1% in 1975 and the increase in the unemployment rate from 4.8% in 1973 to 8.3% in 1975. In the 1978–1980 shock, inflation increased from 7.6% in 1978 to 13.5% in 1980, while the unemployment rate increased from 6.0% in 1978 to 7.1% in 1980.

Source: Economic Report of the President.



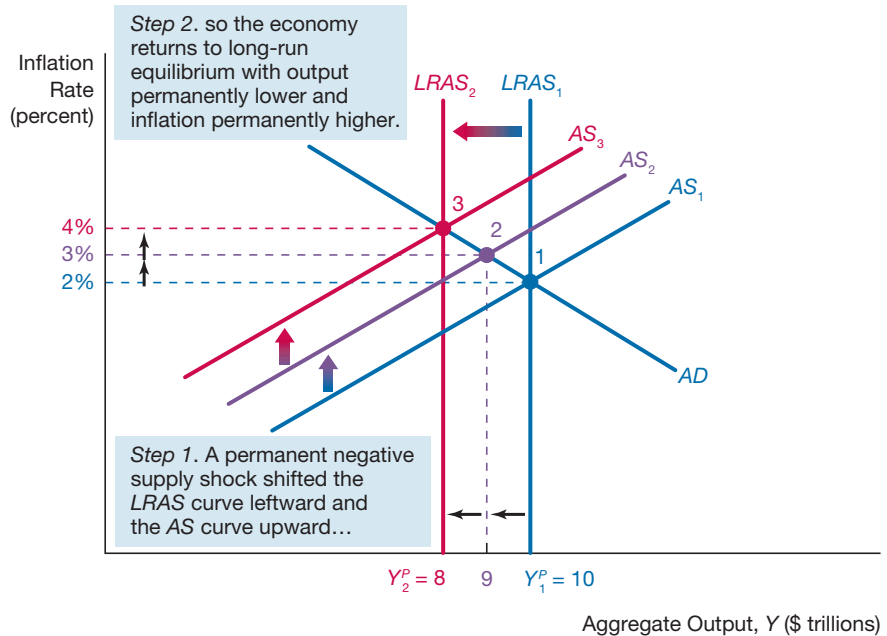
Permanent Supply Shocks

But what if the supply shock is not temporary? A permanent negative supply shock—such as an increase in ill-advised regulations that causes the economy to be less efficient, thereby reducing supply—would decrease potential output from, say, $Y_1^P = \$10$ trillion to $Y_2^P = \$8$ trillion, and shift the long-run aggregate supply curve to the left from $LRAS_1$ to $LRAS_2$ in Figure 12.8.

Because the permanent supply shock will result in higher prices, there will be an immediate rise in inflation—say to 3%—from its previous level of 2%, and so the short-run aggregate supply curve will shift up and to the left from AS_1 to AS_2 . Although output at point 2 has fallen to \$9 trillion, it is still above $Y_2^P = \$8$ trillion: the positive output gap means that the aggregate supply curve will shift up and to the left. It continues to do so until it reaches AS_3 at the intersection with the aggregate demand curve AD and the long-run aggregate supply curve $LRAS_2$. Now because output is at $Y_2^P = \$8$ trillion at point 3,

FIGURE 12.8**Permanent Negative Supply Shock**

A permanent negative supply shock leads initially to a decline in output and a rise in inflation. In the long run, it leads to a permanent decline in output and a permanent rise in inflation, as indicated by point 3, where inflation has risen to 4% and output has fallen to \$8 trillion.



the output gap is zero and at an inflation rate of 4% there is no further upward pressure on inflation.

Figure 12.8 generates the following result when we hold the aggregate demand curve constant: **a permanent negative supply shock leads initially to both a decline in output and a rise in inflation. However, in contrast to a temporary supply shock, in the long run the negative supply shock, which results in a fall in potential output, leads to a permanent decline in output and a permanent rise in inflation.**³

The opposite conclusion follows from a positive supply shock, say because of the development of new technology that raises productivity. **A permanent positive supply shock lowers inflation and raises output both in the short run and the long run.**

To this point, we have assumed that potential output Y^P and hence the long-run aggregate supply curve are given. However, over time, the potential level of output increases as a result of economic growth. If the productive capacity of the economy is growing at a steady rate of 3% per year, for example, every year Y^P will grow by 3% and the long-run aggregate supply curve at Y^P will shift to the right by 3%. To simplify the analysis, when Y^P grows at a steady rate, we represent Y^P and the long-run aggregate supply curve as fixed in the aggregate demand and supply diagrams. Keep in mind, however, that the level of aggregate output pictured in these diagrams is actually best thought of as the level of aggregate output relative to its normal rate of growth (trend).

The 1995–1999 period serves as an illustration of permanent positive supply shocks, as the following application indicates.

³The results on the effect of permanent supply shocks assume that monetary policy is not changing, so that the monetary policy (MP) curve and the aggregate demand curve remain unchanged. Monetary policy makers, however, might shift the MP curve if they want to shift the aggregate demand curve to keep inflation at the same level. For example, see Chapter 13.

Application

Positive Supply Shocks, 1995–1999

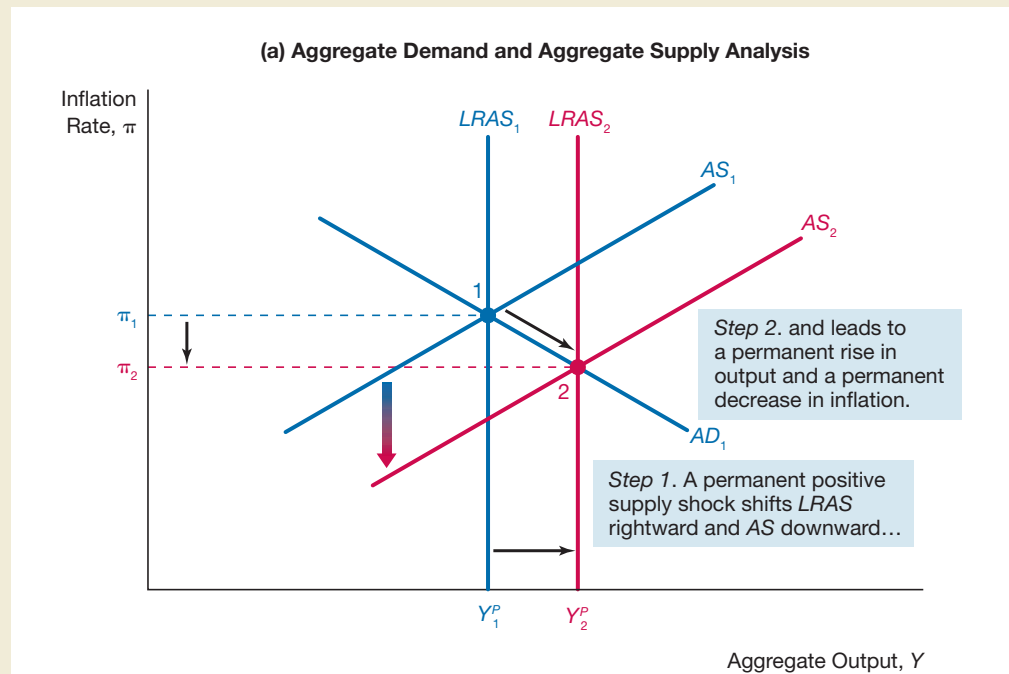
In February 1994, the Federal Reserve began to raise interest rates. It believed the economy would be reaching potential output and the natural rate of unemployment in 1995, and it might become overheated thereafter, with output climbing above potential and inflation rising. As we can see in panel (b) of Figure 12.9, however, the economy continued to grow rapidly, with the unemployment rate falling to below 5% in 1997. Yet inflation continued to fall, declining to around 1.6% in 1998.

Can aggregate demand and supply analysis explain what happened? Two permanent positive supply shocks hit the economy in the late 1990s.

1. Changes in the health care industry, such as the emergence of health maintenance organizations (HMOs), reduced medical care costs substantially relative to other goods and services.
2. The computer revolution finally began to impact productivity favorably, raising the potential growth rate of the economy (which journalists dubbed the “new economy”).

FIGURE 12.9
Positive Supply Shocks, 1995–1999

Panel (a) shows that the positive supply shocks from lower health care costs and the rise in productivity from the computer revolution led to a rightward shift in the long-run aggregate supply curve from $LRAS_1$ to $LRAS_2$ and a downward shift in the short-run aggregate supply curve from AS_1 to AS_2 . The economy moved to point 2, where aggregate output rose, and unemployment and inflation fell. The data in panel (b) supports this analysis: note that the unemployment rate fell from 5.6% in 1995 to 4.2% in 1999, while the inflation rate fell from 2.8% in 1995 to 2.2% in 1999.



(b) Unemployment and Inflation, 1995–1999

Year	Unemployment Rate (%)	Inflation (Year to Year) (%)
1995	5.6	2.8
1996	5.4	3.0
1997	4.9	2.3
1998	4.5	1.6
1999	4.2	2.2

Source: Economic Report of the President.

In addition, demographic factors, which we will discuss in Chapter 20, led to a fall in the natural rate of unemployment. These factors led to a rightward shift in the long-run aggregate supply curve to $LRAS_2$ and a downward and rightward shift in the short-run aggregate supply curve from AS_1 to AS_2 , as shown in panel (a) of Figure 12.9. Aggregate output rose, and unemployment fell, while inflation also declined.



Conclusions

Aggregate demand and supply analysis yields the following conclusions.

1. A shift in the aggregate demand curve—caused by changes in autonomous monetary policy (changes in the real interest rate at any given inflation rate), government purchases, taxes, autonomous net exports, autonomous consumption expenditure, or autonomous investment—affects output only in the short run and has no effect in the long run. Furthermore, the initial change in inflation is lower than the long-run change in inflation when the short-run aggregate supply curve has fully adjusted.
2. A temporary supply shock affects output and inflation only in the short run and has no effect in the long run (holding the aggregate demand curve constant).
3. A permanent supply shock affects output and inflation both in the short and the long run.
4. The economy has a self-correcting mechanism that returns it to potential output and the natural rate of unemployment over time.

We close the section with one final application—this time with both supply and demand shocks at play—featuring the 2007–2009 financial crisis.

Application

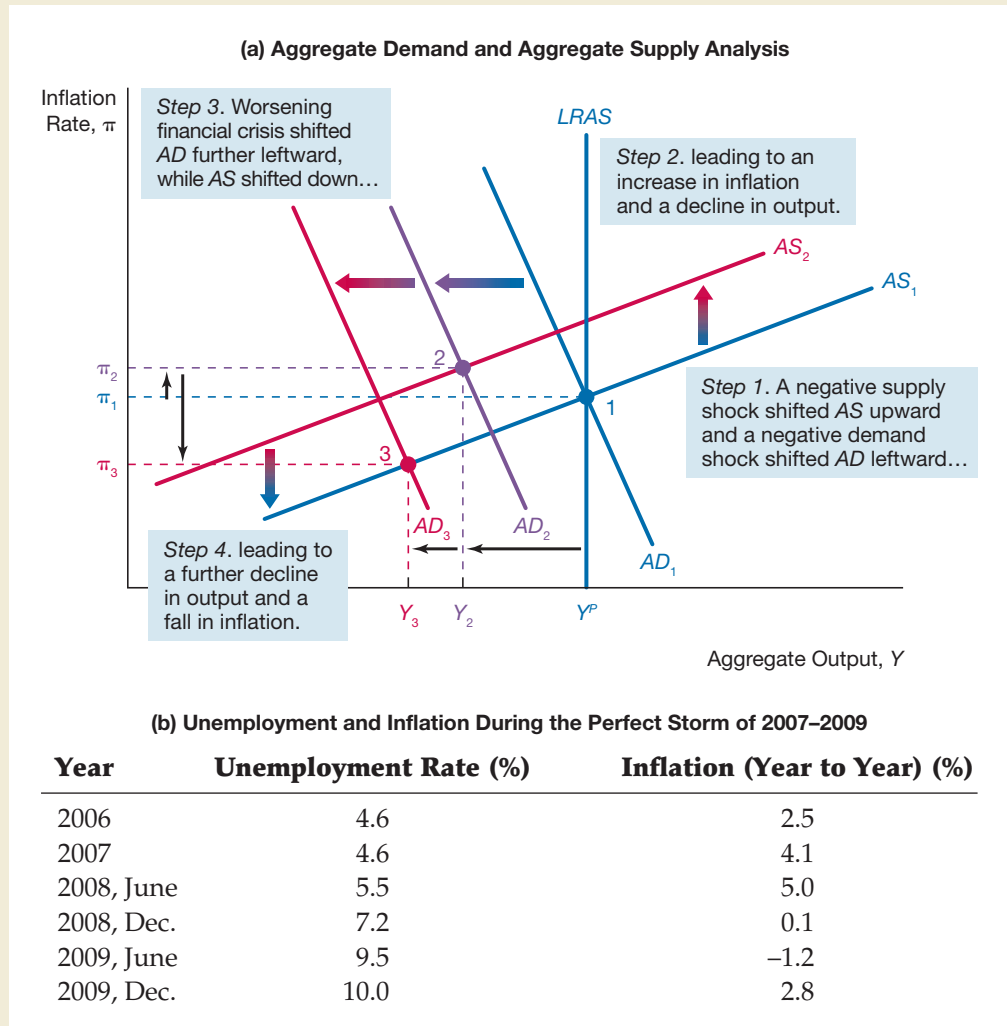
Negative Supply and Demand Shocks and the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis

We described the perfect storm of 2007–2009 in the chapter opener. At the beginning of 2007, higher demand for oil from rapidly growing developing countries like China and India and slowing of production in places like Mexico, Russia, and Nigeria drove up oil prices sharply from around the \$60 per barrel level. By the end of 2007, oil prices had risen to \$100 per barrel and reached a peak of over \$140 in July 2008. The run up of oil prices, along with increases in other commodity prices, led to a negative supply shock that shifted the short-run aggregate supply curve in panel (a) of Figure 12.10 sharply upward from AS_1 to AS_2 . To make matters worse, a financial crisis hit the economy starting in August 2007, causing a contraction in both household and business spending (more on this in Chapter 15). This negative demand shock shifted the aggregate demand curve to the left from AD_1 to AD_2 in panel (a) of Figure 12.10 and moved the economy to point 2. These shocks led to a rise in the unemployment rate, a rise in the inflation rate, and a decline in output, as point 2 indicates. As our aggregate demand and supply analysis predicts, this perfect storm of negative shocks led to a recession starting in December 2007, with the unemployment rate rising from the 4.6% level in 2006 and 2007 to 5.5% by June 2008, and with the inflation rate rising from 2.5% in 2006 to 5% in June 2008 (see panel (b) of Figure 12.10).

FIGURE 12.10

Negative Supply and Demand Shocks and the 2007–2009 Crisis

Panel (a) shows that the negative price shock from the rise in the price of oil shifted the short-run aggregate supply curve up from AS_1 to AS_2 , while a negative demand shock from the financial crisis led to a sharp contraction in spending, resulting in the aggregate demand curve moving from AD_1 to AD_2 . The economy thus moved to point 2, where there was a sharp contraction in aggregate output, which fell to Y_2 , and a rise in unemployment, while inflation rose to π_2 . The fall in oil prices shifted the short-run aggregate supply curve back down to AS_1 , while the deepening financial crisis shifted the aggregate demand curve to AD_3 . As a result the economy moved to point 3, where inflation fell to π_3 and output to Y_3 . The data in panel (b) supports this analysis: note that the unemployment rose from 4.6% in 2006 to 5.5% in June of 2008, while inflation rose from 2.5% to 5.0%.



Source: Economic Report of the President.

After July 2008, oil prices fell sharply, shifting short-run aggregate supply downward. However, in the fall of 2008, the financial crisis entered a particularly virulent phase following the bankruptcy of Lehman Brothers, decreasing aggregate demand sharply. As a result, the economy suffered from increasing unemployment, with the unemployment rate rising to 10.0% by the end of 2009, while the inflation rate fell to 2.8% (see panel (b) of Figure 12.10).

AD/AS Analysis of Foreign Business Cycle Episodes

Our aggregate demand and supply analysis also can help us understand business cycle episodes in foreign countries. Here we look at two: the business cycle experience of the United Kingdom during the 2007–2009 financial crisis and the quite different experience of China during the same period.

Application

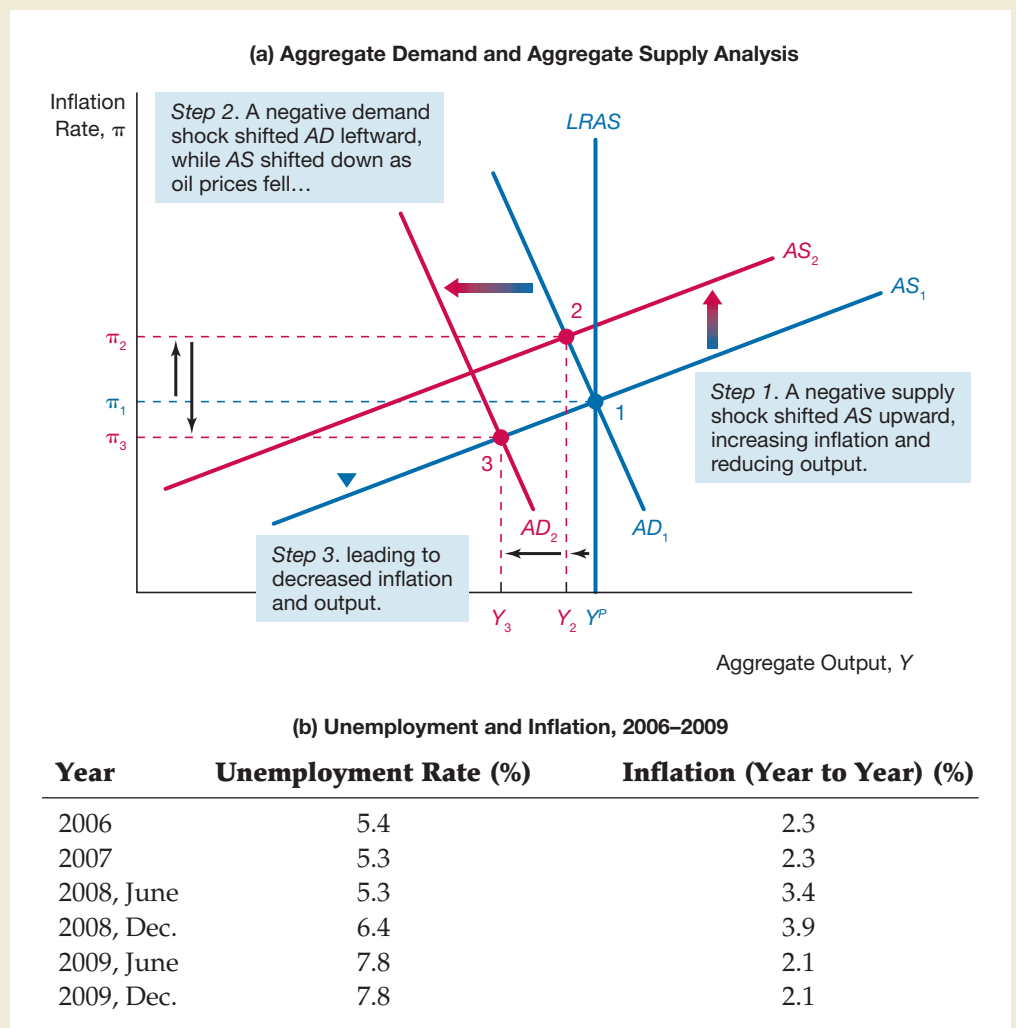
The United Kingdom and the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis

As in the United States, the rise in the price of oil in 2007 led to a negative supply shock. In Figure 12.11 panel (a), the short-run aggregate supply curve shifted up from AS_1 to AS_2 in the United Kingdom. The financial crisis did not at first have a large impact on spending, so

FIGURE 12.11

UK Financial Crisis, 2007–2009

Panel (a) shows that a supply shock in 2007 from rising oil prices shifted the short-run aggregate supply curve up and to the left from AS_1 to AS_2 in the United Kingdom. The economy moved to point 2. With output below potential and oil prices falling after July of 2008, the short-run aggregate supply curve began to shift down to AS_1 . A negative demand shock following the escalating financial crisis after the Lehman Brothers bankruptcy shifted the aggregate demand curve to the left to AD_2 . The economy now moved to point 3, where output fell to Y_3 , unemployment rose, and inflation decreased to π_3 . The data in panel (b) supports this analysis: note that the unemployment rate increased from 5.4% in 2006 to 7.8% in Dec. 2009, while the inflation rate rose from 2.3% to 3.9% and then fell to 2.1% over this same time period.



Source: Office of National Statistics, UK. www.statistics.gov.uk/statbase/tsdtimezone.asp

the aggregate demand curve did not shift and equilibrium instead moved from point 1 to point 2 on AD_1 . The aggregate demand and supply framework indicates that inflation would rise, which is what occurred (see the increase in the inflation rate from 2.3% in 2007 to 3.9% in December 2008 in Figure 12.11 panel (b)). With output below potential and oil prices falling after July of 2008, the short-run aggregate supply curve shifted down to AS_1 . At the same time, the financial crisis after the Lehman Brothers bankruptcy impacted spending worldwide, causing a negative demand shock that shifted the aggregate demand curve to the left to AD_2 . The economy now moved to point 3, with a further fall in output, a rise in unemployment, and a fall in inflation. As the aggregate demand and supply analysis predicts, the UK unemployment rate rose to 7.8% by the end of 2009, with the inflation rate falling to 2.1%.



Application

China and the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis

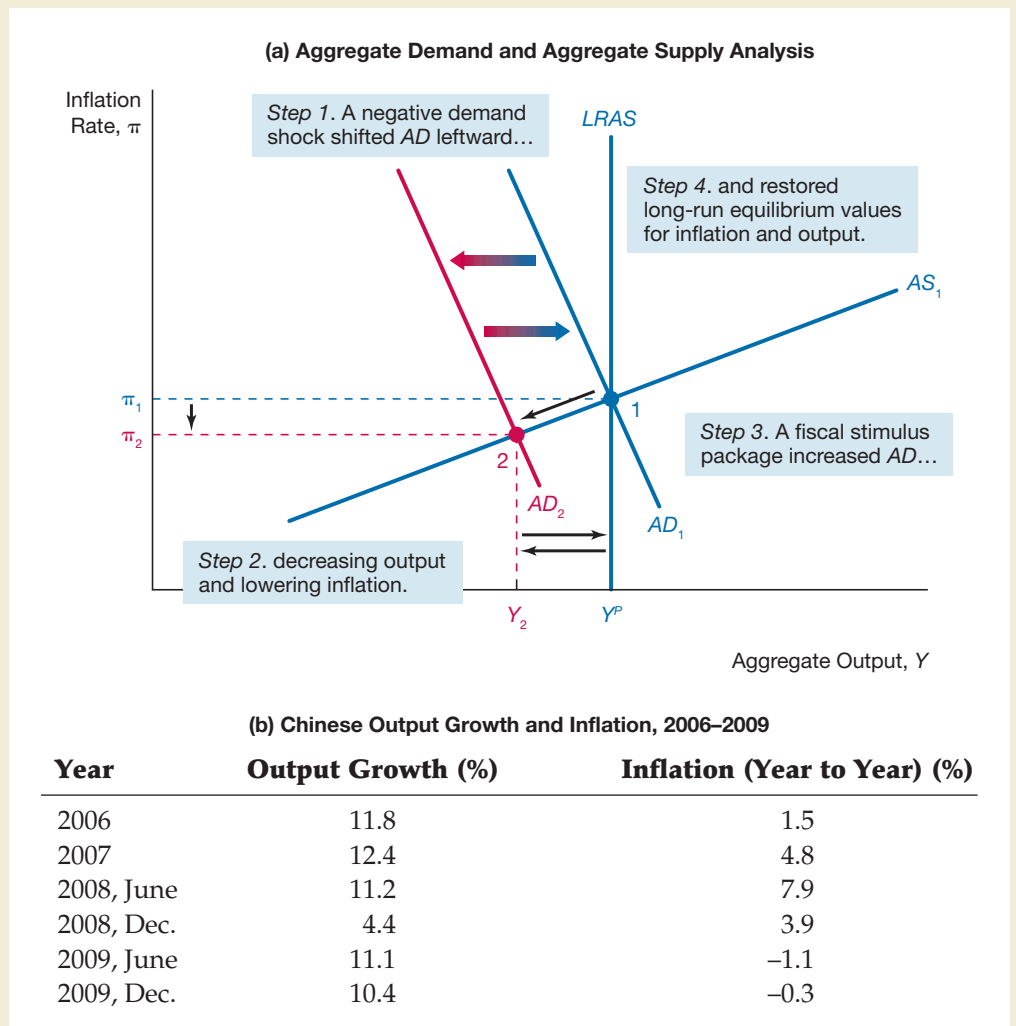
The financial crisis that began in August 2007 at first had very little impact on China. When the financial crisis escalated in the United States in the fall of 2008 with the collapse of Lehman Brothers, all this changed. China's economy had been driven by extremely strong export growth, which up until September of 2008 had been growing at over a 20% annual rate. Starting in October 2008, Chinese exports collapsed, falling at around a 20% annual rate through August 2009.

The negative demand shock from the collapse of exports led to a decline in aggregate demand, shifting the aggregate demand curve to AD_2 and moving the economy from point 1 to point 2 in Figure 12.12 panel (a). As aggregate demand and supply analysis indicates, China's economic growth slowed from over 11% in the first half of 2008 to under 5% in the second half, while inflation declined from 7.9% to 4.4%, and then became negative thereafter (see Figure 12.12 panel (b)).

Instead of relying solely on the economy's self-correcting mechanism, the Chinese government proposed a massive fiscal stimulus package of \$580 billion in 2008, which at 12.5% of GDP was three times larger than the U.S. fiscal stimulus package relative to GDP. (We discuss the U.S. fiscal stimulus package in Chapter 13.) In addition, the People's Bank of China, the central bank, began taking measures to autonomously ease monetary policy. These decisive actions shifted the aggregate demand curve back to AD_1 and the Chinese economy very quickly moved back to point 1. The Chinese economy thus weathered the financial crisis remarkably well with output growth rising rapidly in 2009 and inflation becoming positive thereafter.

FIGURE 12.12**China and the Financial Crisis, 2007–2009**

Panel (a) shows that the collapse of Chinese exports starting in 2008 led to a negative demand shock that shifted the aggregate demand curve to AD_2 , moving the economy to point 2, where output fell below potential and inflation declined. A massive fiscal stimulus package and autonomous easing of monetary policy shifted the aggregate demand curve back to AD_1 and the economy very quickly moved back to long-run equilibrium at point 1. The data in panel (b) supports this analysis; note that output growth slowed but then bounced back again, while inflation dropped sharply.



Source: International Monetary Fund. 2010. International Financial Statistics. Country Tables, February. http://www.imfstatistics.org/IMF/imfbrowser.aspx?docList=pdfs&path=ct%2f20100201%2fct_pdf%2f20100121_CHN.pdf



SUMMARY

1. The aggregate demand curve indicates the quantity of aggregate output demanded at each inflation rate, and it is downward sloping. The primary sources of shifts in the aggregate demand curve are 1) autonomous monetary policy, 2) government purchases, 3) taxes, 4) net exports, 5) autonomous consumption expenditure, and 6) autonomous investment.

The long-run aggregate supply curve is vertical at potential output. The long-run aggregate supply curve shifts when technology changes, when there

are long-run changes to the amount of labor or capital, or when the natural rate of unemployment changes. The short-run aggregate supply curve slopes upward because inflation rises as output rises relative to potential output. The short-run supply curve shifts when there are price shocks, changes in expected inflation, or persistent output gaps.

2. Equilibrium in the short run occurs at the point where the aggregate demand curve intersects the

short-run aggregate supply curve. Although this is where the economy heads temporarily, the self-correcting mechanism leads the economy to settle permanently at the long-run equilibrium where aggregate output is at its potential. Shifts in either the aggregate demand curve or the short-run aggregate supply curve can produce changes in aggregate output and inflation.

3. A positive demand shock shifts the aggregate demand curve to the right and initially leads to a rise in both inflation and output. However, in the long run it only leads to a rise in inflation, because output returns to its initial level at Y^P .
4. A temporary positive supply shock leads to a downward and rightward shift in the short-run aggregate supply curve, which lowers inflation and raises output initially. However, in the long-run output and inflation are unchanged. A permanent positive supply shock leads initially to both a rise in output and a decline in inflation. However, in contrast to a temporary supply shock, in the long run the permanent positive supply shock, which results in a rise in potential output, leads to a permanent rise in output and a permanent decline in inflation.
5. Aggregate supply and demand analysis is also just as useful for analyzing foreign business cycle episodes as it is for domestic business cycle episodes.

KEY TERMS

demand shocks, p. 291
general equilibrium, p. 287

self-correcting mechanism, p. 291

stagflation, p. 296

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Recap of Aggregate Demand and Supply Curves

1. Explain why the aggregate demand curve slopes downward and the short-run aggregate supply curve slopes upward.
2. Identify changes in three factors that will shift the aggregate demand curve to the right and changes in three different factors that will shift the aggregate demand curve to the left.
3. What factors shift the short-run aggregate supply curve? Do any of these factors shift the long-run aggregate supply curve? Why?

Equilibrium in Aggregate Demand and Supply Analysis

4. How does the condition for short-run equilibrium differ from that for long-run equilibrium?
5. Describe the adjustment to long-run equilibrium if an economy's short-run equilibrium output is above potential output.

Changes in Equilibrium: Aggregate Demand Shocks

6. What are demand shocks? Distinguish between positive and negative demand shocks.
7. Starting from a situation of long-run equilibrium, what are the short- and long-run effects of a positive demand shock?

Changes in Equilibrium: Aggregate Supply (Price) Shocks

8. What are supply shocks? Distinguish between positive and negative supply shocks and between temporary and permanent ones.
9. Starting from a situation of long-run equilibrium, what are the short- and long-run effects of a temporary negative supply shock?
10. Starting from a situation of long-run equilibrium, what are the short- and long-run effects of a permanent negative supply shock?

PROBLEMS

All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Recap of the Aggregate Demand and Supply Curves

1. In his first State of the Union speech in January 2010, President Obama proposed a tax credit for small businesses and tax incentives for all businesses that invest in new plant and equipment.
 - a) What is the anticipated effect of these proposals on aggregate demand, if any?
 - b) Show your answer graphically.
2. Evaluate the accuracy of the following statement: "The recent (from December 2008 to December 2009) depreciation of the U.S. dollar had a positive effect on the U.S. aggregate demand curve."
3. Suppose that the White House decides to sharply reduce military spending without increasing government spending in other areas.
 - a) Comment on the effect of this measure on aggregate demand.
 - b) Show your answer graphically.
4. Oil prices declined in the summer of 2008, following months of increases since the winter of 2007. Considering only this fall in oil prices, explain the effect on short-run aggregate supply and long-run aggregate supply, if any.

Changes in Equilibrium: Aggregate Demand Shocks

5. Suppose that in an effort to reduce the current federal government budget deficit, the White House decides to sharply decrease government spending. Assuming the economy is at its long-run equilibrium, carefully explain the short- and long-run consequences of this policy.
6. According to aggregate demand and supply analysis, what would be the effect of appointing a Federal Reserve System chairman known to have no interest in fighting inflation?
7. In a January 9, 2010, article the *Wall Street Journal* reported that "inflation-adjusted wages have slumped during 2009." Is this statement consistent with the aggregate demand and supply analysis of the recent U.S. economic crisis? Explain.

Changes in Equilibrium: Aggregate Supply (Price) Shocks

8. The consequences of climate change on the economy is a popular topic in the media. Suppose that a series of wildfires destroys crops in the western states at the same time a hurricane destroys refineries in the Gulf coast.
 - a) Using aggregate demand and supply analysis, explain how output and the inflation rate would be affected in the short and long runs.
 - b) Show your answer graphically.
9. Many of the resources assigned by the January 2009 U.S. stimulus package encouraged investment in research and development of new technologies (e.g., more fuel efficient cars, wind and solar power). Assuming this policy results in positive technological change for the U.S. economy, what does aggregate demand and supply analysis predict in terms of inflation and output?



MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.

Online appendices “The Effects of Macroeconomic Shocks on Asset Prices” and “The Algebra of the Aggregate Demand and Supply Model” are available at the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin





Chapter 12

Appendix

The Taylor Principle and Inflation Stability

We argued in Chapter 10 that monetary policy makers must adhere to the Taylor principle in order for the inflation rate to be stable. We can use the aggregate demand and supply model to formally demonstrate this result by showing that if policy makers do not follow the Taylor principle, inflation will be unstable.

A central bank that does not follow the Taylor principle will fail to raise nominal interest rates more than the increase in expected inflation. As a result, higher inflation will lead to a decline in real interest rates, as shown by the downward-sloping *MP* curve in panel (a) of Figure 12A1.1. As the real interest rate falls and we move from point A to point 1 to point B on the *MP* curve, equilibrium output rises from point A to point 1 to point B on the *IS* Curve in panel (b) and the *AD* curve in panel (c), with the result that the *AD* curve is upward sloping.

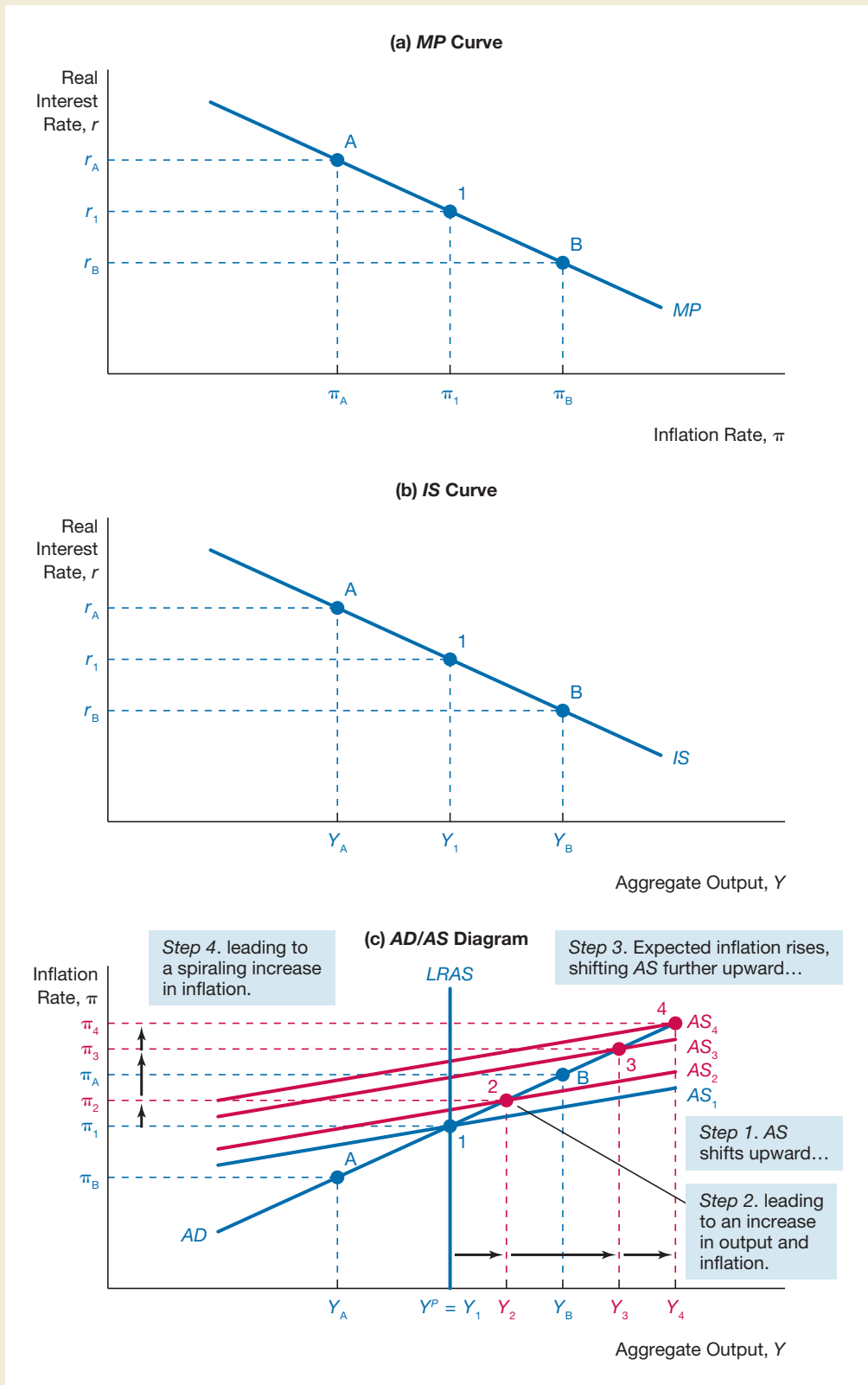
Referring to panel (c), suppose that the economy starts at point 1 at the intersection of the *AD* curve with the long-run aggregate supply curve *LRAS* and the short-run aggregate supply curve *AS*₁. Now suppose that a negative supply shock that raises prices causes the short-run aggregate supply curve to shift up to *AS*₂. The economy moves to point 2, where aggregate output has risen to Y_2 and inflation has risen to π_2 . Expected inflation now rises and so the short-run aggregate supply curve shifts up to *AS*₃ and the economy moves to point 3, where aggregate output at Y_3 is further above potential output. This causes the short-run aggregate supply curve to rise further, sending the economy to point 4, with an even larger increase in output and inflation to Y_4 and π_4 . The result is then an ever-accelerating inflation rate, which keeps on rising faster and faster, shooting off into the stratosphere.

The same reasoning indicates that if there is a negative price shock, inflation will just keep on falling, with accelerating deflation setting in.

FIGURE 12A1.1

Not Following the Taylor Principle Leads to Unstable Inflation

Not following the Taylor principle leads to a downward sloping MP curve in panel (a). As inflation rises and we move from point A to point 1 to point B on the MP curve, the equilibrium output rises at points A, 1, and B on the IS curve in panel (b) and the AD curve in panel (c). The AD curve is therefore upward sloping. A positive price shock shifts the short-run aggregate supply curve up to AS_2 , with the result that the economy moves to point 2. Expected inflation now rises and the short-run aggregate supply curve shifts up further to AS_3 and the economy moves to point 3. The short-run aggregate supply curve shifts up even further to AS_4 , and inflation keeps on rising at an accelerating pace, and so inflation is highly unstable.



SUMMARY

1. Aggregate demand and supply analysis shows that if policy makers do not follow the Taylor principle, inflation will be highly unstable. Following the Taylor principle is therefore a necessary condition for stable inflation.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND PROBLEMS

1. Use the information in the following table to calculate the real interest rate for each period. (Hint: use the Fisher Equation.)

	Period 1	Period 2	Period 3	Period 4	Period 5
Nominal interest rate	10	10	10	10	10
Inflation rate	3	4	5	6	7

- a) Plot the real interest rate (vertical axis) and the inflation rate (horizontal axis) for each period.
 - b) What does this monetary policy curve imply about the slope of the aggregate demand curve and inflation stability?
2. During the 1960s interest rates changed on a one-to-one basis with inflation rates (i.e., a change in inflation was matched by the same change in nominal interest rates) in the United States.
 - a) What is the implication of a one-to-one change between nominal interest rates and inflation for the slope of the monetary policy curve?
 - b) As inflation picked up in the early 1960s, how do you think policy makers (or Fed officials) should have responded in order to fight inflation? (Hint: should they have followed the same monetary policy rule?)



13

Macroeconomic Policy and Aggregate Demand and Supply Analysis

Preview

Between September 2007 and December 2008, the Federal Reserve lowered the target for its policy interest rate, the federal funds rate, from $5\frac{1}{4}\%$ all the way down to zero. Why did the Fed lower interest rates this aggressively? Did lower rates mitigate the effects of the recession that began in December 2007? Did they spark undesirable inflation?

Our aggregate demand–aggregate supply (*AD/AS*) framework developed in the previous chapters provides insights into these questions. But to apply it we need to include an important set of actors who play a prominent role in business cycle fluctuations: policy makers. In this chapter, we bring policy makers into the analysis by exploring their use of macroeconomic policy to stabilize both inflation and output fluctuations. Although the chapter discusses fiscal policy, our primary focus is on monetary policy, policy makers' most commonly used tool to stabilize the economy. After outlining the objectives of macroeconomic policy, we apply the aggregate demand and supply (*AD/AS*) framework to three big questions: What are the roots of inflation? Does stabilizing inflation stabilize output? Should policy be *activist*—by responding aggressively to fluctuations in economic activity—or passive and *nonactivist*?

The Objectives of Macroeconomic Policy

Monetary policy, and macroeconomic policy in general, has two primary objectives: stabilizing economic activity and stabilizing inflation around a low level.¹

¹Chapter 15 shows that financial instability can lead to sharp contractions in economic activity. Hence the objective of stabilizing economic activity also implies that policy makers should have an objective of financial stability, and so financial stability is a subset of the stabilizing economic activity objective. Pursuing financial stability not only involves macroeconomic policy actions to prop up aggregate demand in the face of financial shocks, but also financial regulation. For discussion of financial regulation and the financial stability objective, see Frederic S. Mishkin, *The Economics of Money, Banking, and Financial Markets*, 9th edition (Boston: Pearson Addison-Wesley, 2010).

Stabilizing Economic Activity

The unemployment rate, a key gauge of economic activity that we introduced in Chapter 2, is central to monetary policy for two primary reasons: (1) high unemployment causes much human misery, and (2) high unemployment leaves workers, factories, and other resources idle, reducing output.

NATURAL RATE OF UNEMPLOYMENT. If unemployment is such a negative force in the economy, should policy makers target a zero rate of unemployment, when no worker is out of a job? In fact, the economy is better off with a small level of **frictional unemployment**, which occurs because workers and firms need time to make suitable matchups. A young paralegal in Kansas City trying to find higher-paid work as a legal consultant may need to quit his or her current position for a time to find work. Similarly, a police officer in California who returns to the work force after two years at home caring for his or her children will probably need at least a few weeks, or months, to find suitable work. One undesirable but perpetual source of unemployment is **structural unemployment**, a mismatch between job requirements and the skills or availability of local workers. Monetary policy has limited impact on both frictional and structural unemployment.

Policy makers target an unemployment rate above zero that is consistent with the maximum sustainable level of employment at which there is no tendency for inflation to increase. This level is called the natural rate of unemployment, a concept we encountered first in our discussion of the Phillips curve in Chapter 11. (We will discuss the sources of frictional and structural unemployment more extensively in Chapter 20 on the labor markets.)

UNEMPLOYMENT RATES IN PRACTICE. Identifying the natural rate of unemployment is not as straightforward as it might seem. Clearly, an unemployment rate of more than 20%, like that seen in the Great Depression, is too high. But is 4% too low? In the 1960s, policy makers achieved a 4% unemployment rate but also set off accelerating inflation. Currently, most economists believe the natural rate of unemployment is around 5%, but this estimate is subject to much uncertainty and disagreement. Also, the natural rate can change over time. A government program that spreads information about job vacancies and training programs, for example, might reduce structural unemployment, lowering the natural unemployment rate.

In general terms, achieving the natural rate of unemployment is equivalent to stabilizing the economy. At the natural rate of unemployment, the economy moves to its natural rate of output, which we refer to more commonly as potential output. To achieve maximum sustainable employment, output (Y) must move closer to potential output (Y^P), so that the output gap ($Y - Y^P$) stabilizes around zero. Monetary policy that stabilizes unemployment around the natural rate of unemployment will also stabilize output around potential output, which is what we refer to as stabilizing economic activity.²

Stabilizing Inflation: Price Stability

A growing body of evidence suggests that high inflation, which is always accompanied by high variability of inflation, reduces economic growth and strains society. Consumers, businesses, and governments struggle to interpret the information conveyed by rapidly changing prices of goods and services.³ Parents find it more difficult to plan for the cost of

²Note that stabilizing economic activity and achieving maximum sustainable employment still allows economic output to fluctuate when permanent supply shocks lead to fluctuations in potential output.

³For example, see the survey in Stanley Fischer, "The Role of Macroeconomic Factors in Growth," *Journal of Monetary Economics* 32 (1993): 485–512.

a child's education. Public opinion toward inflation turns hostile, and society splinters as segments of the population strain to keep up with the rising level of prices.

Over the past few decades, greater awareness of these costs has increased the number of central banks that pursue a policy of **price stability**—defined as low and stable inflation—as the central monetary policy goal. Central banks must set inflation objectives with great care: aiming for zero inflation increases the risk of negative inflation, or deflation, which introduces pernicious problems of its own. (We will discuss deflation further in Chapter 15.) Even when inflation is above zero, it can still be too low. An excessively low inflation rate might lead to more instances when nominal interest rates hit a floor of zero percent and so can go no lower, as happened in 2009 and 2010 in the United States handicapping a central bank's ability to autonomously ease monetary policy and lower the real interest rate.

Central banks pursue a price stability objective with a goal of maintaining inflation, π , close to a target level (π^T), referred to as an **inflation target**, that is slightly above zero. Most central banks set π^T between 1% and 3%. An alternative way to think about the price stability objective is that monetary policy should try to minimize the difference between inflation and the inflation target ($\pi - \pi^T$), which we refer to as the **inflation gap**.⁴

Establishing Hierarchical Versus Dual Mandates

Should price stability be the chief goal of economic policy, or just one goal among many? Central banks differ in their stances. The Maastricht Treaty that established the European Central Bank states that the central bank's "primary objective ... shall be to maintain price stability." The treaty also says the bank "shall support the general economic policies in the Community"—including a high level of employment and sustainable and noninflationary growth—but only "without prejudice to the objective of price stability."

Hierarchical mandates require stable inflation as a condition of pursuing other goals. Beyond the European Central Bank, hierarchical mandates govern the behavior of the Bank of England, the Bank of Canada, and the Reserve Bank of New Zealand.

In contrast, the legislation defining the mission of the Federal Reserve states it should "promote effectively the goals of maximum employment, stable prices, and moderate interest rates." Because long-term interest rates will be very high only if there is high inflation, and employment cannot be above its maximum sustainable rate in the long run, this statement, in practice, indicates two co-equal objectives: stable inflation and maximum sustainable employment. These co-equal objectives of price stability and maximum sustainable employment are referred to as the **dual mandate**. Is it better for an economy to operate under a hierarchical or a dual mandate? To answer this question, we need to examine how policy seeks to stabilize both economic activity and inflation.

The Relationship Between Stabilizing Inflation and Stabilizing Economic Activity

In our analysis of aggregate demand and supply in Chapter 12, we examined three categories of economic shocks—demand shocks, temporary supply shocks, and permanent supply shocks—and the consequences of each on inflation and output. In this

⁴Academic articles describe mathematically the two objectives of monetary policy, stabilizing economic activity and price stability, by stating that the monetary authority tries over the current and all future periods to minimize the loss function, L :

$$L = (\pi - \pi^T)^2 + (Y - Y^P)^2$$

section, we describe a central bank's appropriate policy responses to each of these shocks. In the case of both demand shocks and permanent supply shocks, central banks can simultaneously pursue price stability and stability in economic activity. Following a temporary supply shock, however, policy makers can achieve either price stability or economic activity stability, but not both. This tradeoff poses a thorny dilemma for central banks with dual mandates. Before considering policy responses, we delve a bit more into the relationship between inflation and the real interest rate as context.

Monetary Policy and the Equilibrium Real Interest Rate

At long-run equilibrium, when the economy is producing at its potential and the inflation rate is consistent with price stability, we call the prevailing real interest rate the **equilibrium real interest rate**, which we represent as r^* . The equilibrium real interest rate maintains the quantity of aggregate output demanded equal to potential output, and thus reduces the output gap to zero. Because, as we saw in the previous chapter aggregate output goes to potential output in the long run, the equilibrium real interest rate is also the long-run real interest rate for the economy.

We illustrate the equilibrium real interest rate in Figure 13.1. The aggregate supply and demand diagram in panel (b) shows an economy at point 1, where aggregate output is at potential output Y^P —making the output gap zero—and inflation is at π^T , the level consistent with price stability. Panel (a) of Figure 13.1 shows the initial monetary policy curve MP_1 that generates the downward-sloping aggregate demand curve at AD_1 in panel (b). Note in panel (a) that at point 1, where inflation is at the inflation target π^T , the real interest rate is r^* , or the equilibrium real interest rate.

Central bankers make heavy use of the equilibrium real interest, as the Policy and Practice case, “The Federal Reserve’s Use of the Equilibrium Real Interest Rate, r^* ” describes.

Policy and Practice



The Federal Reserve’s Use of the Equilibrium Real Interest Rate, r^*

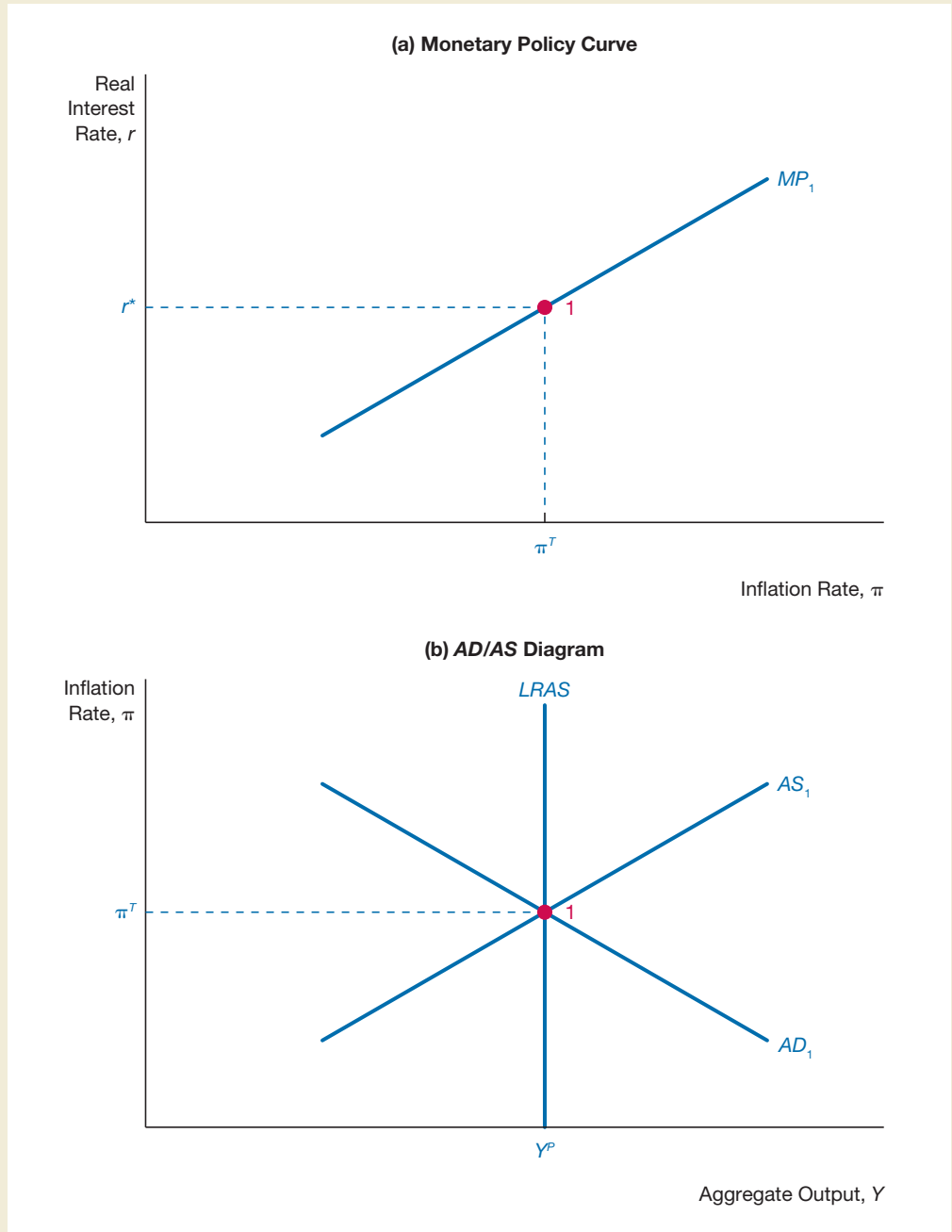
Every six weeks, the Federal Reserve Board of Governors and the Reserve Bank presidents meet in Washington, DC to formulate a target for policy interest rates. In advance of these FOMC meetings, Board economists use an advanced computer model of the economy to simulate the effects of different interest rate decisions over a three-year horizon, a long enough time frame for monetary policy to fully impact aggregate output. The interest rate that produces a zero output gap over that simulated time horizon becomes the Board’s estimate of the equilibrium real interest rate, which it actually calls r^* . The Board staff distributes the r^* projection to FOMC members a week before the meeting in a teal-covered compendium of the economic forecast and monetary policy alternatives known as the Teal Book.⁵

⁵Up until 2010, the Board’s economic forecast and monetary policy alternatives were in two separate documents, one covered in green and the other covered in blue. In 2010, these two documents were combined into one document with a teal cover (teal is the color that is a combination of green and blue), and so is referred to as the Teal Book. All these FOMC documents are made public after five years and their content can be found at www.federalreserve.gov/monetarypolicy/fomc_historical.htm

Policy makers actively discuss the r^* projections during FOMC monetary policy deliberations. If the current real policy rate—the real federal funds rate—is below r^* , then real GDP is likely to exceed potential GDP in the future, which means that inflation would rise. If the current real policy rate is above r^* , then real GDP is likely to fall below potential GDP, creating economic slack that could decrease inflation. Shocks to the economy that shift the level of r^* suggest to the FOMC participants that they should consider changing the federal funds rate target.

FIGURE 13.1
The Monetary Policy Curve and the Equilibrium Real Interest Rate, r^*

The monetary policy curve reflects the relationship between the equilibrium real interest rate and the inflation rate. At point 1 in panel (a), the inflation rate is at π^T and the real interest rate on the monetary policy curve is at the equilibrium real interest rate r^* . This level of the interest rate results in the economy being at point 1 in panel (b), where the output gap is zero and the economy is at long-run equilibrium.



Recall that our monetary policy curve indicates the relationship between the real interest rate the Fed sets and the inflation rate. With autonomous tightening of monetary policy, the Fed raises the federal funds rate at any given inflation rate, increasing r and leading to a decrease in aggregate demand. With autonomous easing of monetary policy, the Fed lowers the federal funds rate at any given inflation rate, decreasing r and leading to an increase in aggregate demand. With our monetary policy curve analysis in place, we are now prepared to analyze monetary policy responses to various kinds of shocks with aggregate demand and supply analysis.

Response to an Aggregate Demand Shock

We begin by considering the effects of an aggregate demand shock, such as the disruption to financial markets starting in August 2007 that caused both consumer and business spending to fall. The economy is initially at point 1 where output is at Y^P , inflation is at π^T , and the real interest rate is at the equilibrium real interest rate of r_1^* . The negative demand shock decreases aggregate demand, shifting AD_1 in panel (b) of Figure 13.2 to the left to AD_2 . Policy makers can respond to this shock in two possible ways.

NO POLICY RESPONSE. At this stage, if the central bank leaves the monetary policy curve in panel (a) unchanged at MP_1 , the economy moves from point 1 to point 2 at the intersection of the AD_2 and AS_1 curves in panel (b). Here, aggregate output falls to Y_2 , below potential output Y^P , and inflation falls to π_2 , below the inflation target of π^T . We see in panel (a) that because inflation has fallen to π_2 , there is a movement along the MP curve and the real interest rate falls to r_2 . (Note that there is no star for r_2 ; it is not an equilibrium real interest rate because at point 2 output is at Y_2 not at Y^P .) With output below potential, slack begins to develop in the labor and product markets, reducing inflation. Again referring to panel (b) of Figure 13.2, the short-run aggregate supply curve will shift down and to the right to AS_3 , and the economy will move to point 3. Output will again be back at its potential level, while inflation will fall to a lower level of π_3 . At the lower inflation rate of π_3 , there is a further movement along the MP curve in panel (a), with the real interest rate falling to the lower level of the equilibrium interest rate at r_3^* . At first glance, this outcome looks favorable—inflation is lower and output is back at its potential. But aggregate output will remain below potential for some time, and if inflation was initially at its target level, the fall in inflation is undesirable.

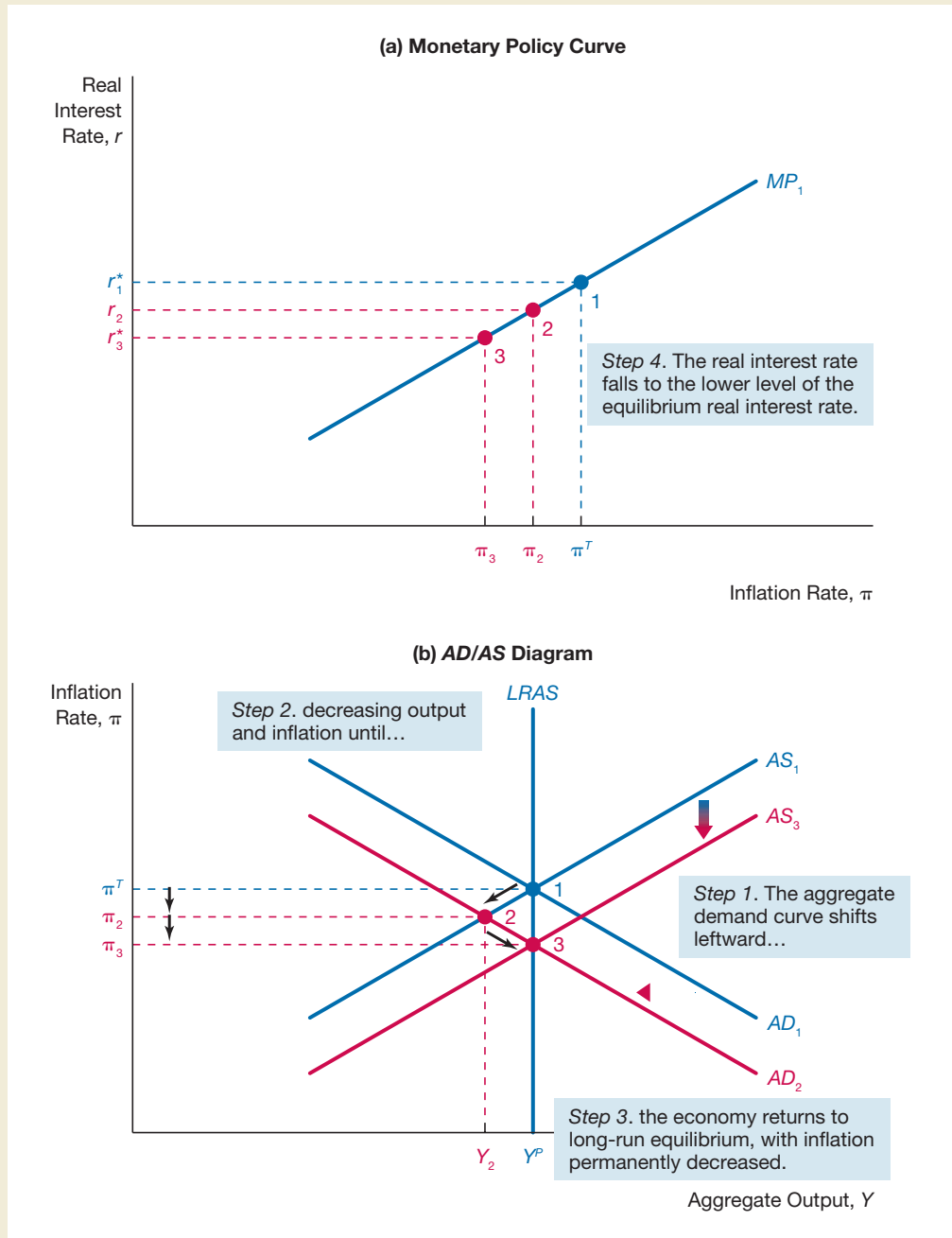
POLICY STABILIZES ECONOMIC ACTIVITY IN THE SHORT RUN. Policy makers can eliminate both the output gap and the inflation gap in the short run by pursuing policies to increase aggregate demand to its initial level and return the economy to its preshock state. One approach, which we discussed in Chapter 12, is pursuing expansionary fiscal policy by cutting taxes or increasing government spending.⁶ But fiscal measures take time to put in place, and policy makers use them less frequently than monetary policy to stabilize the economy. So, more often, policy makers will

⁶If policy makers use expansionary fiscal policy (cut in taxes or rise in government purchases) to shift the aggregate demand curve back to AD_1 , the monetary policy curve in Figure 13.2 panel (a) would remain unchanged and the equilibrium interest rate would remain at r_1^* .

FIGURE 13.2

Aggregate Demand Shock: No Policy Response

An aggregate demand shock shifts the aggregate demand curve leftward from AD_1 to AD_2 in panel (b) and moves the economy from point 1 to point 2, where aggregate output falls to Y_2 while inflation falls to π_2 . With output below potential, the short-run aggregate supply curve shifts down to AS_3 , and the economy moves to point 3, where output is back at Y^P , but inflation has fallen to π_3 . Panel (a) shows that there has been movement along the MP curve, with the real interest rate falling from r_1^* to r_2 to r_3^* , the new equilibrium real interest rate.

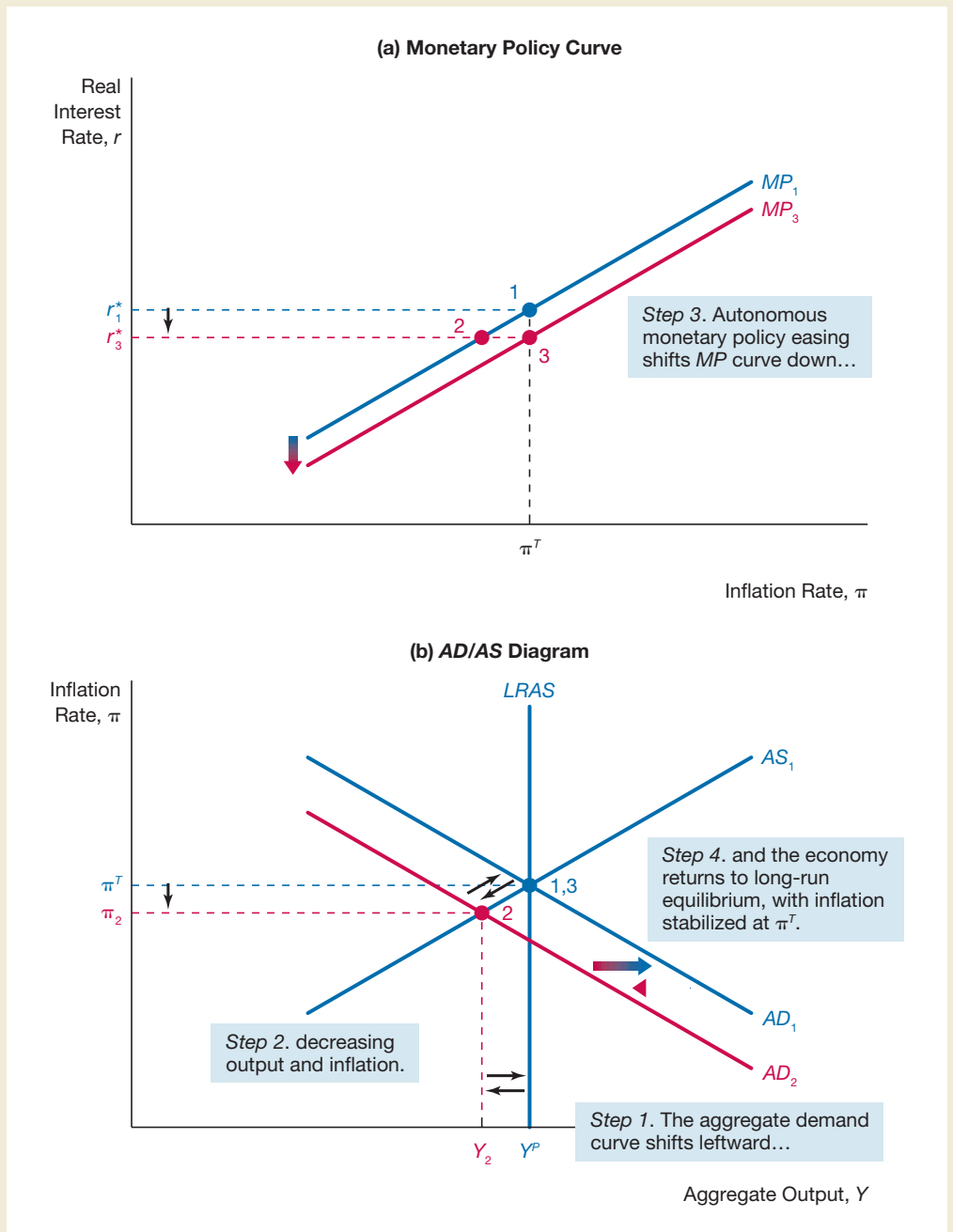


autonomously ease monetary policy by cutting the real interest rate at any given inflation rate. This action shifts the monetary policy curve downward from MP_1 to MP_3 in Figure 13.3 panel (a), stimulating investment spending and increasing the quantity of aggregate output demanded at any given inflation rate. As a result, the aggregate demand curve shifts to the right from AD_2 to AD_1 in panel (c), and the economy

FIGURE 13.3

Aggregate Demand Shock: Policy Stabilizes Output in the Short Run

An aggregate demand shock shifts the aggregate demand curve leftward from AD_1 to AD_2 in panel (b) and moves the economy from point 1 to point 2, where aggregate output falls to Y_2 while inflation falls to π_2 . An autonomous easing of monetary policy lowers the real interest rate at any given inflation rate and shifts the monetary policy curve from MP_1 to MP_3 in panel (a). In panel (b) the AD curve shifts back to AD_1 and aggregate output returns to potential at point 1. The monetary response stabilizes inflation at π^T by lowering the real interest rate to the equilibrium real interest rate r_3^* at point 3 in panel (a).



returns to point 1. (The Federal Reserve took exactly these steps by lowering the federal funds rate from 5% to $\frac{1}{4}\%$ to zero over fifteen months starting in September 2007.)

In panel (a) of Figure 13.3, we see that when the monetary policy curve shifts downward, the real interest rate ends up at r_3^* . When the economy is at point 1 in panel (b) with output back at potential, the equilibrium real interest rate at point 3 in

panel (a) is now at a lower level of r_3^* as a result of the negative demand shock. In other words, it is now r_3^* , not r_1^* , that maintains the output gap at zero and keeps the inflation rate equal to the target level π^T . This is the same equilibrium real interest rate that resulted from the negative demand shock when there was no policy response that we saw in panel (a) of Figure 13.2. This illustrates an important point: **monetary policy has no effect on the equilibrium real interest rate, which is the long-run level of the real interest rate.** The equilibrium real interest rate is instead determined by fundamentals in the economy, such as the balance between saving and investment, and not by monetary policy.⁷

Our analysis of this monetary policy response also shows that **in the case of aggregate demand shocks, there is no tradeoff between the pursuit of price stability and economic activity stability.** A focus on stabilizing inflation leads to exactly the right monetary policy response to stabilize economic activity. There is no conflict between the dual objectives of stabilizing inflation and economic activity, which Olivier Blanchard (formerly of MIT, but now at the International Monetary Fund) referred to as the **divine coincidence**.

Response to a Permanent Supply Shock

We illustrate a permanent supply shock in Figure 13.4. Again the economy starts out at point 1 in panel (b), where aggregate output is at the natural rate Y_1^P and inflation is at π^T . Suppose the economy suffers a permanent negative supply shock because there is an increase in regulations that permanently reduce the level of potential output. Potential output falls from Y_1^P to Y_3^P and the long-run aggregate supply curve shifts leftward from $LRAS_1$ to $LRAS_3$. The permanent supply shock triggers a price shock that shifts the short-run aggregate supply curve upward from AS_1 to AS_2 . There are two possible policy responses to this permanent supply shock.

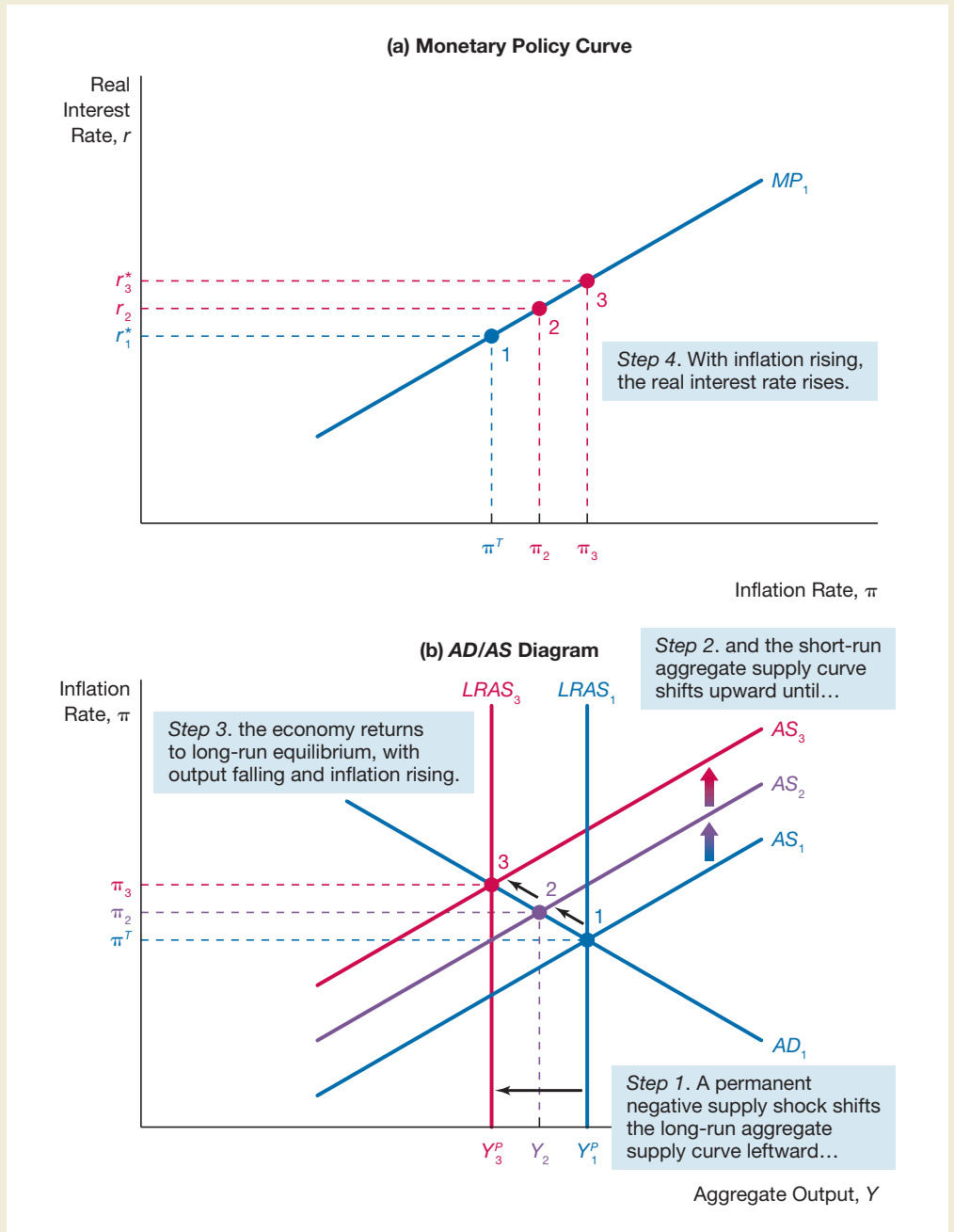
NO POLICY RESPONSE. If policy makers leave the monetary policy curve unchanged at MP_1 in panel (a) of Figure 13.4, the economy will move to point 2 in panel (b), with inflation rising to π_2 and output falling to Y_2 . Because this level of output is still higher than potential output, Y_3^P , the short-run aggregate supply curve keeps shifting up and to the left until it reaches AS_3 , where it intersects AD_1 on $LRAS_3$. The economy moves to point 3, eliminating the output gap but leaving inflation higher at π_3 and output lower at Y_3^P . In panel (a), we see that the rise in inflation from π^T to π_2 to π_3 results in a movement along the MP curve, with the real interest rate rising from r_1^* to r_2 to r_3^* .

⁷Since this equilibrium real interest rate is the real interest rate that occurs when the economy is in long-run equilibrium, it is the same long-run equilibrium real interest rate that comes out of the analysis in Chapter 4 in which we equated saving to investment at potential output. The real interest rate that results in the quantity of aggregate output demanded being equal to potential output is also the real interest rate that results in the equilibrium level of aggregate output on the IS curve equal to potential output. As we demonstrated in Chapter 9, the goods market equilibrium given by the IS curve is the same as the goods market equilibrium given by equating saving and investment: when either framework examines goods market equilibrium when output is at its potential: it gives the same answer for the level of the equilibrium real interest rate. Note that because an autonomous shift in monetary policy does not affect the IS curve, the equilibrium real interest rate at point 3 in panel (a) of both Figures 13.2 and 13.3 must be the same.

FIGURE 13.4

Permanent Supply Shock: No Policy Response

A permanent negative supply shock decreases potential output from Y_1^P to Y_3^P and the long-run aggregate supply curve shifts to the left from $LRAS_1$ to $LRAS_3$ in panel (b), while the short-run aggregate supply curve shifts upward from AS_1 to AS_2 . The economy moves to point 2, with inflation rising to π_2 and output falling to Y_2 . Because aggregate output is still above potential, the short-run aggregate supply curve would keep on shifting until the output gap is zero when it reached AS_3 . The economy moves to point 3, where inflation rises to π_3 while output falls to Y_3^P . With the rise in inflation from π_1 to π_2 to π_3 , the real interest rate rises from r_1^* to r_2^* to r_3^* in panel (a).

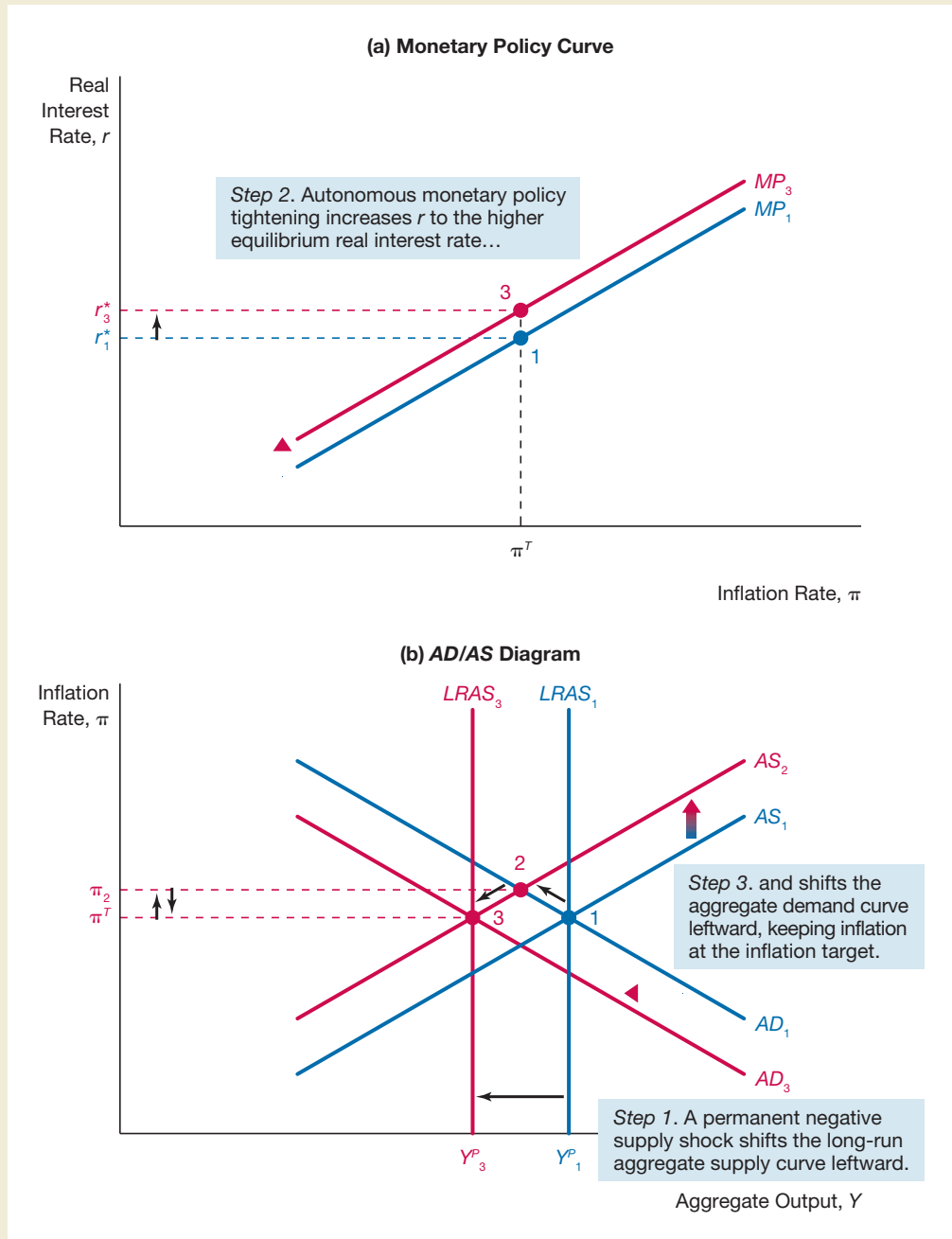


POLICY STABILIZES INFLATION. Referring to panel (b) of Figure 13.5, monetary authorities can keep inflation at the target inflation rate and stabilize inflation by decreasing aggregate demand. The goal is to shift the aggregate demand curve leftward to AD_2 , where it intersects the long-run aggregate supply curve $LRAS_3$ at the target inflation rate of π^T . Because the equilibrium interest rate that would keep the output gap at zero has risen from r_1^* to r_3^* , monetary authorities would autonomously

FIGURE 13.5

Permanent Supply Shock: Policy Stabilizes Inflation

A permanent negative supply shock decreases potential output from Y_1^P to Y_3^P and the long-run aggregate supply curve shifts to the left from $LRAS_1$ to $LRAS_3$ in panel (b), while the short-run aggregate supply curve shifts upward from AS_1 to AS_2 . An autonomous tightening of monetary policy that shifts the monetary policy curve from MP_1 to MP_3 in panel (a) shifts the aggregate demand curve to the left to AD_3 in panel (b), thereby keeping the inflation rate at π^T at point 3. At point 3 in panel (a), the real interest rate goes to the higher level of the equilibrium real interest rate of r_3^* .



tighten monetary policy and shift the monetary policy curve up from MP_1 to MP_3 in panel (a). The rise in the real interest rate at any given inflation rate shifts the aggregate demand curve leftward to AD_3 in panel (b). At point 3 in panel (b), the output gap is zero and inflation is at the target level of π^T . Panel (a) shows that at point 3, the real interest rate has risen to the higher equilibrium real interest rate of r_3^* .

Here again, keeping the inflation gap at zero leads to a zero output gap, so stabilizing inflation has stabilized economic activity.⁸ ***The divine coincidence still remains true when there is a permanent supply shock: there is no tradeoff between the dual objectives of stabilizing inflation and economic activity.***

Response to a Temporary Supply Shock

When a supply shock is temporary, such as when the price of oil surges because of political unrest in the Middle East, the divine coincidence does not always hold. Policymakers face a short-run tradeoff between stabilizing inflation and economic activity. To illustrate, we start the economy at point 1 in panel (b) of Figure 13.6, where aggregate output is at the natural rate Y^P and inflation is at π^T . The negative supply shock, say, a rise in the price of oil, shifts the short-run aggregate supply curve up and to the left from AS_1 to AS_2 but leaves the long-run aggregate supply curve unchanged because the shock is temporary. The economy moves to point 2, with inflation rising to π_2 and output falling to Y_2 . Policymakers can respond to the temporary supply shock in three possible ways.

NO POLICY RESPONSE. One policy choice is not to make an autonomous change in monetary policy, so the monetary policy curve remains unchanged at MP_1 in panel (a) of Figure 13.6. Since aggregate output is less than potential output Y^P , eventually the short-run aggregate supply curve will shift back down to the right, returning to AS_1 . The economy will return to point 1 and close both the output and inflation gaps, as output and inflation return to the initial levels of Y^P and π^T . In the long run, both inflation and economic activity stabilize. ***In the long run, there is no tradeoff between the two objectives, and the divine coincidence holds.*** While we wait for the long run, however, the economy will undergo a painful period of reduced output and higher inflation rates. This opens the door to monetary policy to try to stabilize economic activity or inflation in the short run.

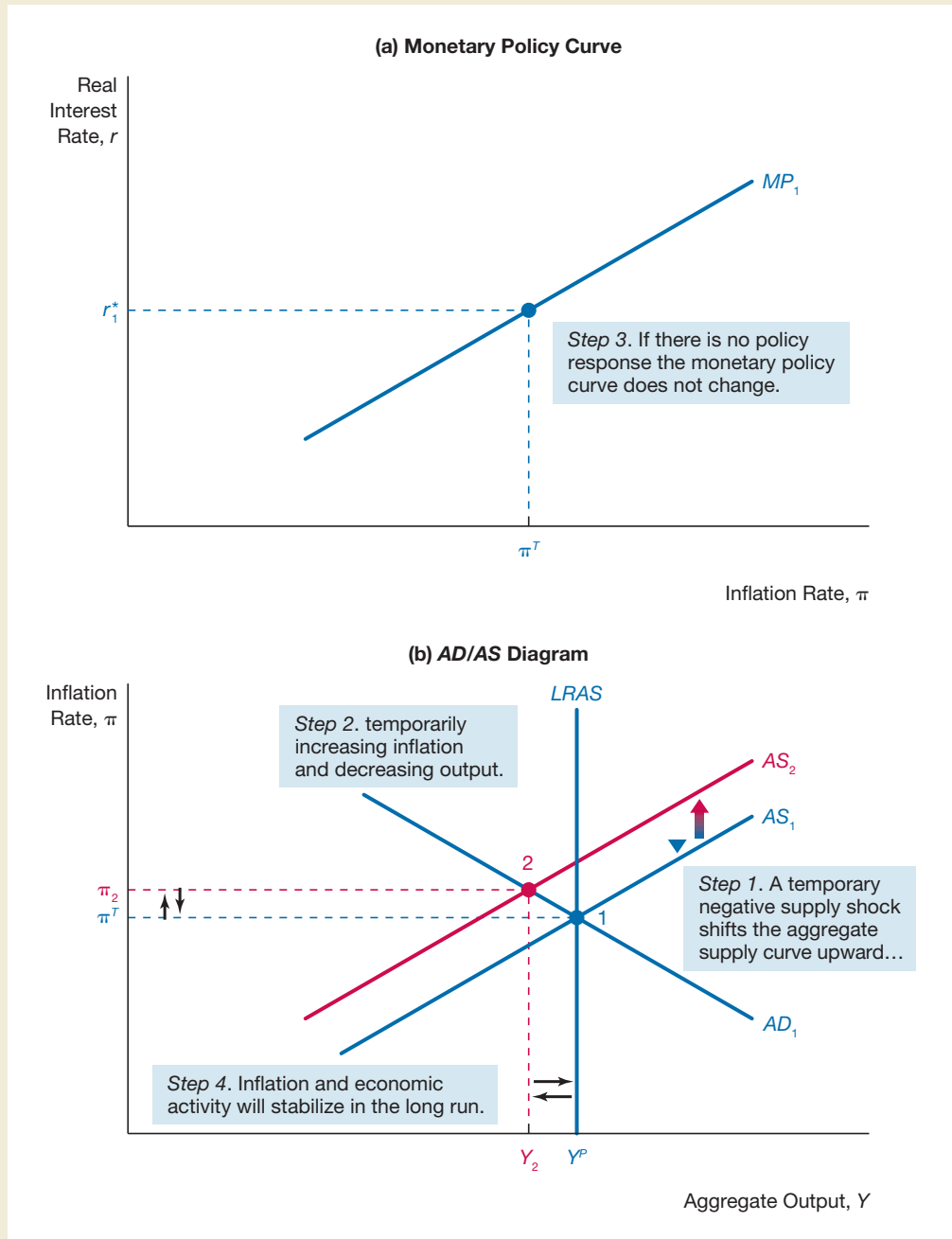
POLICY STABILIZES INFLATION IN THE SHORT RUN. A second policy for monetary authorities to keep inflation at the target level of π^T in the short run is by autonomously tightening monetary policy by raising the real interest rate at any given inflation rate.

⁸The movement to point 3 in panel (b) of Figure 13.5 might be immediate if expected inflation remains at π^T when the permanent supply shock occurs and the aggregate demand curve is immediately shifted to AD_3 . As we noted in Chapter 12, the short-run aggregate supply curve intersects the long-run aggregate supply curve at a point where current inflation and expected inflation are equal. If firms and households expect monetary policy to stabilize inflation at π^T , then the short-run supply curve must shift the same amount to the left as the long-run aggregate supply curve, as represented by the way the AS_2 curve is drawn in panel (b) of Figure 13.5. Then when the monetary authorities autonomously tighten monetary policy and shift the aggregate demand curve to AD_3 , the economy will immediately move to point 3, where both the output gap and the inflation gap are zero.

FIGURE 13.6

Response to a Temporary Aggregate Supply Shock: No Policy Response

A temporary negative supply shock shifts the short-run aggregate supply curve upward from AS_1 to AS_2 in panel (b), moving the economy to point 2, with inflation rising to π_2 and output falling to Y_2 . If the monetary policy curve remains at MP_1 in panel (a), the short-run aggregate supply curve will shift back down and to the right in panel (b) in the long run, eventually returning to AS_1 , and the economy moves back to point 1.



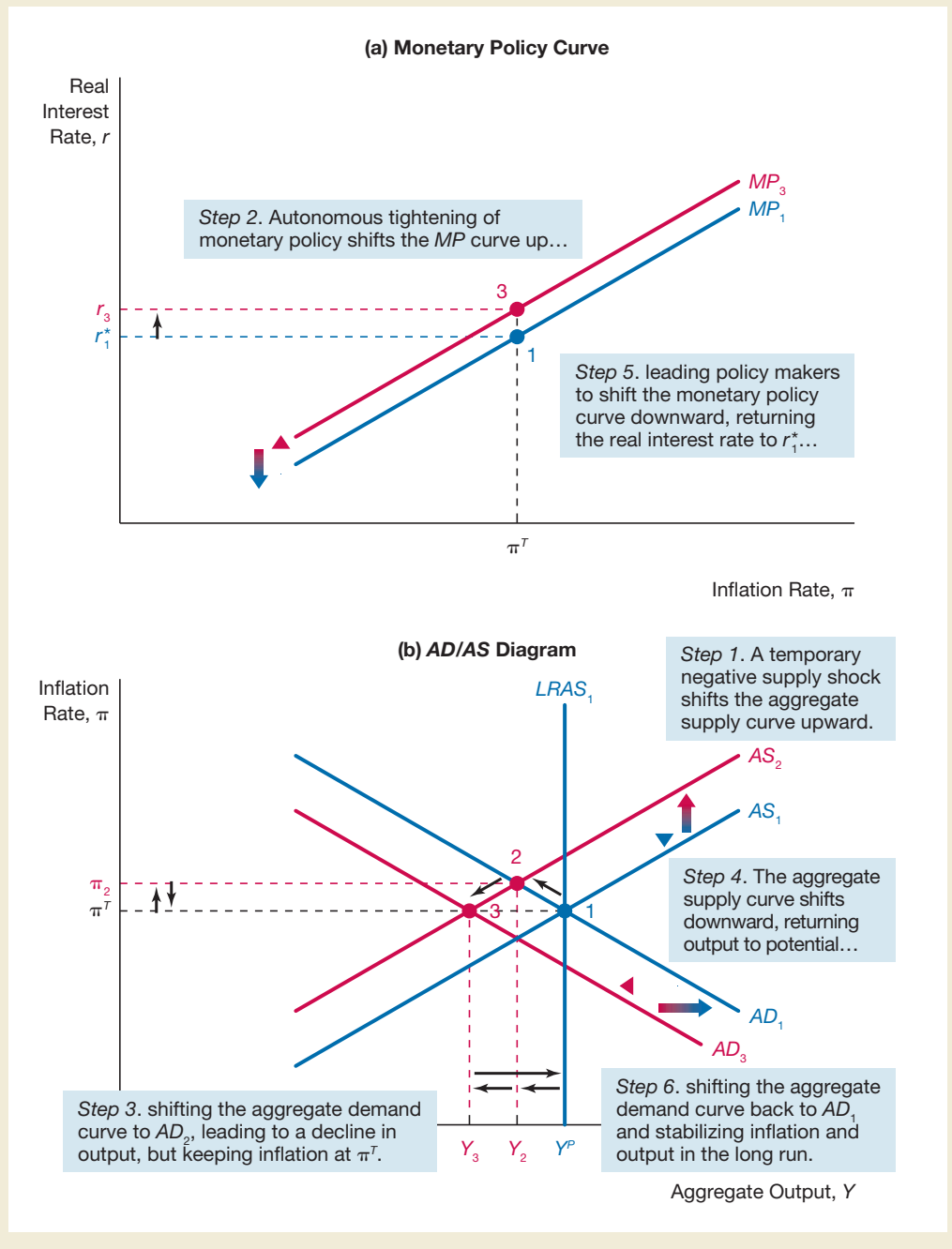
Doing so would shift the monetary policy curve upward to MP_3 , as shown in Figure 13.7 panel (a), moving inflation back to π^T and the real interest rate up to r_3 at point 3. Higher interest rates at any given inflation rate discourage investment spending, reducing aggregate output at any given inflation rate. The aggregate demand curve shifts leftward to AD_3 in Figure 13.7 panel (b), where it intersects the short-run aggregate supply curve AS_2 at an inflation rate of π^T at point 3. Because output is below potential at point 3 in panel (b), the slack in the economy shifts the short-run aggregate supply curve back down to AS_1 . In order to keep the inflation rate at π^T , the monetary authorities will need to move the

FIGURE 13.7

Response to a Temporary Aggregate Supply Shock: Short-Run Inflation Stabilization

A temporary negative supply shock shifts the short-run aggregate supply curve from AS_1 to AS_2 in panel (b), moving the economy to point 2, with inflation rising to π_2 and output falling to Y_2 .

Autonomous tightening of monetary policy shifts the monetary policy curve up to MP_3 in panel (a), with the real interest rate rising to r_3 at point 3. The aggregate demand curve in panel (b) shifts to the left to AD_3 and the economy moves to point 3, where inflation is at π^T . With output below potential at point 3, the short-run aggregate supply curve shifts back to AS_1 and to keep the inflation rate at π^T , the MP curve is moved back to MP_1 , shifting the aggregate demand curve back to AD_1 and the economy back to point 1 in both panels (a) and (b).



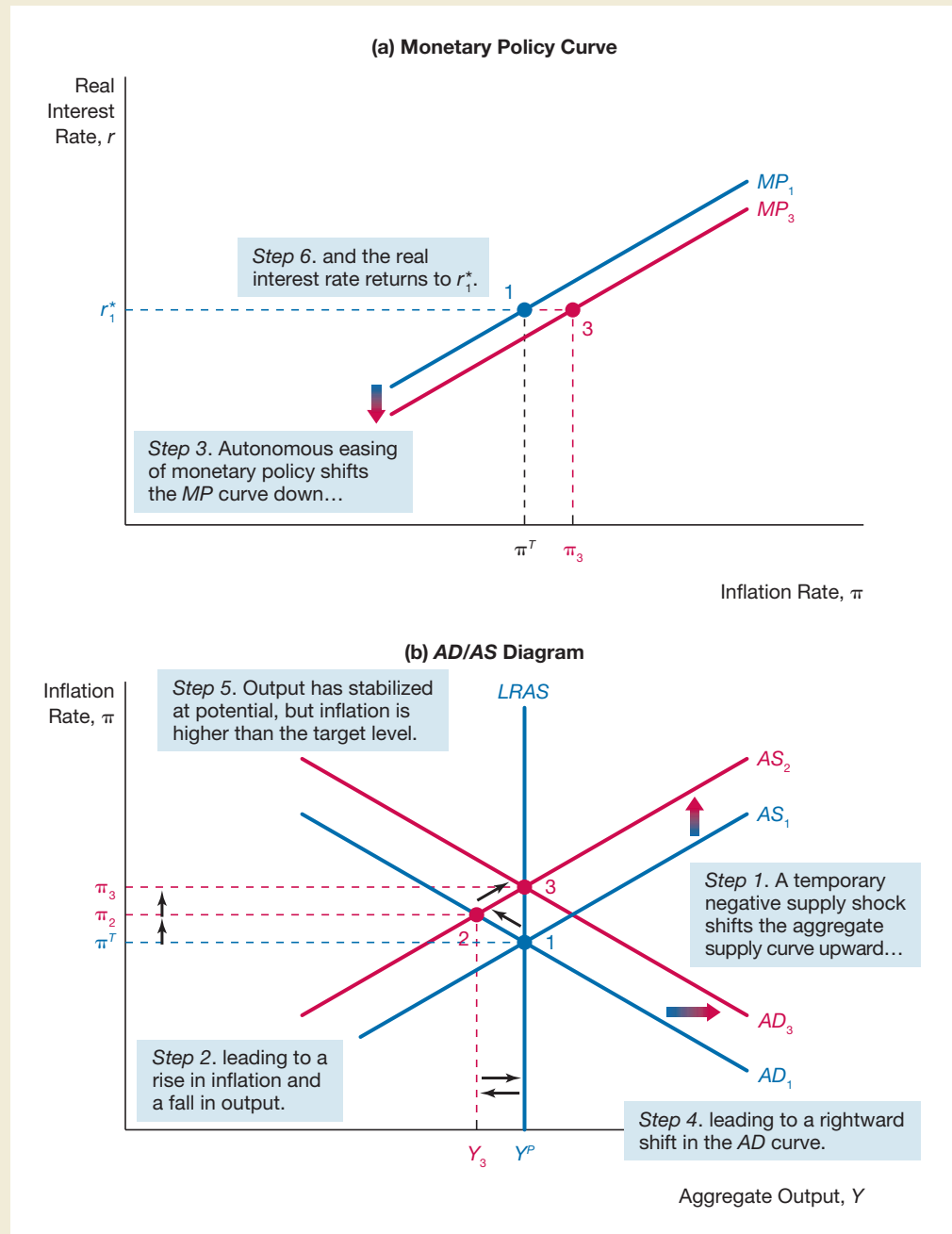
short-run aggregate demand curve back to AD_1 by reversing the autonomous tightening and returning the monetary policy curve back to MP_1 . Eventually, the economy will return to point 1 in panel (b), with the real interest rate at r_1^* at point 1 in panel (a).

As Figure 13.7 illustrates, stabilizing inflation reduces aggregate output to Y_3 in the short run, and only over time will output return to potential output at Y^P . **Stabilizing inflation in response to a temporary supply shock has led to a larger deviation of aggregate output from potential, so this action has not stabilized economic activity.**

POLICY STABILIZES ECONOMIC ACTIVITY IN THE SHORT RUN. A third policy is for monetary policy makers to stabilize economic activity rather than inflation in the short run by increasing aggregate demand. Referring to Figure 13.8, now they would shift the aggregate demand curve to the right to AD_3 in panel (b) where it intersects the short-run aggregate supply curve AS_2 and the long-run aggregate supply at point 3. To do this, they would have to autonomously ease monetary policy by lowering the real interest rate at any given inflation rate and shift the monetary policy curve down to MP_3 in Figure 13.8 panel (a). At point 3 in panel (b), the output gap returns to zero, so monetary policy has

FIGURE 13.8
Response to a Temporary Aggregate Supply Shock: Short-Run Output Stabilization

A temporary negative supply shock shifts the short-run aggregate supply curve from AS_1 to AS_2 in panel (b), moving the economy to point 2, with inflation rising to π_2 and output falling to Y_2 . To stabilize output, autonomous monetary policy easing shifts the monetary policy curve in panel (a) down from MP_1 to MP_3 , and this shifts the aggregate demand curve rightward to AD_3 . At point 3, the monetary policy action has stabilized economic activity, but inflation is greater than π^T at π_3 .



stabilized economic activity. However, inflation has risen to π_3 , which is greater than π^T , so inflation has not been stabilized. ***Stabilizing economic activity in response to a temporary supply shock results in a rise in inflation, so inflation has not been stabilized.***

The Bottom Line: The Relationship Between Stabilizing Inflation and Stabilizing Economic Activity

We can draw the following conclusions from this analysis:

1. ***If most shocks to the macroeconomy are aggregate demand shocks or permanent aggregate supply shocks, then policy that stabilizes inflation will also stabilize economic activity, even in the short run.***
2. ***If temporary supply shocks are more common, then a central bank must choose between the two stabilization objectives in the short run.***
3. ***In the long run, however, there is no conflict between stabilizing inflation and economic activity in response to temporary supply shocks.***

How Actively Should Policy Makers Try to Stabilize Economic Activity?

All economists have similar policy goals (to promote high employment and price stability), yet they often disagree on the best approach to achieve those goals. Suppose policy makers confront an economy that has high unemployment resulting from a negative demand or supply shock that has reduced aggregate output. **Nonactivists** believe wages and prices are very flexible, so the self-correcting mechanism is very rapid. They argue that the short-run aggregate supply curve will shift down, returning the economy to full employment very quickly. They thus fall into the classical camp and believe government action is unnecessary to eliminate unemployment. **Activists**, many of whom are followers of Keynes and are thus referred to as Keynesians, regard the self-correcting mechanism through wage and price adjustment as very slow because wages and prices are sticky. As a result, they believe it takes a very long time to reach the long run, agreeing with Keynes's famous adage that "In the long-run, we are all dead." They therefore see the need for the government to pursue active policy to eliminate high unemployment when it develops.

Lags and Policy Implementation

If policy makers could shift the aggregate demand curve instantaneously, activist policies could be used to immediately move the economy to the full-employment level as we have seen in the previous section. However, several types of lags prevent this immediate shift from occurring, and there are differences in the length of these lags for monetary versus fiscal policy.

1. The **data lag** is the time it takes for policy makers to obtain data indicating what is happening in the economy. Accurate data on GDP, for example, are not available until several months after a given quarter is over.
2. The **recognition lag** is the time it takes for policy makers to be sure of what the data are signaling about the future course of the economy. For example, to minimize errors, the National Bureau of Economic Research (the private organization that officially dates business cycles) will not

declare the economy to be in recession until at least six months after it has determined that one has begun.

3. The **legislative lag** represents the time it takes to pass legislation to implement a particular policy. The legislative lag does not exist for most monetary policy actions such as lowering interest rates. It is, however, important for the implementation of fiscal policy, when it can sometimes take six months to a year to pass legislation to change taxes or government purchases.
4. The **implementation lag** is the time it takes for policy makers to change policy instruments once they have decided on the new policy. Again, this lag is less important for the conduct of monetary policy than fiscal policy because the Federal Reserve can immediately change its policy interest rate. Actually implementing fiscal policy may take substantial time, however; for example, getting government agencies to change their spending habits takes time, as does changing tax tables.
5. The **effectiveness lag** is the time it takes for the policy actually to have an impact on the economy. The effectiveness lag is both long (often a year or longer) and variable (that is, there is substantial uncertainty about how long this lag is).

The existence of all these lags makes the policy makers' job far more difficult and therefore weakens the case for activism. When there is high unemployment, activist policy to shift the aggregate demand curve rightward to restore the economy to full employment may not produce desirable outcomes. Indeed if the policy lags described above are very long, then by the time the aggregate demand curve shifts to the right, the self-correcting mechanism may have already returned the economy to full employment, so when the activist policy kicks in it may lead output to rise above potential, leading to a rise in inflation. In the situation where the policy lags are longer than the time it takes the self-correcting mechanism to work, a policy of nonactivism may produce better outcomes.

The activist/nonactivist debate came to the fore when the Obama administration advocated a fiscal stimulus package when it first came to office in 2009, as the following Policy and Practice case indicates. We will return to the issue of how active policy should be in Chapter 21, when we look at the role expectations play in macroeconomic policy.

Policy and Practice



The Activist/Nonactivist Debate Over the Obama Fiscal Stimulus Package

When President Obama entered office in January 2009, he faced a very serious recession with unemployment over 7% and rising rapidly. Although policy makers had been using monetary policy aggressively to stabilize the economy (see Chapter 10), many activists argued that the government needed to do more by implementing a massive fiscal stimulus package. They argued that monetary policy, which had already lowered the federal funds rate to close to zero and so could not lower nominal interest rates further, would be unable to increase aggregate

demand to the full-employment level. On the other hand, nonactivists opposed the fiscal stimulus package, arguing that fiscal stimulus would take too long to work because of long implementation lags. They cautioned that if the fiscal stimulus kicked in after the economy had already recovered, it could lead to increased volatility in inflation and economic activity.

The economics profession split over the desirability of fiscal stimulus. Around 200 economists who supported fiscal stimulus signed a petition published in the *Wall Street Journal* and the *New York Times* on January 28, 2009. An opposing petition, also signed by around 200 economists, appeared on February 8. The Obama administration came down squarely on the side of the activists and proposed the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009, a \$787 billion fiscal stimulus package that Congress passed on February 13, 2009. In the House the vote was 246 to 183, with 176 Republicans and 7 Democrats opposing the bill, while in the Senate the vote was 60 to 38, with all Democrats supporting the bill along with 3 Republicans. Even after the fact, the desirability of the 2009 stimulus package is hotly debated, with some indicating it helped stabilize the economy while others believe it was not effective.

The Taylor Rule

Our stabilization policy analysis based on the monetary policy curve shows how central banks like the Federal Reserve shift the monetary policy curve to respond to economic shocks. We now describe another monetary policy approach proposed by John Taylor of Stanford University, which has become known as the *Taylor rule*.⁹

The Taylor Rule Equation

The **Taylor rule** guides the Federal Reserve to set the real federal funds rate, its policy instrument, at its historical average of 2%, plus a weighted average of the inflation gap and the output gap. (The Taylor rule is distinct from the Taylor principle introduced in Chapter 10, because it describes how the monetary policy authorities should set the real interest rate in response to the *level of output* as well as to inflation, while the Taylor principle only describes how the real interest rate is set in response to the level of inflation.) The weights on the inflation gap and the output gap, both expressed as a percentage, are chosen to be an equal value of 2 for both terms. We write the Taylor rule as follows, denoting the real federal funds rate by r :

$$r = 2.0 + \frac{1}{2}(\pi - \pi^T) + \frac{1}{2}(Y - Y^P) \quad (1)$$

The Taylor rule is usually stated in terms of the nominal interest rate rather than the real interest rate. Recognizing that the nominal federal funds rate i is equal to the real federal funds rate r plus inflation ($i = r + \pi$) and adding π to both sides of the preceding

⁹John Taylor, "Discretion Versus Policy Rules in Practice," *Carnegie-Rochester Conference Series on Public Policy* (1993): 195–214.

equation, we can rewrite the Taylor rule in terms of the nominal federal funds rate or simply the federal funds rate as follows:

$$\text{Federal funds rate} = \pi + 2.0 + \frac{1}{2}(\pi - \pi^T) + \frac{1}{2}(Y - Y^P) \quad (2)$$

or in words,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Federal funds rate} = & \text{inflation rate} + \text{historical average of the real federal funds rate} \\ & + \frac{1}{2}(\text{inflation gap}) + \frac{1}{2}(\text{output gap}) \end{aligned}$$

To illustrate the use of the Taylor rule, suppose that the inflation rate target is 2%, while the current inflation rate is 3%. The positive inflation gap of 1% [= 3% – 2%] pushes real GDP to 1% above its potential, resulting in a positive output gap of 1%. The Taylor rule suggests that the Federal Reserve should set the federal funds rate at 6% [= 3% + 2% + 2(1%) + 2(1%)].

The Taylor Rule Versus the Monetary Policy Curve

By incorporating the inflation gap and output gap, the Taylor rule produces the same intuition as the monetary policy curve. The inflation term of the Taylor rule indicates that the Fed should raise real interest rates as inflation rises. The same conclusion follows from the upward-sloping monetary policy curve, since real interest rates rise with an increase in the inflation gap (a movement along the *MP* curve). Also, our analysis of stabilization policy in Figure 13.3 argues that if there are aggregate demand shocks, the Fed should adjust monetary policy—with the federal funds rate policy tool—shifting the *MP* curve upward (autonomous tightening) or downward (autonomous easing) in response to changes in the output gap to stabilize inflation. Thus even if a central bank cares only about stabilizing inflation, there should also be a positive relationship between output gaps and the real federal funds rate, as the Taylor rule suggests.

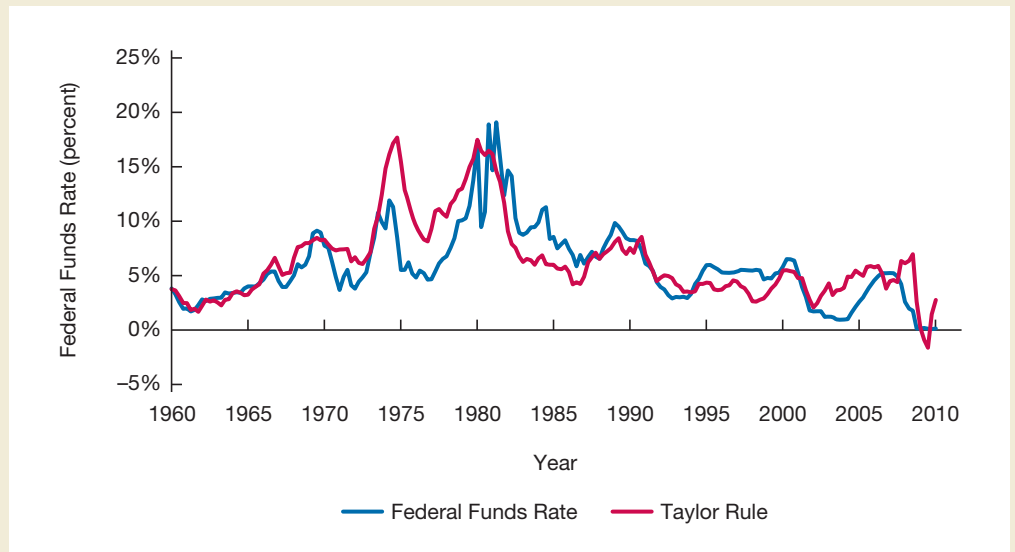
The analysis in Figure 13.8 suggests an additional reason for the positive relationship between the real federal funds rate and the output gap. If there is a negative temporary aggregate supply shock and the central bank wishes to stabilize economic activity by increasing aggregate demand, it will autonomously ease monetary policy and lower the real interest rate to eliminate the negative output gap, $Y < Y^P$, at the expense of higher inflation. Because the Federal Reserve's dual mandate requires it to focus on economic activity in addition to inflation, the presence of aggregate supply shocks argues for a positive relationship between the real federal funds rate and output gaps, as in the Taylor rule.

The Taylor Rule in Practice

As Figure 13.9 shows, the Taylor rule describes the Fed's control of the federal funds rate after 1987 under its two most recent chairmen, Alan Greenspan and Ben Bernanke. However, the Taylor rule does not explain all the movements in the federal funds rate in Figure 13.9, so it is clear the Federal Reserve does not follow it exactly. (In the 1970s, the Fed did not raise the real interest rate as inflation rose, and the outcomes, as we know, were very poor.) We discuss the Federal Reserve's use of the Taylor Rule in the following Policy and Practice case.

FIGURE 13.9**The Taylor Rule and the Federal Funds Rate, 1960–2010**

The actual federal funds rate is pretty close to the Taylor rule under chairmen Greenspan and Bernanke from 1987 to 2010, but does not explain all the movements in the federal funds rate.



Source: Author's calculations and Federal Reserve. www.federalreserve.gov/releases

Policy and Practice



The Fed's Use of the Taylor Rule

Why hasn't the Fed put the federal funds rate on a Taylor rule autopilot, guided by a computer? There are several reasons why the Fed hasn't taken this drastic action. First and foremost, there is no perfect model of the economy, so even the best and brightest economists do not know the current inflation rate and output gap with certainty at any given moment. Since the economy is changing all the time, the Taylor rule coefficients are unlikely to stay constant in any event.

Even if we could determine these rates with certainty, monetary policy is by necessity a forward-looking activity because it takes a long time for monetary policy to affect the economy. Good monetary policy requires that the Fed forecast where inflation and economic activity are going to be in the future, and then adjust the policy instrument accordingly. The Fed will therefore look at a much wider range of information than just the current inflation rate and output gap in setting policy, as is done in the Taylor rule. In other words, the conduct of monetary policy is as much an art as it is a science, requiring both careful analytics and human judgment. The Taylor rule leaves out all the art, and so is unlikely to produce the best monetary policy outcomes. For example, financial crises, such as that which occurred from 2007 to 2009, require complex monetary policy actions because changes in credit spreads (the difference between interest rates on securities with credit risk and those without) may alter how the federal funds rate affects investment decisions, and therefore economic activity.

The bottom line is that putting monetary policy on autopilot with a Taylor rule with fixed coefficients would be a bad idea. The Taylor rule is, however, useful as a guide to monetary policy. If the setting of the policy instrument is very different

from what the Taylor rule suggests, policy makers should ask whether they have a good reason for deviating from this rule. If they don't, as during the Chairman Burns era in the 1970s, then they might be making a mistake. Indeed, the FOMC makes use of Taylor rule estimates in exactly this way by referring to Taylor rule estimates to inform their decisions about the federal funds rate target.¹⁰

Inflation: Always and Everywhere a Monetary Phenomenon

In Chapter 5, we discussed Milton Friedman's famous adage that in the long run, "Inflation is always and everywhere a monetary phenomenon." This conclusion is also borne out by our aggregate demand and supply analysis because it shows that monetary policy makers can target any inflation rate in the long run by shifting the monetary policy curve with autonomous monetary policy. To illustrate, look at Figure 13.10, where the economy is at point 1 with the real interest rate at r_1^* in panel (a), aggregate output is at potential output Y^P in panel (b), and inflation is at an initial inflation target of π_1^T in both panels.

Suppose the central bank believes this inflation target is too low and chooses to raise it to π_3^T . It eases monetary policy autonomously by lowering the real interest rate at any given inflation rate, shifting the monetary policy curve in panel (a) from MP_1 to MP_3 . The lower real interest rate at any given inflation rate means that investment spending and the quantity of aggregate output demanded is higher, thereby increasing aggregate demand. In Figure 13.10, the aggregate demand curve shifts to AD_3 in panel (b). The economy would then move to point 2 at the intersection of AD_3 and AS_1 in panel (b), with inflation rising to π_2 and the real interest rate to r_2 in panel (a). Because aggregate output is above potential output ($Y_2 > Y^P$), the short-run aggregate supply curve in panel (b) would shift up and to the left, eventually stopping at AS_3 , with inflation now at the higher target level of π_3^T and the output gap back at zero. With the output gap at zero at π_3^T the real interest rate would rise back to r_1^* , indicated by point 3 in panel (a) of Figure 13.10.¹¹

The analysis in Figure 13.10 demonstrates several key points.

1. **The monetary authorities can target any inflation rate in the long run with autonomous monetary policy adjustments.**
2. **Although monetary policy controls inflation in the long run, it does not determine the equilibrium real interest rate.**
3. **Potential output—and therefore the quantity of aggregate output produced in the long run—is independent of monetary policy.**

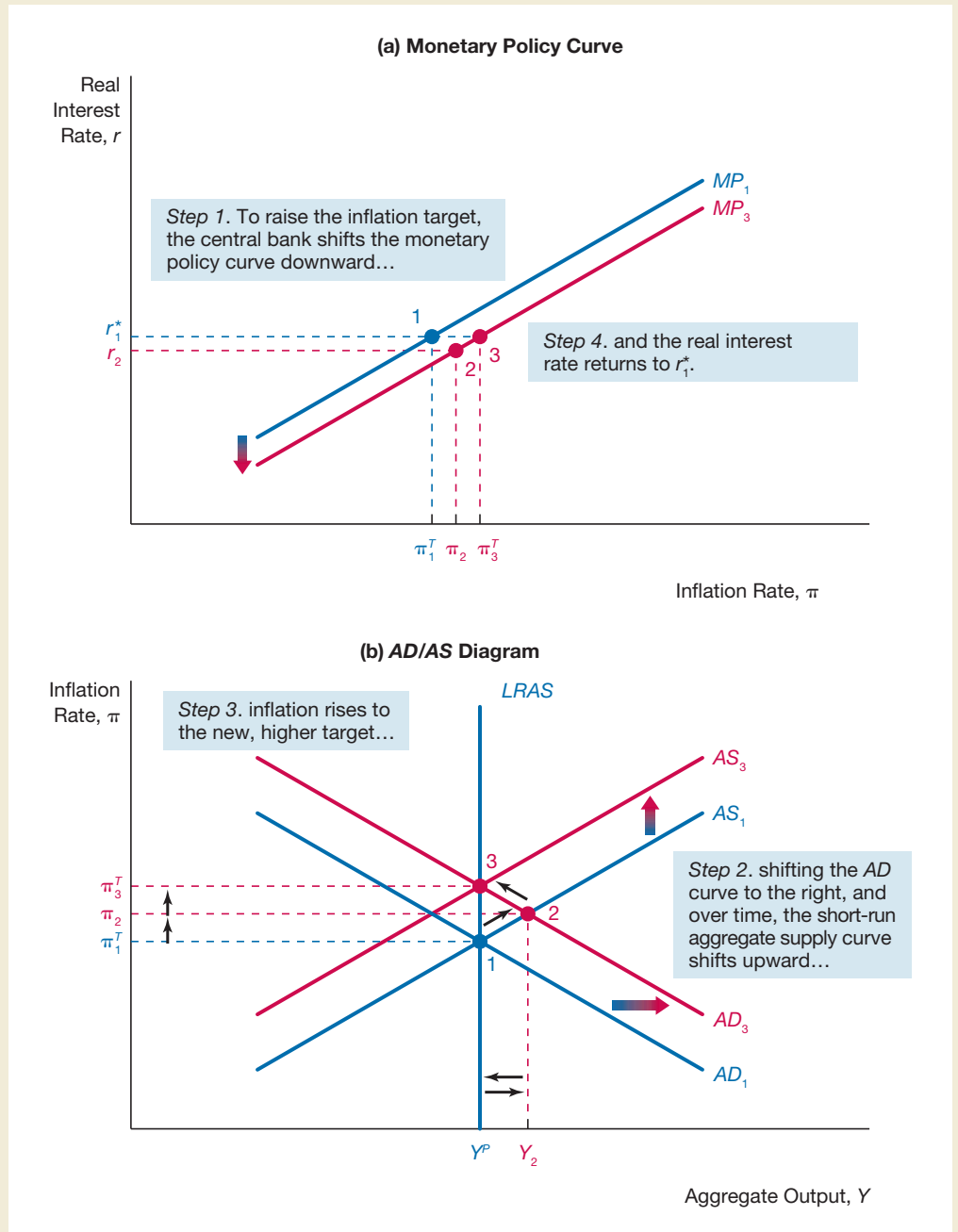
¹⁰For an in-depth discussion of the FOMC's actual use of the Taylor rule in its policy deliberations, see Pier Francesco Asso, George A. Kahn, and Robert Leeson, "The Taylor Rule and the Practice of Central Banking," Federal Reserve Bank of Kansas City Working Paper RWP 10-05 (February 2010).

¹¹To see that the real interest rate is at r_1^* when the inflation rate reaches the higher target of π_3^T and the output gap is zero, recognize that there is no reason for the IS curve to shift and that the equilibrium interest rate r_1^* is at the point on the IS curve where aggregate output is at Y^P . Hence, after the initial decline in the real interest rate when the monetary policy curve shifts down to MP_3 , there is a rise in inflation that leads to a rise in the real interest rate (movement along the MP_3 curve). The rise in the real interest rate only stops when the real interest rate is back at r_1^* , where the IS curve indicates that aggregate output has fallen back to Y^P .

FIGURE 13.10

A Rise in the Inflation Target

To raise the inflation target to π_3^T , the central bank undertakes an autonomous monetary policy easing, shifting MP_1 to MP_3 in panel (a) and shifting the aggregate demand curve rightward to AD_3 in panel (b). The economy would then move to point 2 and the short-run aggregate supply curve would shift up and to the left, eventually stopping at AS_3 , moving the economy to point 3 with the output gap at zero and inflation at π_3^T , while the real interest rate would be at r_1^* at point 3 in panel (a).



The last two points reflect the concepts of the *classical dichotomy* and *monetary neutrality* described in Chapter 5. Both of these concepts are correct in the long run, even when we derive them from the sticky price framework using aggregate demand and supply. Recall that the *classical dichotomy* indicates that with prices completely flexible, real variables are not affected by nominal variables, and so real variables are unaffected by monetary policy (*monetary neutrality*). This is exactly what the second and third points tell us by indicating that monetary policy has no effect on the equilibrium interest rate or output in the long run.

Causes of Inflationary Monetary Policy

If everyone agrees that high inflation is bad for an economy, why do we see so much of it? Do governments pursue inflationary monetary policies intentionally? We have seen that monetary authorities can set the inflation rate in the long run, so it must be that in trying to achieve other goals, governments end up with overly expansionary monetary policy and high inflation. In this section, we will examine the government policies that are the most common sources of inflation.

High Employment Targets and Inflation

The primary goal of most governments is high employment and the pursuit of this goal can bring high inflation. The U.S. government is committed by law (the Employment Act of 1946 and the Humphrey-Hawkins Act of 1978) to engage in activist policy to promote high employment. Both laws require a commitment to a high level of employment consistent with stable inflation—yet in practice the U.S. government and the Federal Reserve have often pursued a high employment target with little concern about the inflationary consequences of policies. This tendency was true especially in the mid-1960s and 1970s, when the government and the Fed began to take an active role in attempting to stabilize unemployment.

Two types of inflation can result from an activist stabilization policy to promote high employment:

1. **Cost-push inflation** results either from a temporary negative supply shock or a push by workers for wage hikes beyond what productivity gains can justify.
2. **Demand-pull inflation** results from policy makers pursuing policies that increase aggregate demand.

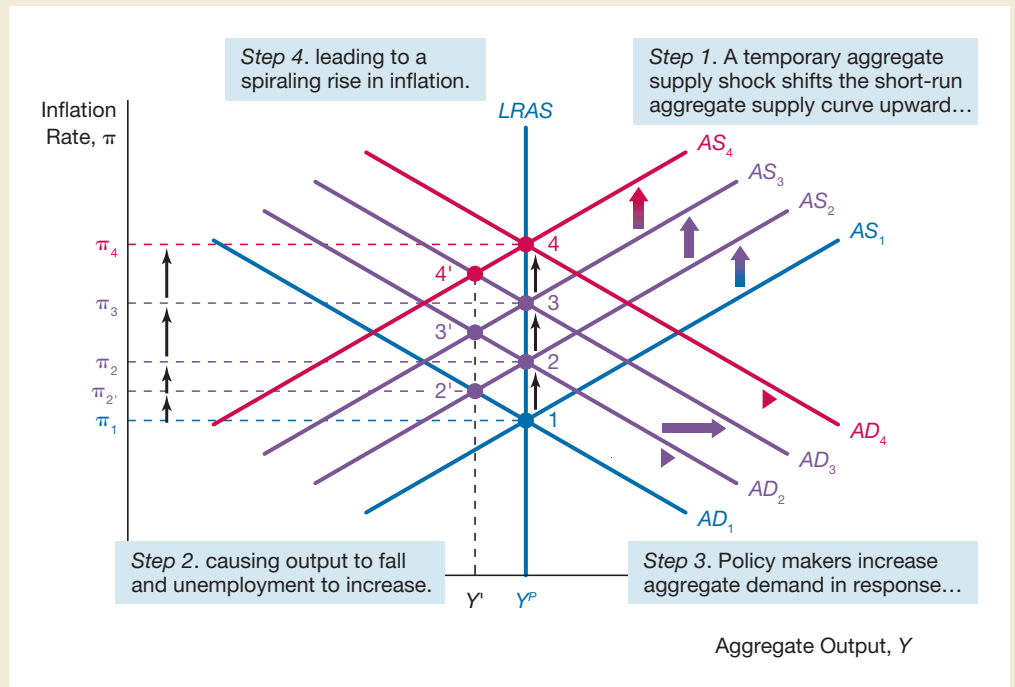
We will now use aggregate demand and supply analysis to examine the effect of a high employment target on both types of inflation.

COST-PUSH INFLATION. Consider the economy Figure 13.11, which is initially at point 1, the intersection of the aggregate demand curve AD_1 and the short-run aggregate supply curve AS_1 . Suppose workers succeed in pushing for higher wages, either because they want to increase their real wages (wages in terms of the goods and services they can buy) above what is justified by productivity gains, or because they expect inflation to be high and wish their wages to keep up with it. This cost push shock, which acts like a temporary negative supply shock, raises the inflation rate and shifts the short-run aggregate supply curve up and to the left to AS_2 . If the central bank takes no action to change the equilibrium interest rate and the monetary policy curve remains unchanged, the economy would move to point 2' at the intersection of the new short-run aggregate supply curve AS_2 and the aggregate demand curve AD_1 . Output would decline to Y' below potential output and the inflation rate would rise to π_2 , leading to an increase in unemployment.

In contrast, activist policy makers with a high employment target would implement policies, such as a cut in taxes, an increase in government purchases or an autonomous easing of monetary policy, to increase aggregate demand. These policies would shift the aggregate demand curve in Figure 13.11 to AD_2 , quickly returning the economy to potential output at point 2 and increasing the inflation rate to π_2 . The workers fare quite well, earning both higher wages and government protection against excessive unemployment.

FIGURE 13.11**Cost-Push Inflation**

A cost-push shock (which acts like a temporary negative supply shock) shifts the short-run aggregate supply curve up and to the left to AS_2 and the economy moves to point 2'. To keep aggregate output at Y^P and lower the unemployment rate, policy makers shift the aggregate demand curve to AD_2 so that the economy will return quickly to potential output at point 2 and an inflation rate of π_2 . Further upward and leftward shifts of the short-run aggregate supply curve to AS_3 and so on lead the policy makers to keep on increasing aggregate demand, leading to a continuing increase in inflation—a cost-push inflation.



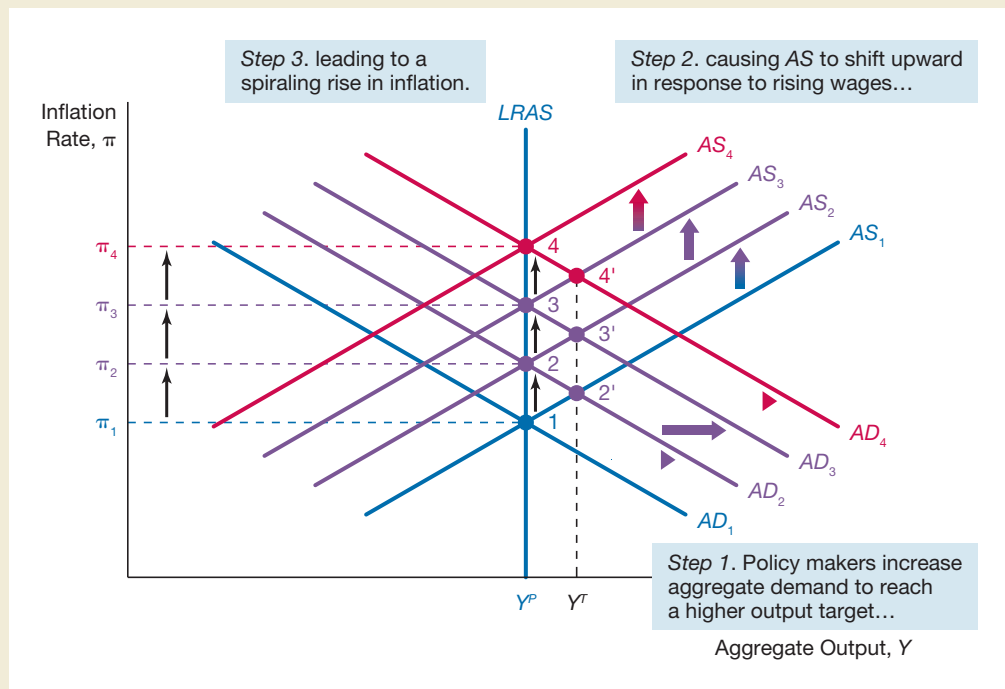
The workers' success might encourage them to seek even higher wages. In addition, other workers might now realize that their wages have fallen relative to their fellow workers, leading them to seek wage increases. As a result, there would be another temporary negative supply shock that would raise the price level, possibly causing the short-run aggregate supply curve in Figure 13.11 to shift up and to the left again, to AS_3 . Unemployment develops again when we move to point 3', prompting activist policies once again to shift the aggregate demand curve rightward to AD_3 and return the economy to full employment at a higher inflation rate of π_3 . If this process continues, the result will be a continuing increase in inflation—a cost-push inflation.

DEMAND-PULL INFLATION. The goal of high employment can lead to inflationary fiscal and monetary policy in another way. Even at full employment, some unemployment is always present because of frictions in the labor market that complicate the matching of unemployed workers with employers. Consequently, the unemployment rate when there is full employment (the natural rate of unemployment) will be greater than zero. When policy makers mistakenly underestimate the natural rate of unemployment and so set a target for unemployment that is too low (i.e., less than the natural rate of unemployment), they set the stage for expansionary monetary policy that produces inflation.

Figure 13.12 shows how this scenario can unfold using an aggregate supply and demand analysis. If policy makers have set a 4% unemployment target below the 5% natural rate of unemployment, they will be trying to achieve an output target greater

FIGURE 13.12**Demand-Pull Inflation**

Too low an unemployment target (too high an output target of Y^T) causes the government to increase aggregate demand, shifting the AD curve rightward from AD_1 to AD_2 to AD_3 and so on. Because the unemployment rate is below the natural rate level, wages will rise and the short-run aggregate supply curve will shift up and leftward from AS_1 to AS_2 to AS_3 and so on. The result is a continuing rise in inflation known as a demand-pull inflation.



than potential output. We mark this target level of output in Figure 13.12 as Y^T . Suppose that we are initially at point 1: the economy is at potential output but below the target level of output Y^T . To hit the unemployment target of 4%, policy makers must enact policies such as expansionary fiscal policy or an autonomous easing of monetary policy to increase aggregate demand. The aggregate demand curve in Figure 13.12 shifts to the right until it reaches AD_2 and the economy moves to point 2', where output is at Y^T and policy makers have achieved the 4% unemployment rate goal—but there is more to the story. At Y^T , the 4% unemployment rate is below the natural rate level, causing wages to rise. The short-run aggregate supply curve will shift up and to the left, eventually to AS_2 , moving the economy from point 2' to point 2, where it is back at potential output but at a higher inflation rate of π_2 . We could stop there, but because unemployment is again higher than the target level, policy makers would again shift the aggregate demand curve rightward to AD_3 to hit the output target at point 3'—and the whole process would continue to drive the economy to point 3 and beyond. The overall result is a steadily rising inflation rate.

Pursuing too low an unemployment rate target or, equivalently, too high an output target, thus leads to inflationary monetary or fiscal policy. Policy makers fail on two counts: they have not achieved their unemployment target and have caused higher inflation. If, however, the target rate of unemployment is below the natural rate, the process we see in Figure 13.12 will be well under way before they realize their mistake.

COST-PUSH VERSUS DEMAND-PULL INFLATION. When inflation occurs, how do we know whether it is demand-pull inflation or cost-push inflation? We would normally expect to see demand-pull inflation when unemployment is below the natural

rate level, and cost-push inflation when unemployment is above the natural rate level. Unfortunately, economists and policy makers still struggle with measuring the natural rate of unemployment. Complicating matters further, a cost-push inflation can be initiated by a demand-pull inflation, blurring the distinction. When a demand-pull inflation produces higher inflation rates, expected inflation will eventually rise and cause workers to demand higher wages (demand-pull inflation) so that their real wages do not fall. Finally, expansionary monetary and fiscal policies produce both kinds of inflation, so we cannot distinguish between them on this basis.

In the United States, as we will see in the following application, the primary reason for inflationary policy has been policy makers' adherence to a high employment target. In Chapter 16, we will see that high inflation can also occur because of persistent government budget deficits.

Application

The Great Inflation

Now that we have examined the roots of inflationary monetary policy, we can investigate the causes of the rise in U.S. inflation from 1965 to 1982, a period dubbed the "Great Inflation."

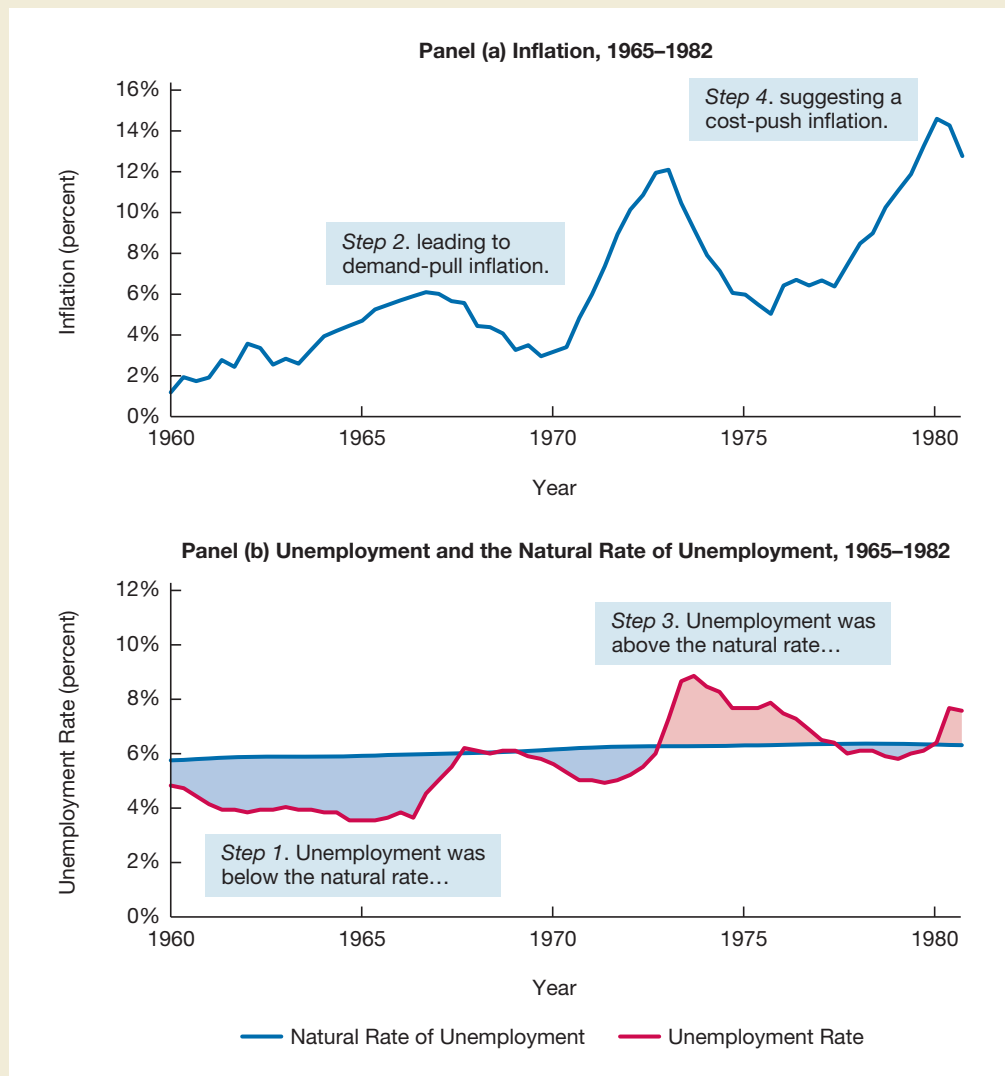
Panel (a) of Figure 13.13 documents the rise in inflation during those years. Just before the Great Inflation started, the inflation rate was below 2% at an annual rate; by the late 1970s, it averaged around 8% and peaked at nearly 14% in 1980 after the oil price shock in 1979. Panel (b) of Figure 13.13 compares the actual unemployment rate to estimates of the natural rate of unemployment. Notice that the economy experienced unemployment below the natural rate in all but one year between 1960 and 1973, as represented by the shaded areas. This insight suggests that in 1965–1973, the U.S. economy experienced demand-pull inflation we described in Figure 13.12. That is, policy makers pursued a policy of autonomous monetary policy easing that shifted the aggregate demand curve to the right in trying to achieve an output target that was too high, thus increasing inflation. Policy makers, economists, and politicians were committed in the mid-1960s to a target unemployment rate of 4%, a level of unemployment they believed to be consistent with price stability. In hindsight, most economists today agree that the natural rate of unemployment was substantially higher in this period, between 5% and 6%, as shown in panel (b) of Figure 13.13. The inappropriate 4% unemployment target initiated the most sustained inflationary episode in U.S. history.

After 1975, panel (b) of Figure 13.13 shows that the unemployment rate lingered above the natural rate of unemployment (see shaded area), yet inflation continued, as per panel (a), indicating the phenomenon of a cost-push inflation we described in Figure 13.11 (the impetus for which was the earlier demand-pull inflation). The public's knowledge that government policy was aimed squarely at high employment explains the persistence of inflation. The higher rate of expected inflation from the demand-pull inflation shifted the short-run aggregate supply curve in Figure 13.11 upward and to the left, causing a rise in unemployment that policy makers tried to eliminate by autonomously easing monetary policy, shifting the aggregate demand curve to the right. The result was a continuing rise in inflation.

Only when the Federal Reserve committed to an anti-inflationary monetary policy under Chairman Paul Volcker, which involved hiking the federal funds rate to the 20% level, did inflation come down, ending the Great Inflation.

FIGURE 13.13**Inflation and Unemployment, 1965–1982**

As shown in panel (a), the CPI inflation rate was below 2% at an annual rate in the early 1960s, but by the late 1970s, it was averaging around 8% and peaked at over 14% in 1980 after the oil price shock in 1979. As shown in panel (b), the economy experienced unemployment below the natural rate in all but one year between 1960 and 1973, suggesting a demand-pull inflation described in Figure 13.12. After 1975, the unemployment rate was regularly above the natural rate of unemployment, suggesting a cost-push inflation described in Figure 13.11.



Source: Economic Report of the President.

**SUMMARY**

1. Monetary policy, and macroeconomic policy in general, has two primary objectives: stabilizing inflation around a low level (price stability) and stabilizing economic activity.
2. For most shocks—that is, aggregate demand shocks or permanent supply shocks—the price stability and economic activity stability objectives are consistent: stabilizing inflation stabilizes economic activity even in the short run. For temporary shocks, however, there is a tradeoff between stabilizing inflation and stabilizing economic activity in the short run. In the long run, however, there is no conflict between stabilizing inflation and economic activity.
3. Activists regard the self-correcting mechanism through wage and price adjustment as very slow and hence see the need for the government to pursue active, accommodating policy to high unemployment when it develops. Nonactivists, by contrast, believe that the self-correcting mechanism is fast and therefore advocate that the government avoid active policy to eliminate unemployment.

4. The Taylor rule, $r = 2.0 + \frac{1}{2}(\pi - \pi^T) + \frac{1}{2}(Y - Y^P)$, indicates that the real federal funds rate, the Federal Reserve's policy instrument, should be set equal to 2% (the historical average level of the real federal funds rate) plus a weighted average of the inflation gap and the output gap, with an equal weight of $\frac{1}{2}$ on each. The Taylor rule tends to characterize the Fed's setting of the federal funds rate under chairmen Greenspan and Bernanke.
5. Milton Friedman's view that in the long-run inflation is always and everywhere a monetary phenomenon is borne out by aggregate demand and supply analysis: it shows that monetary policy makers can target any inflation rate in the long run they want throughout autonomous monetary policy, which adjusts the equilibrium real interest rate using the federal funds rate policy tool to change the level of aggregate demand.
6. Two types of inflation can result from an activist stabilization policy to promote high employment: cost-push inflation, which occurs because of negative supply shocks or a push by workers to get higher wages than is justified by productivity gains, and demand-pull inflation, which results when policy makers pursue high output and employment targets through policies that increase aggregate demand. Both demand-pull and cost-push inflation led to the Great Inflation from 1965 to 1982.

KEY TERMS

activists, p. 327

cost-push inflation, p. 334

data lag, p. 327

demand-pull inflation, p. 334

divine coincidence, p. 320

dual mandates, p. 314

effectiveness lag, p. 328

equilibrium real interest rate,
p. 315

frictional unemployment, p. 313

hierarchical mandates, p. 314

implementation lag, p. 328

inflation gap, p. 314

inflation target, p. 314

legislative lag, p. 328

nonactivists, p. 327

price stability, p. 314

recognition lag, p. 327

structural unemployment, p. 313

Taylor rule, p. 329

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

The Objectives of Monetary Policy

1. Describe the two primary objectives of macroeconomic stabilization policy.
2. Should policy makers strive to achieve zero rates of unemployment and inflation? Why?
3. Distinguish between hierarchical and dual mandates. Which best describes the policy making environment in the United States?

The Relationship Between Stabilizing Inflation and Stabilizing Economic Activity

4. What is the equilibrium real interest rate? How does it influence the interest rate decisions of Federal Reserve policy makers?
5. Is stabilization policy more likely to be conducted with monetary policy or fiscal policy? Why?
6. Why does the divine coincidence simplify the job of policy making? In what situations will it prevail? Why?

How Actively Should Policy Makers Try to Stabilize Economic Activity?

7. Summarize the main points of disagreement in the debate between activists and nonactivists.
8. Why do activists believe the economy's self-correcting mechanism is slow?
9. Describe the five time lags involved in implementing stabilization policy.

The Taylor Rule

- How does the Taylor rule relate to the monetary policy curve?
- Would it be a good idea to have monetary policy makers set the federal funds rate solely using the Taylor rule?

Inflation: Always and Everywhere a Monetary Phenomenon

- How can the monetary authorities target any inflation rate they want to?

Causes of Inflationary Monetary Policy

- Explain the processes of cost-push and demand-pull inflation. How do macroeconomists distinguish between the two?

PROBLEMS

All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

The Objectives of Macroeconomic Policy

- According to the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Act of 1989 (section 8): “The primary function of the Bank is to formulate and implement monetary policy directed to the economic objective of achieving and maintaining stability in the general level of prices.”
 - Do you think that this constitutes a hierarchical or dual mandate for the conduct of monetary policy?
 - Is this mandate consistent with a positive inflation rate target?
- The following is an excerpt from the April 7, 2010, Bank of Japan Statement on Monetary

Policy: “The Bank recognizes that it is a critical challenge for Japan’s economy to overcome deflation and return to a sustainable growth path with price stability. To this end, the Bank will continue to consistently make contributions as central bank.”

- Which was the main concern for Japanese policy makers by April 2010?
- Why is deflation inconsistent with price stability?

The Relationship Between Stabilizing Inflation and Stabilizing Economic Activity

- Suppose the current administration decides to decrease government expenditures as a means to cut the existing government budget deficit.
 - According to the aggregate demand and supply analysis, what would be the effect of such a measure in the short run? Describe changes in the inflation rate and output level.
 - What would be the effect on the real interest rate, inflation rate, and output level if the Federal Reserve decides to stabilize the inflation rate?
- The recent debate about healthcare reform in the United States included arguments about how the proposed reform might affect the efficiency of the U.S. economy. Based on the aggregate demand and supply analysis, do

you think that a more or less efficient economy is an important issue in this debate? (Hint: consider the long-run effect of a less efficient economy in the output level.)

- The following table shows the inflation rate and output level for four consecutive periods in a given economy. In period 1, the economy is at its long-run equilibrium (i.e., the inflation rate equals its target and output equals potential output). In period 2 there is a temporary supply shock (e.g., an increase in energy prices).

Period	Inflation rate (%)	Output (\$ trillions)
1	2.5	8
2	4.5	7
3	2.5	6
4	2.5	8

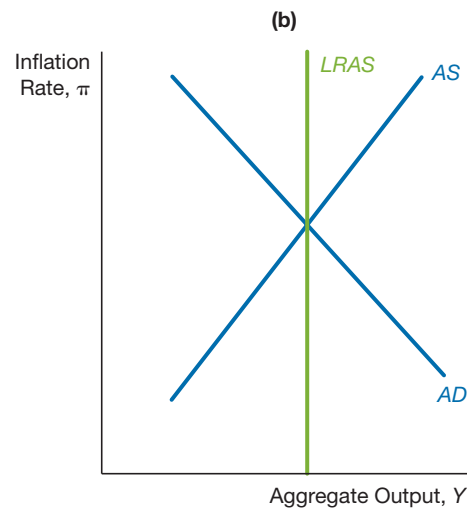
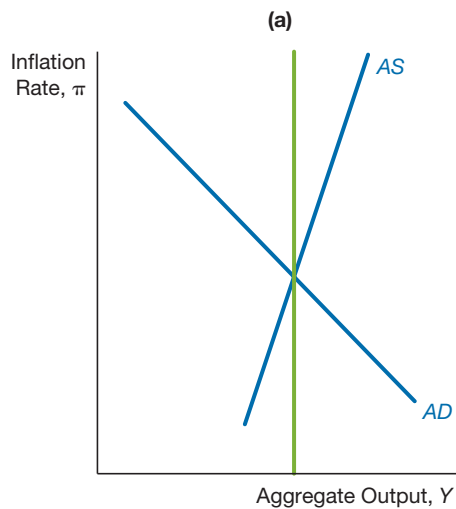
a) Based on the table, determine which type of response was implemented by policy makers (e.g., nothing versus stabilizing inflation or economic activity).

b) Show your argument using a graph (draw the *MP* curve and the *AD/AS* diagram consistent with the table data).

How Actively Should Policy Makers Try to Stabilize Economic Activity?

6. Suppose one could measure the welfare gains derived from eliminating output (and unemployment) fluctuations in the economy. Assuming these gains are relatively small for the average individual, how do you think this conclusion would affect the activist/nonactivist debate?

7. The following panels describe two different short-run aggregate supply curves: In which situation is the case for nonactivist policy is stronger? Explain why.



The Taylor Rule

8. The Federal Reserve kept its policy rate at a range from 0 to 0.25 percent at its March 16, 2010, meeting. According to the Bureau of Economic Analysis, real GDP increased at an annual rate of 5.6% during the last quarter

of 2009, while the Bureau of Labor Statistics reported that the CPI remained unchanged in February 2010. Was the Fed's decision to keep its target unchanged consistent with the Taylor rule? Why, or why not?

Causes of Inflationary Monetary Policy

9. The following table shows unemployment and inflation rates for Canada, during the 1972–1982 period:

	1972	1973	1974	1975	1976	1977	1978	1979	1980	1981	1982
Unemployment Rate	6.2	5.6	5.3	6.9	7.1	8.1	8.4	7.6	7.6	7.6	11
Inflation Rate	4.98	7.48	10.99	10.67	7.54	7.97	8.97	9.14	10.12	12.47	10.76

Source: OECD Statistics.

- a) Plot Canada's unemployment rates during this period. On the same graph, draw a horizontal line at 7.3%, representing Canada's estimated natural rate of unemployment.
 - b) Considering the graph, how would you describe Canada's inflationary policy during the 1972–1982 period?
10. The Taylor rule suggests that the policy rate target should be increased when the output gap is positive. Do you think that the Taylor rule encourages or avoids demand-pull inflation? Which might be a limitation of the Taylor rule with respect to demand-pull inflation?

**myeconlab****MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.**

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.

Part Five

Finance and the Macroeconomy

Chapter 14

The Financial System and Economic Growth

Chapter 15

Financial Crises and the Economy



Part Five Finance and the Macroeconomy

Now that we have developed frameworks to analyze what happens in the long run and the short run in Parts 2, 3, and 4, we can turn to the important role that finance plays in macroeconomics in both the long and the short runs. Chapter 14 focuses on the long run and shows how a well-functioning financial system promotes economic growth. It develops tools that are then used in Chapter 15 to examine how finance can affect the economy in the short run. When the financial system suddenly stops working well—that is, it experiences a *financial crisis*—it leads to sharp contractions in economic activity. Chapter 15 develops a framework for analyzing the dynamics of financial crises and then applies this analysis to explaining both the most recent worldwide financial crisis as well as earlier episodes in our history. In a web chapter available at the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin, this analysis is extended to financial crises in *emerging market economies*, economies in an early stage of market development that have recently opened up to the flow of goods, services, and capital from the rest of the world.

We will examine applications in each chapter to make the critical connection between theory and real-world practice:

- “The Tyranny of Collateral”
- “Is China a Counter-Example to the Importance of Financial Development to Economic Growth?”
- “The Mother of All Financial Crises: The Great Depression”
- “The 2007–2009 Financial Crisis”

In keeping with our focus on key policy issues and the techniques policy makers use in practice, we will also analyze the following specific examples in Policy and Practice cases:

- “Was the Fed to Blame for the Housing Price Bubble?”
- “Nonconventional Monetary Policy and the Monetary Transmission Mechanism”
- “Japan’s Lost Decade, 1992–2002”
- “Debate Over Central Bank Response to Bubbles”



14

The Financial System and Economic Growth

Preview

Quite understandably, ordinary people (and many economists) underestimate the importance of the financial system. What, after all, do investment bankers and other finance workers produce to deserve such towering salaries and bonuses, sometimes in the millions of dollars? Why did the government rescue financial firms during the 2007–2009 financial crisis at great expense, while leaving businesses in other industries to fail?

We examine the role that the financial system plays in the economy in this and the following chapter. This chapter focuses on the long run, that is, on what role the financial system plays in promoting economic growth. It discusses why a well-functioning financial system is a key condition for high economic growth. The following chapter focuses on the short run, that is, it looks at what happens when the financial system suddenly stops working well, which can cause a sharp contraction in economic activity.

We start this chapter by first outlining the financial system's role in channeling funds in the economy. Then, we describe the two kinds of information problems that can interfere with the flow of funds in the financial system, and the role of banks and governments in resolving those problems. The tools that we develop to conduct this analysis will also be building blocks for the discussion of financial crises in the following chapter. Finally, we review the empirical evidence of a link between a well-functioning financial system and a healthy economy.

The Role of the Financial System

Households and firms with surplus funds to invest require access to productive investment opportunities in new businesses, products, and ideas. How does society match up those with surplus funds to others with viable investment opportunities who need

funds? And how does society ensure that funds are channeled to worthwhile investment opportunities, so as to not squander the resources?

Enter the financial system, which can act as the brain of the economy by performing the essential coordinating function of channeling funds from households and firms with surplus funds to those individuals and firms with both a shortage of funds *and* productive investment opportunities. A well-functioning financial system directs funds to where they can do the most good, promoting economic stability and growth.

Channeling funds efficiently through the financial system is a complex task, as illustrated by the schematic diagram in Figure 14.1. Lender-savers—those with excess funds to invest—are at the left and borrower-spenders with productive investment opportunities are at the right: funds move between these two parties via two main conduits.

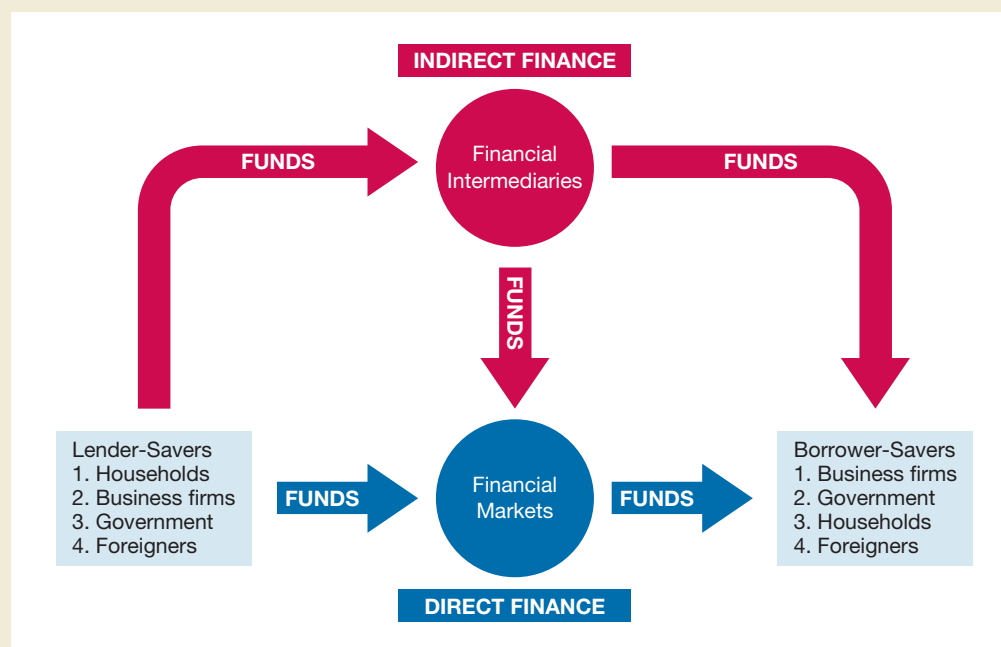
Direct Finance

One way that funds move directly from lender-savers (investors) to borrower-spenders via financial markets is the *direct finance* route shown at the bottom of Figure 14.1. With direct finance, borrowers borrow funds directly from savers via

FIGURE 14.1

Flow of Funds Through the Financial System

Direct finance, the route shown at the bottom, involves borrowers borrowing funds directly from savers. Indirect finance, in which financial intermediaries stand between savers and borrowers, is more circuitous and operates through two different routes: 1) where financial intermediaries obtain funds from savers and then use them to make loans to borrowers (the arrows at the top of the figure), and 2) where financial intermediaries use the funds from savers to purchase securities issued by borrowers (shown by the arrow from financial intermediaries to financial markets).



financial markets by selling them **securities** (also called **financial instruments**), which are claims on the borrowers' future income or assets in the form of common stock or bonds. Securities are assets for the firm or person who buys them, but they are **liabilities** (IOUs or debts) for the individual or firm that sells (issues) them. For example, if a textile company in Malaysia needs to borrow funds to pay for a new factory to produce shirts, it might seek funds from U.S. investors by selling them **equities**, like common stock that represents a share of ownership of a corporation, or **bonds**, debt securities that offer a stream of payments for a fixed period of time. Financial institutions engaged in direct finance facilitate transactions in financial markets. These include **exchanges**, where buyers and sellers of securities (or their agents or brokers) meet in one central location to conduct trades, or **investment banks** that both trade securities and help corporations issue securities by guaranteeing a price for the securities and then selling them.

Indirect Finance

Most funds are channeled to borrowers through the circuitous *indirect finance* route shown at the top of Figure 14.1. With indirect finance, a **financial intermediary**—a type of financial institution such as a bank, insurance company, finance company, mutual fund, or pension fund—stands between lender-savers and borrower-spenders, as the top part of Figure 14.1 indicates. (Descriptions of the types of financial intermediaries can be found in the box, “Financial Intermediaries.”) In other words, a financial intermediary acts as an *intermediary* between lender-savers and borrower-spenders. For example a bank obtains funds from savers by issuing deposits and then uses these funds to make loans, say for a young couple to buy a house. Another example is an insurance company that obtains funds by issuing insurance policies and collecting premiums, and then makes loans to a corporation to build a hotel.

A second way financial intermediaries can stand between lender-savers and borrower-spenders is described by the route depicted in Figure 14.1 by the arrow that shows funds flowing from financial intermediaries to financial markets, and then from financial markets to borrower spenders. For example, a mutual fund obtains funds from investors and then uses these funds to purchase securities such as common stocks in the financial markets. Another example is a pension fund that receives funds from employees and their employer and then buys securities such as bonds in the financial markets. This process of linking borrower-spenders and lender-savers through financial intermediaries is called **financial intermediation**.

Most borrowers in advanced countries obtain credit through financial intermediation. Financial intermediaries are a more important source of financing for businesses than securities markets, supplying close to 60% of the funds flowing to nonfinancial businesses. Most bonds and about half of all stocks are purchased by financial intermediaries in financial markets (the downward arrow in Figure 14.1).

In developing countries where stock and bond markets are often tiny or nonexistent, almost all lending is done through financial intermediation. In these places, households and firms borrow through rural moneylenders, savings and credit associations, family networks, or programs for **microcredit**, which offer very small loans, often less than \$100.



Financial Intermediaries

There are six basic types of financial intermediaries.

1. **Banks**, also known as *depository institutions*, which include commercial banks, savings and loan associations, mutual savings banks, and credit unions, are financial institutions that acquire funds by issuing deposits and use the proceeds to make loans.
2. **Insurance companies**, which include life insurance companies and fire and casualty insurance companies, acquire funds from premiums paid by policyholders and in turn insure policyholders against financial hazards like death or against loss from theft, fire, or accidents.
3. **Pension funds**, which include private and government pension funds, acquire funds through contributions from employees and their employers and provide retirement income to the employees covered by the pension plan.
4. **Finance companies** raise funds by selling commercial paper (a short-term debt instrument) and by issuing stocks and bonds. They then use the funds to lend to consumers and businesses.
5. **Mutual funds** acquire funds by selling shares to individuals and use the proceeds to buy securities such as stocks and bonds.
6. **Hedge funds** are a special type of mutual fund that also acquires funds by selling shares but only to very wealthy people, so they are less regulated than mutual funds. They then use the proceeds to purchase securities and engage in complex financial transactions.

To understand these financial intermediaries better, we can look at their **balance sheet**, a list of the institution's assets and liabilities. As the name implies, the list balances; that is, it has the characteristic that

$$\text{Total assets} = \text{Total liabilities} + \text{Capital}$$

In other words, **capital** (also referred to as **net worth**) equals the value of the institution's assets minus its liabilities. If the value of the assets falls, holding the value of liabilities constant, then the net worth or capital of the institution has fallen. Table 14.1 provides a guide to these financial intermediaries by describing their primary assets (uses of funds) and their primary liabilities (sources of funds).

TABLE 14.1

Primary Assets and Liabilities of Financial Intermediaries	Type of Financial Intermediary		Primary Liabilities (Sources of Funds)
	Type of Financial Intermediary	Primary Assets (Uses of Funds)	
	Banks	Business and consumer loans, mortgages, government securities	Deposits
	Insurance companies	Corporate bonds, mortgages, business loans, government securities	Premiums from policies
	Pension funds	Corporate bonds, mortgages, business loans, government securities	Employer and employee contributions
	Finance companies	Consumer and business loans	Commercial paper, stocks, and bonds
	Mutual funds	Stocks and bonds	Shares
	Hedge funds	Numerous types of securities and financial derivatives	Shares

Information Challenges and the Financial System

Why don't more funds move directly to those who need them, without passing through a middleman? Why do we need financial intermediaries at all? To answer these questions, we first identify the impediments to a well-functioning financial system and ways to overcome them.

Asymmetric Information

Asymmetric information, a situation in which one party to a transaction has much less accurate information than the other, impedes the direct movement of funds to those with the best investment opportunities. Consider the managers of a Russian company and its investors, the stockholders who own the company and the bondholders who have lent it money. Who is better placed to know if the managers are honest people, and whether the company is performing well? Clearly, the managers themselves are. This imbalance is particularly severe if the stockholders and bondholders are foreigners and do not know the ins and outs of doing business in Russia. Similarly, a person seeking a loan to buy a car knows his or her ability to make monthly payments, but a potential lender like a bank may not. A parent gives a child money to buy a healthy lunch—but he could be buying candy instead.

In a financial system, asymmetric information creates two types of problems that make it hard to channel funds to their most productive use, before the transaction is entered into and after.

ADVERSE SELECTION. **Adverse selection** is the problem that arises because the party who is most eager to engage in a transaction is the one most likely to produce an undesirable (adverse) outcome for you. It occurs before a transaction is completed and makes it more likely that loans will be made to bad credit risks. As a result, lenders may decide not to make any loans at all, even though there are good credit risks in the marketplace.

To illustrate, suppose that you have two businesses who want to borrow from you. The first business, Rock Solid Company, is very conservative and only borrows when it has an investment that will almost surely pay off. The other business, Risky Ventures Corporation, likes to take big risks that have high payoffs. Which business is more likely to contact you to seek out a loan? Risky Ventures, of course, because it has so much to gain if the investment pays off. You, however, would not want to make a loan to Risky Ventures: there is a high probability that its investment will turn sour and it will be unable to pay you back. If you knew both companies very well—that is, if your information were symmetric so you had the same information as the companies' managers—you would identify Risky Ventures as a bad risk and would not lend to it. Suppose, though, that you don't know these businesses well. You are more likely to lend to Risky Ventures rather than to Rock Solid because Risky Ventures is more likely to apply for the loan. The possibility of adverse selection might lead you to decide not to lend to either of the companies, even though there are times when Rock Solid, an excellent credit risk, might need a loan for a worthwhile investment.

MORAL HAZARD. **Moral hazard**, the second problem created by asymmetric information, is the risk (*hazard*) that the other party will engage in activities that are undesirable (*immoral*) from your point of view. It arises after a transaction occurs.

As an example, suppose that you loan \$10,000 to Rock Solid to computerize its billing operations. Once you have made the loan, however, Rock Solid may decide to use the money to fund a high-risk operation, say, speculating in the stock market. If the

speculation works, and Rock Solid makes \$100,000 with your money, it will be able to pay you back your \$10,000 and enjoy the remaining \$90,000. But if the speculation doesn't pan out, as is likely, Rock Solid won't pay you back. Rock Solid only loses its reputation as a conservative company: it has incentives to take risk at your expense. If you knew what Rock Solid was up to, you might be able to stop it from speculating in the stock market and prevent moral hazard. However, it is hard for you to keep informed about Rock Solid's activities because information is asymmetric. The risk of moral hazard might therefore discourage you from making the \$10,000 loan to Rock Solid, even if you were sure that it would pay you back if it used the funds to buy computers.

Free-Rider Problem

How do lenders and investors avoid the adverse selection and moral hazard problems that result from asymmetric information? The answer is clear—they need to collect information to eliminate the information asymmetry—but its implementation is not.

An important impediment to information collection is the **free-rider problem**: private investors who do not spend their resources on collecting information can take advantage of (get a *free ride* on) the information that other investors collect. To understand the free-rider problem, imagine you are Warren Buffett and have spent a lot of time and money gathering information that tells you which firms are good investments and which are bad. You believe the resources you have spent are worthwhile because you can make up the cost of acquiring this information, and then some, by purchasing the securities of good firms that you identify as undervalued. The moment you begin to buy shares, however, other savvy free-riding investors, knowing you have produced good information—after all, you are Warren Buffett—will buy right along with you, even though they have not paid for any of the information you have gathered. The increased demand for the undervalued good securities will cause their low prices to be bid up immediately to reflect their true value, before you have been able to buy all you might want.

Because of all these free riders, you will not be able to capture most of the profits from your information production, so you will cut back on the amount of resources you spend on producing it. (Of course this doesn't mean you wouldn't get rich, just that you wouldn't get as rich as you otherwise would.) Other investors who might think about spending resources on gathering information will come to the same realization, and they will also cut back on information collection. The inability to fully profit from information collection limits the amount of information available in the marketplace, so asymmetric information problems will remain severe.

Financial Intermediaries Address Asymmetric Information Problems

Well-functioning financial intermediaries play a key role in solving asymmetric information problems. Financial intermediaries make it their business to collect information to overcome adverse selection and moral hazard problems.

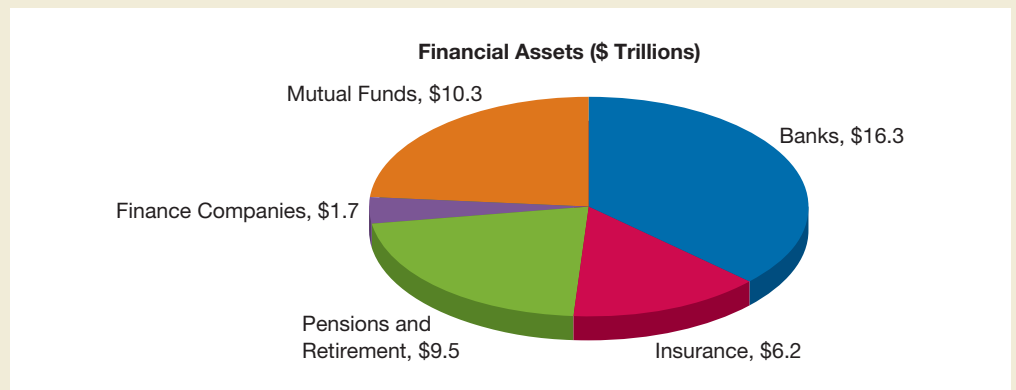
ROLE OF PRIVATE LOANS. Financial intermediaries can avoid the free-rider problem primarily by making private loans. Because private loans are not traded in financial markets, it is hard for anyone else to free ride on the financial intermediary's information-collection activities. The intermediary making private loans thus benefits from its information collection and will therefore find it profitable to continue the activity. The ability to profit from information collection makes indirect finance involving financial intermediaries the most prevalent source of funds for households and businesses.

ADVANTAGES OF BANKS. Of all the types of financial intermediaries, banks are the most important. Their basic business is taking in deposits and using these funds to make loans. In the United States, banking institutions (which include commercial banks, savings and loan associations, mutual savings banks, and credit unions) are the most significant category of financial intermediaries. Figure 14.2 shows that banking institutions held \$16.3 trillion in assets at the end of 2009, compared to the next largest category, mutual funds, with \$10.3 trillion. Figure 14.3 shows that the dominance of banks is even more striking in other countries. While banks supply only 18% of total credit to U.S. nonfinancial businesses, they supply 56% in Canada, 76% in Germany, and 78% in Japan.¹

FIGURE 14.2

Assets of Different U.S. Financial Intermediaries, 2009

Banking institutions are the most important financial intermediary, with total assets of \$16.3 trillion in 2009.

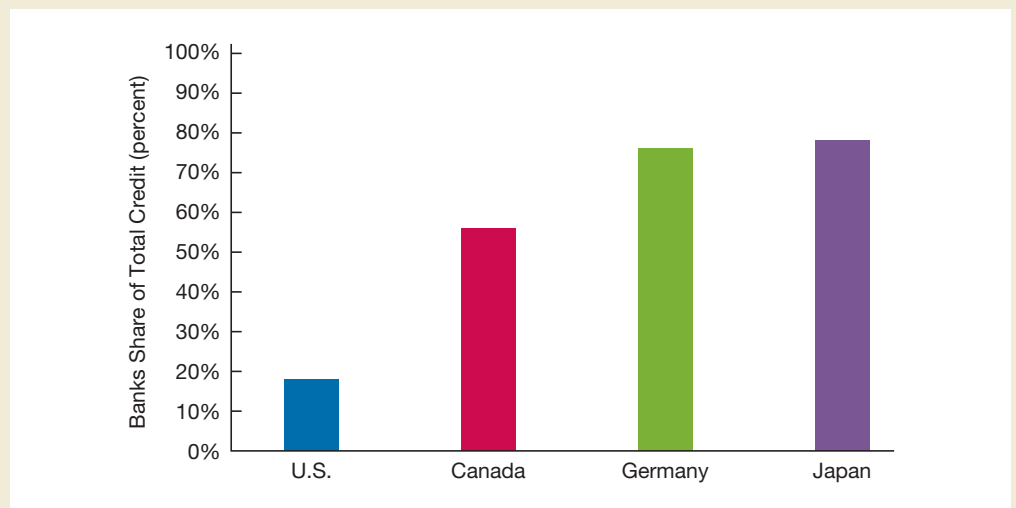


Source: Federal Reserve Flow of Funds Accounts. www.federalreserve.gov/releases/z1

FIGURE 14.3

Banks' Share of Total Credit to Nonfinancial Businesses in United States, Canada, Germany, and Japan

Banks are even more dominant in financial markets in other countries than they are in the United States. Banks supply 18% of total credit to U.S. nonfinancial businesses, 56% in Canada, 76% in Germany, and 78% in Japan.



Source: Andreas Hackethal and Reinhard H. Schmidt. 2004. Financing patterns: Measurement concepts and empirical results. Johann Wolfgang Goethe-Universitat Working Paper No. 125, January. The data are from 1970 to 2000 and are gross flows as percentage of the total, not including trade and other credit data, which are not available.

¹For a discussion of the relative size of different financial intermediaries and how much credit they supply in different economies, see Chapter 2, “An Overview of the Financial System” and Chapter 8 “An Economic Analysis of Financial Structure,” in Frederic S. Mishkin, *The Economics of Money Banking and Financial Markets*, 9th edition (Boston: Pearson Addison-Wesley 2010).

Banks are particularly critical in the financial system because they have unique advantages over other financial intermediaries in using several practices to solve asymmetric information problems.

1. *Screening*: Collecting information about potential borrowers before a transaction occurs to avoid adverse selection problems is called **screening**. A bank considering giving you a mortgage loan asks you about your income, your employment record, your bank accounts, the value of your house, and so on. Banks are particularly good at screening because they develop long-term relationships with potential borrowers.² These relationships enable them to know their customers well, making it cheaper for them to screen out bad borrowers.
2. *Monitoring*: Collecting information after a transaction occurs to prevent moral hazard is called *monitoring*. After a financial institution makes a loan, the loan officer checks on how the borrower is using the funds lent to him or her and will follow up on any signs of risky behavior. Banks have a natural advantage in monitoring a borrowing firm's behavior because they observe a firm's checking account, which yields a great deal of information about the borrower's financial condition. For example, a sustained drop in the borrower's checking account balance may signal that the borrower is having financial trouble. Unusual account activity may suggest that the borrower is engaging in risky activities. A change in suppliers, as indicated by the payees on the firms' checks, may suggest that the borrower is pursuing a new line of business. Banks' long-term relationships with their customers also give them an advantage in monitoring borrowers. If the borrower has borrowed from the bank before, the bank has already established procedures for monitoring that customer, reducing the cost of monitoring the new loan.
3. *Restrictive Covenants*. Banks also try to prevent moral hazard by writing provisions into debt contracts, called **restrictive covenants**, that restrict borrowers' activities. For example, banks often rely on legal professionals to write provisions into their loan contracts that forbid borrowers from going into risky businesses, promote desirable behavior, or require borrowers to provide periodic accounting statement reports. For example, a loan contract might require the firm to keep a certain percentage of its assets in cash so that it is more likely to be able to pay off the loan. But what if a bank does not think through every contingency when it writes the restrictive covenants into the loan contract? The bank's ability to cut off future lending avoids this problem by improving a borrower's behavior.

BANKS' ROLE AS ECONOMIES DEVELOP. Developing countries face particularly difficult challenges from asymmetric information. Information about private firms is hard to get because these countries' accounting standards and information technology are generally weak. Securities markets in developing countries are therefore typically underdeveloped and banks, which are particularly well-suited to avoid free-rider problems, play an even more dominant role in the financial system.

²For a discussion of how banks screen and develop long-term relationships, see Chapter 10 "Banking and the Management of Financial Institutions," in Frederic S. Mishkin, *The Economics of Money, Banking and Financial Markets*, 9th edition (Boston: Pearson Addison-Wesley 2010), 225–254.

As financial systems develop, information about firms becomes easier to acquire, and so asymmetric information problems will be less severe and it will be easier for firms to issue securities. The importance of banks in the financial system will then diminish. We can see this trend in the United States in the past twenty years, during which there have been incredible improvements in information technology and banks' share of total lending has fallen.

Collateral and Asymmetric Information Problems

Another tool used by financial intermediaries to solve adverse selection and moral hazard problems is **collateral**, property the borrower promises in the loan contract to the lender if it defaults on its debt. Most household debt is collateralized: a house is collateral for a mortgage and an automobile is collateral for an auto loan. (The only form of noncollateralized loan households tend to have is credit card debt.) In the United States, commercial and farm mortgages, for which property is pledged as collateral, make up around one-quarter of borrowing by nonfinancial businesses; corporate bonds and other bank loans also often require pledges of collateral.

Collateral is prevalent in loan contracts because it ameliorates both adverse selection and moral hazard problems. Adverse selection interferes with the functioning of financial markets only if a lender suffers a loss when a borrower defaults on its loan payments. Collateral reduces the consequences of adverse selection because, if a borrower defaults on a loan, the lender can sell the collateral and use the proceeds to make up for its losses on the loan. For example, if you fail to make your mortgage payments, the lender can take the title to your house, auction it off, and use the receipts to pay off the loan. Borrowers are willing to supply collateral because the reduced risk for the lender makes it more likely they will get the loan, and perhaps lower the interest rate.

Collateral also reduces moral hazard by decreasing the incentives for borrowers to take on too much risk. When borrowers pledge collateral on their loans, they have more to lose (sometimes referred to as "skin in the game") if they can't pay the lender back, and so they are naturally more reluctant to engage in risky activities. Lawyers play a critical role in collecting collateral from borrowers.

Application

The Tyranny of Collateral

To use property, such as land or capital, as collateral, a person must legally own it. Unfortunately, as Hernando De Soto documented in *The Mystery of Capital*, it is extremely expensive and time consuming for the poor in developing countries to make their ownership of property legal. Obtaining legal title to a dwelling on urban land in the Philippines, for example, involved 168 bureaucratic steps and fifty-three public and private agencies, and the process took thirteen to twenty-five years. For desert land in Egypt, obtaining legal title took seventy-seven steps, thirty-one public and private agencies, and five to fourteen years. To legally buy government land in Haiti, an ordinary citizen had to go through 176 steps over nineteen years. These barriers do not mean the poor do not invest: they still build houses and buy equipment even if they don't have legal title to these assets. By De Soto's calculations, the "total value of the real estate held

but not legally owned by the poor of the Third World and former communist nations is at least \$9.3 trillion.”³

Without legal title, however, none of this property can be used as collateral to borrow funds, a requirement for most lenders. Even when people have legal title to their property, the legal system in most developing countries is so inefficient that collateral does not mean much. Typically creditors must first sue the defaulting debtor for payment, which takes several years, and then, once obtaining a favorable judgment, the creditor has to sue again to obtain title to the collateral. This process often takes in excess of five years. By the time the lender acquires the collateral, it is likely to have been neglected or stolen and thus has little value. In addition, governments often block lenders from foreclosing on borrowers in politically powerful sectors of a society, such as agriculture.

When the financial system is unable to use collateral effectively, the adverse selection problem will be worse, because the lender will need even more information about the quality of the borrower to distinguish a good loan from a bad one. Little lending will take place, especially in transactions that involve collateral, such as mortgages. In Peru, for example, the value of mortgage loans relative to the size of the economy is less than 1/20 that in the United States.

The poor have an even harder time obtaining loans because it is too costly for them to get title to their property and they therefore have no collateral to offer, resulting in what Raghuram Rajan and Luigi Zingales, both of the University of Chicago, refer to as the “tyranny of collateral.”⁴ Even when poor people have a good idea for a business and are willing to work hard, they cannot get the funds to finance it, making it difficult for them to escape poverty.



Government Regulation and Supervision of the Financial Sector

We have seen that the more information is collected, the less information asymmetry there will be, and the better the financial system will work. However, we have also seen that the free-rider problem creates a serious impediment to information production. Can government intervention in the financial system help? In this section, we will discuss the three main government-based approaches for improving the quality of information in financial markets. (The government can also intervene in credit markets by directing credit as the box, “Government-Directed Credit,” indicates.)

Government Regulation to Promote Transparency

Governments can decrease information asymmetry by directly promoting transparency. Specifically, the government can regulate financial markets to require that firms distribute full and accurate information to enable investors to evaluate their true performance. The U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) requires firms selling their securities in public markets to disclose information about their sales, assets, and earnings. Governments also have laws to force firms to adhere to standard accounting principles that allow for profit verification and impose stiff criminal and civil penalties on individuals who commit fraud by hiding and stealing profits.

³Hernando De Soto, *The Mystery of Capital: Why Capitalism Triumphs in the West and Fails Everywhere Else* (New York: Basic Books, 2000), 35.

⁴Raghuram Rajan and Luigi Zingales, *Saving Capitalism from the Capitalists: Unleashing the Power of Financial Markets to Create Wealth and Spread Opportunity* (New York: Crown Business, 2003).



Government-Directed Credit

Many governments, particularly in poor, developing countries, have programs to direct credit to particular sectors of the economy. Governments direct credit by creating development financial institutions to make specific types of loans at artificially low rates, or by directing existing institutions to lend to certain entities or sectors of the economy. Governments can also effectively direct credit by owning banks; state-owned banks are very common in many developing countries.

Government-directed credit helps get funds to sectors of the economy, such as manufacturing or high tech, that are key drivers of economic growth. Yet, in contrast to governments, private institutions have incentives to solve adverse selection and moral hazard problems and to lend to those borrowers with the most productive

investment opportunities. If private institutions do not make wise loans, they will not earn any profits. Governments, on the other hand, lack this profit incentive. Government-directed programs are unlikely to channel funds to sectors that will produce high growth for the economy; instead, they typically result in less efficient investment that hampers growth.

Research has associated large programs to direct credit and wide-scale state ownership of banks with less financial development and low growth rates.* The negative features of state-owned banks led a major World Bank study to conclude that “whatever its original objectives, state ownership of banks tends to stunt financial sector development, thereby contributing to slower growth.”**

*For example, see Edward Kane, “Good Intentions and Unintended Evil: The Case against Selective Credit Allocation,” *Journal of Money, Credit and Banking* 9 (1977): 55–69; World Bank, *Finance for Growth: Policy Choices in a Volatile World* (Oxford: World Bank and Oxford University Press, 2001); Rafael La Porta et al., “Government Ownership of Banks,” *Journal of Finance* 57 (2002): 265–301; and James R. Barth, Gerard Caprio, Jr. and Ross Levine, “Banking Systems Around the Globe: Do Regulation and Ownership Affect Performance and Stability?” in *Prudential Regulation and Supervision: What Works and What Doesn’t*, ed. Frederic S. Mishkin (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2001), 31–97.

**World Bank, *Finance for Growth: Policy Choices in a Volatile World* (Oxford: World Bank and Oxford University Press, 2001), 123.

Although government regulation to increase transparency is crucial to reducing adverse selection and moral hazard problems, poor-performing firms and executives have strong incentives to falsify reports. Strong-looking firms fetch a high price for their securities. When firms misrepresent their financials to boost performance, executives receive higher compensation. Not surprisingly, government regulation does not always solve the problem, as illustrated by the collapse of Enron in 2001 (discussed in the box, “The Enron Implosion,”) and accounting scandals shortly afterwards at other corporations like WorldCom in the United States and Parmalat and Royal Dutch Shell in Europe.

Government Safety Net

We have already seen that banks are particularly well-suited to solve adverse selection and moral hazard problems because they make private loans that help avoid the free-rider problem. However, this solution gives rise to two additional problems



The Enron Implosion

Until 2001, Enron Corporation, a firm that specialized in trading in the energy market, appeared to be spectacularly successful. It had a quarter of the energy-trading market and was valued as high as \$77 billion in August 2000 (just a little over a year before its collapse), making it the seventh-largest corporation in the United States at that time. However, toward the end of 2001, Enron came crashing down. In October 2001, Enron announced a third-quarter loss of \$618 million and disclosed accounting “mistakes.” The SEC then engaged in a formal investigation of Enron’s financial dealings with partnerships led by its former finance chief. It became clear that Enron was engaged in a complex set of transactions by which it was keeping substantial amounts of debt and financial contracts off of its balance sheet. These transactions enabled Enron to hide its financial difficulties. Despite securing as much as \$1.5 billion of new financing from J.P. Morgan Chase and

Citigroup, the company was forced to declare bankruptcy in December 2001, up to then the largest bankruptcy in U.S. history.

The Enron collapse illustrates that government regulation can lessen asymmetric information problems, but cannot eliminate them. Managers have tremendous incentives to hide their companies’ problems, making it hard for investors to know the true value of the firm. The Enron bankruptcy not only increased concerns in financial markets about the quality of accounting information supplied by corporations, but also led to hardship for many of the firm’s former employees, who found that their pensions had become worthless. Outrage against the duplicity of executives at Enron has been high, and several have been indicted, with some being already convicted and sent to jail.

in the banking system. First, depositors might be reluctant to put their money into a bank if they cannot easily tell whether bank managers are engaging in moral hazard and taking on too much risk or are outright crooks. Second, depositors’ lack of information about the quality of a bank’s assets can lead to the wholesale collapse of many banks at the same time, which we will see in Chapter 15 is a central element in financial crises. Without banks to solve adverse selection and moral hazard problems, lending and investment will decline, and the economy will experience a sharp economic downturn, such as occurred in the United States during the Great Depression in the 1930s.

The government can intervene in the financial system to encourage depositors to put their money in banks and prevent multiple, simultaneous bank failures by creating a safety net for depositors. It may either provide deposit insurance (such as that from the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation in the United States) or else make funds available directly to troubled financial institutions. This safety net can accomplish two goals. If depositors are protected and are sure they won’t suffer any losses when a bank fails, they will be more willing to provide the bank with funds. Depositor protection also means that depositors no longer have reasons to pull their money out of the bank at the first sign of trouble, even if they are unsure about its ultimate financial health. Depositor protection therefore greatly reduces contagion from one bank failure potentially leading to another.

A government safety net from deposit insurance can have negative consequences. It increases the moral hazard problem because, with a safety net, depositors have less incentive to withdraw their funds if they suspect that the bank is taking on too much risk. The presence of a government safety net increases the incentive for banks to take on greater risk than they otherwise would, with taxpayers paying the bill if the bank subsequently fails.

Role of Prudential Regulation and Supervision

Given the moral hazard incentives created by a government safety net, there is a need for **prudential regulation**, rules set by the government to prevent banks from taking on too much risk. Governments can limit banks' risk level by adopting regulations to promote disclosure of their activities. With this information, the market is more likely to pull funds out of a bank engaging in risky activities. The government can also establish regulations to restrict those activities and asset categories that it considers too risky for banks, encourage banks to diversify, promote accurate disclosure of banks' financial condition to the markets, and require that banks hold minimum levels of capital as a cushion against bad loans.

To make sure that these regulations are enforced, the government must also engage in **prudential supervision**, in which it monitors banks by examining them on a regular basis. Effective prudential regulation and supervision are needed to make the financial system work well. But what if government officials do not do their jobs well? When government regulation and supervision are inadequate, the financial system will be unable to channel funds to those with productive investment opportunities, negatively impacting the financial system, as we will discuss in Chapter 15.

Financial Development and Economic Growth: The Evidence

Developing all the fundamental institutions to support a sound financial system that promotes economic growth is a daunting task.⁵ Is it worth all the effort? Let's turn to the evidence.

The evidence that financial development, often called **financial deepening**, and economic growth are linked is quite strong.⁶ A pioneering study by Robert King and Ross Levine using a sample of eighty countries found that those with large financial sectors back in 1960 experienced greater economic growth over the subsequent thirty years than countries with small financial sectors.⁷ Later studies using more sophisticated techniques have confirmed this finding, associating a doubling of the size of private credit in an average developing country with a two-percentage-point annual

⁵A web appendix to this chapter found at the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin, discusses how free trade and financial globalization help promote financial development and economic growth.

⁶For an excellent recent survey of the link between finance and economic growth, see Asli Demirgüç-Kunt, "Finance and Economic Development: The Role of Government," in *The Oxford Handbook of Banking*, eds Alan N. Berger, Phillip Molyneux, and John Wilson (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2010), 641–662.

⁷Robert King and Ross Levine, "Finance and Growth: Schumpeter Might Be Right," *Quarterly Journal of Economics* 108 (1993): 717–737.

increase in economic growth.⁸ Through the magic of compound interest, a two-percentage-point annual increase results in a doubling of national income in thirty-five years.⁹ Research has established several key insights:

1. Industries and firms that are highly dependent on external sources of funds will benefit greatly from financial deepening and will grow faster in countries that are better developed financially.¹⁰
2. More new firms are created in countries with better-developed financial systems than in countries with weak financial systems.
3. Financial development stimulates growth more through its improvements in the allocation of capital (which raises overall productivity) than through its encouragement of higher levels of investment.¹¹

These findings have led World Bank researcher, and now governor of the central bank of Ireland, Patrick Honohan, to state that, “The causal link between finance and growth is one of the most striking empirical macroeconomic relationships uncovered in the last decade.”¹²

Although financial deepening improves an economy’s rate of economic growth, it is theoretically possible that the degree of poverty could remain the same or even increase because the resulting growth could lead to greater income inequality. However, research finds no evidence of this effect. In countries with strong financial development, the income of the poorest fifth of the population actually grows faster than average GDP per person, indicating clearly that financial development is associated with reductions in poverty and even with reductions in the use of child labor.¹³ This finding is in concert with the predictions of economic theory: financial development increases the access of the poor to credit, which previously was limited largely to the rich.

⁸For example, see Ross Levine et al., “Financial Intermediation and Growth: Causality and Causes,” *Journal of Monetary Economics* 46 (2000): 31–77; Ross Levine and Sara Zervos, “Stock Markets, Banks, and Economic Growth,” *American Economic Review* 88 (1998): 537–558; and Thorsten Beck et al., “Finance and the Sources of Growth,” *Journal of Financial Economics* 58 (2000): 261–300.

⁹To see how compound interest works, recognize that after one year, a 2% growth rate means that national income would be 1.02 times the initial year’s income, while at year two it would be $(1.02) \times (1.02) = (1.02)^2 = 1.0404$ times the initial year’s income, and at year 3 it would be $(1.02)^3 = 1.0612$ times the initial year’s income. Hence for year 35, national income would be $(1.02)^{35} = 2.0$ times the initial year’s income.

¹⁰See Raghuram Rajan and Luigi Zingales, “Financial Dependence and Growth,” *American Economic Review* 88 (1998): 559–586; and Asli Demirguc-Kunt and Vojislav Maksimovic, “Law, Finance and Firm Growth,” *Journal of Finance* 53 (1998): 2107–2137.

¹¹Evidence on the link between financial development and growth in overall productivity (total factor productivity) can be found in Thorsten Beck et al., “Finance and the Sources of Growth,” *Journal of Financial Economics* 58 (2000); William Easterly and Ross Levine, “It’s Not Factor Accumulation: Stylized Facts and Growth Models,” *World Bank Economic Review* 15 (2001): 177–219; and Ross Levine, “Finance and Growth: Theory and Evidence,” in *Handbook of Economic Growth*, eds. Philippe Aghion and Steven Durlauf, (Amsterdam: Elsevier Science, 2005), 865–934.

¹²Patrick Honohan, “Financial Development, Growth and Poverty: How Close Are the Links?” World Bank Policy Working Paper 3203. (February 2004), 2.

¹³See Hongyi Li, “Explaining International and Intertemporal Variations in Income Inequality,” *Economic Journal* 108 (2001): 26–43; Thorsten Beck, Asli Demirguc-Kunt, and Ross Levine, “Finance, Inequality and Poverty: Cross-Country Evidence,” World Bank, mimeo. (April 2004); Patrick Honohan, “Financial Development, Growth and Poverty: How Close Are the Links?” World Bank Policy Working Paper 3203 (February 2004); and Rajeev H. Dehejia and Roberta Gatti, “Child Labor: The Role of Income Variability and Access to Credit in a Cross Section of Countries,” World Bank Policy Research Paper 2767 (January 2002).

Although this chapter shows that financial development is a powerful force to promote economic growth in the long run, it can have a dark side. We will explore this dark side in the next chapter and a chapter on this book's website where we will see that the financial development process can, at times, have negative short-run effects when it leads to financial crises that produce sharp economic contractions.¹⁴

Application

Is China a Counter-Example to the Importance of Financial Development to Economic Growth?

Although China appears to be on its way to becoming an economic powerhouse, its financial development remains in the early stages. The country's legal system is weak: financial contracts are difficult to enforce, while accounting standards are lax, making high-quality information about borrowers hard to find. Regulation of the banking system is still in its formative stages and the banking sector is dominated by large state-owned banks. Yet the Chinese economy has enjoyed one of the highest growth rates in the world over the last twenty years. How has China been able to grow so rapidly given its low level of financial development?

China's income per person is currently less than \$5,000, one-eighth of per capita income in the United States. With an extremely high saving rate, averaging around 40% over the past two decades, the country has nonetheless been able to rapidly build up its capital stock and shift a massive pool of underutilized labor from the subsistence-agriculture sector into higher-productivity activities that use capital. Even though the financial system has not allocated available savings to their most productive uses, the huge increase in capital, combined with the gains in productivity from moving labor out of low-productivity, subsistence agriculture, has been enough to produce high growth.

As China gets richer, however, this strategy is unlikely to continue to work. The former Soviet Union provides a graphic example of why this is so. In the 1950s and 1960s, the Soviet Union shared many characteristics with modern-day China: high growth fueled by a high saving rate, a massive buildup of capital, and a large pool of underutilized labor shifting from subsistence agriculture to manufacturing. During this high-growth phase, the Soviet Union was unable to develop the institutions needed for its financial system to allocate capital efficiently. Once the pool of subsistence laborers was used up, the Soviet Union's growth slowed dramatically, and it was unable to keep up with the Western economies. Today no one considers the Soviet Union an economic success story, and its inability to develop the institutions necessary for its financial system to sustain growth was an important reason for the demise of this superpower.

To move into the next stage of development, China will need to allocate its capital more efficiently, which requires improving its financial system. The Chinese leadership is well aware of this challenge: in 2003, the government announced plans to put state-owned banks on the path to privatization. In addition, the government is engaged in legal reform to strengthen financial contracts. For example, China has been developing new bankruptcy laws to enable lenders to take over the assets of firms that default on their loan contracts. Whether the Chinese government will succeed in developing a first-rate financial system, thereby enabling China to join the ranks of the developed countries, is a big question mark.



¹⁴The web chapter, "Financial Crises in Emerging Market Economies," can be found at the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin.

SUMMARY

1. The financial system is important to economic growth because it helps channel funds from lender-savers to borrower-spenders who have productive investment opportunities. In direct finance, borrower-spenders access funds directly from lender-savers via financial markets. However, most funds get to borrowers through indirect finance, in which a financial intermediary obtains funds from lender-savers and then uses them to make loans to borrowers or to buy securities in financial markets.
2. Achieving a well-functioning financial system requires solving asymmetric information (adverse selection and moral hazard) problems. Banks are particularly effective at solving asymmetric information problems because they can avoid the free-rider problem by making private loans, preventing others from taking advantage (free-riding) of the information they collect. Banks engage in screening, monitoring, and the use of collateral to overcome adverse selection and moral hazard problems.
3. The government can improve the functioning of the financial system with regulations to promote transparency and through prudential regulation and supervision to reduce excessive risk taking.
4. There is strong evidence that financial development (also called financial deepening) stimulates economic growth.

KEY TERMS

adverse selection, p. 349	financial deepening, p. 357	moral hazard, p. 349
asymmetric information, p. 349	financial instruments, p. 347	mutual funds, p. 348
balance sheet, p. 348	financial intermediary, p. 347	net worth, p. 348
banks, p. 348	financial intermediation, p. 347	pension funds, p. 348
bonds, p. 347	free-rider problem, p. 350	prudential regulation, p. 357
capital, p. 348	hedge funds, p. 348	prudential supervision, p. 357
collateral, p. 353	insurance companies, p. 348	restrictive covenants, p. 352
exchanges, p. 347	investment banks, p. 347	screening, p. 352
equities, p. 347	liabilities, p. 347	securities, p. 347
finance companies, p. 348	microcredit, p. 347	

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

The Role of the Financial System

1. What role does the financial system play in promoting economic growth?
2. How does direct finance differ from indirect finance? Which form of finance is most important?

Information Challenges and the Financial System

3. What is asymmetric information? What two asymmetric information problems hinder the operation of the financial system?
4. Why are financial intermediaries willing to engage in information collection activities when investors in financial instruments may be unwilling to do so?
5. What specific procedures do financial intermediaries use to reduce asymmetric information problems in lending?
6. Why are asymmetric information problems particularly challenging in developing countries? What does this imply about the importance of financial intermediation and the role of banks in these countries?

Government Regulation and Supervision of the Financial Sector

7. What steps can the government take to reduce asymmetric information problems and help the financial system function more smoothly and efficiently?
8. How can asymmetric information problems lead to a bank panic?
9. Why do governments provide safety nets for bank depositors and what are their consequences?

Financial Development and Economic Growth: The Evidence

10. What are the benefits of financial deepening?

PROBLEMS

All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

The Role of the Financial System

1. Suppose a firm has a great idea: overnight shipping. This idea can decrease costs for many businesses and therefore result in a more efficient economy. If the entrepreneurs who create this concept cannot get funds to put their idea to work, what do you think the consequences would be for the economy?
2. Suppose a given country encourages its citizens to save 20% of their income and allocates these funds through government-owned financial intermediaries. As a result, many government officials get mortgages to buy expensive houses (and often default on their payments). Do you think funds were allocated to their most productive use? Comment on the efficiency of such a financial system.

Information Challenges and the Financial System

3. Identify the type of asymmetric information problem in each of the following:
 - a) A loan office requests information about your work and credit history before approving your car loan application.
 - b) The same loan office explains that there will be a lien placed on your car title up until you pay off the total amount of the loan.
 - c) The owner of a football team signs a contract with the new football star. The contract clearly specifies that the player may not skydive.
4. Suppose you go to a bank intending to buy a certificate of deposit with your savings. Explain why you would not offer a loan to the next individual that applies for a car loan at your local bank at a higher interest rate than the bank pays on certificate of deposits (but lower than the rate the bank charges to car loans).
5. In December 2001 Argentina announced it would not honor its sovereign (government issued) debt. Many investors were left holding Argentinean bonds now priced at a fraction of their recent value. A few years later Argentina announced it would pay back 25% of the face value of its debt. Comment on the effects of information asymmetries on government bonds markets. Do you think investors are currently willing to buy bonds issued by the government of Argentina?

6. Gustavo is a young doctor who lives in a country with a relatively inefficient legal system and (probably as a consequence of it) an inefficient financial system. When Gustavo applied for a mortgage, he found that banks (he visited many) usually required collateral

for up to 300% of the amount of the loan. Explain why banks might require that much property as collateral in such a financial system. Comment on the consequences of such a system for economic growth.

Government Regulation and Supervision of the Financial Sector

7. The *Wall Street Journal* printed the following on April 14, 2010: “Regulators say they are trying to improve transparency and reduce risk in the derivatives market” with respect to some senators’ efforts to modify current regulations. How do you think increased transparency will affect financial intermediaries that trade derivatives? How do you think it will affect the overall performance of the financial system?

8. Many policy makers in developing countries have proposed to implement systems of deposit insurance like the one that exists in the United States. Explain why this might create more problems than solutions in the financial system of developing countries.

Financial Development and Economic Growth: The Evidence

9. One of the main characteristics of financial deepening is that more individuals participate in the financial system: more people open checking and saving accounts, and more firms rely on financial intermediaries as a source of funds. Comment on the effect of financial deepening on a central bank’s ability to conduct monetary policy.

10. Microcredit programs (i.e., very small loans to the extreme poor) usually target a group of women and assign funds to them under the condition that decisions about the use of funds are made by all women in the group. How do you think this procedure will solve asymmetric information problems?



myeconlab

MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.

Online appendix Free Trade, Financial Globalization, and Growth is available at the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin





15

Financial Crises and the Economy

Preview

Recall from Chapter 1 that financial crises are major disruptions in financial markets characterized by sharp declines in asset prices and firm failures. Beginning in August 2007, defaults in the mortgage market by subprime borrowers (borrowers with weak credit records) sent a shudder through the financial markets, leading to the worst U.S. financial crisis since the Great Depression. Alan Greenspan, former chairman of the Fed, described the 2007–2009 financial crisis as a “once-in-a-century credit tsunami.” Wall Street firms and commercial banks suffered losses amounting to hundreds of billions of dollars. Households and businesses found they had to pay higher rates on their borrowings, and that it was much harder to obtain credit. World stock markets crashed, with U.S. shares falling by as much as half from their peak in October 2007. Many financial firms, including commercial banks, investment banks, and insurance companies, went belly up. The recession that began in December 2007 worsened by the fall of 2008, leading to steep declines in economic activity.

Financial crises are a major source of economic fluctuations. Indeed, all deep recessions and depressions are linked to major financial crises. Why did the 2007–2009 financial crisis occur? Why have financial crises been so prevalent throughout U.S. and world history, and why are they almost always followed by severe contractions in economic activity?

In this chapter we will use our understanding of the financial system and information issues from Chapter 14 as a backdrop for examining the dynamics of financial crises in advanced countries like the United States. We apply the analysis to the two worst U.S. financial crises in the last one hundred years—the Great Depression of 1930–1933 and the 2007–2009 financial crisis—to explain how these crises have evolved and how they affected the economy.¹

¹In a Web chapter available at the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin, we extend the analysis to *emerging market economies*, economies in an early stage of market development that have recently opened up to the flow of goods, services, and capital from the rest of the world.

Asymmetric Information and Financial Crises

We established in Chapter 14 that a fully functioning financial system is critical to a robust economy. The financial system performs the essential function of channeling funds to individuals or businesses with productive investment opportunities. If capital goes to the wrong uses or does not flow at all, the economy will operate inefficiently or go into an economic downturn.

Asymmetric Information Problems

In Chapter 14, we saw how the smooth functioning of financial markets is impeded when one party in a financial transaction does not know enough about the other party or its investments to make accurate decisions. Recall that this lack of information, known as *asymmetric information*, creates two basic types of problems in the financial system:

1. *Adverse selection*, in which lenders must select from a pool of bad (*adverse*) credit risks, because the most undesirable potential borrowers are the most active in seeking out a loan
2. *Moral hazard*, when there is the risk (*hazard*) that the borrower has better information than the lender about whether it will engage in activities that are undesirable (*immoral*) from the point of view of the lender

Because the adverse selection and moral hazard problems make it less likely that a borrower will pay back a loan, lenders may decide they would rather not make a loan, even though there are good credit risks in the marketplace.

Agency Theory and Financial Crises

Academic finance literature calls the analysis of how asymmetric information problems can generate adverse selection and moral hazard problems **agency theory**. Agency theory provides the basis for our definition of a financial crisis: a financial crisis occurs when an increase in asymmetric information from a disruption in the financial system prevents it from channeling funds efficiently from lender-savers to borrower-spenders, the households and firms with productive investment opportunities.

Dynamics of Financial Crises

As earth-shaking and headline-grabbing as the most recent financial crisis was, it was only one of a number of financial crises that have hit industrialized countries like the United States over the years. These experiences have helped economists uncover insights into present-day economic turmoil.

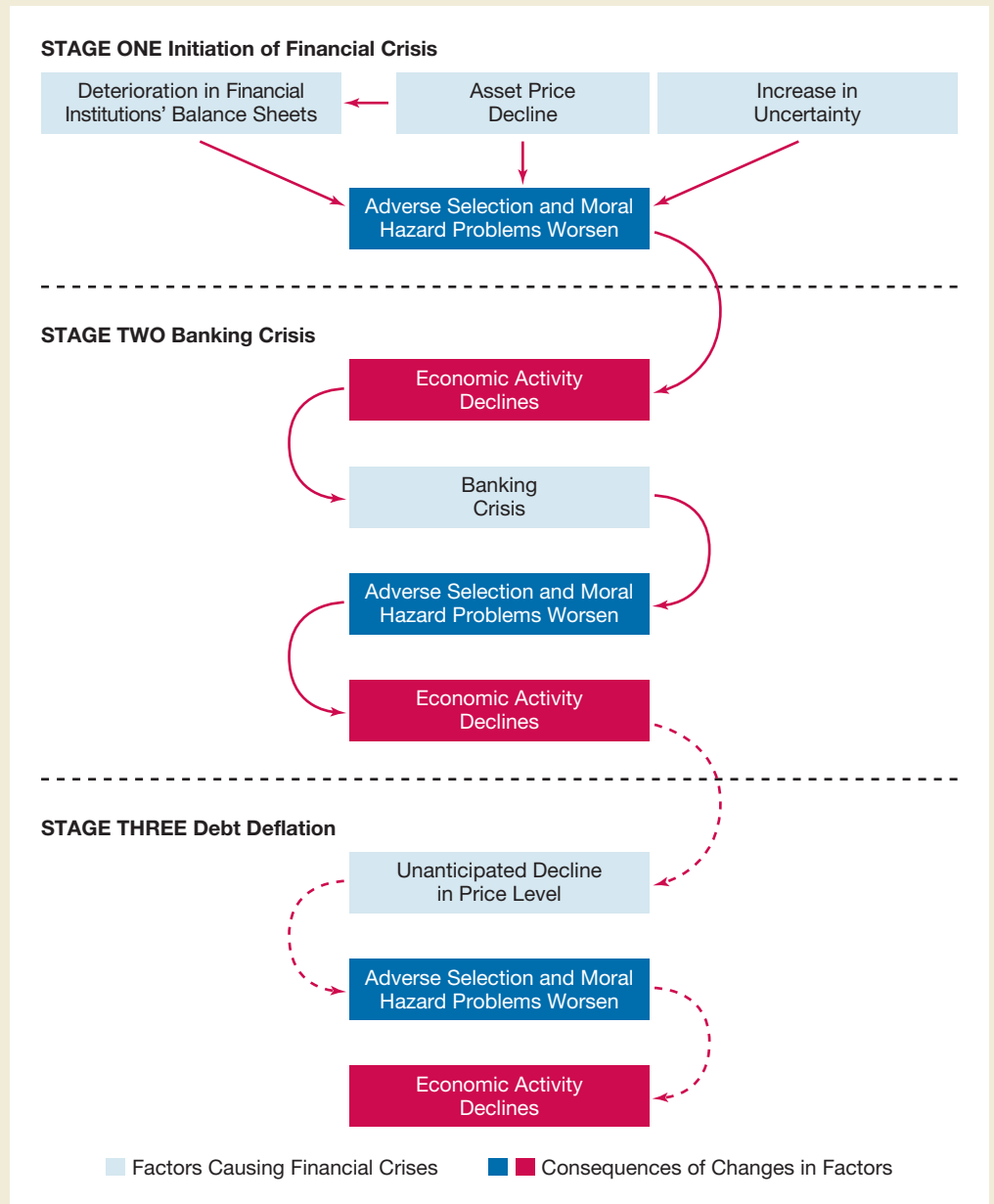
Financial crises in advanced economies have progressed in two and sometimes three stages. To understand how these crises have unfolded, refer to Figure 15.1, which traces the stages and sequence of financial crises in industrialized economies.

Stage One: Initiation of Financial Crisis

Financial crises can begin in several ways: mismanagement of financial liberalization/innovation, asset-price booms and busts, or a general increase in uncertainty caused by failures of major financial institutions.

FIGURE 15.1**Sequence of Events in Financial Crises in Advanced Economies**

The solid arrows trace the sequence of events during a typical financial crisis; the dotted arrows show the additional set of events that occur if the crisis develops into a debt deflation. The sections separated by the dashed horizontal lines, show the different stages of a financial crisis.



MISMANAGEMENT OF FINANCIAL INNOVATION/LIBERALIZATION. The seeds of a financial crisis are often sown when an economy introduces new types of loans or other financial products, known as **financial innovation**, or when countries engage in **financial liberalization**, the elimination of restrictions on financial markets and institutions. (Recall from Chapter 14 that financial institutions are of two types: financial intermediaries, such as banks, that act as intermediaries between savers and borrowers, and other financial institutions that facilitate transactions in financial markets like investment banks.) In the long run, financial liberalization promotes financial development and encourages a well-run financial system that allocates capital efficiently.

However, financial liberalization has a dark side: in the short run, it can prompt financial institutions to go on a lending spree, called a **credit boom**. Unfortunately, lenders may not have the expertise, or the incentives, to manage risk appropriately in these new lines of business. Even with proper management, credit booms eventually outstrip the ability of institutions—and government regulators—to screen and monitor credit risks, leading to overly risky lending.

Government safety nets such as deposit insurance weaken market discipline and increase the moral hazard incentive for banks to take on greater risk than they otherwise would. Since lender-savers know that government-guaranteed insurance protects them from losses, they will supply even undisciplined banks with funds. Banks and other financial institutions can make risky, high-interest loans to borrower-spenders. They will walk away with nice profits if the loans are repaid, and rely on government deposit insurance, funded by taxpayers, if borrower-spenders default. Without proper monitoring, risk-taking grows unchecked.

Eventually, losses on loans begin to mount and the value of the loans (on the asset side of the balance sheet) falls relative to liabilities, thereby driving down the net worth (capital) of banks and other financial institutions. With less capital, these financial institutions cut back on their lending to borrower-spenders, a process called **deleveraging**. Furthermore, with less capital, banks and other financial institutions become riskier, causing lender-savers and other potential lenders to these institutions to pull out their funds. Fewer funds mean fewer loans to fund productive investments and a credit freeze: the lending boom turns into a lending crash.

When financial institutions stop collecting information and making loans, they limit the financial system's ability to address the asymmetric information problems of adverse selection and moral hazard (as shown in the arrow pointing from the first factor, "Deterioration in Financial Institutions' Balance Sheets," in the top row of Figure 15.1). As loans become scarce, borrower-spenders are no longer able to fund their productive investment opportunities: they decrease their spending. Thus autonomous consumption expenditure and investment decline so that aggregate demand, $C + I + G + NX$, falls causing economic activity to contract.

ASSET-PRICE BOOM AND BUST. Prices of assets such as equity shares and real estate can be driven by investor psychology (dubbed "irrational exuberance" by Alan Greenspan when he was chairman of the Federal Reserve) well above their **fundamental economic values**, that is, their values based on realistic expectations of the assets' future income streams. The rise of asset prices above their fundamental economic values is an **asset-price bubble**. Examples of asset-price bubbles are the tech stock market bubble of the late 1990s and the recent housing price bubble that we will discuss later in this chapter. Asset-price bubbles are often also driven by credit booms, in which the large increase in credit is used to fund purchases of assets, thereby driving up their price.

When the bubble bursts and asset prices realign with fundamental economic values, stock and real estate prices tumble, companies see their net worth (the difference between their assets and their liabilities) decline, and the value of collateral they can pledge drops. Now these companies have less at stake because they have less "skin in the game" and so they are more likely to make risky investments because they have less to lose, the problem of moral hazard. As a result, financial institutions tighten lending standards for borrower-spenders and lending contracts (as shown by the downward arrow pointing from the second factor, "Asset Price Decline," in the top row of Figure 15.1).

The asset-price bust also causes a decline in the value of financial institutions' assets, thereby causing a decline in their net worth and hence a deterioration in their balance sheets (shown by the arrow from the second factor to the first factor in the top row of Figure 15.1), which causes them to deleverage, steepening the decline in aggregate demand and economic activity.

INCREASE IN UNCERTAINTY. U.S. financial crises have usually begun in periods of high uncertainty, such as just after the start of a recession, a crash in the stock market, or the failure of a major financial institution. Crises began after the failure of Ohio Life Insurance and Trust Company in 1857; the Jay Cooke and Company in 1873; Grant and Ward in 1884; the Knickerbocker Trust Company in 1907; the Bank of the United States in 1930; and Bear Stearns, Lehman Brothers, and AIG in 2008. With information hard to come by in a period of high uncertainty, adverse selection and moral hazard problems increase, reducing lending and economic activity (as shown by the arrow pointing from the last factor, "Increase in Uncertainty," in the top row of Figure 15.1).

Stage Two: Banking Crisis

Deteriorating balance sheets and tougher business conditions lead some financial institutions into insolvency, when net worth becomes negative. Unable to pay off depositors or other creditors, some banks go out of business. If severe enough, these factors can lead to a **bank panic**, in which multiple banks fail simultaneously.

To understand why bank panics occur, consider the following situation. Suppose that as a result of an adverse shock to the economy, 5% of the banks have such large losses on their loans that they become insolvent. Because of asymmetric information, lender-savers are unable to tell whether their bank is a good bank or one of the 5% that are insolvent. Depositors (lender-savers) at bad *and* good banks recognize that they may not get back 100 cents on the dollar for their deposits (either because there is no deposit insurance or limited amounts of it) and will want to withdraw them. Banks operate on a first-come-first-served basis, so depositors have a very strong incentive to show up at the bank first (run to the bank): if they are later in line, the bank may not have enough funds left to pay them anything. Uncertainty about the health of the banking system in general can lead to runs on banks, both good and bad, which will force banks to sell off assets quickly to raise the necessary funds. These **fire sales** of assets may cause their prices to decline so much that the bank becomes insolvent, even if the resulting contagion can then lead to multiple bank failures and a full-fledged bank panic.

With fewer banks operating, information about the creditworthiness of borrower-spenders disappears. Increasingly severe adverse selection and moral hazard problems in financial markets deepen the financial crisis, causing declines in asset prices and the failure of firms throughout the economy who lack funds for productive investment opportunities. Figure 15.1 represents this progression in the Stage Two portion. Bank panics were a feature of all U.S. financial crises during the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, occurring every twenty years or so until World War II—1819, 1837, 1857, 1873, 1884, 1893, 1907, and 1930–1933.²

Eventually, public and private authorities shut down insolvent firms and sell them off or liquidate them. Uncertainty in financial markets declines, the stock market recovers,

²For a discussion of U.S. banking and financial crises in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, see Frederic S. Mishkin, "Asymmetric Information and Financial Crises: A Historical Perspective," in *Financial Markets and Financial Crises*, ed. R. Glenn Hubbard (University of Chicago Press: Chicago, 1991), 69–108.

and balance sheets improve. Adverse selection and moral hazard problems diminish and the financial crisis subsides. With the financial markets able to operate well again, the stage is set for an economic recovery.

Stage Three: Debt Deflation

If, however, the economic downturn leads to a sharp decline in the price level, the recovery process can be short-circuited. In stage three in Figure 15.1, **debt deflation** occurs when a substantial unanticipated decline in the price level sets in, leading to a further deterioration in firms' net worth because of the increased burden of indebtedness.

In economies with moderate inflation, which characterizes most advanced countries, many debt contracts with fixed interest rates are typically of fairly long maturity, ten years or more. Because debt payments are contractually fixed in nominal terms, an unanticipated decline in the price level raises the value of borrowing firms' liabilities in real terms (increases the burden of the debt) but does not raise the real value of borrowing firms' assets. The borrowing firm's net worth in real terms (the difference between assets and liabilities in real terms) thus declines.

To better understand how this decline in net worth occurs, consider what happens if a firm in 2012 has assets of \$100 million (in 2012 dollars) and \$90 million of long-term liabilities, so that it has \$10 million in net worth. If the price level falls by 10% in 2013, the real value of the liabilities would rise to \$99 million in 2012 dollars, while the real value of the assets would remain unchanged at \$100 million. The result would be that real net worth in 2012 dollars would fall from \$10 million to \$1 million (\$100 million minus \$99 million).

The substantial decline in real net worth of borrowers from a sharp drop in the price level causes an increase in adverse selection and moral hazard problems facing lenders. Lending and economic activity decline for a long time. The most significant financial crisis that displayed debt deflation was the Great Depression, the worst economic contraction in U.S. history.

Application

The Mother of All Financial Crises: The Great Depression

With our framework for understanding financial crises in place, we are prepared to analyze how a financial crisis unfolded during the Great Depression and how it led to the worst economic downturn in U.S. history.

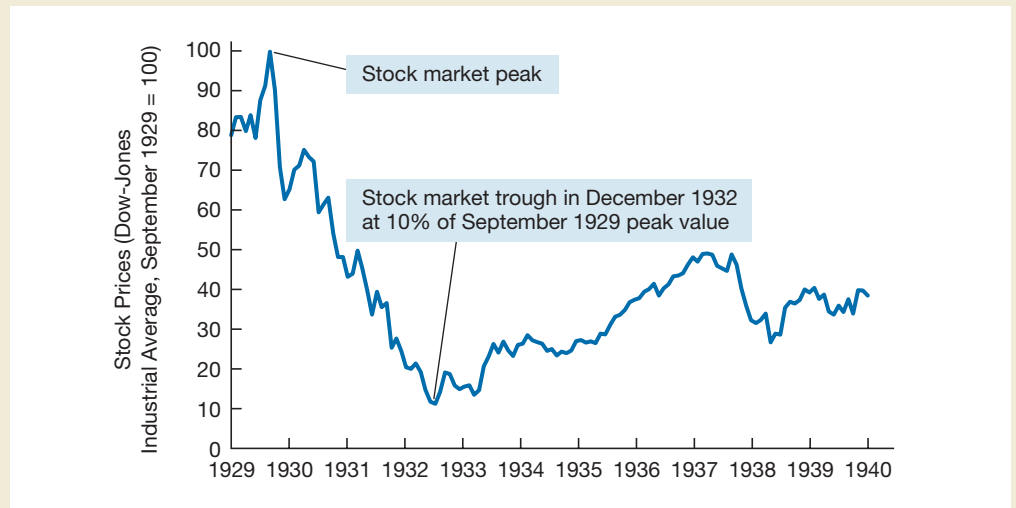
Stock Market Crash

In 1928 and 1929, prices doubled in the U.S. stock market. Federal Reserve officials viewed the stock market boom as excessive speculation. To curb it, they pursued an autonomous tightening of monetary policy to raise interest rates and decrease aggregate demand. The Fed got more than it bargained for when the stock market crashed in October 1929, falling by 40% by the end of 1929, as shown in Figure 15.2.

Our aggregate demand and supply analysis shows how the autonomous tightening of monetary policy and the stock market crash pushed the economy into a recession. Higher real interest rates from the Fed action caused investment to decline, while lower stock prices reduced household wealth, so that consumer spending fell. As a result of the declines in both these components of aggregate demand, the aggregate demand curve shifted to the left

FIGURE 15.2**Stock Price Data During the Great Depression Period**

Stock prices crashed in 1929, falling by 40% by the end of 1929, and then continued to fall to only 10% of their peak value by 1932.



Source: Dow-Jones Industrial Average (DJIA). Global Financial Data. www.globalfinancialdata.com/index_tabs.php?action=detailedinfo&id=1165

from AD_1 to AD_2 in Figure 15.3. The aggregate demand and supply analysis then indicates that the economy moved from point 1 to point 2, with both output and inflation declining, and unemployment rising.

Bank Panics

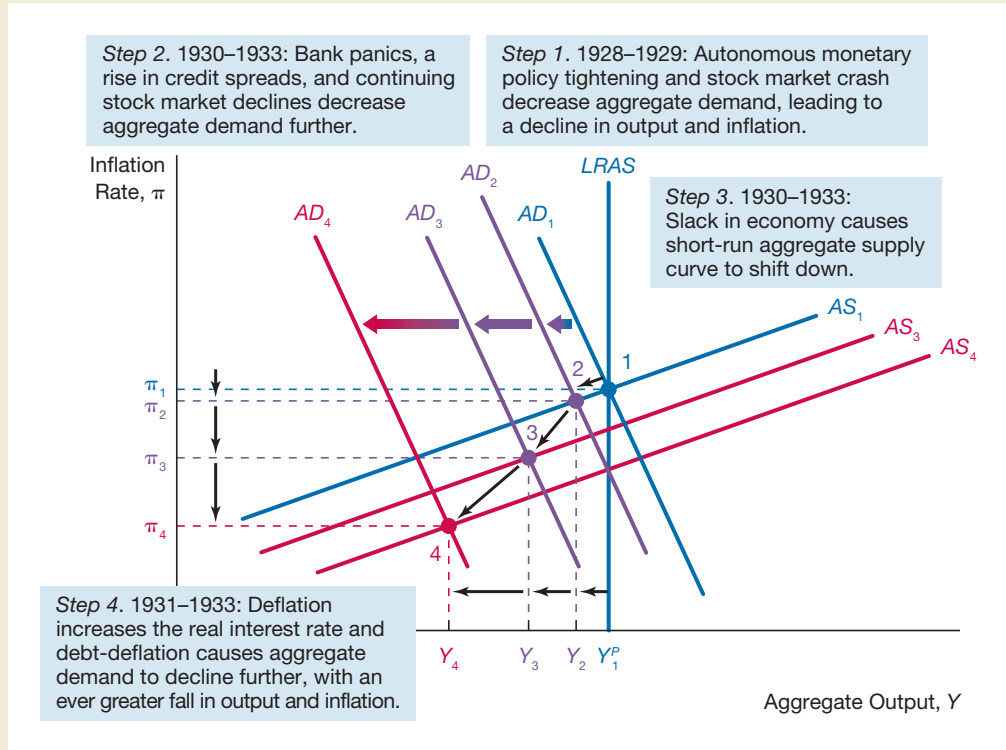
By the middle of 1930, stocks recovered almost half of their losses and credit market conditions stabilized. What might have been a normal recession turned into something far worse, however, when severe droughts in the Midwest led to a sharp decline in agricultural production, with the result that farmers could not pay back their bank loans. The resulting defaults on farm mortgages led to large loan losses on bank balance sheets in agricultural regions. The weakness of the economy and the banks in agricultural regions in particular prompted substantial withdrawals from banks, building to a full-fledged panic in November and December 1930 with the stock market falling sharply. For more than two years, the Fed sat idly by through one bank panic after another, the most severe spate of panics in U.S. history. After what would be the era's final panic in March 1933, President Franklin Delano Roosevelt declared a bank holiday, a temporary closing of all banks. "The only thing we have to fear is fear itself," Roosevelt told the nation. The damage was done, however, and more than one-third of the U.S. commercial banks had failed.

Adverse Selection and Moral Hazard Worsen, Causing Aggregate Demand to Decline

Stock prices kept falling. By mid-1932, stocks had declined to 10% of their value at the 1929 peak, as shown in Figure 15.2—and the increase in uncertainty from the unsettled business conditions created by the economic contraction worsened adverse selection and moral hazard problems in financial markets. With a greatly reduced number of financial intermediaries still in business, adverse selection and moral hazard problems intensified even further. Financial markets struggled to channel funds to borrower-spenders with productive investment opportunities.

FIGURE 15.3
Aggregate Demand and Supply Analysis of the U.S. Great Depression

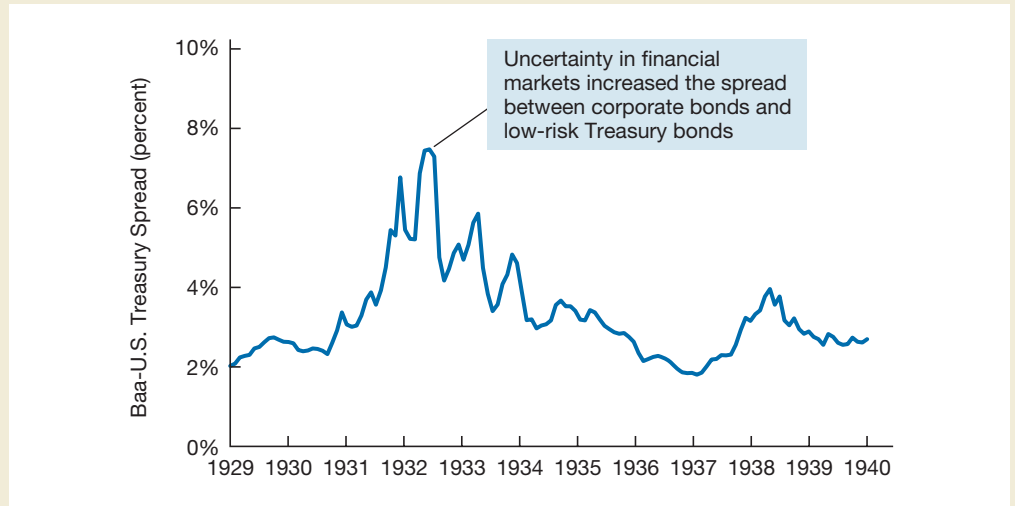
Autonomous monetary tightening and the stock market crash shifted the aggregate demand curve from AD_1 to AD_2 , moving the economy from point 1 to point 2, with output and inflation falling. The bank panics, rise of credit spreads and further decline of the stock market shifted the aggregate demand curve from AD_2 to AD_3 . The slack in the economy shifted the short-run aggregate supply curve from AS_1 to AS_3 . The economy moved from point 2 to point 3, with an even greater fall in output and inflation. The fall in inflation, which turned into a deflation, then led to the debt deflation phenomenon and a rise in real interest rates that shifted the aggregate demand curve even further to the left from AD_3 to AD_4 . As a result, the economy moved from point 3 to point 4, leading to a prolonged economic contraction.



Financial institutions began charging businesses much higher interest rates to protect themselves from credit losses. The resulting rise in the *credit spread*—the difference between the interest rate on loans to households and businesses and the interest rate on completely safe assets that are sure to be paid back, such as U.S. Treasury securities—is shown in Figure 15.4, which displays the difference between interest rates on corporate bonds with a Baa (medium-quality) credit rating and similar-maturity Treasury bonds. The rise in credit spreads therefore means that even with the real interest rate set by monetary policy unchanged, which is for safe assets, the real interest rate paid by households and business rises. A rise in the cost of financing spending for households and business at a given real interest rate set by the monetary policy authorities would mean that autonomous consumption expenditure and investment would fall. As shown in Chapter 9, this would result in the *IS* curve and the *AD* curve shifting inward to the left.

FIGURE 15.4**Credit Spreads During the Great Depression**

Credit spreads (the difference between rates on Baa corporate bonds and U.S. Treasury bonds) rose sharply during the Great Depression.



Source: FRED, Federal Reserve Economic Data, Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis; <http://research.stlouisfed.org/fred2/categories/22>; accessed September 30, 2010.

As our analysis predicts, the amount of outstanding commercial loans fell by half from 1929 to 1933, and investment spending collapsed, declining by 90% from its 1929 level. The resulting drop in aggregate demand shifted the aggregate demand curve further to the left from AD_2 to AD_3 in Figure 15.3, while the slack in the economy (aggregate output below potential output) caused the short-run aggregate supply curve to shift down and to the right to AS_3 .³ The economy thus moved from point 2 to point 3, with aggregate output and inflation falling even further. Indeed, the contraction of aggregate demand caused real GDP to fall at such a rapid rate that the price level now began to decline at a -10% annual rate.

Real Interest Rates Rise

Even though nominal interest rates fell to near zero, the ongoing deflation meant that real interest rates rose to very high levels from 1931 to 1933. The higher real interest rates then increased asymmetric information problems for two reasons. First, good credit risks were less likely to seek loans at these higher interest rates, thereby increasing adverse selection. Second, the higher real interest rates led to a drop in cash flow, forcing firms to borrow from external sources where adverse selection and moral hazard problems were more prevalent. The increase in asymmetric information problems, along with the direct effect of higher real interest rates on investment decisions, led to a further contraction in investment spending, providing additional pressure for the aggregate demand curve to shift leftward to AD_4 in Figure 15.3.

Debt Deflation

The ongoing deflation that started in 1930 eventually led to a 25% decline in the price level. This deflation short-circuited the normal recovery process that occurs in most recessions through the self-correcting mechanism we discussed in Chapter 12. The huge decline in prices triggered a debt deflation in which net worth fell because of the increased burden of indebtedness borne by firms. The decline in net worth and the resulting increase in adverse selection and moral hazard problems in the credit markets is another reason for the leftward

³See Chapter 22 for a more detailed analysis of why the aggregate demand curve shifts to the left as a result of a financial crisis and how financial crises impact economic activity and inflation.

shift of the aggregate demand curve in Figure 15.3 from AD_3 to AD_4 . With the slack in the economy, the short-run aggregate supply curve shifted further downward and to the right to AS_4 , moving the economy from point 3 to point 4. A prolonged economic contraction resulted in which unemployment rose to 25% of the labor force. The financial crisis in the Great Depression was the worst ever experienced in the United States.⁴

Recovery Begins

With the inauguration of President Franklin Delano Roosevelt, the financial markets finally started to recover. A bull market in stocks got underway, as shown in Figure 15.2, and credit spreads began to fall. With these developments, aggregate demand began to increase and aggregate output and inflation began to rise, while unemployment fell.

International Dimensions

Although the Great Depression started in the United States, it was not just a U.S. phenomenon. Bank panics in the United States also spread to the rest of the world, and the contraction of the U.S. economy sharply decreased the demand for foreign goods. Aggregate demand contracted in economies throughout the world, leading other countries to face a similar scenario to that depicted in Figure 15.3. The worldwide depression caused great hardship, with millions upon millions of people out of work, and the resulting discontent led to the rise of fascism and World War II. The consequences of the Great Depression financial crisis were disastrous.



Application

The 2007–2009 Financial Crisis

Most economists thought that financial crises of the type experienced during the Great Depression were a thing of the past for the United States. Unfortunately, the financial crisis that engulfed the world in 2007–2009 proved them wrong.

Causes of the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis

We begin our look at the 2007–2009 financial crisis by examining three central factors: financial innovation in mortgage markets, agency problems in mortgage markets, and the role of asymmetric information in the credit rating process.

FINANCIAL INNOVATION IN THE MORTGAGE MARKETS. Before 2000, only the most credit-worthy (prime) borrowers could obtain residential mortgages. Advances in computer technology and new statistical techniques, known as data mining, however, led to enhanced, quantitative evaluation of the credit risk for a new class of risky residential mortgages. Households with credit records could now be assigned a numerical credit score, known as a FICO score (named after the Fair Isaac Corporation that developed it), that would predict how likely they would be to default on their loan payments. In addition, by lowering transactions costs, computer technology enabled the bundling together of smaller loans (like mortgages)

⁴For a discussion of the role of asymmetric information problems in the Great Depression period, see Ben Bernanke, “Nonmonetary Effects of the Financial Crisis in the Propagation of the Great Depression,” *American Economic Review* 73 (1983): 257–276; and Charles Calomiris, “Financial Factors and the Great Depression,” *Journal of Economic Perspectives* (Spring 1993): 61–85.

into standard debt securities, a process known as **securitization**. These factors made it possible for banks to offer **subprime mortgages** to borrowers with less-than-stellar credit records.

The ability to cheaply quantify the default risk of the underlying high-risk mortgages and bundle them in a standardized debt security called **mortgage-backed securities** provided a new source of financing for these mortgages. Financial innovation didn't stop there. **Financial engineering**, the development of new, sophisticated financial instruments, led to **structured credit products** that pay out income streams from a collection of underlying assets, designed to have particular risk characteristics that appeal to investors with differing preferences. The most notorious of these products were collateralized debt obligations (CDOs), which are described in the accompanying box.

AGENCY PROBLEMS IN THE MORTGAGE MARKETS. The mortgage brokers that originated the loans often did not make a strong effort to evaluate whether the borrower could pay off the loan, since they would quickly sell (distribute) the loans to investors in the form of mortgage-backed securities. This **originate-to-distribute** business model was exposed to **principal-agent problems** (also referred to more simply as **agency problems**), in which the mortgage brokers acted as agents for investors (the principals) but did not have the investors' best interests at heart. Once the mortgage broker earns his or her fee, why should the broker care if the borrower makes good on his or her payment? The more volume the broker originates, the more he or she makes.

Not surprisingly, adverse selection became a major problem. Risk-loving investors lined up to obtain loans to acquire houses that would be very profitable if housing prices went up, knowing they could "walk away" if housing prices went down. The principal-agent problem also created incentives for mortgage brokers to encourage households to take on mortgages they could not afford, or to commit fraud by falsifying information on a borrower's mortgage applications in order to qualify them for their mortgages. Compounding this problem was lax regulation of originators, who were not required to disclose information to borrowers that would have helped them assess whether they could afford the loans.

The agency problems went even deeper. Commercial and investment banks, who were earning large fees by underwriting mortgage-backed securities and structured credit products like CDOs, also had weak incentives to make sure that the ultimate holders of the securities would be paid off. Large fees from writing financial insurance contracts called **credit default swaps**, which provide payments to holders of bonds if they default, also drove units of insurance companies like AIG to write hundreds of billions of dollars' worth of these risky contracts.

ASYMMETRIC INFORMATION AND CREDIT RATING AGENCIES. Credit rating agencies, who rate the quality of debt securities in terms of the probability of default, were another contributor to asymmetric information in financial markets. The rating agencies advised clients on how to structure complex financial instruments, like CDOs, at the same time they were rating these identical products. The rating agencies were thus subject to conflicts of interest because the large fees they earned from advising clients on how to structure products that they were rating meant that they did not have sufficient incentives to make sure their ratings were accurate. The result was wildly inflated ratings that enabled the sale of complex financial products that were far riskier than investors recognized.

Effects of the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis

Consumers and businesses alike suffered as a result of the 2007–2009 financial crisis. The impact of the crisis was most evident in five key areas: the U.S. residential housing market, financial institutions' balance sheets, the shadow banking system, global financial markets, and the headline-grabbing failures of major firms in the financial industry.



Collateralized Debt Obligations (CDOs)

The creation of a collateralized debt obligation involves a corporate entity called a *special purpose vehicle (SPV)* that buys a collection of assets such as corporate bonds and loans, commercial real estate bonds, and mortgage-backed securities. The SPV then separates the payment streams (cash flows) from these assets into a number of buckets that are referred to as tranches. The highest rated tranches, referred to as super senior tranches are the ones that are paid off first and so have the least risk. The super senior CDO is a bond that pays out these cash flows to investors and because it has the least risk, it also has the lowest interest rate. The next bucket of cash flows, known as the senior tranche, is paid out next and so the senior CDO has a little more risk and pays a higher interest rate. The next tranche of payment streams, the mezzanine tranche of the CDO, is paid out after the super senior and senior tranches and so it bears more risk and has an even higher interest rate. The lowest tranche of the CDO is the equity tranche and this is the first set of cash flows that are not paid out if the underlying assets go into

default and stop making payments. This tranche has the highest risk and is often not traded.

If all of this sounds complicated, it is. There were even CDO²s and CDO³s that sliced and diced risk even further, paying out the cash flows from CDOs to CDO²s and from CDO²s to CDO³s. Although financial engineering has the potential benefit to create products and services that match investors' risk appetites, it too has a dark side. The structured products like CDOs, CDO²s, and CDO³s can get so complicated that it can be hard to value the cash flows of the underlying assets for a security or to determine who actually owns these assets. Indeed, at a speech given in October 2007, Ben Bernanke, the chairman of the Federal Reserve, joked that he "would like to know what those damn things are worth." In other words, the increased complexity of structured products can actually reduce the amount of information in financial markets, thereby worsening asymmetric information in the financial system and increasing the severity of adverse selection and moral hazard problems.

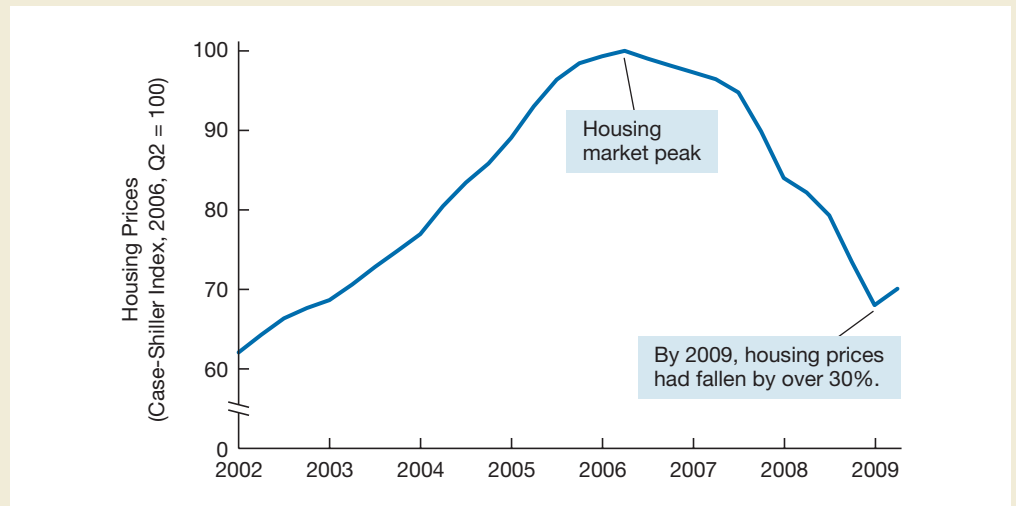
Residential Housing Prices: Boom and Bust

Aided by liquidity from huge cash inflows into the United States from countries like China and India, and low interest rates on residential mortgages, the subprime mortgage market took off after the recession ended in 2001. By 2007, it had become over a trillion-dollar market. The development of the subprime mortgage market was lauded by economists and politicians alike because it led to a "democratization of credit" and helped raise U.S. homeownership rates to the highest levels in history. The asset-price boom in housing (see Figure 15.5), which took off after the 2000–2001 recession was over, also helped stimulate the growth of the subprime mortgage market. High housing prices meant that subprime borrowers could refinance their houses with even larger loans when their homes appreciated in value. With housing prices rising, subprime borrowers were also unlikely to default because they could always sell their house to pay off the loan, making investors happy because the securities backed by cash flows from subprime mortgages had high returns. The growth of the subprime mortgage market, in turn, increased the demand for houses and so fueled the boom in housing prices, resulting in a housing price bubble.

As housing prices rose and profitability for mortgage originators and lenders was high, the underwriting standards for subprime mortgages fell to lower and lower standards. High-risk borrowers were able to obtain mortgages, and the amount of the mortgage relative to the value of the house, the loan-to-value ratio (LTV), rose. Borrowers were often able

FIGURE 15.5**Housing Prices and the Financial Crisis of 2007–2009**

Housing prices boomed from 2002 to 2006, fueling the market for subprime mortgages and forming an asset-price bubble. Housing prices began declining in 2006, falling by more than 30% subsequently, which led to defaults by subprime mortgage holders.



Source: Case-Shiller U.S. National Composite House Price Index. www.macromarkets.com/csi_housing/index.asp

to get piggyback, second, and third mortgages on top of their original 80% loan-to-value mortgage, so that they had to put almost no money down. When asset prices rise too far out of line with fundamentals—in the case of housing, how much housing costs if purchased relative to the cost of renting it, or the cost of houses relative to households' median income—they must come down. Eventually the housing price bubble burst. With housing prices falling after their peak in 2006 (see Figure 15.5), the rot in the financial system began to be revealed. The decline in housing prices led to many subprime borrowers finding that their mortgages were “underwater”—that is, the value of the house fell below the amount of the mortgage. When this happened, struggling homeowners had tremendous incentives to walk away from their homes and just send the keys back to the lender. Defaults on mortgages shot up sharply, eventually leading to millions of mortgages in foreclosure.



Policy and Practice



Was the Fed to Blame for the Housing Price Bubble?

Some economists—most prominently, John Taylor of Stanford University—have argued that the low rate interest policies of the Federal Reserve in the 2003–2006 period caused the housing price bubble.⁵ During this period, the Federal Reserve relied on autonomous easing of monetary policy to set the federal funds rate well below the level that the Taylor rule, discussed in Chapter 13, suggested was appropriate. Taylor argues that the low federal funds rate led to low mortgage rates that stimulated housing demand and encouraged the issuance of subprime mortgages, both of which led to rising housing prices and a bubble.

⁵John Taylor, “Housing and Monetary Policy,” in Federal Reserve Bank of Kansas City, *Housing, Housing Finance and Monetary Policy* (Kansas City: Federal Reserve Bank of Kansas City, 2007), 463–476.

In a speech given in January 2010, Federal Reserve Chairman Ben Bernanke countered this argument.⁶ He concluded that monetary policy was not to blame for the housing price bubble. First, he said, it is not at all clear that the federal funds rate was below what the Taylor rule suggested would be appropriate. Rates only seemed low when current values, not forecasts, were used in the output and inflation calculations for the Taylor rule. Rather, the culprits were the proliferation of new mortgage products that lowered mortgage payments, a relaxation of lending standards that brought more buyers into the housing market, and capital inflows from emerging market countries such as China and India. Bernanke's speech was very controversial, and the debate over whether monetary policy was to blame for the housing price bubble continues to this day.

DETERIORATION OF FINANCIAL INSTITUTIONS' BALANCE SHEETS. The decline in U.S. housing prices led to rising defaults on mortgages. As a result, the value of mortgage-backed securities and CDOs collapsed, leading banks and other financial institutions with a lower value of assets and thus a decline in net worth. With weakened balance sheets, these banks and other financial institutions began to deleverage, selling off assets and restricting the availability of credit to both households and businesses. With no one else able to step in to collect information and make loans, the reduction in bank lending meant that adverse selection and moral hazard problems increased in financial markets.

RUN ON THE SHADOW BANKING SYSTEM. The sharp decline in the value of mortgages and other financial assets triggered a run on the **shadow banking system**, comprised of hedge funds, investment banks, and other non-depository financial firms, which are not as tightly regulated as banks. Funds from shadow banks flowed through the financial system and for many years supported the issuance of low interest-rate mortgages and auto loans.

These securities were funded primarily by **repurchase agreements (repos)**, short-term borrowing, that, in effect, uses assets like mortgage-backed securities as collateral. Rising concern about the quality of a financial institution's balance sheet led lenders to require larger amounts of collateral, known as **haircuts**. For example, if a borrower took out a \$100 million loan in a repo agreement, it might have to post \$105 million of mortgage-backed securities as collateral, and the haircut is then 5%.

With rising defaults on mortgages, the value of mortgage-backed securities fell, which then led to a rise in haircuts. At the start of the crisis, haircuts were close to zero, but eventually rose to nearly 50%.⁷ The result was that the same amount of collateral would only allow financial institutions to borrow half as much. Thus, in order to raise funds, financial institutions had to engage in fire sales and sell off their assets very quickly. Because selling assets quickly requires lowering their price, the fire sales led to a further

⁶Ben S. Bernanke, "Monetary Policy and the Housing Bubble," speech given at the annual meeting of the American Economic Association, Atlanta Georgia, January 3, 2010, www.federalreserve.gov/newsevents/speech/bernanke20100103a.htm

⁷See Gary Gorton and Andrew Metrick, "Securitized Banking and the Run on Repo," National Bureau of Economic Research Working Paper No. 15223 (August 2009).

decline in financial institutions' asset values. This lowered the value of collateral further, raising haircuts and thereby forcing financial institutions to scramble even more for liquidity. The result was similar to the run on the banking system that occurred during the Great Depression, causing a restriction of lending and a decline in economic activity.

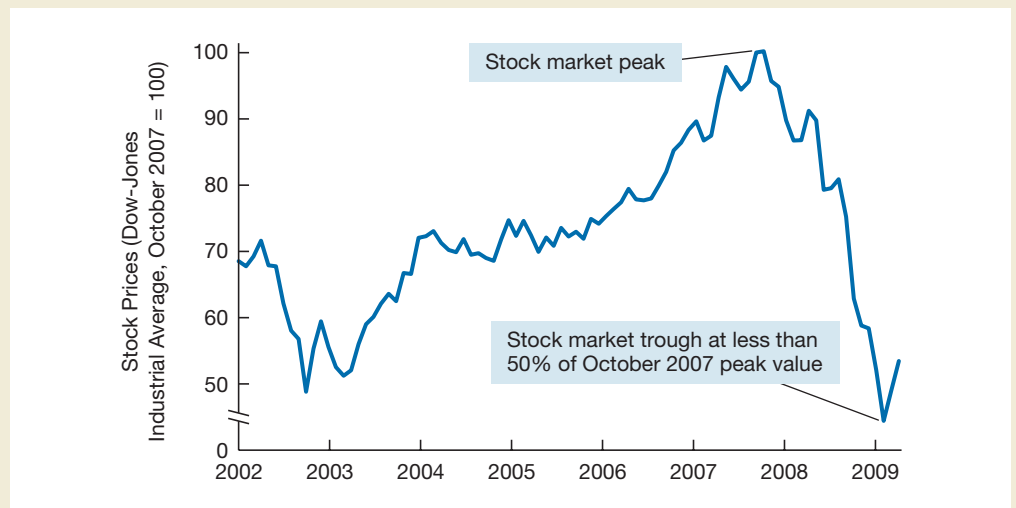
The decline in asset prices in the stock market (which fell by over 50% from October 2007 to March 2009 as shown in Figure 15.6) and the more than 30% drop in residential house prices (shown in Figure 15.5), along with the fire sales resulting from the run on the shadow banking system, weakened both firms' and households' balance sheets. This worsening of asymmetric information problems manifested itself in widening credit spreads, causing higher costs of credit for households and businesses and tighter lending standards. The resulting decline in lending meant that both consumption expenditure and investment fell, causing aggregate demand to contract. The aggregate demand curve thus shifted to the left from AD_1 to AD_2 as in Figure 15.7, with the equilibrium moving from point 1 to point 2 and both aggregate output and inflation declining.⁸

GLOBAL FINANCIAL MARKETS. Although the problem originated in the United States, the wake-up call for the financial crisis came from Europe, a sign of how extensive the globalization of financial markets had become. After Fitch and Standard & Poor's announced ratings downgrades on mortgage-backed securities and CDOs totaling more than \$10 billion, on August 7, 2007, a French investment house, BNP Paribas, suspended redemption of shares held in some of its money market funds which had sustained large losses. The run on the shadow banking system began, only to become worse and worse over time. Despite huge injections of liquidity into the financial system by the European Central Bank and the Federal Reserve, discussed later in this chapter, banks began to hoard cash and were unwilling to lend to each other. The drying up

FIGURE 15.6

Stock Prices and the Financial Crisis of 2007–2009

Stock prices fell by 50% from October 2007 to March of 2009.



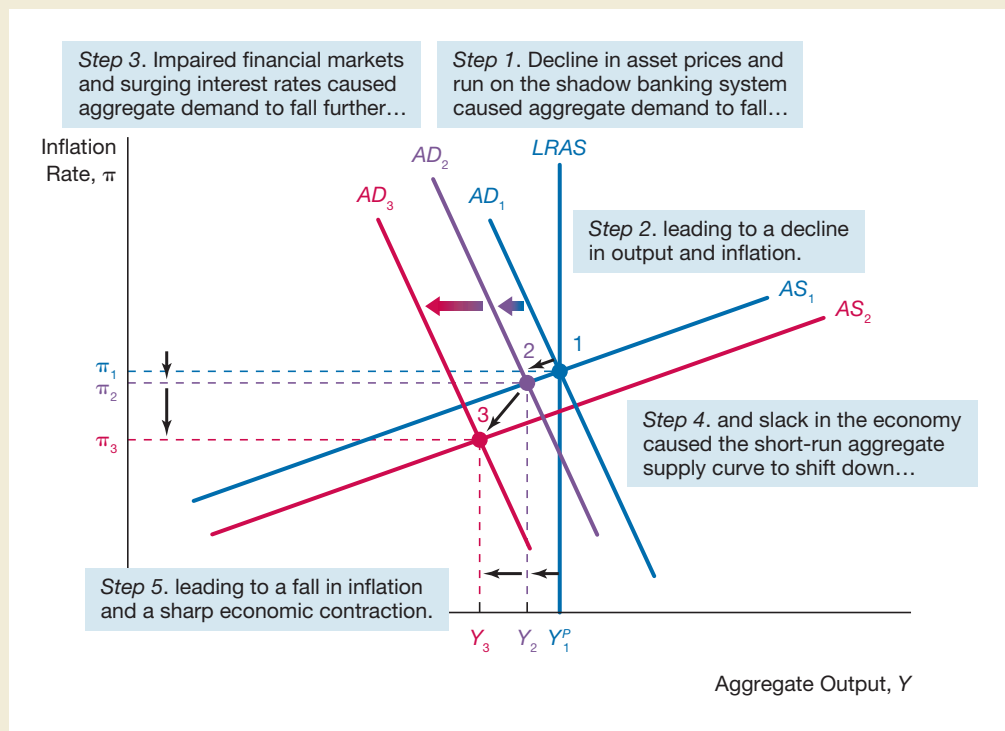
Source: Dow-Jones Industrial Average (DJIA). Global Financial Data. www.globalfinancialdata.com/index_tabs.php?action=detailedinfo&id=1165

⁸During this period there was also a substantial supply shock because oil and other commodity prices rose sharply until the summer of 2008, but then fell precipitously thereafter. We described the aggregate demand and supply analysis of the impact of this supply shock in Chapter 12.

FIGURE 15.7

Aggregate Demand and Supply Analysis of the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis

The aggregate demand curve initially shifted from AD_1 to AD_2 in response to declines in the stock market and housing market, and financial institutions' weakened balance sheets from subprime mortgage losses. The economy moved from point 1 to 2, with output and inflation falling. As the financial system weakened following the stock market crash (failure of investment banking firms, growing credit spreads, and weakened financial institution balance sheets), aggregate demand decreased further, shifting to the left from AD_2 to AD_3 . The economy moved from point 2 to point 3, with an even greater fall in output and inflation.



of credit led to the first major bank failure in the United Kingdom in over 100 years when Northern Rock, which had relied on short-term borrowing in the repo market rather than deposits for its funding, collapsed in September 2007. A string of other European financial institutions then failed as well. Particularly hard hit were countries like Ireland, which up until this crisis was seen as one of the most successful countries in Europe with a very high rate of economic growth (see the box, “Ireland and the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis”). European countries actually experienced a more severe economic downturn than in the United States.

FAILURE OF HIGH-PROFILE FIRMS. The impact of the financial crisis on firm balance sheets forced major players in the financial markets to take drastic action. In March 2008, Bear Stearns, the fifth-largest investment bank in the United States, which had invested heavily in subprime related securities, had a run on its repo funding and was forced to sell itself to J.P. Morgan for less than 5% of what it was worth just a year earlier. In order to broker the deal, the Federal Reserve had to take over \$30 billion of Bear Stearns's hard-to-value assets. In July, Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac, the two privately owned government-sponsored enterprises that together insured over \$5 trillion of mortgages or



Ireland and the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis

From 1995 to 2007, Ireland had one of the highest economic growth rates in the world, with real GDP growing at an average annual rate of 6.3%. As a result, Ireland earned the title the “Celtic Tiger,” and it became one of Europe’s wealthiest nations, with more Mercedes owners per-capita than even Germany. But behind the scenes, soaring real estate prices and a boom in mortgage lending were laying the groundwork for a major financial crisis that hit in 2008, sending the Irish economy into a severe recession.

Irish banks eased loan standards, offering to cover a greater share of housing costs and at longer terms. As in the United States, there was a housing price bubble, with Irish home values rising even more rapidly, doubling once between 1995 and 2000, and then again from 2000 to 2007. By 2007, residential construction reached 13% of GDP, twice the average of other wealthy nations, with Irish banks increasing their mortgage loans by 25% a year.

With the onset of the financial crisis in late 2007, home prices collapsed—falling nearly 20%, among

the steepest housing price declines in the world. Irish banks were particularly vulnerable because of their exposure to mortgage markets and because they had funded their balance sheet expansions through short-term borrowing in the repo market. The combination of tighter funding and falling asset prices led to large losses, and in October 2008, the Irish government guaranteed all deposits. By early 2009, the government had nationalized one of the three largest banks, and injected capital into the other two. Banks remained weak, with the government announcing a plan to shift “toxic” bank assets into a government-funding vehicle.

The financial crisis in Ireland triggered a painful recession, among the worst in modern Irish history. Unemployment rose from 4.5% pre-crisis to 12.5%, while GDP levels tumbled by more than 10%. Tax rolls thinned and losses in the banking sector continued to escalate, leading to an astronomical government budget deficit of over 30% of GDP in 2010. In dire straights, Ireland suffered the humiliation of having to be bailed out by the European Union and the IMF.

mortgage-backed assets, were propped up by the U.S. Treasury and the Federal Reserve after suffering substantial losses from their holdings of subprime securities. In early September 2008, they were then put into conservatorship (in effect run by the government).

On Monday, September 15, 2008, after suffering losses in the subprime market, Lehman Brothers, the fourth-largest investment bank by asset size with over \$600 billion in assets and 25,000 employees, filed for bankruptcy, making it the largest bankruptcy filing in U.S. history. The day before, Merrill Lynch, the third-largest investment bank who also suffered large losses on its holding of subprime securities, announced its sale to Bank of America for a price 60% below its value a year earlier. On Tuesday, September 16, AIG, an insurance giant with assets over \$1 trillion, suffered an extreme liquidity crisis when its credit rating was downgraded. It had written over \$400 billion of insurance contracts (credit default swaps) that had to make payouts on possible losses from subprime mortgage securities. The Federal Reserve then stepped in with an \$85 billion loan to keep AIG afloat (with total government loans later increased to \$173 billion).

Height of the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis and the Decline of Aggregate Demand

The financial crisis reached its peak in September 2008 after the House of Representatives, fearing the wrath of constituents who were angry about bailing out Wall Street, voted down a \$700 billion dollar bailout package proposed by the Bush

administration. The Emergency Economic Stabilization Act finally passed nearly a week later. The stock market crash accelerated, with the week beginning October 6, 2008, showing the worst weekly decline in U.S. history. Credit spreads went through the roof over the next three weeks, with the spread between Baa corporate bonds (just above investment grade) and U.S. Treasury bonds going to over 5.5 percentage points (550 basis points), as illustrated by Figure 15.8.

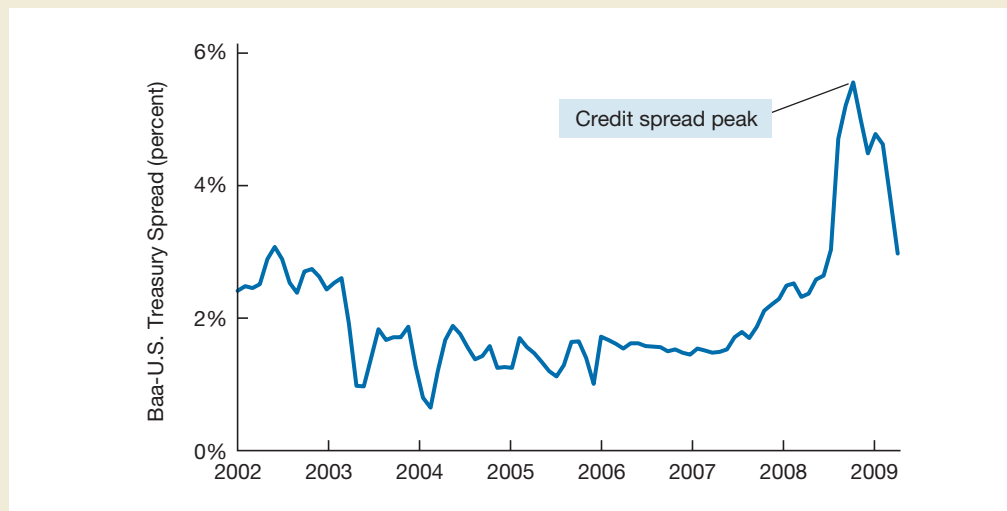
The impaired financial markets and surging interest rates faced by borrower-spenders led to sharp declines in consumer spending and investment, severely decreasing aggregate demand in turn. The aggregate demand curve thus shifted further to the left from AD_2 to AD_3 in Figure 15.7, while the prior slack in the economy at point 2 shifted the short-run aggregate supply curve down and to the right to AS_3 . As the aggregate demand and supply analysis suggests, both output and inflation fell even further, with the economy moving from point 2 to point 3. Real GDP declined sharply, falling at a -1.3% annual rate in the third quarter of 2008 and then at a -5.4% and -6.4% annual rate in the next two quarters. The unemployment rate shot up, going over the 10% level in late 2009. The recession that started in December 2007 became the worst economic contraction in the United States since World War II. Given the resulting slack in the economy, inflation then fell, even going negative for a brief time in 2009.

Starting in March 2009, a bull market in stocks got underway, (see Figure 15.6) and credit spreads began to fall (Figure 15.8).⁹ With the recovery in financial markets, aggregate demand began to increase and aggregate output and inflation began to rise.

FIGURE 15.8

Credit Spreads and the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis

Credit spreads (the difference between rates on Baa corporate bonds and U.S. Treasury bonds) rose by more than four percentage points (400 basis points) during the crisis. Debate over the bailout package and the stock market crash caused credit spreads to peak in December 2008.



Source: Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis FRED database. <http://research.stlouisfed.org/fred2/categories/22>

⁹The financial market recovery was aided by U.S. Treasury's requirement announced in February 2009 that the nineteen largest banking institutions undergo what became known as the *bank stress tests* (the Supervisory Capital Assessment Program or SCAP). The stress tests were a supervisory assessment, led by the Federal Reserve in cooperation with the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency and the FDIC, of the balance sheet position of these banks to ensure that they had sufficient capital to withstand bad macroeconomic outcomes. The Treasury announced the results in early May and they were well received by market participants, allowing these banks to raise substantial amounts of capital from private capital markets. The stress tests were a key factor that helped increase the amount of information in the marketplace, thereby reducing asymmetric information and adverse selection and moral hazard problems.

Why the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis Did Not Lead to a Depression

Although the recession produced by the financial crisis that started in August 2007 was very severe, the economy did not experience the extreme decreases in aggregate demand that occurred during the Great Depression period. Why was the economic contraction and decline in inflation so much less severe in the 2007–2009 crisis than in the Great Depression? The answer is that the U.S. government and the Federal Reserve did not sit idly by as they did during the Great Depression period. Massive government intervention in the financial markets, both in the United States and abroad, propped up financial markets and stimulated aggregate demand.

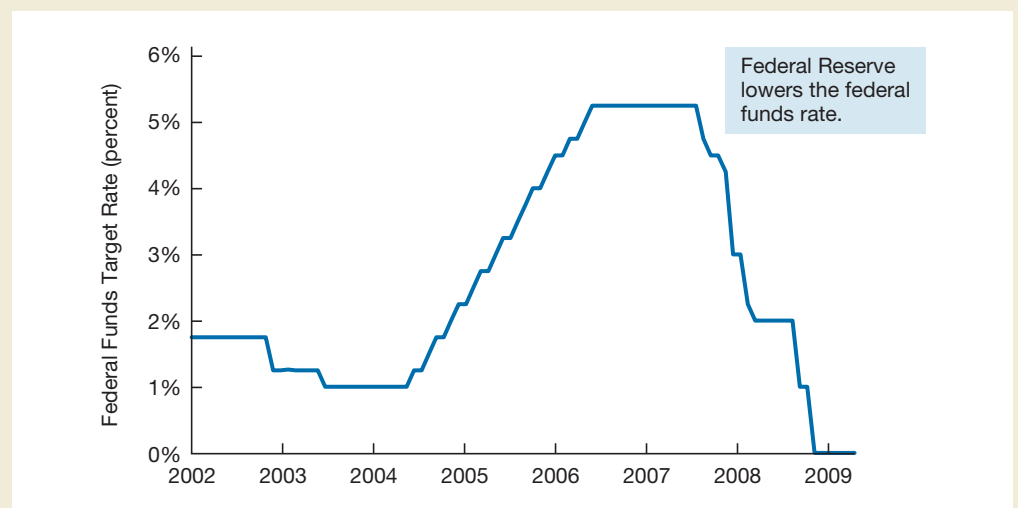
Aggressive Federal Reserve Actions

During the 2007–2009 financial crisis, the Federal Reserve took extraordinary actions involving both monetary policy and liquidity provision to contain the crisis.

CONVENTIONAL MONETARY POLICY. The Federal Reserve's proactive policies were central to containing the crisis. When the financial crisis hit in August 2007, the U.S. economy was growing strongly. Recognizing the contractionary effects of financial crisis, the Federal Reserve and its chairman, Ben Bernanke, undertook autonomous easing of monetary policy by lowering the federal funds rate target by half a percentage point from 5.25% to 4.75%, despite rising inflation, as shown in Figure 15.9. This downward shift in the monetary policy curve led to a decrease in real interest rates at any given inflation rate which would increase aggregate demand and shift the aggregate demand curve to the right. This monetary policy action was highly unusual given the strong economy and rising inflation: in the past, the Federal Reserve had typically started an easing cycle only when economic growth slowed substantially or the economy had already entered a recession.

FIGURE 15.9
Federal Reserve Policy Rate During the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis

The Federal Reserve started lowering its federal funds rate in response to the crisis in August 2007, with the federal funds rate eventually reaching zero in December 2008.



Source: Federal Reserve Board. www.federalreserve.gov/fomc/fundsrate.htm

In the October and December FOMC meetings, the Federal Reserve then cut the target federal funds rate by a quarter of a percentage point each time. When the financial crisis worsened, the Fed cut the federal funds rate even more aggressively, lowering it by one and a quarter percentage points in January alone. The Fed then kept lowering the federal funds rate target steadily to the 2% level in April 2008. In the aftermath of the Lehman Brothers failure, the Fed became even more aggressive in lowering interest rates and finally in December 2008, set a target range for the federal funds rate of 0 to 0.25%. Now the federal funds rate could go no lower because it had hit the *zero lower bound*.

NONCONVENTIONAL MONETARY POLICY. The contractionary effects of the financial crisis continued, requiring further stimulation of aggregate demand. Since people can always earn more from holding bonds than holding cash, nominal interest rates cannot be negative.¹⁰ Without the primary policy tool, the federal funds rate, how could the Fed increase aggregate demand? We call the limit on monetary policy when nominal rates are zero the **zero-lower-bound problem**. Central banks facing the zero-lower-bound problem must use non-interest-rate tools, known as **nonconventional monetary policy**. These alternatives stimulate aggregate demand through noninterest rate channels of transmission called **monetary transmission mechanisms**, as we see in the following Policy and Practice case.

Policy and Practice



Nonconventional Monetary Policy and the Monetary Transmission Mechanism

Monetary authorities push against the zero lower bound of interest rates only in rare circumstances. One occurrence came at the peak of the financial crisis in late 2008, when the Federal Reserve cut its federal funds rate target to a range of 0% to $\frac{1}{4}$ %. With the interest rate channel closed, the Fed sought to further stimulate aggregate demand through nonconventional channels.¹¹

It first turned to the *credit channel* of monetary transmission. While further expansion of the money supply at the zero bound cannot lower nominal interest rates further, it can still grow bank deposits, stimulate bank lending, and thereby boost consumption and investment spending. Such a policy has been dubbed *quantitative easing*. Second, it utilized the *expectations channel*, which takes the view that households and firms will increase spending today if they believe monetary authorities will commit to keeping nominal interest rates at zero for a longer period of time. Beginning in March 2009, the FOMC began to manage expectations by repeating after its meetings that it would maintain “exceptionally low” interest rates “for an extended period.” Third, the Fed tried to reduce credit spreads to lower the cost of borrowing to firms and households in order to stimulate spending. It did this by

¹⁰Actually, nominal interest rates can fall a tiny amount below zero, under a tenth of a percentage point, because sometimes it is more convenient to hold bonds than cash because bonds can be stored electronically and in larger denominations than cash. U.S. nominal rates on government bonds fell below zero for brief periods of time during the 2007–2009 financial crisis and in Japan in the aftermath of their banking crisis in the 1990s.

¹¹For further discussion of these other monetary transmission mechanisms, see Chapter 23, “Transmission Mechanisms of Monetary Policy: The Evidence,” in Frederic S. Mishkin, *The Economics of Money, Banking, and Financial Markets*, 9th Edition (Boston: Pearson Addison-Wesley, 2010).

purchasing over \$1 trillion in long-term bonds and debt issued by private firms, particularly those backed by residential mortgages. This policy seemed to have worked with estimates of the decline in interest rates on mortgage-backed securities on the order of 50 basis points (0.50 percentage points).¹²

LIQUIDITY PROVISION. Because even the combination of conventional and nonconventional monetary policy actions was not sufficient to contain the financial crisis, the Federal Reserve implemented unprecedented increases in its lending facilities to provide liquidity to the financial markets.

1. **Discount Window Expansion:** At the outset of the crisis in mid-August 2007, the Fed lowered the discount rate (the interest rate on loans it makes to banks) to 50 basis points (0.50 percentage points) above the federal funds rate target from the normal 100 basis points. It then lowered it further in March 2008 to only 25 basis points above the federal funds rate target.
2. **Term Auction Facility:** To encourage additional borrowing, the Fed set up a temporary Term Auction Facility (TAF) in which it made loans at a rate determined through competitive auctions. It was more widely used than the discount window facility because it enabled banks to borrow at a rate less than the discount rate, and it was determined competitively, rather than being set at a penalty rate. The TAF auctions started at amounts of \$20 billion, but as the crisis worsened, the Fed raised the amounts dramatically, with a total outstanding of over \$400 billion. (The European Central Bank conducted similar operations, with one auction in June of 2008 of over 400 billion euros.)
3. **New Lending Programs:** The Fed broadened its provision of liquidity to the financial system well outside of its traditional lending to banking institutions. These actions included lending to investment banks, and lending to promote purchases of commercial paper, mortgage backed-securities, and other asset-backed securities. In addition, the Fed engaged in lending to AIG to prevent its failure. The enlargement of the Fed's lending programs during the 2007–2009 financial crisis was indeed remarkable, expanding the Fed's balance sheet by over one trillion dollars by the end of 2008, with the balance-sheet expansion continuing into 2009. The number of new programs over the course of the crisis spawned a whole new set of abbreviations, including the TAF, TSLF, PDCF, AMLF, MMLFF, CPFF, and TALF.

Worldwide Government Intervention Through Bailouts

The U.S. government's active role in providing liquidity to financial institutions was critical to the continued running of the financial system during the 2007–2009 financial crisis. The cross-country coordination of similar efforts was a key factor in containing the impact of the financial crisis on the global economy.

Congress passed the Bush administration's Economic Recovery Act of 2008 in October 2008. Its most important provision was the creation of the Treasury Asset Relief

¹²For example, see Joseph Gagnon, Matthew Raskin, Julie Remache, and Brian Sack, "Large Scale Asset Purchases by the Federal Reserve: Did They Work?" Federal Reserve Bank of New York Staff Reports, Staff Report No. 441 (March 2010).

Plan (TARP), which authorized the Treasury to spend \$700 billion purchasing subprime mortgage assets from troubled financial institutions or to inject capital into banking institutions. In addition, the Act raised the federal deposit insurance limit temporarily from \$100,000 to \$250,000, in order to limit withdrawals from banks. Shortly thereafter, the FDIC put in place a guarantee for certain debt newly issued by banks and the Treasury guaranteed for a year money market mutual fund shares at par value.

The spreading bank failures in Europe in fall 2008 led to bailouts of financial institutions, as we detail in Table 15.1. The scale of these bailout packages, which were in excess of \$10 trillion and involved over twenty countries, and the degree of international coordination was unprecedented.

Aggressive Fiscal Policy

Fiscal stimulus to directly increase aggregate demand was another key piece of the U.S. government's response to the crisis. In February 2008, Congress passed the Bush administration's Economic Stimulus Act of 2008 to shift the *IS* curve to the right and increase aggregate demand. The legislation gave one-time tax rebates of \$78 billion by sending individual taxpayers \$600 checks in the second quarter of the year. However, as we will discuss in Chapter 16, the impact of this fiscal stimulus appears to have been quite small.

The Obama administration proposed a much bigger \$787 billion fiscal stimulus package, which resulted in the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009 (see

TABLE 15.1

**Worldwide
Government
Bailouts During the
2007–2009
Financial Crisis**

Country	Government Bailout Action
France	Provided \$400 billion to guarantee bank debt and inject capital into financial system
Germany	Provided \$50 billion to Hypo Real Estate Holdings and \$500 billion to guarantee bank debt and inject capital into financial system
Greece	Guaranteed all commercial banks and interbank lending
Iceland	Took over country's three largest banks
Ireland	Guaranteed all commercial banks and interbank lending
Netherlands, Belgium, Luxembourg	Provided \$16 billion to European bank Fortis
Netherlands	Provided \$13 billion to ING, banking and insurance giant
South Korea	Provided \$100 billion to guarantee bank debt and inject capital into financial system
Spain	Provided \$70 billion to banks
Sweden	Provided \$200 billion to guarantee bank debt and inject capital into financial system
Switzerland	Provided \$65 billion to UBS, a top-ten bank worldwide
UK	Provided \$600 billion to guarantee bank liabilities, fund asset swaps with government bonds, and fund equity stakes in banks

Chapter 13). The plan featured \$288 billion of tax cuts and \$499 billion in government spending increases. The fiscal stimulus surely helped stimulate aggregate demand, but because most of the additional government spending did not come on line until 2010, its overall impact during the financial crisis period was limited. Most economists believe that the actions of the Federal Reserve and the U.S. Treasury bailouts of the banking system were far more important than fiscal policy in preventing the financial crisis from sending the economy into a depression.

The following Policy and Practice case, which describes Japan's economy from 1992 to 2002, illustrates the consequences when government policy makers do not take aggressive actions to contain a financial crisis.

Policy and Practice



Japan's Lost Decade, 1992–2002

In the early 1990s, Japan seemed poised to overtake the United States as the world's richest country. The average Japanese earned 86% of the typical U.S. worker's income in 1991, up from 73% in 1981. But Japan's economic momentum was squandered over the rest of the 1990s, with GDP growing only 1% a year. The story of Japan's "lost decade" offers a timely lesson in the dangers of underestimating the magnitude of problems in the financial sector.

Japan experienced a major banking crisis in 1992 that slowed the economy and reduced inflation. Rather than shuttering insolvent banks and providing sufficient capital to surviving financial institutions, as our framework for analyzing financial crises suggests, the banking regulators in Japan's Ministry of Finance instead followed a path of *regulatory forbearance*. The government permitted insolvent banks to artificially inflate the value of their assets so as to appear sound, valuing holdings of stocks at much higher historical levels. With regulators' acquiescence, banks acted as if loans to insolvent "zombie firms" would be repaid. The government also allocated too little money to properly recapitalize the banking system.¹³

Not surprisingly, economic growth ground to a halt and inflation dropped. Deflation struck in 1995 and 1996, returning again in 1998 and lingering for several more years. The crisis subsided in 2003, when the Japanese government finally addressed its broken banking system. By then, the damage had been done: in 2003, per-capita income in Japan had fallen back to 74% of U.S. levels.

¹³Regulatory forbearance is a common phenomenon that was also practiced in the United States during the savings and loan crisis of the 1980s. For a discussion of why regulatory forbearance occurs and why it happened in the United States, see the Web appendix to Chapter 11 "The Savings and Loan Crisis and its Aftermath," of Frederic S. Mishkin *The Economics of Money, Banking and Financial Markets* 9th edition (Boston: Pearson Addison-Wesley, 2010), which can be found on the Companion Website to that book at http://wps.aw.com/aw_mishkin_econmbfm_9/. For a discussion of the Japanese government's regulatory forbearance and the shift in its policies in 2003, see Takeo Hoshi and Anil Kashyap, "Will the U.S. Bank Recapitalization Succeed? Eight Lessons from Japan," NBER Working Paper No. 14401 (2009), forthcoming in the *Journal of Financial Economics*.

Policy Response to Asset-Price Bubbles

Asset-price bubbles have been a feature of economies for hundreds of years.¹⁴ One of the lessons from our discussion of the 2007–2009 financial crisis is how costly asset-price bubbles can be. When the asset-price bubble in the housing market popped, it severely hampered the flow of funds in the financial system, leading to an economic downturn, a rise in unemployment, and personal hardship in communities and families forced to leave their homes after foreclosures. The high cost of asset-price bubbles raises the following question: what policy measures should policy makers use to address them in the future? To answer this question, we first need to identify the different kinds of bubbles and appropriate policy responses.

Types of Asset-Price Bubbles

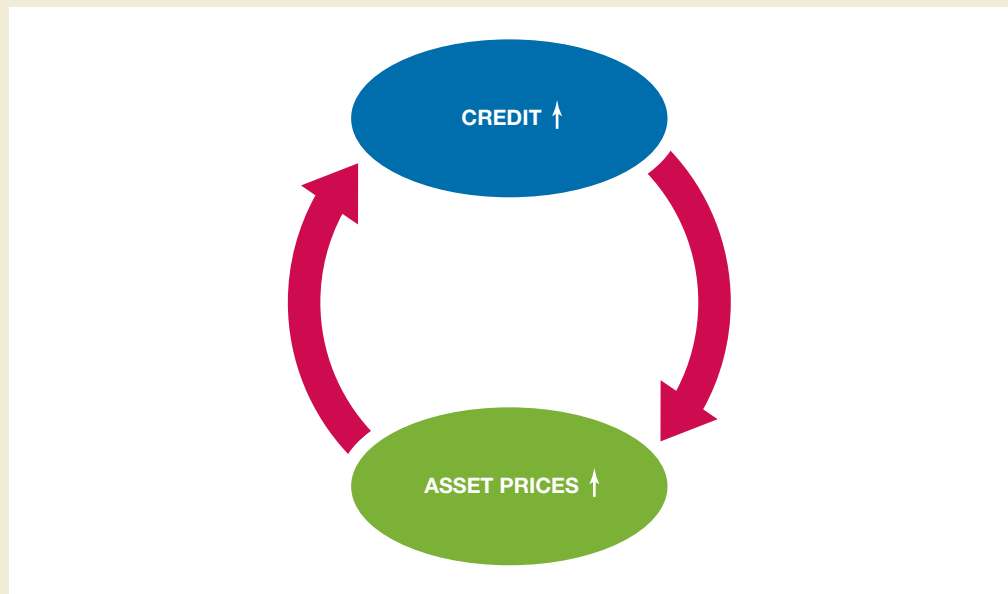
There are two types of asset-price bubbles: ones that are driven by credit and others that are driven purely by overly optimistic expectations.

CREDIT-DRIVEN BUBBLES. When a credit boom begins, it can lead to an asset-price bubble because individuals and firms can use the widely available credit to purchase particular assets and thereby raise their prices. The rise in asset values in turn encourages further lending to purchase these assets, either because it increases the value of collateral, making it easier to borrow, or because it raises the value of capital at financial institutions, which improves their balance sheet positions and gives them more capacity to lend. The lending for these assets then can increase demand for them further and hence raise their prices even more. This feedback loop shown in Figure 15.10—where a credit boom drives up asset prices, which in turn further fuels the credit boom, driving

FIGURE 15.10

Feedback Loop Between Asset Prices and Credit

A credit boom drives up asset prices, which in turn further fuels the credit boom, driving asset prices higher, and so on.



¹⁴For a classic history of asset-price bubbles and financial crises, see Charles P. Kindleberger, *Manias, Panics, and Crashes: A History of Financial Crises*, 5th edition (Wiley, 2005).

asset prices higher, and so on—can generate a bubble in which asset prices rise well above their fundamental values.

Credit-driven bubbles are particularly dangerous, as the recent financial crisis demonstrated in the housing market. When the bubble bursts, the collapse in asset prices then leads to a reversal of the feedback loop: loans go sour, lenders cut back on credit supply, the demand for assets declines further, and prices drop even more.

OPTIMISTIC EXPECTATIONS-DRIVEN BUBBLES. In contrast, bubbles that are driven solely by overly optimistic expectations pose much less risk to the financial system than credit-driven bubbles. For example, the bubble in technology stocks in the late 1990s was not fueled by credit, and the bursting of the tech-stock bubble did not deteriorate financial institutions' balance sheets. The bursting of the tech-stock bubble thus did not have a very severe impact on the economy and the recession that followed was quite mild.

Policy and Practice



Debate Over Central Bank Response to Bubbles

Under Alan Greenspan who was the chairman until 2006, the Federal Reserve took a strong position that it should not respond to asset-price bubbles that are driven by irrational exuberance, as is often the case for bubbles in the stock market. Greenspan argued that such bubbles are nearly impossible to identify. If central banks or government officials knew that a bubble was in progress, why wouldn't market participants know as well? If they did know, then a bubble would be unlikely to develop, because market participants would know that prices were above their fundamental economic values and so they would not buy them. Unless central banks or government officials are smarter than market participants, which is unlikely given the especially high wages that market participants garner, they will be unlikely to identify when bubbles of this type are occurring.

In the aftermath of the 2007–2009 financial crisis, both central bankers and academic economists challenged Greenspan's position, leading to an active debate on what central banks should do about asset-price bubbles. Those who disagree with Greenspan argue that when asset-price bubbles are rising rapidly at the same time that credit is booming, there is a greater likelihood that asset prices are deviating from fundamentals. In this case, central bank or government officials have a greater likelihood than market participants of identifying that a bubble is in progress. This was indeed the case during the U.S. housing market bubble: government officials did have information that financial institutions had weakened lending standards and that credit extension in the mortgage markets was rising at abnormally high rates. Credit-driven bubbles seem possible to identify and are the ones that are capable of doing serious damage to the economy.

There is thus a strong case that central banks should respond to possible credit-driven bubbles—but what is the best policy response? There are three strong arguments against using autonomous tightening of monetary policy to pop credit-driven asset-price bubbles.

1. Higher real interest rates have highly uncertain effects on credit-driven asset-price bubbles. On the one hand, higher real interest rates can be ineffective in

restraining the bubble when market participants continue to expect high rates of return from buying bubble-driven assets. On the other hand, if higher real interest rates succeed in bursting the bubble, it can unleash major damage on the economy, as occurred in 1929.

2. The blunt tool of monetary policy tends to push many asset prices lower, even when a bubble may be present in only a small fraction of assets.
3. To prick a bubble, real interest rates might need to rise to such a high level that the decline in aggregate demand and the resulting economic contraction would create much hardship, as jobs are lost and inflation falls below a desirable level.

Although the preceding reasoning suggests that monetary policy should not be used to prick bubbles, as has been argued by Ben Bernanke and other high officials at the Federal Reserve, there are contrary views in both academia and central banks.¹⁵ If asset-price bubbles are so costly and autonomous tightening of monetary policy can help restrain them, then there can be a case for a response of monetary policy to possible bubbles.¹⁶

Regulatory Policy Responses to Asset Bubbles

Regulatory policy to affect what is happening in credit markets in the aggregate, referred to as **macroprudential regulation**, is a less controversial option than autonomous tightening of monetary policy for addressing asset-price bubbles.

Financial regulation and supervision on an ongoing basis, either by central banks or other government entities, can prevent excessive risk-taking that can directly trigger a credit boom, which in turn leads to credit-driven asset-price bubbles. When a rapid rise in asset prices accompanied by a credit boom provides a signal that a bubble might be forming, central banks and other government regulators could then consider implementing policies to reign in credit growth directly or implement measures to make sure credit standards are sufficiently high. Appropriate macroprudential regulation can then help limit credit-driven bubbles and improve the performance of both the financial system and the economy.¹⁷

¹⁵For example, see the panel discussion in *Monetary Policy: A Journey from Theory to Practice* (Frankfurt; European Central Bank, March 16–17, 2006); William Dudley, “Asset Bubbles and the Implications for Central Bank Policy,” (speech, Economic Club of New York, April, 7, 2010), www.newyorkfed.org/newsevents/speeches/2010/dud100407.html; and Tobias Adrian, Arturo Estrella, and Hyun Song Shin, “Monetary Cycles, Financial Cycles, and the Business Cycle,” Federal Reserve Bank of New York, *Staff Reports*, No. 421 (2010).

¹⁶Note that even if it is unwise to use monetary policy to price bubbles, there is still a strong reason for monetary policy to respond to fluctuations in asset prices in order to stabilize the economy. The level of asset prices does affect aggregate demand (discussed in more detail in Chapters 18 and 19 on consumption and investment) and thus the evolution of the economy. Monetary policy should react to fluctuations in asset prices to the extent that they affect inflation and economic activity.

¹⁷For a more extensive discussion of the type of regulatory and supervisory measures that can be used to restrain asset-price bubbles, see Chapters 11 and 16 of Frederic S. Mishkin, *The Economics of Money, Banking and Financial Markets*, 9th edition (Boston: Pearson Addison-Wesley, 2010).

SUMMARY

1. A financial crisis occurs when a disruption in the financial system causes an increase in asymmetric information that makes adverse selection and moral hazard problems far more severe, thereby rendering financial markets incapable of channeling funds to households and firms with productive investment opportunities, and causing a sharp contraction in economic activity.
2. There are several possible ways that financial crises can start in advanced countries like the United States: mismanagement of financial liberalization/innovation, asset-price booms and busts, or a general increase in uncertainty when there are failures of major financial institutions. The result is a substantial increase in adverse selection and moral hazard problems that lead to a contraction of lending and a decline in economic activity. The worsening business conditions and deterioration in bank balance sheets then triggers the second stage of the crisis, the simultaneous failure of many banking institutions, a banking crisis. The resulting decline in the number of banks causes a loss of their information capital, leading to a further decline of lending and a spiraling down of the economy. In some instances, the resulting economic downturn leads to a sharp decline of prices, which increases the real liabilities of firms and households and therefore lowers their net worth, leading to a debt deflation. The further decline in borrowers' net worth worsens adverse selection and moral hazard problems, so that lending, investment spending, and aggregate economic activity remain depressed for a long time.
3. The most significant financial crisis in U.S. history, that which led to the Great Depression, involved several stages: a stock market crash, bank panics, worsening of asymmetric information problems, and finally a debt deflation.
4. The financial crisis of 2007–2009 was triggered by mismanagement of financial innovations involving subprime residential mortgages and the bursting of a housing price bubble. The crisis spread globally with substantial deterioration in banks' and other financial institutions' balance sheets, a run on the shadow banking system, and the failure of many high-profile firms.
5. The 2007–2009 financial crisis did not lead to a depression because of aggressive Federal Reserve actions, worldwide government intervention through bailouts of financial institutions, and aggressive fiscal policy.
6. The role of the asset-price boom and bust in causing the crisis has led to an active debate about how central banks should respond to asset-price bubbles.

KEY TERMS

agency problem, p. 373
 agency theory, p. 364
 asset-price bubble, p. 366
 bank panic, p. 367
 credit boom, p. 366
 credit default swaps, p. 373
 debt deflation, p. 368
 deleveraging, p. 366
 financial engineering, p. 373
 financial innovation, p. 365
 financial liberalization, p. 365
 fire sales, p. 367

fundamental economic values,
 p. 366
 haircuts, p. 376
 macroprudential regulation,
 p. 388
 monetary transmission
 mechanisms, p. 382
 mortgage-backed securities,
 p. 373
 nonconventional monetary
 policy, p. 382

originate-to-distribute, p. 373
 principal-agent problem, p. 373
 repurchase agreements (repos),
 p. 376
 securitization, p. 373
 shadow banking system, p. 376
 structured credit products, p. 373
 subprime mortgages, p. 373
 zero-lower-bound problem,
 p. 382

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Asymmetric Information and Financial Crises

1. How does asymmetric information help us define a financial crisis?

Dynamics of Financial Crises

2. Why is a financial crisis likely to lead to a contraction in economic activity?
3. Describe the three factors that commonly initiate financial crises and explain how each one contributes to a crisis.
4. What causes bank panics and why do they worsen financial crises?
5. Why does debt-deflation make financial crises worse?

The Mother of All Financial Crises: The Great Depression

6. What is a credit spread? Why do credit spreads rise during financial crises?

Why the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis Did Not Lead to a Depression

9. What prevented the financial crisis of 2007–2009 from becoming a depression?

The 2007–2009 Financial Crisis

7. How did financial innovations in mortgage markets contribute to the 2007–2009 financial crisis?
8. What principal-agent problems resulted from the originate-to-distribute mortgage lending model?

Policy Response to Asset-Price Bubbles

10. What are the two types of asset-price bubbles? Which type poses a bigger threat to the financial system? Why?
11. How should central banks respond to asset-price bubbles?

PROBLEMS

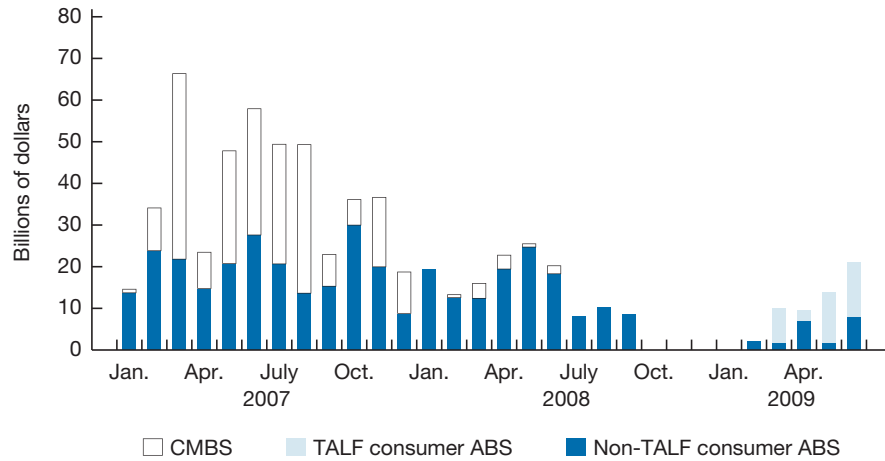
All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Asymmetric Information and Financial Crises

1. Suppose you are about to buy a car and ask to see a vehicle history report to check previous accidents or problems reported for that car. When you are told that this information is not available, you decide not to buy the car.
 - a) Do you think this example illustrates an adverse selection or moral hazard problem?
 - b) What is the lesson about the lack of information and the probability that a transaction will occur?

Dynamics of Financial Crises

2. The following figure, from the Federal Reserve Monetary Policy Report to the Congress (July 21, 2009) shows the gross issuance of mortgage backed securities (MBS) in the United States



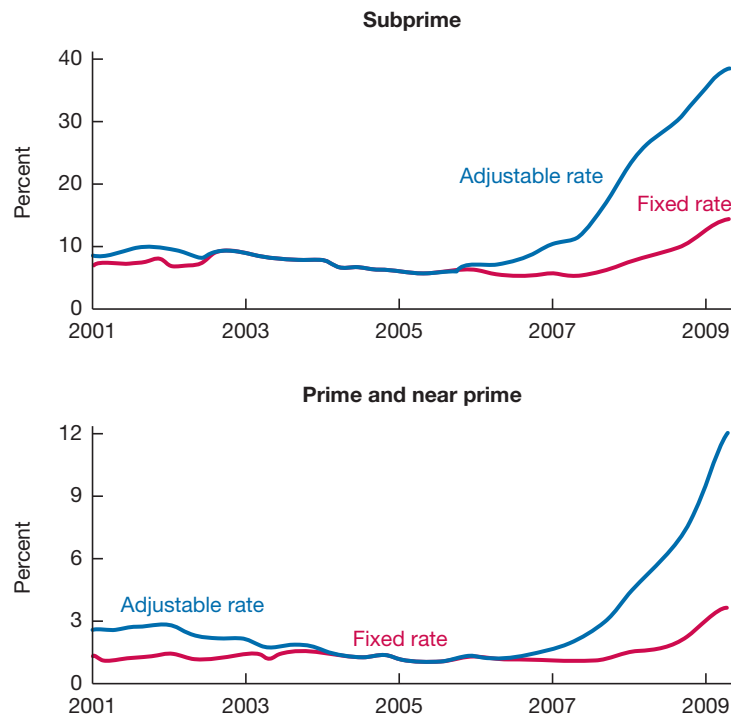
Source: Bajaj, Vikas. 2007. Home prices fall in more than half of nation's biggest markets. *New York Times*, February 16. www.nytimes.com/2007/02/16/business/16home.html

between 2007 and the second quarter of 2009. Comment on the drastic changes in the gross issuance of MBS in the United States during this period.

3. As the effects of the 2007–2009 financial crisis became more pervasive, legislators and policy makers debated about the role played by the Federal Reserve as a regulatory agency. While the Federal Reserve argued for more regulatory oversight of the financial system, some policy makers wanted to remove these powers from the Federal Reserve claiming it failed to act as a proper regulator. Using the concept of asymmetric information, explain why the debate was centered around financial system regulations. Do you think the Federal Reserve failed in its attempt to properly enforce current regulations?
4. According to the FDIC thirty banks failed or were assisted during 2008: six were based in California, two in Florida, and five in Nevada. The *New York Times* reported in 2007 that Nevada (–36.1%), Florida (–30.8%), and California (–21.3%) were amongst the top five states where home sales dropped (in parenthesis) the most between the fourth quarter of 2005 until the fourth quarter of 2006. Explain how real estate market conditions in these areas can explain almost 50% of bank failures in 2008.

5. The following figure, from the Federal Reserve Monetary Policy Report to the Congress (July 21, 2009) shows mortgage delinquency rates from 2001 to 2009 in the United States.

- Explain why mortgage delinquency rates were higher for subprime mortgages.
- Explain why adjustable rate mortgages experienced higher delinquency rates.



Source: Federal Reserve Monetary Policy Report to the Congress (July 21, 2009)
www.federalreserve.gov/monetarypolicy/mpr_20090721_part1.htm

Why the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis Did Not Lead to a Depression

- According to the Federal Reserve Act of 1913 (Section 13.3), “In unusual and exigent circumstances, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, [...] may authorize any Federal reserve bank, during such periods as the said board may determine, [...] to discount for any individual, partnership, or corporation, notes, drafts, and bills of exchange [...]” During the 2007–2009 financial crisis, the Federal Reserve was highly criticized for providing liquidity to corporations and individual market participants (most notably in the commercial market paper). Do you think the Federal Reserve acted according to its mandate, or that it wrongfully used its ability to support the financial system?
- According to the March 16, 2010, FOMC statement, “The Committee will maintain the target range for the federal funds rate at 0 to 1/4 percent and continues to anticipate that economic conditions [...] are likely to warrant exceptionally low levels of the federal funds rate for an extended period.” As the U.S. economy was already showing some signs of recovery by the first quarter of 2010, some people warned that the Federal Reserve actions might increase expected inflation. Explain why low levels of interest rates might fuel inflation expectations and what the Federal Reserve should do to avoid the latter.

Policy Response to Asset-Price Bubbles

8. Suppose a central bank identifies an increase in lending to the floral industry. In particular, many small businesses are borrowing aggressively to import tulips. As market participants observe a sharp increase in the price of tulips, the central bank considers its actions.
 - a) This illustrates which type of price bubble?
 - b) What do you think the central bank should do?
 - c) How would your answer to b) change if there was no increase in lending to the floral industry but tulip prices were nonetheless increasing sharply?
9. Describe the effects on the economy if the Federal Reserve uses monetary policy to burst a wrongfully identified asset-price bubble.
10. One of the possible solutions to asset-price bubbles is the enforcement of macroprudential regulation. Financial intermediaries have an incentive to constantly look for profitable opportunities, which often implies the design of new financial instruments and even the circumvention of contemporaneous regulations. How do you think the process of financial innovation affects the effectiveness of macroprudential regulation?
11. Most legal systems assume that it is better not to incarcerate a guilty individual than to incarcerate an innocent person (i.e., if you are making a mistake, at least choose the least bad one). As central banks can potentially make a mistake when bursting asset-price bubbles, which one do you think is the worst mistake: bursting a bubble when it was not necessary, or not bursting a bubble when it was needed?



MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.

Part Six

Macroeconomic Policy

Chapter 16

Fiscal Policy and the Government Budget

Chapter 17

Exchange Rates and International Economic Policy



Part Six Macroeconomic Policy

This part of the book delves deeper into macroeconomic policy. Chapter 16 and its appendix discuss fiscal policy: the chapter first examines the government budget and its relationship with government debt, and then examines the long- and short-run effects of budget deficits, tax cuts, and government spending. Chapter 17 and its appendices examine international economic policy by developing a supply and demand analysis of how exchange rates are determined and then discusses the effect of exchange rate fluctuations on the economy.

We will examine applications in each chapter to make the critical connection between theory and real-world practice:

- “The Subprime Crisis and the Dollar”
- “Why Are Exchange Rates So Volatile?”
- “How Did China Accumulate Over \$2 Trillion of International Reserves?”

In keeping with our focus on key policy issues and the techniques policy makers use in practice, we will also analyze the following specific examples in Policy and Practice cases:

- “The Entitlements Debate: Social Security and Medicare/Medicaid”
- “Tax Smoothing”
- “The 2009 Debate over Tax-Based Versus Spending-Based Fiscal Stimulus”
- “Two Expansionary Fiscal Contractions: Denmark and Ireland”
- “The Euro Area’s Stability and Growth Pact: A Greek Tragedy?”
- “The Bush Tax Cuts and Ricardian Equivalence”
- “A Day at the Federal Reserve Bank of New York’s Foreign Exchange Desk”
- “The Collapse of the Argentine Currency Board”



16

Fiscal Policy and the Government Budget

Preview

In the midst of a severe recession in early 2009, President Obama signed into law a \$787 billion fiscal stimulus package in an effort to create several million new jobs and upgrade U.S. infrastructure to promote future economic growth. The Recovery Act, as the law came to be known, cut taxes and increased government spending, swelling the U.S. government's budget deficit in 2009 to \$1.2 trillion, nearly 9% of U.S. GDP. Not since World War II had the deficit swelled so large relative to economic output.

Do fiscal stimulus programs, the Recovery Act actually create jobs and grow output? Can they bankrupt a government, or produce other undesirable effects, such as higher inflation or lower economic output? These same questions apply to the largest, ongoing government programs, Medicare and Social Security.

Taken broadly, fiscal policy involves decisions about government spending and taxation. In this chapter, we first examine the relationship between the government budget and the growth of government debt. Then we look at the long- and short-run economic effects of budget deficits, tax cuts, and increased government spending.

The Government Budget

Like any household or office budget, the government's budget reflects both outlays (in the form of government spending) and income (in the form of tax revenue). To better understand the causes of budget deficits, we explore in some detail these two components. (Recall from Chapter 1 that budget deficits are an excess of government spending relative to revenue; surpluses occur when government revenue exceeds spending.) We then examine budget deficits and how they are financed.

Government Spending

In 2009, total spending by all levels of government was \$5,466 billion (see Table 16.1), nearly \$20,000 per person. The media typically focuses on federal spending, but Washington spends only a little over half of all government spending, with state and local governments spending the rest. Government spending has four major components: government purchases, transfer payments, grants in aid, and net interest payments.

1. **Government purchases** (G) are expenditures on goods and services and in 2009 amounted to 29% of federal spending and 71% of state and local government spending. Government purchases consist of two components: *government investment* (G_I), spending on capital goods like highways and schools that add to the capital stock and promote economic growth, and *government consumption* (G_C). In other words,

$$G = G_C + G_I$$

TABLE 16.1
The Government
Budget, 2009

	Federal		State and Local		Total	
	(\$ Billions)	Percent	(\$ Billions)	Percent	(\$ Billions)	Percent
Current Expenditures						
Government purchases	986.4	28.6%	1,430.5	71.0%	2,416.9	44.2%
Transfers	1,716.0	49.7%	477.3	23.7%	2,193.3	40.1%
Grants in Aid	476.6	13.8%	0.0	0.0%	476.6	8.7%
Net interest	272.3	7.9%	106.8	5.3%	379.1	6.9%
Total	3,451.3	100.0%	2,014.6	100.0%	5,465.9	100.0%
Current Receipts						
Personal taxes	829.5	37.3%	273.0	13.7%	1,102.5	26.1%
Contributions for social insurance	950.1	42.7%	21.9	1.1%	972.0	23.0%
Taxes on production and imports	92.3	4.1%	931.6	46.7%	1,023.9	24.3%
Corporate taxes	231.0	10.4%	58.6	2.9%	289.6	6.9%
Grants in aid	0.0	0.0%	476.6	23.9%	476.6	11.3%
Other	123.7	5.6%	233.8	11.7%	357.5	8.5%
Total	2,226.6	100.0%	1,995.5	100.0%	4,222.1	100.0%
Deficit	1,224.7		19.1		1,243.8	
% of GDP	8.6%		0.1%		8.7%	

Source: National Income and Product Accounts. Bureau of Economic Analysis, Tables 3.2 and 3.3 at www.bea.gov/national/nipaweb/SelectTable.asp?Selected=N#S3. Note that subsidies are included in transfers, while government investment, capital transfer payments, net purchases of nonproduced goods, and consumption of fixed capital are included in government purchases.

Around five-sixths of government purchases are government consumption and one-sixth is government investment. Over two-thirds of federal government consumption is spending on national defense.

2. **Transfer payments** (*TRANSFERS*) are direct payments to individuals—such as unemployment insurance benefits, Social Security benefits, Medicare, or welfare payments—where goods or services are not provided in return. Transfer payments have grown over time as a percentage of the government budget and in 2009 were 50% of federal spending and 24% of state and local government spending. They are commonly referred to as **entitlements** because they are not made on a discretionary basis, but are locked in by earlier legislation.
3. **Grants in aid** reflect federal assistance to state and local governments. Grants in aid account for 14% of federal spending.
4. **Net interest payments** (*INTEREST*) are interest payments made to holders of government debt such as U.S. Treasury bonds, less the interest paid to the government for debts such as student loans. The net interest payments are the smallest component of government spending, at 8% for the federal government and 5% for state and local governments.

Table 16.1 shows the share of the government spending for each of these components for federal, state, and local governments.

Given the media attention paid to critics of big government, you might think that the United States is a big spender. But in comparison to thirty-one industrialized countries, U.S. government spending relative to GDP is lower than twenty-four other industrialized countries listed in Table 16.2.

TABLE 16.2

Government Spending as a Percentage of GDP for Thirty-One Advanced Countries, 2008

	Country	Gov't Spending (% of GDP)	Country	Gov't Spending (% of GDP)	
1	Denmark	26.7%	17	Austria	18.6%
2	Sweden	26.4%	18	Poland	18.6%
3	Netherlands	25.5%	19	Japan	18.5%
4	Iceland	24.9%	20	Germany	18.1%
5	France	23.2%	21	Ireland	17.7%
6	Belgium	23.2%	22	Slovak Republic	17.4%
7	Finland	22.6%	23	Australia	17.2%
8	United Kingdom	21.6%	24	Greece	16.9%
9	Hungary	21.6%	25	United States	16.7%
10	Portugal	20.7%	26	Korea	15.3%
11	Czech Republic	20.4%	27	Luxembourg	15.1%
12	Italy	20.2%	28	Turkey	12.8%
13	New Zealand	19.8%	29	Chile	11.9%
14	Canada	19.6%	30	Switzerland	10.7%
15	Spain	19.4%	31	Mexico	10.6%
16	Norway	19.3%			

Source: Government final consumption expenditures divided by GDP, 2008. National Accounts, OECD Stats, Organization of Economic Cooperation and Development at <http://stats.oecd.org/index.aspx>

Revenue

Tax revenue fills in the other side of the government budget.¹ We describe the four major components of tax revenue (*TAXES*) here. Table 16.1 shows each component's contribution to total revenue for 2009.

1. **Personal taxes** are composed of income taxes and property taxes and are a major source of total government revenue, at 37% for the federal government and 14% for state and local governments in 2009. Federal Income taxes were unconstitutional until the passage of the Sixteenth Amendment in 1913; they stayed very low until World War II but are now the primary source of personal taxes.
2. **Contributions for social insurance** are primarily Social Security taxes, which are assessed as a fixed percentage of a worker's wages, up to a fixed ceiling (or cap). These taxes began when the federal government established the Social Security system in 1935. For most workers, employers pay half of this tax, while the employer deducts the other half from the worker's paycheck. Total contributions accounted for 43% of federal revenue and only 1% of state and local government revenue in 2009.
3. **Taxes on production and imports** are primarily sales taxes, but they also include taxes on imported goods, known as **tariffs**. This category now provides 4% of federal government revenue, but a much larger share, 47%, of state and local government revenue. Tariffs were the most important source of federal tax revenue in early U.S. history, but they are now very small. State and local governments are far more dependent on sales taxes to produce tax revenue than is the federal government, with this source of revenue being the most important for state and local governments.
4. **Corporate taxes** are primarily taxes on the profits on businesses. Corporate taxes are the smallest source of government revenue, at 10% for the federal government and 3% for state and local governments in 2009.
5. **Grants in aid** are the federal assistance to state and local governments and are revenue for them (while they are spending for the federal government). Grants in aid are 24% of state and local government revenue. In looking at the total government budget, the spending by the federal government on grants in aid is exactly matched by the revenue the state and local governments receive, so these grants do not change the size of the overall government budget balance.

Budget Deficits and Surpluses

The federal government is not required to balance its budget. When government revenue exceeds spending, the government runs a surplus. When government spending outstrips revenue, the government runs a deficit. Budget deficits for the federal government are the norm in the United States (\$1,225 billion in 2009, as seen at the bottom of Table 16.1), because the federal government usually spends more than it receives in taxes. One exception was the late 1990s, when the government budget was in surplus.

¹We disregard revenue from fees, such as entrance charges to national parks, which account for a tiny proportion of revenue.

The formula for the government budget deficit is as follows:²

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Deficit} &= \text{spending} - \text{tax revenues} \\ &= (\text{government purchases} + \text{transfers} + \text{net interest}) - \text{tax revenues} \quad (1) \\ &= (G + \text{TRANSFERS} + \text{INTEREST}) - \text{TAXES} \end{aligned}$$

Government Budget Constraint

Though the government can run a deficit, it must still pay its bills. To raise revenue for the goods and services it buys, the government has the option to raise taxes. It can also finance a deficit by borrowing (issuing government bonds) or printing money. Financing is constrained by the government's ability to borrow and the quantity of money it is willing to print. We describe the **government budget constraint** more formally as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Deficit} &= [\text{change in amount of debt (bonds) in the hands of the public}] \\ &\quad + [\text{change in amount of money}^3] \\ &= \Delta B + \Delta M \end{aligned} \quad (2)$$

As we will see later in the chapter, government's choices for financing a deficit impact the inflation rate.

Size of the Government Debt

Most countries typically find their government budget in deficit rather than surplus, so that the amount of worldwide government debt has been growing over time. We now look at how U.S. government debt has grown relative to GDP in the United States and then compare the U.S. debt level to other key industrialized nations.

Growth of U.S. Government Debt over Time

Budget deficits are reflections of major events in history, mirroring the effects of wars and changing political ideologies. We now begin a tour of recent U.S. history, told through the story of the budget deficit from 1940 to the present day.

Before we begin, recall that the government budget constraint requires a government to finance its deficits either through selling bonds or issuing money. The United States finances very little of its government budget deficit with money creation and instead favors selling bonds. As a result, over the past seventy years, there is a correlation between budget deficits and the stock of government debt as a percentage of GDP, as shown in Figure 16.1.

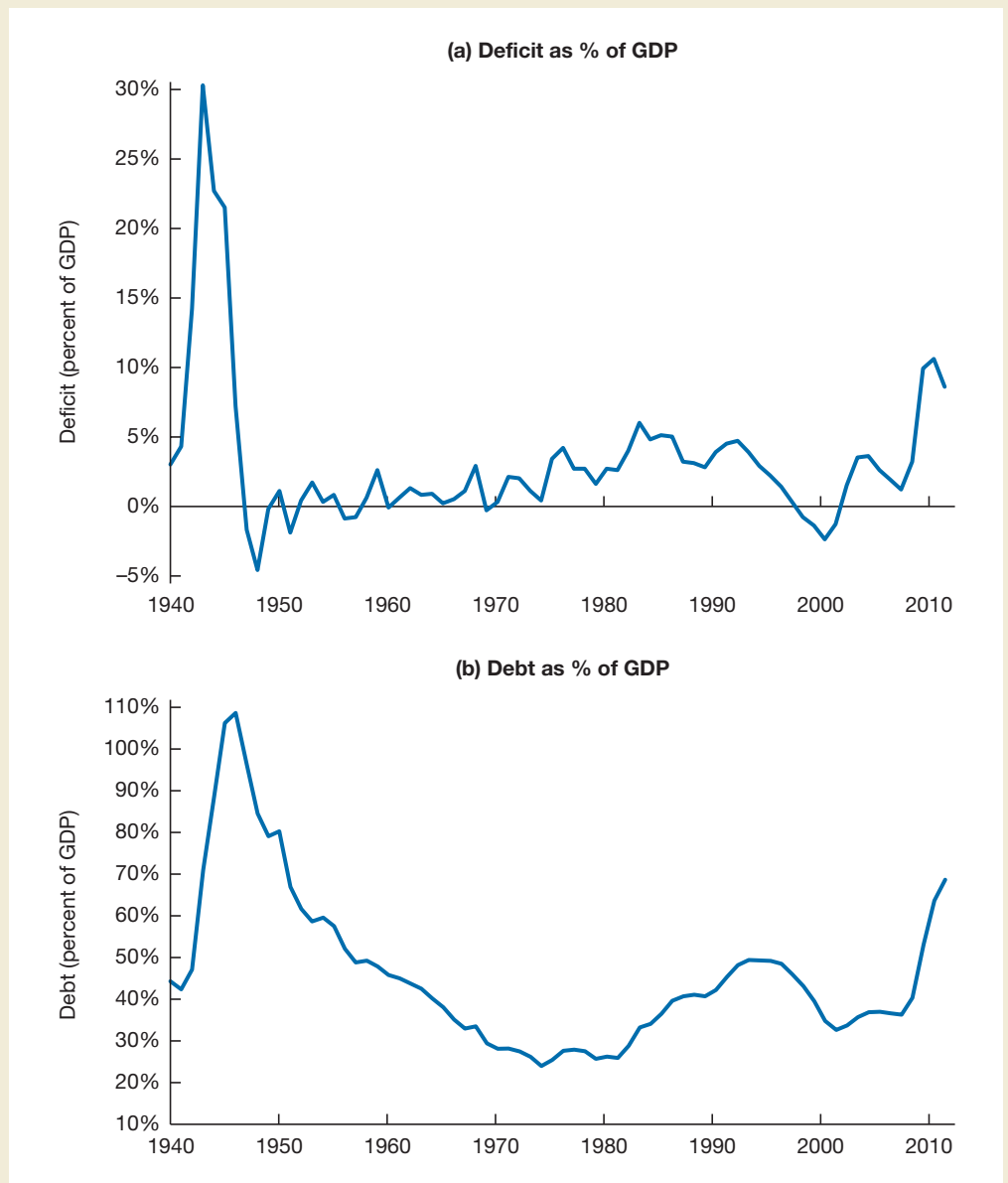
During World War II from 1939–1945, the U.S. federal government quadrupled its spending to defeat the Germans and the Japanese. Deficits reached a peak of 30% of

²There are other measures of the government budget deficit, and they are described in an appendix to this chapter.

³Money here, M , is more accurately *high-powered money*, currency in circulation plus the total reserves in the banking system. High-powered money is directly linked to the money supply through the money multiplier, which we described in an appendix to Chapter 5.

FIGURE 16.1**U.S. Federal Deficit and the Size of U.S. Government Debt Relative to GDP, 1940–2010**

When budget deficits are very high, as during World War II and again more recently, the debt-to-GDP ratio rises, while when deficits are small, high real GDP growth and inflation lead to a decline in the debt-to-GDP ratio.



Source: Economic Report of the President, Table B-79 at www.gpoaccess.gov/eop/tables09.html

GDP. The government covered some of the extra expense by raising taxes, but it did not want current taxpayers to bear the full cost of the war. So it ran deficits—borrowing the remainder—generating federal budget deficits of between 20% and 30% of GDP during the war years. As the government budget constraint indicates, the debt to GDP ratio skyrocketed to over 100% of GDP.

After the war ended in 1945, government spending moderated, the budget returned to balance, and the economy entered a strong period of GDP growth. Over the next thirty years, the stock of government debt remained essentially constant. But high rates of real GDP growth and inflation reduced the ratio of debt to GDP to a low of 24% of GDP in the mid-1970s.

In the 1980s, large deficits returned. Large income tax reductions during the Reagan administration brought the average deficit over the decade to nearly 4% of GDP. The debt-to-GDP ratio rose close to 50% by 1993. Large tax increases during the Clinton administration produced such substantial new revenue that the federal budget returned to surplus from 1997 to 2001. The debt-to-GDP ratio declined to 33%. When the second Iraq War began in 2002, government spending once again surged. Compounding the effect on the deficit, the administration of George W. Bush introduced tax cuts that brought the deficit close to 10% of GDP by the end of his term in 2009. The debt-to-GDP ratio once again began to climb and it rose further during the first years of the Obama administration, which passed a large fiscal stimulus. The debt-to-GDP ratio reached 53% by 2009, but projections for future values of this ratio climbed dramatically. The prospects for the budget over the next fifty years are cause for concern, as the following Policy and Practice case suggests.

Policy and Practice



The Entitlements Debate: Social Security and Medicare/Medicaid

Public discussion of the federal budget tends to focus on the current deficit. Another consideration is government commitments to increases in pension and medical spending mandated by legislation for programs such as Social Security, Medicare, and Medicaid. These entitlement programs have grown to close to half of federal spending.

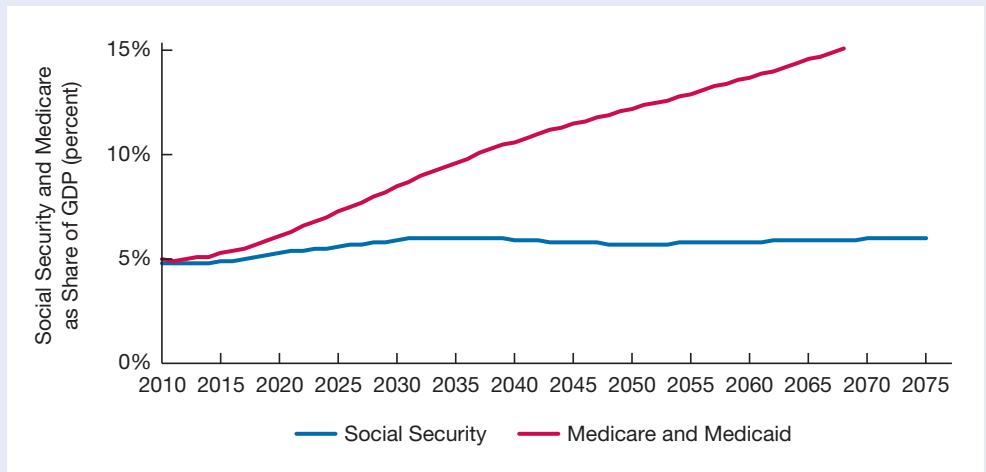
At its establishment in 1935, Social Security was intended to operate like a pension plan. Workers would contribute a portion of their paychecks to a trust fund, which would invest and protect the money until they reached retirement age. In fact, the Social Security Administration immediately transfers most workers' contributions to current-day retirees. This "pay-as-you-go" system works fine as long as there are enough workers contributing to pay Social Security benefits in full.

However, the demographic situation has changed dramatically since the early years of Social Security:

1. Today's retirees live far longer than they did in the 1930s and thus draw on Social Security's lifetime benefits for much longer.
2. There are far more retirees today—a result of the baby boom in the years after World War II.
3. U.S. birth rates have declined over the years, increasing the **dependency ratio**, the ratio of retirees to workers who make Social Security contributions.

For these reasons, the Congressional Budget Office projects that Social Security spending will rise from 4.8% of GDP in 2010 to 5.7% in 2050, an over 10% increase. (See Figure 16.2 for more details.)

In recent years, policy makers and elected officials have debated how to address these challenges and proposed reforms. Proposed reforms of the Social Security system come in three varieties: 1) invest Social Security trust funds in high-return (and thus high-risk) assets, 2) double Social Security taxes on workers, or 3) cut retirement benefits by one-third. All these approaches come with

**FIGURE 16.2****Social Security and Medicare/Medicaid Spending as a Percent of GDP, 2010–2050**

Projected spending on Social Security is projected to rise from 4.8% in 2010 to 5.7% in 2050, while government spending on Medicaid and Medicare is projected to rise from 5% in 2010 to over 12% by 2050.

Source: Long-Term Budget Outlook, Congressional Budget Office, 2009 at www.cbo.gov/publications/bysubject.cfm?cat=3

painful tradeoffs. If the Social Security trust fund invests in private assets, rather than in low-yielding U.S. Treasury securities, it will be exposed to crisis if asset prices suddenly fall. Social Security tax rate increases could eventually raise taxes to such high levels that people would have little incentive to work. If reform trims benefits too much or raises the minimum age at which one can receive benefits too high, the safety net of the Social Security system could fail many elderly. Yet if policy makers take no action, budget deficits will almost certainly skyrocket.⁴

With such tough choices, it's easy to see why Social Security has often been described as a "third rail of politics": touch it and you are dead. The longer it takes to reform the Social Security system, the worse the problem becomes, and the more drastic the measures that will be needed to fix it.

Growing health care costs and increases in government medical benefits expose the health care entitlements of Medicare and Medicaid to similar issues, although the growth of these programs will impact the government budget far more in the future than Social Security. Projected spending on these two health care programs was expected to rise from around 5% in 2010 to over 12% by 2050, as Figure 16.2 shows. After a bruising year-long political debate, Congress passed a health care overhaul in early 2010 that extended medical insurance to thirty million more people, while increasing payroll taxes and trimming subsidies to some health care providers. How this legislation will affect future government spending on health care is far from clear.

⁴See Martin Feldstein, "Structural Reform of Social Security," *Journal of Economic Perspectives* (Spring 2005): 33–55.

International Comparison: The Size of Government Debt

The amount of U.S. government debt relative to the size of the economy is high and rising. How does U.S. government debt compare to that of other advanced countries? Government debt in various countries has been fluid since the financial crisis of 2007–2009. Table 16.3 provides an international comparison of the amount of government debt as a percentage of GDP as of the year 2008 when the data was available. Notice that many countries—such as Japan and Greece—had much higher debt-to-GDP ratios than the United States. Indeed, these two countries had debt-to-GDP ratios in excess of 100%. However, other countries—such as Australia and Luxembourg—had very little debt relative to GDP, with debt-to-GDP ratios of less than 10%. The United States seems to be in the middle of the pack in terms of government indebtedness, with government debt relative to GDP of 40% as of 2008.

Fiscal Policy and the Economy in the Long Run

The amount of U.S. government debt per person is \$25,000 and rising. Will paying back this debt strain the economy? We now consider two sides to the debate over the burden of long-run debt on future generations.

Why High Government Debt Is Not a Burden

One side in the debate maintains that the large amount of debt may be less of a problem than it first appears based on how the government spent the money. For example, government debt issued to invest in **government capital**, physical assets such as highways, broadband networks, or schools, will increase the economy's future productivity. And **human capital** investments, such as education, increase worker productivity and

TABLE 16.3

International Comparison of the Relative Size of Government Debt for Thirty Advanced Countries, 2008

	Country	Debt (% of GDP)	Country	Debt (% of GDP)	
1	Japan	164	16	Sweden	36
2	Greece	110	17	Spain	33
3	Italy	98	18	Denmark	32
4	Belgium	90	19	Finland	29
5	Portugal	71	20	Korea	29
6	Hungary	68	21	Canada	29
7	United Kingdom	61	22	Ireland	27
8	Austria	60	23	Czech Republic	27
9	France	54	24	Slovak Republic	26
10	Netherlands	50	25	Mexico	24
11	Poland	45	26	Switzerland	22
12	Iceland	45	27	New Zealand	21
13	Turkey	40	28	Norway	14
14	United States	40	29	Luxembourg	9
15	Germany	39	30	Australia	5

Source: Finance, OECD Stats, Organization of Economic Cooperation and Development at <http://stats.oecd.org/index.aspx>

in turn wages, generating additional tax revenue that can go toward repaying the government debt. In addition, the government will eventually repay debt held by American households and businesses in the form of government bonds with future tax payments to these bondholders. If those paying taxes are the same as those holding the bonds, then the tax payment that goes out from one hand will just be paid to the other hand, which receives the bond payments.

Why Government Debt Is a Burden

There are a number of compelling arguments on the other side of the debate pointing to the burden of rising government debt.

REDUCTIONS IN NATIONAL SAVING. We learned from the uses-of-saving identity in Chapter 4 that national saving, the sum of private and government saving, is equal to investment plus net exports:

$$S = (Y - T - C) + (T - G) = I + NX \quad (3)$$

National saving = Private saving + Government saving = Investment + Net exports

When government saving, $T - G$, is negative because budget deficits are large, then national saving will be lower and the sum of investment and net exports will be lower. Reductions in national saving that arise from budget deficits are therefore likely to reduce private investment, a phenomenon that is called **crowding out**. The lower capital stock from the reduction in private investment implies that the economy will produce fewer goods and services in the future, so that future generations will be worse off.

VALUE OF GOVERNMENT CAPITAL INVESTMENT. There is reason to be skeptical of the argument that the government takes on debt to make wise investments in physical and human capital. First, most government spending is for government consumption, current government spending that does not boost the capital stock, such as on medical care and military personnel, or for transfer payments, such as unemployment insurance or Social Security payments. Second, government investment may be unproductive. Some critics deride government spending as loaded with “pork,” or wasteful, spending. A particularly flagrant example of pork was the infamous “bridge to nowhere” that was to connect Gravina Island’s fifty residents to Ketchikan, Alaska, at a projected cost of \$398 million that legislators proposed to Congress in 2005. (That’s \$8 million per resident!) Congress eventually dropped the bridge from the bill. Nonetheless, the government has approved many pork-barrel investments, suggesting that a substantial fraction of government investment is not very productive.

INDEBTEDNESS TO FOREIGNERS. Even if much of the country’s debt is owed to itself, Equation 3 suggests that a reduction in national saving can also lower net exports and thereby increase U.S. indebtedness to foreigners. As we saw in Chapter 4, negative net exports are financed by foreign purchases of U.S. assets, especially government bonds. Budget deficits that reduce national saving could, over time, increase U.S. foreign debt. The Chinese are already the largest holders of U.S. government debt, representing a substantial burden on future generations.

REDISTRIBUTION EFFECTS. The argument that deficits and rising government debt are not a burden because much of the debt is owed to ourselves does not take into account that the people paying taxes may not be the same people who hold government bonds. People who do not own bonds have to pay higher taxes to pay off the principal and interest on government bonds, while those who hold bonds receive more in interest and principal payments relative to the amount they pay in taxes. Government budget deficits and rising government debt thus involves a transfer of wealth in the future to government bondholders. Since bondholders are likely to be richer than those who do not own bonds, rising government debt involves redistributing from relatively poor people to relatively rich people, which could widen income inequality.⁵

DEBT INTOLERANCE. At some point, when the amount of government debt relative to the size of the economy gets very large, investors may begin to fear the government will default on the debt and, by engaging in **debt repudiation**, fail to pay it all back. The point at which this may happen depends on the past history of a country's fiscal policy. Many countries, with Argentina a leading example, have defaulted on their debt repeatedly and are often referred to as "serial defaulters." These countries may then experience **debt intolerance** when they are unable to sell their debt even at relatively low levels of government debt to GDP and so are far more likely to default on their government debt at much lower levels of debt to GDP.⁶ Many emerging market countries are exposed to debt intolerance: a default on government debt can send these countries into a financial crisis, with disastrous effects on the economy.⁷ Large budget deficits and rising government debt can then pose a very large threat to the health of emerging market economies.

NEGATIVE INCENTIVE EFFECTS. High budget deficits that generate a large government debt increase the need for governments to raise future taxes to pay back the debt. Higher taxes come with a hidden cost to the economy if they create **distortions**, which are departures from the most efficient economic outcomes. To illustrate, consider a 40% income tax. For every dollar you earn, you would only get sixty cents, with the result that you may work less hard and the economy would then produce less. Similarly, an investor that pays a 20% capital gains tax on the profits he or she earns from his or her investments may be less willing to make these investments, with the result that the capital stock and economic growth will be lower. These so-called **tax wedges**—the difference between what people earn after taxes on their labor or investments and what they are paid before they make their tax payments—can therefore reduce the efficiency and growth of an economy over time.

The bottom line from the discussion in this section is that although there are reasons why rising government debt may not always be a burden, it does pose some very high costs for the economy.

⁵This redistribution is even more problematic currently because income inequality has been rising for other reasons in recent years, as we will discuss in Chapter 20. Of course, other tax policies to raise taxes on the rich could counteract this rise in income inequality.

⁶Carmen Reinhart, Kenneth S. Rogoff, and Miguel A. Savastano, "Debt Intolerance," *Brookings Papers on Economic Activity* Vol 1 (Spring 2003): 1–74.

⁷This issue is discussed further in the Web chapter, "Financial Crises in Emerging Market Economies," found at the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin.

Policy and Practice



Tax Smoothing

The distortions of high tax rates provide a rationale for **tax smoothing**, a policy of keeping tax rates fairly stable when government spending fluctuates. Consider the financing choices of a government that is planning five years of heavy investment in the highway system, followed by five years of normal spending. The government has two options for funding: (1) raise the tax rate from 20% to 30% over the next five years and then return the rate to 20% once the highway spending is complete, or (2) smooth the tax increase, setting a new rate of 25% for ten years. The government would balance the budget over the whole ten-year period, but there would be large deficits in the first five years and large surpluses in the following five years. Setting a constant rate would eliminate the distortion of raising the tax rate from 20% to 30% between the two five-year periods.

Tax smoothing can justify deficits when government spending is likely to be temporarily high. For example, during World War II, the U.S. government had budget deficits of 20–30% of GDP, exactly as tax smoothing predicts. The tax smoothing argument does not, however, justify large government deficits *if the rise in spending is expected to be permanent*. Expected permanent rises in government spending should be paid for with tax rate increases. Otherwise, the resulting budget deficits will not be matched by surpluses in future years, thereby leading to a permanent rise in government debt, which places a substantial burden on future generations. For this reason, many economists support raising taxes today to help pay for high future spending on entitlement programs such as Social Security and Medicare.

Fiscal Policy and the Economy in the Short Run

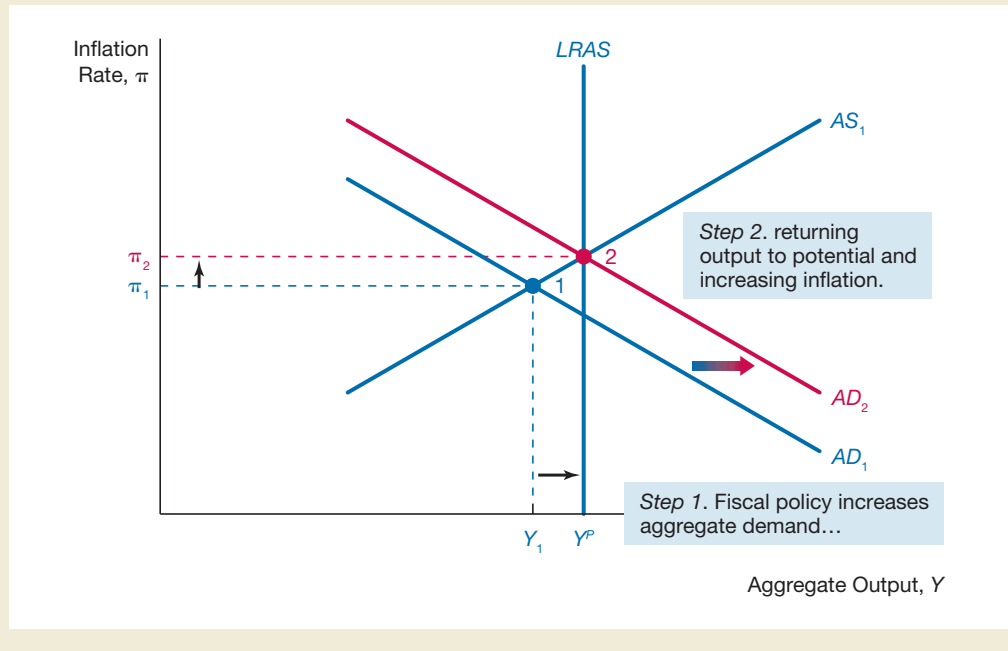
We have looked at how fiscal policy affects the economy in the long run. Fiscal policy also has important effects on the economy in the short run. We saw in Chapter 12 that expansionary fiscal policy, either a cut in taxes or an increase in government spending, leads to an increase in aggregate demand, thereby causing both aggregate output and inflation to rise in the short run. This may be only part of the story, however. Let's look more closely at the effect of fiscal policy, such as the Obama 2009 stimulus package, using our aggregate demand and supply analysis.

Aggregate Demand and Fiscal Policy

Figure 16.3 shows the short-run effect of fiscal policy on the economy. Suppose, for example, that aggregate demand decreases and the economy is at point 1 in the figure, with the aggregate demand curve at AD_1 and aggregate output at Y_1 below potential output at Y^P . The government can pursue either of two policies to increase the quantity of aggregate output demanded at any given rate of inflation: it can cut taxes, or it can increase government spending. (An income tax cut would increase households' disposable income, resulting in higher consumption spending.) An increase in government spending also adds directly to aggregate demand. As a result, the aggregate demand curve shifts to the right from AD_1 to AD_2 in Figure 16.3. Tax cuts and higher spending

FIGURE 16.3**Fiscal Policy Expansion and the Economy in the Short Run**

A cut in taxes or an increase in government spending increase aggregate demand, shifting the aggregate demand curve to the right from AD_1 to AD_2 and moving the economy from point 1 to point 2. Aggregate output rises from Y_1 to Y^P and inflation rises from π_1 to π_2 .



both move the economy from point 1 to point 2, where aggregate output rises back up to potential at Y^P and inflation rises π_2 .

Expenditure and Tax Multipliers

In Chapter 9, we found that increases in government purchases of \$1 trillion led to an increase in equilibrium output of \$2.5 trillion, a multiple of 2.5, when we held the real interest rate constant. Equation 10 wrote this multiple generally as $1/(1 - mpc)$, so the value is always greater than one because the marginal propensity to consume is less than one. We call the change in equilibrium output from a change in government purchases, $\Delta Y/\Delta G$, the **expenditure multiplier**.

In Chapter 9 we also found that an increase in taxes of \$1 trillion decreases equilibrium output by \$1.5 trillion, a smaller multiple. The **tax multiplier** is the change in equilibrium output from a change in taxes, $\Delta Y/\Delta T$, and it is always less in absolute value than the expenditure multiplier because the initial change in spending occurs through consumption expenditure, which responds to the tax change by less than one-for-one (equal to the mpc).

Many Keynesian economists argue that the expenditure multiplier is greater than one and is larger in absolute value than the tax multiplier—but other economists disagree. There are two reasons the expenditure multiplier may be smaller than the analysis in Chapter 9 indicates:

1. The analysis in Chapter 9 assumes that real interest rates remain constant when either government purchases or taxes change. Our analysis in Chapters 10 to 12, however, indicates that this assumption is usually incorrect. When government purchases rise, inflation rises, and so real interest rates rise, leading to a cutback in private spending (referred to as crowding out)

on investment, consumption expenditure, and net exports, producing an overall smaller increase in equilibrium output.⁸

2. The expenditure multiplier may be smaller because households and businesses anticipate that higher government purchases will lead to higher budget deficits that will require financing with higher taxes. As a result, households and businesses will decrease their spending, again leading to a smaller expenditure multiplier.

These two arguments suggest that the expenditure multiplier can actually be smaller than one, and may even be smaller in absolute value than the tax multiplier. Varying estimates of the expenditure and tax multipliers led to very different views on the role of fiscal stimulus during the financial crisis of 2007–2009, as the following Policy and Practice case indicates.

Policy and Practice



The 2009 Debate over Tax-Based Versus Spending-Based Fiscal Stimulus

When the Obama administration proposed a fiscal stimulus package to jump start the economy when it first came to office in 2009, a vigorous debate followed over the relative size of the expenditure and tax multipliers and whether tax cuts or increased government spending should provide more stimulus to the economy.

Republicans favored tax cuts, which they argued would immediately boost disposable income and stimulate spending, and reduce distortions in the economy to increase potential output in the future. Democrats, on the other hand, argued that increases in government spending add to aggregate demand directly, and thus would be more effective at stimulating the economy than tax cuts. Democrats also argued that the recession was worsened by shortfalls in physical and human capital, prompting proposals to increase government investment in education, improve health care, and combat global warming.

These disagreements were supported by differing views in the economics profession. Christina Romer, the chairwoman of the Council of Economic Advisors and a member of the Obama administration, argued that the expenditure multiplier was well above one, on the order of 1.5, and was larger in absolute value than the tax multiplier. Research of other economists who were not in the Obama administration led to a different conclusion that the expenditure multiplier was less than one, on the order of 0.5, and that the tax multiplier would be larger in absolute value than the expenditure multiplier.⁹

⁸The Web appendix to Chapter 12, which outlines the algebra of the AD/AS model, shows in Equation 12WA-6 that $\Delta Y/\Delta G = 1/[1 - mpc + (c + d + \chi)\lambda\gamma]$ which is less than $1/[1 - mpc]$. This reflects the additional term $1 - mpc + (c + d + \chi)\lambda\gamma$ in the denominator, which reflects that as output rises, inflation rises and hence the real interest rate rises.

⁹This debate and the research on the magnitude of expenditure and tax multipliers is discussed in Sylvain Leduc, “Fighting Downturns with Fiscal Policy,” *Federal Reserve Bank of San Francisco Economic Letter*, 2009-20 (June 19, 2009), which can be found at www.frbsf.org/publications/economics/letter/2009/el2009-20.html

A compromise emerged from the vigorous debate on the size of expenditure and tax multipliers: the \$787 billion fiscal stimulus package passed in February 2009, the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act, offered a mix of tax cuts (\$288 billion) and government spending increases (\$499 billion).

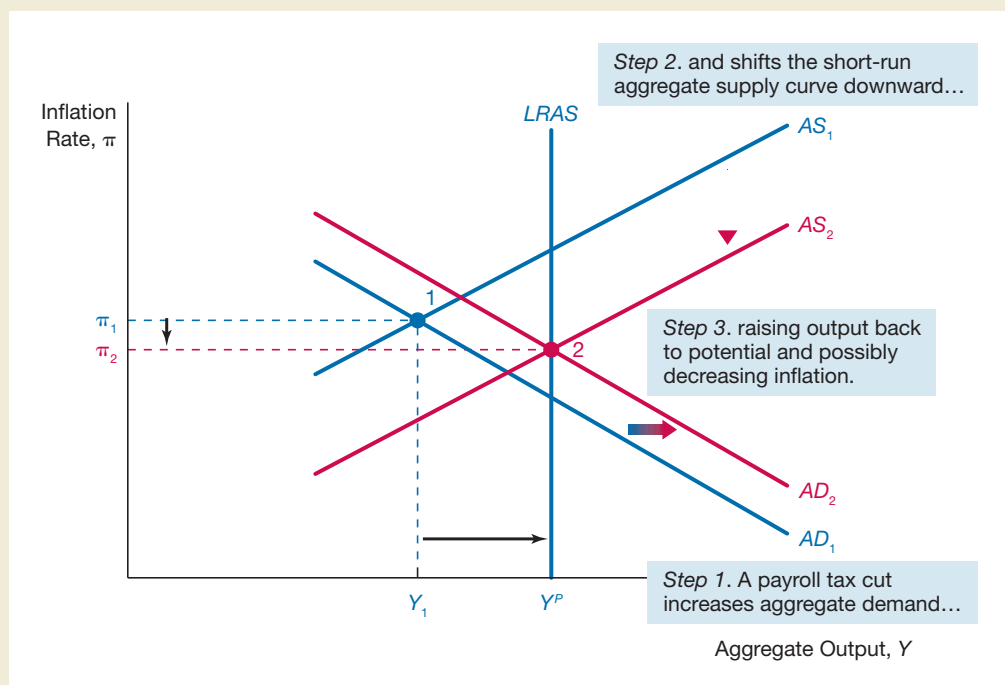
Aggregate Supply and Fiscal Policy

We will now show how fiscal policy can also affect aggregate supply. Specifically, tax cuts might affect both the short- and long-run aggregate supply curves. Consider the case where the economy is at point 1 in Figure 16.4, where aggregate output at Y_1 is below potential output at Y^P . A temporary cut in the **payroll tax**, taxes on wages such as Social Security taxes, acts just like a temporary positive supply shock that we introduced in Chapter 12: it lowers the wage cost of production and reduces inflation at each level of aggregate output, so the short-run aggregate supply curve in Figure 16.4 shifts downward and to the right from AS_1 to AS_2 .¹⁰ Because a payroll tax increases disposable income and thereby consumption expenditure, it also increases aggregate demand, shifting the aggregate demand curve rightward from AD_1 to AD_2 in Figure 16.4. The economy therefore moves from point 1 to point 2, where aggregate output rises back to Y^P , but in contrast to Figure 16.3, inflation may not necessarily rise. It might even fall if the downward and rightward shift

FIGURE 16.4

Effect of a Temporary Payroll Tax Cut

A cut in payroll taxes shifts the aggregate demand curve to the right from AD_1 to AD_2 , but it also shifts the short-run aggregate supply curve downward and to the right from AS_1 to AS_2 . The economy therefore moves from point 1 to point 2 where the downward and rightward shift in the short-run aggregate supply curve might be sufficiently large to lead to an inflation rate of π_2 that is below the initial level of π_1 .



¹⁰The analysis here is for a temporary cut in the payroll tax. If the payroll tax is permanent, we obtain the same conclusion that output rises and inflation may even fall. However, if the payroll tax cut is permanent, it may have even more beneficial effects. In this case, the permanent decline in the cost of labor for firms might cause the long-run aggregate supply curve to shift to the right, and the higher future income as a result may then induce households and businesses to spend more, thus boosting aggregate demand further. The result would then be an even larger increase in output and a lower inflation rate.

in the aggregate supply curve is sufficiently large so that the inflation rate of π_2 is below the initial level of π_1 , as shown in Figure 16.4.

Supply-Side Economics and Fiscal Policy

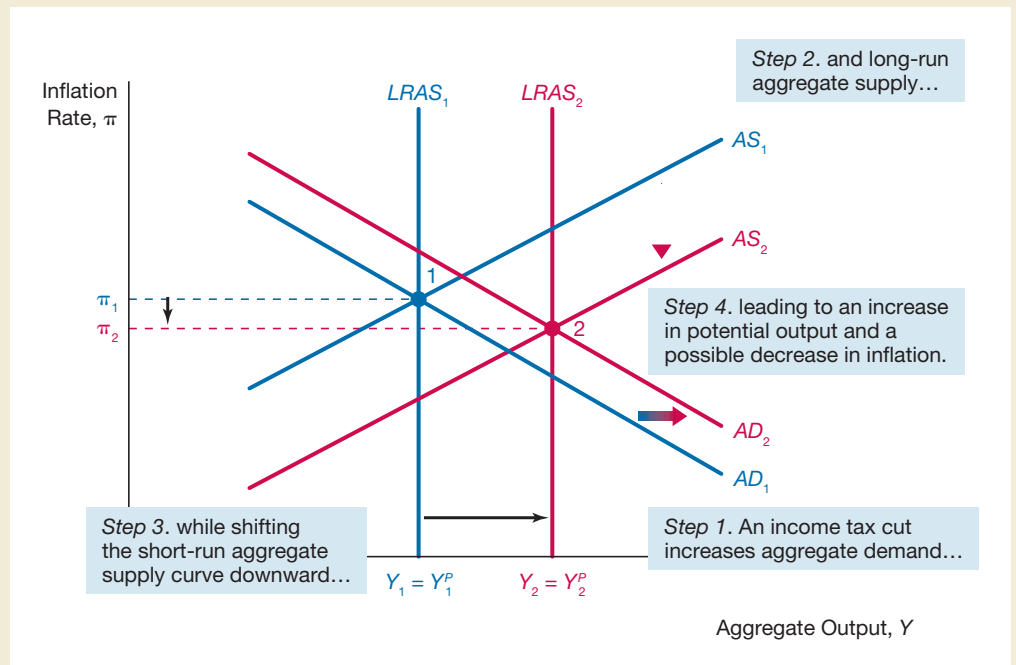
Some economists, known as **supply-siders**, of whom Arthur Laffer is the most famous, amplify the favorable effects of tax cuts on aggregate supply. Supply-siders believe that permanent cuts in tax rates, even ones that do not directly lower costs, such as income taxes, will increase aggregate demand. We present supply-side analysis of tax cuts in Figure 16.5. An income tax cut shifts the aggregate demand curve in the figure rightward from AD_1 to AD_2 and also induces more investment and greater work effort so that there will be a large, positive permanent effect on aggregate supply. In Chapter 12, we analyzed the impact of a permanent aggregate supply shock. The cut in income tax rates increases long-run aggregate supply, shifting the long-run aggregate supply curve rightward from $LRAS_1$ to $LRAS_2$ in Figure 16.5. The lower inflation then decreases short-run aggregate supply, shifting the short-run aggregate supply curve down and to the right from AS_1 to AS_2 . Cuts in tax rates that increase both aggregate demand and long-run aggregate supply are therefore highly expansionary. At point 2 in Figure 16.5, aggregate output rises to Y_2 , while inflation at π_2 is possibly lower than its initial level of π_1 .¹¹

Some supply-siders, like Arthur Laffer, believe that the expansion in aggregate output from cuts in tax rates is so large that the tax base (the income on which taxes are levied) will rise by enough so that tax revenue will go up despite the cut in tax rates. The cut in tax rates would then be self-financing: cutting taxes would not increase the budget deficit. This “you can have your cake and eat it, too” scenario is highly controversial. Although there may be some permanent

FIGURE 16.5

Supply-Side Tax Cuts

Supply-siders believe that an income tax cut increases aggregate demand and long-run aggregate supply. The aggregate demand curve shifts to the right from AD_1 to AD_2 , the long-run aggregate supply curve shifts to the right from $LRAS_1$ to $LRAS_2$, and the short-run aggregate supply curve shifts down and to the right from AS_1 to AS_2 . The economy moves from point 1 to point 2: aggregate output rises substantially from Y_1 to Y_2 and inflation may even fall from π_1 to π_2 .



¹¹The result that inflation falls results from the assumption that the long-run aggregate supply curve shifts out by more than the aggregate demand curve.

effect on aggregate supply from cutting tax rates, most economists believe that the increase in the tax base is not sufficient to offset the lower tax rates and so tax revenue is likely to fall, not rise. Nonetheless, the supply-siders' line of reasoning indicates that there is likely to be some offset to the loss of revenue from lowering tax rates.

Balancing the Budget: Expansionary or Contractionary?

Our aggregate demand and supply analysis of the impact of fiscal policy suggests that higher budget deficits, arising from either a cut in taxes or an increase in government spending, are expansionary in the short run. We would then expect balancing the government budget to be contractionary because it would require that we decrease aggregate demand.

Is this view always true? Not necessarily: it does not take into account that balancing the budget may have beneficial future effects that will influence the behavior of households and businesses today, particularly if balancing the budget is sustained. A sustained cut in the budget deficit means that the government will not have to raise taxes to finance future deficits. A sustained cut in the budget deficit, either from a decrease in government spending or higher taxes, then implies that future taxes will be lower. Because, as we will see in Chapter 19, lower taxes will increase capital formation and decrease distortions in the economy, measures to balance the budget can act just like a permanent positive supply shock. Figure 16.5 shows that a permanent positive supply shock increases long-run aggregate supply and causes the short-run aggregate supply curve to shift down and to the right. However, when households and businesses see the permanent decrease in government spending, they may anticipate the higher level of aggregate output that will occur as a result of the increase in long-run aggregate supply. The anticipations of higher future aggregate output may then offset the negative effects of cutting government spending or raising taxes on aggregate demand, and so households and businesses may therefore increase their spending sufficiently to increase aggregate demand. The analysis is then exactly the same as we saw in Figure 16.5, where the economy moves to point 2 and aggregate output increases to Y_2 . This scenario is not just theoretical, as the following Policy and Practice case indicates.

Policy and Practice



Two Expansionary Fiscal Contractions: Denmark and Ireland

In 1982, a conservative government came into power in Denmark and began a major program of fiscal retrenchment, lowering the budget deficit by 15% of GDP over the next four years. Instead of causing a contraction in economic activity as the conventional analysis would indicate, real GDP averaged a high 3.6% growth rate from 1983 to 1986. Consumption spending rose rapidly despite a reduction in disposable income due to higher taxes, while investment also boomed.

Ireland had a similar experience a few years later. In 1987, the new prime minister, Charles Haughey, launched a tough austerity program that brought down the deficit by 7% of GDP. The Irish economy, which had previously not been growing, began to boom. After this fiscal retrenchment, Ireland experienced what many have called the “Irish miracle,” with Ireland characterized as the “Celtic Tiger” because its economy had such impressive growth rates.

Both these episodes suggest that fiscal retrenchments can be expansionary because they lower future taxes and boost aggregate demand and long-run aggregate supply. Whether this is the full story behind the Danish and Irish experiences is debated, but it does show that a mechanism to make contractionary fiscal policy expansionary for economic activity is a real possibility.¹²

Budget Deficits and Inflation

Expansionary fiscal policy that increases the budget deficit, either from a cut in taxes or an increase in government spending, leads to higher inflation in the short run. However, as we discussed in Chapter 13, inflation in the long run will not rise as long as monetary policy focuses on price stability and takes steps to keep inflation under control. Monetary authorities, however, are not able to control inflation in the long run when budget deficits are too large, as we will see in this section.

Government-Issued Money

To illustrate the challenge of inflation and budget deficits, let's go back to the government budget constraint in Equation 2 (Deficit = $\Delta B + \Delta M$), which told us that a government budget deficit has to be financed either by the sale of government bonds (ΔB) or by issuing money (ΔM), which we refer to more commonly as **printing money**. The use of the word *printing* is slightly misleading—it is not the actual printing of money that is important, but rather the *use* of new government-printed money to purchase goods and services. We call the revenue the government generates by issuing the currency **seignorage**.¹³ In practice, the actual way that money is issued is by the central bank purchasing government debt and paying for it with money. This is why issuing money to finance the debt is referred to as **monetizing the debt**.

Now let's see what happens if the government wants to purchase \$100 billion of medical care, but does not want to raise taxes to pay for it and the public is unwilling to purchase bonds. The government will print money, issuing \$100 billion of currency to pay for the medical care.¹⁴

As we saw in Chapter 5, printing money will impact inflation. In the long run, the inflation rate will move very closely with the growth rate of the money supply:

$$\pi = \Delta M/M \quad (4)$$

¹²For an analysis of these two episodes see, Francesco Giavazzi and Marco Pagano, "Can Severe Fiscal Contractions Be Expansionary? Tales of Two Small European Countries," *NBER Macroeconomics Annual*, (1990): 75–122.

¹³The term comes from *seigneur*, the French word for feudal lord, who in the Middle Ages had the right to coin money.

¹⁴In modern economies, the government does not typically issue currency directly to pay for purchases. Instead it sells newly issued bonds to the public, which are then bought by the central bank. As we saw in Chapter 10, this process leads to an expansion of the money supply.

Hence large budget deficits financed by printing money lead to high inflation. Indeed, in Chapter 5, we cited the recent example of hyperinflation in Zimbabwe. In all cases of hyperinflation, the source of the inflation was very high money growth that resulted from very large budget deficits.

Revenue from Seignorage

How much revenue in real terms can the government obtain from seignorage? To answer this question, we need to rearrange the terms in Equation 4. First, let's multiply both sides of Equation 4 by M , to get

$$\Delta M = \pi \times M \quad (5)$$

Then dividing both sides by the price level, P , we have

$$\Delta M/P = \pi \times (M/P) \quad (6)$$

Equation 6 tells us that the revenue from printing money in real terms, $\Delta M/P$, is the inflation rate, π , multiplied by the amount of real money balances, M/P . This equation explains why economists also refer to seignorage as an **inflation tax** because the resulting higher inflation leads to a tax on holders of money balances, which lose value in real terms. For any tax, revenue in real terms equals the tax rate multiplied by the tax base in real terms. We see this relationship in Equation 6, where the tax rate is the inflation rate and the real tax base is the amount of real money balances.

Intuitively, we can see that the government collects this inflation tax if we recognize that the value of money balances held by households and businesses declines every year by the inflation rate. In real terms, holders of money balances have lost in total the amount on the right-hand side of Equation 6, which is just like a tax on them. The amount of revenue the government has collected from the inflation tax is the left-hand side of Equation 6, because the government has used new money it has printed in real terms, $\Delta M/P$, to purchase real goods and services.

Concerns about a government's desire to exploit the inflation tax to raise revenue when it has high budget deficits has led to calls for measures to prevent high government budget deficits. One such attempt is the Stability and Growth Pact adopted by the countries that are part of the euro area, as the following Policy and Practice case discusses.

Policy and Practice



The Euro Area's Stability and Growth Pact: A Greek Tragedy?

Concerns that high budget deficits would lead to inflation led the members of the euro area to adopt the Stability and Growth Pact in 1997. This pact required that member countries keep their budget deficits under 3% of GDP, except under the unusual circumstance of a decline of GDP of more than 2%. If a member country had budget deficits above this number under usual circumstances, then it would be subject to a penalty, which could range from 0.2% to 0.5% of GDP. For countries like Germany and France, this could be a big number, over \$10 billion.

At first, the Stability and Growth Pact seemed to work, with members' budget deficits falling from an average of around 2% to close to zero. However, starting in

2000 with the slowing of economic growth in the euro area, budget deficits began to rise and some countries started to exceed the 3% deficit limit. Portugal was the first euro country to exceed the 3% budget deficit limit in 2001, with France, Germany, and Italy soon following. The deficit limit would have prevented these countries from pursuing contractionary fiscal policy. A fight within the euro area then ensued, with the European Central Bank, whose job it is to keep inflation under control, taking a hard line that the Stability and Growth Pact should be strictly enforced. Member countries eventually decided not to enforce the sanctions against countries exceeding the deficit target because they considered the target too rigid. In 2005, euro area members amended the Stability and Growth Pact to be more flexible, allowing suspension of the rules when economic growth is positive, but low. In addition, they dropped the pecuniary penalty.

The recent worldwide recession in 2007–2009 strained the Stability and Growth Pact even further, with budget deficits climbing way above the 3% limit throughout the euro area. Indeed, after it was revealed that the Greek government had lied about its budget finances, Greece's deficit grew so large in 2010 that it could not raise funds at reasonable interest rates, and it looked likely it would default on its debt. Fears that a Greek default would lead to government defaults on their debt elsewhere in Europe, the European Union and the International Monetary Fund came to the rescue with a massive bailout of nearly \$1 trillion. In addition, the European Central Bank (ECB) agreed to purchase Greek debt, leading to fears that the ECB will monetize the debt, leading to future inflation.

Clearly, the Stability and Growth Pact has been unable to reign in budget deficits in the euro area, illustrating how hard it is to implement rules to limit government budget deficits. The Greek bailout means that the Stability and Growth Pact is all but dead. How the European Union will keep its members from engaging in fiscal profligacy in the future is anyone's guess.

Budget Deficits and Ricardian Equivalence

So far we have discussed the traditional view of how fiscal policy and budget deficits affect the economy in both the short and the long run. Robert Barro, of Harvard University, however, argues that some types of fiscal policy, particularly budget deficits resulting from tax cuts, may not have much impact on the economy. His argument—which he dubbed **Ricardian equivalence** after the great nineteenth century economist David Ricardo, who discussed this possibility—suggests that tax cuts have no effect on spending and national saving.

Ricardian equivalence is based on the view that consumers are very forward looking in their behavior and factor their current disposable income and future income into decisions about the amount they want to spend.¹⁵ To see the rationale behind Ricardian equivalence, suppose the government cuts taxes today, without any change in current or future government spending. Forward-looking consumers will recognize that the budget deficit today will have to be paid for through higher future taxes. Knowing they will have to pay these taxes in the future, consumers understand that

¹⁵We will explore this viewpoint in much greater detail in Chapter 18 on consumption.

even though current disposable income, $Y - T$, rises, they will have lower disposable income in the future. As a result, they will not change their spending behavior and will save more today in order to pay those future taxes.

Implications of Ricardian Equivalence

The Ricardian equivalence view has important implications for the effects of tax changes on 1) aggregate demand, 2) national saving and the burden on future generations, and 3) inflation.

AGGREGATE DEMAND. Ricardian equivalence implies that tax cuts will have little impact on household spending and will therefore not lead to an increase in aggregate demand. Ricardian equivalence thus calls into question whether tax cuts will have the expansionary impact through increased consumption spending that our aggregate demand and supply analysis in Figure 16.3 indicates. Ricardian equivalence does not rule out supply-side effects on output and inflation from tax cuts with features that affect aggregate supply.

NATIONAL SAVING AND THE BURDEN ON FUTURE GENERATIONS. Ricardian equivalence also implies that tax cuts do not affect national saving and so the resulting budget deficits that arise (if government spending remains unchanged) are not a burden on future generations. That is, tax cuts have little impact on consumer spending and aggregate output: when taxes and therefore government saving ($T - G$) fall, private saving ($Y - T - C$) rises by exactly the same amount. National saving, the sum of government and private saving, thus remains unchanged. As we can see from Equation 3, since national saving stays constant, tax cuts do not crowd out private investment or lead to lower net exports that must be financed by greater indebtedness to foreigners.

INFLATION. The third implication is that budget deficits that result from tax cuts will only be inflationary if the government has trouble selling bonds used to finance budget deficits. When a budget deficit arises from tax cuts, inflation will not rise: lower taxes today leave consumer spending unchanged and induce more saving. But where can households put their increased saving? They put them into the bond market. Cutting taxes today therefore leads households to purchase more government bonds, so that the government does not have to print money to finance the resulting budget deficit. Cutting taxes therefore does not lead to higher money supply growth and so does not produce inflation.

Objections to Ricardian Equivalence

Although Ricardian equivalence is an elegant theory, several important objections support the traditional view that tax cuts raise consumer spending, lower national saving, and burden future generations.

MYOPIA. Ricardian equivalence requires that people recognize that lower taxes today will just mean higher taxes tomorrow, so they are no better off and therefore do not alter their spending plans. But what if people are shortsighted or just don't

understand that lower taxes today will mean higher taxes tomorrow? Lower taxes will likely make most people feel better off, so they will spend more. Not only will tax cuts be expansionary, in contrast to the conclusion reached from Ricardian equivalence, but private saving will not rise by as much as government saving falls, leading to lower national saving. The tax cuts and the resulting budget deficit will burden future generations.

BORROWING CONSTRAINTS. Even if people are forward looking and recognize that lower taxes today imply higher taxes tomorrow, they may still spend more when they have higher disposable income today because of their lower tax payments. Increased spending will occur if they are subject to **borrowing constraints** that prevent them from borrowing the full amount that they would like. Suppose that Leroy, who is subject to borrowing constraints, has future income that is considerably higher than his income today, a problem that many students face. He will not be able to spend more than his current income because he will be unable to borrow to do so. A cut in taxes today would raise his current income, now making him willing and able to spend more. If a significant percentage of the population is borrowing constrained, as seems sensible, then tax cuts will stimulate spending and lower national saving.

CONCERN FOR FUTURE GENERATIONS. A cut in taxes today does not mean that governments will raise taxes in the near future. Indeed, by the time taxes are raised to pay for the budget shortfall, many of the people today who are the beneficiaries of the tax cut may no longer be alive. These individuals may be perfectly happy to spend more today. After all, the current generation is made better off by the tax cuts if it doesn't care about future generations. Therefore, a tax cut can benefit the current generation at the expense of future generations.

Robert Barro has countered this argument by pointing out that we do care about our children and our children's children. Indeed, many people leave large bequests (inheritances) to their children and grandchildren, suggesting that they may value future generations' welfare as much as their own. In this case, lower taxes today will induce them to save more and not increase their spending today. Many people, however, do not leave bequests, either because they lack the financial resources, they don't have children, they don't like their children, or they expect their children to be richer than they are. When tax cuts give them more income today, they will not increase their saving and will instead spend more, placing a greater burden on future generations.

Bottom Line on Ricardian Equivalence

The debate over whether tax cuts are expansionary and lead to a reduction in national saving centers on how consumers behave. If they are forward looking, not subject to borrowing constraints, and care a lot about their children and their children's children, then Ricardian equivalence will hold and tax cuts will not burden future generations. On the other hand, if households are myopic or borrowing-constrained or don't care about future generations, then tax cuts will raise consumer spending, lower national saving, and put a burden on future generations. The empirical evidence on Ricardian equivalence is mixed, as the following Policy and Practice case suggests.

The Bush Tax Cuts and Ricardian Equivalence

The George W. Bush administration put forward legislation to permanently lower taxes that Congress passed in 2001 and 2003. What does Ricardian equivalence predict should have happened to household saving?

According to Ricardian equivalence, household saving should have risen to pay for the future tax increases that the higher budget deficits would require. Instead, household saving, which was at an already-low 3.5% of personal disposable income in 2003, fell even further to an average of 2.2% from 2004 to 2007. At first glance, households did not behave as Ricardian equivalence suggests. Household behavior appears to have been in line with the traditional view of how fiscal policy and government deficits affect the economy.

However, as is often the case in economics, the evidence from this period is not definitive due to other factors. The boom in housing prices and the stock market raised wealth and may have induced households to reduce saving. Or maybe people expected that lower taxes would lead to lower future government spending, as President Bush promised, and so felt that they would be better off as a result of the tax cuts because their future disposable income would be higher. The debate still continues on whether the traditional view or Ricardian equivalence view reigns supreme.

SUMMARY

1. The government deficit equals government spending minus tax revenues: $\text{Deficit} = \text{Spending} - \text{Tax Revenues} = (G + \text{TRANSFERS} + \text{INTEREST}) - \text{TAXES}$. The government budget constraint tells us that the government can finance the deficit either by selling bonds or by printing money, that is, $\text{Deficit} = [\text{change in amount of debt (bonds) in the hands of the public}] + [\text{change in amount of money}] = \Delta B + \Delta M$.
2. During World War II, federal government spending led to massive increases in budget deficits, increasing the debt-to-GDP ratio to over 100% of GDP. Subsequently, the debt-to-GDP ratio fell because of the rapid growth of GDP, with the stock of government debt changing relatively little. In recent years, large budget deficits have led to an increase in the debt-to-GDP ratio. This ratio could rise even further due to the entitlements of Social Security and Medicare/Medicaid. Although government debt relative to the size of the economy has risen in recent years, the U.S. debt-to-GDP ratio is substantially lower than many other countries.
3. Although some government spending goes into capital formation and much of it is held by U.S. households, suggesting government debt may not be a burden on future generations, there are other reasons government debt is a burden. First, government budget deficits may crowd out private investment and so lower the future capital stock, resulting in fewer goods and services being produced in the future. Second, not all U.S. government debt is owned by U.S. households, and the large amount owed to foreigners is a burden on future generations. Third, rising government debt involves future payments to bondholders, who are likely to be richer, so it involves a redistribution from relatively poorer people to richer people. Fourth, governments may be subject to debt intolerance so that rising debt may lead to a default that can trigger a financial crisis with devastating effects on the economy. Fifth, high levels of government debt lead to higher future taxes that can lead to a less efficient economy. The distortions due to high tax rates provide an argument for tax smoothing, that is, keeping tax rates relatively constant when there are temporary swings in government spending.
4. Fiscal policy has important effects on the economy in the short run. The conventional view is that expansionary fiscal policy, such as a cut in taxes or an increase in government spending, leads to an

increase in aggregate demand that leads to higher output and inflation. However, possible effects on aggregate supply from tax cuts may make them even more expansionary because they lead to an increase in long-run aggregate supply. Supply-siders argue that the expansionary effects of tax cuts are so large that they may not even lead to higher budget deficits. This view is highly controversial. Aggregate supply effects do suggest that balancing the budget can sometimes be expansionary.

5. Budget deficits can lead to inflation if they cannot be financed by issuing bonds and the government instead resorts to financing its deficits by printing money. Financing deficits by printing money is referred to as an inflation tax because the resulting higher inflation leads to a tax on holders of money balances, which lose value in real terms. The revenue from printing money in real terms is $\Delta M/P = \pi \times (M/P)$.
6. In contrast to the traditional view that tax cuts lead to higher spending, Ricardian equivalence suggests that tax cuts have no effect on spending. Ricardian equivalence is based on the view that consumers are very forward looking and so tax cuts today lead to expectations of higher taxes in the future. When consumers recognize that tax cuts make them no richer, they do not spend more. Ricardian equivalence implies that tax cuts do not affect aggregate demand and lead to a rise in private saving equal to the decline in government saving so that national saving remain unchanged. Thus tax cuts do not create a burden on future generations. Ricardian equivalence also suggests that tax cuts do not lead to higher inflation because the resulting increase in private saving enables the government to finance the deficit by selling bonds without resorting to printing money. Objections to Ricardian equivalence include the following: consumers are subject to myopia, are borrowing constrained, or do not care about future generations.

KEY TERMS

borrowing constraints, p. 417	government budget constraint, p. 400	printing money, p. 413
contributions for social insurance, p. 399	government capital, p. 404	Ricardian equivalence, p. 415
corporate taxes, p. 399	government purchases, p. 397	seignorage, p. 413
crowding out, p. 405	grants in aid, p. 398	supply-siders, p. 411
debt intolerance, p. 406	human capital, p. 404	tariffs, p. 399
debt repudiation, p. 406	inflation tax, p. 414	tax multiplier, p. 408
dependency ratio, p. 402	monetizing the debt, p. 413	tax smoothing, p. 407
distortions, p. 406	net interest payments, p. 398	tax wedges, p. 406
entitlements, p. 398	payroll tax, p. 410	taxes on production and imports, p. 399
expenditure multiplier, p. 408	personal taxes, p. 399	transfer payments, p. 398

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

The Government Budget

1. Identify the four main categories of government spending and give an example of each. What are the government's four main revenue sources?
2. What is a budget deficit and what are the two main ways the government can finance deficit spending? Which of these methods of financing deficits does the U.S. government most commonly use?

Size of the Government Debt

3. What factors have influenced the debt-to-GDP ratio in the United States since 1940?

Fiscal Policy and the Economy in the Long Run

4. What arguments should be considered in assessing the burden that government debt imposes on future generations?

Fiscal Policy and the Economy in the Short Run

5. How can government increase the quantity of aggregate output demanded by changing government spending and taxes? Why does the multiplier for spending changes differ from that for tax changes?
6. How does a supply-side analysis of the effects of a tax cut differ from one that focuses solely on aggregate demand?
7. Is balancing the budget a contractionary macroeconomic policy?

Budget Deficits and Inflation

8. What determines whether budget deficits will result in inflation in the long run?

Budget Deficits and Ricardian Equivalence

9. How does the Ricardian equivalence view of the effects of tax cuts (and budget deficits) differ from the traditional view? What objections to the Ricardian equivalence view have been raised?

PROBLEMS

All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

The Government Budget

1. Suppose government purchases amount to \$2.5 trillion, transfer payments amount to \$1 trillion, net interest payments are \$0.5 trillion and tax revenue is valued at \$3 trillion.
 - a) Calculate the government deficit.
 - b) Calculate the primary deficit.
2. Assume that Social Security taxes remain constant, but that the number of employed people in the United States declines over time.
 - a) Explain the effect of such a scenario on the size of contributions for social insurance and the government deficit in the United States.
 - b) Assume now that employment remains constant, but there is an increase in unemployment insurance benefits. How would your answer to a) change?
3. The definition of the government deficit is a matter of debate. What would be the effect on the measurement of the government deficit of considering Social Security taxes a “forced loan to the government” and benefit payments (e.g., Medicare, Social Security benefits, etc.) a “repayment of principal plus interest”?

Size of the Government Debt

4. In recent years, the United States has experienced a sharp increase in obesity rates (in particular amongst teenagers), which is considered to increase the probability of chronic diseases like diabetes. Even if the dependency ratio is constant, what would be the effect of such a trend on the size of the government debt?

Fiscal Policy and the Economy in the Long Run

5. As announced by the Obama administration, part of the 2009 fiscal stimulus package is directed to make broadband internet access available to most Americans.
- Should this be considered government consumption or government investment?
 - Describe the effect of such expenditures on the government debt burden.
6. On March 26, 2010, the *Wall Street Journal* reported the following: “A sudden drop-off in investor demand for U.S. Treasury notes is raising questions about whether interest rates will finally begin a march higher [...]. [...] there are signs the spotlight is turning to the ability of the U.S. to finance its own budget deficit.”¹⁶
- Explain the effect of higher Treasury note interest rates on the government deficit.
 - What would be the long run effect of distrust in the U.S. government’s ability to finance its own deficit?

Fiscal Policy and the Economy in the Short Run

7. Assume that the expenditure and tax multipliers can be estimated to be 0.75 and 0.5 respectively.
- Would you recommend expansionary fiscal policy based on tax cuts or increased government expenditures?
 - Suppose now that there is substantial evidence that supports the hypothesis of a crowding out effect in this economy. How would your answer to a) change?
8. A government committed to long-run fiscal discipline (i.e., low or zero budget deficits) usually conducts contractionary fiscal policy at some point to reduce the government deficit. If that action is interpreted as a commitment to long run fiscal discipline
- Describe the effects on autonomous consumption and investment expenditure.
 - Describe the effects on the cost of borrowing by issuing bonds.

Budget Deficits and Inflation

9. What would happen to revenue from seignorage if the inflation rate is very high? Hint: check Equation 6 and assume a quickly rising price level.

Budget Deficits and Ricardian Equivalence

10. Consider the effect of a tax cut (if government spending remains the same) in a country with an underdeveloped financial system.
- Assuming individuals are forward looking (i.e., the Ricardian equivalence argument holds), what do you think might happen to national saving in this case?
 - How do you think forward looking individuals might overcome the limitations of an underdeveloped financial system?

¹⁶Tom Lauricella, “Debt Fears Send Rates Up: Unease at Deficit Hurts Demand for Treasuries; Mortgage Costs on the Rise,” *Wall Street Journal*, March 26, 2010. <http://online.wsj.com/article/SB10001424052748704094104575144244213486742.html>



MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.

Online appendix “Other Measures of the Government Budget Deficit” is available at the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin





17

Exchange Rates and International Economic Policy

Preview

From 2000 until July 2008, the value of the U.S. dollar relative to other currencies fell by over 17%. Over the course of a few particularly volatile months during the worldwide financial crisis from 2007–2009, the dollar underwent a dramatic recovery. It rose by 20% relative to the euro by the end of October 2008 and by 15% relative to a wider basket of currencies.

The price of one currency in terms of another is called the *exchange rate*. How do swings in the exchange rate affect economic activity? What drives fluctuations in the exchange rate? How do fluctuations in exchange rates affect macroeconomic policy?

We answer these questions in this chapter by examining the financial market that determines exchange rates in the long and short runs and then seeing why exchange rates are so important in our everyday lives. We then develop a supply and demand analysis to see how exchange rates are determined. Finally, we examine the impact of exchange rate fluctuations on the economy and explore their impact on macroeconomic policy.

Foreign Exchange Market and Exchange Rates

Most countries of the world have established currencies: the United States has its dollar; the member countries of the European Monetary Union, the euro; Brazil, the real; and China, the yuan. Trade between countries requires the mutual exchange of different currencies (or, more often, of bank deposits denominated in different currencies). When a U.S. firm buys foreign goods, services, or financial assets, for example, the firm must exchange U.S. dollars (typically, bank deposits denominated in U.S. dollars) for foreign currency (bank deposits denominated in the foreign currency).

The trading of currencies and bank deposits denominated in particular currencies to determine exchange rates takes place in the **foreign exchange market**. Transactions in the foreign exchange market determine the exchange rates at which individuals and firms exchange currencies, which in turn determine the cost of purchasing foreign goods and financial assets.

Foreign Exchange Rates

There are two kinds of exchange rate transactions. The predominant ones, called **spot transactions**, affect the immediate (two-day) exchange of bank deposits. **Forward transactions** ensure the exchange of bank deposits at some specified future date. The **spot exchange rate** is the exchange rate for the spot transaction and the **forward exchange rate** is the exchange rate for the forward transaction.

Exchange rate quotes are stated as either units of foreign currency per domestic currency or units of domestic currency per foreign currency. For example, the media typically quotes Japanese yen as the amount of the currency per dollar (amount of yen per dollar). An exchange rate of 100 yen/\$ means that for every dollar, you can get 100 yen. In other cases, such as the British pound or the euro, the currency quote is typically the amount of dollars per unit of the foreign currency (dollars per pound or euro). For example, an exchange rate of \$1.50/euro means you can exchange a euro for \$1.50.

When a currency increases in value relative to other currencies, it experiences **appreciation**; when it falls in value, it undergoes **depreciation**. At the beginning of 1999, when the euro first came into existence, it was valued at 1.18 dollars; as indicated in the Macroeconomics in the News box, “Foreign Exchange Rates,” on May 5, 2010, it was valued at 1.28 dollars. The euro *appreciated* by 8%: $(1.28 - 1.18)/1.18 = 0.08 = 8\%$. That is, when you exchange euros for dollars, you get more dollars. Equivalently, we could say that the U.S. dollar, which went from a value of 0.85 euro per dollar at the beginning of 1999 to a value of 0.78 euro per dollar on May 5, 2010, *depreciated* by 8%: $(0.78 - 0.85)/0.85 = -0.08 = -8\%$. When you exchange dollars for euros, you now get fewer euros.

Throughout this chapter, we quote the exchange rate for a currency, denoted by E , using the convention that an appreciation of the currency corresponds to a rise in the exchange rate. That is, for the U.S. dollar, we will always present the exchange rate as units of foreign currency per dollar (say, yen per dollar).¹

The Distinction Between Real and Nominal Exchange Rates

We can present exchange rates in *real* or *nominal* terms, which you will see is an important distinction.

NOMINAL EXCHANGE RATE. In precise terms, we refer to the exchange rate, which is the relative price of one currency in terms of another, as the **nominal exchange rate**. It is defined in nominal terms and not in terms of purchasing power: it does not tell you

¹In professional writing, many economists quote exchange rates as units of domestic currency per foreign currency so that an appreciation of the domestic currency is portrayed as a fall in the exchange rate. We use the opposite convention in the text here, because it is more intuitive to think of an appreciation of the domestic currency as a rise in the exchange rate.

MACROECONOMICS IN THE NEWS

Foreign Exchange Rates

Foreign exchange rates are published daily in newspapers. Here we look at one example that appears in the “Currency Trading” column of the *Wall Street Journal*.

The entry for the euro lists the exchange rate for the spot transaction (the spot exchange rate) on May 5, 2010, quoted in two ways: \$1.2821 per euro and 0.7800 euro per dollar. U.S. firms generally regard the exchange rate with the euro as \$1.2821 per euro, while Europeans think of it as 0.7800 euro per dollar. The three entries immediately below the spot exchange rates for some currencies give the rates for forward transactions (the forward exchange rates) that will take place one month, three months, and six months in the future.

Source: *Wall Street Journal*. May 6, 2010, C2.

Currencies

May 5, 2010

U.S.-dollar foreign-exchange rates in late New York trading

Country/currency	US\$ vs.			Country/currency	US\$ vs.		
	Wed in US\$	per US\$	YTD chg (%)		Wed in US\$	per US\$	YTD chg (%)
Americas				Europe			
Argentina peso*	.2566	3.8971	2.5	Czech Rep. koruna	.04912	20.358	10.4
Brazil real	.5573	1.7944	2.9	Denmark krone	.1723	5.8038	11.7
Canada dollar	.9710	1.0299	-2.0	Euro area euro	1.2821	.7800	11.7
1-mos forward	.9711	1.0298	-2.0	Hungary forint	.004598	217.49	15.1
3-mos forward	.9709	1.0300	-2.0	Norway krone	.1642	6.0901	5.1
6-mos forward	.9701	1.0308	-2.0	Poland zloty	.3141	3.1837	11.0
Chile peso	.001901	526.04	3.7	Russia ruble\$	.03328	30.048	-0.9
Colombia peso	.0005009	1996.41	-2.3	Sweden krona	.1320	7.5758	5.8
Ecuador US dollar	1	1	unch	Switzerland franc	.8948	1.1176	7.9
Mexico peso*	.0785	12.7356	-2.6	1-mos forward	.8954	1.1168	7.9
Peru new sol	.3509	2.850	-1.4	3-mos forward	.8964	1.1156	7.8
Uruguay peso†	.05220	19.16	-1.9	6-mos forward	.8981	1.1135	7.7
Venezuela b. fuerte	.232851	4.2946	100.0	Turkey lira*	.6502	1.5379	2.8
Asia-Pacific				Middle East/Africa			
Australian dollar	.9055	1.1044	-0.8	UK pound	1.5099	.6623	7.0
China yuan	.1465	6.8264	unch	1-mos forward	1.5098	.6623	7.0
Hong Kong dollar	.1287	7.7673	0.2	3-mos forward	1.5095	.6625	7.0
India rupee	.02231	44.823	-3.4	6-mos forward	1.5093	.6626	7.0
Indonesia rupiah	.0001100	9091	-3.5	Bahrain dinar	2.6526	.3770	unch
Japan yen	.010666	93.76	0.7	Egypt pound*	.1794	5.5741	1.6
1-mos forward	.010670	93.72	0.7	Israel shekel	.2650	3.7736	-0.5
3-mos forward	.010678	93.65	0.7	Jordan dinar	1.4129	.7078	unch
6-mos forward	.010694	93.51	0.6	Kuwait dinar	3.4507	.2898	0.9
Malaysia ringgit	.3097	3.2289	-5.7	Lebanon pound	.0006664	1500.60	-0.1
New Zealand dollar	.7169	1.3949	1.2	Saudi Arabia riyal	.2666	3.7509	unch
Pakistan rupee	.01188	84.175	-0.3	South Africa rand	.1311	7.6278	3.0
Philippines peso	.0221	45.249	-2.7	UAE dirham	.2723	3.6724	unch
Singapore dollar	.7178	1.3931	-0.9	SDR††	1.4936	.6695	5.0
South Korea won	.0008965	1115.45	-4.3				
Taiwan dollar	.03164	31.606	-1.2				
Thailand baht	.03088	32.383	-2.9				
Vietnam dong	.00005270	18975	2.7				

*Floating rate †Financial ‡Government rate †Russian Central Bank rate **Rebased as of Jan 1, 2005
 ††Special Drawing Rights (SDR); from the International Monetary Fund; based on exchange rates for U.S., British and Japanese currencies.
 Note: Based on trading among banks of \$1 million and more, as quoted at 4 p.m. ET by Reuters



how much foreign goods and services the currency can buy. For example, if the nominal exchange rate between the U.S. dollar and the Japanese yen is 100 yen per dollar, you might think that you could get bargains in Japan because you get so many yen for each dollar. However, anyone who has visited Tokyo knows it is an expensive destination because it takes a lot of yen to buy goods and services there.

REAL EXCHANGE RATE. The **real exchange rate** is the relative price of goods in two countries, that is, the rate at which you can exchange domestic goods for foreign goods. Alternatively, think of it as the price of domestic goods denominated in foreign currency relative to the price of foreign goods in the foreign currency. It tells you how expensive one currency is in terms of another in real terms, that is, in terms of purchasing power. We also refer to the real exchange rate as the **terms of trade**.

To illustrate the real exchange rate, suppose a sweatshirt in New York costs \$20, while the cost of a sweatshirt in Tokyo is 4,000 yen. With the nominal exchange rate at 100 yen per dollar, the \$20 sweatshirt in New York translates into a cost of 2,000 yen. Despite the large

number of yen per dollar, sweatshirts in New York are quite a bit cheaper than in Tokyo: a sweatshirt in New York costs one-half as much as a sweatshirt in Tokyo. We can also say that a sweatshirt in New York trades for 0.5 sweatshirts in Tokyo, so the real exchange rate of 0.5 is below 1.0, indicating that goods are cheaper in the United States than in Japan.

We can write the preceding calculation as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Real Exchange Rate} &= \frac{(100 \text{ yen/dollar}) \times (20 \text{ dollars/U.S. sweatshirt})}{(4000 \text{ yen/Japanese sweatshirt})} \\ &= 0.5 \frac{\text{Japanese sweatshirt}}{\text{U.S. sweatshirt}} \end{aligned}$$

We can extend this calculation to a basket of goods. With P as the price level in the United States (measured in dollars) and P^* as the price level in Japan (measured in yen), the real exchange rate ε is as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \varepsilon &= E \times (P/P^*) \\ \text{Real Exchange Rate} &= \text{Nominal Exchange Rate} \times \text{Relative Price Levels} \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

To summarize the preceding equation, ***the real exchange rate is the nominal exchange rate times the relative price levels. When it is low (below 1), domestic goods are cheap relative to foreign goods; when it is high (greater than 1), domestic goods are expensive relative to foreign goods.*** In other words, the real exchange rate indicates whether a country's goods are relatively cheap or expensive compared with goods from other countries.

The Importance of Exchange Rates

As Equation 1 indicates, if prices are sticky—meaning price levels change slowly over time and can be taken as given in the short run—then exchange rates affect the relative price of domestic and foreign goods. Indeed, this is exactly what we see in the data, as Figure 17.1 illustrates for the yen/U.S. dollar exchange rate: short-run real and nominal exchange rates move together in the short run. The dollar price of Japanese goods to a U.S. consumer is determined by the interaction of two factors: the price of Japanese goods in yen and the yen/dollar exchange rate.

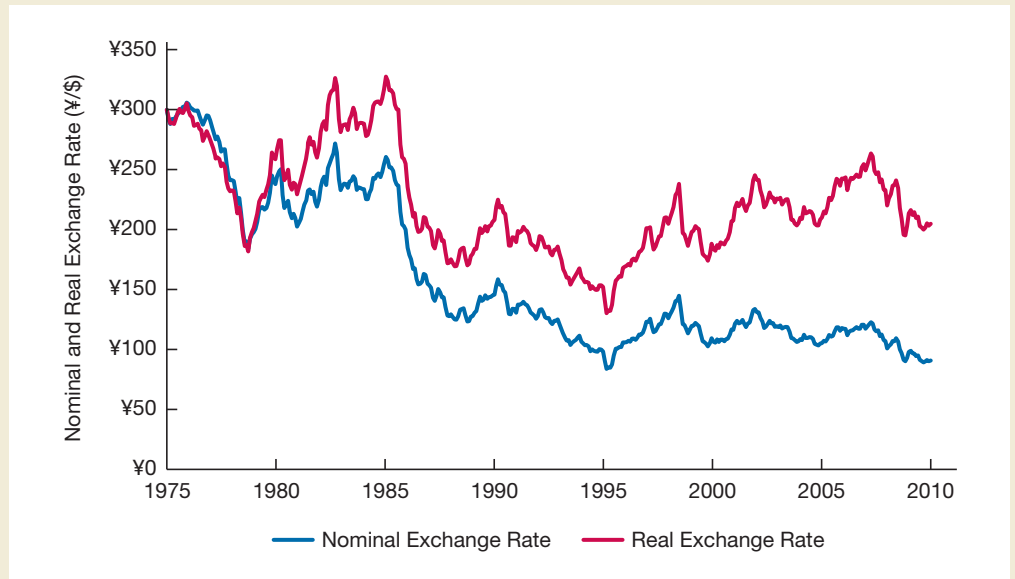
To illustrate, suppose Abe the American decides to buy the Japanese sweatshirt mentioned previously because he thinks the logo on it is cool. With the price of the sweatshirt in Japan of 4,000 yen and the yen exchange rate of \$0.01 (100 yen per \$), the sweatshirt will cost Abe \$40. Now suppose that Abe delays his purchase by a year, at which time the yen has appreciated to \$0.015 per yen. If the domestic price of the sweatshirt remains 4,000 yen because prices are sticky, its dollar cost will have risen from \$40 to \$60.

The same currency appreciation, however, makes the price of foreign goods in the domestic country less expensive. At an exchange rate of \$0.01 per yen, an Apple computer priced at \$2,000 costs Taka the Technician 200,000 yen in Japan; if the exchange rate increases to \$0.015 per yen, the computer will cost only 133,333 yen.

On the other hand, a depreciation of the yen lowers the cost of Japanese goods in the United States but raises the cost of U.S. goods in Japan. If the yen drops in value to

FIGURE 17.1**Real and Nominal yen/U.S. dollar Exchange Rate, 1975–2010**

In the short run, the real and nominal exchange rate for the yen/U.S. dollar move together.



Source: Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis, FRED database at <http://research.stlouisfed.org/fred2/categories/95>; and Statistics Bureau of Japan at www.e-stat.go.jp/SG1/estat/ListE.do?bid=000001015979&cycode=0; accessed September 30, 2010.

\$0.005, Abe's Japanese sweatshirt will cost him only \$20 instead of \$40, and the Apple computer will cost Taka 400,000 yen rather than 200,000 yen.

Such reasoning leads to the following conclusion: **when a country's currency appreciates (rises in value relative to other currencies) with sticky prices, the country's goods abroad become more expensive and foreign goods in that country become cheaper (holding domestic prices constant in the two countries). Conversely, when a country's currency depreciates, its goods abroad become cheaper and foreign goods in that country become more expensive.**

Depreciation of a currency makes it easier for domestic manufacturers to sell their goods abroad and makes foreign goods less competitive in domestic markets. From 2000 to 2008, the depreciating dollar helped U.S. industries sell more goods, but it hurt U.S. consumers because foreign goods were more expensive. The price of Japanese sweatshirts and the cost of vacationing abroad all rose as a result of the weak dollar.

Foreign Exchange Trading

You cannot go to a physical location to watch exchange rate transactions; currencies are not traded on exchanges such as the New York Stock Exchange. Instead, the foreign exchange market is an over-the-counter market in which several hundred dealers (mostly banks) stand ready to buy and sell bank deposits denominated in foreign currencies. For example, dealers facilitate exchanges for a fixed amount of euro bank deposits for a given amount of dollar bank deposits. Because these dealers are in constant telephone and computer contact, the market is very competitive; in effect, it functions no differently from a physical market.

While banks, companies, and governments talk about buying and selling currencies in foreign exchange markets, they do not take a fistful of dollar bills and sell them for British pound notes. Rather, most trades involve the buying and selling of bank deposits denominated in different currencies. When we say that a bank is buying dollars in the

foreign exchange market, we actually mean that the bank is buying *deposits denominated in dollars*. The volume in this market is colossal, exceeding \$4 trillion per day.

Individual trades in the foreign exchange market consist of transactions in excess of \$1 million and determine the exchange rates we referenced in the Macroeconomics in the News box. To buy foreign currency for a trip abroad, you would go to the retail market, with dealers such as American Express, or to a bank. Because retail prices are higher than wholesale prices on the foreign exchange market, when we buy foreign exchange as individuals, we obtain fewer units of foreign currency per dollar than the foreign exchange rate quote indicates.

Exchange Rates in the Long Run

Like the price of any good or asset in a free market, exchange rates are determined by the interaction of supply and demand. To simplify our analysis of exchange rates in a free market, we divide it into two parts. First, we examine how exchange rates are determined in the long run, then we use our knowledge of the long-run determinants of the exchange rate in the following section to see how they are determined in the short run. The starting point for understanding long-run exchange rates is the *law of one price*.

Law of One Price

According to the **law of one price**, if two countries produce an identical good and transportation costs and trade barriers are very low, the price of the good should be the same in both countries no matter which country produces it. As a result, we can determine the exchange rate necessary for the price of a good to be equal in two countries.

To illustrate, suppose U.S. steel costs \$100 per ton and identical Japanese steel costs 10,000 yen per ton. For the law of one price to hold, the exchange rate between the yen and the dollar must be 100 yen per dollar (\$0.01 per yen) so that one ton of U.S. steel sells for 10,000 yen in Japan (the price of Japanese steel) and one ton of Japanese steel sells for \$100 in the United States (the price of U.S. steel). The real exchange rate is always equal to 1.0, so that we can exchange one ton of U.S. steel for exactly one ton of Japanese steel.

If the exchange rate were 200 yen to the dollar, Japanese steel would sell for \$50 per ton in the United States or half the price of U.S. steel, and U.S. steel would sell for 20,000 yen per ton in Japan, twice the price of Japanese steel. Because U.S. steel would be more expensive than Japanese steel in both countries and is identical to Japanese steel, the demand for U.S. steel would go to zero. Given a fixed dollar price for U.S. steel, the resulting excess supply will be eliminated only if the exchange rate falls to 100 yen per dollar, making the price of U.S. steel and Japanese steel the same in both countries and the real exchange rate equal to one.

Theory of Purchasing Power Parity

What is the relationship between this insight about the law of one price and exchange rate determination? The most prominent theory of how exchange rates are determined in the long run is the **theory of purchasing power parity (PPP)**, which states that exchange rates between any two currencies will adjust to reflect changes in the price levels of the two countries. The theory of PPP is simply an application of the law of one price to national price levels rather than to individual prices. Suppose the yen price of

Japanese steel rises 10% (to 11,000 yen) relative to the dollar price of U.S. steel (unchanged at \$100). For the law of one price to hold and the real exchange rate to remain at 1.0, the exchange rate must rise to 110 yen to the dollar, a 10% appreciation of the dollar. Applying the law of one price to the price levels in the two countries produces the theory of purchasing power parity, which maintains that if the Japanese price level rises 10% relative to the U.S. price level, the dollar will appreciate by 10%.

Another way of understanding PPP is to recognize that if PPP holds, the real exchange rate is always equal to 1.0, so the purchasing power of the dollar is the same as the purchasing power of other currencies such as the yen or the euro. Then, using Equation 1, we can see that when P^* rises by 10%, causing the U.S. relative price level to fall by 10% relative to Japan's, E must rise by 10% to keep the real exchange rate at 1.0.

Although there is evidence that PPP holds in the very long run, it is questionable over short periods, as we discuss in the box entitled "Big Macs and PPP." This limitation makes sense because countries do not produce identical goods: for example, Toyotas and Chevys are clearly quite different automobiles so the law of one price will not hold. Furthermore, many goods and services (whose prices are included in a measure of a country's price level) are nontradable, that is, they are not traded across borders. Housing, land, and services such as restaurant meals, haircuts, and golf lessons are nontradable. Even though the prices of these items might rise and lead to a higher price level relative to another country's, there might be little direct effect on the exchange rate in the short run. As a result, we need a supply and demand framework to understand what determines exchange rates in the short run.

Big Macs and PPP

Every year, *Economist* magazine publishes data on the cost of a Big Mac in both local currency and U.S. dollars in different countries. We show the data from March 2010 in Table 17.1. The second column includes the Big Mac prices in terms of local currency, while the third column uses the exchange rate for each currency to convert the Big Mac price into dollars. If PPP held exactly, then the real exchange rate would be 1.0 and all the prices in terms of dollars would be identical. Notice, however, that this is not the case, with the price of Big Macs in some countries (Norway, and Switzerland) being well above that in the United States, while in others it is well below (China, Indonesia, and Malaysia).

Although the Big Mac prices indicate that PPP does not hold exactly, PPP does help predict exchange rates for these countries. According to PPP, when the Big Mac has a high price in terms of local currency, then the units of local currency

per U.S. dollar should be higher. We see this relationship in the fourth and fifth columns of Table 17.1. The predicted exchange rate in the fourth column is the exchange rate that would make the price of the Big Mac equal to that in the United States (the real exchange rate would be 1.0). Notice that when the predicted exchange rate has a large number of units of local currency per U.S. dollar, this relationship is also true for the actual exchange rate in the fifth column. However, the predicted value of the exchange rate often departs quite substantially from the actual exchange rate. For example, Mexico's predicted rate is 8.95 pesos/\$ versus the actual exchange rate of 12.52 pesos/\$.

The evidence from Big Macs suggests that purchasing power parity provides some explanation for the value of exchange rates, but it does not give a complete explanation.

TABLE 17.1

The Economist Magazine's Big Mac Index, March 2010

Country	Big Mac Price		Exchange Rate (local currency/\$)	
	local currency	Dollars	Predicted	Actual
Norway	40.00	\$6.87	11.17	5.82
Switzerland	6.50	\$6.16	1.82	1.06
Euro Area	3.36	\$4.62	0.94	0.73
Canada	4.12	\$4.06	1.15	1.01
Australia	4.35	\$3.98	1.22	1.09
Hungary	725.25	\$3.75	202.58	193.40
Turkey	5.67	\$3.71	1.58	1.53
United States	3.58	\$3.58	1.00	1.00
Japan	320.12	\$3.54	89.42	90.43
Britain	2.29	\$3.48	0.64	0.66
South Korea	3399	\$3.00	949.44	1133.00
United Arab Emirates	10.99	\$2.99	3.07	3.67
Poland	8.07	\$2.86	2.26	2.82
Saudi Arabia	10.04	\$2.67	2.80	3.76
Mexico	32.05	\$2.56	8.95	12.52
South Africa	17.98	\$2.44	5.02	7.37
Russia	69.95	\$2.39	19.54	29.27
Egypt	13.05	\$2.37	3.65	5.51
Taiwan	75.07	\$2.36	20.97	31.81
Indonesia	20879.12	\$2.28	5832.16	9157.51
Thailand	70.03	\$2.16	19.56	32.42
Malaysia	7.03	\$2.12	1.96	3.32
China	12.49	\$1.83	3.49	6.83

Source: *The Economist*, March 2010, at www.economist.com/daily/chartgallery/displaystory.cfm?story_id=15715184#footnote1

Exchange Rates in the Short Run

The key to understanding the short-run behavior of exchange rates is to recognize that an exchange rate is the price of domestic assets (bank deposits, bonds, equities, and so on denominated in the domestic currency) in terms of foreign assets (similar assets denominated in a foreign currency). Because the exchange rate is the price of one asset in terms of another, we investigate the short-run determination of exchange rates using an asset market approach that emphasizes the demand for the stock of domestic assets.²

An older approach to exchange rate determination emphasized the demand for flows of exports and imports over short periods. The asset market approach used here is more accurate because export and import transactions are small relative to the

²We conduct the analysis here in terms of supply and demand for domestic assets. An alternative way to conduct the analysis is with a concept called *interest parity*, and this is described in an appendix to this chapter.

amount of domestic and foreign assets at any given time. For example, U.S. foreign exchange transactions each year are well over twenty-five times greater than the amount of U.S. exports and imports. Thus, over short periods, decisions on whether to hold domestic assets play a much greater role in exchange rate determination than the demand for exports and imports does.³

Supply Curve for Domestic Assets

We start by discussing the supply curve for domestic assets. We treat the United States as the home country, so we denominate domestic assets in dollars. For simplicity, we use euros to stand for any foreign country's currency, so we denominate foreign assets in euros.

The quantity of dollar assets supplied is primarily the quantity of bank deposits, bonds, and equities in the United States—for all practical purposes, we can take this amount as fixed with respect to the exchange rate. The quantity supplied at any exchange rate does not change, so the supply curve, S , is vertical, as shown in Figure 17.2.

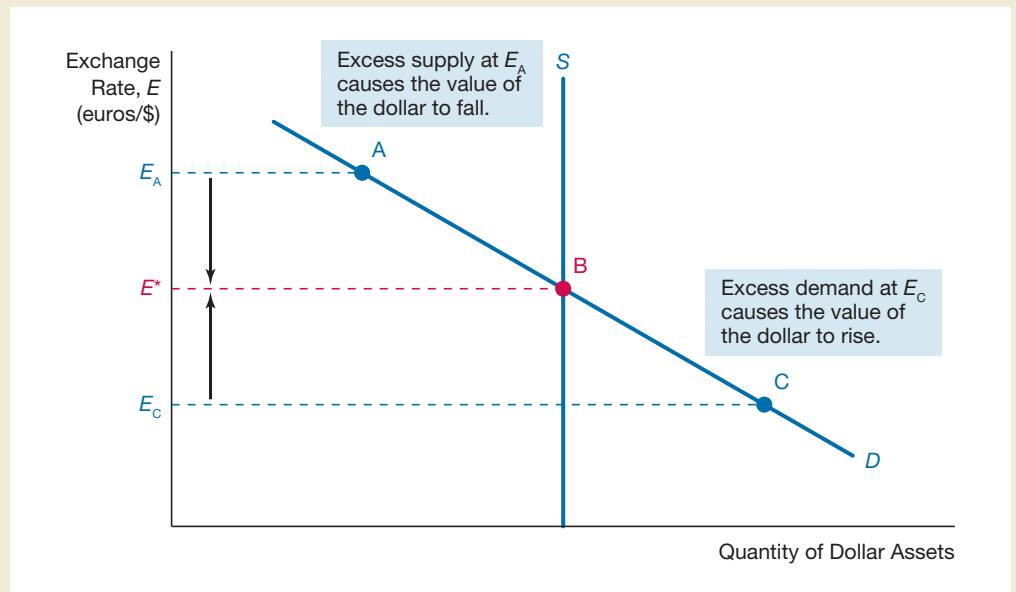
Demand Curve for Domestic Assets

The demand curve traces out the quantity demanded at each current exchange rate by holding everything else constant, particularly the expected future value of the exchange rate. We write the current exchange rate (the spot exchange rate) as E_t and the expected exchange rate for the next period as E_{t+1}^e . If there is **capital mobility**, with assets traded freely between countries, the most important determinant of the quantity of domestic (dollar) assets demanded is expected return on domestic assets relative to foreign assets. The **expected return** on an asset is any payments from the asset, such as interest, and any expected change in its value, as a fraction of its price.

FIGURE 17.2

Equilibrium in the Foreign Exchange Market

Equilibrium in the foreign exchange market occurs at point B, the intersection of the demand curve D and the supply curve S . The equilibrium exchange rate is E^* , where the quantity demanded of dollar assets equals the quantity supplied.



³For a further description of the modern asset market approach to exchange rate determination that we use here, see Frederic S. Mishkin, *The Economics of Money, Banking, and Financial Markets*, 9th edition (Boston: Pearson Addison-Wesley, 2010); and Paul Krugman and Maurice Obstfeld, *International Economics*, 8th edition (Boston: Pearson Addison-Wesley, 2009).

To see why the demand curve has the conventional downward slope in Figure 17.2, we start at point A in the figure, where the current exchange rate is at E_A . If we hold the future expected value of the exchange rate constant at E_{t+1}^e , a lower value of the exchange rate at E^* implies that the dollar is more likely to rise in value (appreciate). The greater the expected rise (appreciation) of the dollar, the higher is the expected return on dollar (domestic) assets. Because dollar assets are now more desirable to hold, the quantity of dollar assets demanded will rise to point B in Figure 17.2. If the current exchange rate is even lower at E_C , there is an even higher expected appreciation of the dollar, a higher expected return, and therefore an even greater quantity of dollar assets demanded. Point C represents this scenario in the figure. The resulting demand curve, D , which connects these points, is downward sloping, indicating that at lower current values of the dollar (everything else equal), the quantity demanded of dollar assets is higher.

Equilibrium in the Foreign Exchange Market

As in the usual supply and demand analysis, the market is in equilibrium when the quantity of dollar assets demanded equals the quantity supplied. In Figure 17.2, equilibrium occurs at point B, the intersection of the demand and supply curves. At point B, the exchange rate is E^* .

Suppose the exchange rate is at E_A , which is higher than the equilibrium exchange rate of E^* . Notice in Figure 17.2 that the quantity of dollar assets supplied is then greater than the quantity demanded, a condition of excess supply. Given that more people want to sell dollar assets than want to buy them, the value of the dollar will fall. As long as the exchange rate remains above the equilibrium exchange rate, there will continue to be an excess supply of dollar assets, and the dollar will fall in value until it reaches the equilibrium exchange rate of E^* .

Similarly, if the exchange rate is less than the equilibrium exchange rate at E_C , the quantity of dollar assets demanded will exceed the quantity supplied, a condition of excess demand. Given that more people want to buy dollar assets than want to sell them, the value of the dollar will rise until the excess demand disappears and the value of the dollar is again at the equilibrium exchange rate of E^* .

Analysis of Changes in Exchange Rates

The supply and demand analysis of the foreign exchange market illustrates how and why exchange rates change. Because we take the amount of dollar assets as fixed, the supply curve is vertical at a given quantity and does not shift. Given that the supply curve does not shift, we need look at only those factors that increase or decrease the demand for dollar assets to explain how exchange rates change over time.

Changes in the Demand for Domestic Assets

As we have seen, the quantity of domestic (dollar) assets demanded depends on the relative expected return on dollar assets. To see how the demand curve for dollar assets shifts, we need to determine how the quantity demanded changes, holding the current exchange rate, E_t , constant, when other factors change.

For insight into whether demand increases or decreases, suppose you are an investor who is considering putting funds into domestic (dollar) assets. When a factor changes, decide whether at a given level of the current exchange rate, holding all other variables constant, you would earn a higher or lower expected return on dollar assets versus foreign assets. This decision tells you whether you want to hold more or less dollar assets and thus whether the quantity demanded increases or decreases at each level of the exchange rate. The direction of the change in the quantity demanded at each exchange rate indicates which way the demand curve shifts: if the relative expected return on dollar assets rises holding the current exchange rate constant, the demand curve shifts to the right. If the relative expected return falls, the demand curve for dollar assets shifts to the left.

DOMESTIC REAL INTEREST RATE, r^D . When the domestic real interest rate on dollar assets r^D rises, holding the current exchange rate E_t and everything else constant, the return on dollar assets increases relative to foreign assets, so people will want to hold more dollar assets.⁴ The quantity of dollar assets demanded increases at every value of the exchange rate, as shown by the rightward shift of the demand curve in panel (a) of Figure 17.3 from D_1 to D_2 . At the new equilibrium point 2, at the intersection of D_2 and S , the equilibrium exchange rate rises from E_1 to E_2 . **An increase in the domestic real interest rate shifts the demand curve for domestic assets, D , to the right and causes the domestic currency to appreciate ($E \uparrow$).**

Conversely, if r^D falls, the relative expected return on dollar assets falls, the demand curve shifts to the left from D_1 to D_2 in panel (b) of Figure 17.3, and the exchange rate falls from E_1 to E_2 . **A decrease in the domestic real interest rate r^D shifts the demand curve for domestic assets, D , to the left and causes the domestic currency to depreciate ($E \downarrow$).**

FOREIGN REAL INTEREST RATE, r^F . When the foreign real interest rate rises, holding the current exchange rate E_t and everything else constant, the return on foreign assets rises relative to dollar assets. Thus the relative expected return on dollar assets falls. Now people want to hold fewer dollar assets and the quantity demanded decreases at every value of the exchange rate, as shown by the leftward shift of the demand curve in panel (a) of Figure 17.4 from D_1 to D_2 . At the new equilibrium point 2, the exchange rate has decreased. Conversely, a decrease in r^F raises the relative expected return on dollar assets, shifts the demand curve to the right in panel (b) from D_1 to D_2 , and raises the exchange rate. To summarize, **an increase in the foreign real interest rate r^F shifts the demand curve D to the left and causes the domestic currency to depreciate; a fall in the foreign real interest rate r^F shifts the demand curve D to the right and causes the domestic currency to appreciate.**

⁴A rise in the domestic real interest rate is the same as a rise in the nominal interest rate when everything else is held constant, which includes the expected inflation rate. Thus the results described in the text about the effect of changes in real interest rates on the exchange rate are the same as for changes in the nominal interest rate. The reason for thinking about the response of the foreign exchange market in terms of changes in real interest rates rather than nominal interest rates is that nominal interest rates typically rise with expected inflation so that many changes in nominal interest rates occur when it is inappropriate to assume that everything else is held constant.

FIGURE 17.3**Response to a Change in Domestic Real Interest Rates, r^D**

Panels (a) and (b) show the effect of changes in the domestic real interest rate, r^D . In panel (a), an increase in r^D raises the relative expected return on domestic (dollar) assets, shifting the demand curve to the right. The equilibrium exchange rate rises from E_1 to E_2 . In panel (b), a decrease in r^D lowers the relative expected return on domestic (dollar) assets, shifting the demand curve to the left. The equilibrium exchange rate falls from E_1 to E_2 .

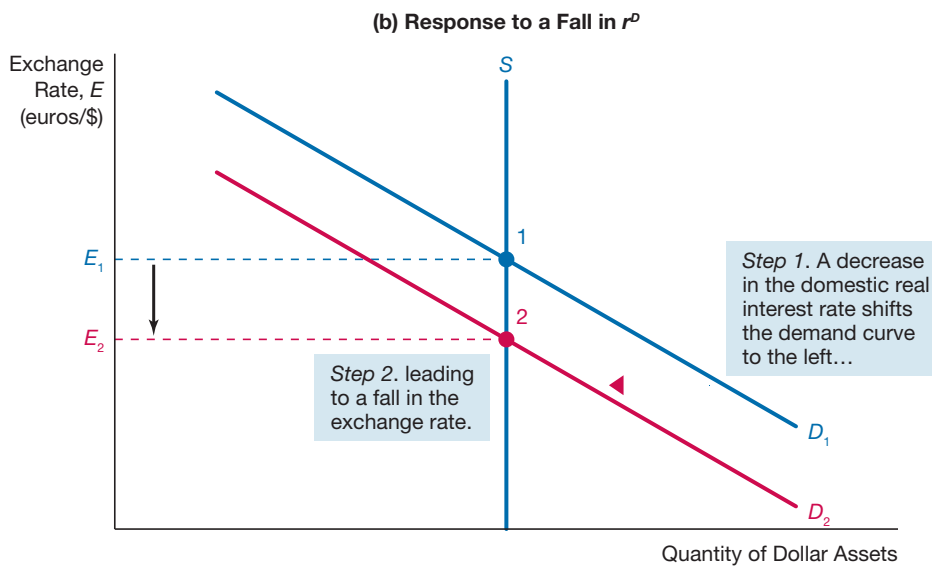
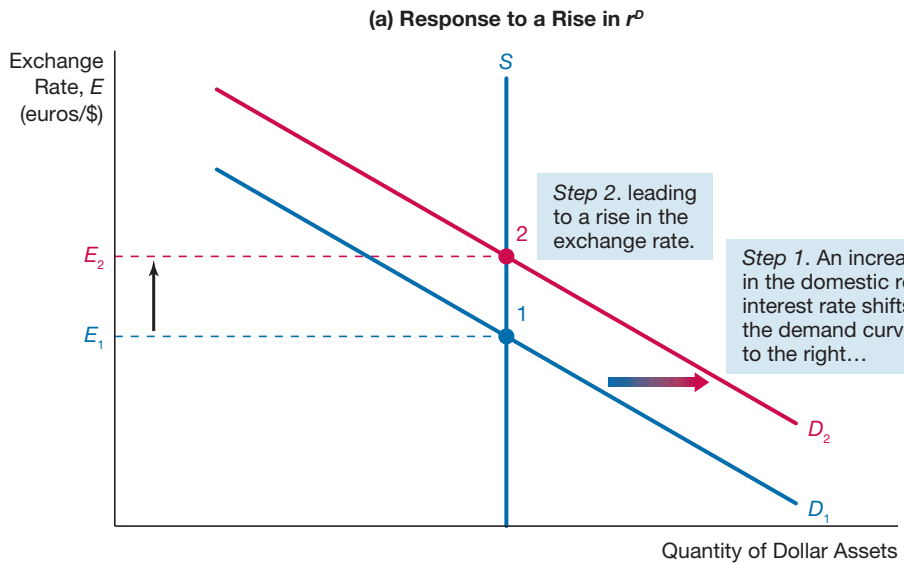
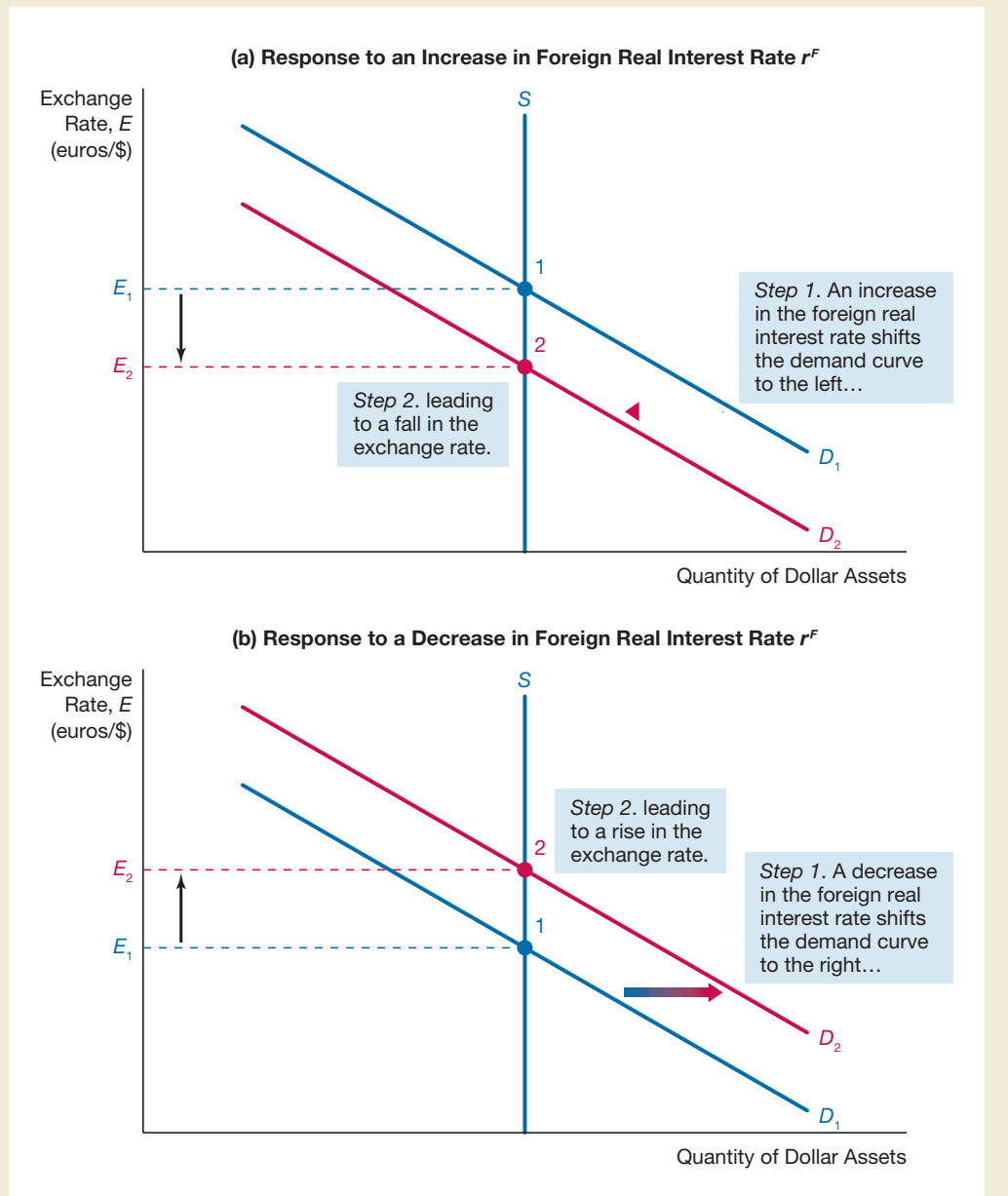


FIGURE 17.4**Response to a Change in Foreign Real Interest Rates, r^F**

Panels (a) and (b) show the effect of changes in the foreign real interest rate, r^F . In panel (a), an increase in r^F lowers the relative expected return on domestic (dollar) assets, shifting the demand curve to the left. The equilibrium exchange rate falls from E_1 to E_2 . In panel (b), a decrease in r^F raises the relative expected return on domestic (dollar) assets, shifting the demand curve to the right. The equilibrium exchange rate increases from E_1 to E_2 .



Application

The Subprime Financial Crisis and the Dollar

With the start of the subprime financial crisis in August 2007, the dollar began an accelerated decline in value, falling by 9% against the euro until mid-July 2008 and 6% against a wider basket of currencies. After hitting an all-time low against the euro on July 11, 2008, the dollar suddenly shot upward by over 20% against the euro by the end of October 2008 and 15% against a wider basket of currencies.

How did the subprime financial crisis lead to these large swings in the value of the dollar? In the first year of the subprime crisis, its negative effects on economic activity were mostly

confined to the United States. The Federal Reserve acted aggressively with autonomous easing of monetary policy to decrease interest rates to counter the contractionary effects, lowering the federal funds rate target by 325 basis points (3.25 percentage points) from September 2007 to April 2008. In contrast, other central banks like the European Central Bank did not see the need to lower interest rates, particularly because high energy prices had led to a surge in inflation. The relative expected return on dollar assets thus declined, shifting the demand curve for dollar assets to the left, as in panel (b) of Figure 17.3, leading to a decline in the equilibrium exchange rate. Our analysis of the foreign exchange market thus explains why the subprime crisis in its early phase led to a decline in the value of the dollar.

Our analysis also explains why the dollar rose thereafter. Starting in the summer of 2008, the effects of subprime crisis on economic activity began to spread more widely throughout the world. Foreign central banks started to cut interest rates via autonomous easing of monetary policy, with the expectation that they would do so even more. The expected decline in foreign interest rates then increased the relative expected return on dollar assets, leading to a rightward shift in the demand curve and an increase in the equilibrium exchange rate, as shown in panel (b) of Figure 17.4.

Another factor driving the dollar upwards was a “flight to quality” when the financial crisis reached a particularly virulent stage in September and October 2008. Both U.S. and foreign investors now wanted to put their money in the safest asset possible: U.S. Treasury securities. The resulting increase in the demand for dollar assets provided an additional reason for the demand curve for dollar assets to shift out to the right, thereby helping to produce a sharp appreciation of the dollar.

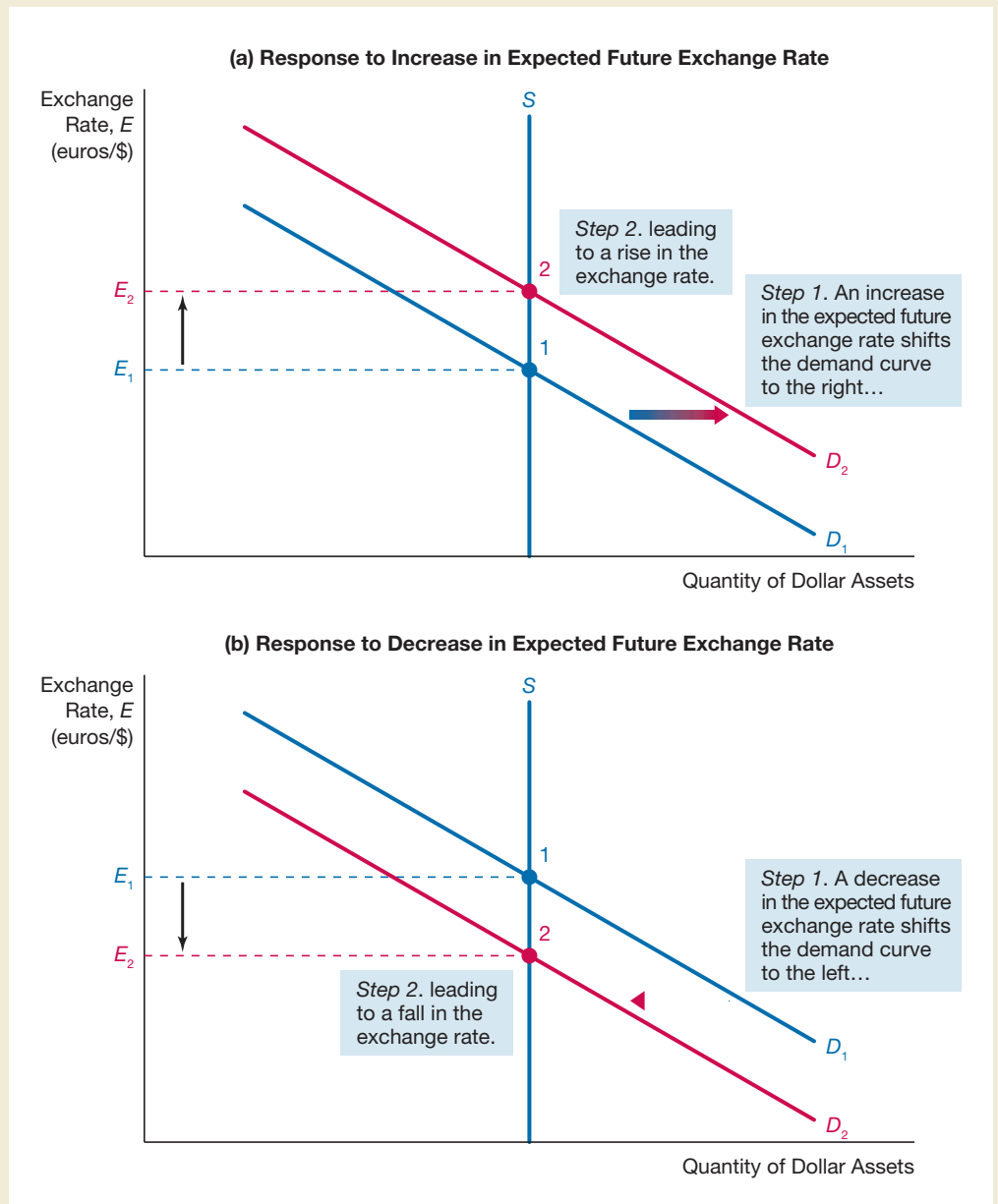


CHANGES IN THE EXPECTED FUTURE EXCHANGE RATE, E_{t+1}^e . Expectations about the future value of the exchange rate play an important role in shifting the current demand curve, because the demand for domestic assets, like the demand for any financial asset or durable good, depends on the expected future resale price. Any factor that causes the expected future exchange rate, E_{t+1}^e , to rise increases the expected appreciation of the dollar. The result is a higher relative expected return on dollar assets, which increases the demand for dollar assets at every exchange rate, thereby shifting the demand curve to the right in panel (a) of Figure 17.5 from D_1 to D_2 . The equilibrium exchange rate rises to E_2 at point 2. **A rise in the expected future exchange rate, E_{t+1}^e , shifts the demand curve to the right and causes an appreciation of the domestic currency.** Using the same reasoning, in panel (b) **a fall in the expected future exchange rate, E_{t+1}^e , shifts the demand curve to the left and causes a depreciation of the currency.**

What are the possible events that might affect the expected future exchange rate? Any factor that increases the demand for domestically produced, traded goods relative to foreign traded goods, such as a rise in the demand for exports, will cause long-run appreciation of the domestic currency because domestic goods will continue to sell well even when the value of the domestic currency is higher. As a result, the expected future exchange rate E_{t+1}^e will rise, leading to a higher expected return on dollar assets, shifting the demand curve to the right and increasing the current exchange rate, as in panel (a). Similarly, any factor that increases the demand for foreign tradable goods relative to domestic traded goods, such as a rise in the demand for imports, will lead to a long-run depreciation of the domestic currency and will cause E_{t+1}^e to fall, as in panel (b). The demand curve then shifts to the left and the exchange rate will depreciate.

FIGURE 17.5**Response to a Change in the Expected Future Exchange Rate, E_{t+1}^e**

Panels (a) and (b) show the effect of changes in the expected future exchange rate, E_{t+1}^e . In panel (a), an increase in E_{t+1}^e rises the relative expected return on domestic (dollar) assets, shifting the demand curve to the right. The equilibrium exchange rate increases from E_1 to E_2 . In panel (b), a decrease in E_{t+1}^e lowers the relative expected return on domestic (dollar) assets, shifting the demand curve to the left. The equilibrium exchange rate decreases from E_1 to E_2 .



Let's analyze what happens if the Japanese price level rises relative to the U.S. price level. The higher Japanese price level increases the demand for U.S. goods because they are now relatively cheaper, with the result that the U.S. dollar exchange rate appreciates in the long run and the expected future exchange rate E_{t+1}^e therefore rises. The resulting increase in the relative expected return on dollar assets shifts the demand curve to the right, as in panel (a) of Figure 17.5, and the equilibrium exchange rate rises. Indeed, this is the same result that we obtained from the theory of purchasing power parity: an increase in the foreign price level relative to the domestic price level leads to an appreciation of the domestic currency.

Application

Why Are Exchange Rates So Volatile?

Forty or so years ago, economists generally believed that the determination of exchange rates in the free market would not lead to large fluctuations in their values. Recent experience has proved them wrong: exchange rates have been very volatile, often with swings of several percent even on a single day.

The asset market approach to exchange rate determination that we have outlined in this chapter gives a straightforward explanation of why exchange rates are so volatile. Because expected appreciation of the domestic currency affects the relative expected return on domestic deposits, expectations about the future play an important role in determining the exchange rate. When these expectations change, our model implies that there will be an immediate effect on the expected return on domestic deposits and therefore on the exchange rate. The foreign exchange market is just like any other asset market in which expectations of the future matter. Thus like other asset markets such as the stock market, the foreign exchange market displays substantial price volatility, and exchange rates are therefore notoriously hard to forecast.

The volatility of exchange rates presents a challenge to policy makers because it causes relative prices of domestic versus foreign goods to fluctuate. This uncertainty makes it hard for you to plan whether you will take your vacation in the United States or abroad and can dramatically change the competitiveness of a domestic industry, increasing the volatility of economic activity.



Aggregate Demand and Supply Analysis of Changes in Exchange Rates

Now that we understand how foreign exchange markets determine exchange rates, we can examine how they affect aggregate output and inflation using our aggregate demand and supply framework.

At the beginning of this chapter, we explained why a rise in the real exchange rate—that is, a real appreciation of the domestic currency—makes domestic goods more expensive relative to foreign goods. Because prices are sticky and change slowly over time, a rise in the nominal exchange rate implies a rise in the real exchange rate in the short run. Thus the demand for exports, which are now more expensive, will fall and the demand for imports, which are now cheaper, will rise. An exogenous rise in the exchange rate ($E \uparrow$) thus leads to a decline in net exports ($NX \downarrow$), which, because it is an important component of aggregate demand, leads to a fall in the level of equilibrium level of output ($Y \downarrow$):

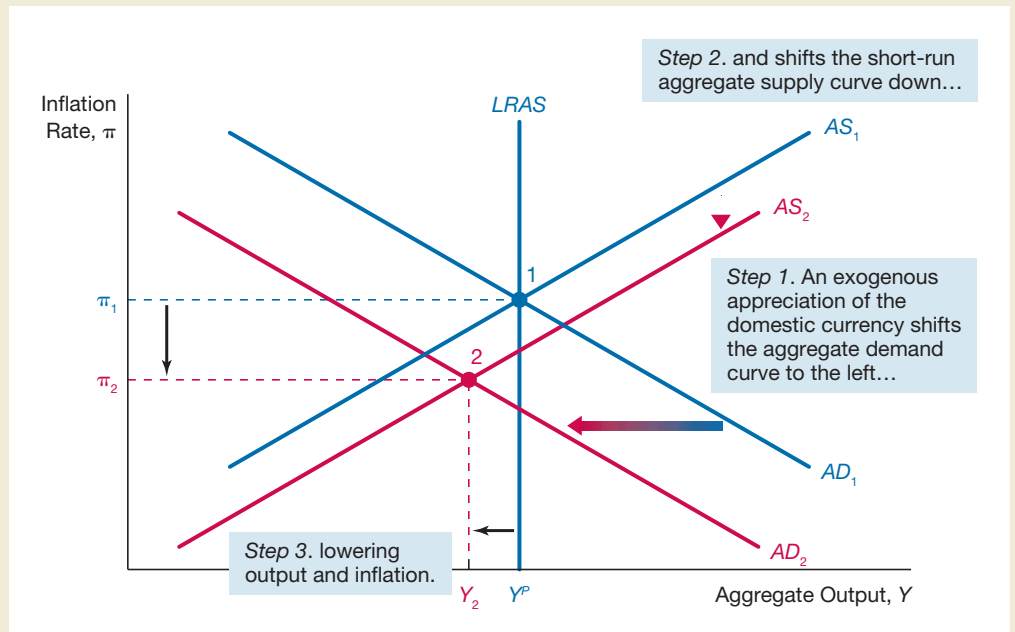
$$E \uparrow \rightarrow NX \downarrow \rightarrow Y \downarrow$$

At any given rate of inflation, an exogenous appreciation of the domestic currency therefore leads to lower level of equilibrium output; as a result, the aggregate demand curve shifts to the left from AD_1 to AD_2 in Figure 17.6.

The appreciation of the dollar also acts as a temporary positive supply shock to the short-run aggregate supply curve because it makes imports less expensive and thus

FIGURE 17.6**Response of Aggregate Output and Inflation to an Increase in the Exchange Rate**

A rise in the nominal exchange rate leads to a rise in the real exchange rate, which causes net exports and therefore aggregate demand to fall. As a result the aggregate demand curve shifts to the left to AD_2 . The appreciation of the dollar acts as a beneficial supply shock, driving the short-run aggregate supply curve down and to the right to AS_2 . The economy moves to point 2 where aggregate output and inflation have fallen to Y_2 and π_2 .



lowers the inflation rate. As a result, the short-run aggregate supply curve shifts down and to the right from AS_1 to AS_2 . Because the shift in the short-run aggregate supply curve is typically small relative to the shift in the aggregate demand curve, as shown in Figure 17.6, the economy moves from point 1 to point 2 at the intersection of AD_2 and AS_2 . Aggregate output falls to Y_2 and inflation falls to π_2 .

How should the monetary authorities respond to the exchange rate appreciation if they want to stabilize both output and inflation? The central bank should autonomously ease monetary policy by lowering the real interest rate at any given inflation rate. As we saw in panel (b) of Figure 17.3, this lowering of the real interest rate would decrease the relative expected return for domestic assets, thereby shifting the demand curve for domestic assets to the left and causing the exchange rate to fall. The resulting higher price of imports would then raise prices, shifting the short-run aggregate supply curve upward, while the higher net exports would increase aggregate demand and shift the aggregate demand curve to the right. In addition, lower real interest rates would increase investment spending, providing a further reason for aggregate demand to increase. The monetary policy action would therefore return the economy to point 1 in Figure 17.6.

We can conclude the following points from our analysis: ***an exogenous appreciation of the exchange rate is contractionary and leads to a decline in both aggregate output and inflation. Autonomous monetary policy easing can, however, counteract the contractionary shock from an exchange rate appreciation.*** Similarly, ***an exogenous depreciation of the currency is expansionary, raising both output and***

*inflation, but can be counteracted by autonomous monetary policy tightening.*⁵ Our analysis therefore explains why central banks pay a lot of attention to exchange rate fluctuations in formulating monetary policy.

Intervention in the Foreign Exchange Market

So far, we have analyzed the foreign exchange market as if it were a completely free market that responds only to market pressures. Like many other markets, however, the foreign exchange market is subject to government intervention, particularly by central banks. Central banks regularly engage in international financial transactions called **foreign exchange interventions** to influence exchange rates. In our current international environment, exchange rates fluctuate from day to day, but central banks attempt to influence their countries' exchange rates by buying and selling currencies. For example, the Chinese government could decide to buy the yuan and exchange it for dollars. We can use the supply and demand analysis of foreign exchange rates to analyze the impact of central bank intervention on the foreign exchange market.

Foreign Exchange Intervention

The first step in understanding how central bank intervention in the foreign exchange market affects exchange rates is to examine the impact on a central bank's balance sheet when it sells some of its foreign-currency denominated assets (say, euros), which are called **international reserves**. (The appendix to Chapter 5 examines central bank balance sheets in detail.) Suppose that the Fed wants to boost the value of the dollar and decides to sell \$1 billion of euro assets in exchange for \$1 billion of assets denominated in U.S. currency. We describe this transaction by saying that the Fed has sold euros and bought dollars in the foreign exchange market. (This transaction is conducted at the foreign exchange desk at the Federal Reserve Bank of New York—see the Policy and Practice case that follows.) The Fed's purchase of dollar assets has two effects. First, it reduces the Fed's holding of international reserves by \$1 billion. Second, it drains liquidity from the financial system because banks' deposits with the Fed, known as reserves, fall.

To see how a foreign exchange intervention works, we use a tool called a T-account, a simplified balance sheet, with lines in the form of a T, that lists only the changes that occur in assets and liabilities starting from some initial balance sheet position. Just like a balance sheet, both sides of the T-account must balance.

Let's see what happens when the Fed sells the \$1 billion of foreign assets (international reserves) in exchange for bank deposits denominated in dollars. The foreign assets item in the Fed's T-account drops by \$1 billion. At the same time, the Fed subtracts the \$1 billion of bank deposits it receives from the total holding of banks' deposits at the

⁵However, for emerging market economies with much of their debt denominated in foreign currencies, an exchange rate depreciation, although inflationary, may lead to a sharp contraction in economic activity because the decline in the value of the currency destroys balance sheets and can precipitate a financial crisis. We discuss this mechanism more extensively in the Web chapter on emerging market economies available at the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin.

Federal Reserve. Reserves (deposits with the Fed) then fall by \$1 billion, as we show in the following T-account.

Federal Reserve System			
Assets		Liabilities	
Foreign assets (international reserves)	-\$1 billion	Deposits with the Fed (reserves)	-\$1 billion

The Fed's purchase of dollars and sale of euros leads to an equal decline in international reserves and reserves (deposits with the Fed) held by the banking system. The resulting decline in reserves held by banks reduces liquidity in the financial system, lowers the money supply and causes interest rates to rise, as per our analysis in Chapter 10. We can state the results as follows: ***a central bank's purchase of domestic currency and corresponding sale of foreign assets in the foreign exchange markets leads to an equal decline in international reserves held by the central bank and reserves held by the banking system. The decline in reserves in the banking system then leads to a rise in interest rates.***

Intervention and the Exchange Rate

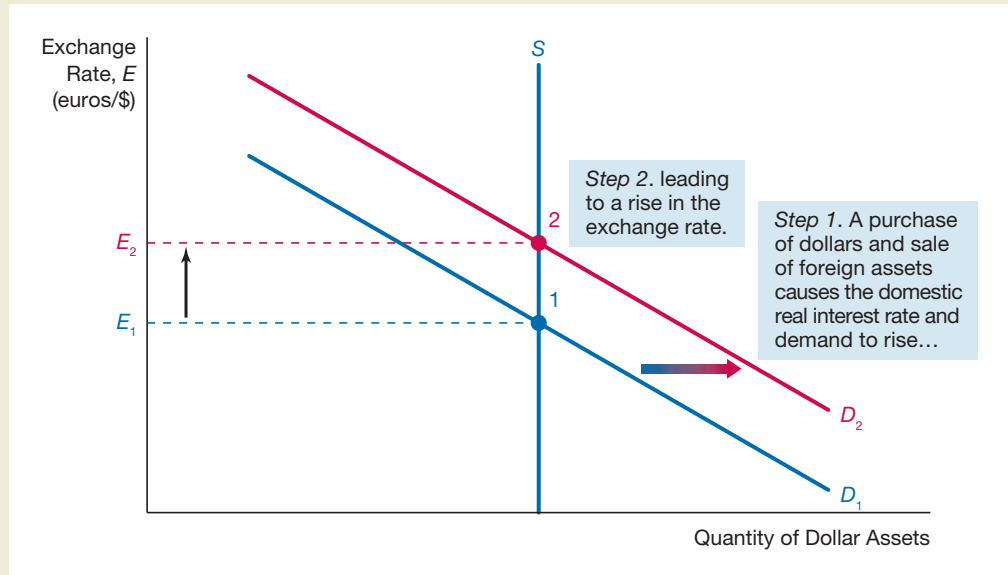
Now that we understand the impact of a foreign exchange intervention on reserves and the interest rate, we can look at what happens when a central bank buys its currency in the foreign exchange market and sells foreign assets. As the preceding T-account indicates, the intervention where the Federal Reserve buys dollars and sells foreign assets in the foreign exchange market decreases liquidity in the financial system, causes the money supply to fall, increases interest rates. Because prices are sticky, the rise in nominal interest rates leads to a rise in the real interest rate r^D , so the relative expected return on dollar assets increases the demand for those assets, shifting the demand curve to the right from D_1 to D_2 in Figure 17.7. The equilibrium moves from point 1 to point 2, with the exchange rate rising from E_1 to E_2 .

Our analysis leads us to the following conclusion about interventions in the foreign exchange market:⁶ ***an intervention in which the central bank buys domestic currency leads to a loss of international reserves and an appreciation of the domestic currency.*** The result is the reverse for an intervention in which domestic currency is sold to purchase foreign assets. ***An intervention in which domestic currency is sold to purchase foreign assets leads to an increase in international reserves and a depreciation of the domestic currency.***

⁶The intervention we are describing here is referred to as an *unsterilized intervention* because it results in a change in reserves and hence in interest rates. However, a central bank can counter the effect of the foreign exchange rate intervention on reserves by conducting an offsetting open market operation in domestic bonds. In this case, reserves in the banking system would not change and this is referred to as a *sterilized intervention*. Chapter 18 of Frederic Mishkin, *The Economics of Money, Banking, and Financial Markets*, 9th edition (Boston: Pearson Addison-Wesley, 2010) shows that sterilized interventions are unlikely to have much of an impact on the exchange rate.

FIGURE 17.7**Effect of a Purchase of Dollars**

A purchase of dollar assets and sale of foreign assets decreases liquidity in the financial system and raises the domestic real interest rate r^D . The resulting rise in the relative expected return for dollar assets shifts the demand curve to the right from D_1 to D_2 and the exchange rate rises from E_1 to E_2 .



Policy and Practice



A Day at the Federal Reserve Bank of New York's Foreign Exchange Desk

Although the U.S. Treasury is primarily responsible for foreign exchange policy, it makes decisions to intervene in the foreign exchange market jointly with the Federal Reserve's FOMC (Federal Open Market Committee). The actual conduct of foreign exchange intervention is the responsibility of the foreign exchange desk at the Federal Reserve Bank of New York, which is right next to the open market desk.

The manager of foreign exchange operations at the New York Fed supervises the traders and analysts who follow developments in the foreign exchange market. Every morning at 7:30, a trader on staff who has arrived at the New York Fed in the predawn hours speaks on the telephone with counterparts at the U.S. Treasury and provides an update on overnight activity in overseas financial and foreign exchange markets. Later in the morning, at 9:30, the manager and his or her staff hold a conference call with senior staff at the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve in Washington. In the afternoon, at 2:30, they have a second conference call, which is a joint briefing of officials at the Board and the Treasury. Although by statute the Treasury has the lead role in setting foreign exchange policy, it strives to reach a consensus among all three parties—the Treasury, the Board of Governors, and the Federal Reserve Bank of New York. If they decide that a foreign exchange intervention is necessary that day—an unusual occurrence, as a year may go by without a U.S. foreign exchange intervention—the manager instructs his traders to carry out the agreed-on purchase or sale of foreign currencies. Because funds for exchange rate intervention are held separately by the Treasury (in its Exchange Stabilization Fund) and the Federal Reserve, the manager and his or her staff are

not trading the funds of the Federal Reserve Bank of New York; rather, they act as an agent for the Treasury and the FOMC in conducting these transactions.

As part of their duties, before every FOMC meeting, the staff helps prepare a lengthy document full of data for the FOMC members, other Reserve bank presidents, and Treasury officials. It describes developments in the domestic and foreign markets over the previous five or six weeks.

Fixed Exchange Rate Regimes

Exchange rate regimes in the international financial system fall into two basic types: *fixed* and *floating*. In a **fixed exchange rate regime**, the value of a currency is pegged relative to the value of another currency (called the **anchor currency**) so that the exchange rate is fixed. In some fixed exchange rate regimes, the government simply announces that it is committed to taking the steps to keep the currency fixed relative to the anchor currency. One type of fixed exchange rate regime with a stronger commitment is a **currency board** in which the domestic currency is backed 100% by the anchor currency, and the government or central bank stands ready to exchange domestic currency for the anchor currency at a fixed rate whenever the public requests it.

In a **floating** (also called **flexible**) **exchange rate regime**, the value of a currency is determined by supply and demand in the foreign exchange market without exchange rate interventions. When countries attempt to influence their exchange rates by buying and selling currencies, we refer to the regime as a **managed float regime** (or a **dirty float**).

We now focus on fixed exchange rate regimes, examining their workings and policy challenges.

Fixed Exchange Rate Regime Dynamics

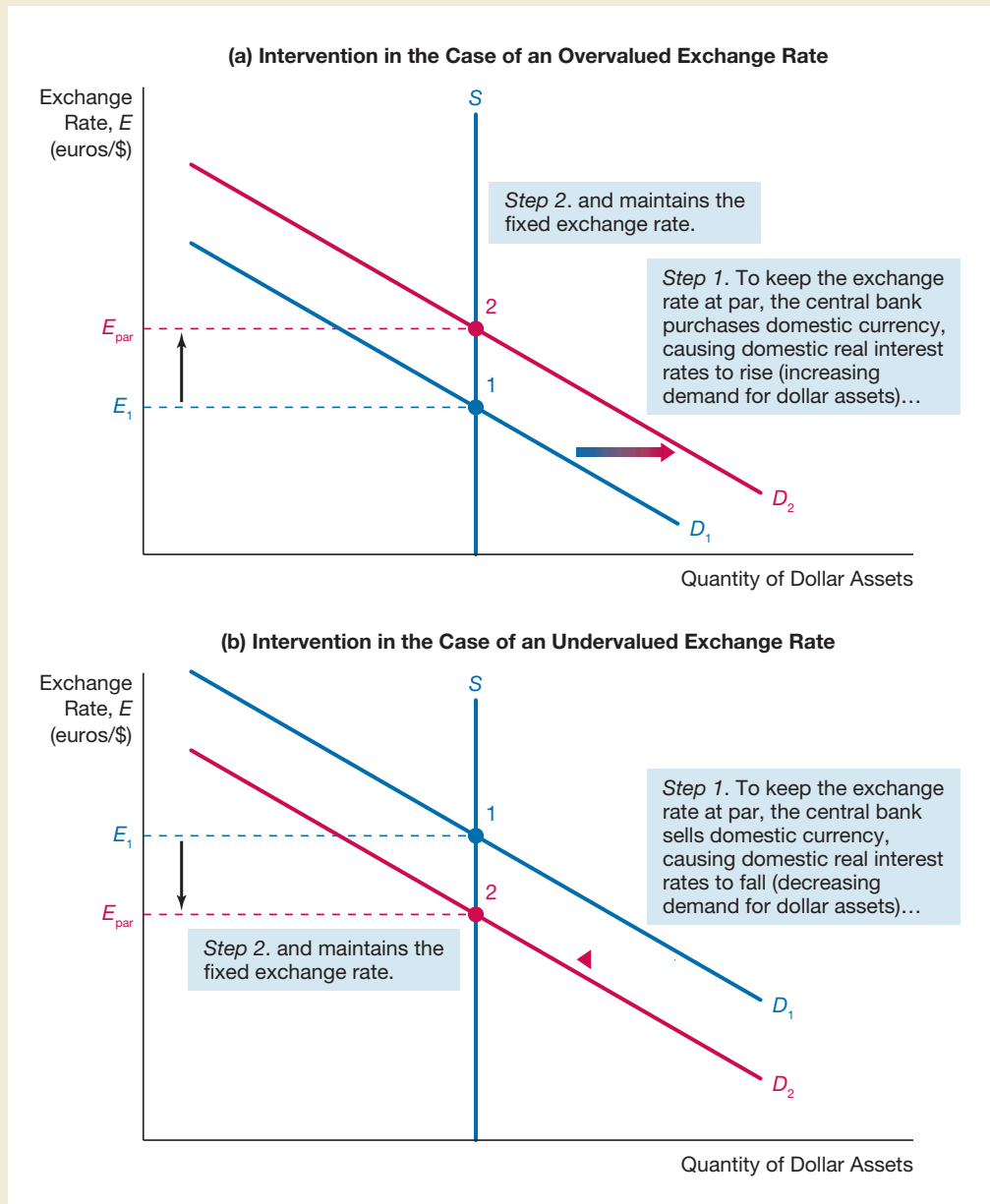
Figure 17.8 shows how a fixed exchange rate regime works in practice. Panel (a) depicts a situation in which the domestic currency is fixed relative to an anchor currency, while the demand curve D_1 intersects the supply curve at an exchange rate E_1 , which is lower than the fixed (par) value of the exchange rate E_{par} . In this case, the currency is *overvalued*. To keep the exchange rate at E_{par} , the central bank must intervene in the foreign exchange market to purchase domestic currency by selling foreign assets, thereby losing international reserves. As we have seen, this action decreases liquidity in the financial system, causes the money supply to fall, and therefore drives up real interest rates on domestic assets r^D . This increase in the domestic real interest rate raises the relative expected return on domestic assets, shifting the demand curve to the right. The central bank will continue purchasing domestic currency until the demand curve reaches D_2 and the equilibrium exchange rate is at E_{par} at point 2 in panel (a).

We have thus come to the conclusion that **when the domestic currency is overvalued, the central bank must purchase domestic currency to keep the exchange rate fixed, but as a result it loses international reserves.**

Panel (b) in Figure 17.8 describes the situation in which the demand curve D_1 initially intersects the supply curve at exchange rate E_1 , which is above E_{par} , so that the currency is *undervalued*. In this situation, the central bank must sell domestic currency and purchase foreign assets, thereby gaining international reserves. This action

FIGURE 17.8
Intervention in the Foreign Exchange Market Under a Fixed Exchange Rate Regime

In panel (a), the exchange rate at E_{par} is overvalued. To keep the exchange rate at E_{par} (point 2), the central bank must purchase domestic currency to shift the demand curve to D_2 . In panel (b), the exchange rate at E_1 is undervalued, so the central bank must sell domestic currency to shift the demand curve to D_2 and keep the exchange rate at E_{par} (point 2).



increases liquidity in the financial system, causes the money supply to rise, and therefore lowers the real interest rate on domestic assets. The central bank keeps selling domestic currency and lowers real interest rates until the demand curve shifts leftward all the way to D_2 , where the equilibrium exchange rate is at E_{par} —point 2 in panel (b). Our analysis thus leads us to the following result: **when the domestic currency is undervalued, the central bank must sell domestic currency to keep the exchange rate fixed, but as a result, it gains international reserves.**

DEVALUATION AND REVALUATION. As we have seen, if a country’s currency is overvalued, its central bank’s attempts to keep the currency from depreciating will result in a loss of international reserves. If the country’s central bank eventually runs out of

international reserves, it cannot keep its currency from depreciating, and a **devaluation** must occur, in which it resets the par exchange rate at a lower level.

If, by contrast, a country's currency is undervalued, its central bank's intervention to keep the currency from appreciating leads to a gain of international reserves. The central bank might not want to acquire these international reserves, and so it might reset the par value of its exchange rate at a higher level—a **revaluation**).

PERFECT CAPITAL MOBILITY. If there is perfect capital mobility—that is, if there are no barriers to domestic residents purchasing foreign assets or foreigners purchasing domestic assets—and a country fixes its exchange rate to an anchor currency of a larger country, then it loses control of monetary policy. If the larger country pursues a tighter monetary policy and raises the real interest rate, there would be an appreciation of the larger country's currency and a depreciation of the smaller country's currency. The smaller country, having locked in its exchange rate to the anchor currency, will now find its currency overvalued and will therefore have to sell the anchor currency and buy its own to keep its currency from depreciating. The foreign exchange intervention thus leads to a decline in the smaller country's international reserves, a decline in liquidity in the banking system, and a rise in real interest rates. Hence the real interest rate in the smaller country moves with the real interest rate in the larger country, and the smaller country no longer controls real interest rates or monetary policy.

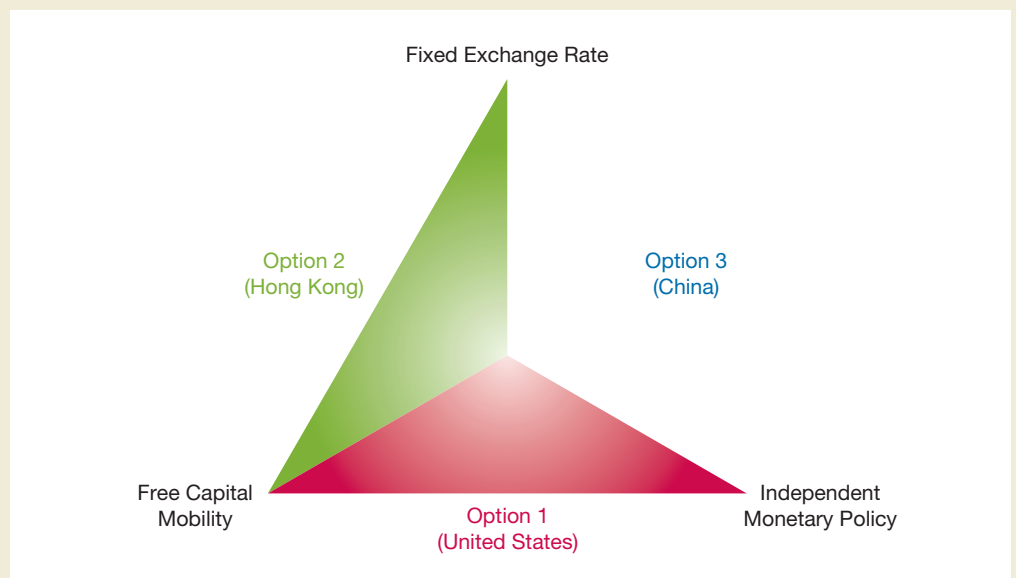
The Policy Trilemma

Our preceding analysis indicates that a country (or currency area like the Eurozone) can't pursue the following three policies at the same time: 1) free capital mobility, 2) a fixed exchange rate, and 3) an independent monetary policy. Economists call this result the **policy trilemma**, or, more graphically, the **impossible trinity**. Figure 17.9 illustrates the policy trilemma. A country can only choose two of the three options, which are denoted by each side of the triangle. In option 1, a country (or currency area) chooses to have capital mobility and an independent monetary policy, but not a fixed

FIGURE 17.9

The Policy Trilemma

A country (or monetary union) cannot pursue the following three policies at the same time: 1) free capital mobility, 2) a fixed exchange rate, and 3) an independent monetary policy. Instead, it must choose two of the three policies on each side of the triangle.



exchange rate. The Eurozone and the United States have made this choice. Hong Kong and Belize have chosen option 2, in which there is free capital mobility and the exchange rate is fixed, so the country or currency area does not have an independent monetary policy. Other countries, like China, have chosen option 3, in which they have a fixed exchange rate and pursue an independent monetary policy, but do not have free capital mobility because they have **capital controls**, restrictions on the free movement of capital across their borders.

The policy trilemma thus leaves countries or currency areas with a difficult choice. Do they accept exchange rate volatility (option 1), give up an independent monetary policy (option 2), or restrict capital flows (option 3)?

Application

How Did China Accumulate over \$2 Trillion of International Reserves?

By 2010, China had accumulated more than \$2 trillion of international reserves. How did the Chinese get their hands on this vast amount of foreign assets? After all, China is not yet a rich country.

The answer is that China pegged its exchange rate to the U.S. dollar at a fixed rate of 8.28 yuan (also called renminbi) to the dollar in 1994. Because of China's rapidly growing productivity that has led to increased demand for its exports, the long-run value of the yuan has increased, leading to a higher relative expected return for yuan assets and an increase in the demand for yuan assets. As a result, despite some restrictions on capital flows, the Chinese found themselves in the situation depicted in panel (b) of Figure 17.8 in which the yuan is undervalued. To keep the yuan from appreciating above E_{par} to E_1 in the figure, the Chinese central bank has been engaging in massive purchases of U.S. dollar assets. Today the Chinese government is one of the largest holders of U.S. government bonds in the world.

The pegging of the yuan to the U.S. dollar has created several problems for Chinese authorities. First, the Chinese now own a significant amount of U.S. assets, particularly U.S. Treasury securities, which have very low returns. Second, the undervaluation of the yuan has made Chinese goods so cheap abroad that many countries have threatened to erect trade barriers against these goods if the Chinese government does not allow an upward revaluation of the yuan. Third, as we learned earlier in the chapter, the Chinese purchase of dollar assets has resulted in a substantial increase in the Chinese money supply, which has the potential to produce high inflation in the future. In July 2005, China finally made its peg somewhat more flexible by letting the value of the yuan rise 2.1% and subsequently allowed it to appreciate at a gradual pace. The central bank also indicated that it would no longer fix the yuan to the U.S. dollar, but would instead maintain its value relative to a basket of currencies.

Why have the Chinese authorities maintained this exchange rate peg for so long despite the problems? One answer is that they wanted to keep their export sector humming by keeping the prices of their export goods low. A second answer might be that they wanted to accumulate a large amount of international reserves as a "war chest" that could be sold to buy yuan in order to keep the yuan from declining at some future date. Given the pressure on the Chinese government to further revalue its currency from government officials in the United States and Europe, there are likely to be further adjustments in China's exchange rate policy in the future.

To Peg or Not to Peg

Fixed exchange rate regimes have a long history. They can take the form of fixing the value of the domestic currency to a commodity such as gold, the key feature of the gold standard of the late nineteenth and early twentieth century. More recently, fixed exchange rate regimes have fixed the value of the domestic currency to that of a large, low-inflation country like the United States (the anchor country). Another alternative is to adopt a **crawling peg**, in which a currency is allowed to depreciate at a steady rate so that the inflation rate in the pegging country can be higher than that of the anchor country.

Advantages of Exchange-Rate Pegging

Pegging the exchange rate has several advantages. It contributes to keeping inflation under control by tying the inflation rate for internationally traded goods to that found in the anchor country. The foreign price of internationally traded goods is set by the world market, while the domestic price of these goods is fixed by the exchange-rate peg. For example, until 2002 in Argentina the exchange rate for the Argentine peso was exactly one peso to the dollar, so that a bushel of wheat that traded internationally at five dollars had its price set at five pesos. If the exchange-rate target is credible (i.e., expected to be adhered to), the exchange-rate peg has the added benefit of anchoring inflation expectations to the inflation rate in the anchor country.

An exchange-rate peg also means that the country has in effect adopted the monetary policy of the anchor country. If that country has a monetary policy that is noninflationary, then pegging the exchange rate will mean that monetary policy in the pegging country will be noninflationary as well.

Given its advantages, it is not surprising that industrialized countries have used exchange-rate pegging successfully to control inflation. Both France and the United Kingdom, for example, successfully used exchange-rate pegging to lower inflation by tying the values of their currencies to the German mark. In 1987, when France first pegged its exchange rate to the mark, its inflation rate was 3%, two percentage points above the German inflation rate. By 1992, its inflation rate had fallen to 2%, a level that can be argued is consistent with price stability, and was even below that in Germany. By 1996, the French and German inflation rates had converged, to a number slightly below 2%. Similarly, after pegging to the German mark in 1990, the United Kingdom was able to lower its inflation rate from 10% to 3% by 1992, when it was forced to abandon the exchange rate peg.

Exchange-rate pegging has also been an effective means of reducing inflation quickly in emerging market countries. For example, before the devaluation in Mexico in 1994, its exchange-rate peg enabled it to bring inflation down from levels above 100% in 1988 to below 10% in 1994.

Disadvantages of Exchange-Rate Pegging

Despite the inherent advantages of exchange-rate pegging, there are several serious criticisms of this strategy. As we saw earlier in the chapter, with capital mobility the pegging country can no longer pursue its own independent monetary policy to respond to domestic shocks that are independent of those hitting the anchor country. Furthermore, an exchange-rate peg means that shocks to the anchor country are directly transmitted to the pegging country, because changes in interest rates in the anchor country lead to a corresponding change in interest rates in the pegging country.

A striking example of these problems occurred when Germany reunified in 1990. In response to concerns about inflationary pressures arising from reunification and the massive fiscal expansion required to rebuild East Germany, real long-term German interest rates rose until February 1991 and real short-term rates rose until December 1991. This rise in real interest rates in Germany, the anchor country, was transmitted directly to the other countries whose currencies were pegged to the mark, Germany's currency prior to the adoption of the euro, and their real interest rates rose in tandem with those in Germany. Continuing adherence to the exchange-rate peg slowed economic growth and increased unemployment in countries such as France that adhered to the exchange-rate peg.

Exchange-rate pegs also leave countries open to **speculative attacks** on their currencies—massive sales of a weak currency that lead to a sharp decline in the exchange rate.⁷ Indeed, one aftermath of German reunification was the foreign exchange crisis of September 1992. The rise in real interest rates in Germany following reunification meant that the countries pegged to the mark were subjected to a negative demand shock that led to a decline in economic growth and a rise in unemployment. It was certainly feasible for the governments of these countries to keep their exchange rates fixed relative to the mark in these circumstances and allow real interest rates in their countries to rise, but speculators began to question whether these countries' commitment to the exchange-rate peg would weaken. Speculators reasoned that these countries would not tolerate the rise in unemployment resulting from keeping interest rates high enough to fend off attacks on their currencies. At this stage, speculators were, in effect, presented with a one-way bet, because the currencies of countries like France, Spain, Sweden, Italy, and the United Kingdom could go in only one direction and depreciate against the mark. Selling these currencies before the likely depreciation occurred gave speculators an attractive profit opportunity with potentially high expected returns. The result was a speculative attack in September 1992. Only in France was the commitment to the fixed exchange rate strong enough so that France did not devalue. The governments in the other countries were unwilling to defend their currencies at all costs and eventually allowed their currencies to fall in value.

The different responses of France and the United Kingdom after the September 1992 exchange-rate crisis illustrates the potential cost of an exchange-rate peg. France, which continued to peg its currency to the mark and was thus unable to use monetary policy to respond to domestic conditions, found that economic growth remained slow after 1992 and unemployment increased. The United Kingdom, on the other hand, which dropped the exchange-rate peg, had much better economic performance: economic growth was higher, the unemployment rate fell, and yet its inflation was not much worse than France's.

In contrast to industrialized countries, emerging market countries (including the transition countries of Eastern Europe) may not lose much by giving up an independent monetary policy when they peg exchange rates. Because many emerging market countries have not developed the political or monetary institutions that allow the successful use of discretionary monetary policy, they may have little to gain from an independent monetary policy, but a lot to lose. Thus they would be better off by, in effect, adopting the monetary policy of a country like the United States through pegging exchange rates than by pursuing their own independent policy. This is one of the reasons that so many emerging market countries have adopted exchange-rate pegging.

⁷A more detailed discussion of the dynamics of speculative attacks can be found in the second apweb appendix to this chapter found at the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin.

Nonetheless, exchange-rate pegging is highly dangerous for these countries, because it leaves them open to speculative attacks that can have far more serious consequences for their economies than for the economies of industrialized countries. This is the hard lesson that Argentina learned, which we discuss in the Policy and Practice case, “The collapse of the Argentine Currency Board.”

Policy and Practice



The Collapse of the Argentine Currency Board

Argentina has had a long history of monetary instability, with inflation rates fluctuating dramatically and sometimes surging to beyond 1,000% per year. To end this cycle of inflationary surges, Argentina decided to adopt a currency board in April 1991. The Argentine currency board worked by fixing the peso/dollar exchange rate at one to one; a member of the public could go to the Argentine central bank and exchange a peso for a dollar, or vice versa, at any time.

The early years of Argentina’s currency board looked stunningly successful. Inflation, which had been running at an 800% annual rate in 1990, fell to less than 5% by the end of 1994, and economic growth was rapid, averaging almost 8% per year from 1991 to 1994. In the aftermath of the Mexican peso crisis, however, concern about the health of the Argentine economy resulted in the public pulling money out of the banks (deposits fell by 18%) and exchanging Argentine pesos for dollars, thus causing a contraction of the Argentine money supply. A sharp drop in Argentine economic activity followed, with real GDP shrinking by more than 5% in 1995 and the unemployment rate jumping above 15%. Only in 1996 did the economy begin to recover.

Because the central bank of Argentina had no control over monetary policy under the currency board system, it was relatively helpless to counteract the contractionary monetary policy stemming from the public’s behavior. Furthermore, because the currency board did not allow the central bank to create pesos and lend them to the banks, it had very little capability to act as a lender of last resort. With help from international agencies, such as the IMF, the World Bank, and the Interamerican Development Bank, which lent Argentina more than \$5 billion in 1995 to help shore up its banking system, the currency board survived.

However, in 1998 Argentina entered another recession, which was both severe and very long lasting. By the end of 2001, unemployment reached nearly 20%, a level comparable to that experienced in the United States during the Great Depression of the 1930s. The result was civil unrest and the fall of the elected government, as well as a major banking crisis and a default on nearly \$150 billion of government debt. Because the Central Bank of Argentina had no control over monetary policy under the currency board system, it was unable to use monetary policy to expand the economy and get out of its recession. In January 2002, the currency board finally collapsed and the peso depreciated by more than 70%. The result was a full-scale financial crisis, with inflation shooting up and an extremely severe depression. Clearly, the Argentine public is not as enamored of its currency board as it once was.⁸

⁸The Argentine financial crisis is discussed in the Web chapter, “Financial Crises in Emerging Market Economies,” found at the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin

SUMMARY

1. Foreign exchange rates (the price of one country's currency in terms of another's) are important because they affect the price of domestically produced goods sold abroad and the cost of foreign goods bought domestically. The real exchange rate, the nominal exchange rate times the relative price levels, indicates whether a country's goods are relatively cheap or expensive.
2. The law of one price indicates that if two countries produce an identical good, and transportation costs and trade barriers are very low, the price of the good should be the same throughout the world no matter which country produces it. Applying the law of one price to national price levels produces the theory of purchasing power parity, which suggests that long-run changes in the exchange rate between two countries are affected by changes in the relative price levels in the two countries.
3. Equilibrium in the foreign exchange market occurs when the quantity of dollar assets demanded equals the quantity supplied.
4. In the short run, exchange rates are determined by changes in the relative expected return on domestic assets, which cause the demand curve to shift. Any factor that changes the relative expected return on domestic assets will lead to changes in the exchange rate. Such factors include changes in the real interest rate on domestic and foreign assets as well as changes in the expected future exchange rate.
5. An appreciation of the exchange rate is contractionary, leading to a decline in both aggregate output and inflation, while a depreciation has the opposite effect and is expansionary. Monetary policy can counteract the shocks from exchange rate changes.
6. A central bank intervention in which a central bank sells the domestic currency to purchase foreign assets leads to a gain in international reserves, an increase in liquidity, a rise in the money supply, a decline in domestic interest rates, and therefore a depreciation of the domestic currency.
7. In a fixed exchange rate regime, when the domestic currency is overvalued, the central bank must purchase domestic currency to keep the exchange rate fixed, while if it is undervalued, it must sell domestic currency. The policy trilemma indicates that a country (or a currency area) cannot pursue the following three policies at the same time: 1) free capital mobility, 2) a fixed exchange rate, and 3) an independent monetary policy.
8. Exchange-rate pegging has the following advantages for the pegging country: (1) it directly keeps inflation under control by tying the inflation rate for internationally traded goods to that found in the anchor country to whom its currency is pegged; and (2) it adopts the monetary policy of the anchor country, which if it is noninflationary implies that the monetary policy in the pegging country will be as well. Exchange-rate pegging also has serious disadvantages: (1) It results in a loss of independent monetary policy; and (2) it leaves the pegging country open to speculative attacks.

KEY TERMS

anchor currency, p. 443

appreciation, p. 424

capital controls, p. 446

capital mobility, p. 431

crawling peg, p. 447

currency board, p. 443

depreciation, p. 424

devaluation, p. 445

expected return, p. 431

fixed exchange rate regime, p. 443

floating (flexible) exchange rate regime, p. 443

foreign exchange interventions, p. 440

foreign exchange market, p. 424

forward exchange rate, p. 424

forward transaction, p. 424

impossible trinity, p. 445

international reserves, p. 440

law of one price, p. 428

managed float regime (dirty float), p. 443

nominal exchange rate, p. 424

policy trilemma, p. 445

real exchange rate, p. 425

reevaluation, p. 445

speculative attacks, p. 448

spot exchange rate, p. 424

spot transaction, p. 424

terms of trade, p. 425

theory of purchasing power parity (PPP), p. 428

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Foreign Exchange Market and Exchange Rates

1. What is the foreign exchange market? Describe the two types of transactions that take place in this market.
2. Differentiate the nominal and real exchange rates between dollars and euros. Do the two exchange rates move together? Why is appreciation or depreciation of real exchange rates important?

Exchange Rates in the Long Run

3. How is the theory of purchasing power parity related to the law of one price? Why doesn't PPP hold in the short run?

Analysis of Changes in Exchange Rates

5. Identify three factors that could cause the exchange rate for a currency to rise.

Intervention in the Foreign Exchange Market

7. Why do central banks intervene in foreign exchange markets? How do these interventions affect their international reserves and exchange rates?

To Peg or Not to Peg

11. What are the advantages and disadvantages of exchange-rate pegging?

PROBLEMS

All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Foreign Exchange Market and Exchange Rates

1. Suppose a bottle of wine sells for \$16 in California and for €10 in France. Assuming a nominal exchange rate of 0.75 euro per dollar,
 - a) calculate the real exchange rate between U.S. wine and French wine.
 - b) calculate the real exchange rate between U.S. wine and French wine if the domestic price of U.S. wine is now \$12 a bottle.

Exchange Rates in the Short Run

4. Why does the foreign exchange market move toward equilibrium when the foreign exchange rate for the dollar is either above or below its equilibrium value?

Aggregate Demand and Supply Analysis of Exchange Rate Effects

6. What are the short-run effects on aggregate output and the inflation rate when the domestic currency appreciates or depreciates?

Fixed Exchange Rate Regimes

8. How do fixed, floating, and managed or dirty float exchange rate regimes differ?
9. What happens in a fixed exchange rate regime if a currency is overvalued? What problem can this create?
10. What is the policy trilemma?

Exchange Rates in the Long Run

2. A Starbucks coffee sells for 10 yuan in Beijing, China, and for \$2 in Chicago.
 - a) Calculate the nominal exchange rate if the law of one price holds.
 - b) Assume that currently the nominal exchange rate is 7 yuan per dollar. What would be the purchasing power parity theory prediction about the future value of the nominal exchange rate? (Hint: which nominal exchange rate makes the real exchange rate equal to one?)
3. For all the following examples the law of one price does not hold (i.e., at current nominal exchange rates, the price of these goods or services are not the same). For each case explain what prevents the law of one price from holding
 - a) a ton of sugar in the United States and a ton of sugar in Brazil.
 - b) a three bedroom penthouse in Manhattan and a three bedroom apartment in Mexico City.
 - c) a pound of the finest Swiss chocolate and a pound of Hershey's kisses.

Analysis of Changes in Exchange Rates

4. In March 2009 the nominal exchange rate between the U.S. dollar and the Brazilian real was around 2.3 real per dollar. By March 2009 it was quite clear that the Brazilian economy was not as affected by the world financial crisis as the U.S. economy. In March 2010, the exchange rate was 1.8 real per dollar.
 - a) Graph the foreign exchange market in March 2009 from the U.S. perspective.
 - b) Using the graph, explain how expectations about the relative future performance of the U.S. and Brazil affected the demand for U.S. dollar-denominated assets.
5. The following table shows the nominal exchange between the U.S. dollar and the euro (U.S. dollars per euro) at different points in time.

November 2009	December 2009	January 2010	February 2010	March 2010
1.4908	1.4579	1.4266	1.3680	1.3570
6. Suppose that the Federal Reserve cannot convince the public of its commitment to fight inflation in the United States in the near future.
 - a) Plot the nominal exchange rate and determine if the U.S. dollar has been appreciating or depreciating with respect to the euro during this period. Note that the exchange rate is quoted as dollars per euro.
 - b) Calculate the percentage change in the exchange rate from November 2009 to December 2009 and from January 2010 to February 2010. Comment on the size of these fluctuations.
7. On November 2007 Brazil announced the discovery of huge oil reserves that could potentially transform the country into a big exporter of oil.
 - a) What would be the effect of the increase in revenues from oil exports on Brazil's exchange rate?
 - b) How would this affect other Brazilian exports? Is this a desirable outcome for the country as a whole?

Source: Fed Data.

Aggregate Demand and Supply Analysis of the Effects of Exchange Rates

Intervention in the Foreign Exchange Market

8. The following T-account (in billions of dollars) depicts an intervention in the foreign exchange market conducted by Federal Reserve:

Assets		Liabilities	
Foreign Assets	+\$5	Reserves	+\$5

- a) Did the Federal Reserve buy or sell U.S. dollars?
 b) What is the effect on the exchange rate from this intervention?

Fixed Exchange Rate Regimes

9. Explain why a central bank might want to intervene in the foreign exchange market to prevent an excessive appreciation of its currency, even if it previously stated that it will allow its currency to respond to supply and demand conditions in the foreign exchange market.

To Peg or Not to Peg

10. Assume a country has pegged the value of its currency to another country's currency and that the anchor country increases its interest rate. Describe the effects on the following:
 a) The export sector of the pegging country
 b) Households' net worth if the pegging country is forced to devalue its currency and most debts are denominated in the foreign (anchor) currency



MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.

Online appendices “The Interest Parity Condition” and “Speculative Attacks and Foreign Exchange Crises” are available at the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin



Part Seven

Microeconomic Foundations of Macroeconomics

Chapter 18

Consumption and Saving

Chapter 19

Investment

Chapter 20

The Labor Market, Employment, and Unemployment



Part Seven Microeconomic Foundations of Macroeconomics

This part of the book develops microeconomic analysis of households' and firms' behavior to provide a deeper understanding of macroeconomic relationships featured earlier in the book. Chapter 18 and its appendix discusses the microeconomic foundations of consumption and saving. Chapter 19 develops microeconomic models of investment behavior and applies them to explain recent economic history and to explain what tools policy makers have to influence investment spending. Chapter 20 develops a supply and demand analysis of the labor market and uses it to explain increasing labor participation for women, the increase in returns to education in recent years, the increase in income inequality, and the sources of unemployment.

We will examine applications in each chapter to make the critical connection between theory and real-world practice:

- "Housing, the Stock Market, and the Collapse of Consumption in 2008 and 2009"
- "The Stock Market and Boom and Bust in 'New Economy' Investment, 1995–2001"
- "Boom and Bust in the Housing Market, 2001–2009"
- "Why Has Labor Force Participation of Women Increased?"
- "Why Are Returns to Education and Income Inequality Increasing?"
- "Why Are European Unemployment Rates Generally Much Higher Than U.S. Unemployment Rates?"

In keeping with our focus on key policy issues and the techniques policy makers use in practice, we will also analyze the following specific examples in Policy and Practice cases:

- "The 2008 Tax Rebate"
- "Behavioral Policies to Increase Saving"
- "U.S. Government Policies and the Housing Market"
- "Unemployment Insurance and Unemployment"
- "Minimum Wage Laws"



18

Consumption and Saving

Preview

From 2001 to 2007, buoyant households increased consumption expenditure at a rapid rate of 3% a year. In 2008 and 2009, when households began to save more, consumption expenditure fell, declining at a 0.25% rate in 2008 and a 0.6% rate in 2009. Because consumption expenditure is 70% of total spending in the economy, the collapse of consumer spending was a major factor in the contraction of economic activity in those two years, resulting in the worst recession in the postwar period.

Why did households suddenly decide to save more and cut back on their spending? To answer this question, we need to delve deeper into what affects consumers' decisions to spend and save. In this chapter, we do so by discussing the *microeconomic* foundations of consumption and saving behavior. We first discuss a basic theory of consumption developed by Irving Fisher that explains *intertemporal choice*, decisions about spending today versus tomorrow. Then we examine the three most common theories of consumption that are used today: one developed by John Maynard Keynes that we discussed in Chapter 9, known as the *Keynesian consumption function*, and the two others, the *permanent income hypothesis* and the *life-cycle hypothesis*, developed by Milton Friedman and Franco Modigliani, both of whom won Nobel prizes for this research. These theories, which have been refined further over time, provide us with an understanding of consumer behavior that is a basic building block for macroeconomic analysis in the rest of this book.

The Relationship Between Consumption and Saving

What we consume today we can't save for tomorrow. Seen in this way, consumption and saving are really two sides of the same coin. **Saving**, S , is the difference between the amount of income a person has to spend and his or her current spending. The income available to spend, **disposable income**, is total (gross) income net of (minus) taxes.

Here, for simplicity, we denote disposable income as Y .¹ For a household, current spending is consumer expenditure, so we define saving by the identity:

$$S = Y - C \quad (1)$$

Taking the level of disposable income, Y , as given, we can determine consumption expenditure, C , by developing a theory of saving, S . Conversely, if we have a theory of saving, S , then Equation 1 tells us that we also have a theory of consumption, C . Throughout this chapter, then, when we talk about how to determine consumption, we are also talking about how saving is determined, and vice versa.

Intertemporal Choice and Consumption

The great U.S. economist Irving Fisher developed the basic theory of consumption. Fisher used microeconomic analysis to explain intertemporal choice, the decisions about spending today versus spending tomorrow. His theory, published in 1930, which is called the **theory of intertemporal choice**, described consumption decisions in a simplified world with only two periods of time—today (period 1) and the future (period 2). In this world, the consumer takes his or her current and future disposable income, as well as his or her wealth, as given.² And this person intends to spend all his or her money before the end of period 2, bequeathing nothing to a spouse or a child. The real interest rate at which the consumer can borrow or which is paid on savings is given at r .

Fisher's theory then proceeds in three steps. First, it defines an **intertemporal budget constraint**, laying out how much a person can consume today versus tomorrow, given a consumer's total resources. Second, it describes consumer preferences for spending today versus spending tomorrow. Third, it shows how consumers optimize (maximize their happiness) given the budget constraint and their preferences. We will now examine these three areas in detail.

Before we start, keep in mind that this model describes all dollar amounts and interest rates in *real* terms. That is, dollar amounts represent the real purchasing power of those dollars, and interest rates refer to the amount of extra real purchasing power a lender must be paid for the rental of his or her money.

The Intertemporal Budget Constraint

We begin by considering the consumption constraints of Carmencita the consumer, who has an income today in constant dollars (Y_1) of \$50,000, an expected income tomorrow (Y_2) of \$52,000, and initial wealth (assets) (W) of \$10,000. She faces a real interest rate (r) of 4% at which she can borrow and lend.³

¹Note that in Chapters 2, 4, and 9, we distinguished between disposable income, which subtracts out taxes, from total income, which does not. Here we use the term Y to denote disposable income rather than total income as in these chapters to simplify the notation. In addition, in contrast to Chapters 2 and 4, S here refers to private saving and not national saving (which includes government saving).

²Irving Fisher, *The Theory of Interest* (New York: Macmillan, 1930).

³The second-period income, Y_2 , does not include the interest income earned on savings because that is already included in the intertemporal budget constraint in Equation 2 via the $r(W + Y_1 - C_1)$ term. Another way of reaching this determination is that Y refers to labor income only.

If Carmencita plans to spend C_1 in the first period, we can determine her consumption in the second period, C_2 . She'll have her initial wealth, W , plus whatever income she doesn't spend in the first period, $Y_1 - C_1$. At the start of the first period, Carmencita can put this amount, $(W + Y_1 - C_1)$, in her bank account and earn interest, leaving her with an amount of $(1 + r)(W + Y_1 - C_1)$ in the second period, plus whatever she earns in the second period, Y_2 . (Remember, these are real variables adjusted for inflation.) Since Carmencita has no desire to leave a bequest (inheritance), she will spend everything she has in period 2. Her second-period consumption, C_2 , is then as follows:

$$C_2 = (1 + r)(W + Y_1 - C_1) + Y_2 \tag{2}$$

Equation 2 is her budget constraint across the two periods, her *intertemporal budget constraint*. To make our analysis more concrete, let's consider three scenarios using the preceding numbers to show in Figure 18.1 the combinations of her spending in periods 1 and 2 that satisfy the intertemporal budget constraint. First, let's say Carmencita lives only for the future and consumes nothing today, so $C_1 = 0$. Plugging in all the numbers for r, Y_1, Y_2 , and W , her consumption in period 2 will be as follows:

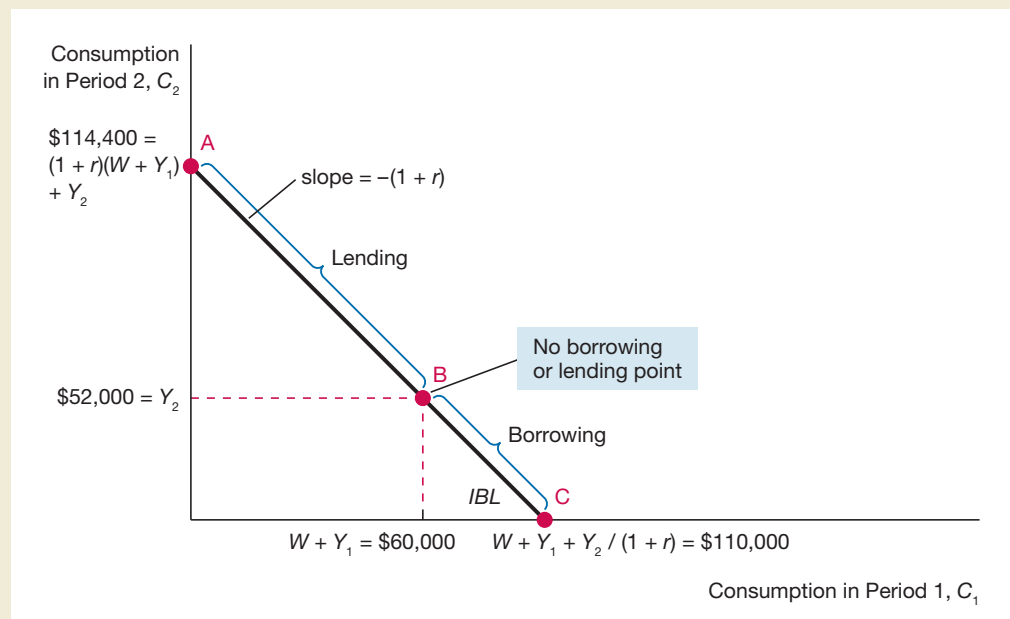
$$C_2 = (1 + .04)(\$10,000 + \$50,000 - 0) + \$52,000 = \$114,400$$

Plotting the resulting combination of $C_2 = \$114,400$ and $C_1 = 0$ in Figure 18.1, we get point A.

Suppose instead that Carmencita wants to spend everything she has without going into debt. She consumes everything she has in period 1, so $W + Y_1 - C_1 = 0$. She will

FIGURE 18.1
The Intertemporal Budget Line

The intertemporal budget line, marked as *IBL*, is a straight line that is downward sloping, with a slope of $-(1 + r)$. It shows that there is a trade-off between current consumption and future consumption: the more you spend today, the less you have available to spend tomorrow. Note that point B is the point at which there is no borrowing or lending, with lending occurring to the left of point B, and borrowing occurring to the right of point B.



then choose $C_1 = W + Y_1 = \$50,000 + \$10,000 = \$60,000$. From Equation 2, C_2 will be as follows:

$$C_2 = (1 + .04)(0) + \$52,000 = \$52,000$$

We plot the combination of $C_2 = \$52,000$ and $C_1 = \$60,000$ as point B in Figure 18.1. Point B is special because it is where Carmencita is following the adage, “Neither a borrower nor a lender be.”

Alternately, suppose Carmencita lives only for the present and wishes to consume as much as she can today, so that $C_2 = 0$. Solving for C_1 , we get $C_1 = W + Y_1 + [Y_2/(1 + r)] = \$50,000 + \$10,000 + [\$52,000/(1 + .04)] = \$110,000$. In Figure 18.1, point C is the combination of $C_1 = \$110,000$ and $C_2 = 0$.

The line connecting these three points that satisfy the intertemporal budget constraint is the **intertemporal budget line**, marked as *IBL* in Figure 18.1. It is a straight line that is downward sloping, with a slope of $-(1 + r)$: i.e., with a real interest rate of 4% (.04), for every dollar consumed today there is \$1.04 less consumption tomorrow, and for every dollar saved today there is \$1.04 more consumption tomorrow. It shows that there is a trade-off between current consumption and future consumption: the more you spend today, the less you have available to spend tomorrow. To the left and above point B, consumption in period 1, C_1 , is less than $W + Y_1$, so Carmencita has excess funds to lend at the interest rate of r . To the right and below point B, C_1 is greater than $W + Y_1$, so Carmencita must borrow at the interest rate of r .

The Intertemporal Budget Constraint in Terms of Present Discounted Value

We can also determine the intertemporal budget constraint by rearranging terms in Equation 2 to put all consumption on the right-hand side and all the other terms on the left-hand side. We do so by dividing both sides of 2 by $(1 + r)$ and adding C_1 to both sides to get the following:

$$C_1 + \frac{C_2}{1 + r} = W + Y_1 + \frac{Y_2}{1 + r} \quad (3)$$

We will think of the two sides of the equation in terms of a concept called **present value** (or **present discounted value**), the common-sense notion that a dollar you will receive tomorrow is less valuable to you now than a dollar paid to you today. You can deposit a dollar today in a savings account that pays interest (that is, you can lend the dollar to the bank) and have more than a dollar in one year. If the interest rate is r , then \$1 today will become $(1 + r)$ dollars tomorrow: with an interest rate r of 4%, \$1 today is worth \$1.04 dollars next year. Alternatively, recognize that \$1.04 dollars tomorrow is the equivalent of \$1 today. You can convert all next-period spending or income into current values by dividing them by $(1 + r)$, a process called **discounting**. (The current [discounted] value of period 1 spending and income are C_1 and Y_1 .) Adding up all these discounted values leads to the *present discounted value* of the spending, wealth and income. Looked at it in this way, the left-hand side of the intertemporal budget constraint in Equation 3 is the present discounted value of consumption spending, while the right-hand side is the present discounted value of initial wealth plus income, which we can refer to as lifetime resources. In

other words, we can describe the intertemporal budget constraint in Equation 3 as follows:

$$\text{Present value of consumption} = \text{present value of lifetime resources}$$

Preferences

Preferences involve ranking different possible choices of consumption today and tomorrow. Putting aside budget constraints, we describe preferences by asking ourselves which combinations of spending today and spending tomorrow would make us just as happy. We can then plot those combinations to create **indifference curves** showing combinations of C_1 and C_2 that lead us to the same level of overall happiness (**utility** or **welfare**). Carmencita's indifference curves are shown in Figure 18.2.

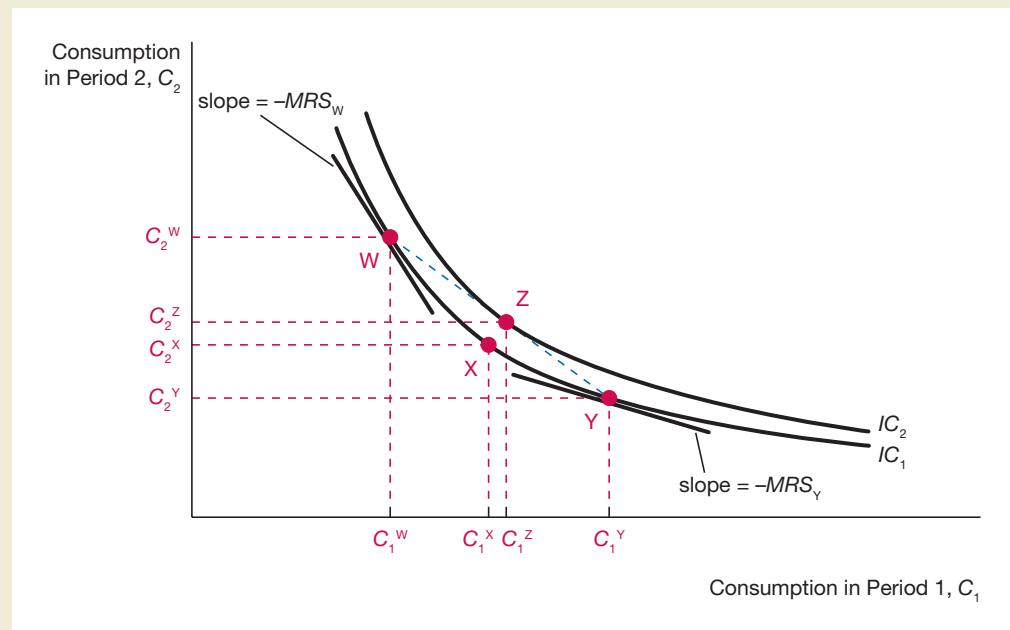
Indifference curves have three characteristics.⁴

1. *The farther an indifference curve is from the origin, the higher its utility.*
Referring to Figure 18.2, consider point Z on the higher indifference curve IC_2 , which is above and to the right of point X on the lower indifference curve IC_1 . Point Z has higher consumption in both periods 1 and 2 than does point X ($C_1^Z > C_1^X$ and $C_2^Z > C_2^X$). Because more consumption is always better, it must be true that Carmencita is happier at point Z than point X. Because every point on IC_2 is above and to the right of a point on IC_1 , the higher indifference curve IC_2 must have a higher utility than the lower indifference curve IC_1 .

FIGURE 18.2

Indifference Curves

Indifference curves have three characteristics. As they go higher (moving from IC_1 to IC_2), they have higher utility, they are downward sloping, and they are bowed in toward the origin.



⁴Note also that indifference curves cannot cross because the same combination of consumption today and tomorrow cannot have a different level of utility. If indifference curves crossed, then the intersection point would have the same combination of consumption today and tomorrow that would have two different levels of utility.

2. *Indifference curves slope down.* Consider points W and X in Figure 18.2. Since they sit on the same indifference curve IC_1 , both points make Carmencita equally happy. Yet at point W , Carmencita spends C_2^W in the second period, while at point X , she spends less, C_2^X . How can she be equally happy at these points? To keep Carmencita just as happy, her loss of happiness from lower second-period consumption must be offset by higher consumption in period 1. Indeed, at point X , C_1^X is greater than C_1^W . For Carmencita to be indifferent, consumption in period 1 must rise as consumption in period 2 falls. The indifference curves are therefore downward sloping, illustrating the trade-off between consuming today versus tomorrow, which we see as we move from points W to X to Y .
3. *Indifference curves are bowed in toward the origin.* The bowed-in shape of the indifference curves in Figure 18.2, which we refer to as **convexity**, results from the typical consumer's dislike of large fluctuations in consumption from one period to the next. In general, people prefer smooth consumption over time. Who wants to eat filet mignon and drive a Mercedes in one period and then eat ramen noodles and take the bus in the other?

Consider the three points W , Y , and Z in Figure 18.2. Point Z is halfway between point W and Y on a straight line. That is, its consumption in both periods is an average of the consumption in both periods for point W and Y . Point Z thus has much smoother consumption than either point W or Y . The preference for smooth consumption implies that point Z has higher utility than either point W or Y . For points between W and Y on the indifference curve IC_1 to have less utility than point Z , they must have lower consumption in both periods than at point Z . This can only happen if they are lower and to the left of point Z , that is, they are closer to the origin. The preference for smooth consumption therefore implies that indifference curves are convex.

We can also describe the third characteristic through the concept of the **marginal rate of substitution**, also called the **intertemporal marginal rate of substitution**, the rate at which a consumer is willing to give up (substitute) consumption in period 2 for additional consumption in period 1. This rate, $(-\Delta C_2/\Delta C_1)$, is just the negative of the slope of the indifference curve at any given point. Because consumers prefer to smooth consumption over time (and thus become increasingly averse to giving up consumption in period 2), the marginal rate of substitution becomes smaller as second-period consumption falls, giving the indifference curve a convex shape. As we see in Figure 18.2, MRS_W is smaller than MRS_Y , so that the slope of the indifference curve becomes less negative.

Optimization

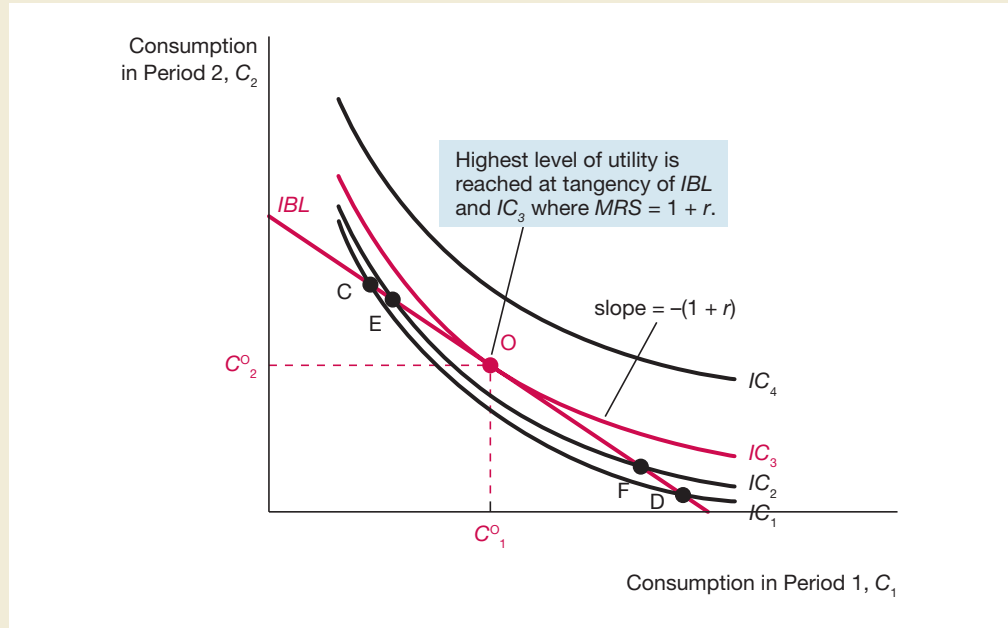
With both an intertemporal budget line and a set of indifference curves, we can identify the optimal level of consumption for both periods. We all want to be as happy as possible, so we would like to get to the highest indifference curve we can. On the other hand, we have to obey the intertemporal budget constraint. Figure 18.3, which plots Carmencita's budget line and a number of indifference curves, shows how we do this.

Carmencita can certainly achieve the level of utility associated with indifference curve IC_1 in Figure 18.3 since both points C and D on IC_1 are on her intertemporal budget constraint IBL . Indeed, she can achieve an even higher utility by moving to indifference

FIGURE 18.3

Consumer Optimization

The highest level of utility is reached at an indifference curve IC_3 , which is tangent to the intertemporal budget line at point O. At the optimal point O, the slope of IC_3 , the negative of marginal rate of substitution, equals the slope of the intertemporal budget line, $-(1 + r)$, so that $MRS = 1 + r$.



curve IC_2 , since points E and F also lie on the intertemporal budget line. On the other hand, she cannot get to a level of utility associated with the indifference curve IC_4 , since no points on IC_4 satisfy the intertemporal budget constraint. The optimum indifference curve given her budget constraint is IC_3 , which is tangent to the intertemporal budget line at point O. At point O, consumption in period 1 is C_1^O and consumption in period 2 is C_2^O . At point O, the optimum for Carmencita, the slope of the indifference curve (or the negative of the marginal rate of substitution) equals the slope of the intertemporal budget line, that is $-MRS = -(1 + r)$. Multiplying both sides by -1 yields the following:

$$MRS = 1 + r \tag{4}$$

Equation 4 shows that Carmencita chooses her level of consumption in period 1 and 2 so that the marginal rate of substitution equals one plus the real interest rate.

The Intertemporal Choice Model in Practice: Income and Wealth

Now that we understand how Carmencita makes her decisions about intertemporal choice, we can use this model to answer a set of questions about how consumption responds to changes in income and wealth. Later, we will turn to interest rates.

Response of Consumption to Income

We begin by analyzing what happens when income rises either in period 1 or period 2.

RISE IN CURRENT INCOME. Suppose Carmencita has done such a good job that her boss gives her a \$1,000 bonus today. The present value of her lifetime resources has now gone up by \$1,000, so Equation 3 indicates that she can raise her consumption in

both periods. Indeed, because the real interest rate is unchanged, the slope of the intertemporal budget line remains the same and so it shifts to the right in a parallel fashion from IBL_1 to IBL_2 in Figure 18.4. (More specifically, from Equation 3, the \$1,000 increase in the present value of lifetime resources means that consumption in period 1 can increase by \$1,000 for any given value of consumption in period 2, thereby shifting the intertemporal budget line to the right by \$1,000.) The optimal point, where the indifference curve is tangent to the budget constraint, rises from point A to point B, where consumption in both periods has risen (from C_1^A to C_1^B and from C_2^A to C_2^B). Carmencita is certainly happier because she now is on a higher indifference curve, having gone from IC_1 to IC_2 .

RISE IN FUTURE INCOME. Suppose that Carmencita's boss tells her she has done a good job, but he can't afford to pay her the \$1,000 bonus until next year. Instead he will give her a bonus next year that has the same present value as a \$1,000 bonus this year. (With a real interest rate of 4%, that means he would give her a bonus of \$1,040 next year [$\$1,000 \times (1 + 0.04)$]). The outcome is then identical to that depicted in Figure 18.4: the present value of lifetime resources goes up by \$1,000, so that the intertemporal budget line shifts to the right, and consumption in both periods rises.

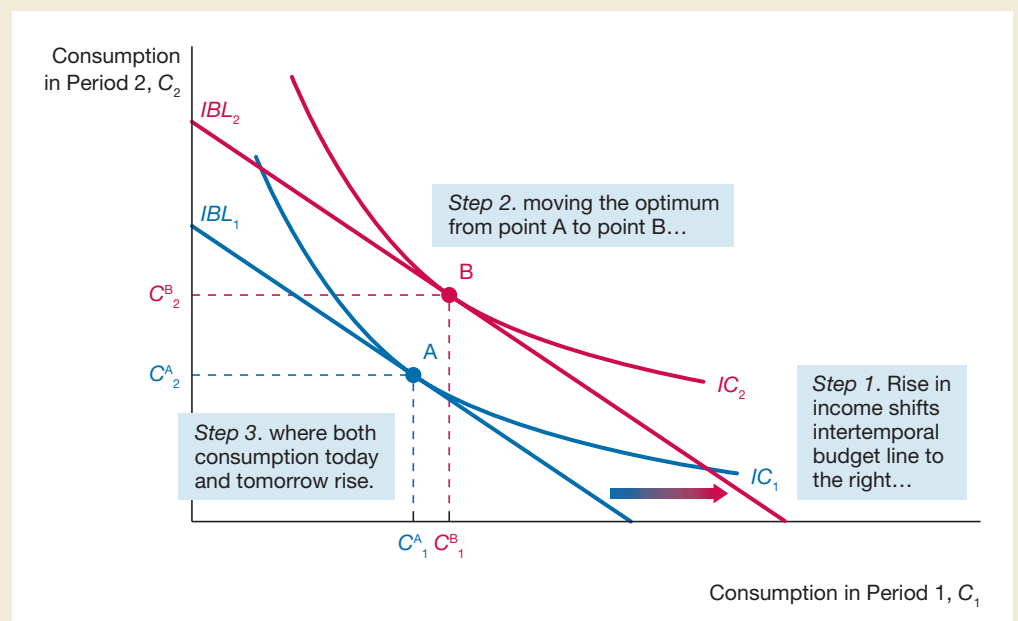
Response of Consumption to Wealth

Our analysis for income applies equally to evaluating the response of consumption to wealth. Suppose that Carmencita has some shares of Apple Computer that go up \$1,000 in value. Now Carmencita finds that her wealth is \$1,000 higher and so the present value of her lifetime resources increases by \$1,000, just as in Figure 18.4. The analysis is therefore identical: her intertemporal budget line shifts to the right and her consumption rises in both periods.

FIGURE 18.4

Response to a Rise in Current Income, Future Income, or Wealth

A rise in current income, future income, or wealth leads to the intertemporal budget line rising in parallel from IBL_1 to IBL_2 , because r is held constant and so the slope of the line does not change. The optimum moves from point A to point B, with the rise in consumption spread out over both periods, a phenomenon referred to as consumption smoothing.



Consumption Smoothing

Our analysis of consumption and wealth reveals two important facts.

1. Consumption rises when the present value of lifetime resources increases, regardless of its source (current income, future income, or wealth).
2. Consumers will spread out any increase in consumption over today and tomorrow, even if the increase stems solely from an increase in current income. This characteristic is known as **consumption smoothing**.

Consumption smoothing is a logical consequence of two elements of the intertemporal choice model: the convexity of indifference curves, and the ability of consumers to borrow or save. Indeed, consumption smoothing is a strong feature of the data because consumption fluctuates much less than GDP.

The Intertemporal Choice Model in Practice: Interest Rates

We will now consider the impact of a change in real interest rates on the intertemporal budget line and consumption.

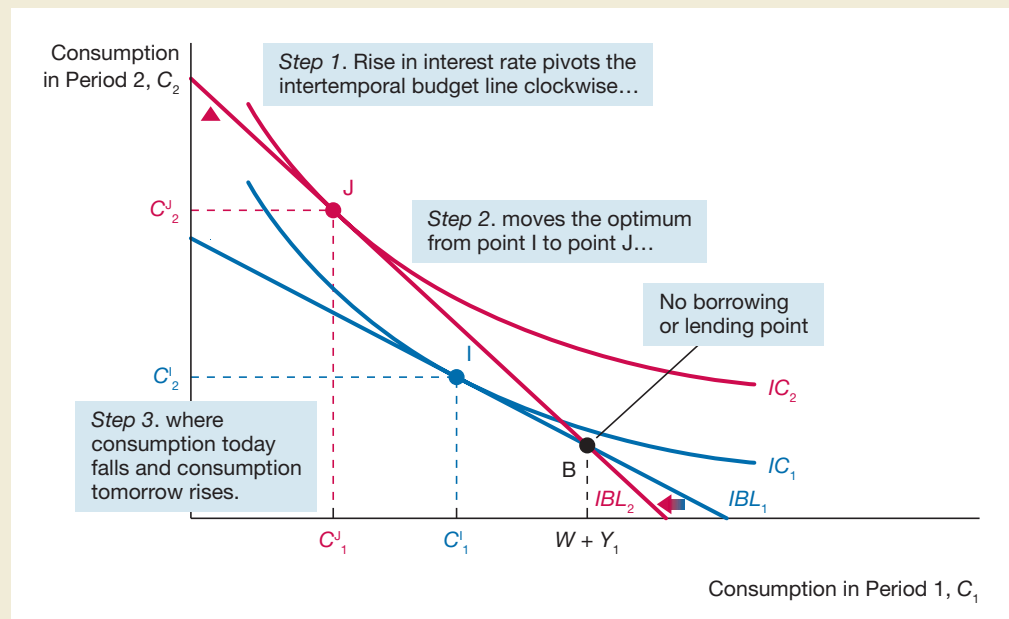
Interest Rates and the Intertemporal Budget Line

To see what happens when the interest rate rises from r_1 to r_2 , let's first look at Figure 18.5 at point B on the initial intertemporal budget line IBL_1 , in which current consumption is equal to initial wealth plus first-period income, that is, $C_1 = W + Y_1$. In this special case, Carmencita is neither borrowing nor lending, so consumption in the second period is equal to second-period income, $C_2 = Y_2$. We therefore mark point B in Figure 18.5 as the "no borrowing or lending point." When the interest rate rises to r_2 , point B is still on the new intertemporal budget line IBL_2 because, with no borrowing or lending, the level of the interest rate does not matter, leaving $C_1 = W + Y_1$ and $C_2 = Y_2$.

FIGURE 18.5

Response to a Rise in the Interest Rate

When the interest rate rises from r_1 to r_2 , the intertemporal budget line pivots clockwise around point B, the no borrowing or lending point, moving from IBL_1 to IBL_2 . The optimum now moves from point I to point J. The substitution effect is larger than the income effect, so consumption in period 1 falls, while consumption in period 2 rises.



When the interest rate rises to r_2 , however, the slope of the budget line becomes more negative at $-(1 + r_2)$, so the IBL_2 intertemporal budget line becomes steeper. Because it still goes through point B, this means that the new intertemporal budget line IBL_2 pivots around point B clockwise, as shown in Figure 18.5.

The Optimal Level of Consumption and the Intertemporal Budget Line

Because consumers on average save some of their income, we will look the case when Carmencita's optimal consumption is at point I in Figure 18.5, in which $C_1^I < W + Y_1$. In this case, the tangency point of the intertemporal budget line IBL_1 and the indifference curve IC_1 , point I, is above and to the left of point B, the no borrowing or lending point. When the interest rate rises to r_2 and the intertemporal budget line pivots to IBL_2 , we see that the optimal level of consumption at point J is at a higher indifference curve IC_2 . Consumption in period 1 has fallen to C_1^J , while consumption in period 2 has risen to C_2^J .

INCOME VERSUS SUBSTITUTION EFFECTS. We can differentiate two distinct effects on consumption when interest rates change: the **income effect**, the change in consumption due to changes in income, and the **substitution effect**, the change in consumption that occurs from the change in the relative price of consumption in the two periods. (You may recall a more general discussion of income and substitution effects from your microeconomics course. For a refresher, refer to the chapter appendix.)

In the scenario shown in Figure 18.5, Carmencita has savings, so she lends money (probably by depositing the funds in her bank account) from period 1 to period 2. With a higher rate, Carmencita earns more interest, which gives her more resources with which to consume. Thus, she can spend more in both periods. **For savers, the income effect increases consumption in both periods when interest rates rise.**

With a higher interest rate, the present discounted value of consumption in the second period falls, so consumption in the second period becomes cheaper relative to consumption in the first period. As a result, Carmencita will choose to substitute away from and reduce first-period consumption to consume more in the second period. **The substitution effect from higher interest rates leads to less consumption in period 1, but more consumption in period 2.**

We can also think of the substitution effect in terms of saving. When interest rates rise, the return to saving is higher and so a consumer will save more in the first period by reducing consumption, enabling her to spend more in the second period (consumption rises).

COMBINING INCOME AND SUBSTITUTION EFFECTS. When interest rates increase, both income and substitution effects shift second-period consumption higher. But in the first period, the substitution effect tamps down consumption while the income effect lifts consumption. The ultimate direction of the change in today's consumption depends on the relative strength of the two effects.

In practice, we usually assume that the substitution effect outweighs the income effect, as shown in Figure 18.5. In this case, **a rise in interest rates lowers today's consumption (increases saving), but boosts future consumption.**

We make this assumption because real-world data supports the view that higher interest rates are associated with higher saving and lower consumption today. However, the empirical evidence on the relationship of interest rates to consumption

and saving is not overwhelmingly strong. As we have seen here, theory does not settle this issue.⁵

Borrowing Constraints

So far we have assumed that consumers can borrow and lend at the same interest rate. However, not all consumers are good credit risks. Consumers with little or no wealth may find that they cannot get loans. Let's assume that Carmencita is one of those people and examine the effect on our analysis.

If Carmencita has no wealth and cannot borrow, she cannot spend more than she earns. We write this constraint on her spending as follows:

$$C_1 \leq Y_1$$

The equation indicates that consumption today must be less than or equal to income today. We refer to this constraint on Carmencita as a **borrowing constraint** (or a **liquidity constraint**). To see the implication for her consumption choices, let's first look at the effect of a borrowing constraint on her intertemporal budget line.

INTERTEMPORAL BUDGET LINE WITH A BORROWING CONSTRAINT. Suppose that without a borrowing constraint, Carmencita's intertemporal budget line is a straight line in panels (a) and (b) of Figure 18.6 connecting points A, B, and C with a slope of $-(1 + r)$. With a borrowing constraint, however, Carmencita cannot spend more than her current income. That is, C_1 cannot rise above Y_1 . At point B, where $C_1 = Y_1$, the intertemporal budget line becomes vertical. The borrowing constraint gives an angle, or kink, to the intertemporal budget line at Point B. We denote this line as IBL_{BC} in both panels of Figure 18.6.

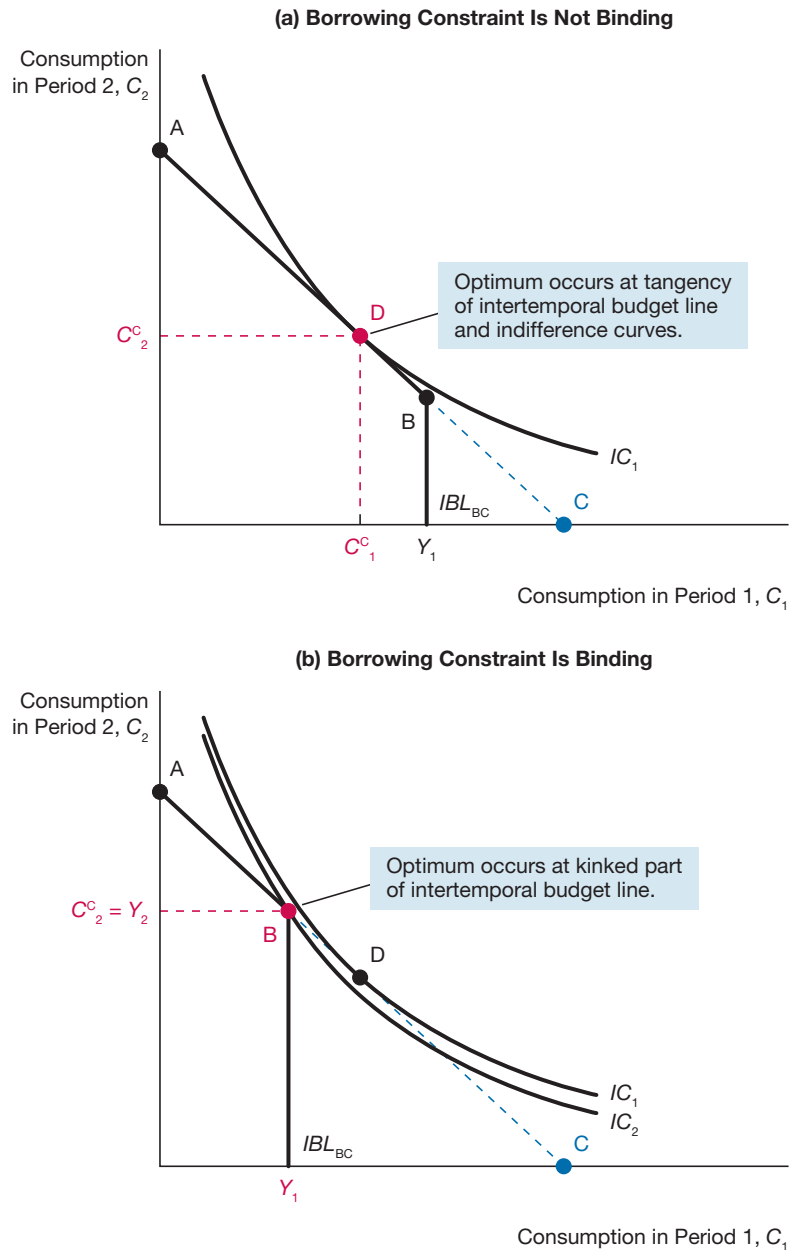
OPTIMAL CONSUMPTION WITH A BORROWING CONSTRAINT. How will a borrowing constraint change Carmencita's consumption choices? We consider two cases.

In the first case, shown in panel (a) of Figure 18.6, Carmencita's optimal level of consumption in period 1 is less than Y_1 . That is, she has no need to borrow. As a result, she will not be constrained by her inability to borrow, and we can say that the *constraint is not binding*. Indeed, in panel (a), the highest indifference curve that touches IBL_{BC} leads to a combination of consumption in periods 1 and 2 at point D, which lies on IBL_{BC} between point A and B. The highest indifference curve she can reach is identical to what she could reach without a borrowing constraint, where $MRS = (1 + r)$, so the results are identical to the ones we developed in Figures 18.3 through 18.5. Just as in those figures, any increase in lifetime resources, regardless of its source, boosts consumption in both periods.

⁵We can conduct the same analysis for a consumer that has no savings and thus borrows. In this case, the income effect is negative because a higher interest rate means that it is more costly to borrow, so a consumer has fewer resources to spend in period 1, and so will consume less in both periods. Because the income and substitution effects go in the same direction, there is no ambiguity about the effect of interest rates on today's consumption. A higher interest rate leads to lower consumption today because the income and substitution effects indicate that today's consumption falls. (On the other hand, there is ambiguity as to what happens to second-period consumption. In this case the income and substitution effects work in the opposite direction. The income effect indicates that second-period consumption should fall, while the substitution effect indicates that it should rise.)

FIGURE 18.6**Optimization with a Borrowing Constraint**

The intertemporal budget line with a borrowing constraint is kinked at point B and is denoted as IBL_{BC} in both panels of Figure 18.6. In panel (a) in which the borrowing constraint is not binding, the highest indifference curve that touches IBL_{BC} leads to a combination of consumption in periods 1 and 2 at point D, which lies on IBL_{BC} between points A and B. In panel (b) the budget constraint is binding, and the highest indifference curve that can be reached is IC_2 , which touches IBL_{BC} at point B, but is not tangent to IBL_{BC} .



We now consider a case when the *borrowing constraint is binding*. In panel (b), we can see that with no constraints on borrowing, Carmencita's highest indifference curve is the one that touches the intertemporal budget line at point D, which is to the right of point B. Unfortunately for Carmencita, she can't get to this higher indifference curve at IC_2 because she cannot borrow. That is, she can't get consumption in period 1 that is above Y_1 . Instead, the highest indifference curve she can get to is IC_2 , which touches IBL_{BC} at point B.

We can make some important conclusions from this analysis. For consumers with binding borrowing constraints, consumption in any period is determined solely by the

income they earn in that period. That is, after optimizing, it is no longer true that the marginal rate of substitution equals one plus the interest rate. Instead, the slope of the indifference curve at point B is steeper than $-(1 + r)$, so that $MRS > (1 + r)$.

In addition, we can see that borrowing constraints create two very different kinds of consumers. For a substantial fraction of consumers subject to binding borrowing constraints—perhaps as much as 20% of the U.S. population⁶—consumption is driven completely by current income, and so $C_1 = Y_1$ and $C_2 = Y_2$. The majority of the U.S. population, however, can engage in consumption smoothing, in which consumption both today and in the future will respond to any change in lifetime resources, even if it comes from a rise in future income rather than current income.

The Keynesian Theory of Consumption

Now that we have outlined a basic intertemporal choice theory of consumption, we can use it to compare three of the most popular theories of consumption. We start with the Keynesian *consumption function* that we first discussed in Chapter 9 but develop more fully here.

The Keynesian Consumption Function: Building Blocks

John Maynard Keynes, in his *General Theory of Employment, Interest and Money* published in 1936, did not base his theory of consumption on the theory of intertemporal choice, but he reached somewhat similar conclusions. Keynes based his theory of consumption on three simple conjectures:

1. When disposable income, Y , rises, households spend more.
2. When a household's income goes up, its increase in spending goes up less than one-for-one with the increase in income. Formally, the **marginal propensity to consume**, the increase in consumption expenditure from an additional dollar of disposable income ($\Delta C/\Delta Y$), is between zero and one. For example, if a person's income goes up by ten dollars and his or her spending rises by seven dollars, then the marginal propensity to consume is $0.7 = 7/10$.
3. The ratio of consumption to income (C/Y), the **average propensity to consume**, falls as income rises. For example, if a person's income rose from \$25,000 to \$50,000 and his consumption spending increased from \$20,000 to \$35,000, his average propensity to consume would fall from 0.8 ($\$20,000/\$25,000$) to 0.7 ($\$35,000/\$50,000$).

Keynes based the third conjecture on his observation that rich people save a higher fraction of their income than poor people. To use a term from microeconomics, saving is like a luxury good. This view suggests that the **average propensity to save**, also known as the **saving rate**, which is the ratio of saving to disposable income (S/Y),

⁶See, for example, Robert E. Hall and Frederic S. Mishkin, "The Sensitivity of Consumption to Transitory Income: Estimates from Panel Data on Households," *Econometrica* (March 1982): 461–481; and John Y. Campbell and N. Gregory Mankiw, "Consumption, Income, and Interest Rates: Reinterpreting the Time Series Evidence," in *NBER Macroeconomics Annual*, eds. Olivier Blanchard and Stanley Fischer (Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 1989), 185–216.

should rise with income. Dividing Equation 1 ($S = Y - C$) by Y , we can write the average propensity to save as follows:

$$S/Y = (Y - C)/Y = 1 - (C/Y)$$

For the average propensity to save (S/Y) to rise with income as Keynes believed, the average propensity to consume (C/Y) must fall as income rises.

Keynesian Consumption Function

Combining these three conjectures, Keynes wrote down a linear relationship between consumption expenditure and disposable income, which he called the **consumption function**:

$$C = \bar{C} + (mpc \times Y) \quad (5)$$

In Equation 5, mpc is a constant between zero and one ($0 < mpc < 1$) and \bar{C} is a constant referred to as **autonomous consumption expenditure** and is greater than zero ($\bar{C} > 0$).

This linear consumption function in Equation 5 satisfies all three of Keynes's conjectures. First, since $mpc > 0$, as disposable income rises ($Y \uparrow$), consumption also rises ($C \uparrow$). Second, mpc , which is between zero and one, tells us how much consumption rises when disposable income, Y , rises by \$1, and so it equals the marginal propensity to consume, which is therefore between 0 and 1 as Keynes conjectured. Third, dividing both sides of Equation 5 by Y yields

$$\frac{C}{Y} = \frac{\bar{C} + mpcY}{Y} = \frac{\bar{C}}{Y} + mpc$$

Because \bar{C} and mpc are constants, as Y rises, \bar{C}/Y falls and therefore the average propensity to consume, C/Y , also falls, which is consistent with Keynes's third conjecture that the saving rate, S/Y , rises as income rises.

The Relationship of the Keynesian Consumption Function to Intertemporal Choice

The consumption function outlined by Keynes indicates that consumption is solely related to current income and so it does not display consumption smoothing. In this sense, it is consistent with the theory of intertemporal choice for borrowing-constrained households, but not for households without a binding borrowing constraint.

The Permanent Income Hypothesis

Since binding borrowing constraints only apply to a minority of households, Milton Friedman, in his monumental work published in 1957, *A Theory of the Consumption Function*,⁷ argued that consumption smoothing was a key feature of consumption behavior. He drew on the theory of intertemporal choice to develop the **permanent income hypothesis**, which asserted that consumption depends on **permanent income**,

⁷Milton Friedman, *A Theory of the Consumption Function* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1957).

the level of income that is expected to persist over a long period of time and is therefore representative of a consumer's lifetime resources. This differs from the Keynesian consumption function, where consumption depended only on current income.

More specifically, Friedman divided income into two components, *permanent income*, denoted by Y_P , and *transitory income*, Y_T :

$$Y = Y_P + Y_T \quad (6)$$

Transitory income, in contrast to permanent income, is the component of income that does not persist for a long period of time, and so is subject to temporary fluctuations.

For example, if you pursue an MBA degree, you might expect to earn, say, an additional \$10,000 a year over your whole career. Thus your permanent income and lifetime resources would be much higher than if you had not earned the MBA degree. On the other hand, if you go to Las Vegas and hit a \$10,000 jackpot on a slot machine, you would expect this income to be temporary and so you would view it as transitory income, and it would add far less to your lifetime resources.

Milton Friedman drew from the consumption smoothing implication of intertemporal choice theory to reason that consumers would smooth out consumption spending in response to temporary fluctuations in income. In other words, they would not consume much more because of higher transitory income (like winning a jackpot) but would instead save most of it and spend a little more over many years. On the other hand, if permanent income rose, say because of an advanced degree, consumption would be much higher.

The Permanent Income Consumption Function

The permanent income hypothesis implies that we can treat consumption as a function of permanent income:⁸

$$C = cY_P \quad (7)$$

In Equation 7, c is a constant fraction, which is the marginal propensity to consume out of permanent income. In other words, ***the permanent income hypothesis indicates that consumption is proportional to permanent income.***

Relationship of the Permanent Income Hypothesis and Intertemporal Choice

Using the concept of permanent income, we can see how intertemporal choice theory comes to the same conclusion that consumption responds more to a rise in permanent income than it does to a rise in transitory income. In the theory of intertemporal choice, consumption responds to the present value of future income streams, which in our two-period model was $Y_1 + Y_2/(1 + r)$. A permanent rise in income lifts both Y_1 and Y_2 , lifting lifetime resources and increasing consumption both today and tomorrow. On the other hand, a transitory hike in income will lift Y_1 but not Y_2 , and boost lifetime resources (and today's consumption) by a much smaller amount.

⁸Friedman assumed that the increase in lifetime resources from transitory income would be so small that it could be ignored and so would not lead to any increase in consumption. However, because transitory income could lead to a small increase in lifetime resources, the consumption function could be written as

$$C = c(Y_P + \theta Y_T)$$

where θ is a small number less than one as intertemporal choice theory indicates.

Because the permanent income hypothesis is derived in a multi-period framework, using similar reasoning to that of intertemporal choice theory it comes to an even stronger conclusion that consumption responds mostly to permanent income and hardly at all to transitory income. A rise in permanent income implies that income is higher for a very long time, so lifetime resources rise by a lot, indicating that consumption will also rise a lot. On the other hand, if the increase in income is transitory, then income rises for only one period, while it remains unchanged for many periods afterwards. In this case, lifetime resources will change by relatively little, implying that consumption will change minimally and most of the transitory income will be saved.

Policy and Practice



The 2008 Tax Rebate

In February 2008, Congress passed the Economic Stimulus Act to jumpstart the U.S. economy, which was weakened as a result of the financial crisis that had started in the summer of 2007. The major provision of this legislation was to give one-time tax rebates of \$78 billion by sending individual taxpayers \$600 checks in the second quarter of the year. How big an impact should these rebates have had on spending?

The permanent income hypothesis suggests that the spending impact would be very small: the rebates were clearly temporary and were transitory income. In this situation, recipients of the rebate checks would spread their spending over many years and only increase their current spending slightly. Another way of saying this is that the saving rate could be expected to rise sharply after a temporary tax rebate. This is exactly what seems to have transpired. As you can see in Figure 18.7, the saving rate jumped sharply in the second quarter of 2008

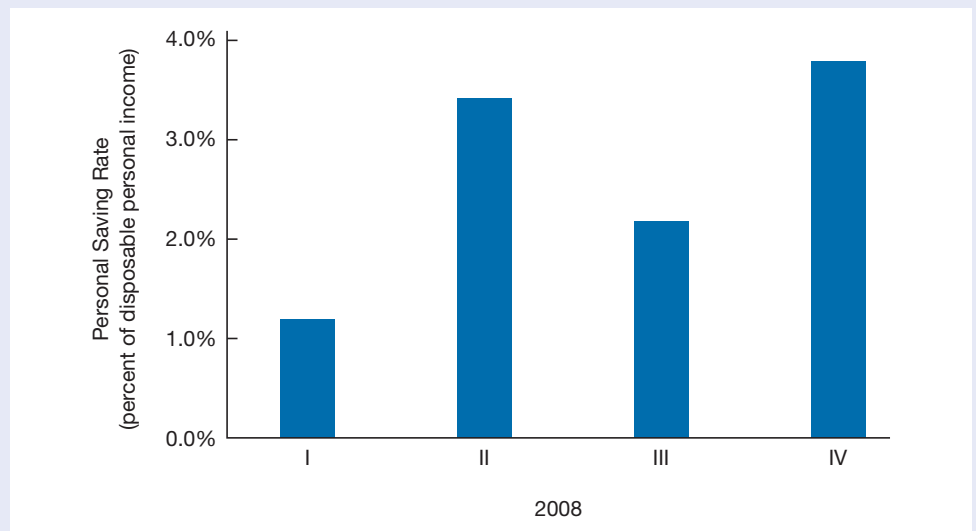


FIGURE 18.7

Saving Rate and the 2008 Tax Rebate

The saving rate jumped sharply in the second quarter of 2008 when the tax rebate checks were distributed.

Source: Bureau of Economic Analysis. National Income and Product Accounts, available at www.bea.gov.

when the rebate checks were sent out. In contrast to the prediction of the permanent income hypothesis, however, there does appear to have been some increase in spending as a result of the tax rebate. Estimates suggest that 10%–20% of the rebate checks went into increased spending. However, surveys of recipients of the rebate checks indicated over half used them not to consume more but to pay off debt, as the permanent income hypothesis would predict.⁹

The Life-Cycle Hypothesis

Franco Modigliani, in a series of papers written with co-authors starting in the mid-1950s, extended the intertemporal choice model to many periods, developing the **life-cycle hypothesis**. For most people, income changes systematically over a lifetime, most notably when income declines at retirement. As the theory suggests, people tend to smooth consumption over their *life cycle*.

Life-Cycle Consumption Function

To illustrate the life-cycle hypothesis, we look at a very simple example in which Carmencita starts earning an income at time $T = 0$, the starting age of adulthood (say, age 20), and works until she retires R years later (say 45 = age 65 – age 20). She expects to live until L years after she becomes an adult (say 60 = age 80 – age 20).

Carmencita, like any optimizing consumer following the dictums of intertemporal choice theory, wishes to smooth her consumption over her lifetime. To keep things simple, we will assume that the interest rate is zero, so that all future income and consumption streams have the same present discounted value as current income or consumption. Until time period R , Carmencita earns a salary per year of \bar{Y} , but when she retires at time R , her salary falls to zero. At any given point in time T , Carmencita's lifetime resources are made up of two components: 1) her wealth, W , and 2) the number of years she has left to work, $R - T$, multiplied by her salary, \bar{Y} , that is $(R - T)\bar{Y}$.¹⁰ Adding these two components together, her total lifetime resources at time T are $W + (R - T)\bar{Y}$. Since Carmencita wants to smooth her consumption and have the same consumption throughout the rest of her life, she will divide her lifetime resources by the number of years she has left to live, $L - T$, to determine her consumption:

$$C = \left[\frac{W + (R - T)\bar{Y}}{L - T} \right] = \left[\frac{1}{L - T} \right] W + \left[\frac{R - T}{L - T} \right] \bar{Y} \quad (8)$$

We can rewrite this consumption function separating out the wealth and income terms as the following:

$$C = \omega W + c\bar{Y} \quad (9)$$

⁹See Martin Feldstein, "The Tax Rebate Was a Flop. Obama's Stimulus Plan Won't Work Either," *Wall Street Journal*, August 6, 2009; and Claudia R. Sahm, Matthew D. Shapiro, and Joel B. Slemrod, "Did the 2008 Tax Rebates Stimulate Spending?" *American Economic Review: Papers and Proceedings* 99, no. 2 (May 2009): 374–379.

¹⁰As in the intertemporal choice model earlier, we are treating income Y as labor income only because it does not include interest payments, which in this example are zero anyway.

where,

$$\omega = [1/(L - T)] \quad (10)$$

$$c = [(R - T)/(L - T)] \quad (11)$$

The life-cycle hypothesis comes to a conclusion that we already saw from our analysis of intertemporal choice: **changes in consumption are driven by changes in income and wealth.**

This life-cycle equation tells us several interesting things. First, let's suppose that Carmencita is pretty young, say, 25 years old, so that $T = 5$, while she will retire at 65, so $R = 45$, and has a life expectancy of 80, so $L = 60$. Plugging these values into Equation 9 ($\omega = 1/55 = 0.02$, $c = 40/55 = 0.73$), we get the following:

$$C = 0.02 \times W + 0.73 \times \bar{Y}$$

When Carmencita is young she will have a marginal propensity to consume of 2 cents out of every dollar of wealth and 73 cents of every dollar of income.

What about when Carmencita is 60 years old ($T = 40$) and is only five years from retirement? Now Equation 9 (with $\omega = 1/20 = 0.05$ and $c = 5/20 = 0.25$) yields the following consumption function:

$$C = 0.05 \times W + 0.25 \times \bar{Y}$$

She now has a marginal propensity to consume 5 cents out of every dollar of wealth and 25 cents out of every dollar of income.

These two examples illustrate another important conclusion from the life-cycle hypothesis: **as consumers get older, the marginal propensity to consume out of wealth rises, while the marginal propensity to consume out of income falls.** The intuition behind this conclusion is the following: as consumers get older, they have fewer years to live and so will consume a higher fraction of their wealth each year, while their annual income will continue for fewer years, so the increase in their lifetime resources will be lower relative to their annual income and they will spend less of it.

Saving and Wealth Over the Life Cycle

The life-cycle hypothesis helps us see how saving and wealth evolve over people's lifetimes. To illustrate, let's look at a very simple example in which Carmencita has the same income \bar{Y} every year that she works, the real interest rate is zero, and there are no capital gains or losses on her wealth so that the change in wealth in any year is equal to the amount she has saved:

$$\Delta W = S = Y - C$$

Because Carmencita wants to smooth consumption, she will want her consumption to be the same every period at \bar{C} , which will be equal to the total resources that she has over her lifetime divided by the number of years she lives:

$$\bar{C} = [R/L] \times \bar{Y} = [45/60] \times \bar{Y} = 0.75 \times \bar{Y}$$

If Carmencita has a salary of \$50,000, she will be consuming \$37,500 every year.

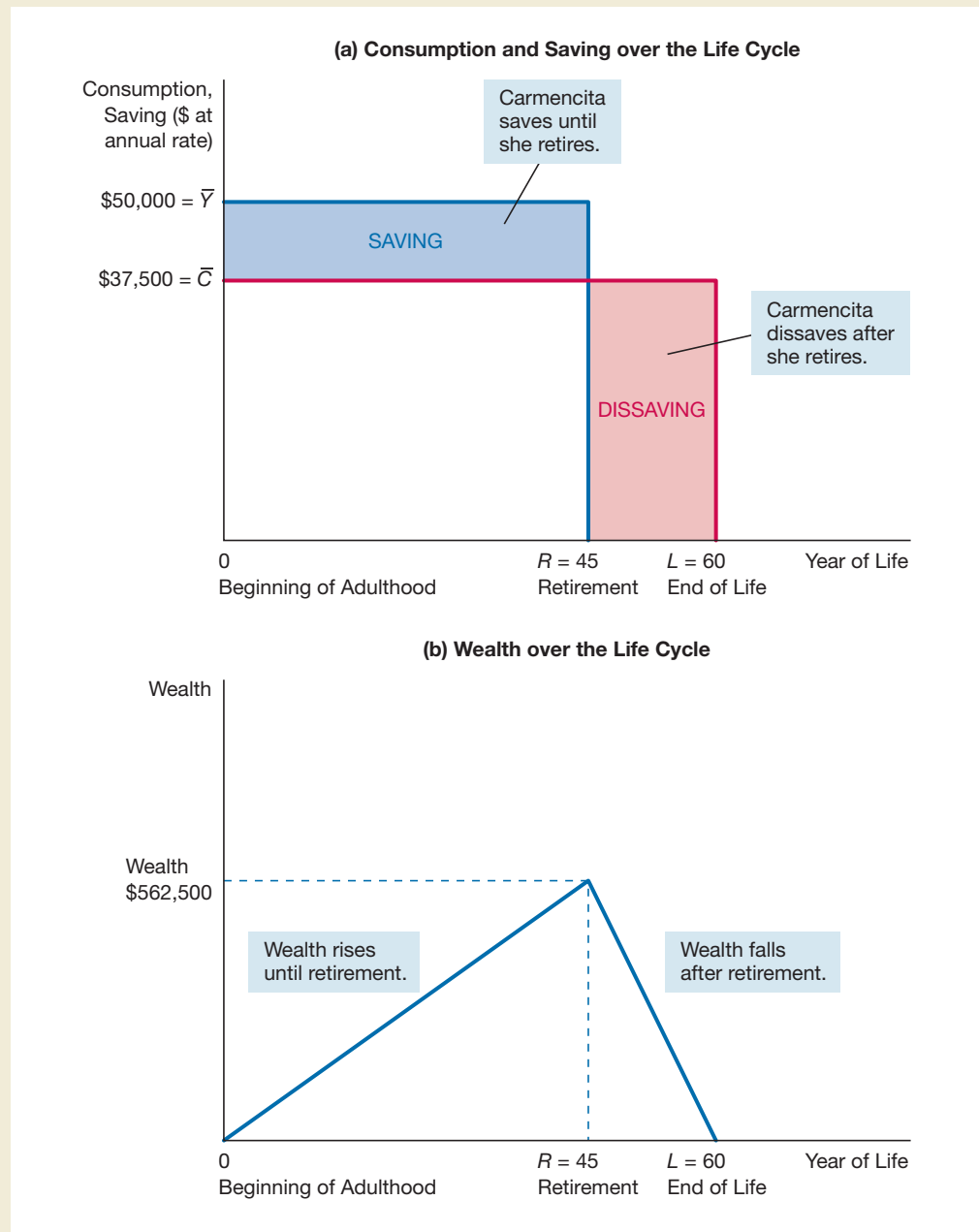
Now let's look at what happens to saving and wealth over time. For the first forty-five years of her life, Carmencita is saving $\bar{Y} - \bar{C} = \bar{Y} - 0.75\bar{Y} = 0.25\bar{Y}$ (i.e., a quarter of her salary), which is denoted by the blue shaded area in panel (a) of Figure 18.8. With a salary \bar{Y} of \$50,000 per year, prior to retirement Carmencita is saving \$12,500 per year. Every year her wealth is increasing by that amount until she retires at sixty-five, which is shown in panel (b) by wealth increasing linearly with a slope of $0.25\bar{Y} = 12,500$. At retirement, her total wealth (savings) has accumulated to \$562,500, quite a little nest egg.

When she retires and is no longer earning a salary, she is dissaving. That is, she has negative saving equal to her consumption, \bar{C} of $0.75\bar{Y}$, \$37,500, which is denoted by the

FIGURE 18.8

Consumption, Saving, and Wealth over the Life Cycle

Carmencita's yearly salary income while working is $\bar{Y} = \$50,000$, while annual consumption over her entire lifetime is $\bar{C} = 0.75\bar{Y} = \$37,500$. For the first forty-five years of life, her saving is $0.25\bar{Y} = \$12,500$ per year and this is denoted by the blue shaded area in panel (a) of Figure 18.7. After retirement she is dissaving: she has negative saving equal to her consumption, \bar{C} of $0.75\bar{Y}$, \$37,500, which is denoted by the red shaded area. Panel (b) shows what happens to wealth, which rises linearly until she retires, reaching a peak of \$562,500, and then declines until it is zero at the end of her life.



red shaded area in panel (a) of Figure 18.8. But now every year her wealth is going down by this amount, which is shown in panel (b), until at the end of her life when she has exhausted all her savings. The life-cycle hypothesis has the following additional implication: **as people grow older before retirement, their wealth grows, and then after retirement their wealth declines.** This result explains an important fact found in the data: older people tend to have higher holdings of assets (stocks, bonds, and housing) than do younger people.

Application

Housing, the Stock Market, and the Collapse of Consumption in 2008 and 2009

The life-cycle hypothesis predicts a drop in consumption when wealth suddenly declines, as it did during the financial crisis of 2007–2009. Over the crisis, the stock market lost almost 50% of its value, and housing prices plummeted. Indeed, in 2008, U.S. consumers' wealth declined by \$11.1 trillion, the largest drop ever recorded. The life-cycle hypothesis views wealth as an important component of lifetime resources. Changes in asset prices that cause wealth to fluctuate in value can be a major source of fluctuations in consumption. Indeed, estimates of the marginal propensity to consume out of wealth are in the neighborhood of 3.5 cents per dollar of wealth.¹¹ The life-cycle hypothesis therefore suggests that the \$11.1 trillion decline in wealth in 2008 would lead to a nearly \$400 billion decline in consumption. Indeed, as the life-cycle hypothesis predicts, consumption in the United States declined substantially in 2008 and 2009, making the recession the most severe since the World War II.



Two Modifications of the Theory: The Random Walk Hypothesis and Behavioral Economics

Recent research has resulted in two adjustments to the theory of consumption: the *random walk hypothesis*, and the application of *behavioral economics* to consumption behavior.

The Random Walk Hypothesis

In 1978, Robert Hall, now of Stanford University, published a path-breaking paper based on the life-cycle and permanent income hypotheses that suggested that changes in consumption would be unpredictable.¹² When changes in a variable are unpredictable, the variable is said to follow a **random walk**, and that is why Hall's theory has become known as the **random walk hypothesis**.

¹¹For example, see the survey in Frederic S. Mishkin, "Housing and the Monetary Transmission Mechanism," Federal Reserve Bank of Kansas City, *Housing, Housing Finance, and Monetary Policy, 2007 Jackson Hole Symposium* (Federal Reserve Bank of Kansas City, Kansas City, 2007): 359–413.

¹²Robert E. Hall, "Stochastic Implications of the Life Cycle-Permanent Income Hypothesis: Theory and Evidence," *Journal of Political Economy* 86 (December 1978): 971–987.

The reasoning behind the random walk hypothesis starts with three steps.

1. The life-cycle and permanent income hypotheses (as well the theory of intertemporal choice) imply that consumers are forward looking. That is, they base their consumption decisions on their current expectations about future income that determine their lifetime resources.
2. Only when expectations of future income change will expectations of lifetime resources change.
3. Since current consumption is determined by changes in expectations of lifetime resources, changes in consumption should only change when these expectations change.

The fourth step is the assumption of a concept called *rational expectations*, which we explore in more detail in Chapter 21, which says that because expectations are derived from all available information, only new information, that is, unanticipated surprises, will cause expectations to change. Hence, ***expectations of lifetime resources and current consumption will change only when there is unanticipated new information, and so changes in consumption are unpredictable. That is, they follow a random walk.***

This implication of the random walk hypothesis suggests that tax policy cannot be used to manage fluctuations in consumption in order to soften swings in economic activity. Suppose Congress passes a tax cut when the economy is in recession, but this tax cut was already expected because Congress has always passed such tax cuts in previous recessions. The tax cut will not change expectations of lifetime resources and hence will not cause consumption to change. Only if the tax cut is a surprise will it work to raise consumption. Indeed, a tax cut that is smaller than the public expects could even cause consumption to fall, not rise. Because they expected their disposable income to be higher as a result of a larger tax cut, the smaller tax cut would cause them to revise downward their expectations of lifetime resources. The random walk hypothesis thus says that the effects of tax policy on consumption will be highly uncertain, because the effect on consumption depends on what the policy *is* relative to what it *was expected* to be.

Behavioral Economics and Consumption

In recent years, **behavioral economics**, which applies concepts from other social sciences such as anthropology, sociology, and (particularly) psychology to the study of economic behavior, has emerged as an important part of economic research. Recently, economists have applied these ideas to consumption behavior, suggesting that the optimizing behavior of consumers—which is a key assumption in all of the consumption theories we have discussed—may not be a completely accurate characterization of what consumers actually do.

Because the field of behavioral economics is relatively young, we provide just a taste of its applications to the theory of consumption. One implication of behavioral economics is that consumers may be swayed by instant gratification, and so their decisions may not put enough weight on the future. David Laibson of Harvard University has labeled this phenomenon *hyperbolic discounting* to capture the idea that consumers will not consistently discount the future over time, as is assumed in the theory of intertemporal choice.¹³ Specifically, although they know that they should

¹³David Laibson, “Golden Eggs and Hyperbolic Discounting,” *Quarterly Journal of Economics* 62 (May 1997).

have a reasonably low discount rate and should not discount the future too heavily, when they make decisions they just can't help themselves and instead seek instant gratification. The result is that consumers may act as though they have a very high discount rate, even though they know that their discount rate should be much lower.

We experience this kind of behavior all the time. Even though we know that we should maintain a healthy diet and not overeat in order to live longer, many of us just can't help ourselves when we see that beautiful banana split, with hot fudge and whipped cream on top. Many of us end up far fatter than we would be if we were making optimal choices.

One result of succumbing to instant gratification and thereby making decisions with too high a discount rate is that consumers may overreact to current income and not smooth consumption sufficiently. An additional problem arising from seeking instant gratification is that consumers' saving rates may be way below what is for their own good. This insight has led some behavioral economists to suggest that policy makers should help steer people into saving more, as we discuss in the following Policy and Practice case.

Policy and Practice



Behavioral Policies to Increase Saving

Insufficient saving has become a big worry in the United States. As we discussed in Chapters 4 and 6, saving that is too low leads to a dearth of investment that can slow economic growth. Low saving can also lead to increasing indebtedness to foreigners, which can leave us poorer in the future. Furthermore, surveys indicate that most U.S. workers believe they are not saving enough for retirement.

Behavioral economists such as David Laibson and Richard Thaler of the University of Chicago believe that consumers are not making optimal decisions and they have thus suggested that consumers' choices should be limited for their own good. This approach, which has been dubbed *libertarian paternalism*, takes the libertarian view that people should have free choice, but injects some paternalism by directing people to the right choice when decisions are overly complicated or subject to the pull of instant gratification.

One application of these ideas to increasing saving is to change the default options for savings plans to encourage more saving.¹⁴ For example, many retirement savings plans that are tax-advantaged, such as 401k plans made available through employers, require workers to *choose* to enroll in the plan, that is, they have to *opt in* to the plan. Libertarian paternalists would advocate that workers should be automatically enrolled in the plan, so there is some coercion to save more—this is the paternalistic part—but they could *opt out* if they so choose—the libertarian part. The idea is that consumers may need to be nudged in the right direction by policy makers to save more but would still be able to exercise choice by opting out.

¹⁴For example, see James J. Choi, David I. Laibson, Brigitte Madrian, and Andrew Metrick, "Defined Contribution Pensions: Plan Rules, Participant Decisions, and the Path of Least Resistance," *Tax Policy and the Economy* 16 (2002), pp. 67–113, and Richard H. Thaler and Cass R. Sunstein, *Nudge: Improving Decisions on Health, Wealth, and Happiness* (New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 2008).

The Obama administration has taken these ideas from behavioral economics to heart by adding provisions to the 2009 economic stimulus package requiring employers that did not have retirement plans to enroll their workers into retirement accounts with automatic payment deposits from their salary. Employees would have the option of opting out of these direct deposit arrangements if they so choose.

Behavioral economics is a very young discipline, and it is still an open question whether proposals of this type will actually increase saving and living standards. Given the importance of saving, evaluating the best way to encourage more of it will be an active area of research in the future.

SUMMARY

1. Because saving is the difference between disposable income and consumption, a theory of consumption is also a theory of saving and vice versa.
2. The theory of intertemporal choice shows that consumers choose to maximize their utility by having the intertemporal budget line tangent to an indifference curve where the marginal rate of substitution is equal to one plus the interest rate.
3. The theory of intertemporal choice indicates that no matter what the source of a rise in the present value of lifetime resources—whether it is from an increase in current income, future income, or wealth—the increase in consumption is spread out over both periods, a phenomenon that is referred to as consumption smoothing.
4. There are two effects on consumption from a rise in interest rates: the income effect for a consumer that has savings is a rise in consumption in both periods, while the substitution effect is a fall in consumption in period 1, but a rise in consumption in period 2. Because the usual assumption is that the substitution effect is stronger than the income effect, a rise in interest rates leads to a fall in today's consumption (a rise in saving), but a rise in future consumption. The presence of borrowing constraints implies that some consumers find this constraint binding, with their consumption determined by current income.
5. The Keynesian consumption function posits a linear relationship between consumption expenditure and disposable income. It is consistent with three conjectures by Keynes: 1) people spend more when they have more income; 2) the increase in spending is less than one-for-one when there is a rise in income; and 3) as income rises, the average propensity to consume, the ratio of consumption to income, falls.
6. The permanent income hypothesis indicates that consumption is proportional to permanent income, while it reacts little to transitory income.
7. The life-cycle hypothesis suggests that changes in consumption are driven by changes in income and by changes in wealth; furthermore, as consumers get older, the marginal propensity to consume out of consumption falls, while the marginal propensity to consume out of wealth rises.
8. The random walk hypothesis states that because expectations of lifetime resources and current consumption will change only when there is unanticipated, new information, changes in consumption are unpredictable, that is, follow a random walk. Behavioral economics suggests that consumers may not fully optimize as in the theory of intertemporal choice, the permanent income hypothesis, or the life-cycle hypothesis. Some behavioral economists suggest that policy makers should help steer people in saving more in order to counter their tendency to pursue instant gratification.

KEY TERMS

- autonomous consumption expenditure, p. 469
- average propensity to consume, p. 468
- average propensity to save, p. 468
- behavioral economics, p. 476
- borrowing constraint, p. 466
- consumption function, p. 469
- consumption smoothing, p. 464
- convexity, p. 461
- discounting, p. 459
- disposable income, p. 456
- income effect, p. 465
- indifference curves, p. 460
- intertemporal budget constraint, p. 457
- intertemporal budget line, p. 459
- intertemporal marginal rate of substitution, p. 461
- life-cycle hypothesis, p. 472
- liquidity constraint, p. 466
- marginal propensity to consume, p. 468
- marginal rate of substitution, p. 461
- permanent income, p. 469
- permanent income hypothesis, p. 469
- present discounted value, p. 459
- present value, p. 459
- random walk, p. 475
- random walk hypothesis, p. 475
- saving, p. 456
- saving rate, p. 468
- substitution effect, p. 465
- theory of intertemporal choice, p. 457
- transitory income, p. 470
- utility, p. 460
- welfare, p. 460

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

The Relationship Between Consumption and Savings

1. Why is a theory of consumption also a theory of saving?

Intertemporal Choice and Consumption

2. What is the logic behind the intertemporal budget constraint? On what assumptions is it based, and how is its slope interpreted?
3. What do indifference curves show about current and future consumption? Why do they slope downward? Why are they convex?
4. Explain how the intertemporal budget constraint and indifference curves are used to derive a consumer's optimal choice of current and future consumption.

The Intertemporal Choice Model in Practice: Income and Wealth

5. What can shift the intertemporal budget line, *IBL*? What happens to current and future consumption when *IBL* shifts occur?

The Intertemporal Choice Model in Practice: Interest Rates

6. How do changes in the real interest rate affect the *IBL* and current and future consumption?
7. How do binding borrowing constraints affect the *IBL* and current and future consumption?

The Keynesian Theory of Consumption

8. On what assumptions did Keynes base his theory of consumption? How does his theory relate to intertemporal choice?

The Permanent Income Hypothesis

9. What is the permanent income hypothesis? How does its consumption function relate to intertemporal choice?

The Life-Cycle Hypothesis

- Describe the life-cycle hypothesis and how it relates to intertemporal choice.

Two Modifications of the Theory: The Random Walk Hypothesis and Behavioral Economics

- What modifications to intertemporal choice theory have been made by the random walk hypothesis and behavioral economics?

PROBLEMS

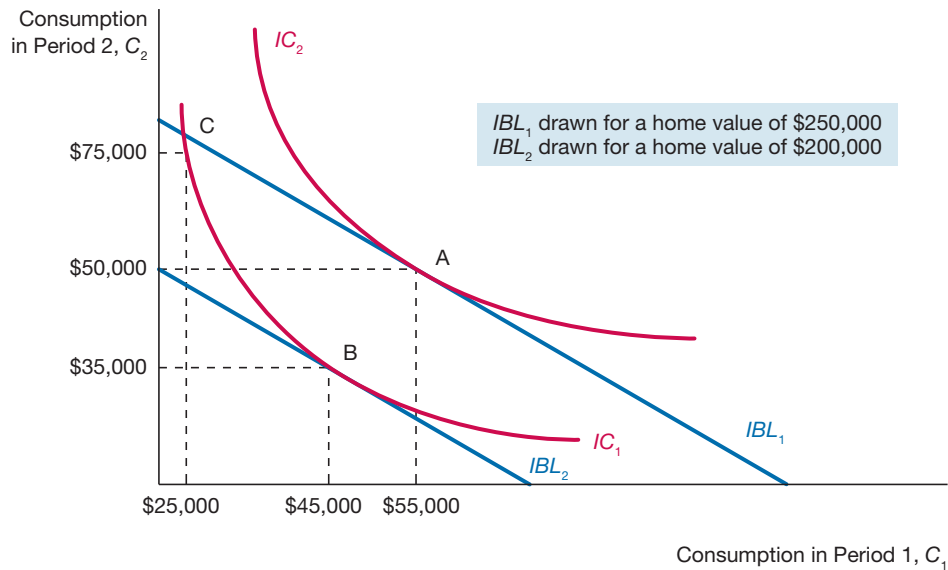
All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Intertemporal Choice and Consumption

- Suppose Prakash has an income today of \$30,000, an expected income in period 2 of \$35,000, and initial wealth of \$5,000. Prakash faces an interest rate of 5%.
 - Graph Prakash's intertemporal budget line. Denote the values of C_1 and C_2 at the intersection points with the horizontal and vertical axis, respectively.
 - Identify the point on the intertemporal budget line at which Prakash has no money at the end of period 1 and is not borrowing from anyone.
- Assume that Maria does not have a preference for smooth consumption. In particular, the average of two consumption points on the same indifference curve yields the same utility to Maria (i.e., the average consumption point is on the same indifference curve as the other two points).
 - Draw Maria's indifference curves.
 - What is the implication of Maria's preferences for the marginal rate of substitution?

The Intertemporal Choice Model in Practice: Income and Wealth

- Describe the effect of an increase in next period's income on the intertemporal budget constraint. If next year's income increases by \$3,000 and the interest rate is 5%, by how much does the intertemporal budget line shift?
- The following figure represents the optimization problem for a home owner whose home is currently valued at \$250,000.
 - Identify the optimum consumption point (i.e., what are the values of C_1 and C_2 at which this individual's happiness is the highest possible)?
 - If the value of the home decreases to \$200,000, what is the optimum consumption point?



The Intertemporal Choice Model in Practice: Interest Rates

5. Describe the effects of a decrease in the interest rate on present and next period's consumption if the individual is a net lender (i.e., has savings) after period 1 and the substitution effect is larger than the income effect. Show your answer graphically.

The Keynesian Theory of Consumption

6. Suppose Nicole's yearly income is \$5,000 when she is fifteen, \$35,000 when she is twenty-five, and \$70,000 when she is fifty (these are all present value measures of future income). Assuming Nicole's autonomous consumption expenditure is \$20,000 and her marginal propensity to consume is 0.75.
- Plot Nicole's consumption function (measure income in the horizontal axis and consumption on the vertical axis) for every point in her life. Plot Nicole's consumption function if her autonomous consumption expenditure decreases to \$15,000.
 - Calculate Nicole's average propensity to consume when she is fifteen, twenty-five, and fifty (assuming autonomous consumption is \$20,000).
7. What does the Keynesian consumption function imply about the average propensity to consume of a rich and a poor country? Which country should have a higher average propensity to consume? How can you explain the relatively low levels of saving of rich countries?

The Life-Cycle Hypothesis

8. In May 2010 the size of Greece's budget deficit increased its probability of default and triggered a crisis across the Euro zone. To decrease the budget deficit, the Greek government proposed many measures. A few of them involved decreasing pension and/or benefits payments to retirees. Evaluate the impact of an unexpected decrease in your income after you retire according to the life-cycle hypothesis.

Two Modifications of the Theory: The Random Walk Hypothesis and Behavioral Economics

9. For each of the following situations, explain how current consumption will change according to the random walk hypothesis:
 - a) The government increases taxes to close the budget deficit, but the size of the tax increase is smaller than expected.
 - b) You receive your BS degree and find a job that increases your lifetime income.
 - c) A stock market crash decreases a household's wealth.
10. Previous policies to increase savings in the United States include fiscal policy measures to exempt part of individuals' savings from income taxes (e.g., the creation of IRAs). According to the precepts of behavioral economics, do you think these measures could have a significant impact on the U.S. savings rate?



myeconlab

MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.



Chapter 18

Appendix

Income and Substitution Effects: A Graphical Analysis

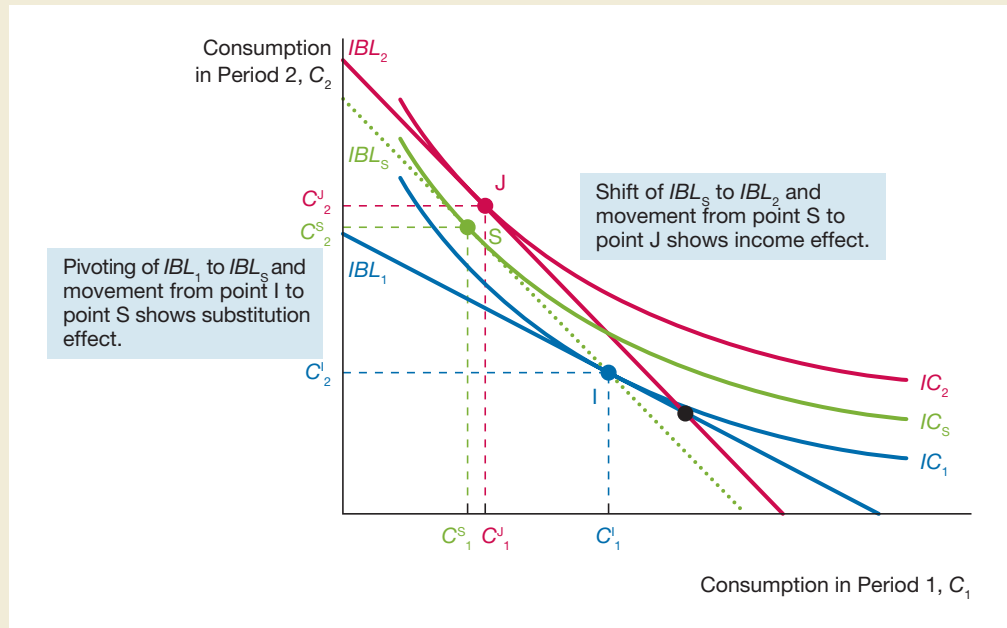
To more fully understand income and substitution effects in intertemporal choice, we do a more detailed analysis of Figure 18.5 in the chapter by decomposing the movement from point I to point J in two steps.

In the first step, we ask what happens in Figure 18A-1 if the intertemporal budget line pivots clockwise around point I as result of the new higher level of r_2 , which causes the intertemporal budget line to have the steeper negative slope of $-(1 + r_2)$. We mark this line as IBL_s ; it illustrates the response of consumption due solely to future consumption becoming cheaper relative to current consumption, that is, the substitution effect. Because the slope of IBL_s gets steeper, you can see that Carmencita can reach a higher indifference curve IC_s that is tangent to the IBL_s at point S. The position of this point above and to the left of point I implies that current consumption in period 1 falls, while future consumption in period 2 rises. The substitution effect is then as described in the text, where a higher interest rate that makes future consumption cheaper relative to current consumption leads to higher future consumption and lower current consumption.

The next step is a parallel shift of the intertemporal budget line from IBL_s to IBL_2 . We have already analyzed this kind of shift in Figure 18.4 in the chapter because it illustrates the response from an increase in lifetime resources due to an increase in income, and is thus the income effect. Because of the increase in lifetime resources, the parallel shift from IBL_s to IBL_2 leads to a movement from point S to point J in which consumption in period 1 and period 2 both rise. We now see that the income effect for first-period consumption that causes it to rise is opposite to the substitution effect that causes it to fall. Thus, there is some ambiguity as to whether first-period consumption rises or falls when interest rates rise. However, as the figure is drawn, the income effect is smaller than the substitution effect and so the overall impact of a rise in the interest rate is a fall in current consumption. On the other hand, the income and substitution effects for consumption in period 2 both indicate a rise in second-period consumption, so there is no ambiguity for second-period consumption, which clearly rises.

FIGURE 18A1.1**Income and Substitution Effects**

The line marked as IBL_s illustrates the response of consumption due solely to future consumption becoming cheaper relative to current consumption, that is the substitution effect. Because the slope of IBL_s gets steeper, Carmencita can reach a higher indifference curve IC_s that is tangent to the IBL_s at point S, in which current consumption in period 1 falls, while future consumption in period 2 rises. There is then a parallel shift of the intertemporal budget line from IBL_s to IBL_2 and the movement from point S to point J is the income effect in which consumption in period 1 and period 2 both rise.

**SUMMARY**

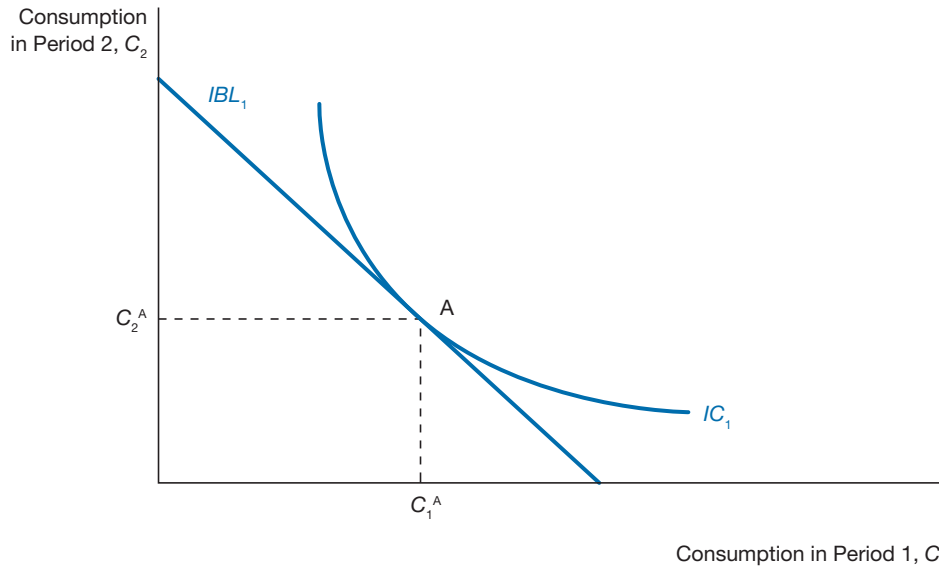
1. The substitution effect from a rise in the real interest rate involves a clockwise pivoting of the intertemporal budget line, and it leads to a fall in consumption today and a rise in consumption next period because future consumption is cheaper relative to current consumption. The income effect from a rise in the real interest rate involves a parallel, outward shift of the intertemporal budget line and shows that as income rises consumption in both periods rises.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND PROBLEMS

1. Why is the substitution effect characterized as a pivoting of the intertemporal budget line?
2. Why is the income effect characterized as a parallel shift of the intertemporal budget line?
3. If instead of being a borrower in period 1, Carmencita is a lender, what will be the effect on consumption today if the real interest rate rises?

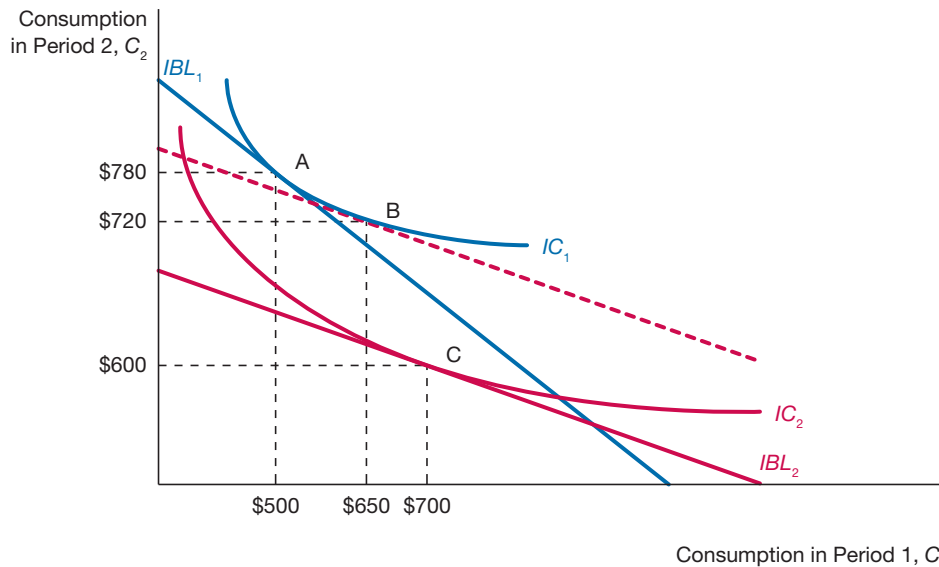
4. Draw a graph to illustrate the effects on present and future consumption of an interest rate increase when the income effect is larger than the substitution effect.

5. Consider the following graph and assume that the interest rate decreases.
 a) Draw the new intertemporal budget line.
 b) Assuming that the income effect is smaller than the substitution effect, draw the new indifference curve where optimal consumption takes place and denote that as point "B."



6. Consider the accompanying graph to answer the following questions:
 a) If the intertemporal budget line changed from IBL_1 to IBL_2 , was this the result of an increase or a decrease in the interest rate?

- b) Calculate the size of the income and substitution effects on present consumption, if this individual was consuming at point A before the change in the interest rate. Which effect is larger?





19

Investment

Preview

Investment spending comprises only around 15% of GDP, an economic pipsqueak next to consumption expenditure, which typically makes up 70% of total output. Yet investment spending is no pint-sized pushover. During recessions, changes in investment spending pack a bruising punch to the economy, accounting for well over half of the decline in total spending. When good times return, spending on business inventory, factories, and other investment items surges, shoving the economy back on course with some serious heft. During the business cycle expansion from 2001 to 2007, for example, investment spending rose at a 4% annual rate. Then, in December 2007, investment fell off a cliff, dropping at a 15% annual rate from December 2007 to December 2009.

What determines the economy's level of investment spending? Why did investment suddenly plummet starting in 2007?

In this chapter, we answer these questions by developing two models of investment behavior: the *neoclassical model*, which links investment to interest rates and tax policy, and *Tobin's q theory*, which considers the effects of asset prices. We then apply those models to recent economic history, and describe the tools available to policy makers to affect investment spending.

Data on Investment Spending

We open our discussion of investment by outlining the three basic components of investment spending (mentioned previously in Chapter 2).

1. **Business fixed investment**, which includes spending by businesses on equipment (computers, trucks, and machines) and structures (factories, shopping centers and hospitals) that are used in production.

2. **Inventory investment**, which includes spending by businesses on additional holdings of raw materials and parts used in production, as well as finished goods.
3. **Residential investment**, which includes spending on new housing, whether it is occupied by owners or rented out by landlords.

Figure 19.1 plots these components from 1960 to 2010. Notice that all three are highly procyclical. That is, they rise during economic expansions, and fall during economic contractions (the shaded areas). We will return to this important feature of investment as we develop our models.

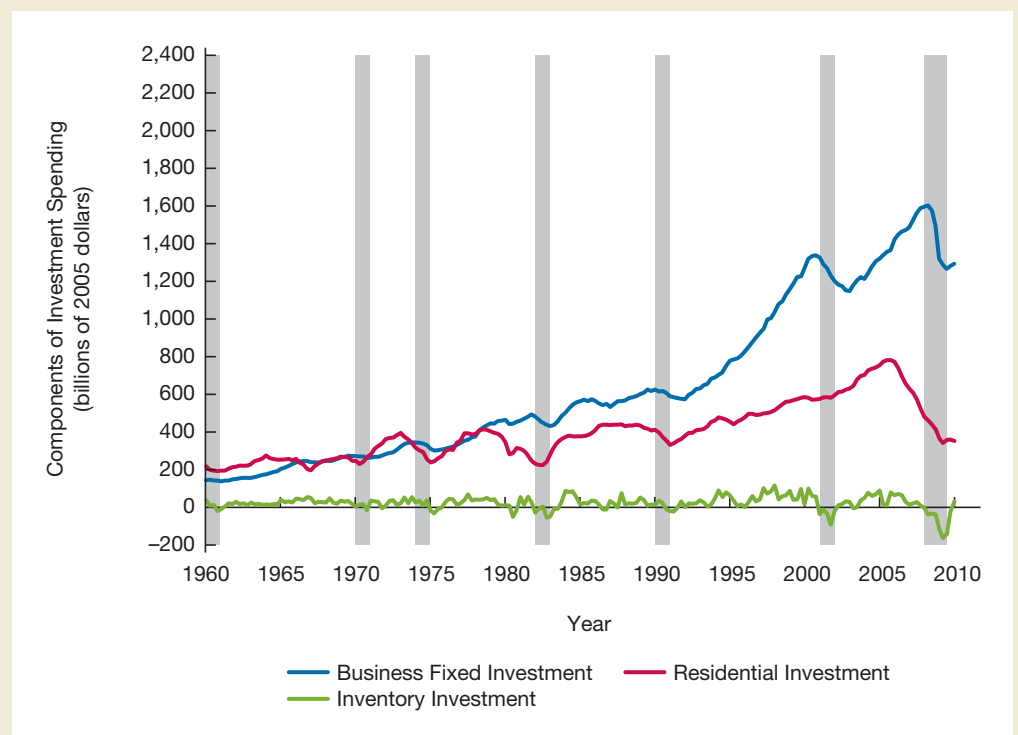
The Neoclassical Theory of Investment

Dale Jorgenson of Harvard University developed the basic model for describing investment behavior, the **neoclassical theory of investment**, in the early 1960s. It takes its name from neoclassical microeconomic theory (which we discussed in Chapter 3), and builds on the neoclassical idea that the *user cost of capital* influences the desired stock of capital. Originally developed to explain business fixed investment, the theory applies equally to inventory and residential investment with appropriate modifications.

FIGURE 19.1

Components of Investment Spending, 1960–2010

All three types of investment spending, as well as total investment spending, are procyclical and highly volatile. Shaded areas represent periods of recessions.



Source: Bureau of Economic Analysis, National Income and Product Accounts, at www.bea.gov/national/nipaweb/SelectTable.asp?Selected=N

Determining the Level of Capital Stock

In our initial discussion of neoclassical theory in Chapter 3, we painted a rather simple picture of an economy with a fixed amount of workers and machines. Given those amounts, we determined the costs of those production inputs—the wage rate (for labor) and the rental cost of capital (for machines). Here, we loosen the assumption that the capital stock is fixed. We now ask how many machines will be desirable in the economy given a particular cost of renting those machines. In other words, what is the desired level of capital stock for a given rental cost of capital?

We established another important concept in Chapter 3: that a profit-maximizing firm will keep acquiring capital until the marginal product of capital—the output from one additional unit of capital—equals the real rental cost of capital.

$$MPK = R/P = r_c \quad (1)$$

In Equation 1, R/P is the rental cost of capital in terms of goods and services, that is, the real rental cost of capital, which we denote by r_c , to distinguish it from the real interest rate, r .

Why does Equation 1 hold? If MPK exceeds r_c , the benefits of adding an extra unit of capital outweigh its costs, and profit rises. Firms keep adding capital, but as they do, the marginal product of capital begins to fall, a result of diminishing returns. Eventually, the marginal product of capital declines to the level of the real rental cost of capital, and $MPK = r_c$. Similarly, if firms have too much capital, then the real rental cost of capital will exceed the marginal product of capital. As firms realize that they are losing money from holding too much capital, they will keep cutting the amount of capital until the marginal product of capital, MPK , rises to the real rental cost of capital, r_c .

User Cost of Capital

Jorgenson's insight was to develop a measure of the rental cost of capital using the concept of the **user cost of capital**, denoted by uc , the expected real cost of using a unit of capital over a particular period. Any owner of capital has to consider three possible costs of using that capital.

1. A user of capital who borrows to pay for the unit of capital must pay interest on a loan. The first component of the user cost is therefore the real interest rate, r , multiplied by the real price of the unit of capital, p_k , that is, rp_k . Even if the user has enough cash on hand to pay for the capital, the user faces an opportunity cost equal to the real interest rate. The user could instead put his or her money into a savings account and earn a real interest rate of r , so the rental cost of the unit of capital is still rp_k .
2. The owner of the capital must take into account that the real price of the unit of capital can change. If the real price of capital is expected to rise, the owner will anticipate a gain in its real price of Δp_k^e . Because a gain is the negative of a cost, the effect on the user cost is $-\Delta p_k^e$.
3. When capital is used it is subject to wear and tear, so that it loses a fraction of its value, the depreciation rate δ , in each period. The real depreciation cost for a unit of capital is the depreciation rate multiplied by the real price of the unit of capital, or δp_k .

Combining these three components, we write the user cost of capital, uc , as:

$$uc = rp_k - \Delta p_k^e + \delta p_k$$

which can be rewritten as:

$$uc = p_k \times [r - \Delta p_k^e/p_k + \delta] \quad (2)$$

user cost = real price of capital \times [real interest rate - expected rate of change of real price of capital + depreciation rate]

For example, suppose a machine costs $p_k = \$1000$ in constant dollars, the real interest rate is $r = 12\%$, the machine is expected to have a rate of increase in its real price of $\Delta p_k^e/p_k = 2\%$, and the rate of depreciation is $\delta = 5\%$. The user cost of capital for that machine over the year is $\$1,000 \times (0.12 - 0.02 + 0.05) = \$1000 \times (0.15) = \$150$.

The user cost equation yields the following important conclusion: ***the user cost of capital is positively related to the real interest rate and the depreciation rate, while it is negatively related to the expected rate of change of the real price of capital.***

Determining the Desired Level of Capital

Treating Jorgensen's user cost of capital as our measure of r_c , the desired level of capital is the capital stock that equates the marginal product of capital, MPK , with the user cost of capital, uc :

$$MPK = uc \quad (3)$$

We show the determination of the desired level of the capital stock for period $t + 1$, K_{t+1}^* in Figure 19.2. Here we assume that the output in the economy is expected to be $Y^e = \$10$ trillion; the price of capital is 1.0; and the values of r , $\Delta p_k^e/p_k$, and δ are the same as in the earlier example. The resulting user cost of capital is 0.15. Recall from Chapter 3 that the marginal product of capital from the Cobb-Douglas production function $Y = AK^{0.3}L^{0.7}$ is as follows:

$$MPK = 0.3Y/K$$

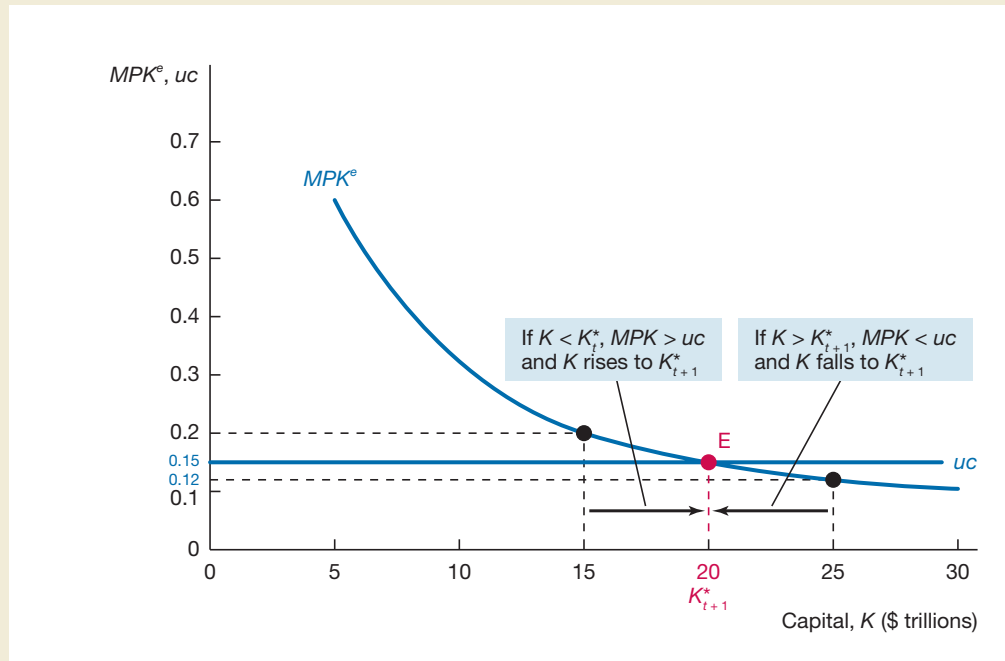
Because we are interested in determining the desired level of capital next period, K_{t+1}^* , the marginal product of capital we need to examine is the expected marginal product of capital next period, MPK^e :

$$MPK^e = 0.3Y_{t+1}^e/K_{t+1} = 0.3 (\$10 \text{ trillion}/K_{t+1}) \quad (4)$$

This expected marginal product of capital curve, which is plotted in Figure 19.2, is downward sloping. K_{t+1} is in the denominator and therefore the marginal product of capital curve displays diminishing returns to capital, where the marginal product of capital falls as capital rises. The user cost of capital does not depend on the level of capital, so the user cost curve is a straight line at 0.15.

FIGURE 19.2**Determination of the Desired Level of the Capital Stock**

The expected marginal product of capital curve is downward sloping, while the user cost of capital curve is a horizontal straight line. They intersect at point E, where the desired level of capital K_{t+1}^* is \$20 trillion and firms are maximizing their profits.



In Figure 19.2, the MPK^e curve and the user cost curve, uc , intersect at point E where the desired level of capital K_{t+1}^* is \$20 trillion. If the amount of capital were instead \$15 trillion, the marginal product of capital would be 0.20, which is higher than the user cost of 0.15. In this case, adding more capital would increase firms' profits, so they would keep adding capital until the marginal product of capital fell to 0.15, which occurs at $K_{t+1}^* = \$20$ trillion. If, on the other hand, the amount of capital were \$25 trillion, the marginal product of capital would be 0.12, which is below the user cost of capital. Now firms would find the marginal benefit of a unit of capital is less than the cost, so they would shed capital until the marginal product rose back to 0.15 at $K_{t+1}^* = \$20$ trillion. The desired level of capital will therefore go to \$20 trillion, where firms are maximizing their profits.

From the Desired Level of Capital to Investment

Once we determine the desired level of capital, we can determine just how much needs to be invested to get there. Let's say we have \$18 trillion today but desire \$20 trillion of capital stock next year. To get there, we need to invest the desired change in capital stock, \$2 trillion, which is known as **net investment**. Then, we need to replace the capital goods that we expect to wear out over the year (or to be scrapped because they are obsolete) through **depreciation**. The total spending on new capital goods, more precisely referred to as **gross investment**, equals net investment plus depreciation:

$$\text{Gross investment} = \text{net investment} + \text{depreciation} \quad (5)$$

Figure 19.3 shows the relationship between gross investment and net investment from 1929–2009. Except for the years during the Great Depression, when gross investment was very low and less than depreciation, net investment was always positive. (For simplicity, the word “investment” refers to gross investment in this book.)

We take depreciation to be proportional to the stock of capital at the beginning of the year, which we will denote by K_t , so that

$$\text{Depreciation} = \delta K_t \quad (6)$$

where δ is called the **depreciation rate**, the fraction of capital that wears out every year.

Net investment is the change in capital over the year, that is,

$$\text{Net investment} = K_{t+1} - K_t = \Delta K_t \quad (7)$$

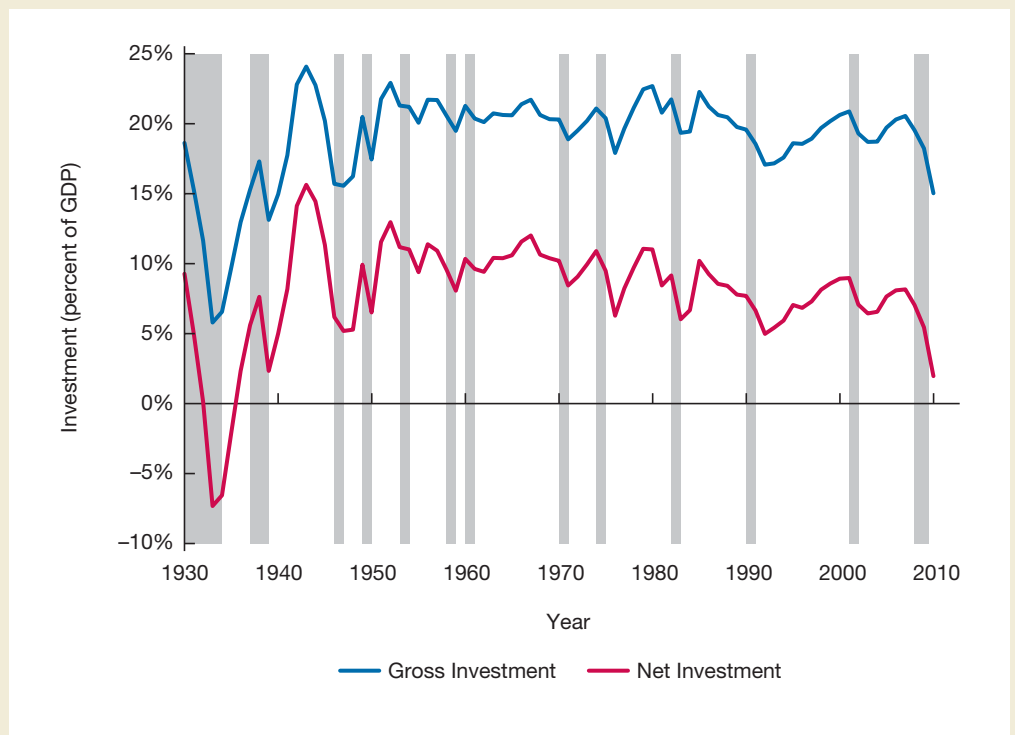
Substituting in for depreciation and net investment from Equations 6 and 7, we can write gross investment, I_t , as follows:

$$I_t = K_{t+1} - K_t + \delta K_t \quad (8)$$

FIGURE 19.3

Relationship Between Gross and Net Investment, 1929–2009

Except during the Great Depression, when gross investment was very low and less than depreciation, net investment has always been positive.



Source: Bureau of Economic Analysis, National Income and Product Accounts, at www.bea.gov

Suppose it is easy to put capital into place so that a firm is able to immediately get the actual capital stock equal to the desired capital stock, which we will denote as K_{t+1}^* . Then we can replace K_{t+1} with K_{t+1}^* to produce Equation 9:¹

$$I_t = K_{t+1}^* - K_t + \delta K_t \quad (9)$$

Equation 9 shows the link between desired capital and investment and it displays the following important result: ***an increase in the desired capital stock leads to a rise in investment.***

Changes in the Desired Level of the Capital Stock

The desired level of the capital stock, K_{t+1}^* , changes when either the MPK^e or the uc curves shift. Let's look at what happens in either case.

SHIFT IN THE MARGINAL PRODUCT OF CAPITAL CURVE. We show the effect of a shift in the marginal product of capital curve in Figure 19.4. As Equation 4 indicates, the expected marginal product curve shifts when expected future income, Y_{t+1}^e , changes. Suppose expected future income rises to \$11 trillion. This could happen either because productivity is expected to go up or because the economy is booming and production is expected to be boosted by employing more labor. In this case, the MPK^e curve shifts up in Figure 19.4 from MPK_1^e to MPK_2^e , so that at the old desired capital stock of $K_{t+1}^{*1} = \$20$ trillion, the marginal product of capital is at 0.165 (which is greater than the user cost at 0.15). Firms will therefore increase their profits by adding more capital until they reach point 2 at $K_{t+1}^{*2} = \$22$ trillion, where the marginal product of capital is back at 0.15 and equals the user cost of capital. Because a rise in the desired level of capital next period leads to a rise in investment today (as shown in Equation 9), we have the following result: ***a rise in expected future output, either because of a rise in productivity or a booming economy, leads to a higher desired level of capital and higher investment.***

The preceding result explains the procyclical nature of investment that we saw in Figure 19.1: when the business cycle is in an expansion phase, expected future output rises and so the desired capital stock and hence investment spending rises with it.

¹A more realistic assumption is that it takes time and money to put capital into place. For example, it can take years to build a factory or a shopping center. As a result, the capital stock adjusts slowly toward its desired level. We take account of adjustment costs to link the change in the capital stock to the desired level of capital using a so-called *partial-adjustment model*, which states that the capital stock moves only part of the way toward its desired level each period. We write it algebraically as follows:

$$\Delta K_t = \phi(K_{t+1}^* - K_t)$$

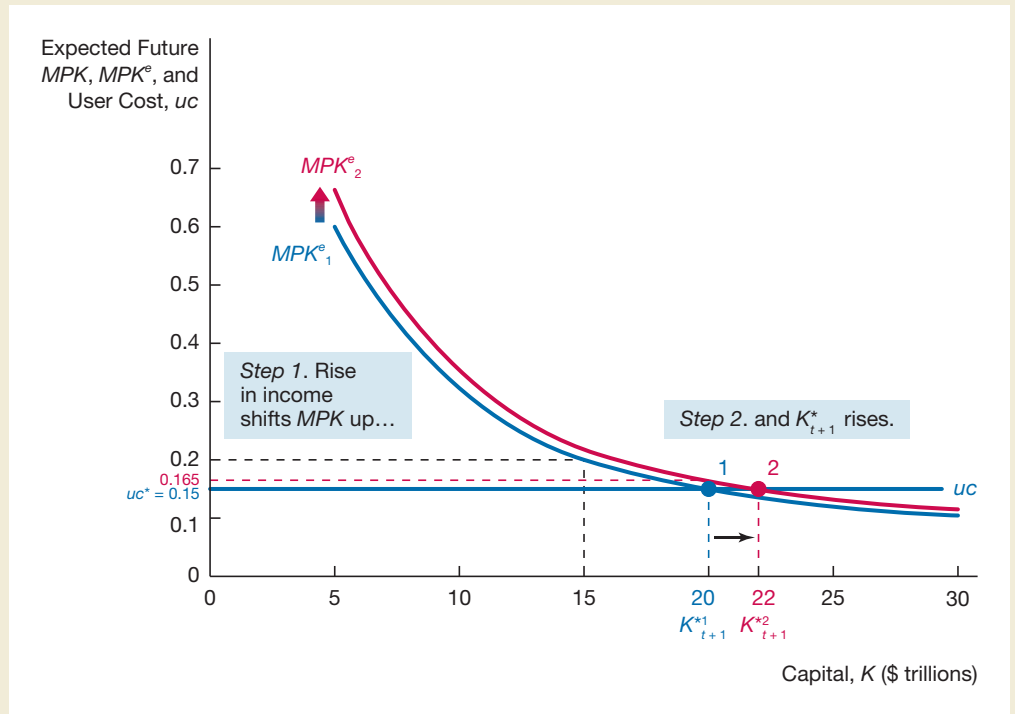
This equation says that the change in the capital stock in period t is a fraction ϕ , less than one, of the desired change in the capital stock. Substituting this equation into Equation 8, we get the investment equation:

$$I_t = \phi(K_{t+1}^* - K_t) + \delta K_t$$

This equation, like Equation 9 in the text, also yields the conclusion that an increase in the desired capital stock leads to a rise in investment.

FIGURE 19.4**Shift in the Marginal Product of Capital Curve**

A rise in expected future income causes the MPK^e curve to shift up from MPK_1^e to MPK_2^e , and the desired level of capital increases from $K_{t+1}^1 = \$20$ trillion to $K_{t+1}^2 = \$22$ trillion, where the marginal product of capital is back at 0.15 and equals the user cost of capital, which stayed constant.



SHIFT IN THE USER COST OF CAPITAL. We show the result of a shift in the user cost of capital in Figure 19.5. The user cost Equation 2 indicates that the user cost of capital is determined by the real price of capital, the real interest rate, the expected rate of change of the real price of capital, and the depreciation rate. Suppose that, because of a tightening of monetary policy, the real interest rate rises by two percentage points from 12% to 14%. Holding everything else constant, the user cost of capital rises from 0.15 to 0.17, and the uc curve shifts up from uc_1 to uc_2 . Now at the original point 1, the marginal product of capital at 0.15 is less than the user cost of 0.17, so firms will want to reduce their capital because the benefit of a unit of capital is less than the cost. The desired capital stock will fall from $K_{t+1}^1 = \$20$ trillion to $K_{t+1}^2 = \$17.6$ trillion at point 2, where the expected marginal product of capital has risen to the new user cost of capital at 0.17. The user cost of capital is positively related to the real price of capital, the real interest rate, and the depreciation rate, while it is negatively related to the expected rate of change of the real price of capital. As a result, we come to the following conclusions: **a rise in the real price of capital, the real interest rate, and the depreciation rate lead to a decline in the desired level of capital and a decline in investment, while a rise in the expected rate of change of the real price of capital leads to a rise in the desired level of capital and a rise in investment.**

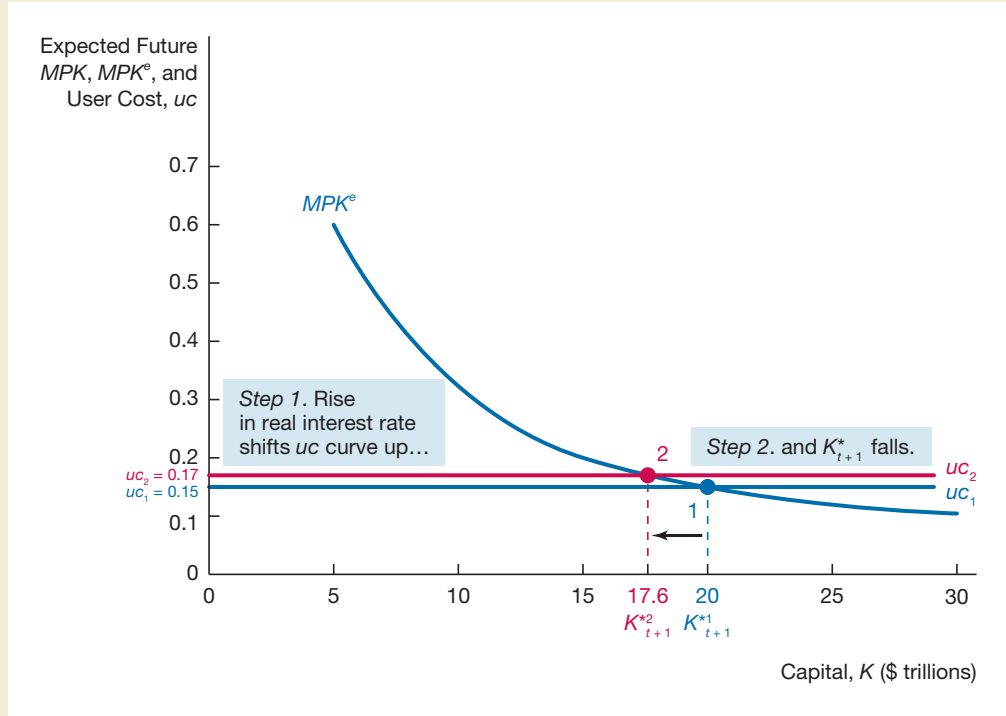
TAXES AND THE USER COST OF CAPITAL. Since the only sure things in life are death and taxes, firms must also take into account how taxes affect investment decisions.

To see how taxes affect investment, let's assume for simplicity that business taxes are levied as a percent of firm revenues. For example, firms might be taxed at a rate of

FIGURE 19.5

Shift in the User Cost of Capital

An increase in the real interest rate from 12% to 14% raises the user cost of capital from 0.15 to 0.17, and so the uc curve shifts up from uc_1 to uc_2 . The desired capital stock will fall from $K_{t+1}^* = \$20$ trillion to $K_{t+1}^{*2} = \$17.6$ trillion at point 2, where the expected marginal product of capital has risen to the new user cost of capital at 0.17.



30%, so that the tax rate $\tau = 0.30$: a firm with revenue of \$100 million would then pay \$30 million in taxes. Now the after-tax revenue from a unit of capital is no longer the marginal product of capital, but is $1 - \tau$ times this amount, or 70% of the marginal product in our example. Instead of comparing the marginal product of capital to the user cost in order to decide on the desired level of capital, a firm will have to compare the after-tax marginal product, $(1 - \tau)MPK^e$, to the user cost. Then the desired level of the capital stock will be the level at which

$$(1 - \tau)MPK^e = uc$$

that is, the level where the after-tax marginal product equals the user cost.

Dividing both sides of the preceding equation by $(1 - \tau)$, we get the following:

$$MPK^e = \frac{uc}{1 - \tau} = p_k \frac{r - \Delta p_k/p_k + \delta}{1 - \tau} \tag{10}$$

The term $uc/(1 - \tau)$ in Equation 10 is called the **tax-adjusted user cost of capital**: it is the user cost of capital that the firm compares to the *before-tax* marginal product of capital to determine the desired level of capital. If the tax rate τ on firm revenue rises, then the tax-adjusted user cost of capital rises because the denominator in Equation 10 falls. The rise in the tax-adjusted user cost of capital then results in an upward shift in the user cost curve as in Figure 19.5. As a result, the desired level of capital falls. We thus

have an additional result for what determines investment: ***a rise in the tax rate on businesses leads to a decline in the desired level of capital and a decline in investment.***²

FINANCING CONSTRAINTS. In our derivation of the neoclassical model of investment, we assumed that firms are able to borrow freely. If the marginal product of capital is above the user cost, firms can go out and borrow from credit markets all they need to buy new capital. However, just as consumers can be subject to borrowing constraints, as we saw in Chapter 18, firms can be subject to **financing constraints**, where they are cut off from raising funds in financial markets because credit markets have dried up. When financing constraints are binding, even a firm with a profitable investment will not be able to get the financing to pay for it and so investment will not occur. It is just as if the user cost of capital has risen. This reasoning suggests a modification to the neoclassical model: ***the more financing constraints are binding, the lower the investment spending.***

Summary: Neoclassical Theory of Investment

The neoclassical theory of investment indicates that investment decisions are affected by the following:

- expected future output (which is affected by future productivity and the business cycle)
- the real price of capital
- the real interest rate
- the expected rate of change of the real price of capital
- the depreciation rate
- the tax rate on businesses
- financing constraints

Table 19.1 summarizes the impact of each of these determinants on the desired level of capital and investment.

Neoclassical theory gives a prominent role to monetary and fiscal policy in the determination of investment. Monetary policy affects investment through its impact on real interest rates, while fiscal policy affects investment spending through the tax rate on businesses.

²Taxation of business enterprises is actually far more complicated than a simple tax on revenues. The most important tax on businesses is the *corporate income tax*, which is a tax on a corporation's profits, rather than its revenues. Since profits and revenue are generally positively related, a higher corporate income tax rate increases the taxes paid on revenues and hence raises the after-tax user cost of capital.

The definition of profits is not always straightforward and is a topic better left to accountants, but two items affect profits and are relevant to government policies to encourage investment spending. The first is *depreciation allowances*, the allowances for depreciation that firms deduct from profits. The second is the *investment tax credit*, which allows a firm to reduce its corporate taxes by a percentage of the amount spent on new capital. For example, an investment tax credit of 10% would enable a firm that buys a \$100,000 machine to deduct \$10,000 from its tax bill. Increases in either depreciation allowances or the investment tax credit lower taxes on businesses and thus lead to higher investment.

TABLE 19.1

Determinants of Investment

Determinant	Change in Determinant	Change in K_{t+1}^* and Investment
Expected future output, Y^e	↑	↑
Real price of capital, p_k	↑	↓
Real interest rate, r	↑	↓

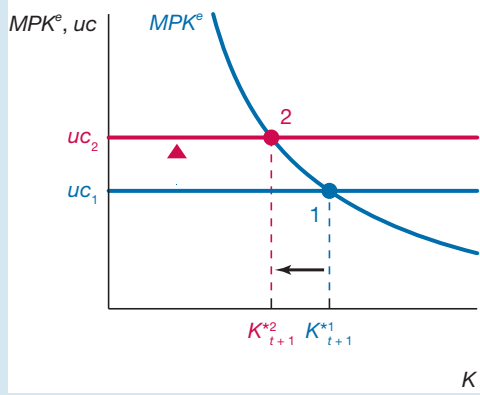
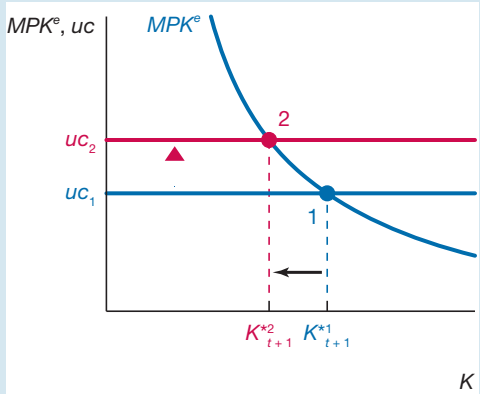
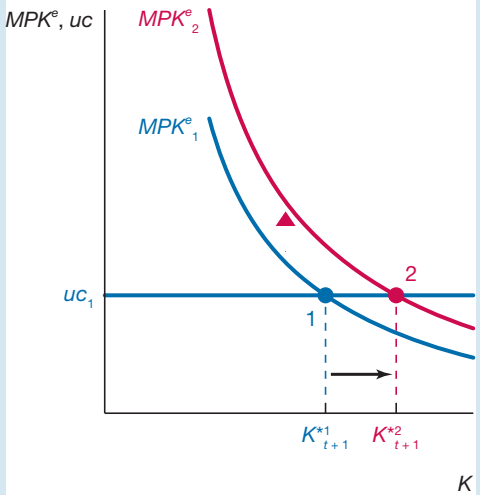


TABLE 19.1 (continued)
Determinants of Investment

Determinant	Change in Determinant	Change in K_{t+1}^* and Investment
Expected rate of change of the real price of capital, $\Delta p_k/p_k$	↑	↑
Depreciation rate, δ	↑	↓
Tax rate on businesses	↑	↓

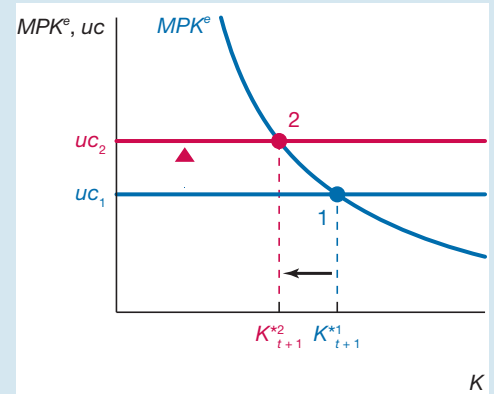
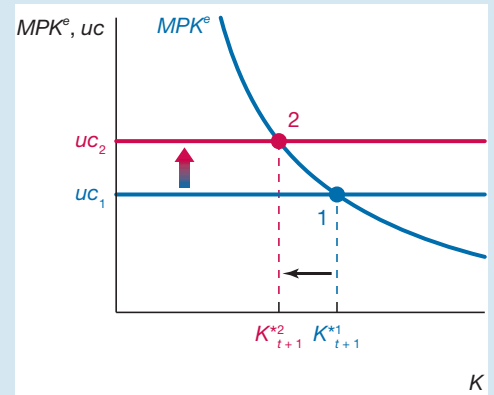
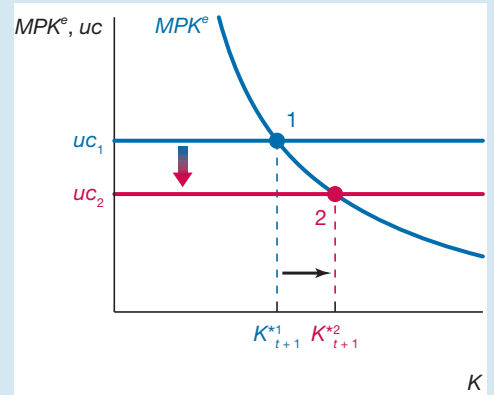


TABLE 19.1 (continued)
Determinants of Investment

Determinant	Change in Determinant	Change in K_{t+1}^* and Investment
Financing constraints	↑	↓

Note: only increases in the determinants are shown. The effect of decreases in the determinants on investment would be the opposite of those indicated in the remaining columns.

Inventory Investment

As Figure 19.1 shows, inventory investment is the most volatile component of total investment spending, and is closely watched during changes in the business cycle.

Motivation for Holding Inventories

The holdings of raw materials, parts, and finished goods that make up inventories are a form of capital that helps firms produce goods and services. To see how they are useful in production, let’s look at why firms hold them.

INVENTORY AS A FACTOR OF PRODUCTION. Manufacturers need inventories of raw materials like steel to produce items such as automobiles. They also need spare parts, such as windshields, to produce items, such as cars. Retail stores stock shelves with finished goods to make sales.

Improvements in computer technology in recent years allow manufacturers to engage in **just-in-time production** in which they order inventories for production just when they are needed. The result is that the level of inventories that are held by firms has declined substantially, making swings in inventory investment potentially less important in the business cycle.

WORK IN PROCESS. Production typically involves many steps. Firms have inventories of **work in process**, that is, holdings of partially finished components that will go into the final product. Firms hold inventories of work in process and have to store them until they are ready to use these components.

PRODUCTION SMOOTHING. It often makes sense for firms to smooth production out over time. Many firms, like automobile manufacturers, experience large temporary fluctuations in demand. If they only produced goods and services when they were ordered, they would have huge swings in their production, leaving workers and machines idle when sales are low, and overworking them when sales are high. Overly large fluctuations in production would then be costly for the firm, so it would like to spread production out over time. Firms therefore engage in **production smoothing**, in which they keep on producing when sales are temporarily low, putting the goods produced into inventory, and then do not raise production when sales are temporarily high, instead drawing down these inventories to satisfy the higher demand. Car companies will produce cars and put them on their lots during times of the year when sales are low, say, in the summer, and then draw down these inventories at times when sales are high, as in the fall.

STOCK-OUT AVOIDANCE. The fourth reason for holding inventories is that firms cannot always predict how strong their sales will be. When sales are surprisingly high, a firm may then run out of goods to sell and thereby lose sales, because the customer will go somewhere else to purchase them. To avoid losing these sales, firms hold inventories so they don't stock out of goods, which is why this motive for holding inventories is known as **stock-out avoidance**. For example, car dealers often maintain a large number of automobiles on their lots so that they won't lose a sale to another dealer who has the make and model that the customer wants.

The Theory of Inventory Investment

Because inventories play a similar role in production as a business fixed investment, the neoclassical theory that we developed previously applies equally to inventory investment, that is, the change in holdings of inventories over a given period. Specifically, there is a desired level of inventories that depends on the relationship of the marginal product of inventories versus their user cost.

Let's consider the case of Carl the car dealer, who owns a Ford dealership. Carl has to decide how many Ford Mustangs he wants to keep on his lot. If he thinks that sales are likely to be higher in the future, then the marginal product of inventories becomes high because there is a greater likelihood that he will lose a sale. In this case, the marginal product curve for inventories will shift up, just as in Figure 19.4, and he will want to hold a larger number of Mustangs. The result will then be higher inventory investment.

Alternatively, suppose the Federal Reserve tightens monetary policy to restrain inflation. Carl now faces a higher real interest rate, his cost of financing his inventory of Mustangs goes up, and therefore his user cost of inventories rises. As in Figure 19.5, his user cost of capital curve rises, and he will now want to have fewer Mustangs on his lot. The result will be that inventory investment will fall.³

³Financing constraints can also affect inventory investment. If Carl would like to have more Mustangs on his lot, but his bank won't give him a loan to pay for them, Carl will just have to make do with less and inventory investment will fall. During the most virulent phase of the 2007–2009 financial crisis in 2008, credit was extremely hard to get. Financing constraints then began to bind, which is one reason that inventory investment fell so precipitously, by \$25.9 billion (chained 2005 dollars) from 2007 to 2008. This sharp decline in inventory investment was one of the reasons why the recession of 2007–2009 ended up being so severe.

Tobin's q and Investment

Also in the 1960s, Nobel Laureate James Tobin of Yale University developed a model of investment closely related to the neoclassical theory, but which instead focuses on asset prices as a driver of investment spending.

Tobin's q Theory

Tobin began by considering two ways to measure the amount of capital in a business. One approach uses market value of the collection of capital that is embodied in the firm, that is, the overall market value of the firm as reflected in the stock market. Another approach is to consider the replacement cost of its capital, or how much it would cost to install that capital today. The market value of the collection of capital in the firm can differ from the replacement cost of the capital because the firm's capital collectively can be worth more than the sum of its parts. We can take a ratio of the market value and replacement cost, a concept that is now known as **Tobin's q** :

$$q = \frac{\text{Market Value of Firm}}{\text{Replacement Cost of Installed Capital}} \quad (11)$$

Firms try to increase their market value. So Tobin reasoned that if q is above 1, and the market price of capital is high relative to its replacement cost, the firm will benefit from increasing investment. Buying new capital increases the value of the firm because its market value is greater than the cost of acquiring it. Net investment will be positive.

On the other hand, if q were below 1, the market value of the capital would be less than the cost of acquiring it, so the firm would not want to buy any capital. In this case, the firm would want the level of its capital to shrink. It will want net investment to become negative, by letting the existing capital in the firm wear out without replacing it.

The replacement cost of capital tends to move with the overall price level, which is relatively steady. Thus, most fluctuations in Tobin's q stem from changes in the market value of the firms that are reflected in stock prices. When the stock market booms, Tobin's q rises and investment booms. On the other hand, when the stock market plummets, Tobin's q falls and so does investment spending. Tobin's q theory therefore yields the following result: ***a rise in stock prices leads to a rise in Tobin's q and a rise in investment, while a decline in stock prices leads to a decline in Tobin's q and a fall in investment spending.***

Tobin's q Versus Neoclassical Theory

At first glance, Tobin's q theory looks quite different from the neoclassical theory developed earlier in the chapter, but actually they are quite closely related.

Because stock prices reflect the valuation of current and expected profits from capital, Tobin's q tells us whether installed capital is expected to yield high profits in the future, that is, whether the future marginal product of capital will be high relative to the user cost of capital. In neoclassical theory, when the future marginal product of capital is high relative to the user cost, the desired level of capital rises and investment is high. We get the same conclusion from Tobin's q theory.

With Tobin's q theory, we can reach the same conclusions as the neoclassical theory:

1. A higher expected future marginal product of capital leads to higher q and therefore higher investment.

2. A rise in the real interest rate or a rise in the effective tax rate, which increase the user cost of capital, lower q and therefore cause investment to fall.
3. A higher price of capital increases the replacement cost of capital, which leads to a higher denominator, lowers q , and causes investment to fall.

However, Tobin's q theory adds to the neoclassical theory because it emphasizes that asset-price fluctuations, especially those in stock prices, can have an important independent effect on investment spending.

Application

The Stock Market and Boom and Bust in “New Economy” Investment, 1995–2001

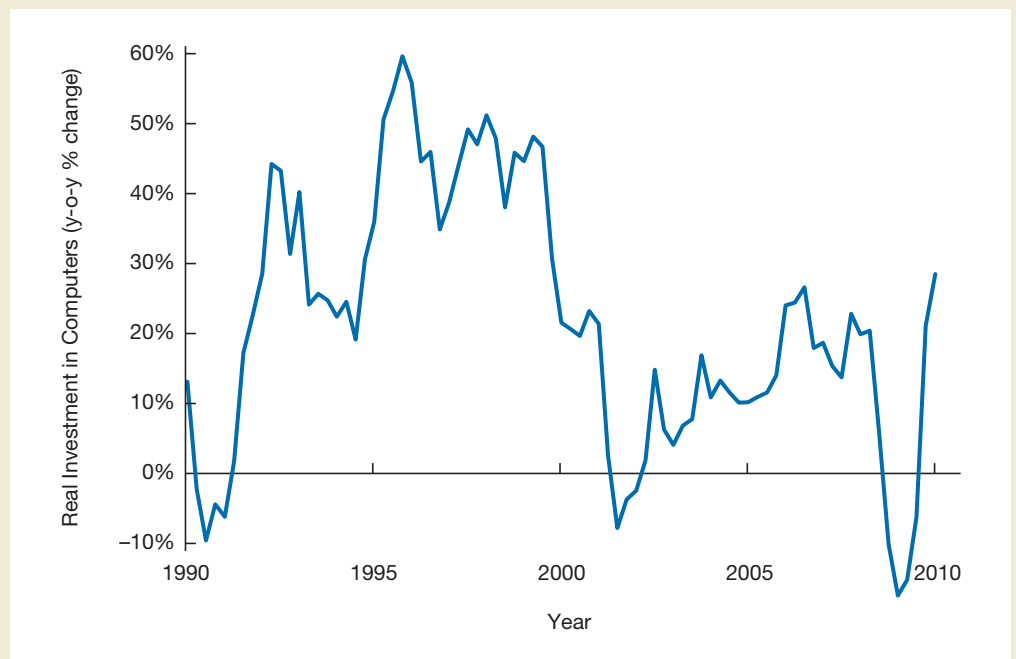
In the late 1990s, the sky was the limit in the technology sector. Computer sales boomed, driving sales of software, services, and Internet technology. Stock prices soared, lifting the market valuation of computer and e-commerce firms to stratospheric heights. The tech-heavy NASDAQ stock price index soared from 400 at the beginning of 1995 to over 4,000 in March 2000, a tenfold increase. Alas, what goes up must come down, and the “irrational exuberance” described by Alan Greenspan, the then chairman of the Federal Reserve, did not last. Valuations of tech stocks tumbled from March 2000 to March 2001, when the NASDAQ stock index fell to less than one-third of its value at the peak. What does Tobin's q theory suggest should have happened to investment in the tech sector?

As shown in Figure 19.6, capital spending on computers and other technology soared from 1995 to 2000, and then declined at almost a 10% rate in 2001. This outcome is exactly

FIGURE 19.6

Percent Change in Real Investment in Computers, 1990–2010

Real investment in computers increased at a rate over 30% from 1995 to 2000, and then fell at almost a 10% rate in 2001 after the tech bubble burst.



Source: Bureau of Economic Analysis, National Income and Product Accounts, at www.bea.gov

what Tobin's q theory predicts. With soaring stock prices, Tobin's q rose to very high levels, and U.S. companies found that any new technology-related capital they put in place had values well above replacement cost. They now had tremendous incentives to invest, and invest they did. When the tech bubble burst and stock prices crashed, Tobin's q fell dramatically—as the theory predicts, investment in technology capital underwent a sharp decline.

Webvan, an Internet grocer that received more than \$1 billion in financing from firms such as Goldman Sachs and Sequoia Capital, is a classic example of the tech sector boom and bust in investment. In its short life, Webvan spent \$1 billion building automated warehouses and pricey tech gear. Unfortunately, its high overhead made it impossible to compete in the grocery business, where average profit margins are very small, around 1%. When the tech sector crashed, Webvan's investing days were over. In July 2001, Webvan went bankrupt, with its investors losing almost all their money.



Residential Investment

The housing market is particularly relevant to U.S. consumers, since most of the U.S. population owns, or will own, a house or an apartment. The market takes on even more importance, as swings in residential investment often play a prominent role in business cycle fluctuations, particularly in recent years. In this section, we explore residential investment using the neoclassical and Tobin's q theories.

We start our analysis by seeing how housing prices are determined. Then, through a Tobin's q theory approach, we consider how the price of housing determines residential investment.

Determination of Housing Prices

Panel (a) of Figure 19.7 shows a supply and demand analysis of the housing market, where the relative price of housing, that is, the nominal price of a house relative to the general price level, P_H/P , is on the vertical axis and the stock of housing, K_H , is on the horizontal axis. Residential housing takes time to build and wears out very slowly. As a result, we can say that in the short run the stock of residential housing (which includes old as well as new housing) is essentially fixed. With this assumption, the supply curve of houses is vertical, that is, the stock of housing remains at K_H^* , regardless of the relative price of houses.⁴ The demand curve for housing is downward sloping because people can afford less housing when prices are higher. In the face of higher prices, individuals may choose to live in smaller houses or live with their parents or relatives, or they might be unable to live in a house at all.

As in any supply and demand analysis, the equilibrium relative price of housing occurs at the intersection of the demand and supply curves of housing. With a demand curve at D , the equilibrium is at point E, with a relative price of housing at P_H^*/P .

⁴More accurately, the supply curve for housing in the short-run would have a slight upward slope because an increase in the relative price of housing leads to higher residential investment which adds to the stock of housing. However, any increase in the supply of housing relative to the existing stock of housing will be very small because new housing takes time to build and will only be a small fraction of the existing stock of housing since houses last a long time. It is therefore a reasonable assumption to assume that the supply curve for housing is vertical.

From House Prices to Residential Investment

The residential investment I_H curve in panel (b) of Figure 19.7 shows the relationship between the relative price of housing and the construction of new homes, that is, the flow of residential investment. It is upward sloping: a rise in the relative price of houses leads to a higher level of new home construction. At an equilibrium relative price of P_H^*/P , residential investment is at I_H^* .

To see why the I_H curve is upward sloping, recognize that the relative price of housing is analogous to Tobin's q for the housing market. The replacement cost of a house is likely to move with the general price level P , while the price of housing P_H is the market valuation of the house. Thus q in the housing market is P_H/P .

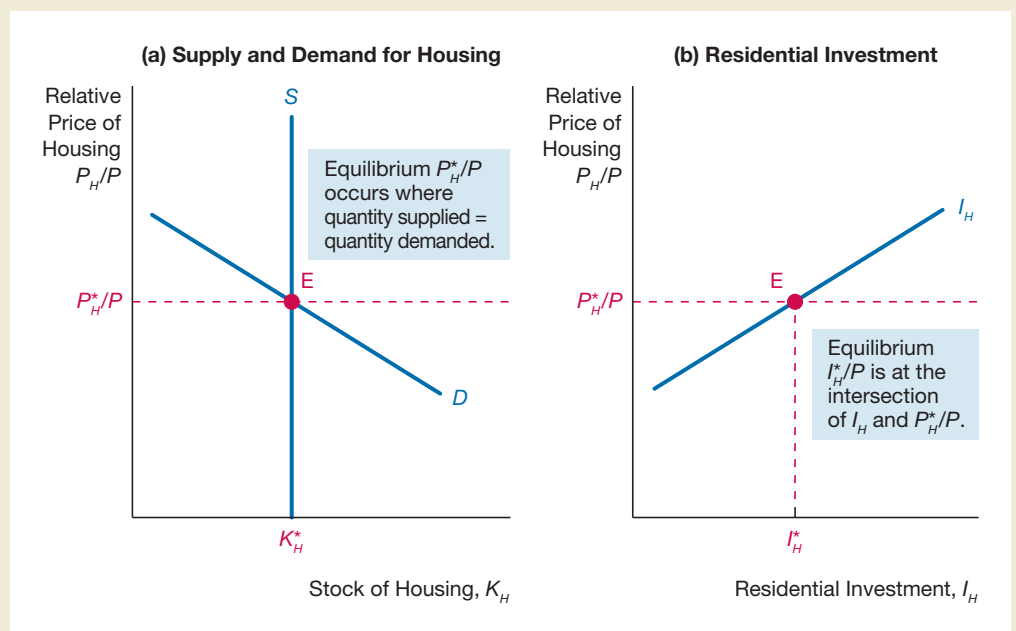
To demonstrate the Tobin's q reasoning for residential investment, let's first suppose that the builder of a house plans to sell it. If the market valuation of the house is above its replacement cost, that is, the relative price of housing is high, then the builder profits by building it. Indeed, the higher are housing prices relative to replacement cost, the more profits builders will make from building houses, and so residential investment will be higher. Suppose, on the other hand, that the relative price of a house is low so that its market value is below its replacement cost. Then a builder will not build the house because he or she will suffer a loss by building it: the builder would have to sell the house for less than what it costs to build. This reasoning therefore provides the following result: **the relationship between residential investment and housing prices is positive.**

This reasoning behind an upward sloping residential investment I_H curve holds even if the house is rented out or if the builder also plans to live in it. If the house is

FIGURE 19.7

Determination of Housing Prices and Residential Investment

In panel (a), the demand curve for housing is downward sloping, while the supply curve is vertical at K_H^* . The equilibrium occurs at point E where the supply and demand curves intersect, with a relative price of housing at P_H^*/P . The I_H curve in panel (b) is upward sloping, that is, a rise in the relative price of houses leads to a higher level of new home construction. At an equilibrium relative price of P_H^*/P , residential investment is at I_H^* .



rented, then the landlord earns the rent from the renter over the life of the house, and so the house’s market valuation is the expected discounted value of that rent over the life of the house. The higher the market valuation is relative to the cost of building it, the more profits the landlord makes, and so he or she will want to build more houses. If the person building the house plans to live in it, then he or she is in effect earning rent on the house, called *implicit rent*, because if that person didn’t own it, he or she would have to pay rent. The value of the house to the homeowner is then the expected discounted value of the implicit rent he or she would otherwise pay. The higher this value is relative to the cost of building the house, the greater is the incentive for the homeowner to build the house.

Changes in the Demand for Housing

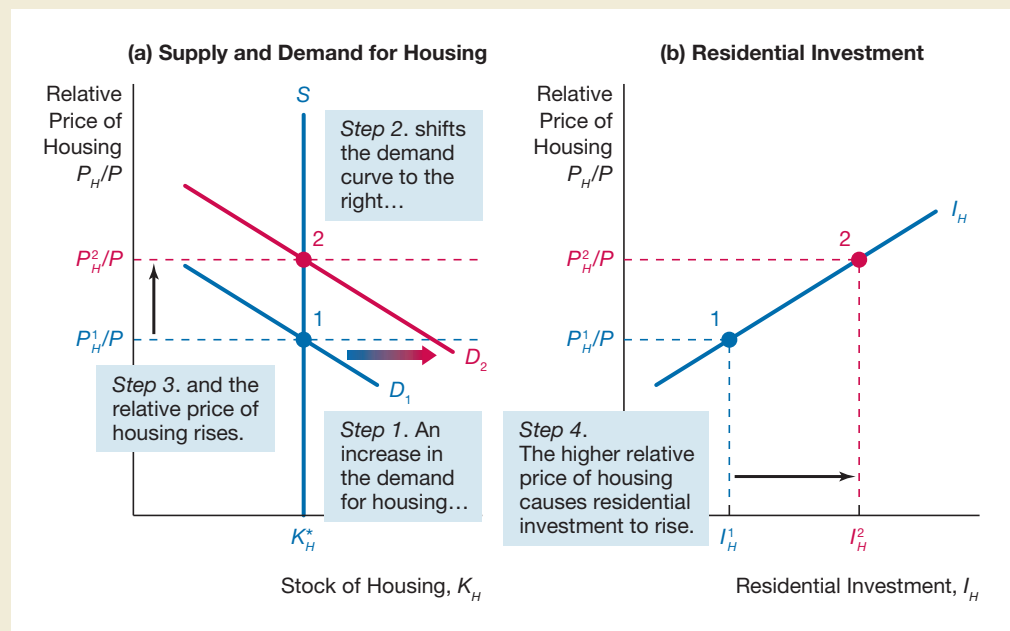
What happens if the demand for housing rises so the demand curve shifts to the right from D_1 to D_2 in panel (a) of Figure 19.8? The rightward shift of the demand curve moves the equilibrium in the housing market from point 1 to point 2, and the relative price of housing moves from P_H^1/P to P_H^2/P . Then, as we see in panel (b), the higher relative price leads to a movement from point 1 to point 2 on the I_H curve, and residential investment rises from I_H^1 to I_H^2 .

NEOCLASSICAL THEORY AND HOUSING DEMAND. Why does demand for housing change? The answer is provided by the neoclassical theory of investment. If the expected future marginal product of capital curve shifts up, then the desired level of capital increases. In the case of housing, the equivalent analysis is that the higher the rent (explicit or implicit) that households are willing to pay, the higher the demand for housing, and then the housing demand curve will shift to the right, as in panel (a) of Figure 19.8. The relative price of housing will then rise and residential investment will rise as well. Households will be able to pay higher rent if their expected future

FIGURE 19.8

Shift in the Demand for Housing

A rightward shift of the demand curve in panel (a) moves the equilibrium in the housing market from point 1 to point 2, and the relative price of housing increases from P_H^1/P to P_H^2/P . Then, as we see in panel (b), the higher relative price leads to a movement from point 1 to point 2 on the I_H curve, and residential investment rises from I_H^1 to I_H^2 .



income is higher, or if an increase in the number of households that will want housing bids up rent. The analysis in Figure 19.8 therefore produces the following result: **higher expected income or increases in household formation lead to higher demand for housing, an increase in relative housing prices, and higher residential investment.**

The user cost concept in the neoclassical theory of investment also applies in the housing market and provides another source of shifts in the demand curve for housing. Suppose that the real interest rate on mortgage loans declines. Then the cost of financing a house purchase declines and the user cost of housing falls, so people will be able to buy a new or a bigger house. The analysis in panel (a) of Figure 19.8 then shows that the demand curve will shift to the right, yielding the following result: **a decline in real mortgage rates leads to a higher demand for housing, a higher relative price of housing, and an increase in residential investment.**

As we saw in the neoclassical theory, another component of user cost is the expected rate of change of the price of the capital asset. In the context of housing, this term is the expected rate of change in housing prices, and it can be a very important source of changes in housing demand. If households expect housing prices to appreciate, then the user cost declines, causing the demand for housing to increase and shifting the demand curve to the right, as in panel (a) of Figure 19.8. The relative price of housing will rise and residential investment will increase. Said another way, if housing is expected to be a good investment, demand for housing will increase and the demand curve will shift to the right. We thus have the following result: **a higher expected appreciation of house prices leads to a higher demand for housing, a higher relative price of housing, and an increase in residential investment.**

Housing demand can also be affected by financing constraints. If mortgage lenders loosen lending standards and so make loans more readily available to households, then financing constraints become less binding and households that otherwise would have been unable to purchase houses will now be able to. As we have seen previously, the increased demand for housing will shift the demand curve to the right, as we see in panel (a) of Figure 19.8, causing the relative price of housing to rise, which, as shown in panel (b) will lead to higher residential investment. We then get the following result: **looser financing constraints lead to a higher demand for housing, a higher relative price of housing, and an increase in residential investment.** Using similar reasoning, **tighter financing constraints will lead to lower demand for housing, a lower relative price of housing, and a decrease in residential investment.**

Summary: Residential Investment

In summary, residential housing prices and investment are driven by the following determinants: expected future income, the rate of household formation, real mortgage rates, expected appreciation of housing prices, and financing constraints. We summarize the impact of each determinant on housing prices and residential investment in Summary Table 19.2.

TABLE 19.2

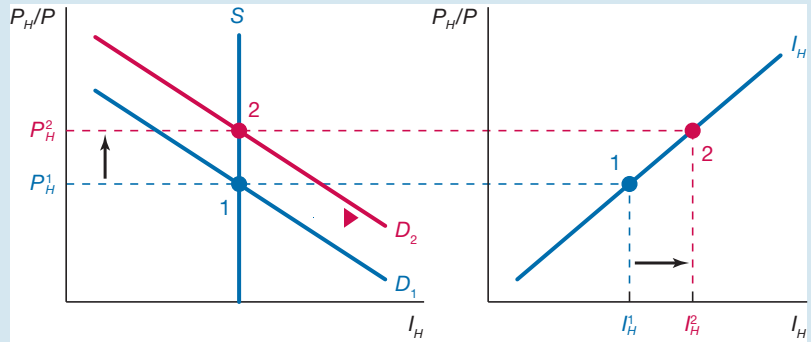
Determinants of Residential Investment

Determinant **Change in Determinant** **Change in Housing Prices and Residential Investment**

Expected future income, Y^e

↑

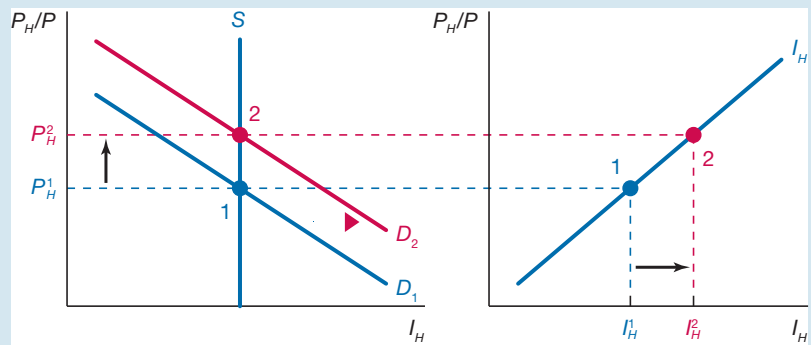
↑



Household formation

↑

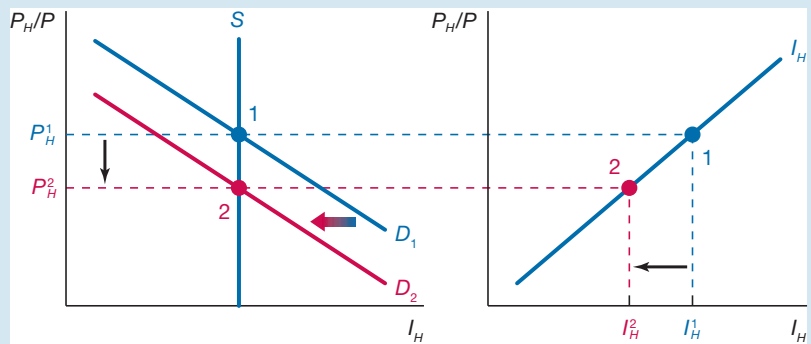
↑



Real mortgage rates

↑

↓



Expected appreciation of Housing prices

↑

↑

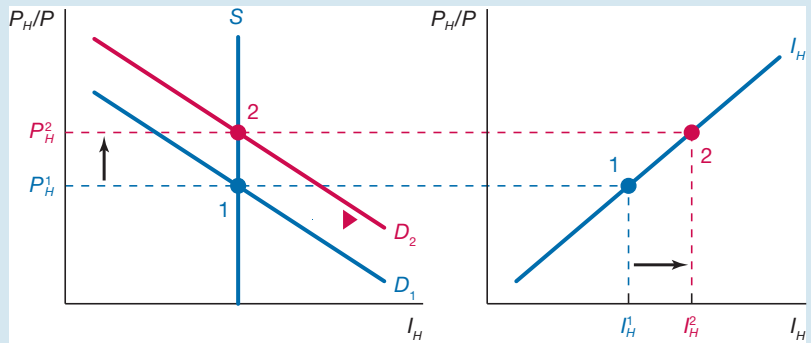
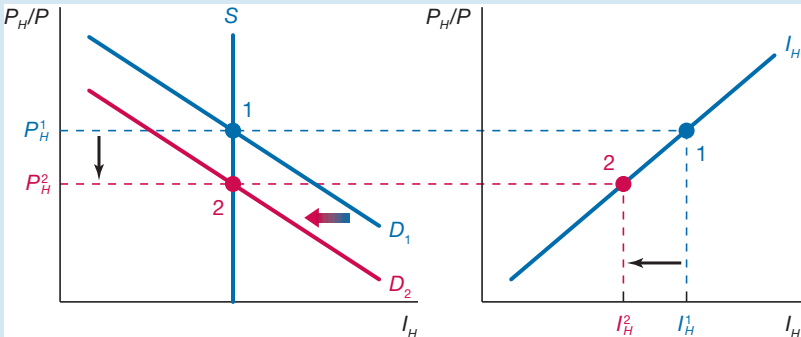


TABLE 19.2 (continued)

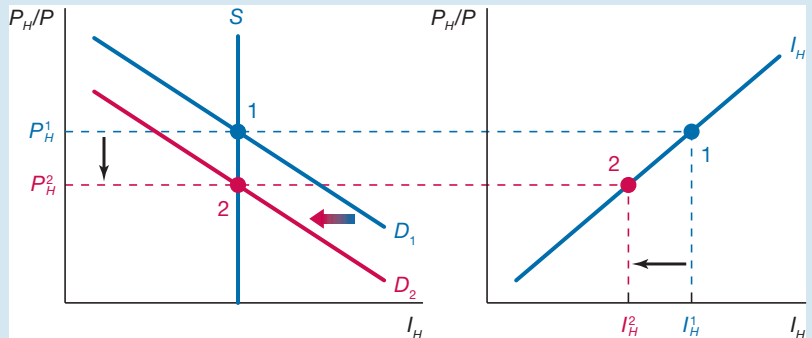
Determinants of Residential Investment

Determinant	Change in Determinant	Change in Housing Prices and Residential Investment
Financing constraints	↑ ↓	

Financing constraints

↑

↓



Note: Only increases in the determinants are shown. The effect of decreases in the determinants on investment would be the opposite of those indicated in the remaining columns.

Application

Boom and Bust in the Housing Market, 2001–2009

From 2001 to 2006, U.S. housing construction was on a tear, with housing starts (the number of new houses put into construction) rising from around 1.5 million to a peak of over 2 million in 2006, the highest recorded in U.S. history (see Figure 19.9). Then, residential investment collapsed with housing starts falling to around 500,000 in 2009. What caused this boom and bust in residential investment?

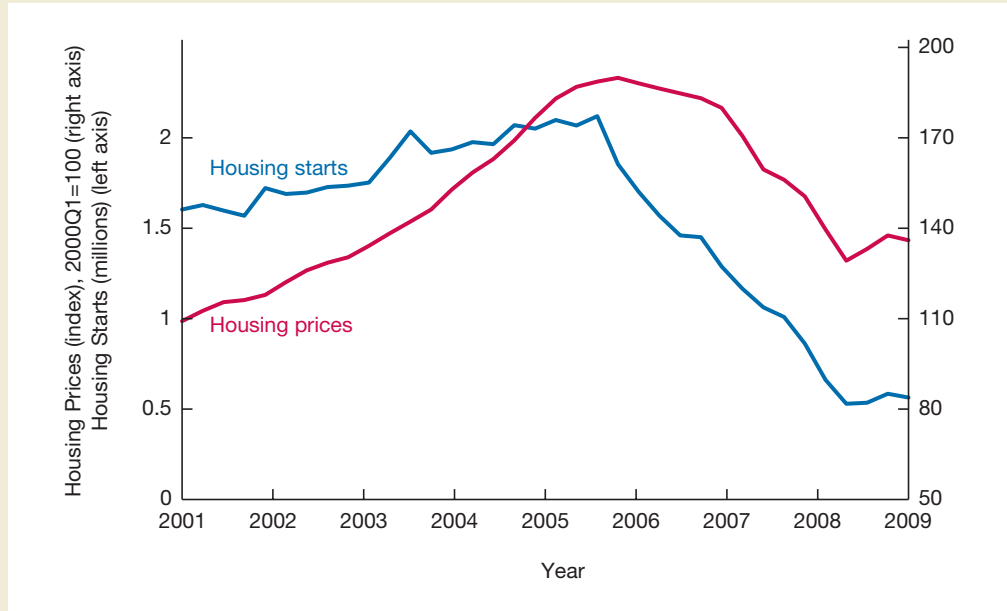
Our theory of the housing market suggests that we should first examine housing prices. Notice in Figure 19.9 that housing prices inflated like a bubble and then burst: relative housing prices boomed from 2001 to 2006, by over 70%, but then collapsed falling by over 25% by 2009, marking the greatest swing in home prices in the U.S. post–World War II period. Our Tobin’s q theory of residential investment indicates that this housing price boom and bust would result in a similar boom and bust in residential investment. That trend is exactly what we see in Figure 19.9, where housing prices and housing starts move closely together, with the upward and downward swings of both series coinciding.

The relationship between residential investment and housing prices begs a deeper question: what caused such large swings in housing prices? Our theory of the housing market again suggests several contributing forces that increased the demand for housing, shifted the demand curve to the right, and increased housing prices, as is shown in panel (a) of Figure 19.10. The first force was the decline in real mortgage rates, which lowered the user cost of capital and thereby increased the demand for housing. Some economists attribute the fall in real mortgage rates to loose monetary policy, which kept real interest rates below zero from 2001 to 2005. Others attribute low real mortgage rates to the large flows of capital from countries like China into the United States, which kept mortgage rates low.⁵ No matter the source, low real mortgage rates made the cost of financing a housing purchase low and decreased the user cost of housing. The result was increased demand for housing, a rightward shift of the

⁵See the Policy and Practice case in Chapter 15 which discusses the role of monetary policy in the housing boom.

FIGURE 19.9
Housing Prices and Residential Investment, 2001–2009

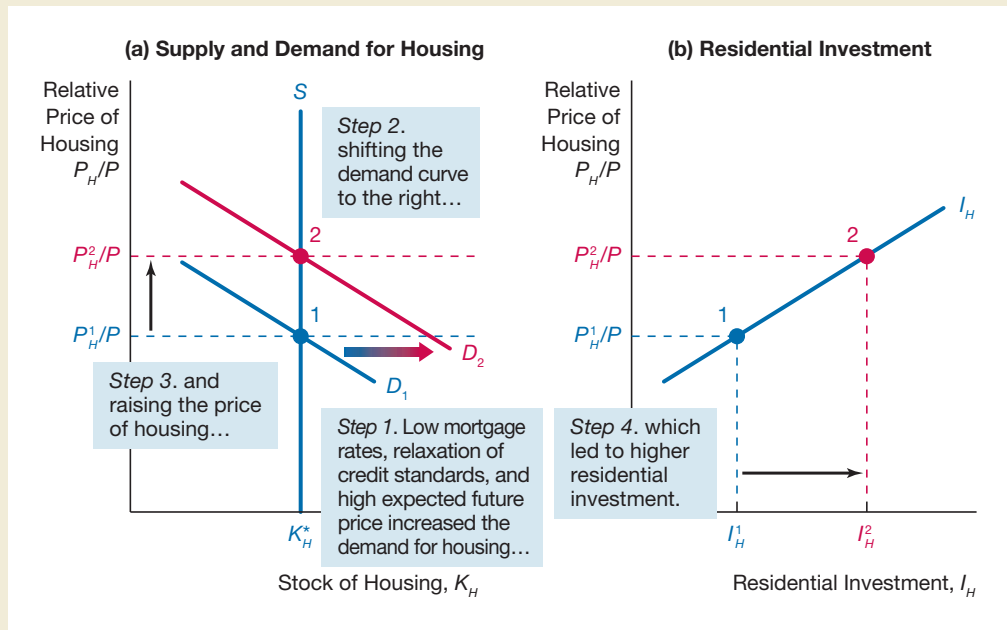
From 2001 to 2006, housing starts rose from around 1.5 million to a peak of over 2 million, while from 2006 to 2009, they fell to around 500,000. Housing prices showed a similar rise and fall, rising by over 70% from 2001–2006 and then falling by over 25% by 2009.



Source: Housing Prices, Case-Shiller U.S. National Composite House Price Index, available from: www.macromarkets.com/csi_housing/index.asp. Housing Starts, New Privately Housing Units Started, at www.census.gov/const/startssa.pdf

FIGURE 19.10
Housing Boom

From 2001 to 2006, the decline in mortgage rates, households' beliefs that housing prices would keep climbing at a rapid pace, and the relaxation of credit standards fueled the demand for housing. The demand curve shifted to the right and increased housing prices, as is shown in panel (a). As shown in panel (b), the rise in housing prices then led to a boom in residential investment.



housing demand curve from D_1 to D_2 , and a rise in housing prices, the situation depicted in panel (a) of Figure 19.10.

Then, as shown in panel (b), the rise in housing prices led to a boom in residential investment.

A second and very important force was “irrational exuberance” by households that believed housing prices would keep on climbing at a rapid rate. Households expected large

appreciation of housing prices, lowering the user cost of housing and stimulating demand. The result is depicted in panel (a) of Figure 19.10: demand for housing increased, the demand curve shifted to the right from D_1 to D_2 , the price of houses rose, and residential investment boomed.

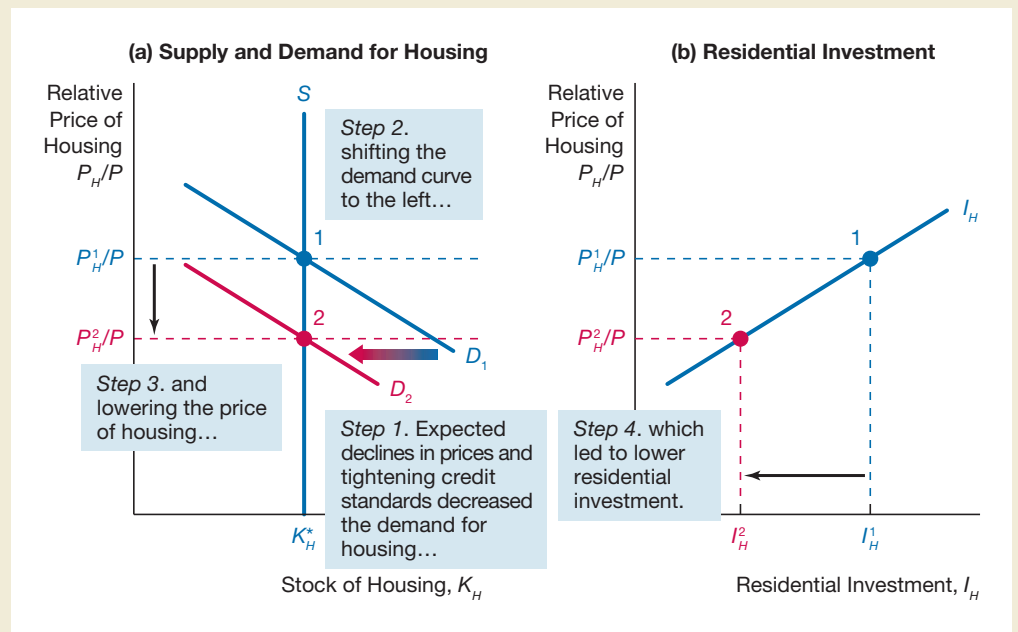
A third important force was the relaxation of lending standards described in Chapter 15. So-called *subprime borrowers*, those who were not especially good credit risks, now found that they had easier access to credit. This relaxation of lending standards increased the demand for housing, shifted the demand curve to the right from D_1 to D_2 , raised housing prices, and increased residential investment, as in Figure 19.10.

The bust in housing prices occurred when the second and third forces turned in the opposite direction. At some point, households recognized that the boom in asset prices could not go on forever. Once they came to this realization, expected appreciation of housing prices ended, thereby raising the user cost of housing and causing demand to fall. The bubble burst and housing prices began to decline. Even worse, when housing prices began to decline, sentiment changed so drastically that the public began to expect *declines* in housing prices, lowering housing demand even further. With the bursting of the housing bubble and the onset of the financial crisis in 2007 (discussed in Chapter 15), mortgage lenders began to tighten credit standards appreciably. Increased financing constraints made it harder to finance homes with mortgages, and demand for housing fell. The combination of the end of expected appreciation of housing prices and the tightening of financing constraints cut demand for housing and shifted the demand curve to the left, as shown in panel (a) of Figure 19.11. The result was a decline in housing prices and a collapse of residential investment, as demonstrated in panel (b) of Figure 19.11. As discussed in Chapter 15, the housing price collapse resulted in the most serious financial crisis since the Great Depression, leading to a sharp contraction in economic activity.

FIGURE 19.11

Housing Bust

Starting in 2006, expected declines in housing prices and tightening of credit standards led to a drop in the demand for housing and a leftward shift of the demand curve, as shown in panel (a). The result was a decline in housing prices and a collapse of residential investment, as demonstrated in panel (b).



U.S. Government Policies and the Housing Market

As shown in Table 19.3, the United States has some of the highest home ownership rates in the world. Promoting home ownership is a national policy, which U.S. politicians equate with supporting motherhood and apple pie.

The U.S. government has used tax policy to encourage home ownership. The interest on the first \$1 million of a mortgage is tax deductible. So if you have a mortgage at 5% nominal interest rate and your tax bracket is 20%, the deduction lowers your taxes by 20% of the mortgage payment. In effect, your after-tax mortgage rate falls to 4%. The tax deductibility of mortgage interest therefore lowers the user cost of housing, making it cheaper for households to own houses, thereby encouraging home ownership.

The government promotes home ownership through agencies that provide funds or guarantees for mortgage debt. The Federal Housing Administration (FHA) provides mortgage insurance that guarantees timely payment on individual mortgages so lenders are not exposed to any credit risk. In addition, the Government National Mortgage Association (GNMA, or “Ginnie Mae”) provides guarantees for mortgage-backed securities, described in Chapter 15, which are a standardized debt security that is made up of a bundle of individual mortgages. The U.S. government has also sponsored agencies that function as private corporations, but have close ties to the government, known as **government-sponsored enterprises (GSEs)**. Examples include the Federal National Mortgage Association (FNMA, or “Fannie Mae”) and the Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation (FHLMC, or “Freddie Mac”). These two GSEs provide funds to the mortgage market by selling bonds and using the proceeds to buy mortgages or mortgage-backed securities. Another set of GSEs, the Federal Home Loan Banks, indirectly provide funds to the mortgage

TABLE 19.3

Home Ownership Rates in Different Countries

Countries	Percent (%) Homeowners
Germany	46.0
Austria	52.0
Netherlands	56.0
Denmark	58.0
France	58.0
Poland	58.0
Hungary	87.0
Slovakia	89.0
Romania	96.0
European Union	65.0
United States	68.1

Sources: Home Ownership Rates in 2007 from Eurostat at http://epp.eurostat.ec.europa.eu/statistics_explained/index.php/Housing_statistics; and U.S. Census Bureau at www.census.gov/

markets by selling bonds and then lending the proceeds to financial institutions that make mortgage loans. By providing guarantees and funds to the mortgage market, these government agencies and GSEs help lower mortgage rates, thereby further lowering the user cost of housing, which encourages home ownership.

Besides increasing the rate of home ownership, what effect do these policies have on the housing market? The answer is provided by our theory of the housing market, as was shown in Figure 19.8. All these policies lower the user cost of capital and increase the demand for housing. As a result, they shift the demand curve in panel (a) of Figure 19.8 to the right and raise housing prices. The rise in housing prices then leads to an increase in residential investment, as shown in panel (b). Over time, the rate of home ownership and the U.S. housing stock are higher than they otherwise would be.

Some economists say policies to encourage home ownership distort the markets and encourage too much home building. As discussed in Chapter 15, the two GSEs, Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac, required a bail out in the aftermath of the bursting of the housing bubble, costing the taxpayers billions of dollars.

SUMMARY

1. There are three basic components of investment: business fixed investment, inventory investment, and residential investment. All three types of investment are highly procyclical and volatile.
2. The neoclassical theory of investment derives the desired level of capital from the condition that the marginal product of capital equals the user cost of capital. It shows that the expected future desired level of capital and investment spending is positively related to expected future output, the expected rate of change of the real price of capital, depreciation allowances, and the investment tax credit. The expected future desired level of capital and investment spending is negatively related to the real price of capital, the real interest rate, and the depreciation rate.
3. There are four reasons for holding inventories: they are a factor used in production, they are work in process, they allow production smoothing, and they avoid stock-outs. Because inventories play a similar role in production as business fixed investment, the neoclassical theory applies equally to inventory investment, with the same results.
4. Tobin's q is the market value of installed capital divided by the replacement cost of this capital. A rise in stock prices leads to a rise in Tobin's q and a rise in investment, while a decline in stock prices leads to a decline in Tobin's q and a fall in investment spending.
5. Residential housing prices and investment are positively related to expected future income, the rate of household formation, and the expected appreciation of housing prices. Residential housing prices and investment are negatively related to real mortgage rates and financing constraints.

KEY TERMS

business fixed investment, p. 486
 depreciation, p. 490
 depreciation rate, p. 491
 financing constraints, p. 495
 government-sponsored enterprises (GSEs), p. 510
 gross investment, p. 490

inventory investment, p. 487
 just-in-time production, p. 498
 neoclassical theory of investment, p. 487
 net investment, p. 490
 production smoothing, p. 499
 residential investment, p. 487

stock-out avoidance, p. 499
 tax-adjusted user cost of capital, p. 494
 Tobin's q , p. 500
 user cost of capital, p. 488
 work in process, p. 498

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Data on Investment Spending

1. Identify and give examples of the three components of investment spending.

The Neoclassical Theory of Investment

2. What is the user cost of capital? What variables determine this cost and how does a change in each variable affect it?
3. Explain how the user cost of capital and the expected marginal product of capital together determine the desired level of capital.
4. According to the neoclassical theory of investment, how do firms determine their optimal

amount of investment spending once they have identified their desired level of capital?

5. Explain how the desired levels of capital and investment are affected by changes in the expected marginal product of capital, the user cost of capital, and taxes.

Inventory Investment

6. Why do firms hold inventories and why is their inventory investment a matter of interest to macroeconomists?

Tobin's q and Investment

7. What is Tobin's q ? How does it provide a theory of investment spending?
8. How are Tobin's q theory and the neoclassical theory of investment related?

Residential Investment

9. How is residential investment related to housing prices?
10. What causes the demand for housing to increase and how do each of these determinants affect residential investment?

PROBLEMS

All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

The Neoclassical Theory of Investment

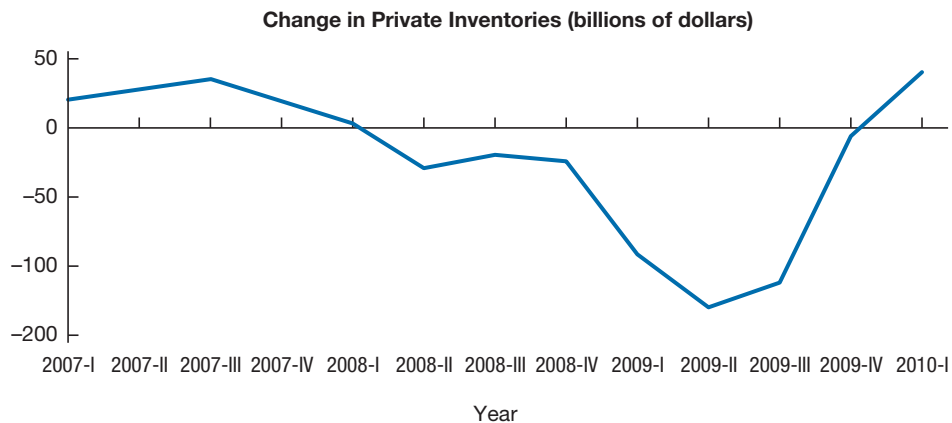
1. Assume Luke is considering investing in new equipment and computers for his construction company. The real interest rate is 5%, construction equipment is valued at \$600,000, and computers are valued at \$20,000. Neither type of capital is expected to change its price during the next year.
 - a) Calculate the user cost of capital for construction equipment, assuming it depreciates at a 10% annual rate.
 - b) Suppose the annual depreciation rate for computers is 35%. Calculate the user cost of capital for computers.
2. Using the expression for the expected marginal product of capital, $MPK^e = 3.6/K_{t+1}$, plot the MPK^e curve and determine the desired level of capital next period (measured in trillions) if the user cost equals 0.30 (assume the price of capital is normalized to 1.0).
3. Explain the consequences of the following events on the desired level of capital stock for the next period according to the neoclassical theory of investment:
 - a) An autonomous easing of monetary policy.
 - b) Increase in the depreciation rate of capital.
 - c) An increase in productivity.

4. Discuss the effect of the investment tax credit made by the Obama administration on February 2009 on the level of investment in the United States. What does empirical evidence suggest about the link between taxes and investment?
5. One common feature of developing countries is their relatively less developed financial systems. What are the implications of a less efficient financial system for the level of investment in developing countries?
6. In May 2010 an oil leak erupted from an offshore drilling platform in the Gulf of Mexico. The devastating effects of this leak prompted the Obama administration to encourage more strict regulations for this type of oil extraction.
 - a) Discuss the effects of such regulations on the user cost of capital.
 - b) Explain the effect of such regulations on the future desired level of capital stock and investment in this industry.

Inventory Investment

7. The following graph shows the quarterly change in private inventories in the United States from 2007 to 2010. (Figures are billions

of 2005 dollars.) Explain the changes in private inventories during this period.



Source: BEA, Table 5.6.5B. www.bea.gov

Tobin's q and Investment

8. During the second quarter of 2010 rumors about the health of the Greek economy created significant fluctuations in stock prices all over the world. Explain the effects of changes in stock prices on investment levels according to Tobin's q theory.

Residential Investment

9. A relatively recent trend in most developed countries, including the United States, is the creation of single person households. Discuss the short- and long-run consequences of this trend in housing prices and residential investment.
10. In the aftermath of the subprime financial crisis of 2007–2009, an increase in real interest rates was expected in the United States (as a part of the Federal Reserve “exit strategy”). Using a graph, explain the effect on residential investment of an increase in real mortgage rates.



MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.



20

The Labor Market, Employment, and Unemployment

Preview

Few changes in U.S. society over the last half century are as striking as the entrance of women into the labor force. In the 1950s, young women, even college graduates, were expected to marry early and devote themselves to raising children and tending to household chores. Only a third of young women of prime working age—twenty-five to thirty-four—held or sought work outside the home in 1960. If this sounds unimaginable today, the change is a testament to the significance of shifts in the labor market, the most important market we interact with over our lifetimes. The labor market determines our wages, our ability to find work, and the time we have for leisure. Economists study the labor market to answer big-picture questions. Why has labor force participation of women increased so much? Why are unemployment rates in Europe typically higher than in the United States? Why does a college education today generate higher returns than it once did? Why has income inequality grown so much in recent years?

This chapter begins with a general look at the U.S. labor market over the last half-century. It then develops a supply and demand model of the labor market and examines the sources of unemployment. With this analysis, we then start answering many of the questions posed previously.

Developments in the U.S. Labor Market

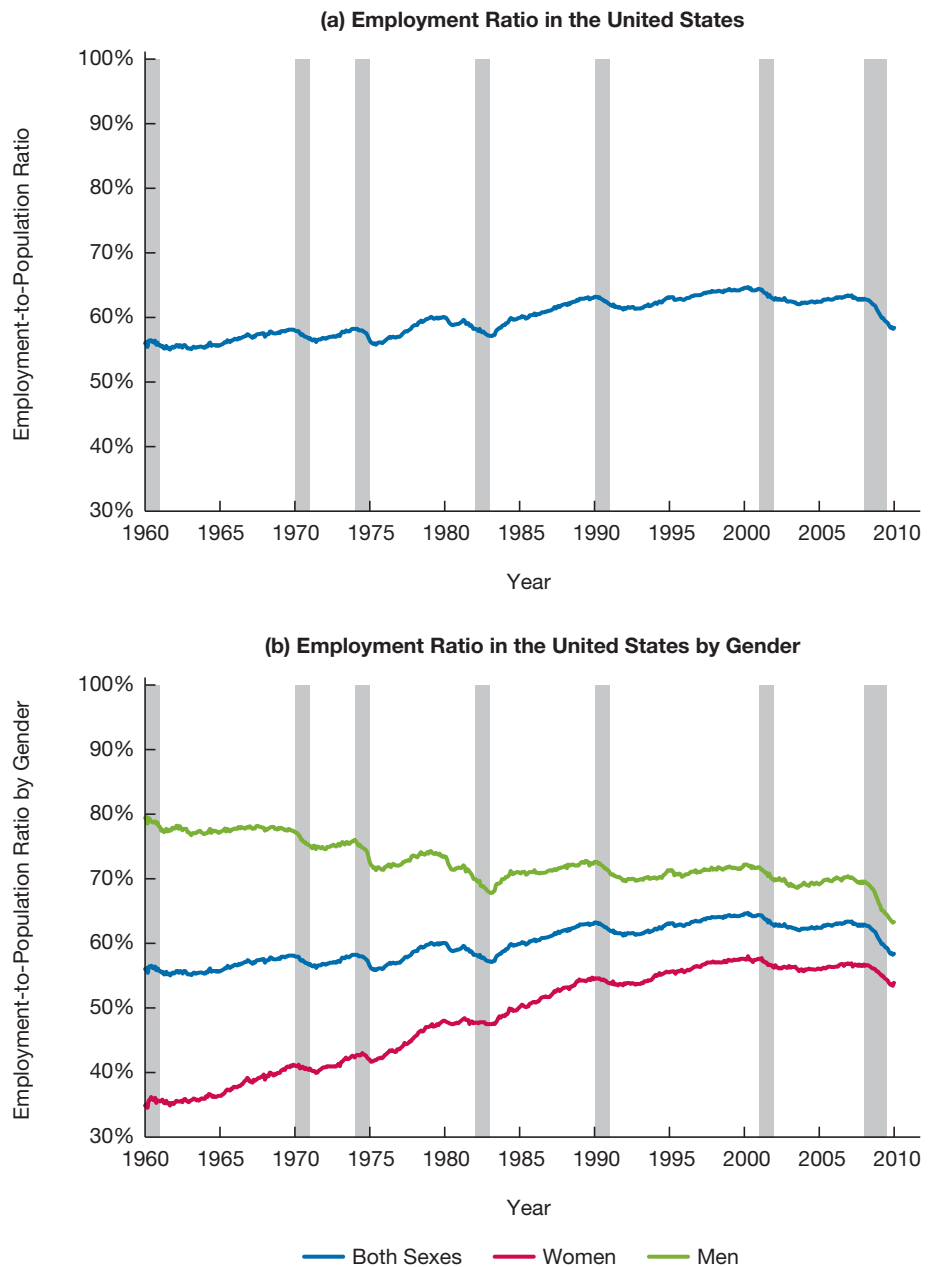
Among the many variables describing the U.S. labor market, economists pay particular attention to the *employment ratio*, the unemployment rate, and real wages.

Employment Ratio

One of the first key issues in labor market analysis is trends in the **employment-to-population ratio** (or more simply the **employment ratio**), the proportion of the civilian working-age population that is employed. As you can see in panel (a) of Figure 20.1, the

FIGURE 20.1**Employment Ratios in the United States, 1960–2010**

In panel (a), the employment ratio in the United States has an upward trend over the last fifty years and is subject to business cycle fluctuations, rising during economic expansions and falling during recessions (the shaded areas). Panel (b) shows that the upward trend for the overall employment ratio is due to the upward trend in the employment ratio for women.



Source: Bureau of Labor Statistics at www.bls.gov

U.S. employment-to-population ratio has had a slight upward trend over the last fifty years, rising from 56% of people over sixteen years of age working in 1960 to 59% in 2010.

The upward trend in the employment ratio is due entirely to the increased willingness of women to work. Notice in panel (b) of Figure 20.1 that the percentage of men working, the male employment ratio, fell from 79% in 1960 to 64% in 2010. Meanwhile, the percentage of women working, the female employment ratio, rose from 35% in 1960

to 54% in 2007. The data shows clearly how women entered the labor force in increasing numbers over this same period.

Figure 20.1 demonstrates that employment fluctuates with the business cycle, rising during economic expansions and falling during recessions. As jobs became scarce in the most recent recession, the employment ratio tumbled. By the start of 2010, it stood at 58.4%, down 4.3 percentage points from the fourth quarter of 2007. We can quantify this decline in the employment ratio in terms of the number of jobs lost. Because the total U.S. civilian working-age population in 2010 was around 230 million, the 4.3 percentage point decline translates into around 10 million jobs lost. The cost in terms of lost jobs during recessions, particularly the most recent severe one, can be high indeed.

Unemployment Rate

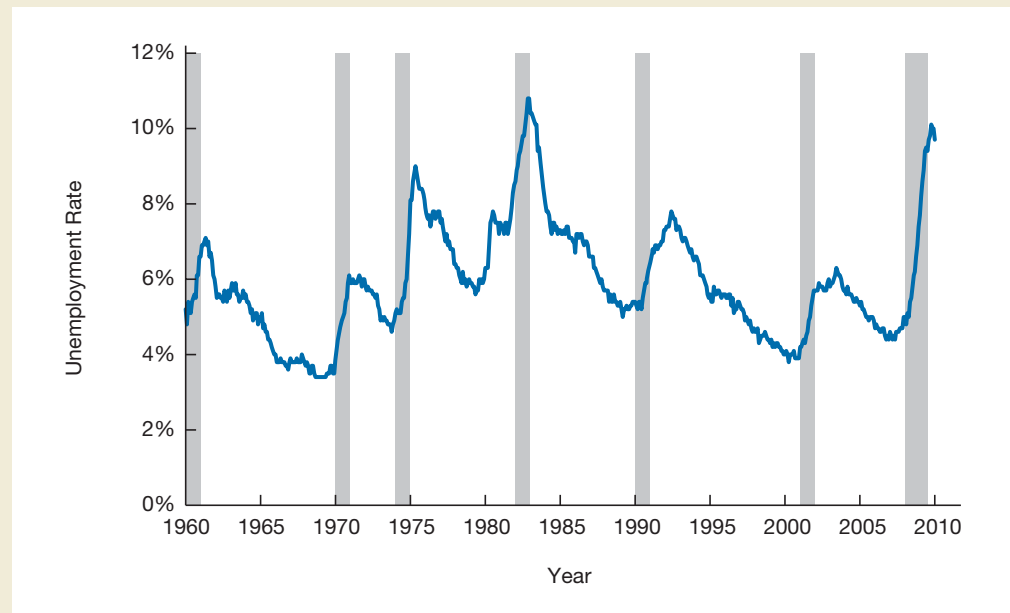
Not everyone who wants a job can find one. The *unemployment rate* measures the percentage of the labor force that is unemployed. As we discussed in Chapter 2, a person is considered an unemployed member of the labor force if he or she had no job but were actively looking for a job over the prior four weeks. Figure 20.2 shows the U.S. unemployment rate from 1960 to 2010. The unemployment rate is always above zero; even in boom times, some people are unable to get work. We need a model of the labor market to explain this phenomenon.

The unemployment rate varies over the business cycle. In March 2007, before the recession began, the unemployment rate was 4.4%. By October 2009, it had peaked at 10.1%, a 5.7 percentage point increase. This dismal rate was the second-worst showing since World War II, surpassed only by the 10.8% unemployment rate reached in November and December 1982.

FIGURE 20.2

Unemployment Rate in the United States, 1960–2010

The unemployment rate varies over the business cycle, falling during business cycle expansions and rising during recessions (shaded areas). The unemployment rate is also always above zero, indicating that even in boom times, some people are unable to get work.



Source: Bureau of Labor Statistics at www.bls.gov

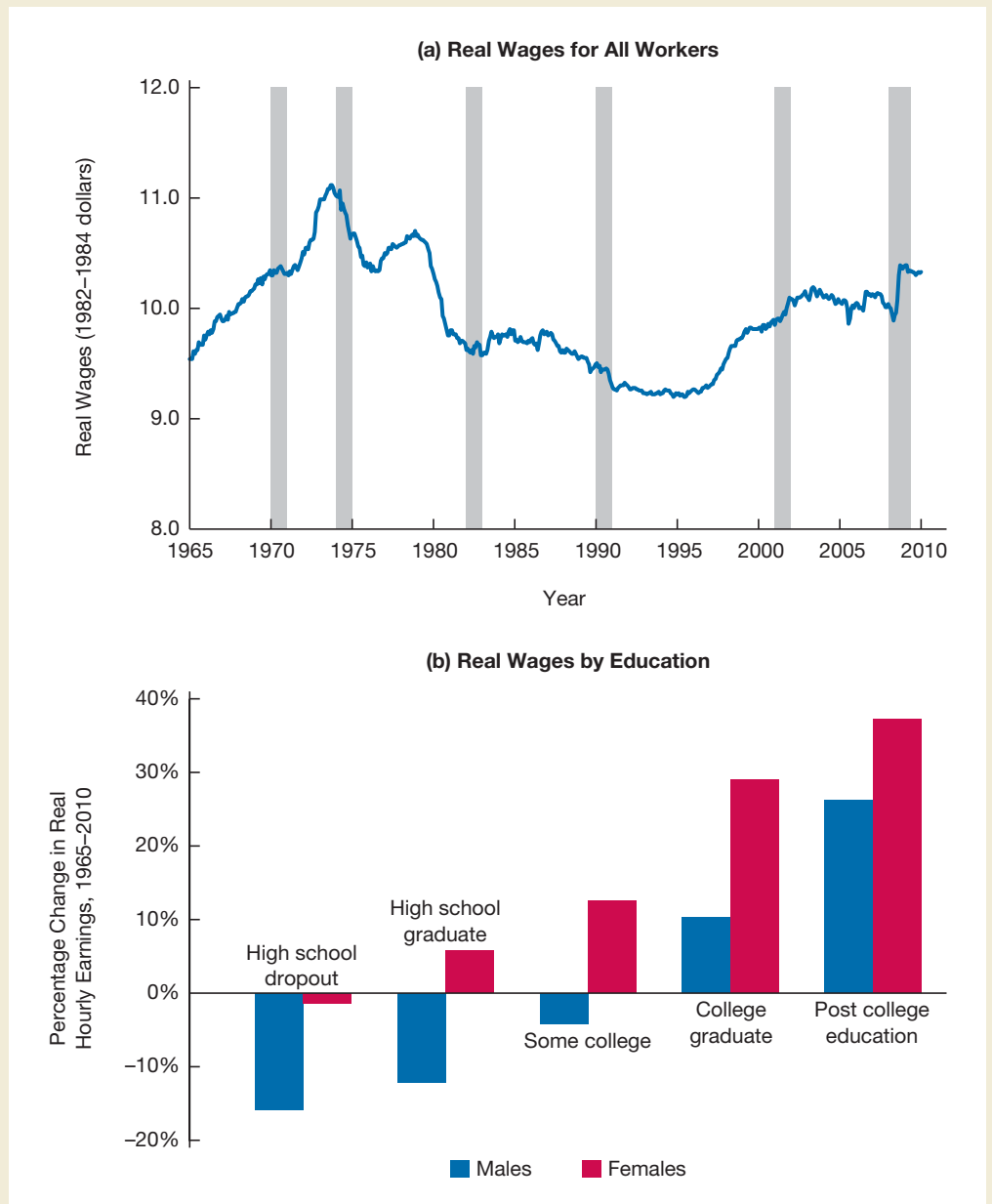
Real Wages

The average worker has grown richer over time. As Figure 20.3 shows, average real wages for all workers have been essentially flat, growing only at a rate of 0.2% from 1965 to 2010. However, real wages for college-educated workers, particularly women, have grown substantially. Growing income disparities have emerged in the United

FIGURE 20.3

Real Wages in the United States, 1965–2010

Real wages for all workers do not have an upward trend, but college-educated workers' real wages have undergone substantial growth.



Sources: Panel (a) Real Wages for all Workers, Average hourly earnings, 1982–84 dollars, Bureau of Labor Statistics at www.bls.gov. Panel (b) Percentage changes in Real Wages by education. David Autor. “The Polarization of Job Opportunities in the U.S. Labor Market: Implications for Employment and Earnings,” Working Paper, Center for American Progress and The Hamilton Project, April 2010.

States, disturbing many economists and politicians. Again, a model of the labor market will help explain the troubling trend of wage inequality.

Supply and Demand in the Labor Market

Building on the brief discussion of labor in Chapter 3, we derive a demand curve for labor, then a supply curve, and finally discuss the market equilibrium where supply equals demand.

The Demand Curve for Labor

In Chapter 3, we learned that we can derive the demand curve for labor from profit maximization by firms. Firms will find it profitable to add new workers as long as the marginal product of labor, MPL , exceeds the cost of hiring workers—that is, the real wage rate, w . They will stop demanding additional labor only when the marginal product of labor falls to the real wage rate so that hiring another worker does not add to profits. For any given real wage rate, we can find the quantity of labor demanded by looking at the intersection of the marginal product curve and the real wage line. In this sense, the marginal product of labor curve is the demand curve for labor, and we label this curve as both MPL and D^L . Because the marginal product of labor displays diminishing returns—as labor increases, the marginal product declines—both the marginal product of labor curve and the demand curve will slope downward.

Let's consider the numerical example we outlined in Chapter 3 in which the amount of output in the economy is \$10 trillion and the labor is expressed in terms of the number of hired workers. There we saw that for the Cobb-Douglas production function, $Y = AK^{0.3}L^{0.7}$, the marginal product of labor, is

$$MPL = 0.7 Y/L = 0.7 \times \$10 \text{ trillion}/L \quad (1)$$

At a real wage of \$140,000 per worker, Equation 1 indicates that the quantity of workers demanded will be 50 million ($\$140,000 = 0.7 \times \$10 \text{ trillion}/50 \text{ million}$), which we mark as point A in Figure 20.4. If the real wage were lower at \$70,000 per worker, the quantity of workers demanded is 100 million ($\$70,000 = 0.7 \times \$10 \text{ trillion}/100 \text{ million}$), and this point is marked as point E. If the real wage falls further to \$35,000, then the quantity of workers demanded will be 200 million ($\$35,000 = 0.7 \times \$10 \text{ trillion}/200 \text{ million}$), which we mark as point D in Figure 20.4. As you can see, the demand curve for labor is downward-sloping.

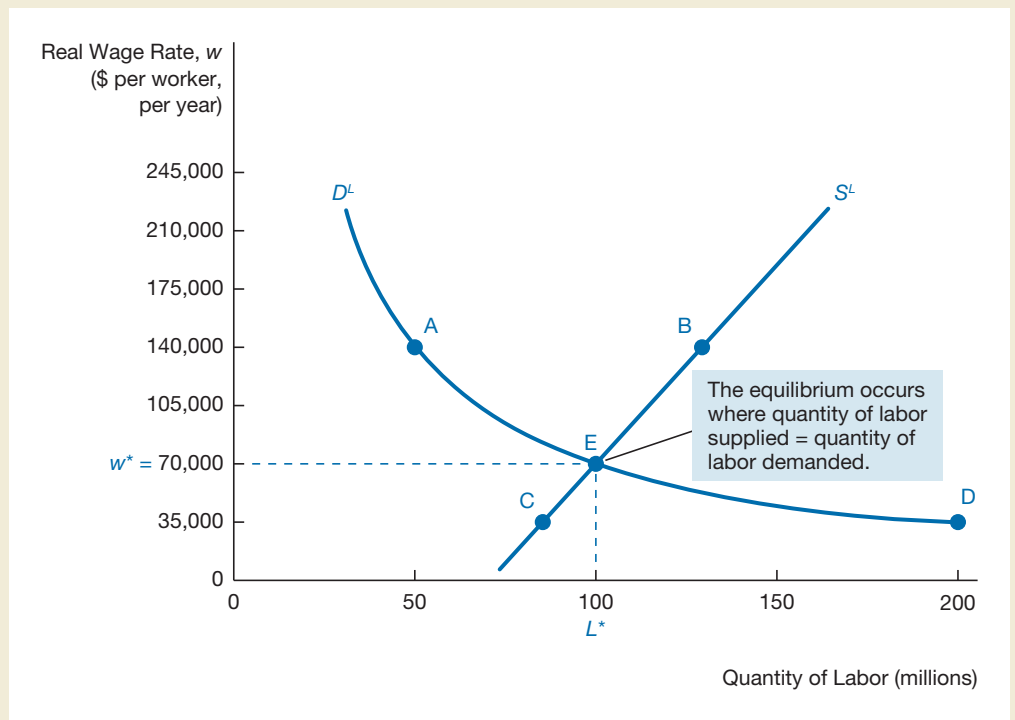
The Supply Curve

Now let's turn to the supply curve for labor. In Chapter 3, to keep things simple, we assumed a fixed number of workers. However, in the real world, workers choose either to work or to take **leisure**. Economists define leisure as any activity that does not occur on the job—eating, sleeping, watching TV, partying, taking vacations, and taking care of children.¹ (College students are the real experts on this subject.) When real wages are

¹Many activities are classified as leisure that may include nonmarket work. Examples are childcare and household chores.

FIGURE 20.4**Equilibrium in the Labor Market**

The demand curve for labor is downward sloping, while the supply curve is upward sloping. Equilibrium in the labor market occurs at point E where the quantity of labor demanded equals the quantity of labor supplied, the real wage $w^* = \$70,000$, and the quantity of labor used in production is $L^* = 100$ million workers.



high, so is the cost of leisure (not working). Thus, people will be more willing to work and the quantity of labor supplied will rise. The labor supply curve, S^L , that goes through points B, E, and C is therefore upward sloping.²

Equilibrium in the Labor Market

As always, the final step in supply and demand analysis is to study the market equilibrium, which occurs when the amount of labor that firms are willing to hire (*demand*) equals the amount of labor that workers are willing to offer (*supply*) at a given real wage rate. In the labor market, market equilibrium is achieved when the quantity of labor demanded equals the quantity of labor supplied, that is,

$$D^L = S^L \quad (2)$$

In Figure 20.4, the equilibrium in the labor market occurs at point E, in which the real wage rate $w^* = \$70,000$ per worker and the quantity of labor supplied $L^* = 100$ million workers.

²The upward-sloping labor supply curve assumes that the substitution effect of a higher real wage is larger than the income effect. (We discussed the income versus substitution effects in Chapter 18.) This is very likely to be the case if the labor supply curve is drawn under the assumption that future wages are held constant, so that movements of the current wage have only a small impact on long-run income, thereby making the income effect small.

Response of Employment and Wages to Changes in Labor Demand and Labor Supply

Any change that affects the amount of labor demanded or supplied at any given real wage rate leads to a new equilibrium in the labor market. We will look in detail at the impact of a change in the amount of labor demanded and supplied on our labor market model. We will then use our model in a series of applications.

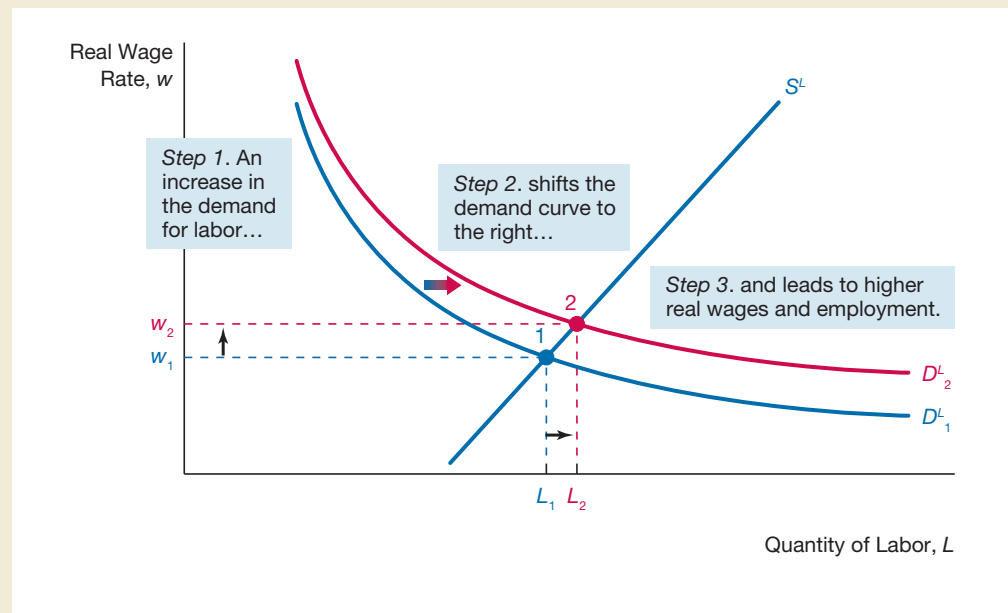
Changes in Labor Demand

We begin by examining a change in the amount of labor demanded. As Equation 1 indicates, output growth, with the real wage held constant, will cause the marginal product of labor to go up. Output may grow because of a positive supply shock to production, such as a surge in productivity or, alternatively, because of a positive demand shock to output, such as a boost in consumer spending that causes production to rise. Whatever the cause, higher output increases the marginal product of labor and shifts the labor demand curve out to the right from D_1^L to D_2^L , as in Figure 20.5. Equilibrium in the labor market therefore moves from point 1 to point 2: the real wage rises from w_1 to w_2 and the quantity of labor used in production rises from L_1 to L_2 . Our supply and demand model of the labor market therefore yields the following result: **a rise in output, either because of a positive supply or demand shock to production, leads to an increase in the demand for labor, higher real wages, and increased employment.**

Our supply and demand model of the labor market is therefore able to explain why employment is procyclical, as was shown in Figure 20.1. When the economy is booming

FIGURE 20.5
Response to an Increase in the Demand for Labor

An increase in the demand for labor from a rise in output shifts the labor demand curve out to the right from D_1^L to D_2^L , and the equilibrium moves from point 1 to point 2. At this new equilibrium, the real wage rises from w_1 to w_2 and the quantity of labor used in production rises from L_1 to L_2 .



and output is rising, employment will rise; if the economy contracts, output will fall, as will employment.³

Changes in Labor Supply

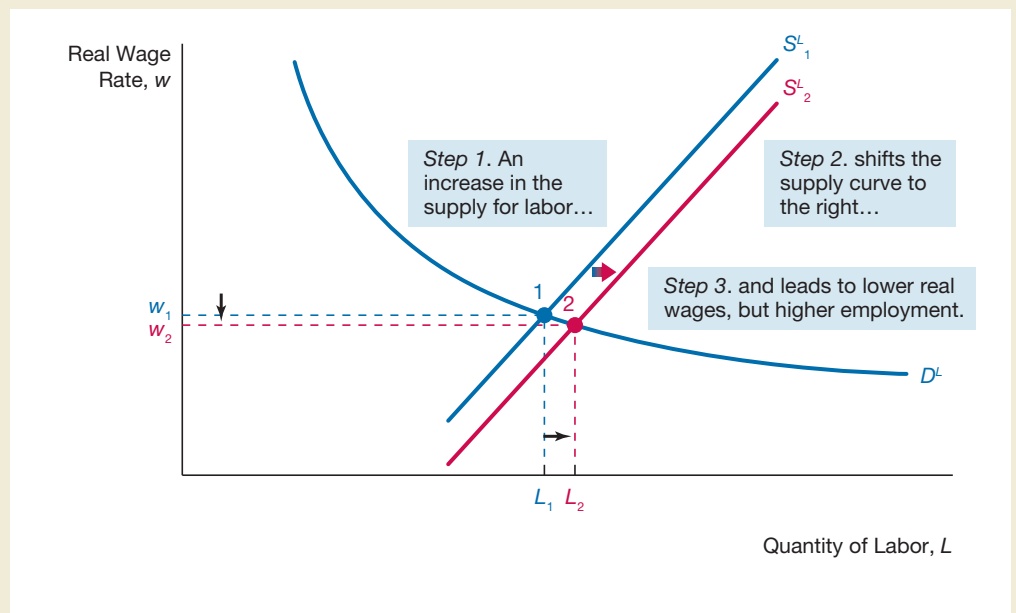
Anything that changes the amount of labor supplied at any given real wage rate causes the labor supply curve to shift and will also lead to a new equilibrium in the labor market. Let's look at what happens when the supply of labor increases at any given real wage rate. One possible cause of this could be increased immigration, either from weakened enforcement of immigration laws or because immigration law changes to permit more legal immigrants. As shown in Figure 20.6, the increase in immigration increases the quantity of labor supplied at any real wage rate and causes the labor supply curve to shift out to the right from S_1^L to S_2^L . The labor market moves from point 1 to point 2. The real wage rate falls from w_1 to w_2 and employment rises from L_1 to L_2 . We thus have the following result: **anything that increases labor supply and shifts the labor supply curve out to the right (such as immigration) will cause real wages to fall and employment to rise.**

Armed with our supply and demand analysis of the labor market, we can answer a number of questions posed at the beginning of this chapter through a series of applications.

FIGURE 20.6

Response to an Increase in the Supply of Labor

An increase in the supply of labor, say from immigration, shifts the labor supply curve out to the right from S_1^L to S_2^L , and the equilibrium moves from point 1 to point 2. As a result, the real wage rate falls from w_1 to w_2 and employment rises from L_1 to L_2 .



³In Chapter 3, we looked at an application of a simplified version of the supply and demand model of the labor market and found that a negative supply shock from a surge in oil prices leads to a decline in real wages. The analysis using the model in this chapter would have the same shift in the labor demand curve as in Chapter 3, but because the labor supply curve is upward sloping in the model in this chapter, it would also indicate that there would be a decline in employment from the oil price shock. Indeed, this is exactly what happened after oil prices surged in 1973–1974, 1979–1980, and 2007–2008.

Application

Why Has Labor Force Participation of Women Increased?

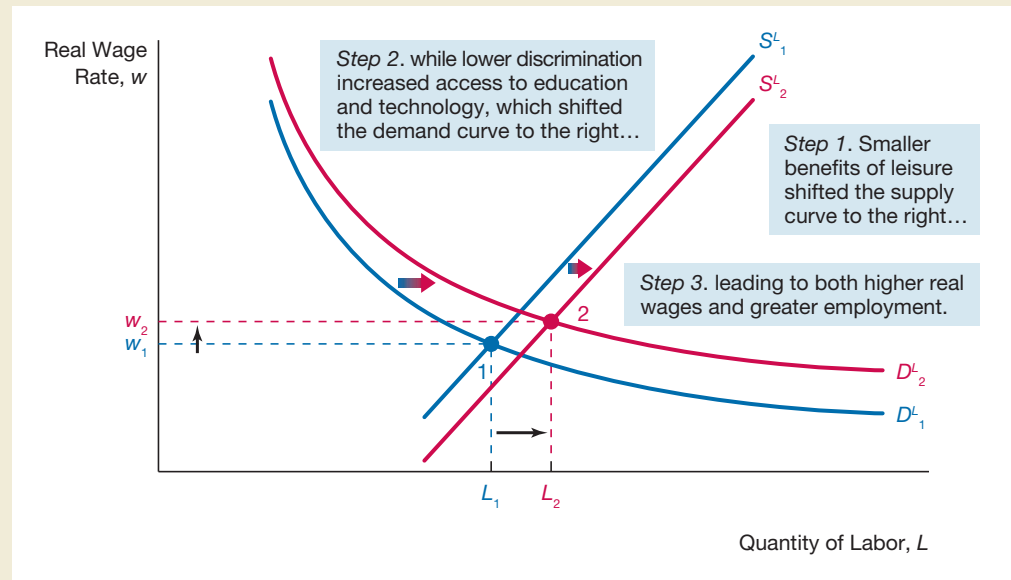
Through the 1970s, a majority of women were not in the labor force. Put more technically, women had very low rates of **labor force participation**, the percentage of the adult population in the labor force. After marrying, women often left the work force and stayed home to care for children. As recently as 1970, women between the ages of twenty-five and thirty-four were less likely to work than women ten years their junior. By 2010, the employment ratio for women increased dramatically to 53%. Women today represent more than half of all managers and professionals, and they lead men in employment in many fields, including accounting and social work. Can our supply and demand model of the labor market explain this phenomenon?

The answer is yes, as Figure 20.7 demonstrates. With the advent of the birth control pill in the 1960s, women could choose to delay childbearing and have smaller families. The benefits of leisure (defined, perhaps unfairly, to include child care, a nonmarket activity) therefore decreased. Women were now willing to supply more labor at any given real wage rate, shifting the supply curve for labor rightward from S_1^L to S_2^L . Decreased discrimination against women increased access to education and technological advancements, which favor brains rather than brawn, and further increased the demand for female labor, shifting the labor demand curve rightward from D_1^L to D_2^L . (To see how the workplace has changed since the early 1960s, just

FIGURE 20.7

Why the Labor Force Participation of Women Has Increased

Post-1960s, the benefits of leisure (which includes child care) decreased, so women supplied more labor and the supply curve for labor shifted out to the right from S_1^L to S_2^L . Improved technology and decreasing discrimination against women increased the demand for female labor, shifting the labor demand curve out to the right from D_1^L to D_2^L . The rightward shift of both the labor supply and demand curves for women moved the economy from point 1 to point 2, and employment for women rose from L_1 to L_2 .



watch an episode of the television series *Mad Men*.) The rightward shift of both the labor supply and demand curves for women moved the economy from point 1 to point 2 in Figure 20.7 and employment for women rose from D_1^L to D_2^L . (Note that as drawn, the labor demand curve shifts out more than the labor supply curve, with the result that real wages for women rise, which is what has happened, with women's wages rising relative to men's.)



Application

Why are Returns to Education and Income Inequality Increasing?

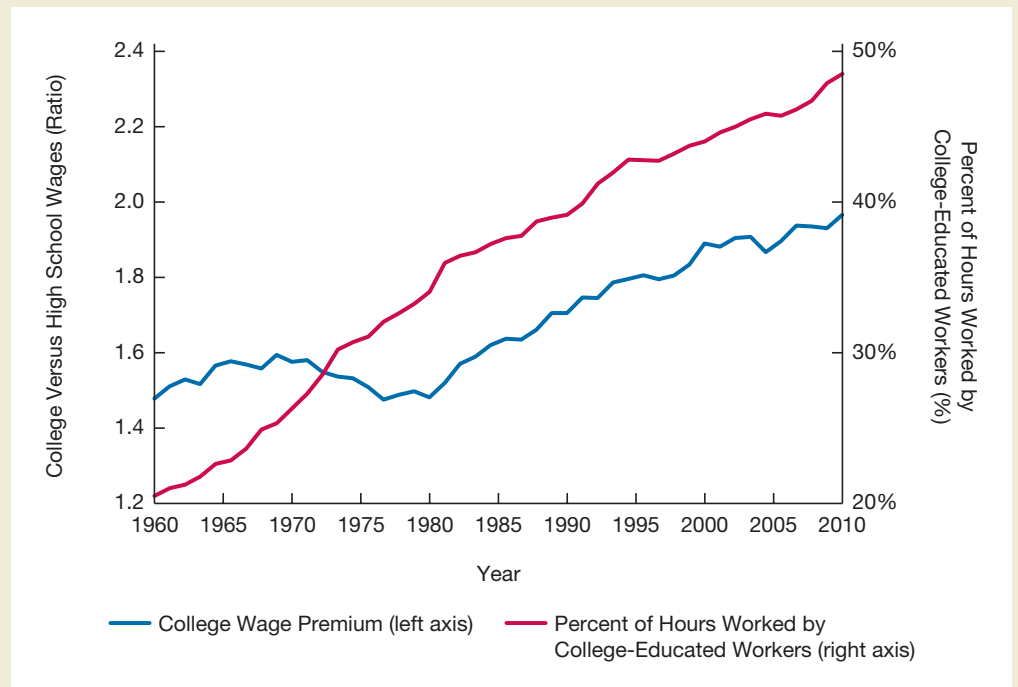
Another striking feature of U.S. labor markets is that wage growth for less educated workers has fallen behind college-educated workers, increasing income inequality. How can our supply and demand model of the labor market explain these phenomena?

Figure 20.8 shows the **college wage premium**, the percentage difference between the average wage of a college-educated worker and a high-school graduate. In the early 1960s, the college wage premium was around 50%, indicating that a college-educated worker earned about 50% more than a high-school educated worker. As you can see, the college wage premium has grown substantially in recent years, coming close to 100% (left vertical axis). The dramatic increase in the return to education demonstrates how important it is for you to stay in college and earn your degree. Figure 20.8 also plots the percentage of hours

FIGURE 20.8

The College Wage Premium and the Percentage of Hours Worked by College-Educated Workers

The college wage premium has grown substantially in recent years, rising from 50% in the 1960s to close to 100% in recent years (left vertical axis). The percentage of hours worked by college-educated workers has risen from around 20% in the early 1960s to nearly 50% today (right vertical axis).



Source: Daron Acemoglu and David H. Autor, "Skills, Tasks and Technologies: Implications for Employment and Earnings," *Handbook of Labor Economics* Volume 4, Orley Ashenfelter and David E. Card (eds.), Amsterdam: Elsevier, forthcoming.

worked by college-educated workers, which has risen from around 20% in the early 1960s to nearly 50% today.

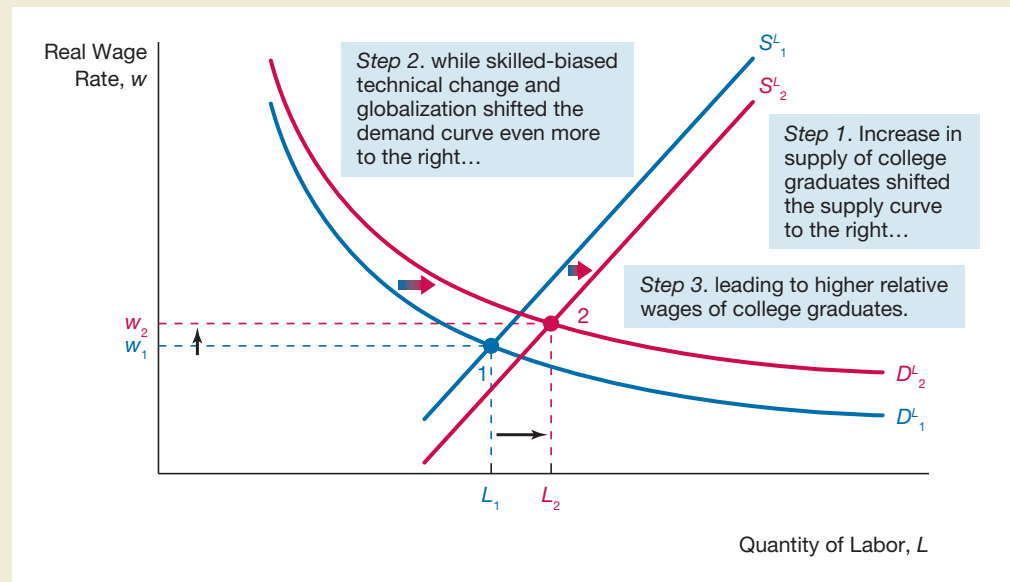
At first glance, the trend in Figure 20.8 seems to contradict our supply and demand framework for the labor market. The supply of college-educated workers has risen substantially, which should lower real wages. Yet their wages have risen relative to other workers. To see why, consider the labor market for college graduates in Figure 20.9. (In this figure, wages are not in absolute amounts, but as wages of college graduates relative to high-school graduates.) The increase in the supply of college graduates shown in Figure 20.9 would lead to a rightward shift of the labor supply curve from S_1^L to S_2^L . All else equal, the relative wage of college graduates would decline. It must be that the demand for college-educated workers has also increased relative to high school educated workers. As depicted in Figure 20.9, the demand for college-educated labor rose by more than the increase in supply, so that the rightward shift of the labor demand curve from D_1^L to D_2^L is much greater than the rightward shift of the labor supply curve from S_1^L to S_2^L . The result is that the wages of college-educated workers rise relative to the wages of high-school graduates.

But what can explain why the demand for college-educated labor has increased so much? There are several plausible hypotheses. We refer to the first as **skill-biased technical change**. This is the idea that new technologies such as computer hardware, software, and the Internet have boosted the relative productivity of college-educated workers. The marginal product of labor has increased far more rapidly for college-educated graduates than for less

FIGURE 20.9

The Labor Market for College Graduates

The increase in the supply of college graduates resulted in a rightward shift of the labor supply curve from S_1^L to S_2^L , while the demand for college-educated labor rose as a result of skill-biased technical change and globalization, increasing demand by more than the increase in supply. The rightward shift of the labor demand curve from D_1^L to D_2^L is much greater than the rightward shift of the labor supply curve from S_1^L to S_2^L . Equilibrium moved from point 1 to point 2, so the wages of college-educated workers rose relative to the wages of high-school graduates.



educated workers, shifting the demand curve for college-educated labor sharply to the right. The second hypothesis is **globalization**. The opening up of markets internationally, both in finance and in trade, enables highly educated workers to work with a larger pool of uneducated workers in the less developed world, thereby making highly educated U.S. workers more productive. In addition, globalization can suppress the wages of low-skilled workers in the United States, who face increased competition from low-skilled workers abroad.

The rise in the college wage premium has increased income inequality. Since college-educated workers have higher income to begin with, when they do better relative to less educated workers, income inequality rises. In the United States, the wage premium for college-educated workers and workers with advanced degrees relative to college-educated workers has risen. The relative wage of high-income people, which are typically the most highly educated in our society, has risen so substantially that income inequality has become a serious political problem.



Dynamics of Unemployment

So far we have studied the labor market with a very useful supply and demand model framework that assumes that all workers who want to supply their labor at a given real wage rate can get a job. However, the model cannot explain the phenomenon of unemployment, when workers who want a job can't find one.

To understand why unemployment occurs, we first must delve deeper into the dynamics of the labor market and observe the flow of workers into and out of the labor market.

Flows Into and Out of Employment Status

People of working age can be classified in one of three categories of employment status, shown in Figure 20.10:

1. *employed*, 139.3 million in May 2010;
2. *unemployed*, 14.6 million in May 2010; and
3. *not in the labor force*, 83.4 million in May 2010.

Workers move from one employment status to another all the time, as indicated in Figure 20.10 by the arrows from each category to another. The number adjacent to each arrow indicates what percentage of workers in the category at the base of the arrow moved to the category at the tip of the arrow during May 2010. For example, 17% of the unemployed, 2.5 million workers, found new jobs and moved into the employed category in May. On the other hand, in May 2010, 2% of the employed, 2.8 million, lost jobs but stayed in the labor force and so moved into the unemployed category.

Workers also move in and out of the labor force. In May 2010, 20% of unemployed workers left the labor force. Some of these are **discouraged workers**, those who just stop looking for work. Another 3% of employed workers left the labor force in May, because of dissatisfaction or to pursue other activities such as going to school, raising children, or entering retirement. Some people rejoin the labor force. In May 2010, 4% of those not in the labor force got jobs and 4% started searching for jobs, moving themselves into the ranks of the unemployed.

**FIGURE 20.10****Changes in Employment Status (May 2010)**

There are three categories of employment status: *employed*, 139.3 million in May 2010; *unemployed*, 14.6 million in May of 2010; and *not in the labor force*, 83.4 million in May 2010. The number adjacent to each arrow indicates what percentage of workers in the category at the base of the arrow moved to the category at the tip of the arrow during May 2010 month. For example, in May 2010, 17% of the unemployed found new jobs and moved into the employed category. On the other hand, in May 2010, 2% of the employed lost jobs, but stayed in the labor force and so moved into the unemployed category. Twenty percent of unemployed workers left the labor force in May 2010, and 3% of employed workers left the labor force. Workers also moved from out of the labor force back in: 4% of those not in the labor force got jobs and 4% started searching for jobs, moving themselves into the ranks of the unemployed.

Source: Bureau of Labor Statistics, www.bls.gov/cps/cps_flows_current.pdf

Figure 20.10 suggests that even in a month where the net change in jobs is small, there are a large number of new jobs created and jobs lost. For example, between 2000 and 2009, there were 29.6 million new jobs created, while there were 30 million jobs lost, for a net decrease of 0.4 million jobs. The labor market is very dynamic: job creation and destruction is fundamental to understanding the roots of unemployment.

Duration of Unemployment

Two other key features of the labor market are important. In a typical month, around 20% of the unemployed find jobs. As a result, for most of the unemployed, **unemployment spells**, the length of time a worker remains unemployed, are shorter than three months. On the other hand, around 20% of the unemployed are **chronically unemployed**; that is, they have unemployment spells lasting more than six months.

A large fraction of unemployment comes from the chronically unemployed. Given that most unemployment spells are short, it seems counterintuitive that most unemployment comes from the chronically unemployed who have long durations of unemployment. Consider a situation in which there are ten workers, eight of whom have been unemployed for two months, and two of whom have been unemployed for two years. The total number of months unemployed is sixty-four months (8×2 months + 2×24 months). However, despite the fact that 80% of workers have a short duration of unemployment, forty-eight of the sixty-four total months of unemployment, that is three-quarters, come from the chronically unemployed.

Causes of Unemployment

We will now use the dynamics of the labor market to understand why unemployment occurs. There are three basic sources of unemployment: frictional unemployment, structural unemployment, and wage rigidity.

Frictional Unemployment

With so many new jobs created and old jobs destroyed every year, it's no surprise that workers and firms have trouble making a match with a suitable job. Workers have different capabilities and different geographic preferences. Mary may be a math whiz, but she hates big cities, while George may be artistic and wants to live only in California. Jobs also have different characteristics that might not be apparent to potential workers. One firm is supportive of its women employees, while another is not. Moreover, firms and workers have different search goals. Workers want an enjoyable, high-paying job, while firms search for a good employee who can do the particular job well at a reasonable wage. It takes time to achieve a job match, and in the meantime, workers who have either left their jobs voluntarily or have been let go will undergo a spell of unemployment.

We call unemployment related to the job search **frictional unemployment**. In a dynamic labor market such as the one we have in the United States, where workers are continually entering and leaving employment, there will always be some frictional unemployment. Importantly, some of this frictional unemployment is actually good for the economy. If workers and firms didn't conduct thorough searches, accepting instead the first job they saw or candidate they interviewed, a good match would be unlikely. When searches are insufficient, workers perform poorly and the economy suffers. The job search process can increase efficiency and sustain a better-performing economy. The conclusion is that ***some frictional unemployment makes the economy better off and is thus desirable.***⁴

⁴However, measures to lower search frictions, such as government policies to facilitate good job matches, can not only improve the economy's efficiency, but can also lower frictional unemployment.

Unemployment Insurance and Unemployment

Unemployment insurance is a government program that provides unemployed workers with a percentage of their wages for a given period after they lose their job. In the United States, unemployment insurance is administered by each state and is typically around 50% of a worker's previous wages. Unemployment insurance is typically paid for twenty-six weeks, but during recessions, this period is often extended, as it was during the most recent recession.

The important benefit from unemployment insurance is that it provides a safety net for workers, reducing hardship when they are fired from their job. (U.S. unemployment insurance benefits are only paid if an employer terminates the worker's employment, not when the worker quits). Despite the desirability of having a safety net for workers, there is a downside to unemployment insurance: higher unemployment.

To see why unemployment insurance increases unemployment, we use our analysis of frictional unemployment. Frictional unemployment occurs because the process of searching for a job takes time. Unemployment insurance gives back part of workers' salaries when they are unemployed, lowering the cost to workers of being unemployed and encouraging them to search longer and hold out for a higher paying job. In addition, the lower cost of being unemployed will encourage workers to turn down jobs that they think are less desirable. Both increased search and the willingness to be pickier about the jobs they take will result in workers experiencing a longer duration of unemployment spells, which will then lead to more unemployment and a higher unemployment rate.

Empirical evidence strongly supports the view that unemployment insurance increases unemployment. Once workers become ineligible for unemployment insurance after the twenty-six weeks, they become twice as likely to take a job. In a particularly striking experiment, new claimants to unemployment insurance in Illinois were randomly selected and were offered a \$500 bonus if they found a job within eleven weeks. For those receiving the bonus, the average duration of unemployment fell by 7%.⁵ Since this finding comes from what is known as a *controlled experiment*, it is quite clear that the bonus causes the lower unemployment duration, and not the other way around. This experiment provides strong evidence that the payments from unemployment insurance have an important impact on workers' decisions to stay unemployed rather than take a job and exit unemployment.

During the most recent recession, there was an active debate over whether the period over which unemployment benefits would be extended should be lengthened, especially because the duration of the unemployment shot through the roof, with the median duration of unemployment rising from around eight weeks to over twenty weeks. Concerns that extending unemployment benefits would lead to a higher unemployment rate led the Bush administration to desist from lengthening the period over which the unemployed could get these benefits. The Obama administration, however, upon coming to office extended unemployment benefits for a longer period, worried that the surge in unemployment was leading to too much hardship.

⁵See Stephen A. Woodbury and Robert G. Spiegelman, "Bonuses to Workers and Employers to Reduce Unemployment: Randomized Trials in Illinois," *American Economic Review* 77 (September 1987): 513–550.

Structural Unemployment

There are two basic structural reasons why the chronically unemployed find it difficult to get a job. First, they may not have the skills to perform any job very well. They may be very uneducated or lack the life skills to show up for work on a regular basis on time or dress appropriately for the job. These low-skilled workers will find it difficult to find good jobs and so may flit from job to job, or will be unwilling to take jobs that do not pay well. The result is that they will stay unemployed for long periods of time.

The second reason why the chronically unemployed may find it difficult to get a job is that they have acquired a specific set of skills or preferences while working in one industry. When the industry goes into decline and they lose their jobs, they may not have the skills or preferences to get work in growing industries where jobs are plentiful. For example, an auto worker who loses his or her job when GM has to close down some of its operations is unlikely to have the computer skills to get a job in the rapidly expanding software industry. In addition, the worker in Michigan who worked for GM may be unwilling to move to California to work in the software industry.

Unemployment that arises from lack of skills or a mismatch of skills with available jobs is a structural feature of the labor markets and is thus referred to as **structural unemployment**. Structural unemployment emerges during **sectoral shifts** in the economy, when new industries grow and old industries die off. Structural employment poses an even greater problem when emerging industries require worker skills that were uncommon in the old industries.

Wage Rigidity

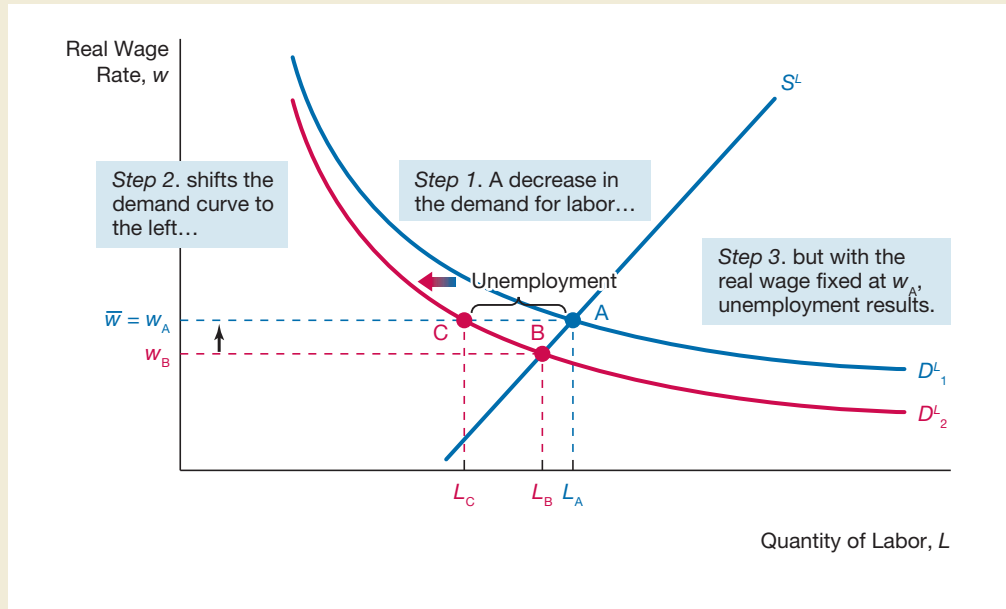
One source of structural unemployment is **wage rigidity**, the inability of wages to adjust to the level that would equate supply and demand in the labor market and thus eliminate unemployment.

We show how wage rigidity can lead to unemployment using the supply and demand model of the labor market. Suppose the supply and demand curves for labor initially intersect at point A in Figure 20.11. At point A the labor market is in equilibrium—the quantity of labor demanded equals the quantity supplied so there is no unemployment—and the real wage is w_A . Now suppose the economy contracts and output falls, so the demand curve for labor shifts in to the left from D_1^L to D_2^L . If wages were flexible, the labor market would move to point B and the real wage would fall to w_B , the **market-clearing** level, at which the quantity of labor supplied would equal the quantity demanded and unemployment would not occur. Note, however, that the quantity of labor used in production would fall from L_A to L_B .

Suppose, instead, that there is wage rigidity, so the real wage is fixed at $\bar{w} = w_A$ and cannot fall below this level. This could happen either because wages are slow to adjust and do not move in the current period, or because the government has set a floor on wages, a **minimum wage**, which restricts employers from paying workers less than this amount. (We will discuss the impact of minimum wage laws in the following Policy and Practice case.) When the real wage stays at $\bar{w} = w_A$, the quantity of labor demanded at this wage rate, L_C , will be less than the quantity supplied at this wage rate of L_A . Now workers who want to supply L_A of labor will be unable to be fully employed because firms will only be willing to hire L_C of labor. There will be unemployment equal to the distance between what firms will hire, L_C , and the quantity of labor supplied at L_A . Wage rigidity can therefore be another source of unemployment.

FIGURE 20.11**Wage Rigidity and Unemployment**

Suppose that the demand curve for labor shifts to the left from D_1^L to D_2^L , but there is wage rigidity and so the real wage is fixed at $\bar{w} = w_A$ and cannot fall below this level. The quantity of labor demanded at this wage rate, L_C , will be less than the quantity supplied at this wage rate of L_A . Now workers who want to supply L_A of labor will be unable to do so because firms will only be willing to hire L_C of labor and there will be unemployment equal to $L_A - L_C$.



Policy and Practice



Minimum Wage Laws

With the Fair Labor Standards Act of 1938, the U.S. federal government passed a minimum wage law that barred employers from paying less than a legal minimum wage to workers. Since then, the federal government has continued to pass minimum wage laws and some states have followed with their own minimum wage legislation, in some cases with higher minimums than the federal law. The federal minimum wage has typically been between 30% and 50% of the average wage in manufacturing and it is currently \$7.25 per hour. Because most hourly wages are above this minimum, the minimum wage laws therefore affect only a small percentage of U.S. workers.

For low-wage workers, however, the minimum wage may be binding and prevent wages from adjusting downward, thereby causing unemployment, as the analysis in Figure 20.11 demonstrates. Minimum wage laws can have a big impact on teenagers. Teenagers have low wages, because many do not yet have skills that would allow them to earn high wages. Many teenagers find it worthwhile to take jobs, internships, or apprenticeships at low wages to gain skills and knowledge that will help them earn much higher wages in the future. Indeed, many internships do not pay any salary at all.

The teenage unemployment rate is indeed very high, and typically averages over 15%. Many economists believe that minimum wage laws are one source of these high unemployment rates. Not all economists agree, however. Lawrence Katz of Harvard and Alan Krueger of Princeton studied the impact of minimum

wage laws on teenage employment in the fast-food industry. They concluded that there were negligible effects on teenage unemployment from minimum wages. Their conclusion has, however, been contested and there is still active debate on whether minimum wages lead to higher youth unemployment.

The political debate on minimum wage laws is often ferocious. Advocates of minimum wage laws believe that they help produce higher income for the working poor. Hence, even if they produce some unemployment, they are worthwhile because they help reduce poverty and reduce income inequality. Opponents of minimum wage laws argue that they hurt, rather than help, the working poor by keeping them out of jobs in which they could be gaining skills and earning promotions.

EFFICIENCY WAGES. There are two other sources of wage rigidity. The first is **efficiency wages**, which are wages that are above the market-clearing level where supply equals demand, but which are efficient because they induce workers to work harder and be more productive. The classic example is Henry Ford's paying \$5 per day in 1914 to his auto workers (see the box, "Henry Ford and the \$5 Payday"). Paying a high wage may cause the quantity of labor supplied to be greater than the quantity of labor demanded, leading to unemployment. However, firms may not want to lower the wage for fear of absenteeism, less work effort, and possible shoddy work, which might result, particularly if workers feel the lower wage is unfair. Efficiency wages therefore imply that wages may be downwardly rigid and not adjust to eliminate unemployment.

COLLECTIVE BARGAINING AND UNIONS. The second source of wage rigidity is unions, which can exert some monopoly power and prevent wages from adjusting to market-clearing levels. Unions set wages by **collective bargaining**, the process of bargaining for a large group of workers at one time rather than have each worker bargain

Efficiency Wages and Henry Ford

In 1914, Henry Ford shook up the auto industry by raising the wages of his workers to \$5 per day. Although \$5 per day does not sound like much by today's standard, in those days it was a princely sum—double the prevailing wage in the industry. Was Henry Ford being altruistic? Although he knew that he could hire workers for less, he argued that paying \$5 per day increased Ford Motor Company's bottom line. As he put it, "There was ... no charity involved... We wanted to pay these wages so the business would be on a lasting foundation. We were building for the future. A low-wage business is always insecure... The payment of five dollars

per day for an eight-hour day was one of the finest cost cutting moves we ever made."* In other words, deep down Henry Ford understood the value of paying efficiency wages.

Ford seemed to be proved right: absenteeism fell by 75% and reports written at the time found that labor costs did indeed fall substantially. Estimates of the productivity rise at Ford's factory were between 30% and 50%. Ford Motor Company became wildly successful and changed the landscape of corporate America.

*Daniel G. Raff and Lawrence H. Summers, "Did Henry Ford Pay Efficiency Wages?" *Journal of Labor Economics*, Vol 5 (October 1987), pp. S57–86.

individually for his or her wages. Unions can set wages above the market-clearing level and then let the firm decide on how much labor to employ. The amount of labor employed will be less than the quantity that workers will want to supply, thereby creating some unemployment.

Natural Rate of Unemployment

Our analysis of why unemployment occurs suggests that unemployment is like death and taxes: it will always be with us. Frictional and structural unemployment, as well as some types of wage rigidity—such as minimum wage laws, efficiency wages, and unions—that are structural in nature lead to an unemployment rate that is above zero even in the long run, when wages have time to adjust. The **natural rate of unemployment** is the level of the unemployment rate that remains even when wages in the labor market have fully adjusted.

As we discussed in Part 4 of this book, output and the unemployment rate fluctuate over the business cycle around the natural rate of unemployment. We refer to the difference between the actual unemployment rate and the natural rate of unemployment as the **cyclical unemployment rate**. The actual unemployment rate is the sum of two components, the natural rate and the cyclical rate:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Actual unemployment rate} &= \text{natural rate of unemployment} \\ &+ \text{cyclical rate of unemployment} \end{aligned} \quad (3)$$

The use of the term “natural” in describing the full-employment level of unemployment is somewhat unfortunate: “natural” makes it sound as if this level of unemployment is an unchanging law of nature that cannot be influenced by government policies. In fact, the natural rate of unemployment can vary over time and across countries. In the United States it appears to have been between 4% and 5% in the 1950s, around 6% in the 1980s and early 1990s, and then fell to slightly below 5% by the mid-2000s.

Changes in the Natural Rate of Unemployment

The natural rate of unemployment varies over time for several reasons.

DEMOGRAPHICS. Some types of workers are more likely to become unemployed. Young workers, for instance, tend to move to and from jobs much more frequently than do older workers. Since moving from job to job involves search and thus leads to higher frictional unemployment, a growing percentage of young workers in the labor force will raise the natural rate of unemployment. From the 1940s until the 1960s, U.S. birthrates surged, leading to the “baby boom.” Twenty years later these young workers began to enter the labor force, increasing the percentage of workers age sixteen to twenty-four in the labor force from 16.5% in 1960 to 24% in 1980. Many economists view this increase as explaining most of the increase in the natural rate of unemployment from 1960 to 1980. The percentage of young workers between the ages of sixteen and twenty-four began to decline starting in the 1980s, falling to below 14% by 2010. As a result, the natural rate of unemployment declined by a little over one-half percentage point.⁶

⁶These estimates of the effects of demographics and the additional changes in the composition of the labor on the natural rate of unemployment come from Lawrence Katz and Alan Krueger, “The High-Pressure U.S. Labor Market of the 1990s,” *Brookings Papers on Economic Activity* 1 (1999: 1–87).

COMPOSITION OF THE LABOR FORCE. Three other important changes in the composition of the labor force have affected the natural rate of unemployment: increases in the prison population, workers taking disability, and the use of temporary workers.

Strong law enforcement and steeper sentences have increased the U.S. prison population, with the percentage of the U.S. population of working age in prison rising from 0.3% to 1% currently. People who end up in prison are less likely to have the skills required by firms and are therefore subject to higher structural unemployment. Taking them off the streets and out of the labor force should therefore lower the natural rate of unemployment.

Relaxed federal rules for eligibility to obtain disability insurance since 1984 led to a rise in the percentage of the working-age population dropping out of the labor force to obtain disability insurance from 2.2% in 1984 to over 4% today. Because workers who apply for disability are likely to suffer higher structural unemployment, their removal from the labor force when they obtain disability insurance also lowers the natural rate of unemployment.

Another change in labor markets is the increasing use of temporary workers. The share of temporary workers hired by employment agencies has increased from 0.5% of total employment in 1980 to more than 2% currently. Rather than be unemployed, a worker can take temporary employment and still look for a job. Increasing opportunities for temporary employment lowers the natural rate of unemployment.

Combined together, increases in the prison population, workers who go on disability insurance, and temporary workers have had a large impact on the natural rate of unemployment, with estimates indicating that they have lowered the natural rate of unemployment since the 1980s by a little over one percentage point.⁷

SURPRISES IN PRODUCTIVITY GROWTH. As we discussed in Chapter 6, the rate of productivity growth fell after 1973 and then rose in the mid-1990s with the advent of the new economy. Did this fall and rise in productivity growth cause a similar rise and then fall in the natural rate of unemployment in the 1980s? The standard labor market supply and demand analysis indicates such a link.

Higher productivity growth leads to higher demand for labor, which raises real wages. In theory, this should not lead to higher unemployment. In reality, it sometimes does. To see why, consider what happens when changes in productivity growth aren't immediately recognized by workers. In 1973, for example, productivity fell, but it took workers a long time to spot the decline. As a result, when firms (who could see their productivity declining) offered smaller wage increases, workers felt they were being stiffed. They became dissatisfied and sought work elsewhere, increasing the natural rate of unemployment, as occurred in the 1970s and 1980s. If, on the other hand, productivity growth accelerates (as occurred in the mid-1990s) but workers don't realize this, they won't expect big wage hikes. However, the actual higher productivity growth means that firms will be willing to pay higher real wages than workers expect, and the natural rate of unemployment will fall, as it did in the late 1990s.

Misperceptions by workers about the rate of productivity growth explain the rise of the natural rate of unemployment in the 1970s and 1980s and then the fall of the natural rate of unemployment after the mid-1990s. There are concerns that the blows to the financial system and increased regulation in the aftermath of the recent financial crisis (discussed in Chapter 15) might cause the natural rate of unemployment to rise toward 6% again.

⁷See Lawrence Katz and Alan Krueger, "The High-Pressure U.S. Labor Market of the 1990s," *Brookings Papers on Economic Activity* 1 (1999: 1–87).

Although we worry about a high natural rate of unemployment in the United States, the natural rate of unemployment appears to be far higher in Europe than it is in the United States, as we discuss in the following application.

Application

Why Are European Unemployment Rates Generally Much Higher Than U.S. Unemployment Rates?

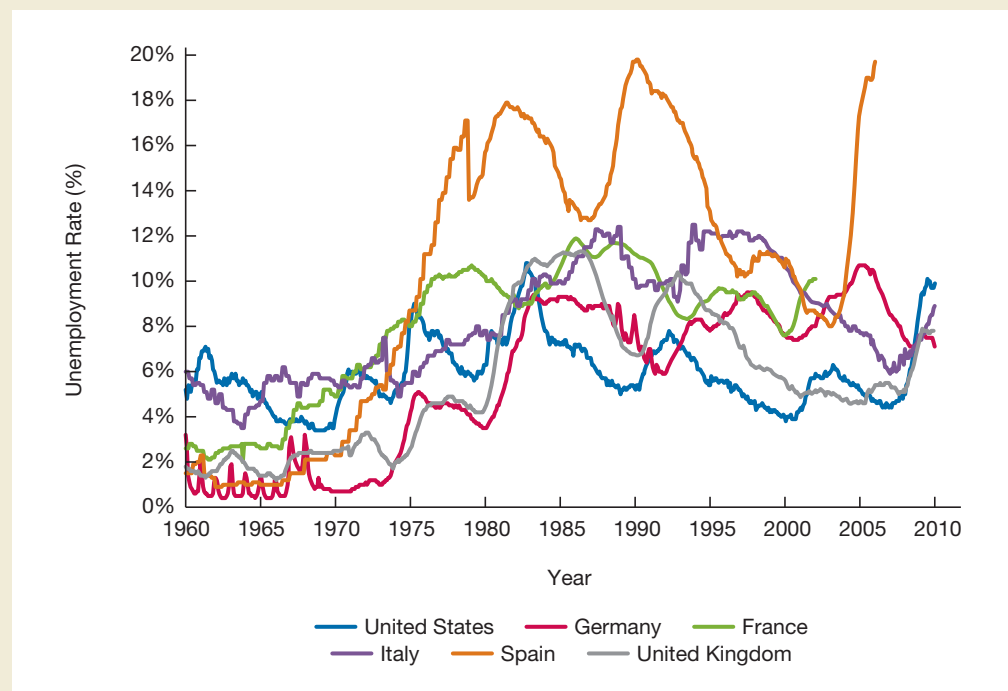
Figure 20.12 shows the unemployment rate for several of the largest European countries and the United States over the period 1960–2010. Notice that average unemployment rates in Europe were typically lower than the U.S. unemployment rate before the 1980s, but in many countries in Europe are now typically appreciably higher than the U.S. unemployment rate. Why have unemployment rates risen in these European countries and why are they generally so much higher than U.S. rates?

First, since business cycles go up and down, we can say that over a long period the cyclical rate of unemployment on average should be close to zero. Because European unemployment rates have been on average higher relative to the United States since the 1980s, this must reflect a relative rise in the natural rate of unemployment. Our analysis of what causes unemployment suggests three reasons why the natural rate of unemployment in European countries is now higher than the natural rate of unemployment in the United States.

1. *Generous European unemployment insurance benefits.* The percentage of European salaries paid out in benefits is much higher than in the United States and workers are allowed

FIGURE 20.12
Unemployment Rates in Europe Versus the United States, 1960–2010

The average unemployment rates in Europe were typically lower than in the United States before 1980, but afterward are typically higher.



Source: Eurostat, available at <http://epp.eurostat.ec.europa.eu/portal/page/portal/eurostat/home/> and Global Financial Data, available at www.globalfinancialdata.com/.

to collect benefits for a much longer period of time, often years. These generous benefits in Europe reduce the cost of search, increasing the duration of unemployment spells, and in turn boosting the natural rate of unemployment.

2. *Strong European unions.* Europe has much stronger unions than the United States, as shown by Table 20.1: less than 15% of U.S. workers are represented by unions in collective bargaining, while the percentage in many European countries such as France, Germany, Italy and Spain is above 60%. Indeed, over time unions have represented a smaller percentage of workers in the United States. Unions setting wage rates above market-clearing rates are likely to lead to a higher level of unemployment, just as is shown in Figure 20.11, where the quantity of labor demanded falls short of the quantity supplied.
3. *Strict work rules.* European governments have imposed work rules on firms that can increase unemployment. For example, it is much harder for European firms to fire workers than it is for U.S. firms. As a result, European firms may be far more reluctant to create new jobs, even in growing industries. Structural unemployment is therefore higher in Europe because workers losing jobs in a declining industry will not find enough new jobs available in growing industries.

These three reasons explain why European unemployment rates are on average generally higher than in the United States since the 1980s, but they do not explain why European unemployment rates were lower than those in the United States in the 1960s since these three conditions already existed then, and why European unemployment rates rose so much starting in the 1980s. Some economists have speculated that the large rise in the natural rate of unemployment resulted from the shocks in the 1980s combined with the features of the European labor markets discussed previously.

Starting in the 1980s, the demand for unskilled workers decreased relative to the demand for skilled ones because of new technologies associated with the development of cheap, high-speed computers. In the United States, this did not lead to higher unemployment, but as we have seen, it has led to a fall in wages of unskilled workers relative to skilled workers (the flip side of the higher return to education discussed earlier). The rigidities in the labor market induced by higher unemployment insurance benefits, greater union power, and restrictive work rules then meant that unskilled workers' wages could not adjust downward in Europe as in the United States, and so the natural rate of unemployment increased dramatically.

TABLE 20.1

Percent of Workers Represented by Unions in Different Countries

Countries	Percent (%)
France	95
Germany	63
Italy	80
Spain	80
United Kingdom	35
United States	13

Source: Data for 2007, except for Spain which is 2006. OECD available at www.oecd.org/dataoecd/36/9/43116624.pdf, Table 1.

SUMMARY

1. The employment-to-population ratio has had an upward trend over the last fifty years because women have increased their labor force participation. Both the employment ratio and the unemployment rate are cyclical, with the employment ratio rising during economic expansions and falling during recessions, while the unemployment rate does the reverse. Although real wages have risen for the average worker, workers with more education have experienced much higher real-wage growth than workers with less education, leading to a growing college wage premium and higher income inequality.
2. The demand curve for labor is downward sloping, while the supply curve is upward sloping. Equilibrium in the labor market occurs where the quantity of labor demanded equals the quantity of labor supplied.
3. A rise in output, either because of a positive supply or demand shock to production, causes an increase in the demand for labor and a rightward shift of the demand curve. The rightward shift of the demand curve then leads to higher real wages and higher employment. Anything that increases the supply of labor and shifts the labor supply curve out to the right will cause real wages to fall and employment to rise.
4. The labor market is very dynamic, with large flows in and out of unemployment. Most workers experience only short durations of unemployment spells, but the chronically unemployed, those who are unemployed for over six months, account for a large fraction of unemployment.
5. Unemployment is due to frictional unemployment, structural unemployment, and wage rigidities. Frictional unemployment occurs because matching up workers with suitable jobs through a search process takes time. Structural unemployment occurs because the chronically unemployed may not have the skills to get jobs in growing industries where jobs are plentiful. Wage rigidities lead to unemployment because they prevent wages from going to market-clearing levels, so that the quantity demanded of labor remains below what workers are willing to supply. Wage rigidities occur because wages are slow to adjust, or because minimum wage laws, efficiency wages, or labor unions prevent wages from being adjusted downward.
6. The natural rate of unemployment is the level of the unemployment rate that remains when the labor market has had time to fully adjust and it does vary over time. The actual unemployment rate is the natural rate of unemployment plus the cyclical rate of unemployment.

KEY TERMS

chronically unemployed, p. 527
 collective bargaining, p. 531
 college wage premium, p. 523
 cyclical unemployment rate,
 p. 532
 discouraged workers, p. 525
 efficiency wages, p. 531
 employment ratio, p. 514

employment-to-population ratio,
 p. 514
 frictional unemployment, p. 527
 globalization, p. 525
 labor force participation, p. 522
 leisure, p. 518
 market-clearing, p. 529
 minimum wage, p. 529

natural rate of unemployment,
 p. 532
 sectoral shifts, p. 529
 skill-biased technical change,
 p. 524
 structural unemployment, p. 529
 unemployment insurance, p. 528
 unemployment spells, p. 527
 wage rigidity, p. 529

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Developments in the U.S. Labor Market

1. What is the employment ratio? What notable trends in this ratio have occurred over the past fifty years?

Response of Employment and Wages to Changes in Labor Demand and Labor Supply

4. Identify three things that can change labor demand or supply and reduce employment. How would each of these affect real wages?

Causes of Unemployment

6. What is frictional unemployment? Why can it be beneficial for workers, firms, and the economy?
7. Why does structural unemployment occur?

Natural Rate of Unemployment

9. What is the natural rate of unemployment? What has caused the natural rate to change over time?

Supply and Demand in the Labor Market

2. Why is the quantity of labor demanded inversely related to the real wage rate?
3. Is the quantity of labor supplied inversely related to the real wage rate? Why?

Dynamics of Unemployment

5. What are the three categories of employment status? What movement between categories results from the existence of discouraged workers?

8. Why does real wage rigidity contribute to unemployment? What are its causes?

PROBLEMS

All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Supply and Demand in the Labor Market

1. Assume the marginal product of labor is $MPL = 0.65 \times \$13/L$, where output is measured in trillions and L is the number of workers (in millions).
 - a) Draw the MPL curve.
 - b) Find the quantity of workers demanded if the real wage is \$50,000 per worker.
2. Anthony currently earns \$25 an hour and works forty hours a week. When his boss offers to pay him \$28 per hour, Anthony decides to accept the offer, but decides to keep working forty hours. What is the effect of Anthony's decision on the labor supply curve?

Response of Employment and Wages to Changes in Labor Demand and Labor Supply

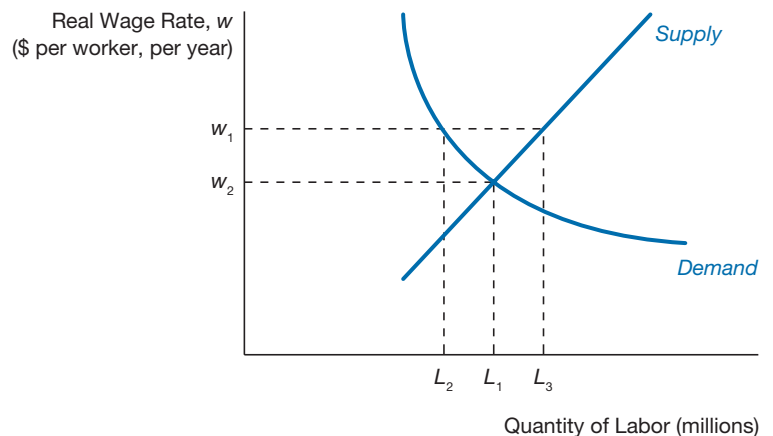
3. Using the graphic representation of the labor market, analyze the effect of technological advances that have increased workers' productivity in the last few decades (e.g., the Internet).
 4. Using a graph, analyze the effect of a recession and an increase in day care costs on the real wage and employment.
- What would be the effect on the real wage and employment if the supply curve does not shift?

Dynamics of Unemployment

5. For each of the following situations, explain how the labor force and the unemployment rate change.
 - a) An individual quits his or her job and does not look for a job anymore.
 - b) An individual that was not in the labor force now decides to look for a job.
6. During recessions it becomes increasingly difficult to find a job. How do you think the number of "discouraged workers" would be affected by a recession?

Causes of Unemployment

7. Discuss the effects of the Internet on frictional unemployment. How do you think websites that allow employees to search for job opportunities more efficiently impact frictional unemployment?
8. Suppose that a country is rapidly making the transition from an agricultural based economy to an economy in which most of GDP comes from the production of manufactures.
 - a) How do you think structural unemployment will be affected?
 - b) Can you think of any measure the government might undertake to affect structural unemployment in this case?
9. The following graph represents the labor market of a given country. Assuming the prevailing real wage is w_1 ,
 - a) measure unemployment using the graph.
 - b) list three reasons that might prevent this market from clearing.



Natural Rate of Unemployment

10. Natural rates of unemployment are higher in France than in the United States. Suppose you are a recent college graduate and that you are eager to find a job. Which country's labor market seems more promising to you? Can you identify the trade-off between a higher natural rate of unemployment and a more dynamic labor market?



myeconlab

MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.

Part Eight

Modern Business Cycle Analysis and Macroeconomic Policy

Chapter 21

The Role of Expectations in Macroeconomic Policy

Chapter 22

Modern Business Cycle Theory

Epilogue

Policy and Practice: Where Do Macroeconomists
Agree and Disagree?



Part Eight Modern Business Cycle Analysis and Macroeconomic Policy

We end the book by discussing the latest developments in business cycle theory that have arisen from a greater focus on microeconomic foundations of macroeconomic analysis. Chapter 21 describes the most widely used theory of expectations formation, *rational expectations*, and uses it to discuss how expectations influence macroeconomic policy. Chapter 22 describes the two competing business cycle theories that were developed in the wake of rational expectations theory: the *real business cycle model*, a classical model in which prices and wages are assumed to be flexible, and the *new Keynesian model*, which is Keynesian because it assumes that wages and prices are sticky. Chapter 22 also describes recent efforts to bring *financial frictions*, impairments to the efficient functioning of financial markets, into macroeconomic models. The epilogue outlines how these new approaches to business cycle theory and recent research on what drives economic development have affected where macroeconomists agree and disagree about how macroeconomic policy should be conducted.

We will examine applications in each chapter to make the critical connection between theory and real-world practice:

- “The Consumption Function”
- “A Tale of Three Oil Shocks”
- “Financial Frictions and the 2007–2009 Recession”

In keeping with our focus on key policy issues and the techniques policy makers use in practice, we will also analyze the following specific examples in Policy and Practice cases:

- “The Political Business Cycle and Richard Nixon”
- “The Demise of Monetary Targeting in Switzerland”
- “Will the Federal Reserve Adopt Inflation Targeting?”
- “The Appointment of Paul Volcker, Anti-Inflation Hawk”
- “Management of Expectations and Nonconventional Monetary Policy”



21

The Role of Expectations in Macroeconomic Policy

Preview

When a supply shock sent oil prices surging higher during the 1970s, the inflation rate jumped to double-digit percentages. Yet three decades later, in 2008, a similar supply shock that sent a barrel of crude oil surging to \$140 led to a far more moderate increase in inflation. What made these episodes so different?

One crucial difference was public expectations about the effectiveness of monetary policy. In the 1970s, the Federal Reserve lacked credibility as an inflation fighter. In the 2000s, the central bank had earned that credibility, which helped keep inflation expectations much better grounded.

In this chapter, we look at how public expectations of the economy are formed and how they affect the economy. Over the last thirty years, the role of public expectations has moved to the front and center of thinking about how the economy works. We will first consider *rational expectations*, the most widely used theory to describe the formation of business and consumer expectations. After describing its roots in microeconomic theory, we will explore how this theoretical breakthrough has shaped current policy-making models and debates.

Rational Expectations and Policy Making

Before we outline the theory of *rational expectations*, we describe an earlier theory, *adaptive expectations*. Its shortcomings opened the door to a more robust theory more solidly grounded on microeconomic principles.

Adaptive Expectations

In the 1950s and 1960s, economists took the rather simplistic view that the public would form expectations from past experience only. If inflation had been rising at 5% a year for many years, they reasoned, the public would expect prices to keep rising by 5%. As times changed, the theory went, the public would adapt its expectations by taking an average of past events. For example, if inflation rose to a steady rate of 10%, expectations of future inflation would rise slowly toward 10%. In the first year, expected inflation might rise only to 6%; in the second year, to 7%; and so on. This view of expectation formation, called *adaptive expectations* (introduced in Chapter 11), suggests that changes in expectations will occur slowly over time as past data change.¹

The theory of adaptive expectations, although intuitive, does not build on solid microeconomic foundations. It assumes that expectations are formed mechanically by averaging the past, and that people will ignore any new information about the future. This is unrealistic. Public expectations of inflation, for example, will almost surely be influenced by predictions of *future* monetary policy as well as by current and past monetary policy. In addition, people often change their expectations quickly in light of new information and so will not rely solely on past data to form their expectations.

Rational Expectations

To meet these objections to adaptive expectations, John Muth, then of Carnegie-Mellon University, developed an alternative theory of expectations based on optimizing behavior, called **rational expectations**, which can be stated as follows:² ***expectations will be identical to optimal forecasts (the best guess of the future) using all available information.***

To illustrate what we mean, consider the driving commute of Sammy the student. In good weather, Sammy makes the trip between home and school in twenty minutes, on average. Depending on traffic, the trip could take as little as fifteen minutes or as much as twenty-five minutes. In a rainstorm, however, Sammy's best guess for his commute time—his **optimal forecast**—is twenty-five minutes. Based on the rational expectations theory, if Sammy's best guess for the future, given all he knows about the weather (and any other relevant information), is for a twenty-five-minute commute, then he should expect the commute to take twenty-five minutes.

If Sammy had adaptive expectations, and there was sunny weather three days in a row, looking at the past might lead him to expect another beautiful day and he would

¹More formally, adaptive expectations—say of inflation—are written as a weighted average of past inflation rates:

$$\pi_t^e = (1 - \lambda) \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \lambda^j \pi_{t-j}$$

where,

π_t^e = adaptive expectation of inflation at time t

π_{t-j} = inflation at time $t - j$

λ = a constant between 0 and 1

²John Muth, "Rational Expectations and the Theory of Price Movements," *Econometrica* 29 (1961): 315–335.

expect it to take twenty minutes to get to school. However, if he listened to the weather report, which said it would be raining today, then the optimal forecast of his drive time would be twenty-five minutes, not twenty. His rational expectation of his driving time should be twenty-five minutes, while adaptive expectations would give him a poor forecast of the driving time of twenty minutes.

Of course, even if Sammy has rational expectations, his expectation of the driving time is bound to be imperfect. On one rainy day, the commute might take thirty minutes because of a random car accident, and on another it might take twenty minutes. But is the expectation of twenty-five minutes irrational? No. In both cases, the forecast is off by five minutes. However, the forecast does not have to be perfectly accurate to be rational—it need only be the best possible given the available information. That is, it has to be correct *on average*, and the twenty-five-minute expectation meets this requirement. As there is bound to be some randomness to events, an optimal forecast will never be completely accurate.

The example makes the following important point about rational expectations: ***even though a rational expectation equals the optimal forecast using all available information, a prediction based on it will not always be perfectly accurate.***

Microeconomic Rationale Behind the Theory

Put simply, people match their expectations to their best possible guess of the future because it is costly for them not to do so. Sammy the student has a strong incentive to be accurate in his expectations of the time it takes to drive to class. If his prediction underestimates his driving time, he may arrive late to class and be reprimanded, which may lower his grade. If his prediction overestimates, he will end up, on average, wasting time before class and will have given up leisure time unnecessarily. Accurate expectations are desirable, and there are strong incentives for making them equal to optimal forecasts by using all available information.

The same principle applies to businesses. Suppose that a car maker such as Ford knows that interest-rate movements affect the sales of cars. If Ford makes poor forecasts of interest rates, it will produce either too many cars or too few and thus earn less profit. Ford has strong incentives to acquire and apply all available information when forecasting interest rates.

Although it is desirable for households and businesses to have rational expectations, there is some controversy over whether households and businesses are completely rational in their expectations. After all, gathering and processing information to obtain optimal forecasts takes time and energy, which households and businesses may not have. Hence, although macroeconomic analysis assumes rational expectations, there is active research on alternative ways of describing how expectations are formed.³

Rational Expectations Theory and Macroeconomic Analysis

There are several important implications of rational expectations for macroeconomic analysis.

1. ***Expectations that are rational use all available information, which includes any information about government policies, such as changes in monetary or fiscal policy.*** If households and businesses

³For a discussion on the evidence for and against rational expectations in financial markets, see the appendix to Chapter 7 on the companion website to Frederic S. Mishkin, *The Economics of Money, Banking and Financial Markets*, 9th edition (Boston: Pearson Addison-Wesley, 2010), http://wps.aw.com/aw_mishkin_econmbfm_9/.

have information that government policy is likely to change in the future, their expectations will take this information into account. For example, if consumers think that a personal tax cut is imminent, they may start to spend more today, even before the tax cut is enacted.

2. **Only new information causes expectations to change.** If a piece of information is already anticipated, then when it is announced, it will have no effect on rational expectations. This anticipated information has already been incorporated into these expectations. Only announcements of unanticipated information cause expectations to change. If a personal tax cut had already been anticipated, then news of its implementation will have no effect on expectations. However, if new information emerges to suggest that an even larger tax cut is likely, expectations of disposable income would rise.
3. **If there is a change in the way a variable moves, the way in which expectations of this variable are formed will change as well.** To illustrate, suppose the Fed's policy interest rate, the federal funds rate, is set at an abnormally high level. How would we expect rates to move in the future? If the Fed's stated policy is to always restore its policy interest rate to "normal" levels, then an optimal forecast would assume that rates will eventually decline. Thus, a rational expectation would be for rates to fall in the future. But what if the Fed changes its stated policy, so that when the policy rate is high, it stays high? In this case, the optimal forecast of the future policy rate, and hence the rational expectation, is that rates will stay high. The change in the way the interest rate variable moves has therefore led to a change in the way that expectations of future policy rates are formed. We can generalize the rational expectations analysis here to expectations of any variable.

Rational Expectations Revolution

During the 1970s, the widespread adoption of the rational expectations theory into macroeconomic models reshaped how macroeconomists think. What is now called the **rational expectations revolution** was led by economists such as Robert Lucas of the University of Chicago, Thomas Sargent formerly of the University of Minnesota and now at New York University, Robert Barro of Harvard University, and Bennet McCallum of Carnegie-Mellon University. We now look at how the rational expectations revolution affected macroeconomic thinking in the rest of this chapter.

Lucas Critique of Policy Evaluation

Economists have long used **macroeconometric models** to forecast economic activity and to evaluate the potential effects of policy options. In essence, the models are collections of equations that describe statistical relationships among many economic variables. Economists can feed data into such models, which then churn out a forecast or prediction.

In his famous paper "Econometric Policy Evaluation: A Critique," Robert Lucas spurred the rational expectations revolution by presenting a devastating argument against the use of macroeconometric models used at the time for evaluating policy.⁴

⁴Carnegie-Rochester Conference Series on Public Policy 1 (1976): 19–46.

Econometric Policy Evaluation

To understand Lucas's argument, we must first understand how econometric policy evaluation is done. Say for example that the Federal Reserve wants to evaluate the potential effects of changes in the federal funds rate from the existing level of 5%. Using conventional methods, the Fed economists would feed different fed funds rate options—say 4% and 6%—into a computer version of the model. The model would then predict how unemployment and inflation would change under the different scenarios. Then, the policy makers would select the policy with the most desirable outcomes.

Relying on rational expectations theory, Lucas identified faulty reasoning in this approach if the model does not incorporate rational expectations, as was true for macroeconomic models used by policy makers at the time: when policies change, public expectations will shift as well. For example, if the Fed raises the federal funds rate to 6%, this action might change the way the public forms expectations about where interest rates will be in the future. Those changing expectations, as we've seen, can have a real effect on economic behavior and outcomes. Yet econometric models that do not incorporate rational expectations ignore any effects of changing expectations, and thus are unreliable for evaluating policy options.

Application

The Consumption Function

Let's now apply Lucas's argument to a concrete example involving one influential macroeconomic model: the consumption function. As a review from Chapter 18, the permanent income hypothesis indicates that consumption is related to permanent income, which is a weighted average of future expected disposable income.

Suppose that disposable income has never before deviated far from its trend rate of growth. That is, if income has grown much faster or slower than normal in one year, it has always tended to return to normal growth rates in future years. Rational expectations theory, then, suggests that any deviation from a trend would be only temporary, and an upward shock would only have a minimal effect on permanent income and hence on consumption. Looking only at past data, economists using the consumption function would predict only a weak effect on consumption from upward shocks to disposable income.

Now suppose that policy makers want to evaluate the effects of a permanent personal income tax cut. The consumption function estimated on past data will indicate that the tax cut will only have a small effect on consumption from the resulting rise in disposable income. But if policy makers make clear that the tax cut is permanent, rational expectations theory indicates that households will no longer expect the resulting rise in disposable income to be temporary. Instead, when the income tax cut goes into effect, they will expect disposable income to rise permanently, and will have a large spending response, instead of the small one predicted by the estimated consumption function. Evaluating the likely outcome of the change in tax policy with a macroeconomic model could thus be highly misleading.

The consumption function application demonstrates how the effects of a particular policy depend critically on the public's expectations about the policy. If the public expects the tax cut to be merely temporary, the spending response will be small. If, however, the public

expects the tax cut to be permanent, the response of spending will be far greater. **The Lucas critique points out not only that policy evaluation with conventional econometric models may be misleading, but also that the public's expectations about a policy will influence the response to that policy.**



Policy Conduct: Rules or Discretion?

The Lucas critique exposed the need for new policy models that reflected the insights of rational expectations theory. Here, we explore the implications of the critique on a long-running debate among economists: whether monetary policy makers should have the flexibility to adapt their policy to a changing situation, or whether they should adopt **rules**, binding plans that specify how policy will respond (or not respond) to particular data such as unemployment and inflation.

Discretion and the Time-Inconsistency Problem

Policy makers operate with **discretion** when they make no commitment to future actions, but instead make what they believe in that moment to be the right policy decision for the situation. Empowering policy makers to shape policy on-the-fly introduces complexities. The *time-inconsistency problem*, first outlined in research by Nobel Prize winners Finn Kydland (University of California, Santa Barbara) and Edward Prescott (Arizona State University), and also by Guillermo Calvo of Columbia University, reveals the potential limitations of discretionary policy.⁵ The **time-inconsistency problem** is the tendency to deviate from good long-run plans when making short-run decisions, and it is something we deal with continually in everyday life. We often have a plan that we know will produce a good outcome in the long run, but when tomorrow comes, we just can't help ourselves and we renege on our plan because doing so has short-run gains. For example, we make a New Year's resolution to go on a diet, but soon thereafter we can't resist having one more bite of that Snickers bar—and then another bite, and then another bite—and soon the weight begins to pile back on. In other words, we find ourselves unable to consistently follow a good plan over time; the good plan is said to be time-inconsistent and will soon be abandoned.

Policy makers are always tempted to pursue a policy that is more expansionary than firms or people expect because such a policy would boost economic output (or lower unemployment) in the short run. The best policy, however, is *not* to pursue expansionary policy, because decisions about wages and prices reflect workers' and firms' expectations about policy (an implication of the rational expectations revolution). When workers and firms see a central bank, for example, pursuing discretionary expansionary policy, they will recognize that this is likely to lead to higher inflation in the

⁵Finn Kydland and Edward Prescott, "Rules Rather Than Discretion: The Inconsistency of Optimal Plans," *Journal of Political Economy* 85 (1977): 473–491; and Guillermo Calvo, "On the Time Consistency of Optimal Policy in the Monetary Economy," *Econometrica* 46 (November 1978): 1411–1428. The classic application to monetary policy is found in Robert J. Barro and David Gordon, "A Positive Theory of Monetary Policy in a Natural Rate Model," *Journal of Political Economy* 91 (August 1983): 589–610.

future. They will therefore raise their expectations about inflation, driving wages and prices up. The rise in wages and prices will lead to higher inflation, but may not result in higher output on average.

A policy will have better inflation performance in the long run if it does not try to surprise people with an unexpectedly expansionary policy, but instead keeps inflation under control. However, even if a policy maker recognizes that discretionary policy will lead to a poor outcome (high inflation with little gain in output), he or she still may not be able to pursue the better policy of inflation control, because politicians are likely to apply pressure on a policymaker to try to boost output in the short run with overly expansionary monetary policy.

How do we deal with the time-inconsistency problem? Good answers come from how-to books on parenting. Parents understand that they can spoil a child by always giving into the child's demands. Nevertheless, when a child throws a tantrum, especially in public, many parents give the child whatever he or she wants just to keep the child quiet. Because parents don't stick to their "do-not-give-in" plan, the child comes to expect that bad behavior will be rewarded, and throws tantrums over and over again. Parenting books suggest a solution to the time-inconsistency problem (although they don't call it that): set behavior rules for children, and then stick to them.

Types of Rules

In contrast to discretion, rules are essentially automatic. One famous type of rule, advocated by monetarists such as Milton Friedman, is the **constant-money-growth-rate rule**, in which the money supply is kept growing at a constant rate regardless of the state of the economy. Other monetarists such as Bennett McCallum and Alan Meltzer have proposed variants of this rule that allow the rate of money supply growth to be adjusted for shifts in velocity, which has often been found to be unstable in the short run. Rules of this type are nonactivist because they do not react to economic activity. Monetarists advocate rules of this type because they believe that money is the sole source of fluctuations in aggregate demand and because they believe that long and variable lags in the effects of monetary policy will lead to greater volatility in economic activity and inflation if policy actively responds to unemployment (as discussed in Chapter 13).

Activist rules, in contrast, specify that monetary policy should react to the level of output as well as to inflation. The most famous rule of this type is the *Taylor rule* that we discussed in Chapter 13. It specifies that the Fed should set its federal funds rate target by a formula that considers both the output gap ($Y - Y^P$) and the inflation gap ($\pi - \pi^T$).

The Case for Rules

As our discussion of the time-inconsistency problem suggests, discretionary monetary policy can lead to poor economic outcomes. If monetary policy makers operate with discretion, they will be tempted to pursue overly expansionary monetary policies to boost employment in the short run but generate higher inflation (and no higher employment) in the long run. A commitment to a policy rule like the Taylor rule or the constant-money-growth-rate rule solves the time-inconsistency problem because policy makers have to follow a set plan that does not allow them to exercise discretion and try to exploit the short-run tradeoff between inflation and employment. By binding their hands with a policy rule, policy makers can achieve desirable long-run outcomes.

Another argument for rules is that policy makers and politicians cannot be trusted. Milton Friedman and Anna Schwartz's monumental work, *A Monetary History of the United States*,⁶ documents numerous instances in which the Federal Reserve made serious policy errors, with the worst occurring during the Great Depression, when the Fed just stood by and let the banking system and the economy collapse (Chapters 5 and 15 discuss the Fed's actions during the Great Depression). Politicians are also not to be trusted because they have strong incentives to pursue policies that help them win the next election. They are therefore more likely to focus on increasing employment in the short run without worrying that their actions might lead to higher inflation further down the road. Their advocacy for expansionary policies can then lead to the so-called **political business cycle**, discussed in the following Policy and Practice case, in which fiscal and monetary policy is expansionary right before elections, with higher inflation following.

Policy and Practice



The Political Business Cycle and Richard Nixon

You might know that Richard Nixon and his aides took some extraordinary actions to ensure a landslide victory in the 1972 presidential election, such as breaking into the offices of political rivals at the Watergate Hotel. Less well-known are similar actions on the economic front ahead of the election. The Nixon administration imposed wage and price controls on the economy, which temporarily lowered the inflation rate before the election. After the election, those same moves helped lead to a surge in inflation. Nixon also pursued expansionary fiscal policy by cutting taxes. And it has been rumored that the Chairman of the Federal Reserve, Arthur Burns, succumbed to direct pressure from Nixon to maintain low interest rates through Election Day. The aftermath was ugly. The economy overheated and inflation rose to over 10% by the late 1970s, which was abetted by the negative supply shocks during that period (see Chapter 12).

The Nixon episode led economists and political scientists to theorize that politicians would take steps to make themselves look good during election years. Specifically, the theory went, they would take steps to stimulate the economy before the election, leading to a boom and low unemployment that would increase their electoral chances. Unfortunately, the result of these actions would be higher inflation down the road, which then would require contractionary policies to get inflation under control later, with a resulting recession in the future. The resulting ups and downs of the economy would then be the result of politics and so could be characterized as a political business cycle. Although the Nixon episode provided support for the existence of a political business cycle, research has not come to a definitive answer as to whether this phenomenon is a general one.⁷

⁶Milton Friedman and Anna Jacobson Schwartz, *A Monetary History of the United States, 1867–1960* (Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1963).

⁷The paper that launched research on the political business cycle was William Nordhaus, "The Political Business Cycle," *Review of Economic Studies* 42 (1975): 169–190.

The Case for Discretion

Although policy rules have important advantages, they do have serious drawbacks. First, rules can be too rigid because they cannot foresee every contingency. For example, almost no one could have predicted that problems in one small part of the financial system, sub-prime mortgage lending, could have led to the worst financial crisis in over seventy years, with such devastating effects on the economy. The unprecedented steps that the Federal Reserve took during this crisis to prevent it from causing a depression (described in Chapter 15) could not have been written into a policy rule ahead of time. Being able to act flexibly using discretion can thus be key to a successful monetary policy.

The second problem with policy rules is that they do not easily incorporate the use of judgment. Monetary policy is as much an art as a science. Monetary policymakers need to look at a wide range of information in order to decide on the best course for monetary policy and some of this information is not easily quantifiable. Judgment is thus an essential element of good monetary policy and it is very hard to write it into a rule. Only with discretion can monetary policy bring judgment to bear.

Third, no one really knows what the true model of the economy is and so any policy rule that is based on a particular model will prove to be wrong if the model is not correct. Discretion avoids the straightjacket that would lock in the wrong policy if the model that was used to derive the policy rule proved to be incorrect.

Fourth, even if the model were correct, structural changes in the economy would lead to changes in the coefficients of the model. The Lucas critique which points out that changes in policies can change the coefficients in macroeconomic models is just one example. Another is that the relationship of monetary aggregates, like M1 and M2, to aggregate spending broke down in the 1980s as a result of financial innovation. Following a rule based on a constant growth rate of one of these aggregates would have produced bad outcomes. Indeed, this is what happened in the case of Switzerland in the late 1980s and early 1990s, when adherence to a rule using the growth rate of monetary aggregates led to a surge in inflation (discussed in the following Policy and Practice case). Discretion enables policy makers to change policy settings when an economy undergoes structural changes.

Policy and Practice



The Demise of Monetary Targeting in Switzerland

In 1975 the Swiss National Bank (Switzerland's central bank) adopted monetary targeting in which it announced a growth rate target for the monetary aggregate M1. From 1980 on, the Swiss switched their growth rate target to an even narrower monetary aggregate, the monetary base. Although monetary targeting was quite successful in Switzerland for many years, it ran into serious problems with the introduction of a new interbank payment system, the Swiss Interbank Clearing (SIC), and a wide-ranging revision of the commercial banks' liquidity requirements in 1988. These structural changes caused a severe drop in banks' desired holdings of deposits at the Swiss National Bank, which were the major component of the monetary base. A smaller amount of the monetary base was now needed relative to aggregate spending, altering the relationship between the two, and so the 2% target

growth rate for the monetary base was far too expansionary. Inflation subsequently rose to over 5%, well above other European countries.

High inflation rates horrified the Swiss, who have always prided themselves on maintaining a low-inflation environment even when the rest of Europe did not. These problems with monetary targeting led the Swiss to abandon it in the 1990s and adopt a much more flexible framework for the conduct of monetary policy.⁸

Constrained Discretion

The distinction between rules and discretion has strongly influenced academic debates about monetary policy for many decades. But the distinction may be too stark. As we have seen, both rules and discretion are subject to problems, and so the dichotomy between rules and discretion may be too simple to capture the realities that macroeconomic policy makers face. Discretion can be a matter of degree. Discretion can be a relatively undisciplined approach that leads to policies that change with the personal views of policy makers or with the direction of political winds. Or it might operate within a more clearly articulated framework, in which the general objectives and tactics of the policy makers—although not their specific actions—are committed to in advance. Ben Bernanke, now chairman of the Federal Reserve, along with the author of this textbook, came up with a name for this type of framework, **constrained discretion**.⁹ Constrained discretion imposes a conceptual structure and inherent discipline on policy makers, but without eliminating all flexibility. It combines some of the advantages ascribed to rules with those ascribed to discretion.

The Role of Credibility and a Nominal Anchor

An important way to constrain discretion is by committing to a **nominal anchor**, a nominal variable—such as the inflation rate, the money supply, or an exchange rate—that ties down the price level or inflation to achieve price stability. For example, if a central bank has an explicit target for the inflation rate, say 2%, and takes steps to achieve this target, then the inflation target becomes a nominal anchor. Alternatively, a government could commit to a fixed exchange rate between its currency and a sound currency like the dollar and use this as its nominal anchor. If the commitment to a nominal anchor has **credibility**, that is, it is believed by the public, it has important benefits.

Benefits of a Credible Nominal Anchor

First, a credible nominal anchor has elements of a behavior rule. Just as rules help to prevent the time-inconsistency problem in parenting by helping adults to resist pursuing the discretionary policy of giving in, a nominal anchor can help overcome the time-inconsistency problem by providing an expected constraint on discretionary policy. For

⁸For a further discussion of monetary targeting in Switzerland, see Chapter 4 of Ben S. Bernanke, Thomas Laubach, Frederic S. Mishkin, and Adam S. Posen *Inflation Targeting: Lessons from the International Experience* (Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1999).

⁹See Ben S. Bernanke and Frederic S. Mishkin, “Inflation Targeting: A New Framework for Monetary Policy?” *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 11 (Spring 1997): 97–116.

example, if monetary policy makers commit to a nominal anchor of achieving a specific inflation objective, say a 2% inflation rate, then they know that they will be subject to public scrutiny and criticism if they miss this objective or pursue policies that are clearly inconsistent with this objective, such as an interest rate target that is too low. In order to avoid embarrassment and possible punishment, they will be less tempted to pursue overly expansionary, discretionary policies in the short run that will be inconsistent with their commitment to the nominal anchor.

Second, a credible commitment to a nominal anchor will help to anchor inflation expectations, which leads to smaller fluctuations in inflation. It thus contributes to price stability, but also helps stabilize aggregate output. Credibility of a commitment to a nominal anchor is therefore a critical element in enabling monetary policy to achieve both of its objectives, price stability and stabilizing economic activity. In other words, credibility of a nominal anchor helps make monetary policy more efficient.

We will use the aggregate demand and supply framework to show why a credible nominal anchor helps produce this desirable outcome. First we will look at the effectiveness of stabilization policy when it is responding to an aggregate demand shock, and then we do the same when it is responding to an aggregate supply shock.

Credibility and Aggregate Demand Shocks

We now examine the importance of credibility in the short run when there are positive and negative demand shocks.

POSITIVE AGGREGATE DEMAND SHOCK. Let's first look at what happens in the short run when there is a positive aggregate demand shock. For example, suppose businesses suddenly get new information that makes them more optimistic about the future, and so they increase their investment spending. As a result of this positive demand shock, in panel (a) of Figure 21.1 the aggregate demand curve shifts to the right from AD_1 to AD_2 , moving the economy from point 1 to point 2. Aggregate output rises to Y_2 and inflation rises above the inflation target of π^T to π_2 . As we saw in Chapter 13, the appropriate response to stabilize inflation and economic activity is to tighten monetary policy and shift the short-run aggregate demand curve back down to AD_1 in order to move the economy back to point 1. However, because of the long lags until monetary policy has an effect on aggregate demand, it will take some time before the short-run aggregate demand curve shifts back to AD_1 .

Now let's look at what happens to the short-run aggregate supply curve. Recall from Chapter 11 that the short-run aggregate supply curve is as follows:

$$\pi = \pi^e + \gamma(Y - Y^P) + \rho \quad (1)$$

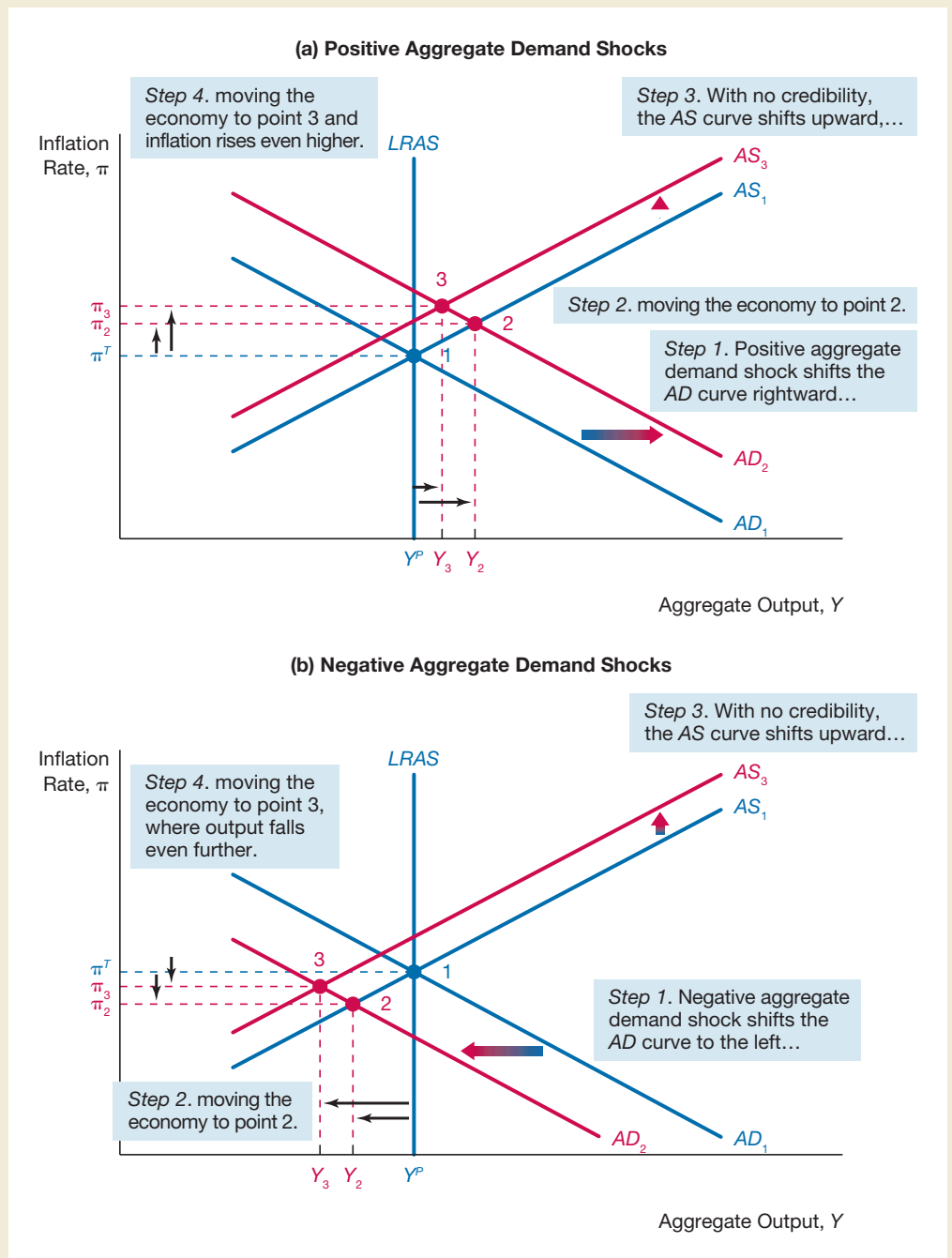
Inflation = Expected Inflation + $\gamma \times$ Output Gap + Price Shock

If the commitment to the nominal anchor is credible, then the public's expected inflation π^e will remain unchanged and the short-run aggregate supply curve will remain at AS_1 . Inflation will therefore not go higher than π_2 , and over time as the short-run aggregate demand curve shifts back down to AD_1 inflation will fall back down to the inflation target of π^T .

But what if monetary policy is not credible? The public would worry that the monetary authorities are willing to accept a higher inflation rate than π^T and are not willing to

FIGURE 21.1**Credibility and Aggregate Demand Shocks**

In panel (a), the positive aggregate demand shock shifts the aggregate demand curve to the right from AD_1 to AD_2 , moving the economy from point 1 to point 2. If monetary policy is not credible, expected inflation will rise and so the short-run aggregate supply curve will rise and shift to the left to AS_3 , sending the economy to point 3, where inflation has risen further to π_3 . In panel (b) the negative aggregate demand shock shifts the aggregate demand curve left from AD_1 to AD_2 , and the economy moves to point 2. If monetary policy is not credible, inflation expectations might rise and the short-run aggregate supply curve will rise and shift to the left to AS_3 , sending the economy to point 3, where aggregate output has fallen even further to Y_3 .



drive the short-run aggregate demand curve back to AD_1 quickly. In this case, the weak credibility of the monetary authorities will cause expected inflation π^e to rise and so the short-run aggregate supply curve will rise, shifting from AS_1 to AS_3 and sending the economy to point 3 in the short run, where inflation has risen further to π_3 . Even if the monetary authorities tighten monetary policy and return the aggregate demand curve to AD_1 , the damage is done: inflation has risen more than it would have if the central bank had

credibility. Our aggregate demand and supply analysis thus yields the following conclusion: ***monetary policy credibility has the benefit of stabilizing inflation in the short run when faced with positive demand shocks.***

NEGATIVE DEMAND SHOCK. Panel (b) of Figure 21.1 illustrates a negative demand shock. For example, suppose consumer confidence dips and consumer spending declines. The aggregate demand curve shifts left from AD_1 to AD_2 , and the economy moves to point 2 in the short run where aggregate output has fallen to Y_2 , which is below potential output Y^P , and inflation has fallen to π_2 , below the target level of π^T . To stabilize output and inflation, the central bank eases monetary policy to move the aggregate demand curve back to AD_1 . If the central bank has high credibility, expected inflation will remain unchanged, the short-run aggregate supply curve will remain at AS_1 , and the economy will return to point 1.

But what if the central bank's credibility is weak? When the public sees an easing of monetary policy, it might become concerned that the central bank is losing its commitment to the nominal anchor and will pursue inflationary policy in the future. In this situation, inflation expectations might increase, and so the short-run aggregate supply curve will rise to AS_3 sending the economy to point 3, where aggregate output has fallen even further to Y_3 . Weak credibility causes a negative demand shock to produce an even greater contraction in economic activity in the short run. We have the following additional result: ***monetary policy credibility has the benefit of stabilizing economic activity in the short run when faced with negative demand shocks.***

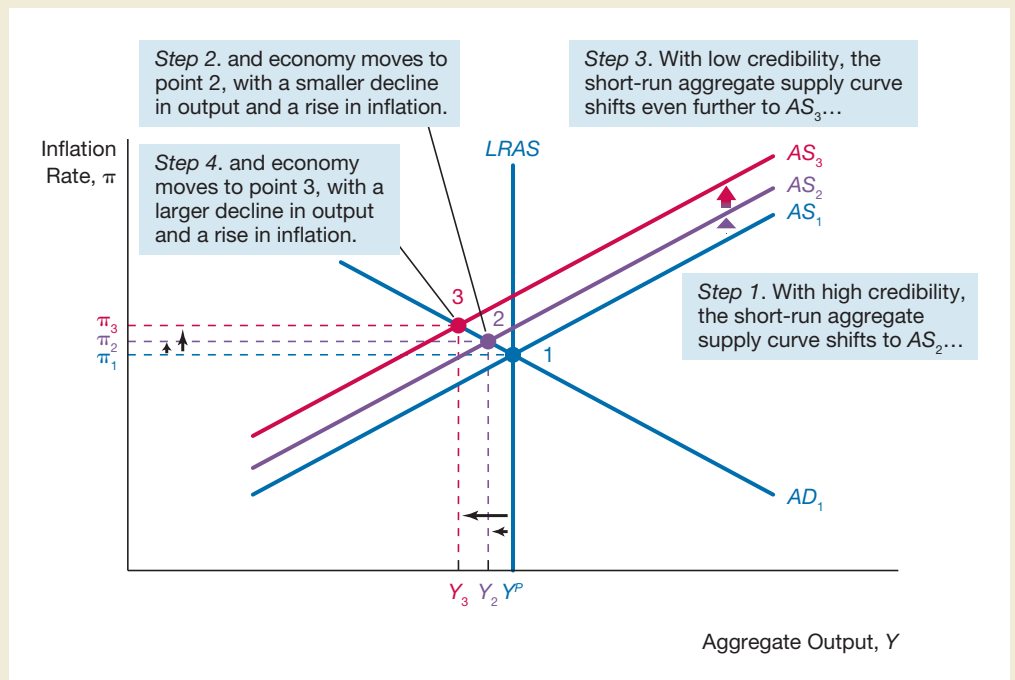
Credibility and Aggregate Supply Shocks

Now let's look at what happens in Figure 21.2 if there is a negative aggregate supply shock. If energy prices increase, the short-run aggregate supply curve shifts up and to the left. How much the aggregate supply curve will shift, however, depends on the amount of credibility the monetary authorities have. If the credibility of the nominal anchor is strong, inflation expectations will not rise, so the upward and leftward shift of the short-run aggregate supply curve to AS_2 will be small. When the economy moves to point 2 in the short run, the rise in inflation to π_2 will then be minor, while the fall in output to Y_2 will also be minor. If, on the other hand, the central bank's commitment to the nominal anchor is perceived as weak, then inflation expectations will rise substantially and the upward shift to the left of the short-run aggregate supply curve will be much larger, moving it up to AS_3 . Now the economy will move to point 3 in the short run with worse outcomes on both inflation and output, that is, with inflation higher at π_3 and output lower at Y_3 . We reach the following conclusion: ***monetary policy credibility has the benefit of producing better outcomes on both inflation and output in the short run when faced with negative supply shocks.***

The benefits of credibility when the economy is hit by negative supply shocks are exactly what we see in the data, as the following application illustrates.

FIGURE 21.2**Credibility and Aggregate Supply Shocks**

If the credibility of monetary policy is high, the negative aggregate supply shock shifts the short-run aggregate supply curve only to AS_2 and the economy moves to point 2, where the rise in inflation to π_2 will then be minor, while the fall in output to Y_2 will also be minor. If credibility is weak, then inflation expectations will rise substantially and the upward shift of the short-run aggregate supply curve will be much larger, moving it up and to the left to AS_3 . The economy will move to point 3 with worse outcomes on both inflation and output, that is, with inflation higher at π_3 and output lower at Y_3 .



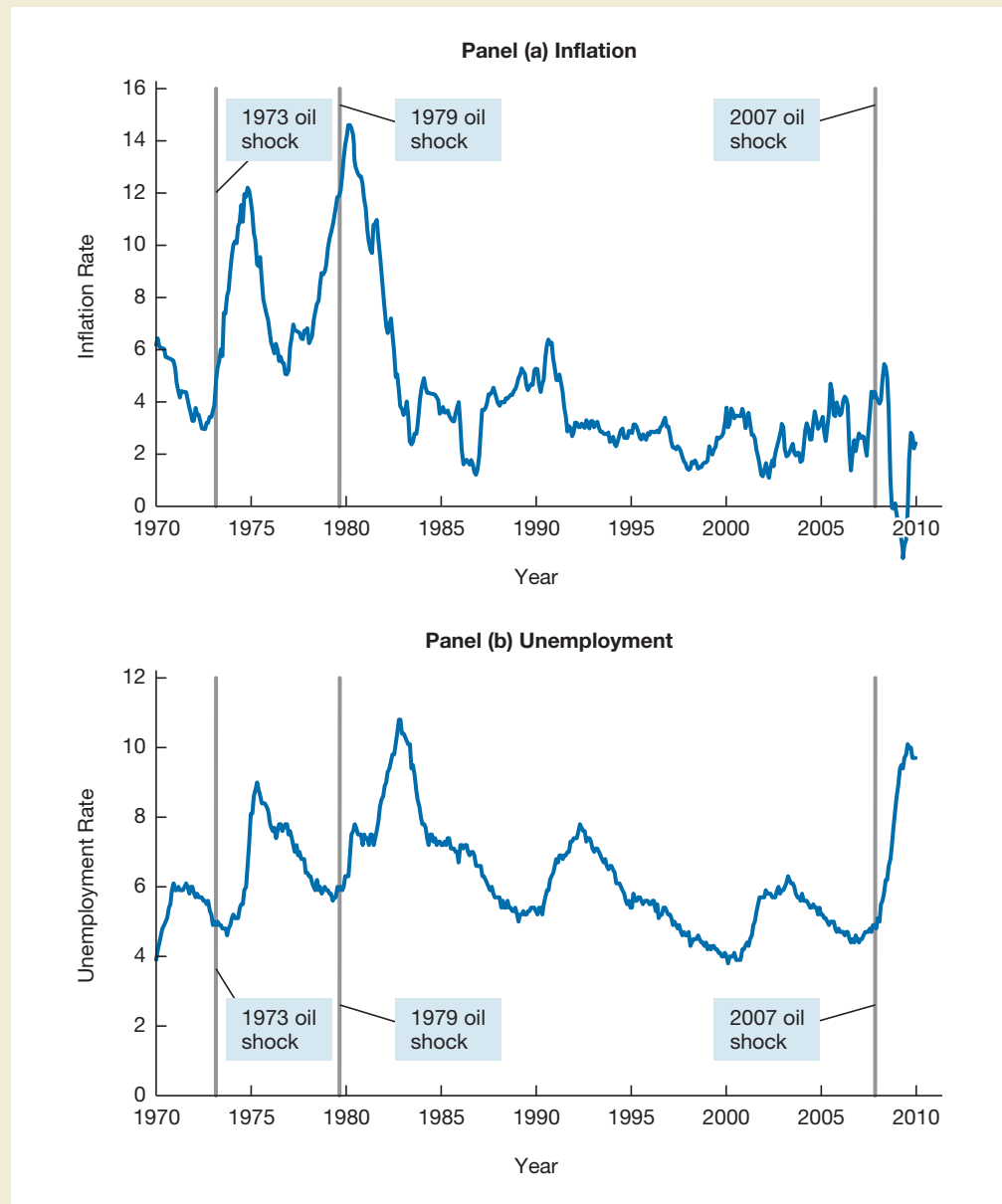
Application

A Tale of Three Oil Price Shocks

In 1973, 1979, and 2007, the U.S. economy was hit by three major negative supply shocks when the price of oil rose sharply; and yet in the first two episodes inflation rose sharply, while in the most recent episode it rose much less, as we can see in panel (a) of Figure 21.3. In the case of the first two episodes, monetary policy credibility was extremely weak because the Fed had been unable to keep inflation under control which had resulted in high inflation. In contrast, when the third oil price shock hit in 2007–2008, inflation had been low and stable for quite a period of time, so the Fed had more credibility that it would keep inflation under control. One reason that has been offered to explain why the last oil price shock appears to have had a smaller effect on inflation in the recent episode is that monetary policy has been more credible. Our aggregate demand and supply analysis provides the reasoning behind this view.

FIGURE 21.3**Inflation and Unemployment 1970–2010**

In the 1973 and 1979 oil shock episodes, inflation was initially high and the Fed's commitment to a nominal anchor was weak, while in the 2007 episode, inflation was initially low and the Fed's credibility was high. The result was that inflation and unemployment rose more in the first two episodes than in the latter episode, with unemployment rising sharply in the third episode only after the 2007–2009 crisis took a disastrous turn in October 2008.



Source: Bureau of Labor Statistics. www.bea.gov

In the first two episodes where the commitment to a nominal anchor and credibility were weak, the oil price shocks would have produced a surge in inflation expectations and a large upward and leftward shift in the short-run aggregate supply curve to AS_3 in Figure 21.2. Thus, the aggregate demand and supply analysis predicts there would be a sharp contraction in economic activity and a sharp rise in inflation. This is exactly what we see in panels (a) and (b) of Figure 21.3. The economic contractions were very severe, with unemployment rising to above 8% in the aftermath of the 1973 and 1979 oil price shocks. In addition, inflation shot up to around double-digit levels.

In the 2007–2008 episode, the outcome was quite different. Through greater policy credibility established over many years, inflation expectations remained grounded when the oil price shock occurred. As a result, the short-run aggregate supply curve shifted up and to the left much less, to only AS_2 in Figure 21.2. The aggregate demand and supply analysis predicts that there would be a much smaller increase in inflation from the negative supply shock, while the contraction in economic activity would also be less. Indeed, this is what transpired up until the recent financial crisis entered its virulent phase in the fall of 2008. Inflation rose by much less than in the previous episodes, while the economy held up fairly well until the financial crisis took a disastrous turn in October 2008 (see Chapter 15). Only then did the economy go into a tailspin, but it is clear that this was not the result of the negative supply shock. Inflation actually fell quite dramatically, indicating that a massive negative demand shock was the source of the sharp contraction in economic activity.



Approaches to Establishing Central Bank Credibility

Our analysis has demonstrated that a credible nominal anchor that anchors inflation expectations is a key element to the success of monetary policy. But how do you achieve this credibility? One approach is through continued success at keeping inflation under control through concerted policy actions. The preceding application shows that this approach proved successful for the Federal Reserve during the Greenspan and Bernanke years. Inflation targeting has not been the only approach to establishing central bank credibility. Another nominal anchor that some countries have successfully used to keep inflation under control is for a country to peg its exchange rate to an anchor country that already has a strong nominal anchor. We discussed this strategy, sometimes called *exchange rate targeting*, in Chapter 17. Here we explore several other approaches to establishing central bank credibility that have been suggested by economists.

Inflation Targeting

One approach to establish central bank credibility involves a monetary policy strategy called **inflation targeting**, which involves several elements: (1) public announcement of medium-term numerical targets for inflation; (2) an institutional commitment to price stability as the primary, long-run goal of monetary policy and a commitment to achieve the inflation goal; (3) an information-inclusive approach in which policy makers use many variables (not just monetary aggregates) in making decisions about monetary policy; (4) increased transparency of the monetary policy strategy through communication with the public and the markets about monetary policy makers' plans and objectives; and (5) increased accountability of the central bank for attaining its inflation objectives.

Inflation targeting has been adopted by many countries throughout the world, particularly those who in the past were less successful at stabilizing inflation than the United States. The list of inflation targeting countries includes New Zealand, Australia, Canada, Norway, Sweden, Switzerland, the United Kingdom, Brazil, Chile, Czech Republic, Hungary, Israel, Mexico, Peru, Philippines, Poland, South Africa, and South Korea, among others. Inflation targeting appears to have been able to strengthen the

credibility of a nominal anchor in countries that have adopted it, with the benefits pointed out in the previous section. In these countries, inflation has fallen, inflation expectations appear to be more solidly grounded, and both inflation and aggregate output have been more stable.¹⁰

One country that has not yet adopted inflation targeting is the United States, but this might change in the not too distant future, as the following Policy and Practice case indicates.

Policy and Practice



Will the Federal Reserve Adopt Inflation Targeting?

Ben Bernanke, a former professor at Princeton University, became the new Federal Reserve chairman in February 2006, after serving as a member of the Board of Governors from 2002–2005 and then as the chairman of the president’s Council of Economic Advisors. Bernanke is a world-renowned expert on monetary policy and while serving as an academic wrote extensively on inflation targeting, including articles and a book written with the author of this text.¹¹

Bernanke’s writings suggest that he is a strong proponent of inflation targeting and increased transparency in central banks. In an important speech given at a conference at the Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis in 2004 he described how the Federal Reserve might move toward inflation targeting by announcing a numerical value for its long-run inflation goal.¹² Bernanke emphasized that announcing a numerical objective for inflation would be completely consistent with the Fed’s dual mandate of achieving price stability and maximum employment (Chapter 13). Therefore, it might be called a *mandate-consistent inflation objective*, because the goal for measured inflation would be set above zero to avoid deflations that have harmful effects on employment and because measured inflation is likely to be biased upwards. In addition, it would not be intended to be a short-run target that might lead to control of inflation that is too tight at the expense of overly high employment fluctuations.

Since becoming Fed chairman, Bernanke has made it clear that any movement toward inflation targeting must result from a consensus within the Federal Reserve and be consistent with the dual mandate, given to the Fed by Congress. After Chairman Bernanke set up a subcommittee to discuss Federal

¹⁰For surveys of the performance of inflation targeting see Frederic S. Mishkin and Klaus Schmidt-Hebbel, “Does Inflation Targeting Matter?” in *Monetary Policy Under Inflation Targeting* eds. Frederic S. Mishkin and Klaus Schmidt-Hebbel (Central Bank of Chile: Santiago 2007), 291–372; and Carl E. Walsh, “Inflation Targeting: What Have We Learned?” *International Finance* 12 (Summer 2009): 195–234.

¹¹Ben S. Bernanke and Frederic S. Mishkin, “Inflation Targeting: A New Framework for Monetary Policy,” *Journal of Economic Perspectives*, vol. 11, no. 2 (1997), Ben S. Bernanke, Frederic S. Mishkin and Adam S. Posen, “Inflation Targeting: Fed Policy After Greenspan,” *Milken Institute Review*, (Fourth Quarter, 1999): 48–56, Ben S. Bernanke, Frederic S. Mishkin and Adam S. Posen, “What Happens When Greenspan is Gone,” *Wall Street Journal*, January 5, 2000: p. A22, and Ben S. Bernanke, Thomas Laubach, Frederic S. Mishkin and Adam S. Posen, *Inflation Targeting: Lessons from the International Experience* (Princeton, N.J.: Princeton University Press 1999).

¹²Ben S. Bernanke, “Inflation Targeting,” Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis, *Review*, vol 86, no. 4 (July / August 2004), pp. 165–168.

Reserve communication, which included discussions about announcing a specific numerical inflation objective, the FOMC made partial steps in the direction of inflation targeting with its new communication strategy first outlined in November of 2007 (with an amendment in January 2009) that provided FOMC participants' inflation projections for one, two, and three years ahead as well as for the longer term. The inflation projections for the longer term are produced under an assumption of "appropriate policy" and so will reflect each participant's long-run inflation objective. A relatively minor modification could move the Fed even further toward inflation targeting. If FOMC participants were willing to reach a consensus on a single value for the mandate-consistent inflation objective, then the longer-run inflation projections would in effect be an announcement of a specific numerical objective for the inflation rate and so entail a flexible version of inflation targeting consistent with the dual mandate, one in which the Federal Reserve commits to a long-run inflation target, but which allows for there to be deviations from this target in the short run.¹³

Whether the Federal Reserve will adopt inflation targeting in the future is still highly uncertain. Many members of Congress have opposed this move because they worry that it will encourage the Fed to focus too much on controlling inflation and not enough on the other element of the dual mandate, promoting maximum sustainable employment. Economists have been more supportive of a move toward inflation targeting, arguing that, as long as it is flexible, it can not only help stabilize inflation but economic activity as well.

Appoint "Conservative" Central Bankers

Kenneth Rogoff of Harvard University has suggested that another way to establish central bank credibility is for the government to appoint central bankers who have a strong aversion to inflation.¹⁴ He characterizes these central bankers as "conservative" although a better description would be "tough" or "hawkish on inflation."

When the public sees an appointment of a "conservative" central banker, it will expect that he or she will be less tempted to pursue expansionary monetary policy to exploit the short-run tradeoff between inflation and employment and will do whatever it takes to keep inflation under control. As a result, inflation expectations and realized inflation are likely to be more stable, with the benefits outlined previously.

The problem with this approach to solving credibility problems is that it is not clear that it will continue to work over time. If a central banker has more "conservative" preferences than the public, why won't it demand that central bankers who are more in tune with their preferences be appointed? After all, in a democratic society, government officials are supposed to represent the will of the people.

¹³See Frederic S. Mishkin, "Whither Federal Reserve Communications," (speech given at the Petersen Institute for International Economics, Washington, DC, July 28, 2008). www.federalreserve.gov/newsevents/speech/mishkin20080.

¹⁴Kenneth Rogoff, "The Optimal Degree of Commitment to an Intermediary Monetary Target," *Quarterly Journal of Economics* (November 1985): 169–189.

The Appointment of Paul Volcker, Anti-Inflation Hawk

The quintessential example of the appointment of a “conservative” central banker occurred when President Jimmy Carter appointed Paul Volcker to be the chairman of the Federal Reserve in August 1979. Prior to that inflation had been climbing steadily and by that month, the annual CPI inflation rate had reached 11.8%. Volcker was a well-known inflation hawk who had made it clear to the president that he would take on inflation and wring it out of the system. Shortly after Volcker’s taking the helm of the Fed, in October 1979 the FOMC started raising interest rates dramatically, increasing the federal funds rate by over eight percentage points to nearly 20% by April 1980. However, with a sharp economic contraction starting in January 1980, Volcker blinked and took his foot off the brake, allowing the federal funds rate to decline to around the 10% level by July, when the economy started to recover. Unfortunately, this monetary medicine had not done the trick and inflation remained very high, with CPI inflation still remaining above 13%. Volcker then showed his anti-inflation, hawkish mettle: the Fed raised the federal funds rate to the 20% level by January 1981 and kept it there until July. Then in the face of the most severe recession in the post-World War II period up to then, which started in July 1981, the Fed kept the federal funds rate at a level around 15% until July 1982, despite a rise in the unemployment rate to nearly 10%. Finally, only with the inflation rate starting to fall in July did the Fed begin to lower the federal funds rate.

Volcker’s anti-inflation credentials had now been fully established, and by 1983 inflation had fallen below 4% and remained around that level for the rest of Volcker’s tenure at the Fed through 1987. Volcker had reestablished the credibility of the Fed as an inflation fighter with the result that inflation expectations had now stabilized, ending the period of high inflation in the United States that had become known as the “Great Inflation.” Volcker became a monetary policy hero and has been lauded ever since as one of the greatest central bankers of all time.

Increase Central Bank Independence

Another approach to increasing central bank credibility is to give it more independence from the political process. As was discussed earlier, the time-inconsistency problem may arise from politicians who are short-sighted because they focus on pursuing policies that will help them win the next election. A politically insulated central bank is more likely to be concerned with long-run objectives and thus be a defender of price stability.

A counterargument to increasing central bank independence is that it is inconsistent with democratic principles. It is undemocratic to have monetary policy (which affects almost everyone in the economy) controlled by an elite group of monetary policy makers that is responsible to no one. If we push the argument further, assuming that policy is always performed better by elite groups like the Fed, we end up with such conclusions as the Joint Chiefs of Staff should determine military budgets or the IRS should set tax policies with no oversight from the president or the Congress.

Another argument against central bank independence is that an independent central bank has not always used its freedom successfully. For example, the Federal Reserve, which is one of the most independent of all U.S. government agencies, failed

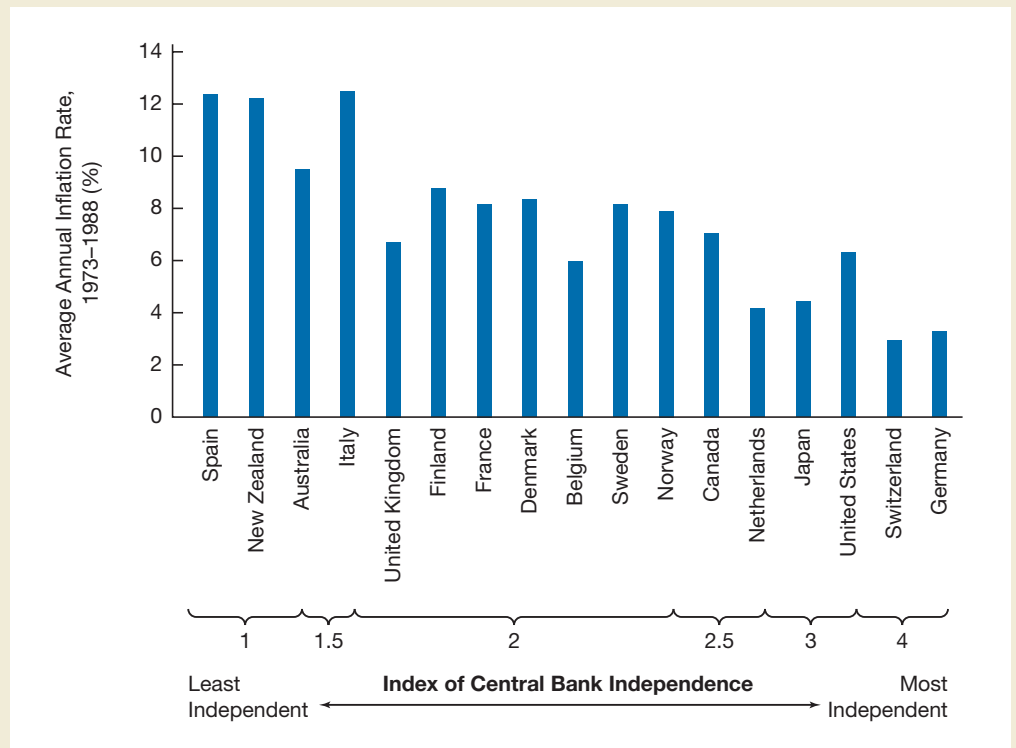
miserably in its policies during the Great Depression, and its independence certainly didn't prevent it from pursuing an overly expansionary monetary policy in the 1960s and 1970s that contributed to rapid inflation in this period.

Nonetheless, advocates of an independent central bank believe that macroeconomic performance will be improved by making the central bank more independent. Research by Alberto Alesina and Lawrence Summers, both of Harvard University, seems to support this conjecture:¹⁵ when ranking central banks from 1 (least independent) to 4 (most independent), they found inflation performance to be the best for countries with the most independent central banks. As you can see in Figure 21.4, Germany and Switzerland, which had the two most independent central banks, were also the countries with the lowest inflation rates in the 1973–1988 period. By contrast, the countries with the highest inflation rates in those years—Spain, New Zealand, Australia, and Italy—were also the countries with the least independent central banks. (In recent years, there has been a trend toward much greater independence of central banks so all of the banks that were considered to be least independent have moved toward the more independent characterization.) Although a more independent central bank appears to lead to a lower inflation rate, this is not achieved at the expense of poor real economic performance. Countries with independent central banks are no more likely to have high unemployment or greater output fluctuations than countries with less independent central banks.

FIGURE 21.4

Central Bank Independence and Inflation Performance in Seventeen Countries

On the horizontal axis, the seventeen central banks are rated from least independent, 1, to most independent, 4. During the period 1973–1988, more independent central banks have generally produced lower inflation than less independent central banks.



Source: Alberto Alesina and Lawrence H. Summers, "Central Bank Independence and Macroeconomic Performance: Some Comparative Evidence," *Journal of Money, Credit and Banking* Vol. 25 No. 2 (May 1993), p. 154, Table 1.

¹⁵Alberto Alesina and Lawrence H. Summers, "Central Bank Independence and Macroeconomic Performance: Some Comparative Evidence," *Journal of Money, Credit and Banking* 25 (1993): 151–162.

SUMMARY

1. The theory of rational expectations states that expectations will be identical to optimal forecasts (the best guess of the future) using all available information. There are several important implications of rational expectations for macroeconomic analysis: 1) expectations that are rational use all available information, which includes any information about government policies, such as changes in monetary or fiscal policy; 2) only new information causes expectations to change; and 3) if there is a change in the way a variable moves, the way in which expectations of this variable are formed will change as well.
2. The simple principle (derived from rational expectations theory) that expectation formation changes when the behavior of forecasted variables changes led to the famous Lucas critique of econometric policy evaluation. Lucas argued that when policy changes, expectations formation changes; hence the relationships in an econometric model will change. An econometric model that has been estimated on the basis of past data will no longer be the correct model for evaluating the effects of this policy change and may prove to be highly misleading. The Lucas critique also points out that the effects of a particular policy depend critically on the public's expectations about the policy.
3. Policy makers are tempted to renege on a policy to pursue long-run objectives because there may be short-run gains from expansionary policy that produces bad long-run outcomes, a problem that has become known as the time-inconsistency problem. Advocates of rules to conduct monetary policy believe that rules solve the time-inconsistency problem because policy makers have to follow a set plan that enables them to stick to the plan and achieve desirable long-run outcomes. Advocates of discretion believe that rules are way too rigid because they cannot foresee every contingency and do not allow the use of judgment. Constrained discretion imposes a conceptual structure and its inherent discipline on policy makers, but it does so without eliminating all flexibility, so that it combines some of the advantages ascribed to rules with those ascribed to discretion.
4. An important way to constrain discretion is by committing to a credible, nominal anchor, a nominal variable, such as the inflation rate, the money supply or an exchange rate, which ties down the price level or inflation to achieve price stability. A credible nominal anchor helps solve the time-inconsistency problem and anchor inflation expectations. Credibility of a nominal anchor has the benefit of stabilizing both output and inflation fluctuations.
5. A popular approach to establishing a strong nominal anchor is inflation targeting, in which there is a commitment by policy makers to achieve medium-term numerical objectives for inflation. Countries that have adopted inflation targeting have achieved lower inflation, inflation expectations that are more solidly grounded, and more stable aggregate output and inflation. Other approaches to establishing central bank credibility include appointing a “conservative” central banker (like Paul Volcker) who is hawkish on controlling inflation. Alternatively, more independence for the central bank can enable it to resist political influence and focus more on defending price stability.

KEY TERMS

constant-money-growth-rate rule, p. 548	macroeconomic models, p. 545	rational expectations revolution, p. 545
constrained discretion, p. 551	nominal anchor, p. 551	rules, p. 547
credibility, p. 551	optimal forecast, p. 543	time-inconsistency problem, p. 547
discretion, p. 547	political business cycle, p. 549	
inflation targeting, p. 557	rational expectations, p. 543	

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Rational Expectations and Policy Making

1. How does the theory of rational expectations differ from that of adaptive expectations?

Policy Conduct: Rules or Discretion?

3. What is the time-inconsistency problem and what role does it play in the debate between

Lucas Critique of Policy Evaluation

2. What is the significance of the Lucas critique of econometric policy evaluation?

4. What are the arguments for and against rules? advocates of discretion and rules in policy making?

The Role of Credibility and a Nominal Anchor

5. What benefits does a credible nominal anchor provide?
6. How does a credible nominal anchor help improve the economic outcomes that result

from a positive aggregate demand shock? How does it help if a negative aggregate supply shock occurs?

Approaches to Establishing Central Bank Credibility

7. What are the purposes of inflation targeting and how does this monetary policy strategy achieve them?

8. What has been the general experience of countries that have adopted inflation targeting?
9. What are the arguments for and against central bank independence?

PROBLEMS

All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Rational Expectations and Policy Making

1. Suppose that during the last ten years Nicole tried to forecast future inflation rates to negotiate her salary. Every year she used all available information and even incorporated news about the conduct of monetary policy. However, her forecasts were sometimes above and sometimes below the actual inflation rate. Was Nicole forming rational expectations?
2. Consider two individuals forming expectations about mortgage rates. Mark forms

adaptive expectations, and only looks at past mortgage rates to form expectations about future rates. Gloria forms rational expectations. Suppose an individual well-known for caring a lot more about unemployment than about inflation is appointed as chairman of the Fed and that mortgage rates have been constant during the last five years. How would expectations about future mortgage rates change for Mark and Gloria?

Lucas Critique of Policy Evaluation

3. Suppose an econometric model based on past data predicts a small decrease in domestic investment when the Federal Reserve increases the federal funds rate. Assume that the Federal Reserve is considering an increase in the federal funds rate target to fight inflation and promote a low inflation economic environment that promotes investment and economic growth.
 - a) Discuss the implications of the econometric model's predictions if individuals interpret the increase in the federal funds rate target as a sign that the Fed will keep inflation at low levels in the long run.
 - b) What would be Lucas's critique to this model?

Policy Conduct: Rules or Discretion?

4. Which are the benefits and costs of sticking to a set of rules in each of the following cases? How do each of these situations relate to the conduct of economic policy?
 - a) Going on a diet
 - b) Raising children
5. In some countries the president chooses the head of the central bank. The same president can fire the head of the central bank and replace him or her with another director any time. Explain the implications of such a situation for the conduct of monetary policy. Do you think the central bank will follow a monetary policy rule, or engage in discretionary monetary policy?

The Role of Credibility and a Nominal Anchor

6. Central banks that engage in inflation targeting usually announce the inflation target and time period for which that target will be relevant. In addition, central bank officials are held accountable for their actions (e.g., they could be fired if the target is not reached), which is also public information. Explain why transparency is such a fundamental ingredient of inflation targeting.
7. As part of its response to the subprime financial crisis, the Fed lowered the federal funds rate target to nearly zero by December 2008, a considerable easing of monetary policy. However, survey-based measures of five to ten year inflation expectations remained low until February 2010. Comment on the Fed's credibility to fight inflation.

Approaches to Establishing Central Bank Credibility

8. Suppose the statistical office of a country does a poor job in measuring inflation and reports an annualized inflation rate of 4% for a few months, while the true increase in the price level has been around 2.5%. What would happen to the central bank's credibility if it is engaged in inflation targeting and its target was 2%, plus or minus 0.5%?
9. Immediately after the central bank of New Zealand adopted inflation targeting in 1989, economic growth was low and unemployment

increased for some time (until 1992) but economic growth resumed and unemployment decreased later. Comment on the relationship between inflation targeting and economic growth.

10. Comment on the impact on the Fed's credibility of the appointment of a majority of governors reluctant to increase interest rates to fight inflation for fears of causing too much unemployment in the short run.



MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.



22

Modern Business Cycle Theory

Preview

After World War II, economists equipped with Keynesian models drew up the blueprints for new economic policies to reduce the severity of business cycle fluctuations without sparking inflation. But when they finally had the chance to implement these policies in the 1960s and 1970s, the results were unsatisfactory. As we saw in Chapter 13, not only did unemployment levels increase, but inflation actually accelerated to rates above 10%.

In the aftermath of these policy failures, economists set about building new models of the economy that, unlike the Keynesian model, incorporated the principles of microeconomics—that is, that individuals will act optimally based upon all available information. Two competing business cycle theories emerged: the *real business cycle model*, a classical model in which prices and wages are assumed to be flexible, and the *new Keynesian model*, which is Keynesian in that it assumes wages and prices are sticky, but also assumes that expectations are rational.¹

We begin this chapter by examining these two theories and comparing them with earlier Keynesian models. Both approaches provide very different answers to key questions of policy and practice in macroeconomics. Can the Federal Reserve boost economic activity by lowering interest rates? Do lower taxes always amount to expansionary policy? How can monetary and fiscal policy reduce fluctuations in output and unemployment? What are the costs to economic activity and employment of anti-inflation policies? We conclude with a look at some cutting-edge research into the macroeconomic effects of *financial frictions*, which impair the efficient functioning of financial markets. Though not a new idea, recent events have made building financial frictions into macroeconomic models a high priority. We will see how to adapt the standard aggregate demand and supply to include financial frictions, and apply this modified model to disruptions of the type we experienced in 2007–2009.

¹A precursor to the real business cycle and new Keynesian models is the *new neoclassical model* in which expectations are rational and all wages and prices are completely flexible with respect to *expected* changes in the price level and expectations. The new classical model, which was developed in the early to mid-1970s by Robert Lucas of the University of Chicago and Thomas Sargent formerly of the University of Minnesota but now at New York University, among others, is discussed in a Web appendix to this chapter found at the Companion Website, www.pearsonhighered.com/mishkin.

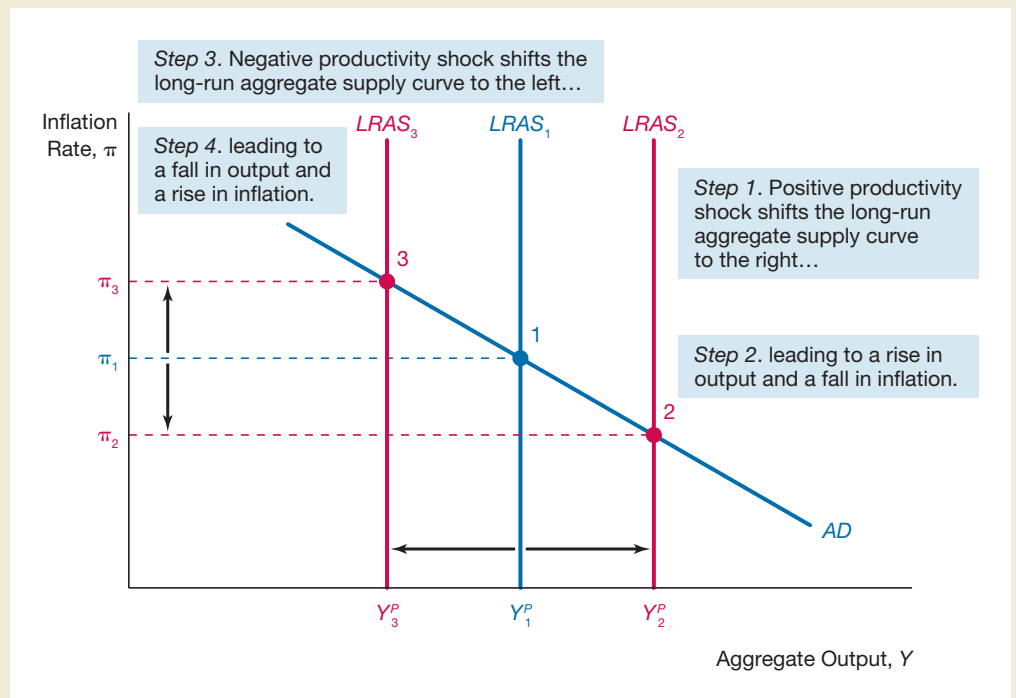
Real Business Cycle Model

The **real business cycle model**, originally developed by Nobel Prize winners Edward Prescott and Finn Kydland, begins with the assumption that all wages and prices are completely flexible. It argues that shocks to productivity or the willingness of workers to work, known as **real shocks**, cause fluctuations in potential output and long-run aggregate supply.² With individual wages and prices completely flexible, the short-run and long-run aggregate supply curves are one and the same. Thus, in the aggregate demand and supply analysis of the real business cycle in Figure 22.1, there is only one aggregate supply curve, *LRAS*.

FIGURE 22.1

The Real Business Cycle Model

In the real business cycle model, the short-run aggregate supply curve is always the same as the long-run aggregate supply curve; consequently, there is only one type of aggregate supply curve, *LRAS*, in the figure. Positive productivity shocks cause the long-run aggregate supply curve to shift to the right from $LRAS_1$ to $LRAS_2$, so that the economy moves to point 2 where aggregate output rises from Y_1^P to Y_2^P , while the inflation rate falls from π_1 to π_2 . Negative supply shocks cause productivity to fall and the long-run aggregate supply curve to shift to the left from $LRAS_1$ to $LRAS_3$, and the economy then moves from point 1 to point 3, where aggregate output falls to Y_3^P and inflation rises to π_3 .



²Finn E. Kydland and Edward C. Prescott, "Time to Build and Aggregate Fluctuations," *Econometrica* 51 (November 1982): 1345–1370. For more detailed surveys of real business cycle research, see Charles Plosser, "Understanding Real Business Cycles," *Journal of Economic Perspectives* (Summer 1989): 51–78 and Sergio Rebelo, "Resuscitating Real Business Cycles," in *Handbook of Macroeconomics* eds. J. Taylor and M. Woodford (Elsevier, 1999).

Productivity Shocks and Business Cycle Fluctuations

The complete wage and price flexibility of the real business cycle framework implies that aggregate output always equals potential output. Also, in such a model, business cycle fluctuations stem entirely from fluctuations in potential output. The key equation in real business cycle models is the aggregate production function introduced in Chapter 3:

$$Y^P = F(K,L) = AK_t^{0.3}L_t^{0.7} \quad (1)$$

where,

A = total factor productivity

K = capital stock

L = labor

Real business cycle theorists see shocks to productivity, A , as the primary source of shocks to potential output and long-run aggregate supply. Positive productivity shocks, such as new inventions, or government policies that make the economy more efficient, will increase A and cause the long-run aggregate supply curve to shift to the right from $LRAS_1$ to $LRAS_2$. Referring to Figure 22.1, if the aggregate demand curve does not shift, then the economy moves from point 1 to point 2, and aggregate output rises from Y_1^P to Y_2^P , while the inflation rate falls from π_1 to π_2 .

A negative supply shock, such as permanent increases in the price of energy or strict government environmental regulations that cause production to fall, will reduce productivity A . The long-run aggregate supply curve shifts to the left from $LRAS_1$ to $LRAS_3$. Again referring to Figure 22.1, the economy then moves from point 1 to point 3, where aggregate output falls to Y_3^P and inflation rises to π_3 .³

Solow Residuals and Business Cycle Fluctuations

How plausible is the view of real business cycle theorists that productivity shocks are the primary source of business cycle fluctuations? One way to assess the validity of the real business cycle model is to calculate estimates of productivity from the production function in Equation 1. Since in the real business cycle model, aggregate output Y always equals potential output Y^P , we can solve for an estimate of A , \hat{A} from Equation 1 to be,

$$\hat{A} = \frac{Y_t}{K_t^{0.3}L_t^{0.7}}$$

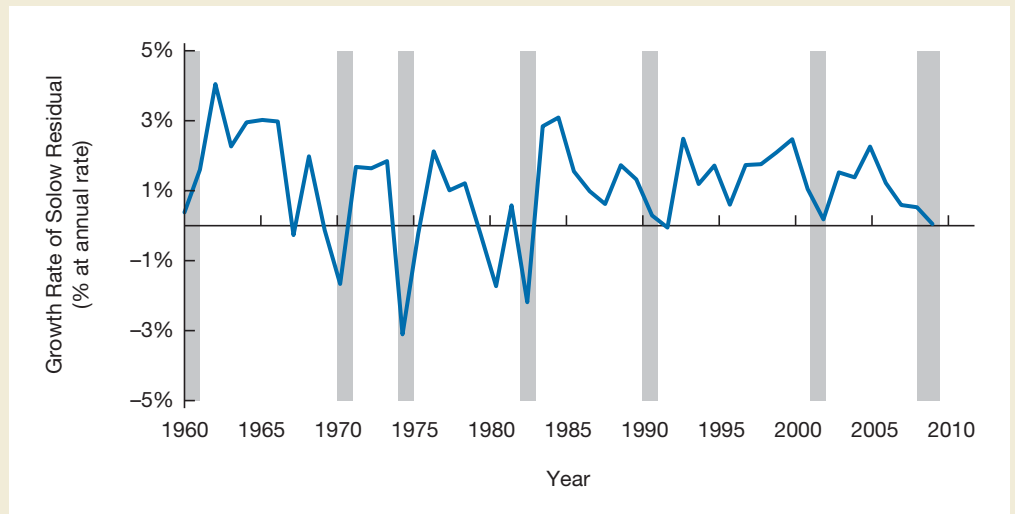
These estimates of productivity have become known as **Solow residuals**, and are named after Nobel Prize winner Robert Solow, who used this measure in his original research on the theory of economic growth we discussed in Chapter 6.

When we plot the growth rate of the Solow residual against output growth, there is a close correspondence. As shown in Figure 22.2, when recessions occur (the shaded portions of the graph), the growth rate of Solow residuals falls sharply. Real business cycle theorists take this co-movement of aggregate output and Solow residuals as strong confirmation that productivity shocks are the primary source of business fluctuations, as their theory predicts.

³Real business cycle models can also generate business cycle fluctuations from shifts in labor supply that might arise from changes in taxes that either encourage or discourage people from working more.

FIGURE 22.2**Growth Rate of Solow Residuals, 1960–2008**

The growth rate of Solow residuals fall sharply during the shaded areas of business cycle contractions.



Source: Bureau of Economic Analysis, at www.bea.gov/national/nipaweb/SelectTable.asp?Selected=N, and Economic Report of the President at www.gpoaccess.gov/eop/tables10.html. The Solow residual is computed using the same procedure used to produce Figure 6.1 in Chapter 6.

Employment and Unemployment in the Real Business Cycle Model

The real business cycle model explains fluctuations in employment and unemployment with **intertemporal substitution**, the willingness to shift work effort over time as real wages and real interest rates change. To illustrate the role of intertemporal substitution, let's say that you're a student deciding on a plan for summer vacation. You want to spend one of the next two summers traveling around the country to see all the national parks, but you need to work the other summer to pay for your car. If you work this summer, you will earn a real wage of W_1 . If you can earn a real interest rate of r , this translates into a real wage of $(1 + r)W_1$ next summer. To decide how much you should work, you would compare $(1 + r)W_1$ to the real wage you would earn next summer of W_2 . When either your current wage W_1 is higher or the real interest rate r is higher, you have a greater incentive to substitute work for leisure this summer; that is, work this summer, and don't work next summer.

Now let's consider what happens when productivity rises and the economy moves to point 2 in Figure 22.1 where aggregate output has risen to Y_2^P . Because productivity is higher, workers are likely to get paid a higher real wage today, and intertemporal substitution tells us that they will be willing to work more.⁴ The result is that employment will rise and unemployment will fall when output is rising. Similarly when there is a negative productivity shock and the economy moves to point 3 where output is lower at Y_3^P , real wages will fall today, employment will fall, and unemployment will rise. Note that in both these cases, the unemployment rate is changing with the natural rate of unemployment, so the economy remains at full employment and the unemployment gap is zero.

⁴The effect of the productivity shock on real interest rates is ambiguous and so depending on the model, the intertemporal substitution effect described here may be attenuated.

In the real business cycle model, unemployment is voluntary. It arises out of choices workers make to maximize their well-being. This does not mean that recessions are not costly to workers. Indeed they are. Their income has certainly fallen. They voluntarily work less because real wages have fallen.

Objections to the Real Business Cycle Model

There are several important criticisms of real business cycle analysis.

SOLOW RESIDUALS AND PRODUCTIVITY SHOCKS. Critics of real business cycle analysis dispute the evidence from Solow residuals. When the economy slows down and business dries up, the critics say, firms don't simply shutter every idle factory and lay off every unneeded worker. Instead, they tend to hoard capital and labor in preparation for the eventual return of business activity. With **labor hoarding**, workers sit idly for a chunk of their workday, but are still counted in the government surveys as "employed." And idle capital is still on the books. As a result, the number of machines and workers in the economy that are actually producing output is overstated, and output per worker and per dollar of capital declines. Even though the workers and machines are just as productive when there is work to do, hoarding of labor and capital gives the appearance of a negative productivity shock when none exists.

NEGATIVE PRODUCTIVITY SHOCKS. Critics of real business cycles also question whether productivity can ever be negative. Developments such as the Internet can cause a positive shock. But since technology typically advances over time, it can be hard to imagine why technology would regress. Proponents of real business cycle models point to examples of negative shocks, such as bad government policies that lower output, or financial crises that temporarily decrease the efficiency of capital markets.

PROCYCLICAL INFLATION AND EMPLOYMENT. As we saw in Figure 22.1, the real business cycle model suggests that, with the aggregate demand curve unchanged, increases in aggregate output would be associated with declines in inflation, while declines in output are associated with increases in inflation. As we saw in Chapter 8, we do not see this effect in the data. Inflation tends to rise during business cycle booms and fall in recessions. Procyclical inflation is the opposite of what the real business cycle model suggests. Proponents of the real business cycle model, challenge the assertion that inflation is procyclical. Edward Prescott and Finn Kydland argue that procyclicality is not a feature of the post-World War II period. For example, inflation surged during the recessions that followed oil price shocks in the mid- and late 1970s.⁵ (Their view, however, is not accepted by critics of real business cycle analysis.)

MARKET-CLEARING ASSUMPTION. Many economists are also skeptical of the market-clearing assumption in the real business cycle model. They interpret the empirical evidence as showing that wages and prices are far from flexible. In addition, they find the view in real business cycle analysis that unemployment is voluntary to be highly implausible. Try asking some unemployed workers if they are choosing to work less. You're likely to get some understandably unpleasant responses.

⁵Finn Kydland and Edward C. Prescott, "Business Cycles: Real Facts and a Monetary Myth," *Quarterly Review*, Federal Reserve Bank of Minneapolis (Spring 1990): 3–18.

New Keynesian Model

As economists came to accept the proposition that theories about the business cycle should be grounded in solid microfoundations, they began to adopt the view that rational expectations provide a good benchmark for how expectations are formed. In addition, many economists found the analytic techniques of the real business cycle model to be attractive. However, a large number of economists remained unwilling to accept the classical view that wages and prices are fully flexible, and that aggregate demand shocks play no role in the business cycle. This reasoning has led to a blending of much of the analysis of the rational expectations and real business cycle theorists with models that build in wage and price stickiness derived from well-founded microeconomic reasoning. Keynesian economists offered the **new Keynesian model**, which is based on similar microeconomic foundations as in real business cycle models, but embeds stickiness into the analysis. The resulting models are also referred to as **dynamic, stochastic, general equilibrium (DSGE) models** because they allow the economy to grow over time (*dynamic*), be subject to shocks (*stochastic*), and are based on *general equilibrium* principles.⁶

Building Blocks of the New Keynesian Model

There are three building blocks in the new Keynesian model: aggregate production, a new Keynesian short-run aggregate supply (Phillips) curve, and a new Keynesian aggregate demand (*IS*) curve.

AGGREGATE PRODUCTION. Just as in the real business cycle framework, a basic building block of the new Keynesian model is the aggregate production function we saw in Equation 1:

$$Y^P = F(K, L) = AK_t^{0.3}L_t^{0.7}$$

The new Keynesian model sees shocks to productivity, A , as an important source of fluctuations in potential output and hence in aggregate supply. Hence, just as in the real business cycle model, the long-run aggregate supply curve fluctuates. For example, if technological innovation causes A to rise, the long-run supply curve would shift from $LRAS_1$ to $LRAS_3$ in Figure 22.3. Although this feature of the new Keynesian model has much in common with the real business cycle model, it differs from the real business cycle model in that it allows for a short-run aggregate supply curve that is different from the long-run aggregate supply curve.

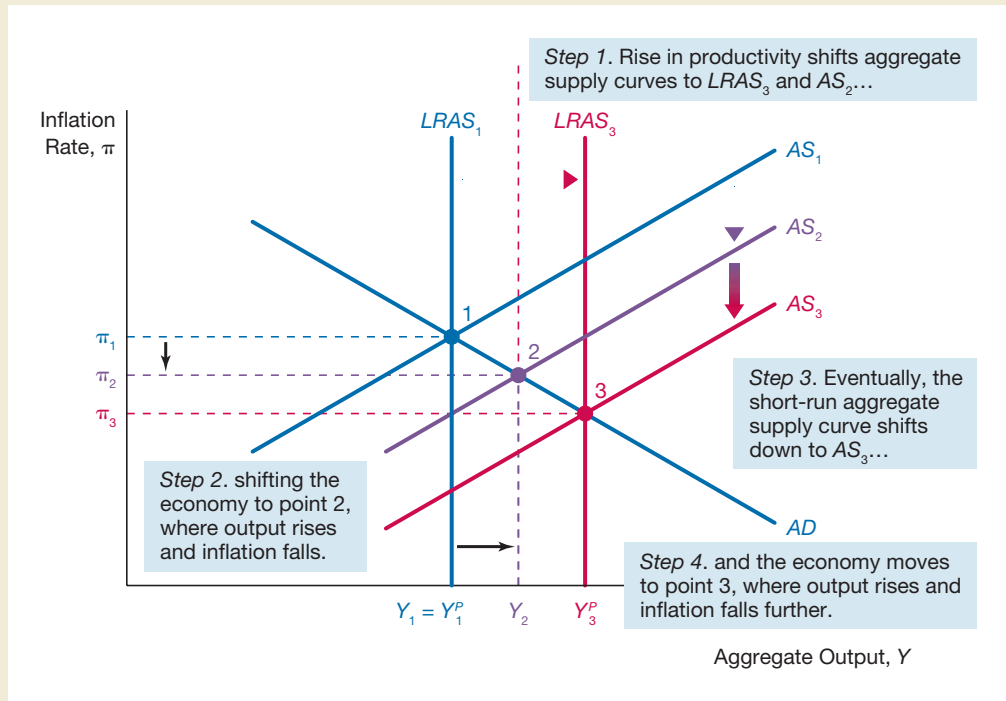
NEW KEYNESIAN SHORT-RUN AGGREGATE SUPPLY (PHILLIPS) CURVE. In contrast to the real business cycle model, the new Keynesian model views prices as being sticky, that is, they adjust infrequently. New Keynesians point to the concept of *staggered prices*, discussed in Chapter 8, in which firms fix their prices for a period of time, but do not change them at the same time as other firms. Staggered prices imply that a firm sets its prices to reflect current and future demand for its products because it recognizes that other firms may change their prices in the future. When all firms operate in this way, we obtain a

⁶To be completely accurate, real business cycle models are also DSGE models, but of a much narrower form than new Keynesian models.

FIGURE 22.3

The New Keynesian Model

The new Keynesian model has short-run aggregate supply curves that are upward sloping, as AS_1 , AS_2 and AS_3 indicate. If productivity rises, the long-run aggregate supply curve will shift to the right from $LRAS_1$ to $LRAS_3$. Because aggregate output at point 1 is now below potential output ($Y_1 < Y_3^P$), the short-run aggregate supply curve shifts down from AS_1 to AS_2 and the economy moves to point 2 at the intersection of AS_2 and AD where aggregate output rises to Y_2 and inflation falls to π_2 . At point 2 output remains below potential output, so eventually the short-run aggregate supply curve shifts down to AS_3 , and the economy moves to point 3 at the intersection of $LRAS_3$ and AD .



short-run aggregate supply curve that resembles the Phillips curve analysis we discussed in Chapter 11, with subtle changes. Instead of inflation depending on expected inflation today, the output gap and price shocks (which new Keynesians refer to as *markup shocks*), inflation depends on expected inflation *tomorrow*, the output gap and markup shocks, that is,

$$\pi_t = \beta E_t \pi_{t+1} + \gamma (Y_t - Y_t^P) + \rho_t \tag{2}$$

where:

- β = a parameter that indicates how expectations of future inflation affect current inflation
- $E_t \pi_{t+1}$ = the inflation rate next period, $t + 1$, which is expected today at time t
- $(Y_t - Y_t^P)$ = the output gap
- γ = a parameter describing the sensitivity of inflation to the output gap
- ρ_t = the price shock term⁷

⁷Equation 2 is derived to describe deviations from a situation in which inflation is fixed at a given rate. In this interpretation, β can be thought of as a discount rate, that is the rate at which future outcomes are discounted into the present, and so β is less than one. Note that Equation 2 cannot be used to argue that there is a permanent tradeoff between inflation and output as a result of the coefficient on expected inflation differing from one, because it is only describing deviations around a stable inflation rate.

Note that we introduce time subscripts in describing the short-run aggregate supply curve in the preceding equation, which was not done in Chapter 11. We do this because timing becomes very important in understanding how the new Keynesian model differs from the aggregate demand and supply model we outlined in Chapter 12.

Through some algebraic manipulation, we can write the new Keynesian short-run aggregate supply (Phillips) curve in Equation 2 equivalently as,⁸

$$\pi_t = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \beta^j [\gamma(Y_{t+j} - Y_{t+j}^P) + \rho_{t+j}] \quad (3)$$

The new Keynesian short-run aggregate supply (Phillips) curve thus incorporates the effects of staggered prices: firms will set prices reflecting both current and future economic conditions as represented by expected future output gaps and markup shocks.

As you can see in Equation 2, the new Keynesian Phillips curve analysis implies that the short-run aggregate supply curve is upward sloping and is specific to a particular level of tomorrow's expected inflation rate. Notice in Figure 22.3 that inflation today and expected inflation tomorrow are initially at π_1 . The short-run aggregate supply curve for this level of expected inflation, AS_1 , passes through point 1 because $Y = Y^P$. Equation 2 then shows that actual inflation will be equal to π_1 and is not expected to change so that expected inflation tomorrow will also be π_1 . If Y rises above Y^P , then actual inflation will be higher than π_1 and so the short-run aggregate supply curve is upward sloping.

NEW KEYNESIAN IS CURVE AND THE AGGREGATE DEMAND CURVE. We observed from studying the microfoundations of consumer and firm behavior in Chapters 18 and 19 that consumers and firms are forward looking. Forward-looking behavior suggests that consumption expenditure and investment spending depend on both current and future output. After all, if you are expecting good times in the future, you will be willing to buy more goods and services today. Similarly, if firms also expect good times, they know that the demand for their products will increase and therefore they will invest more today so they can produce more goods to sell tomorrow.

The IS curve we derived in Chapter 9 lacks this dynamic feature, but can be modified to incorporate expectations of future output and the real interest rate today. This reasoning leads to the following new Keynesian IS curve:

$$Y_t = \beta E_t Y_{t+1} - \delta r_t + d_t \quad (4)$$

⁸To see how this equation is derived, first we advance Equation 2 by one period,

$$\pi_{t+1} = \beta E_{t+1} \pi_{t+2} + \gamma(Y_{t+1} - Y_{t+1}^P) + \rho_{t+1}$$

and then take expectations of both sides to yield the following:

$$E_t \pi_{t+1} = \beta E_t \pi_{t+2} + E_t \gamma(Y_{t+1} - Y_{t+1}^P) + E_t \rho_{t+1}$$

Now substituting this expression for $E_t \pi_{t+1}$ into Equation 2 we get,

$$\pi_t = \gamma(Y_t - Y_t^P) + \rho_t + \beta E_t [\gamma(Y_{t+1} - Y_{t+1}^P) + \rho_{t+1}] + \beta^2 E_t \pi_{t+2}$$

Continuing to solve this equation forward, we obtain the following equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \pi_t = & \gamma(Y_t - Y_t^P) + \rho_t + \beta E_t [\gamma(Y_{t+1} - Y_{t+1}^P) + \rho_{t+1}] + \beta^2 E_t [\gamma(Y_{t+2} - Y_{t+2}^P) + \rho_{t+2}] \\ & + \beta^3 E_t [\gamma(Y_{t+3} - Y_{t+3}^P) + \rho_{t+3}] + \beta^4 E_t [\gamma(Y_{t+4} - Y_{t+4}^P) + \rho_{t+4}] + \dots \end{aligned}$$

which, when written with a summation sign, is the same as Equation 3 in the text.

where β is the parameter that indicates how much current output changes when future expectations of output change, δ describes how sensitive output is to the real interest rate, and d_t is a demand shock stemming from autonomous shifts in consumption expenditure, investment spending, net exports or fiscal policy of the type we discussed in Chapter 9.

As with Equation 2, we can do some algebra and rewrite Equation 4 as follows:⁹

$$Y_t = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \beta^j (-\delta_{t+j} r_{t+j} + d_{t+j}) \quad (5)$$

This dynamic *IS* curve implies that aggregate output depends not only on today's monetary policy (represented by the current real interest rate r_t) and today's demand shock (d_t) as it did in Chapter 9, but also on expectations of future monetary policy and demand shocks, that is, future real interest rates, r_{t+1} , r_{t+2} , and d_{t+1} , d_{t+2} , etc.

The *IS* curve in Equation 4 becomes the downward-sloping aggregate demand curve we see in Figure 22.3. With higher inflation rates, the monetary authorities raise real interest rates because they are following the Taylor principle, and the higher real interest rates then cause investment spending, consumption expenditure and net exports to decline and equilibrium output to fall, as the aggregate demand curve AD_1 shows. Note, however, that the aggregate demand curve depends on expectations about the future output.

Business Cycle Fluctuations in the New Keynesian Model

We now look at what happens in the short run to output and inflation in the new Keynesian model when there are shocks to either aggregate supply or aggregate demand.

EFFECTS OF SHOCKS TO AGGREGATE SUPPLY. Just as in the real business cycle model, shocks to long-run aggregate supply can be an important source of business cycle fluctuations. Referring to Figure 22.3, suppose the economy is initially at point 1, with aggregate output at Y_1 and inflation at π_1 . If there is a surge in productivity growth, say because new robotic technology makes the manufacturing sector more efficient, then the long-run aggregate supply curve will shift to the right from $LRAS_1$ to $LRAS_3$. Because aggregate output at point 1 is now below potential output and there is slack in the economy ($Y_1 < Y_3^P$), the short-run aggregate supply curve shifts down and to the right from AS_1 to AS_2 and the economy moves to point 2, where aggregate output rises to Y_2 and inflation falls to π_2 .¹⁰

⁹The β parameter can again be thought of as a discount rate and is the same β used in Equations 2 and 3. To see how Equation 5 is derived, first we advance Equation 4 by one period:

$$Y_{t+1} = \beta Y_{t+2} - \delta r_{t+1} + d_{t+1}$$

Advancing by one period and then taking expectations of both sides yields,

$$E_t Y_{t+1} = \beta E_t Y_{t+2} + E_t [-\delta r_{t+1} + d_{t+1}]$$

Now substituting this expression for $E_t Y_{t+1}$ into Equation 4 we get,

$$Y_t = -\delta r_t + d_t + \beta E_t [-\delta r_{t+1} + d_{t+1}] + \beta^2 E_t Y_{t+2}$$

Doing this over and over again, we can rewrite Equation 4 as

$$Y_t = -\delta r_t + d_t + \beta E_t [-\delta r_{t+1} + d_{t+1}] + \beta^2 E_t [-\delta r_{t+2} + d_{t+2}] \\ + \beta^3 E_t [-\delta r_{t+3} + d_{t+3}] + \beta^4 E_t [-\delta r_{t+4} + d_{t+4}] + \beta^5 E_t [-\delta r_{t+5} + d_{t+5}] + \dots$$

which, when written with a summation sign, is the same as Equation 5 in the text.

¹⁰Note that if the productivity shock is anticipated, then the short-run aggregate supply curve would shift down even more, while the aggregate demand curve would shift out to the right because future aggregate output would be higher. The result would be even higher output.

Because at point 2, there continues to be slack in the economy ($Y_2 < Y_3^P$), the short-run aggregate supply curve keeps on shifting downward until the economy settles at point 3, at the intersection of the new long-run aggregate supply curve, $LRAS_3$ and the aggregate demand curve AD . This long-run equilibrium is the same one that was reached in the short-run in the real business cycle model, where output has risen and inflation has fallen even further.

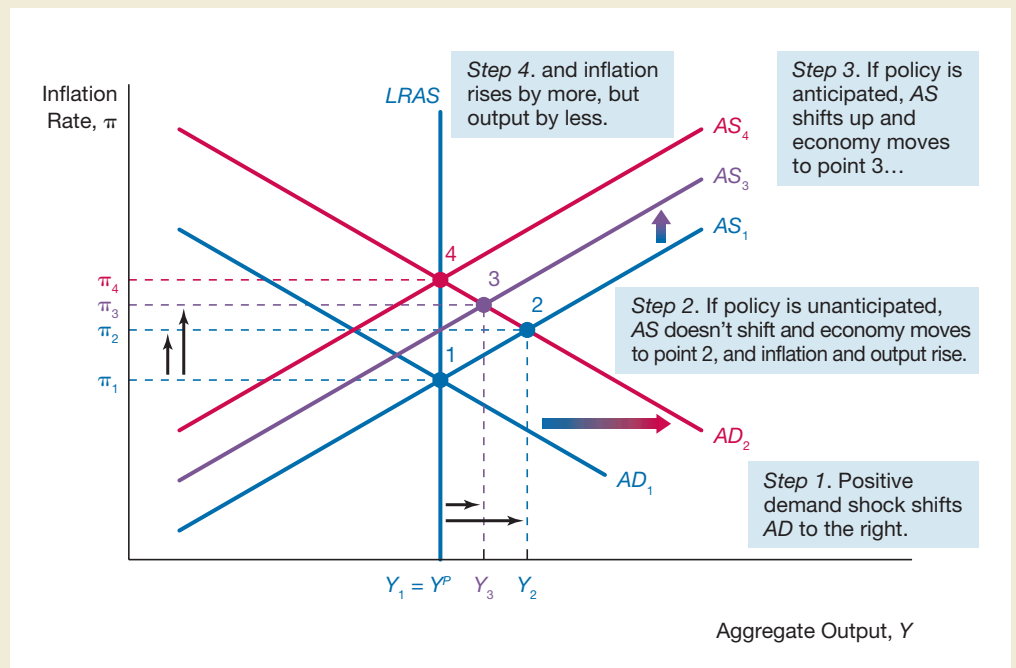
EFFECTS OF SHOCKS TO AGGREGATE DEMAND. Now let's consider what happens if consumer confidence suddenly rises and therefore consumers start to spend more. The positive demand shock shifts the aggregate demand curve to the right from AD_1 to AD_2 in Figure 22.4. If this shock is unanticipated, then expectations about future output and inflation would remain unchanged, so the short-run aggregate supply curve would remain unchanged at AS_1 . The economy would then move from point 1 to point 2, where aggregate output rises to Y_2 and inflation rises to π_2 .

But what if the aggregate demand shock is anticipated? Now firms will expect inflation next period to be higher and so the short-run aggregate supply curve will shift

FIGURE 22.4

Shocks to Aggregate Demand in the New Keynesian Model

A positive demand shock from expansionary policy shifts the aggregate demand curve to the right from AD_1 to AD_2 , but if the policy is unanticipated, the short-run aggregate supply curve remains at AS_1 . The economy would then move from point 1 to point 2, where aggregate output rises to Y_2 and inflation rises to π_2 . If the policy is anticipated, the short-run aggregate supply curve will shift up to AS_3 (but not all the way up to AS_4 which is where the short-run aggregate supply curve would shift if prices were completely flexible rather than sticky) and the economy moves to point 3, in which aggregate output rises to Y_3 (which is less than Y_2) and inflation rises to π_3 (which is higher than π_2).



up. However, because prices are sticky, expected inflation next period will not rise to π_4 , even though eventually, the economy will move to point 4, which is the long-run equilibrium at the intersection of the aggregate demand curve and the long-run aggregate supply curve. The slower adjustment of prices means that even though expectations are rational in the new Keynesian model, the short-run aggregate supply curve will not shift all the way up to AS_4 , as it would if wages and prices were completely flexible. Instead it shifts up to AS_3 . Equilibrium is then reached at point 3, in which aggregate output still rises to Y_3 , with inflation rising to π_3 . We can see in Figure 22.4 that Y_2 is greater than Y_3 , implying that the output response to unanticipated aggregate demand shocks are greater than to anticipated shocks. It is greater because the short-run aggregate supply curve does not shift when the aggregate demand shock is unanticipated, causing inflation to be lower and output to be higher. ***The new Keynesian model distinguishes between the effects of anticipated versus unanticipated aggregate demand shocks, with unanticipated shocks having a greater effect on output.***

Objections to the New Keynesian Model

Objections to the new Keynesian model are that prices may not be all that sticky. For example, empirical evidence finds that businesses change prices very frequently. It is not clear that the assumption of the slow adjustment of prices, a central element of the new Keynesian Phillips curve, is warranted. Other research, however, points out that even if prices are changed frequently, they may still adjust slowly to *aggregate* demand shocks. Businesses may find aggregate shocks less important than shocks to demand for the specific products they sell. Thus they may not find that it is worthwhile to pay attention to aggregate demand shocks in terms of their pricing decisions (and thus may have *rational inattention* along the lines described in Chapter 8). In this situation, there will be price stickiness with regard to aggregate demand shocks, and the new Keynesian model would remain valid.

The new Keynesian model is subject to some controversy, but it has become the dominant model in policy discussions in recent years.

A Comparison of Business Cycle Models

To provide a clear picture of the impact of the two new approaches to business cycle models discussed in this chapter, we compare them to the standard model of aggregate demand and supply outlined in Chapter 12 that we call the **traditional Keynesian model**. We will then compare how each model indicates how policy makers should respond to shortfalls in output, as well as shape policies for reducing inflation.

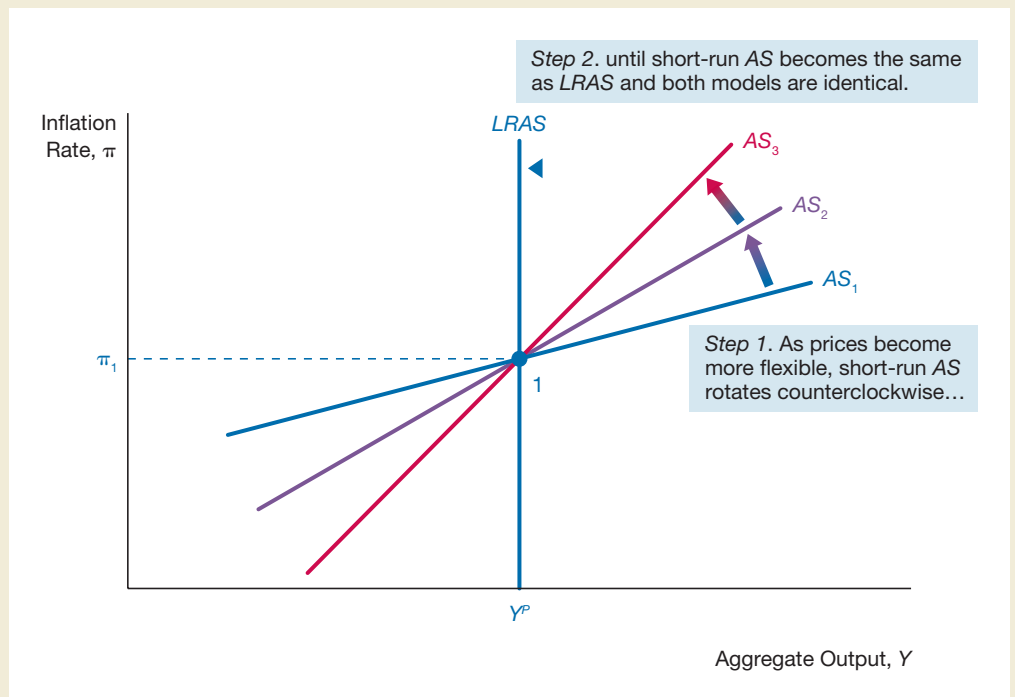
How Do the Models Differ?

In the traditional Keynesian model, expectations are *not* rational, but instead are adaptive and backward-looking. In addition, the traditional model is Keynesian because the Phillips curve, which is the basis of the short-run aggregate supply curve, assumes that prices do not immediately adjust and so are sticky. On the other hand, the real business cycle and new Keynesian models both assume that expectations are rational.

We can view the real business cycle model as a special case of a new Keynesian model in which prices become more and more flexible. As price flexibility increases, inflation responds more quickly to output gaps in the new Keynesian Phillips curve—in

FIGURE 22.5**Comparison of New Keynesian and Real Business Cycle Models**

As prices become more and more flexible, inflation responds more quickly to output gaps in the new Keynesian Phillips curve, the γ -coefficient rises, and the short-run aggregate supply curve will get steeper and steeper, pivoting from AS_1 to AS_2 to AS_3 . With complete flexibility, the short-run aggregate supply curve becomes vertical and is the same as the long-run aggregate supply curve $LRAS$ in the real business cycle model.



other words, the γ -coefficient in Equation 2 rises—and the short-run aggregate supply curve will get steeper, as we can see in Figure 22.5. Indeed, as γ rises more and more, the short-run aggregate supply curve will keep pivoting until it becomes the same as the long-run aggregate supply curve. Hence as prices become more flexible in the New Keynesian model, it gets closer and closer to the real business cycle model.

The new Keynesian model also shares with the real business cycle model the view that long-run supply shocks can shape the business cycle. The new Keynesian model also suggests that demand shocks can be important too. The two models differ only in degree: the model you prefer depends on the extent to which you think business cycle fluctuations are due to supply shocks rather than demand shocks.

As a study aid, we outline the differences between business cycle models in summary Table 22.1.

SUMMARY
TABLE 22.1**A Comparison of Three Business Cycle Models**

Model	Expectations	Price Flexibility	Are Long-Run Supply Shocks a Source of Business Cycle Fluctuations?
Real Business Cycle Model	Rational	Complete	Yes, and are the only source of business cycle fluctuations
New Keynesian Model	Rational	Sticky	Yes, but demand shocks are important too
Traditional Keynesian Model	Adaptive	Sticky	No

Short-Run Output and Price Responses: Implications for Stabilization Policy

To better understand the three models, we will first compare what each says about the short-run effects of expansionary policy on output and inflation, and the effects of policies to stabilize output, employment, and unemployment fluctuations. Then we will look at their implications for policies directed at reducing inflation. As a study aid, we summarize the different response of output and inflation in the short run and the resulting policy implications of the three models in summary Table 22.2.

The three panels of Figure 22.6 compare the response of aggregate output and inflation to expansionary policy. The economy begins at point 1, the intersection of the aggregate demand curve AD_1 and the long-run aggregate supply curve $LRAS$, with aggregate output at $Y_1 = Y^P$. Now suppose that expansionary policy, such as an autonomous easing of monetary policy or an increase in government spending, shifts the aggregate demand curve to the right from AD_1 to AD_2 .

REAL BUSINESS CYCLE MODEL. In the real business cycle depicted in panel (a), prices are completely flexible so the short-run aggregate supply curve is identical to the long-run aggregate supply curve, $LRAS$. Expansionary policy therefore moves the economy to point 2, the intersection of the aggregate demand curve AD_2 with $LRAS$. Inflation immediately rises to π_2 , while aggregate output remains unchanged at $Y_1 = Y^P$. **Hence in the real business cycle model, expansionary policy only leads to inflation, but does not raise output.**

SUMMARY TABLE 22.2

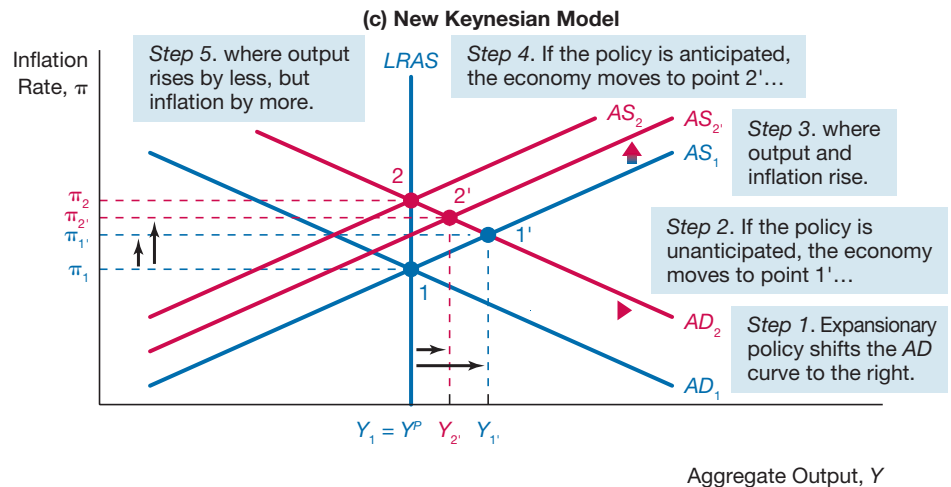
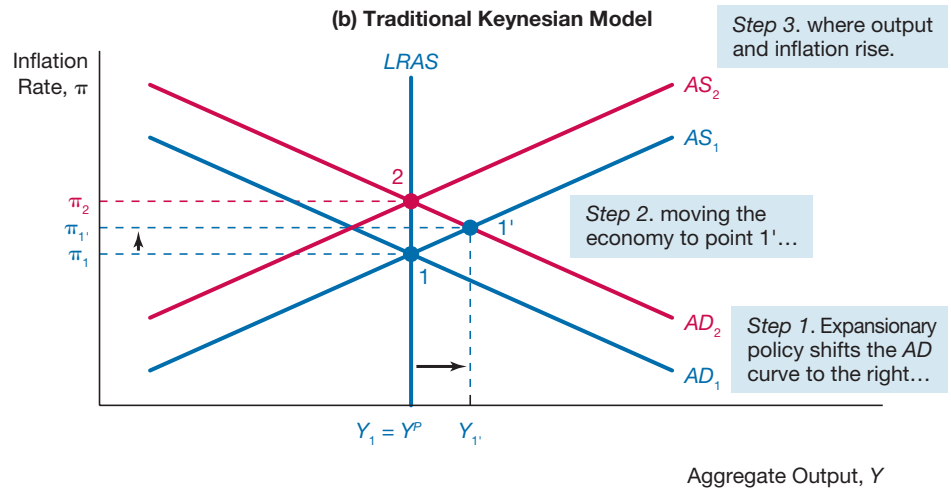
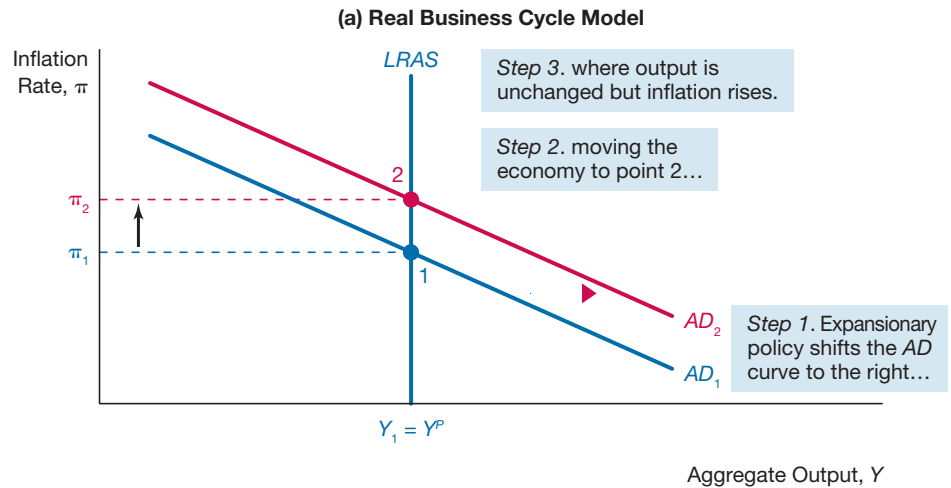
Response to Policy in the Three Business Cycle Models

Model	Response to Unanticipated Expansionary Policy	Response to Anticipated Expansionary Policy	Can Discretionary Policy Be Beneficial?	Response to Unanticipated Anti-Inflation Policy	Response to Anticipated Anti-Inflation Policy	Is Credibility Important to Successful Anti-Inflation Policy
Real Business Cycle Model	Y unchanged, $\pi \uparrow$	Y unchanged, $\pi \uparrow$	No	Y unchanged, $\pi \downarrow$	Y unchanged, $\pi \downarrow$	No
Traditional Keynesian Model	$Y \uparrow, \pi \uparrow$	$Y \uparrow, \pi \uparrow$ by same amount as when policy is unanticipated	Yes	$Y \downarrow, \pi \downarrow$	$Y \downarrow, \pi \downarrow$ by same amount as when policy is unanticipated	No
New Keynesian Model	$Y \uparrow, \pi \uparrow$	$Y \uparrow$ by less than when policy is unanticipated, $\pi \uparrow$ by more than when policy is unanticipated	Yes, but designing a beneficial policy is difficult	$Y \downarrow, \pi \downarrow$	$Y \downarrow$ by less than when policy is unanticipated, $\pi \downarrow$ by more than when policy is unanticipated	Yes

FIGURE 22.6

Comparison of the Short-Run Response to Expansionary Policy in the Three Models

Initially the economy is at point 1 as shown for all three models in panels (a) through (c). The expansionary policy shifts the aggregate demand curve from AD_1 to AD_2 . In the real business cycle model in panel (a), the economy moves immediately to point 2 at the intersection of AD_2 and $LRAS$. In the traditional Keynesian model in panel (b), the expansionary policy moves the economy to point 1', whether the policy is anticipated or not. In the new Keynesian model in panel (c), the expansionary policy moves the economy to point 1' if it is unanticipated and to point 2' if it is anticipated.



Policies to shift the aggregate demand curve therefore cannot affect aggregate output, which is determined by real shocks that cause potential output and the long-run aggregate supply curve to shift. In this view, traditional monetary and fiscal policy are powerless to stabilize output, employment, or unemployment fluctuations.¹¹

What then is the role of macroeconomic policy makers? The real business cycle world is one where the classical dichotomy we discussed in Chapter 5 holds exactly. Monetary policy has no effect on the real side of the economy and only can be directed at controlling inflation. As we found in Chapter 5, monetary policy makers would focus solely on controlling the money supply so that inflation remains low and stable.

TRADITIONAL KEYNESIAN MODEL. Adaptive expectations and sticky prices in the traditional Keynesian model imply that anticipated policy has no effect on expectations and hence on aggregate supply. In the traditional Keynesian model in panel (b), the short-run aggregate supply curve therefore remains at AS_1 whether the expansionary policy is anticipated or not. The economy still moves in panel (b) to point 1' at the intersection of AD_2 with AS_1 , whether the expansionary policy is anticipated or not, with output rising to Y_1 and inflation rising to π_1 . ***The traditional Keynesian model does not distinguish between the effects of anticipated and unanticipated policy: both have the same effect on output and inflation.***

NEW KEYNESIAN MODEL. In the new Keynesian model in panel (c), when expansionary policy is unanticipated, the short-run aggregate supply curve stays at AS_1 and the economy moves to point 1' at the intersection of AD_2 with AS_1 , with output rising to Y_1 and inflation rising to π_1 . Unlike the traditional Keynesian model, however, it recognizes that anticipated policy affects the short-run aggregate supply curve, just as the anticipated aggregate demand shock analyzed earlier does. The AS curve does not shift all the way to AS_2 ; price stickiness does not allow inflation to adjust fully to the anticipated policy in the short run. Instead, when expansionary policy is anticipated, the short-run aggregate supply curve shifts only to AS_2' , and the economy moves to point 2', where output increases to Y_2 and inflation increases to π_2 . Notice that the Y_2 level of output is lower than the Y_1 level reached when the expansionary policy is unanticipated. The new Keynesian model distinguishes between the effects of anticipated and unanticipated policies. ***In the new Keynesian model, anticipated policy has a smaller effect on output than when policy is unanticipated. On the other hand, in the new Keynesian model, anticipated policy has a larger effect on inflation than unanticipated policy.***

Unlike with the real business cycle model, the new Keynesian model does not rule out beneficial effects from policy makers' attempts to stabilize economic activity. However, a policy maker who subscribes to the new Keynesian model has some big hurdles to overcome. First, the policy maker must consider public expectations. A new policy's outcomes hinge on whether the plans are anticipated or unanticipated. Second, the policy maker must consider how his or her actions will affect expectations about future policy. With the new Keynesian IS curve, aggregate demand is not only affected by current policy, but also by expectations about future policy.

The importance of expectations in policy decisions under the new Keynesian model suggests that policy makers must consider both the setting of policy instruments and

¹¹However, fiscal policy which can affect the long-run aggregate supply curve, such as some of the tax cuts discussed in Chapter 16, can be used to stabilize output and unemployment fluctuations.

the **management of expectations**, that is, communication with the public and the markets to influence their expectations about what policy actions will be taken in the future. The role of management of expectations in the conduct of monetary policy has come to the forefront in recent years, as is indicated by the following Policy and Practice case, because of the need for *nonconventional monetary policy*, that is, monetary policy that does not operate through lowering the policy interest rate like the federal funds rate.

Policy and Practice



Management of Expectations and Nonconventional Monetary Policy

When nominal interest rates fall to zero, they simply can't go any lower. The *zero-lower-bound problem* can become serious when an economy enters a deflation, as occurred in the United States during the Great Depression and in Japan in the 1990s. When a deflation sets in, the expected inflation rate becomes negative. From the definition of real interest rates in Chapter 2, $r = i - \pi^e$, with the nominal interest rate unable to go below zero, real interest rates rise. Higher interest rates are the opposite of what a government desires during an economic slowdown. But with nominal rates at zero, monetary authorities cannot lower real interest rates and so must turn to nonconventional monetary policy.

Management of expectations is one important form of nonconventional monetary policy. It has been used twice in recent years in the United States. In the aftermath of the 2001 recession, the Federal Reserve became concerned about deflation and decided to stimulate aggregate demand through management of expectations about future monetary policy. With the federal funds rate target at 1%, in August 2003 the Federal Reserve made an explicit commitment to keep the federal funds rate low for a “considerable period” of time.

As the new Keynesian *IS* curve suggests, this commitment would lower expectations for future real interest rates, causing households and firms to spend more today, thereby boosting aggregate demand. In January 2004, the FOMC watered down its commitment somewhat, saying it could “be patient” before raising rates. In May 2004, the Committee announced that it would begin to raise the federal funds rate, but at a “measured” pace. Starting in June 2004, the Federal Reserve began to raise the federal funds rate target by the same twenty-five basis points (0.25 percentage points) at every scheduled meeting of the FOMC. The Fed only stopped hiking rates by twenty-five basis points at its August 2006 meeting, when it kept the federal funds rate target at $5\frac{1}{4}\%$.

The Fed may have managed to lower expectations of future interest rates a little too well. The economy entered a boom phase, and inflation rose to levels well above what Federal Reserve officials considered was consistent with price stability. Indeed, as discussed in Chapter 15, Fed critics say an overly expansionary monetary policy inflated the housing price bubble that led to such disastrous consequences for the economy when it burst in 2007.

When the 2007–2009 financial crisis reached a particularly virulent stage in the fall of 2008, the economy went into a tailspin. The Fed lowered the federal funds rate target to be in the range from zero to $\frac{1}{4}\%$ in December of 2008. With the federal

funds rate hitting the zero-lower bound, the Fed again turned to management of expectations to stimulate the economy. At the March 2009 FOMC meeting, the Fed committed to keep interest rates low for “an extended period.” In addition, the Fed pursued other nonconventional monetary policy actions, such as acquiring long-term Treasury securities and even private debt securities to unfreeze credit markets, discussed in Chapter 15.

Anti-Inflation Policy

Now let’s look at what happens when policy makers try to reduce inflation in Figure 22.7. Suppose the economy has a 10% inflation rate and is at point 1, at the intersection of the aggregate demand curve AD_1 and the long-run aggregate supply curve $LRAS$. A new Federal Reserve chairman is appointed who decides that inflation must be reduced to the 2% level, a number that he believes is consistent with price stability. To get inflation down to that level, the aggregate demand curve has to shift to the left to AD_2 (by the Fed raising the real interest rate at any given inflation rate) so that the economy eventually moves to point 2 at the intersection of AD_2 and $LRAS$ where inflation is at $\pi_2 = 2\%$. We will examine the effects of pursuing this anti-inflation policy in each model.

REAL BUSINESS CYCLE MODEL. In the real business cycle model in panel (a) where prices are completely flexible, the short-run aggregate supply curve is the same as the long-run aggregate supply curve, $LRAS$. The shift of the aggregate demand curve from AD_1 to AD_2 immediately moves the economy from point 1 to point 2 and aggregate output remains at Y^P . Hence, in the real business cycle model, anti-inflation policy decreases inflation, but does not change real output. ***The real business cycle therefore implies that reductions in inflation have no cost in terms of lower output.***

TRADITIONAL KEYNESIAN MODEL. In the traditional Keynesian model in panel (b), the short-run aggregate supply curve does not change whether the anti-inflationary policy is anticipated or not. Hence when the aggregate demand curve shifts to the left from AD_1 to AD_2 , the economy moves to point 2' (the intersection of the AD_2 and AS_1 curves). The inflation rate does decrease to π_2 , but output falls below potential output to Y_2 . ***In the traditional Keynesian model, reducing inflation is costly, because achieving lower inflation requires a reduction in output.***

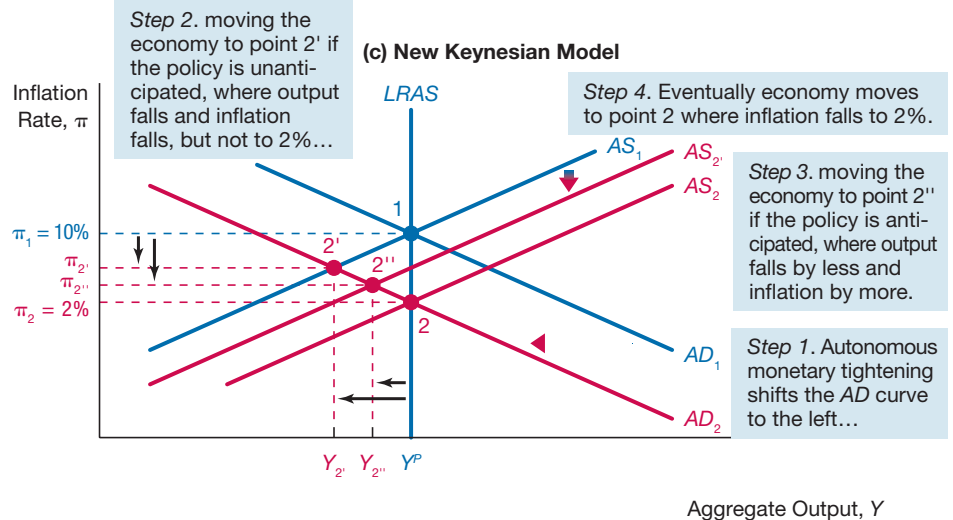
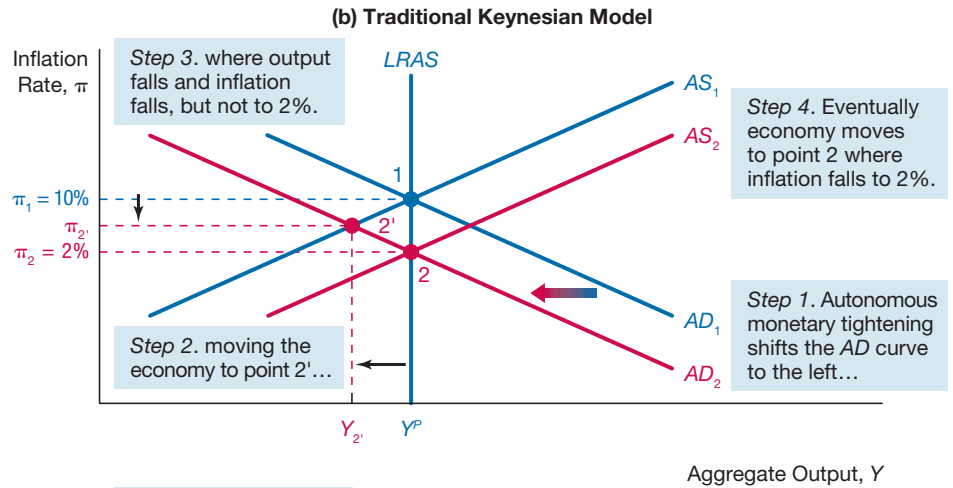
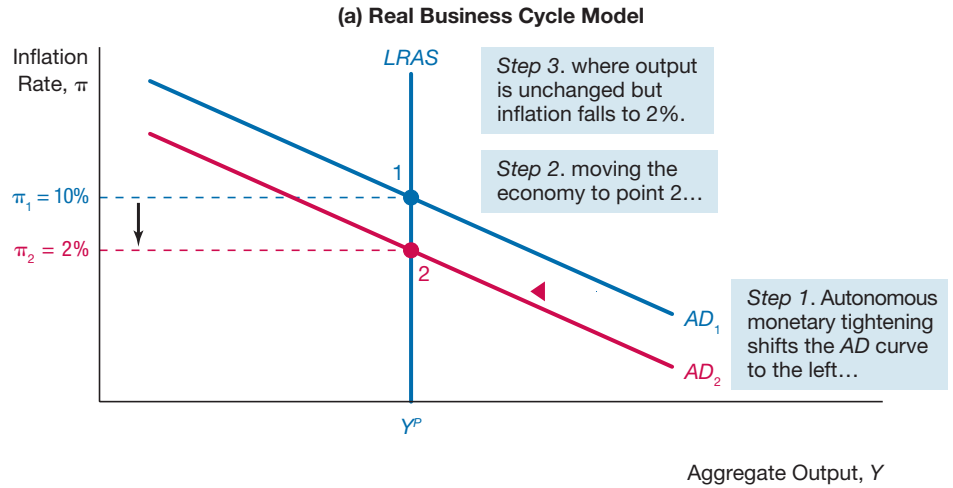
Of course, because output, Y , is below potential output at Y^P , eventually the slack in the economy will cause the short-run aggregate supply curve to shift down to AS_2 and inflation will fall to the 2% target.

NEW KEYNESIAN MODEL. In the new Keynesian model in panel (c), when the anti-inflation policy is unanticipated, then the short-run aggregate supply curve remains at AS_1 and the economy will move to point 2', where AS_1 and AD_2 intersect. Aggregate output has now fallen to Y_2 , while inflation has fallen to π_2 . If, however, the anti-inflation policy is *expected*, the short-run aggregate supply curve will shift down from AS_1 to AS_2'' , but not all the way down to AS_2 as would occur if wages and prices were completely flexible as in the real business cycle model. The economy therefore moves to point 2'', the intersection of AD_2 and AS_2'' . Inflation falls to π_2'' , lower than to π_2 when the anti-inflation policy was unanticipated. Aggregate output falls to Y_2'' , which is a

FIGURE 22.7

Anti-Inflation Policy in the Three Models

Initially, the economy is in equilibrium at point 1 for all three models in panels (a) through (c). Inflation is at $\pi_1 = 10\%$ and the aggregate demand curve shifts to the left from AD_1 to AD_2 so that the economy eventually moves to point 2 at the intersection of AD_2 and $LRAS$ where inflation is at $\pi_2 = 2\%$. In the real business cycle model in panel (a), the economy immediately moves from point 1 to point 2 and aggregate output remains at Y^P . In the traditional Keynesian model, in panel (b), the economy moves to point 2' whether the anti-inflation policy is anticipated or not. In the new Keynesian model in panel (c), the economy moves to point 2' if the policy is unanticipated and to 2'' if it is anticipated.



smaller decline than to Y_2 , which occurs when the policy is unanticipated. ***In the new Keynesian model, anti-inflation policy is costly in terms of lost output. However, the cost is lower when the anti-inflation policy is anticipated.***

Because output, Y , is below potential output at Y^P , eventually the slack in the economy will cause the short-run aggregate supply curve to shift down to AS_2 and inflation will fall to the 2% target. However, the new Keynesian model has the view that for an anti-inflation policy to be successful in reducing inflation at the lowest output cost, the public needs to believe (expect) that the monetary authorities are serious about doing it. Monetary policy makers therefore need to be *credible* when they pursue anti-inflation policies in order for these policies to have the maximum success.

Business Cycle Models with Financial Frictions

Another development in modern business cycle analysis is to recognize the importance of **financial frictions**, impairments to the efficient functioning of financial markets, in business cycle analysis.¹² We do this by a fairly straightforward modification of the aggregate supply and demand analysis we developed in Chapters 9–12.

Shift in the *IS* Curve

Suppose the economy is initially at point 1 in all three panels of Figure 22.8. The real interest rate is at r_1 , output is at $Y_1 = Y^P$, and inflation is at π_1 . Now assume that there is a financial disruption that increases asymmetric information along the lines we discussed in Chapter 15. The increase in asymmetric information problems increases financial frictions and has two effects that cause spending by households and businesses to fall, shifting the *IS* curve inward to the left from IS_1 to IS_2 in panel (b).

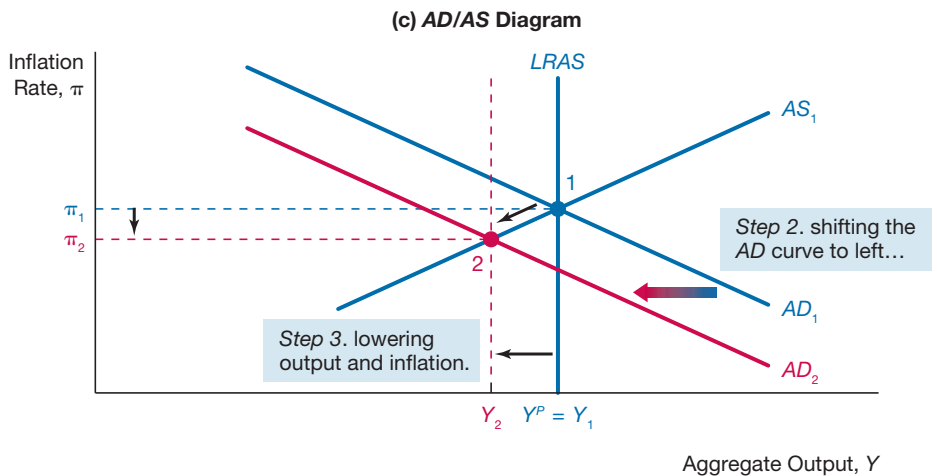
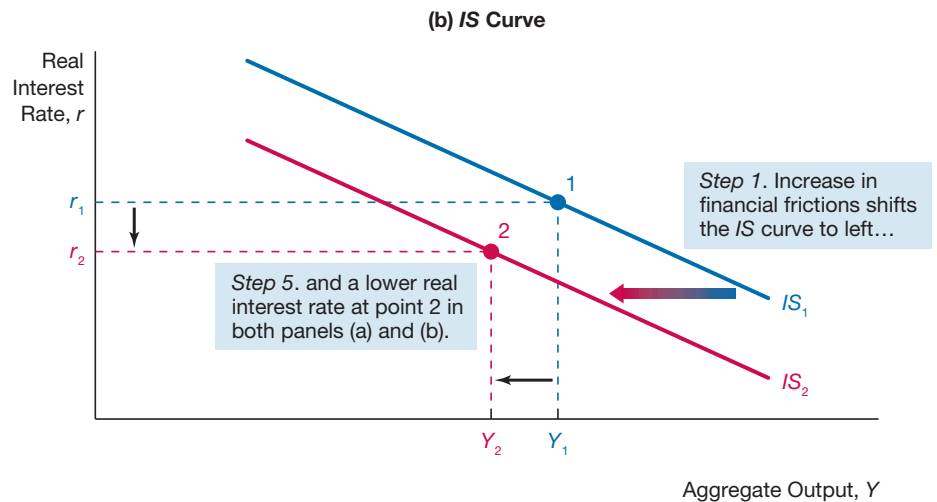
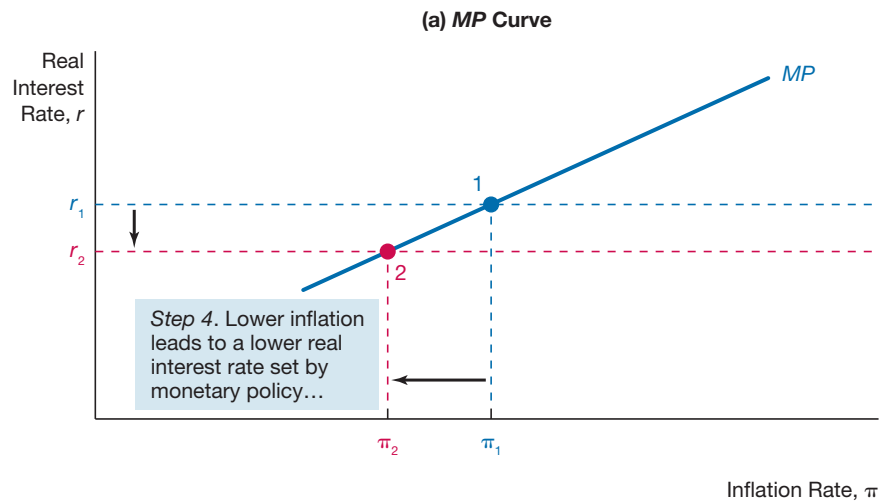
The first effect is that for a given level of the real interest rate set by monetary policy, as shown by the *MP* curve in panel (a), the real interest rate that firms and households have to pay to finance their investments rises. Until now, we have assumed only one interest rate, a reasonable assumption during normal times, since interest rates for different borrowers move closely together. However, this is no longer the case when there is a higher level of credit risk. With greater asymmetric information during a financial crisis, lenders can't easily ascertain the creditworthiness of a borrower. They need to charge a higher interest rate to protect themselves against the possibility that the borrower may not pay back the loan. A sharp rise results in the *credit spread*, the difference between the interest rate on loans to households and businesses and the interest rate on completely safe assets that are sure to be paid back, such as U.S. Treasury securities. The rise in credit spreads suggests that for any given real interest rate set by monetary policy, which is for safe assets, the real interest rate paid by households and businesses rises. As we have seen from the analysis of the *IS* curve developed in Chapter 9, higher real interest rates faced by households and businesses will lead to a decline in their spending, and so the equilibrium level of output falls. The decline in spending thus shifts the *IS* curve inward to the left for any given real interest rate set by monetary policy, as shown in panel (b) of Figure 22.8.

¹²The classic paper on how financial frictions affect the business cycle is Ben S. Bernanke, Mark Gertler, and Simon Gilchrist, "The Financial Accelerator and the Flight to Quality," *Review of Economics and Statistics* 78 (January 1996): 1–15.

FIGURE 22.8

Aggregate Demand and Supply Analysis with Financial Frictions

An increase in financial frictions raises credit spreads, adverse selection, and moral hazard problems, causing investment to fall, which shifts the *IS* curve inward to the left from IS_1 to IS_2 in panel (b). When the *IS* curve shifts from IS_1 to IS_2 , equilibrium output declines for any given real interest rate and inflation rate. The aggregate demand curve also shifts in to the left as shown in panel (c), with the economy moving to point 2, at which output and inflation fall to Y_2 and π_2 . The decline in inflation to π_2 implies that the increase in financial frictions leads to a move to point 2 on both the *IS* and *MP* curves, so that the real interest rate set by monetary policy moves down to r_2 in panels (a) and (b) although the real interest rate faced by households and businesses increases due to the increased credit risk.



The second effect is that the increase in asymmetric information that increases financial frictions will increase moral hazard and adverse selection problems in credit markets, and so will lead directly to a cutback in lending by banks and other financial institutions. With less funds available to households and business to finance their purchases, their spending will fall, also shifting the IS curve in to the left at any given real interest rate.

Shift in the Aggregate Demand Curve and the Effect on Output and Inflation

Figure 22.8 panel (c) shows an aggregate demand and supply diagram describing what happens to output and inflation as a result of the shift of the IS curve. When the IS curve shifts from IS_1 to IS_2 , equilibrium output declines for any given real interest rate, which from the MP curve corresponds to any given inflation rate. The aggregate demand curve thus also shifts in to the left as shown in panel (c) of Figure 22.8 and the economy moves to point 2, at which output and inflation fall from Y_1 and π_1 to Y_2 and π_2 .

Effect on Real Interest Rates

We can now work backwards in panels (a) and (b) to see what happens to real interest rates. The decline in inflation to π_2 implies that the financial crisis leads to a move to point 2 on both the IS and MP curves, so that the real interest rate set by monetary policy moves down from r_1 to r_2 . The real interest rates faced by households and businesses, however, are likely to move in the opposite direction. The increase in asymmetric information is likely to have led to such a large increase in credit spreads that the fall in the interest rate set by monetary policy is more than offset by the increase in credit spreads: interest rates faced by households and businesses will then rise.

The Role of Financial Frictions in Business Cycles

The modification of aggregate demand and supply analysis yields the following conclusion: ***an increase in financial frictions results in a decline in output and inflation, a decline in the real interest rate set by monetary policy, but a rise in the real interest rates faced by households and businesses.***

Financial frictions can thus play an important role in business cycle fluctuations. Indeed, the most severe economic contractions are always associated with a sharp increase in financial frictions that arise when financial crises of the type we discussed in Chapter 15 occur.

Application

Financial Frictions and the 2007–2009 Recession

In the financial crisis of 2007–2009, financial frictions increased more than at any time since the Great Depression of the 1930s. The aggregate demand and supply analysis outlined in Figure 22.8 provides an explanation of how interest rates and the economy evolved during the 2007–2009 recession associated with the financial crisis.

The increase in financial frictions meant that credit spreads jumped sharply, as was previously discussed in Chapter 15, and so at any given federal funds rate, the policy interest rate set by the Federal Reserve, borrowing costs for households and businesses rose. The result was

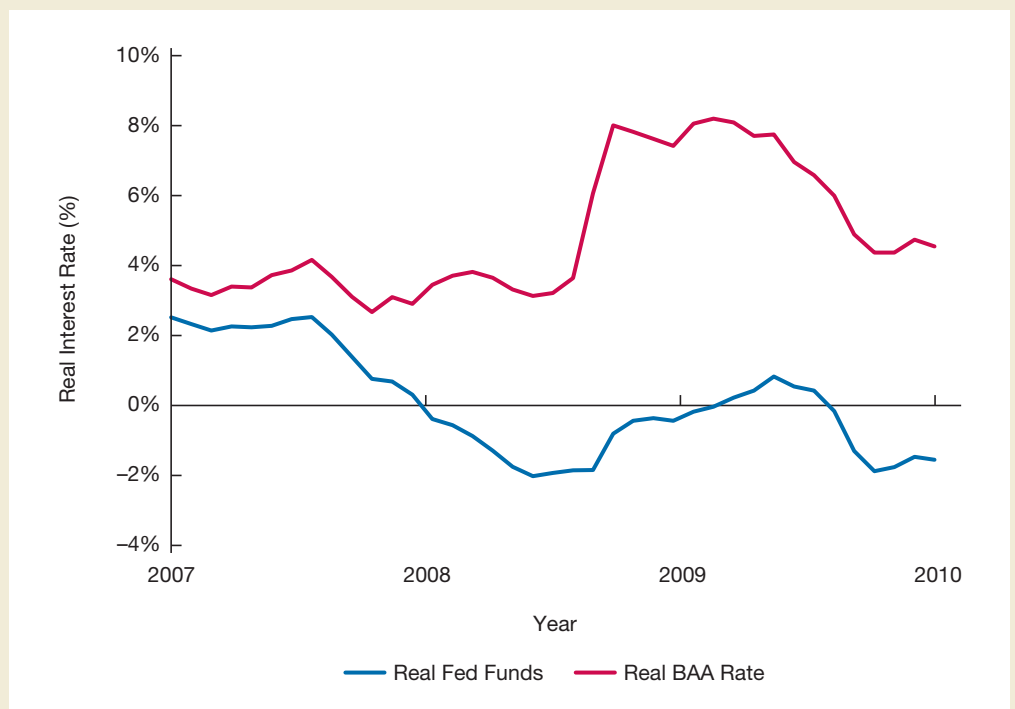
a shift in the IS curve from IS_1 to IS_2 in panel (b) of Figure 22.8, so that spending by households and businesses fell for any given real interest rate set by monetary policy. Indeed, this is exactly what happened with consumption expenditure and investment falling precipitously during the 2007–2009 recession. As we can see in panel (c) the leftward shift of the IS curve led to a leftward shift of the aggregate demand curve, and the result was a decline in both output and inflation. Real GDP declined sharply, falling at a -1.3% annual rate in the third quarter of 2008 and then at a -5.4% and -6.4% annual rate in the next two quarters. Consistent with the aggregate demand and supply analysis of Figure 22.8, inflation also fell precipitously, declining from over 5% at an annual rate to go even negative for a brief period of time in 2009.

The prediction of the aggregate demand and supply analysis in Figure 22.8 for interest rate movements also came to pass. The leftward shift of the IS and AD curves, which led to a decline in inflation also led to a movement down the MP curve, with the real interest rate on the Federal Reserve's policy rate, the federal funds rate, declining from above 2% before the crisis to negative 2% when the crisis became particularly virulent after the Lehman Brothers bankruptcy in September 2008, as is shown in Figure 22.9. (Part of the reason this policy rate went so low resulted from the aggressive actions by the Federal Reserve to offset the negative shock to the economy from the financial crisis by easing monetary policy, as was discussed in Chapter 15.) However, the sharp increase in credit spreads meant that real interest rates faced by households and businesses (as represented by the Baa corporate bond rate) did not fall with the real federal funds rate, and even rose sharply after the Lehman Brothers bankruptcy, rising from below the 4% level to around the 8% level in the fall of 2008 and the winter and spring of 2009.

FIGURE 22.9

Real Interest Rates in the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis

The real interest rate on the policy rate set by the Federal Reserve, the federal funds rate, fell from 2.5% before the crisis to -2% during the height of the crisis. In contrast, the real interest rate faced by households and businesses (as represented by the rate of Baa corporate bonds) did not fall with the real fed funds rate, and even rose in October 2008 when the crisis became particularly virulent.



Source: Nominal fed funds rate and nominal Baa corporate bond rate from FRED, Federal Reserve Economic Data, Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis; <http://research.stlouisfed.org/fred2>; accessed September 30, 2010. Real rates calculated by subtracting expected inflation using author's calculations (see Figure 5.5, panel (a) in Chapter 5).

SUMMARY

1. The real business model is very classical because it assumes wages and prices are completely flexible whether shocks are anticipated or not. The real business cycle model sees business cycle fluctuations as coming solely from real shocks, shocks to productivity, or the willingness of workers to work that cause fluctuations in potential output and long-run aggregate supply.
2. The new Keynesian model also assumes that expectations are rational but views wages and prices as sticky. The new Keynesian model distinguishes between the effects from anticipated and unanticipated policy: anticipated policy has a smaller effect on aggregate output than unanticipated policy. However, anticipated policy does matter to output fluctuations.
3. The real business cycle model views discretionary policy as counterproductive, while the traditional and new Keynesian models suggest that discretionary policy might be beneficial. However, the new Keynesian model indicates that there is uncertainty about the outcome of a particular policy, so the design of a beneficial discretionary policy may be very difficult. A traditional Keynesian model in which expectations about policy have no effect on the short-run aggregate supply curve does not distinguish between the effects of anticipated or unanticipated policy. This model favors discretionary policy, because the outcome of a particular policy is less uncertain. In addition, the traditional Keynesian model sees anti-inflation policy as very costly, while the new Keynesian model sees it as less costly, with the real business cycle model not seeing any cost to anti-inflation policy.
4. Business cycle models with financial frictions indicate that an increase in financial frictions results in a decline in output and inflation, a decline in the real interest rate set by monetary policy, but a rise in the real interest rates faced by households and businesses.

KEY TERMS

dynamic, stochastic, general equilibrium (DSGE) models, p. 571
 financial frictions, p. 584
 intertemporal substitution, p. 569

labor hoarding, p. 570
 management of expectations, p. 581
 new Keynesian model, p. 571
 real business cycle model, p. 567

real shocks, p. 567
 Solow residuals, p. 568
 traditional Keynesian model, p. 576

REVIEW QUESTIONS

All questions are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

Real Business Cycle Model

1. What are the key ideas of the real business cycle model? How does it explain business cycle fluctuations?
2. What objections to the real business cycle model have been raised?

New Keynesian Model

3. How do new Keynesian ideas about price setting and inflation expectations affect the short-run aggregate supply curve?
4. How do new Keynesian ideas about expectations affect the *IS* and aggregate demand curves?
5. In the new Keynesian model, what shocks cause business cycle fluctuations? Does it matter whether these shocks are anticipated or unanticipated? Explain.

Comparison of Business Cycle Models

6. Compare the traditional Keynesian, new Keynesian, and real business cycle models in terms of expectations, price flexibility, and potential sources of business cycle fluctuations.
7. How do the traditional Keynesian, new Keynesian, and real business cycle models differ in their analysis of the effects of expansionary policy?
8. How do the traditional Keynesian, new Keynesian, and real business cycle models differ in their analysis of the effects of anti-inflation policy?

Business Cycle Models with Financial Frictions

9. What are financial frictions and how do they affect the *IS* curve?
10. What role do financial frictions play in starting or intensifying recessions?

PROBLEMS

All problems are available in  at www.myeconlab.com.

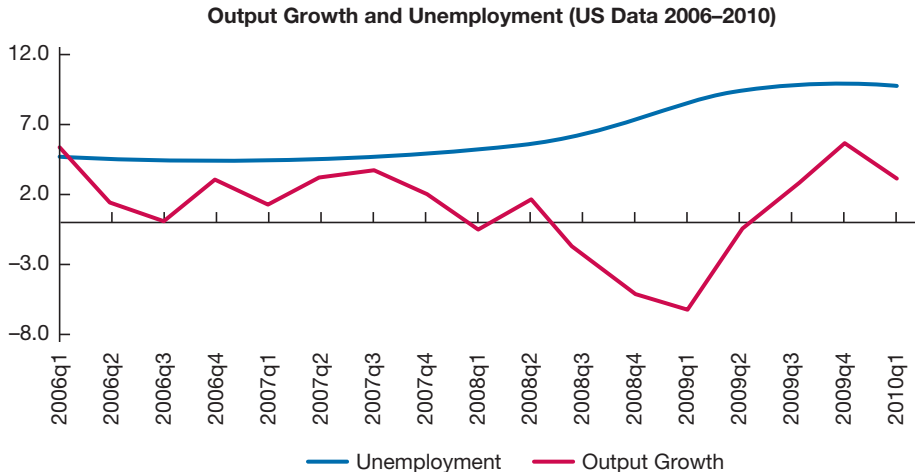
Real Business Cycle Model

1. Assume the following production function: $Y_t = AK_t^{0.4}L_t^{0.6}$. The capital stock and output are measured in trillions and the labor stock is measured in millions of people.
 - a) Using the value of output and the capital and labor stocks, calculate the Solow residual and its growth rate for each period. Note: calculate growth rates for periods 2–6.
 - b) Plot the Solow's residual (technology) growth rate and the output growth rate for periods 2–6. Does this table constitute evidence in favor of real business cycle theory? Why?

Variable	Period 1	Period 2	Period 3
Capital (K)	1	1	1.1
Labor (L)	32	33	32
Output (Y)	10.0	10.6	11.6
Technology (A)			

Variable	Period 4	Period 5	Period 6
Capital (K)	1	0.95	1
Labor (L)	32	32	32
Output (Y)	10.8	10.4	10.8
Technology (A)			

2. The following graph is based on quarterly data on unemployment and real output growth in the United States between 2006(q1) and 2010(q1). Is this data consistent with the real business cycle theory hypothesis about the relationship between output and unemployment?
3. The following is an excerpt from a BLS report (www.bls.gov/opub/ils/pdf/opbils74.pdf) published in April 2009: “Among the marginally attached, the number of discouraged workers rose to 717,000 in the first quarter of 2009, a 70-percent increase from the first quarter of 2008.” Do you think this statement is consistent with the real business cycle theory proposition that all unemployment is voluntary?



Sources: Bureau of Labor Statistics. www.bls.gov; and Bureau of Economic Analysis. www.bea.gov

New Keynesian Model

4. Using the graphic representation of the new Keynesian model, describe the effects of an unanticipated negative demand shock (label this equilibrium as point 2). Compare this to an anticipated negative demand shock (label this equilibrium as point 3).
5. According to the *Wall Street Journal* (March 31, 2010), the Conference Board’s gauge of consumer confidence increased by around 100% between February 2009 and February 2010 in the United States. Use the New Keynesian model to describe the effects on output and inflation depending on whether the surge in consumer’s confidence was anticipated or unanticipated.

Comparison of Business Cycle Models

6. For each of the following cases, determine which would be the preferred macroeconomic model to analyze business fluctuations.
 - a) Most wages are the result of collective bargaining and are therefore quite rigid. In addition, expectations are based mostly on past data.
 - b) Few prices are rigid, and economic agents’ expectations respond quickly to changes in variables and policy changes that affect how macroeconomic variables are determined.
7. Speeches made by Federal Reserve officials are an integral part of the Fed’s management of expectations strategy. In a speech made in November 2002, then Fed Governor, Ben Bernanke, stated that the government might cut taxes, increase the federal deficit, and issue bonds that the Fed would buy by printing money, when trying to reassure individuals that the Fed would try to avoid a general decrease in prices if needed. Comment on the effect of this speech on expectations about the Fed’s credibility about fighting inflation.

8. Suppose the Obama administration is forced to increase taxes to pay for the cost of the health care reform in the United States. Describe the effect of such a policy according

to the three business cycle models if this increase in taxes is fully anticipated by economic agents.

Business Cycle Models with Financial Frictions

9. Consider the effect of a financial crisis in a developing country using the business cycle model with financial friction. Compare the effects on output, inflation, and unemployment in a developing country to the effects on the same variables in a developed country.
10. Consider the effect of a financial crisis using the business cycle model with financial frictions in

the case where the central bank does not follow the monetary policy rule (as described in panel (a) in Figure 22.8). In particular, assume that the policy interest rate does not decrease as inflation decreases. How would this lack of action from the central bank affect output, inflation, and unemployment?



MYECONLAB CAN HELP YOU GET A BETTER GRADE.

If your exam were tomorrow, would you be ready? For each chapter, MyEconLab Practice Test and Study Plans pinpoint which sections you have mastered and which ones you need to study. That way, you are more efficient with your study time, and you are better prepared for your exams.

To see how it works, turn to page 17 and then go to www.myeconlab.com.



Epilogue

Policy and Practice: Where Do Macroeconomists Agree and Disagree?

Preview

Economists are a contentious lot, and this is particularly true of macroeconomists. With the 2007–2009 financial crisis and the recession that started in December 2007, macroeconomists of different persuasions, classical versus Keynesian, had very different views on what policy makers should do. Keynesian economists argued that both the Federal Reserve and the U.S. government should pursue aggressive expansionary policies to stimulate the economy, with some arguing that the measures taken were not aggressive enough, while classical economists saw the actions taken by the Fed and the U.S. government as counterproductive: they would not help much in getting output and employment to increase but would likely lead to higher inflation.

With the rational expectations revolution, the new approaches to business cycle theory, and new research on what drives economic development, there have been dramatic changes in the way macroeconomists think about the conduct of macroeconomic policy. Although there are some important differences among macroeconomists on how policy should be conducted, there has been a remarkable amount of convergence on some of the key principles of macroeconomic policy making. We will discuss where the field of macroeconomics stands today and the areas on which macroeconomists agree and disagree.

Where Macroeconomists Agree

As we have seen, the three modern theories of the business cycle have much in common. Not surprisingly, their development and additional research in macroeconomics that we have discussed throughout this book have led to a set of principles with regard

to policy and practice. These principles, on which almost all modern macroeconomists agree, have been given the name the **new neoclassical synthesis**. Here we look at how the macroeconomics field has developed in recent decades and examine each of the principles of the new neoclassical synthesis in turn.¹

Inflation Is Always and Everywhere a Monetary Phenomenon

In the wake of the Great Depression and the publication of Keynes's *The General Theory of Employment, Interest and Money* in 1936, the majority of economists in the 1950s and 1960s had become Keynesians who did not view monetary policy as a key factor in developments in the aggregate economy. Research by Milton Friedman and his followers, who later became known as monetarists, argued that the growth in the money supply was a key determinant of aggregate economic activity, particularly inflation, along the lines we discussed in Chapter 5. This led Milton Friedman to opine, as discussed in Chapter 5, that "Inflation is always and everywhere a monetary phenomenon." Although the majority of the macroeconomics profession has not come to the view that money growth is always the most critical piece of information about where inflation will head in the short run, the profession has reached a consensus agreeing with Friedman's adage, because, as we saw in Chapter 13, monetary policy determines the inflation rate in the long run.

The Benefits of Price Stability

With the rise of inflation in the 1960s and 1970s, not only economists, but also politicians and the public, began to discuss the high costs of inflation. A high inflationary environment leads to overinvestment in the financial sector, which expands because it can earn profits by helping individuals and businesses escape some of the costs of inflation. High inflation, which is generally accompanied by high volatility of inflation, leads to uncertainty about the future price level, making it harder for firms and individuals to plan and make appropriate decisions, thereby decreasing economic efficiency. The interaction of the tax system and inflation also increases distortions that adversely affect economic activity.² The recognition of the high costs of inflation led to the view that *price stability*, that is low and stable inflation, can increase the level of resources productively employed in the economy and can help increase the rate of economic growth.

No Long-Run Tradeoff Between Unemployment and Inflation

The dominance of Keynesian thinking in the 1950s and 1960s stemmed from the view that the Great Depression was directly the result of policy inaction when adverse shocks hit the economy. This insight led to an era of policy activism in the 1960s in which

¹The "term new neoclassical synthesis" was invented by Marvin Goodfriend and Robert G. King in "The New Neoclassical Synthesis and the Role of Monetary Policy," *NBER Macroeconomics Annual* 12 (1997): 231–283. For an excellent recent survey on the new neoclassical synthesis and where macroeconomists agree, see Michael Woodford "Convergence in Macroeconomics: Elements of the New Synthesis," *American Economic Journal: Macroeconomics* 1 (2009): 267–279.

²For excellent surveys of the cost of inflation, see Stanley Fischer, "The Role of Macroeconomic Factors in Growth," *Journal of Monetary Economics* 32 (December 1993): 485–512; and Palle Anderson and David Gruen, "Macroeconomic Policies and Growth," in *Productivity and Growth: Proceedings of a Conference held at the H.C. Coombs Centre for Financial Studies, Kirribilli, Australia, July 10-11*, eds. Palle Anderson, Jacqueline Dwyer, and David Gruen (Sydney: Reserve Bank of Australia, 1995), 279–319.

Keynesian economists argued that they could fine tune the economy to produce maximum employment with only slight inflationary consequences. Particularly influential in this thinking was a paper published in 1960 by Nobel prize winners Paul Samuelson and Robert Solow,³ which argued that the Phillips curve suggested that there was a long-run tradeoff between unemployment and inflation and that this tradeoff should be exploited. Indeed, Samuelson and Solow even mentioned that a nonperfectionist goal of a 3% unemployment rate could be attained at what they considered to be a low inflation rate of 4–5% per year. This thinking, not only by Samuelson and Solow, but also by the then-dominant Keynesian economists, led to increased monetary and fiscal policy activism to push the economy to full employment and keep it there. However, the subsequent economic record was not a happy one: inflation accelerated, with the inflation rate in the United States and other industrialized countries eventually climbing above 10% in the 1970s, leading to the “Great Inflation,” which we discussed in Chapter 13. In the meantime, the unemployment rate rose from the level it had been in the 1950s.

In 1967 and 1968, Milton Friedman, as well as his fellow Nobel Prize winner Edmund Phelps of Columbia University, argued that there was no long-run tradeoff between unemployment and inflation: rather the economy would gravitate to some natural rate of unemployment in the long run no matter what the rate of inflation was.⁴ In other words, the long-run Phillips curve would be vertical, and attempts to lower unemployment below the natural rate (or output above potential) would only result in higher inflation. Eventually empirical research confirmed that there was no long-run tradeoff between unemployment and inflation and so macroeconomists came to assume that the long-run aggregate supply curve is vertical, as is the case for the aggregate demand and supply analysis used throughout this book.

The Crucial Role of Expectations

Starting in the early 1970s, in a series of papers discussed in Chapter 21, Robert Lucas launched the rational expectations revolution, which demonstrated that the public and the markets’ expectations of policy actions have important effects on almost every sector of the economy. The theory of rational expectations emphasized that economic agents should be driven by optimizing behavior and therefore their expectations of future variables should be optimal forecasts (the best guess of the future) using all available information. Because the optimizing behavior posited by rational expectations indicates that expectations should respond immediately to new information, rational expectations suggest that it might not take very long to get to the long run. Therefore, attempting to lower unemployment below the natural rate could lead to higher inflation very quickly. In addition, the rational expectations revolution implies that the impact of monetary policy on the economy is substantially influenced by whether it is anticipated or not. This proposition has become widely accepted and is a feature of all the modern business cycle theories we discussed in Chapter 22.

Another key result from the rational expectations revolution is that expectations about what monetary policy will be in the future have an important impact on the evolution of economic activity, as is emphasized in the new Keynesian model. This result

³Paul A. Samuelson and Robert M. Solow, “Analytical Aspects of Anti-Inflation Policy,” *American Economic Review* 50 (May 1960): 177–194.

⁴Milton Friedman, “The Role of Monetary Policy,” *American Economic Review* 58 (March 1968): 1–17; and Edmund Phelps, “Money-Wage Dynamics and Labor-Market Equilibrium,” *Journal of Political Economy* 76 (July/August 1967, Part 2): 687–711.

implies that the conduct of monetary policy needs to involve the current setting of policy instruments, as well as management of expectations about future policy. The crucial role of management of expectations, discussed in Chapter 22, has been emphasized by Michael Woodford of Columbia University, one of the leading new Keynesian theorists. The recognition that management of expectations is a central element in monetary policy making raises to the forefront the credibility of monetary policy authorities. Furthermore, it highlights the importance of actions by the monetary authorities because “actions speak louder than words”: monetary authorities will only be believed if they take actions that are consistent with how they want expectations to be managed.

The Taylor Principle

The recognition that economic outcomes depend on expectations of monetary policy suggests that policy evaluation requires the comparison of economic performance under different monetary policy rules. The Taylor rule we discussed earlier in Chapter 13 has received enormous attention in the literature on monetary policy. It advises that monetary policy set the policy interest rate (the federal funds rate) in response to the deviation of inflation from its desired level or target (the inflation gap) and the deviation of output from potential output (the output gap). Taylor emphasized that a rule of this type had desirable properties and, in particular, would stabilize inflation only if the coefficient on the inflation gap exceeded unity. This conclusion came to be known as the “Taylor principle,” establishing the view that monetary policy must raise the nominal interest rate by more than the rise in inflation so that real interest rates rise in response to a rise in inflation. Although the Taylor principle now is followed by almost all central banks, during the late 1960s and 1970s many central banks, including the Federal Reserve, violated the Taylor principle, resulting in the “Great Inflation” that so many countries experienced in the 1970s and early 1980s. Indeed, as inflation rose in the United States during this period, real interest rates fell. With the adoption of the Taylor principle by central banks in recent years, inflation has remained low throughout the world.

The Time-Inconsistency Problem

Another important development in macroeconomics that emanated from the rational expectations revolution was the discovery of the importance of the time-inconsistency problem, developed and discussed in papers by Finn Kydland, Edward Prescott, Guillermo Calvo, Robert Barro, and David Gordon.⁵ As we discussed in Chapter 21, the time-inconsistency problem arises because monetary policy conducted on a discretionary, day-by-day basis may lead to poor long-run outcomes. However, even if a central bank recognizes that discretionary policy will lead to a poor outcome—high inflation with no gains in output—and so renounces it, the time-inconsistency problem is likely to arise nonetheless from political pressure. In the view of many observers, politicians in a democratic society are shortsighted because they are driven by the need to win their next election so they are unlikely to focus on long-run objectives, such as

⁵Finn Kydland and Edward Prescott, “Rules Rather Than Discretion: The Inconsistency of Optimal Plans,” *Journal of Political Economy* 85 (1977): 473–491; and Guillermo Calvo, “On the Time Consistency of Optimal Policy in the Monetary Economy,” *Econometrica* 46 (November 1978): 1411–1428. The classic application to monetary policy is found in Robert J. Barro and David Gordon, “A Positive Theory of Monetary Policy in a Natural Rate Model,” *Journal of Political Economy* 91 (August 1983): 589–610.

promoting a stable price level. Instead they will seek short-run solutions to problems like high unemployment or interest rates by calling on the central bank to lower interest rates and unemployment with overly expansionary monetary policy.

Central Bank Independence

Making central banks independent can help insulate them from political pressures to pursue overly expansionary policy and thus help them to avoid the time-inconsistency problem. Independence insulates the central bank from the myopia that is frequently a feature of the political process arising from politicians' concerns about getting elected in the near future and should thus lead to better policy outcomes. As we saw in Chapter 21, evidence supports the conjecture that macroeconomic performance is improved when central banks are more independent. When ranking central banks in industrialized countries from least independent to most independent, the inflation performance is the best for countries with the most independent central banks.

Commitment to a Nominal Anchor

The inability of monetary policy to boost employment in the long run, the importance of expectations, the benefits of price stability, and the time-inconsistency problem provide the rationale for why commitment to a nominal anchor—that is, stabilization of a nominal variable such as the inflation rate, the money supply, or an exchange rate—is so crucial to successful macroeconomic policy outcomes.

As we saw in Chapter 21, an institutional commitment to price stability via establishing a nominal anchor provides a counterbalance to the time-inconsistency problem because it makes it clear that the central bank must focus on the long-run and thus resist the temptation to pursue short-run expansionary policies that are inconsistent with the nominal anchor. Commitment to a nominal anchor can also encourage the government to be more fiscally responsible, which also makes high inflation less likely, as we saw in Chapter 16. When a government has committed to a nominal anchor, it is difficult for it to run large budget deficits. Politicians may be more likely to recognize that eventually they will have to pay for current deficit spending by raising taxes and will not be able to resort to the so-called inflation tax, the printing of money to pay for goods and services that leads to more inflation and is thus inconsistent with the price stability goal.

Commitment to a nominal anchor also leads to policy actions that promote price stability, which helps promote economic efficiency and growth. The commitment to a nominal anchor helps stabilize inflation expectations, which in turn reduces fluctuations in actual inflation. Commitment to a nominal anchor is therefore a crucial element in successfully managing expectations and a successful commitment to a nominal anchor has been found to produce not only more stable inflation, but lower volatility of output as well.⁶

Credibility

With the advent of rational expectations, macroeconomists have come to understand that credibility is central to successful policy making. In Chapters 21 and 22, we saw that monetary policy credibility has the benefit of stabilizing inflation and also business

⁶For a survey of the empirical research that supports this conclusion, see Frederic S. Mishkin and Klaus Schmidt-Hebbel, "Does Inflation Targeting Matter?" in *Monetary Policy Under Inflation Targeting*, eds. Frederic S. Mishkin and Klaus Schmidt-Hebbel (Santiago: Central Bank of Chile, 2007), 291–372.

cycle fluctuations. In Chapter 22, we have seen that credibility of anti-inflation policies is crucial to decreasing the cost of reducing inflation in terms of lost output.

Institutions Rule

Research over the last twenty or so years, described in Chapter 7, has led macroeconomists to the recognition that fundamental institutions such as well-defined property rights and the absence of corruption are crucial to achieving high economic growth. As mentioned in Chapter 7, this view has been described by Dani Rodrik of Harvard University as, “Institutions Rule.” But how do you get institutions to change in a positive direction? Institutional reform is not an easy task, and how to get this to happen is one of the most difficult problems facing economists who study economic development and growth.

Where Macroeconomists Disagree

Although the macroeconomics profession now agrees on a large number of principles, as this epilogue and earlier chapters indicate, substantial disagreements remain, particularly with regard to business cycle analysis and policy and practice. (Indeed, this is what keeps the field so dynamic and interesting.) There are six basic areas of disagreements: 1) how flexible wages and prices are, 2) how long it takes to get to the long run, 3) the sources of business cycle fluctuations, 4) whether stabilization policy is worthwhile, 5) how costly it is to reduce inflation, and 6) how dangerous budget deficits are. Economists generally fall into two camps on these issues, classical and Keynesian. We discuss how views from each of these camps differ for each of these issues.

Flexibility of Wages and Prices

Classicals and Keynesians have very different views on the subject of the flexibility of wages and prices.

CLASSICAL VIEW. As we have seen, classical economists, which include real business cycle and new classical theorists, view wages and prices as being very flexible. The assumption of complete wage and price flexibility in the real business cycle model leads to the classical dichotomy that real variables are not affected by monetary policy and so aggregate output is always at its potential level. Classicals are comfortable analyzing macroeconomic issues from a perspective of optimizing agents in which markets clear very quickly. They use frameworks in which wages and prices are very flexible, like those described in Part 2 of this book. They even use them to think about short-run business cycle fluctuations.

KEYNESIAN VIEW. In contrast, Keynesian economists, including new Keynesians, see wages and prices as sticky in the short run. They do not accept the classical dichotomy and see monetary policy as having important real effects on the economy. They are comfortable with using flexible price frameworks only for long-run analysis.

How Much Time It Takes to Get to the Long Run

Classical and Keynesian macroeconomists disagree over how much time it takes to get to the long run.

CLASSICAL VIEW. Because they assume that wages and prices are flexible, classical economists see that it takes only a very short time to get to the long run. Flexible wages and prices move the economy to the long run very quickly. As a result, they are comfortable using classical, long-run frameworks to think about macroeconomic issues.

KEYNESIAN VIEW. Some Keynesian economists, on the other hand, believe that it takes a long time indeed to get to the long run because they subscribe to Keynes's adage that, "in the long run we are all dead." Because wages and prices adjust only slowly over time, they believe that the economy may take a very long time to reach its long-run equilibrium. However, with the advent of rational expectations and the focus on macroeconomic modeling that is solidly grounded on microeconomic foundations, new Keynesian economists see the economy as moving to the long run far more quickly than traditional Keynesians who adopt the view that expectations may be slow to adjust because they are adaptive. Further, traditional Keynesians are skeptical of some of the microfoundations employed in dynamic, stochastic, general equilibrium models, and reject the use of long-run models to analyze short-run effects of discretionary policies.

Hence different Keynesian economists can have different views of how much time it takes to get to the long run. Some Keynesian economists are more comfortable using classical frameworks like those in Part 2 for some of their analysis because they believe it doesn't take very long to get to the long run. Others are less comfortable using classical models and prefer using models like the aggregate demand and supply model to analyze what is happening to the economy.

Sources of Business Cycle Fluctuations

The sources of business cycle fluctuations is another polarizing area for classical and Keynesian economists.

CLASSICAL VIEW. Real business cycle theorists see fluctuations in economic activity as coming solely from shocks to long-run aggregate supply. Because they do not attribute economic fluctuations to aggregate demand shocks, they are perfectly comfortable with analyzing business cycle fluctuations with little regard to aggregate demand.

KEYNESIAN VIEW. Keynesian economists, on the other hand, see demand shocks as an important source of business cycle fluctuations because the short-run aggregate supply curve is not vertical. Here again, there are different types of Keynesians. New Keynesian economists see the short-run aggregate supply curve as shifting faster than traditional Keynesians because they embed the concept of rational expectations in their models. This suggests that expectations of inflation adjust quickly, causing the short-run aggregate supply curve to shift more rapidly. As we just discussed, different Keynesians also have diverging views on the flexibility of prices and therefore on how much time it takes to get to the long run.

Even new Keynesians differ in their views on how flexible prices are; depending on their beliefs regarding price flexibility, they may have views that are closer to real business cycle theorists than to traditional Keynesians. Indeed, we have seen that the real business cycle model is actually a special case of the new Keynesian model. If prices become completely flexible, the short-run aggregate supply curve becomes identical to the long-run aggregate supply curve. New Keynesians can therefore have very different views on how much business cycle fluctuations are due to demand shocks versus supply shocks. Some new Keynesian models give a prominent role to

fluctuations in long-run aggregate supply in explaining business cycle fluctuations, while others see fluctuations in aggregate demand as being far more important.

Effectiveness of Stabilization Policy

Classical and Keynesian economists also debate the value of active policy making on the health of the macroeconomy.

CLASSICAL VIEW. Classical economists, whether they are new classicals or real business cycle theorists, see almost no role for policy makers to try to stabilize real economic activity. Since their models fix the economy at full employment, there is obviously no need to stimulate aggregate demand using discretionary policy. In real business cycle models, policy to stabilize the economy has no effect on the real economy because it is solely determined by the position of the long-run aggregate supply curve and not on the position of the aggregate demand curve. Macroeconomic policy that shifts the aggregate demand curve simply causes inflation to fluctuate. Adherents of the real business cycle model therefore take the view that the self-correcting mechanism described in Chapter 12 is rapid and so policies used to stabilize real economic activity are likely to do little good. They oppose stabilization policy that is both active and discretionary because it can adversely impact inflation.

KEYNESIAN VIEW. Traditional Keynesian economists see stabilization policy as having benefits. Their view that it takes a long time to get to the long run implies that the self-correcting mechanism is very slow. Activist policies to stabilize economic fluctuations are highly beneficial because they can reduce economic fluctuations and reduce the severity of the business cycle. Because traditional Keynesians do not view expectations as changing rapidly, they view time-inconsistency as less of a problem. They thus see less of a problem with discretionary policies than classical economists.

The new Keynesian model does allow a role for active policies to stabilize real economic activity because anticipated policy *does* matter to economic fluctuations. Policy makers can count on some output response from their anticipated policies and can use them to stabilize the economy. However, because new Keynesians believe in rational expectations so that expectations can change rapidly, they recognize that designing activist policies to stabilize the economy is far from easy. The effects of anticipated and unanticipated policy will not be the same. Policy makers will encounter more uncertainty about the outcome of their actions because they cannot be sure to what extent policy is anticipated. Hence an activist policy is unlikely to operate as intended and fully achieve its goals. Furthermore, their acceptance of rational expectations means that new Keynesians take the time-inconsistency problem very seriously and are not enamored of discretionary policies. Again, because new Keynesians have different views on wage and price flexibility, they can disagree on how active stabilization policy should be.

Cost of Reducing Inflation

By the end of the 1970s, the high inflation rate (over 10%) made the reduction of inflation the primary concern of policy makers. The cost in terms of output of reducing inflation is described by a concept called the **sacrifice ratio**, the percentage reduction of real GDP that is necessary to reduce the inflation rate by one percentage point, that is,

$$\text{Sacrifice Ratio} = \frac{\% \Delta Y}{\% \Delta \pi} \quad (1)$$

For example if it takes a cumulative decline of 15% of real GDP to achieve a 5% decline in inflation, then the sacrifice ratio is 3 ($= 15/5$). The higher the sacrifice ratio, the higher the cost of reducing inflation, and the more reluctant policy makers will be to pursue contractionary policies to lower inflation. Classical and Keynesian economists, however, have quite different views on how costly it is to reduce inflation.

CLASSICAL VIEW. As we saw in the analysis of anti-inflation policies, classical models with flexible prices see sacrifice ratios and the costs of anti-inflation policies as quite low. In the real business cycle model, the sacrifice ratio is even zero: contractionary policy to lower inflation has no cost at all since contractionary policy has no impact on aggregate output.

KEYNESIAN VIEW. The traditional Keynesian view sees the aggregate supply curve shifting down only slowly over time because prices are sticky and because expectations of inflation adjust slowly. Thus, as we saw earlier, anti-inflation policies are likely to lead to large losses of output. Traditional Keynesian estimates of sacrifice ratios in the late 1970s and early 1980s put them around 5; that is, it would take a reduction of output by 5% to lower the inflation rate by one percentage point.⁷ Reducing inflation would then be very costly indeed. New Keynesian models, however, are far more sanguine about the cost of anti-inflation policies because they assume that expectations are rational. If anti-inflation policies are credible, the rational expectations assumption in new Keynesian models suggest that there will be a small decline in output from their implementation.

However, in New Keynesian models, if anti-inflation policies are not credible, then they can be very costly and the sacrifice ratio will be high. But how do you establish credibility for these policies? You might think that an announcement by policy makers at the Federal Reserve that they plan to pursue an anti-inflation policy might do the trick. The public would expect this policy and would act accordingly. However, that conclusion implies that the public will believe the policy makers' announcement. Unfortunately, that is not how the real world works. The Federal Reserve, for example, has not always done what it set out to do. In fact, during the 1970s, the Chairman of the Federal Reserve Board, Arthur Burns, repeatedly announced that the Fed would pursue a vigorous anti-inflation policy. The actual policy pursued, however, had quite a different outcome. Money growth during the Burns era was very high and real interest was very low, even turning negative for several years. The result of this easy monetary policy was a soaring inflation rate. Such episodes reduced the credibility of the Federal Reserve in the eyes of the public, and as predicted by the New Keynesian model, the reduction of inflation from 1980 to 1983 was bought at a very high cost.

The Dangers of Budget Deficits

With the massive government budget deficits in the United States and so many other countries throughout the world in recent years, amounting to over 10% of GDP in many cases, government fiscal imbalances have become one of the most talked about topics

⁷For example, see Arthur M. Okun, "Efficient Disinflationary Policies," *American Economic Review* 68 (May 1978): 348–352; and Robert J. Gordon and Stephen R. King, "The Output Cost of Disinflation in Traditional and Vector Autoregressive Models," *Brookings Papers on Economic Activity* 1 (1982): 205–245.

among both macroeconomists and the general public. In Chapter 16, we saw that two groups of macroeconomists have very different views about whether budget deficits are a big problem or not.

The majority of macroeconomists see budget deficits as highly dangerous. They believe that government budget deficits lead to a reduction of national savings, which leads to lower investment and a greater burden on future generations, both because they raise future taxes and because they also increase indebtedness to foreigners. The majority of economists also believe that budget deficits are inflationary because at some point they can drive the monetary authorities to monetize the debt, leading to an expansion of the money supply, which then produces a rise in the inflation rate.

A significant minority of macroeconomists, those who believe in Ricardian equivalence, are much more sanguine about government budget deficits. Ricardian equivalence suggests that larger budget deficits resulting from tax cuts just induce greater private saving today because taxpayers understand that they will be paying higher taxes in the future and so they save now to pay for them. The higher personal saving then results in no decline in national savings so tax cuts do not crowd out private investment or lead to lower net exports that must be financed by greater indebtedness to foreigners. Ricardian equivalence therefore implies that budget deficits that arise from tax cuts do not impose any further burden on future generations.

Advocates of Ricardian equivalence also see less of an inflationary danger from budget deficits arising from tax cuts. Because lower taxes today induce more private saving, it induces households to purchase more government bonds, so that the government does not have to monetize the debt and print money to finance the resulting budget deficit. Cutting taxes therefore does not lead to higher money supply growth and so does not produce inflation.

The Future of Business Cycle Theory

Our discussion of where macroeconomists agree and disagree suggests that a key topic of future research in business cycle theory will be on understanding the sources of price stickiness. Two questions—why price stickiness occurs and how long it takes prices to adjust—are at the core of disagreements between classical and Keynesian business cycle analysis. Indeed research on price stickiness has been exploring what costs to adjusting prices may lead to slow adjustment. Other researchers have focused on *rational inattention*, how it may be rational for firms to adjust prices infrequently because it is costly for them to figure out how much they should change their prices.

Because the formation of expectations is at the core of business cycle analysis and discussions of policy and practice, macroeconomists are delving deeper into understanding expectations formation. One drawback of the theory of rational expectations is that it assumes that people can update their expectations costlessly. An alternative view is that people take a while to learn how to best update their expectations. The role of learning in expectations has therefore also become an area of active research.

The recent financial crisis, which we studied in Chapter 15, has made it clear that financial crises can have disastrous effects on economic activity. Another area of active research is examining how disruptions to the financial system affect the macroeconomy. An urgent task for the macroeconomics profession is to analyze how financial frictions

can be included in general equilibrium macroeconomic models, so that episodes like the recent 2007–2009 financial crisis and recession can be better understood.

Although business cycle theory has come a long way, with a growing consensus on many issues, there are still many unanswered questions that will keep macroeconomists busy in the coming years. Successful models must be able to forecast outcomes and explain stylized facts by explaining why modern, market-based economies experience substantial economic fluctuations.

SUMMARY

1. There is a set of principles with regard to policy and practice that most economists agree on, and they are referred to as the new neoclassical synthesis. They are 1) inflation is always and everywhere a monetary phenomenon, 2) price stability has important benefits, 3) there is no long-run tradeoff between inflation and unemployment, 4) expectations play a critical role in the policy and practice of macroeconomics, 5) central banks must follow the Taylor principle of raising real interests as inflation rises, 6) the time-inconsistency problem has important implications for how policy should be conducted, 7) central banks should be independent, 8) commitment to a nominal anchor is crucial for good policy outcomes, 9) credibility is central to successful policy making, and 10) fundamental institutions such as well-defined property rights and the absence of corruption are crucial to achieving high economic growth.
2. Macroeconomists disagree on the following issues: 1) the flexibility of wages and prices, 2) how much time it takes to get to the long run, 3) the sources of business cycle fluctuations, 4) the effectiveness of stabilization policy, 5) the cost of reducing inflation, and 6) the dangers of budget deficits.
3. Key topics of future business cycle research will be 1) understanding the source of price stickiness, 2) understanding expectations formation, and 3) examining how disruptions to the financial system affect the macroeconomy.

KEY TERMS

new neoclassical synthesis, p. 593 sacrifice ratio, p. 599

- accelerationist Phillips curve** A formulation of the Phillips curve equation where the natural rate of unemployment can be interpreted as the non-accelerating inflation rate of unemployment (NAIRU). 273
- activists** People who regard the self-correcting mechanism through wage and price adjustment as very slow because wages and prices are sticky. 327
- acyclical** When a variable's ups and downs do not consistently coincide with those of the business cycle. 203
- adaptive expectations** Expectations that are formed by looking at the past and therefore change only slowly over time. 273
- adverse selection** The problem that arises because the party who is most eager to engage in a transaction is the one most likely to produce an undesirable (adverse) outcome for you. 349
- adverse supply shock** See *negative supply shock*. 54
- agency problem** See *principal-agent problem*. 373
- agency theory** The analysis of how asymmetric information problems can generate adverse selection and moral hazard problems. 364
- aggregate demand** The total amount of output demanded in the economy. 223
- aggregate demand curve** The relationship between the inflation rate and aggregate output when the goods market is in equilibrium. 245
- aggregate production function** A description of how much output is produced for any given amounts of factor inputs. 48
- aggregate supply curve** Represents the relationship between the total quantity of output that firms are willing to produce and the inflation rate. 273
- anchor currency** In a fixed exchange rate regime, the currency to which the value of another currency is pegged. 443
- "animal spirits"** Emotional waves of optimism and pessimism. 226
- appreciation** When a currency increases in value. 424
- asset-price bubble** The rise of asset prices above their fundamental economic values. 366
- assets** Property that includes bonds, stocks, art, land, etc. 12
- asymmetric information** A situation in which one party to a transaction has much less accurate information than the other. 349
- autonomous consumption** The amount of consumption expenditure that is unrelated to either disposable income or the real interest rate. 76
- autonomous consumption expenditure** The amount of consumption expenditure that is exogenous (independent of variables in the model, such as disposable income or interest rates). 224, 469
- autonomous easing of monetary policy** The action of a central bank increasing the autonomous real interest rate resulting in an increase in the real interest rate. 243
- autonomous investment** A component of planned investment spending that is completely exogenous (unexplained by variables in the model such as the real interest rate). 78, 226
- autonomous net exports** The level of net exports that is treated as exogenous. 227
- autonomous spending** Exogenous spending that is unrelated to variables in the model such as output or real interest rates. 236
- autonomous tightening of monetary policy** An autonomous increase in the real interest rate by the central bank. 243
- average propensity to consume** The ratio of consumption to income. 468
- average propensity to save** The ratio of saving to disposable income. 468
- backward-looking expectations** See *adaptive expectations*. 273
- balance of payments accounts** A bookkeeping system for recording all receipts and payments that have a direct bearing on the movement of funds between a nation (private sector and government) and foreign countries. 71
- balance sheet** A list of the household's or institution's assets and liabilities. 348
- balanced growth path** Growth at a constant rate. 188
- bank failures** When banks cannot pay off depositors and other creditors and thus go out of business. 212
- bank panic** Simultaneous failures of multiple banks. 135, 367
- banks** Financial institutions that acquire funds by issuing deposits and use the proceeds to make loans. 348
- behavioral economics** A field that applies concepts from other social sciences such as anthropology, sociology, and (particularly) psychology to the study of economic behavior. 476
- bonds** Debt securities that offer a stream of payments for a fixed period of time. 38, 347
- boom** See *business cycle expansion*. 201
- borrowed reserves** A bank's borrowings from the Fed. 130
- borrowing constraint** The constraint prevents people from borrowing the full amount they would like, so that consumption today must be less than or equal to income today. 417, 466
- budget surplus** The government's tax receipts minus its outlays. 69
- business cycle contraction** The period from a peak P to a trough T as illustrated on a chart of economic activity. 201

- business cycle expansion** The period from a trough T to a peak P as illustrated on a chart of economic activity. 201
- business cycles** Fluctuations in aggregate economic activity in which many economic activities expand and contract together in a recurring, but not a periodic, fashion. 6, 201
- business fixed investment** Includes spending by businesses on equipment (computers, trucks, and machines) and structures (factories, shopping centers, and hospitals) that are used in production. 486
- capital** The quantity of structures and equipment—such as factories, trucks, and computers—that workers use to produce goods and services. It also refers to assets minus liabilities on a balance sheet. 47, 348
- capital-accumulation equation** An equation that says that the change in the capital stock equals investment minus depreciation. 152
- capital controls** Restrictions on the free movement of capital across the borders of a country. 446
- capital dilution** Growth in the labor force that leads to less capital per worker. 159
- capital good** A good that is produced in the current period to be used in the production of other goods that is not used up in the stages of production. 21
- capital-labor ratio** The amount of capital per worker; plays a very prominent role in the Solow model. 149
- capital mobility** When assets are traded freely between countries. 431
- central banks** The government agencies that oversee banking systems. 11
- chain-weighted measures** A method of calculating income measures in which the base year prices are updated perpetually. 31
- chronically unemployed** People who have unemployment spells lasting more than six months. 527
- classical models** Business cycle models that make use of a flexible price framework and are preferred by economists who believe that prices adjust quickly to their long-run equilibria. 214
- closed economy** An economy that is closed to international trade with zero net exports. 75
- Cobb-Douglas production function** A production function in which the shares of labor and capital income are constant. 48
- coincident variable** A macroeconomic variable that reaches its peaks and troughs at the same time the business cycle reaches its peaks and troughs. 203
- collateral** Property the borrower promises in the loan contract to the lender if it defaults on its debt. 353
- collective bargaining** The process of bargaining for a large group of workers at one time rather than have each worker bargain individually for their wages. 531
- college premium** A higher wage for college graduates relative to high-school graduates. 177
- college wage premium** The percentage difference between the average wage of a college-educated worker and a high-school graduate. 523
- common law** A legal system that came from English law, in which the law is continually reinterpreted by judges. 180
- constant-money-growth-rate rule** The money supply is kept growing at a constant rate regardless of the state of the economy. 548
- constant returns to scale** If you increase all the factor inputs by the same percentage, then output increases by exactly the same percentage. 51
- constrained discretion** A conceptual structure and inherent discipline on policy makers, but without eliminating all flexibility. 551
- consumer price index (CPI)** A measure of the average prices of consumer goods and services. 32
- consumption** See *consumption expenditure*. 24
- consumption expenditure** The total spending for currently produced consumer goods and services (e.g., hamburgers, iPods, rock concerts, visits to the doctor, etc.). 24, 223
- consumption function** The relationship between disposable income and consumption expenditure. 223, 469
- consumption smoothing** The fact that consumers will spread out any increase in consumption over today and tomorrow, even if the increase stems solely from an increase in current income. 464
- contributions for social insurance** Primarily Social Security taxes that are assessed upon a fixed percentage of a worker's wages, up to a fixed ceiling (or cap). 399
- convergence** Countries with different initial levels of per capita income will gravitate to a similar level of per capita income. 154
- convexity** The bowed-in shape of an indifference curve, which results from the typical consumer's dislike of large fluctuations in consumption from one period to the next. 461
- corporate taxes** Primarily taxes on the profits on businesses. 399
- cost-push inflation** Results either from a temporary negative supply shock or a push by workers for wage hikes beyond what productivity gains can justify. 334
- cost-push shocks** Where workers push for wages higher than productivity gains, thereby driving up costs and inflation. 272
- countercyclical** When economic variables move opposite to aggregate economic activity—that is, down during expansions and up during contractions. 203
- crawling peg** When a currency is allowed to depreciate at a steady rate so that the inflation rate in the pegging country can be higher than that of the anchor country. 447
- credibility** Believed by the public. 551

- credit boom** When financial institutions go on a lending spree. 366
- credit default swaps** Financial insurance contracts that provide payments to holders of bonds if they default. 373
- credit markets** The markets where households and businesses get funds (credit) from each other. 40
- crowding out** A phenomenon that occurs when a rise in government spending, which reduces national saving and increases the budget deficit, reduces private investment. 81, 405
- currency board** A fixed exchange rate regime in which the domestic currency is backed 100% by the anchor currency, and the government or central bank stands ready to exchange domestic currency for the anchor currency at a fixed rate whenever the public requests it. 443
- cyclical unemployment rate** The difference between the actual unemployment rate and the natural rate of unemployment. 532
- data lag** The time it takes for policy makers to obtain data indicating what is happening in the economy. 327
- debt deflation** Occurs when a substantial unanticipated decline in the price level sets in, leading to a further deterioration in firms' net worth because of the increased burden of indebtedness. 368
- debt intolerance** When countries are unable to sell their debt at relatively low levels of government debt to GDP and so are far more likely to default on their government debt at much lower levels of debt to GDP. 406
- debt repudiation** Default and failure to pay back debt by a government. 406
- deflation** A situation where the inflation rate is negative and the price level is decreasing. 7
- deleveraging** When financial institutions cut back on their lending to borrower-spenders. 366
- demand-pull inflation** Results from policy makers pursuing policies that increase aggregate demand. 334
- demand shocks** Shocks that cause the aggregate demand curve to shift. 291
- dependency ratio** The ratio of retirees to workers who make social security contributions. 402
- depreciation** The loss of capital because capital goods wear out (or will be scrapped because they are obsolete). 151
- depreciation** When a currency falls in value and is worth fewer U.S. dollars. 424
- depreciation rate** The fraction of capital that wears out each year. 151, 491
- depression** A recession where the decline in real GDP is severe. 6
- devaluation** When a country's central bank resets the par exchange rate at a lower level. 445
- diminishing marginal product** As the amount of one factor input increases, holding other inputs constant, the increased amount of output from an extra unit of the input (its *marginal product*) declines. 51
- discount rate** The interest rate the Fed charges banks for loans. 127
- discounting** The process of converting all next-period spending or income into current values by dividing them by $(1 + r)$ raised to the power T where T is the number of years in the future. 459
- discouraged workers** Those who would like to work but have given up looking. 36, 525
- discretion** When policy makers make no commitment to future actions, but instead make what they believe in that moment to be the right policy decision for the situation. 547
- disposable income** The total income available for spending; this equals total (gross) income net of (minus) taxes. 223, 456
- distortions** Departures from the most efficient economic outcomes. 406
- divine coincidence** No conflict between the dual objectives of stabilizing inflation and economic activity. 320
- dominated assets** Assets such as currency and checkable deposits that are perceived to be poor investments because investors can hold other assets that pay higher returns and yet are perceived to be just as safe. 263
- dual mandate** Co-equal objectives of price stability and maximum sustainable employment. 314
- dynamic, stochastic, general equilibrium (DSGE) models** Models that allow the economy to grow over time (dynamic), be subject to shocks (stochastic), and are based on general equilibrium principles. 571
- economic model** A simplified representation of the economic phenomenon that takes a mathematical or graphical form. 4
- economic profits** The revenue from selling goods and services, minus the costs of the inputs. 56
- economic theory** A logical framework to explain a particular economic phenomenon. 4
- effectiveness lag** The time it takes for the policy actually to have an impact on the economy. 328
- efficiency wages** Wages that are above the market-clearing level where supply equals demand, but which are efficient because they induce workers to work harder and be more productive. 531
- employment ratio** The percentage of the adult civilian population employed. 36, 514
- employment-to-population ratio** The proportion of the civilian working-age population that is employed. 514
- endogenous growth theory** A theory that explains why advances in technology *endogenously* (from within the system) fuel sustained economic growth. 186
- endogenous variables** A variable that a macroeconomist wants to explain inside his or her model. 4
- entitlements** Transfer payments made by a government not on a discretionary basis, but are locked in by earlier legislation. 398

- equilibrium real interest rate** When the economy is producing at its potential and the inflation rate is consistent with price stability. 315
- equities** A share of ownership of a corporation. 347
- excess demand** A condition where the quantity demanded of the factor is above the quantity supplied. 60
- excess reserves** Any additional reserves the banks choose to hold. 127
- excess supply** A condition where the quantity demanded of a factor is less than the quantity supplied. 60
- exchange rate** The price of one currency, say, the dollar, in terms of other currencies, say, the euro. 226
- exchanges** Where buyers and sellers of securities (or their agents or brokers) meet in one central location to conduct trades. 347
- excludability** The ability of the owner of a piece of property to deny its use to others unless they pay for it. 176
- exogenous variables** A set of factors not explained by the model that are used to explain the endogenous variables. 4
- expectations-augmented Phillips curve** An equation for the Phillips curve that indicates that inflation is negatively related to the difference between the unemployment rate and the natural rate of unemployment. 270
- expected return** The return that is expected on an asset, which includes payments from an asset, such as interest, and any expected change in its value, as a fraction of its price. 262, 431
- expenditure approach** A technique for computing GDP by measuring the total spending on currently produced final goods and services in the economy. 23
- expenditure multiplier** The change in equilibrium output from a change in government purchases. 408
- factor accumulation** Growth in labor and capital. 149
- factors of production** The inputs that go into the production process. 47
- favorable supply shock** See *positive supply shock*. 54
- federal funds rate** The interest rate charged on overnight loans between banks. 213
- final goods and services** The end goods in the production process. 21
- finance companies** Raise funds by selling commercial paper (a short-term debt instrument) and by issuing stocks and bonds. 348
- financial crisis** A large-scale disruption in financial markets characterized by business failures and sharp declines in the prices of assets. 12
- financial deepening** Financial development that improves firms' access to external sources of funds and has strong links to economic growth. 357
- financial engineering** The development of new, sophisticated financial instruments products. 373
- financial frictions** Impairments to the efficient functioning of financial markets. 584
- financial innovation** When an economy introduces new types of loans or other financial products. 365
- financial instruments** See *securities*. 347
- financial intermediary** A type of financial institution such as a bank, insurance company, finance company, mutual fund, or pension fund. 347
- financial intermediation** The process of linking borrower-spenders and lender-savers through financial intermediaries. 347
- financial liberalization** Countries eliminating restrictions on financial institutions and markets domestically. 365
- financing constraints** When firms are cut off from raising funds in financial markets because credit markets have dried up. 495
- fire sales** When banks sell off assets quickly. 367
- fiscal policy** Policy makers' decisions to raise taxes. 11
- Fisher equation** Defines the real interest rate in precise terms by stating that the nominal interest rate i equals the real interest rate plus the expected rate of inflation π^e . 39
- fixed exchange rate regime** An exchange rate regime in which the value of a currency is pegged relative to the value of one other currency (called the anchor currency) so that the exchange rate is fixed. 443
- fixed investment** Planned spending by firms on equipment (machines, computers, airplanes) and structures (factories, office buildings, shopping centers) and planned spending on new residential housing. 224
- floating (flexible) exchange rate regime** An exchange rate regime in which the value of a currency is determined by supply and demand in the foreign exchange market. 443
- flow** An amount per a given unit of time. 22
- foreign exchange interventions** International financial transactions that central banks regularly engage in to influence exchange rates. 440
- foreign exchange market** Market for determining exchange rates and the trading of currencies and bank deposits denominated in particular currencies. 424
- forward exchange rate** The exchange rate for the forward transaction. 424
- forward transaction** A type of exchange rate transaction that ensures the exchange of bank deposits at some specified future date. 424
- free-rider problem** Where private investors who do not spend their resources on collecting information can take advantage of (get a *free ride* on) the information that other investors collect. 350
- frictional unemployment** Occurs because workers and firms need time to search and make suitable matchups. 313, 527
- fundamental economic values** Values based on realistic expectations of the assets' future income streams. 366
- fundamental identity of national income accounting** Defines GDP as the sum of consumption expenditure, investment, government purchases, and net exports, that is, $Y = C + I + G + NX$. 19

- GDP deflator** Nominal GDP divided by real GDP. 32
- general equilibrium** When all markets are simultaneously in equilibrium at the point where the quantity of aggregate output demanded equals the quantity of aggregate output supplied. 287
- globalization** The opening up of markets internationally, both in finance and in trade. 525
- Golden Rule capital-labor ratio** The steady-state level of the capital-labor ratio that maximizes consumption per worker. 168
- government budget constraint** The requirement that the government budget deficit equal the sum of the change in the monetary base and the change in government bonds held by the public. 400
- government budget deficits** An excess of government spending relative to revenue. 11
- government capital** Physical assets such as highways, broadband networks, or schools. 404
- government consumption** Government purchases for current goods and services like health care and police. 25, 68
- government investment** Spending on capital goods like highways and schools that add to the capital stock and promote economic growth. 25, 68
- government purchases** Spending by the government—whether federal, state, or local—on currently produced goods and services. 25, 223, 397
- government saving** Equals net government income less government consumption. 68
- government-sponsored enterprises (GSEs)** Sponsored agencies that function as private corporations, but have close ties to the government. 510
- grants in aid** Reflect federal assistance to state and local governments. 398
- Great Inflation** A period in the 1970s of high inflation, peaking at over 14%. 212
- Great Moderation** The period from the mid-1980s to the mid-2000s during which the volatility of real GDP and its components, as well as in inflation, declined both in the United States and abroad. 213
- gross domestic product (GDP)** The total value of goods and services produced in an economy. 19
- gross investment** Total spending on new capital goods. 490
- gross national product (GNP)** Measures the total income earned by U.S. residents. 29
- growth accounting equation** The growth version of the production function, which states that the growth rate of output equals the growth rate of total factor productivity plus the contribution from the growth of both capital and labor. 145
- haircuts** When lenders require larger amounts of collateral. 376
- hedge funds** A special type of mutual fund that acquires funds by selling shares but only to very wealthy people, so they are less regulated than mutual funds. 348
- hierarchical mandates** Mandates for a central bank that require stable prices as a condition of pursuing other goals. 314
- high-powered money** See *monetary base*. 127
- human capital** Investments in knowledge and skills, such as education and training programs, that increase worker productivity and in turn increase wages. 177, 404
- hyperinflation** Extremely high inflation rates. 9
- implementation lag** The time it takes for policy makers to change policy instruments once they have decided on the new policy. 328
- implicit price deflator for GDP** See *GDP deflator*. 32
- impossible trinity** See *policy trilemma*. 445
- imputed value** An estimate of what the price of the good or service would be if it were traded in a market. 20
- income approach** A way of measuring GDP that involves adding up all the incomes received by households and firms in the economy, including profits and tax revenue to the government. 27
- income effect** The change in consumption due to changes in income. 465
- index of leading indicators** A combination of ten variables that some economists use to forecast changes in the economy. 203
- indifference curves** A curve showing all possible combinations of current and future consumption that lead us to the same level of overall happiness (utility or welfare). 460
- inflation** The condition of a continually rising price level. 7
- inflation gap** The difference between inflation and the inflation target. 314
- inflation hedges** Assets whose real returns are less affected than that of money when inflation varies. 263
- inflation rate** The rate of change of the price level, usually measured as a percentage change per year. 7
- inflation target** A target level of inflation used by a central bank to pursue a price stability objective. 314
- inflation targeting** A monetary policy strategy that involves public announcement of a medium-term numerical target for inflation. 557
- inflation tax** Seignorage that results in higher inflation and leads to a tax on holders of money balances, which lose value in real terms. 414
- institutions** A set of rules, organizations, and customs that govern the behavior of individuals and firms. 180
- insurance companies** Companies that acquire funds from premiums paid by policyholders and in turn insure policyholders against financial hazards like death or against loss from theft, fire, or accidents. 348
- interest rate** The cost of borrowing, or the price paid for the rental of funds. 38
- intermediate goods and services** Goods and services used up entirely in the stages of production. 21
- international reserves** A central bank's foreign-currency denominated asset holdings. 440
- intertemporal budget constraint** How much a person can consume today versus tomorrow, given a consumer's total resources. 457

- intertemporal budget line** A curve that shows the trade-off between current consumption and future consumption: The more you spend today, the less you have available to spend tomorrow. 459
- intertemporal marginal rate of substitution** See *marginal rate of substitution*. 461
- intertemporal substitution** The willingness to shift work effort over time as real wages and real interest rates change. 569
- inventories** Firms' holdings of raw materials, unfinished goods, and unsold finished goods. 21
- inventory investment** Spending by firms on additional holdings of raw materials, parts, and finished goods, calculated as the change in holdings of these inventory items in a given time period—say, a year. 21, 224, 487
- investment** Spending on currently produced capital goods that are used to produce goods and services over an extended period of time. 24
- investment banks** Banks that both trade securities and help corporations issue securities by guaranteeing a price for the securities and then selling them. 347
- investment function** A function that shows the relationship between per capita investment and the per capita capital stock when investment equals saving. 151
- investment tax credit** Gives businesses a tax break when they make an investment in physical capital. 82
- IS curve** Shows the relationship between aggregate output and the real interest rate when the goods market is in equilibrium. 229
- just-in-time production** Where manufacturers order inventories for production just when they are needed. 498
- Keynesian models** Economic models with slowly adjusting (sticky) prices. 214
- Keynesians** Followers of John Maynard Keynes, who argue that the government should pursue active policies to stabilize economic fluctuations. 214
- labor** The sum of the number of hours people work. 47
- labor force** The combined number of people employed and unemployed. 36
- labor force participation** The percentage of the adult population in the labor force. 522
- labor-force participation rate** The percentage of the adult civilian population in the labor force. 36
- labor hoarding** Where workers sit idly for a chunk of their workday, but are still counted in the government surveys as “employed.” 570
- labor productivity** The amount of output produced per unit of labor. 49
- lagging variable** A macroeconomic variable whose turning points occur after the business cycle changes course. 203
- large open economy** An economy that is open to trade and capital flows, but is sufficiently large that its saving and investment decisions do influence the world real interest rate. 84
- law of one price** States that if two countries produce an identical good and transportation costs and trade barriers are very low, the price of the good should be the same in both countries no matter which country produces it. 428
- leading variable** A macroeconomic variable that reaches a peak or trough before the turning points of a business cycle. 203
- legislative lag** Represents the time it takes to pass legislation to implement a particular policy. 328
- leisure** Any activity that does not occur on the job—eating, sleeping, watching TV, partying, taking vacations, and taking care of children. 518
- liabilities** Debts or IOUs such as those belonging to an individual or firm that sells (issues) securities. 347
- life-cycle hypothesis** A theory that suggests that people tend to smooth consumption over their life cycle. 472
- liquidity** The ease and speed with which an asset can be turned into cash relative to other assets. 262
- liquidity constraint** See *borrowing constraint*. 466
- liquidity preference framework** Determines the equilibrium nominal interest rate by equating the supply and demand for money. 251
- liquidity preference function** A function that shows that as the nominal interest rate rises the demand for real money balances falls, and that as income rises the demand for real money balances also rises. 251
- liquidity trap** An extreme case of ultrasensitivity of the demand for money to interest rates in which conventional monetary policy has no direct effect on aggregate spending, because a change in the money supply has no effect on interest rates. 264
- logarithmic scale** See *ratio scale*. 188
- long-run Phillips curve** The line connecting all possible long-run relationships between the inflation rate and the unemployment rate. 271
- macroeconomic models** Models used to forecast economic activity and to evaluate the potential effects of policy options. 545
- macroeconomics** The study of economic activity and prices in the overall economy of a nation or a region. 3
- macroprudential regulation** Regulatory policy to affect what is happening in credit markets in the aggregate. 388
- managed float regime (dirty float)** An exchange rate regime in which countries attempt to influence their exchange rates by buying and selling currencies. 443
- management of expectations** Communication with the public and the markets to influence their expectations about what policy actions will be taken in the future. 581
- marginal product** The increased output from an extra unit of the input. 51
- marginal product of capital** The slope of the production function that indicates how much output increases for each additional unit of capital. 52

- marginal product of labor** The slope of the production function that indicates how much output increases for each additional unit of labor. 52
- marginal propensity to consume** The increase in consumption expenditure from an additional dollar of disposable income. 224, 468
- marginal rate of substitution** The rate at which a consumer is willing to give up (substitute) consumption in period 2 for additional consumption in period 1. 461
- market-clearing** The level at which the quantity of labor supplied would equal the quantity demanded and unemployment would not occur. 529
- menu costs** The costs a firm bears when it changes the price of its goods. 119, 216
- microcredit** Programs that offer very small loans, often less than \$100. 347
- microeconomics** Looks at the behavior of individual firms, households, or markets. 3
- minimum wage** A floor on wages set by the government. 529
- monetary base** The sum of the Fed's monetary liabilities and the U.S. Treasury's monetary liabilities. 126
- monetary policy** The management of the amount of money in the economy and interest rates. 12
- monetary policy (MP) curve** Indicates the relationship between the real interest rate the central bank sets and the inflation rate. 241
- monetary transmission mechanisms** Alternatives that stimulate aggregate demand through noninterest rate channels of transmission. 382
- monetizing the debt** Issuing money to finance the debt. 413
- money multiplier** Tells us how much the money supply changes for a given change in the monetary base. 136
- monopolistic competition** The condition of a market when firms set prices, even if there is substantial competition in their market. 215
- moral hazard** The risk (hazard) that the other party will engage in activities that are undesirable (immoral) from your point of view. 349
- mortgage-backed securities** Securities that cheaply bundle and quantify the default risk of the underlying high-risk mortgages in a standardized debt security. 373
- multiple deposit creation** When a central bank supplies the banking system with \$1 of additional reserves, deposits increase by a multiple of this amount. 130
- mutual funds** Acquire funds by selling shares to individuals and use the proceeds to buy securities such as stocks and bonds. 348
- national income** The value determined by combining the compensation of employees, other income (such as from the self-employed), and corporate profits for an economy. 29
- national income accounting** An accounting system to measure economic activity and its components. 19
- national income identity** See *fundamental identity of national income accounting*. 23
- national saving** The sum of private saving and government saving. 69
- national saving rate** The share of national income saved by the government and households. 70
- national wealth** A country's holdings of assets minus its liabilities at a particular point in time. 68
- natural rate of output** The level of aggregate output supplied at the natural rate of unemployment. 274
- natural rate of unemployment** The level of the unemployment rate that remains even when wages in the labor market have fully adjusted, which can be interpreted as the full-employment level of employment. 270, 532
- negative supply shock** A shock that leads to a decline in the quantity of output produced from given quantities of capital and labor. 54
- neoclassical theory of investment** Theory that builds on the neoclassical idea that the user cost of capital influences the desired stock of capital to explain business fixed investment, inventory, and residential investment. 487
- net capital outflow** The difference between saving and investment. 71
- net capital outflow identity** See *net capital outflow*. 71
- net domestic product** A measure equal to the GDP of an economy less that economy's depreciation. 29
- net exports** Exports minus imports: that is, the value of currently produced goods and services exported, or sold to other countries, minus the value of goods and services imported, or purchased from abroad. 25, 223
- net foreign assets** The net holdings of foreign assets (American-owned foreign stocks, bonds, bank accounts, factories, etc., minus foreign-owned U.S. assets). 73
- net government income** The government's disposable income that is available to spend. 29
- net interest payments** Interest payments made to holders of government debt such as U.S. Treasury bonds, less the interest paid to the government for debts, such as student loans. 398
- net investment** The desired change in capital stock. 490
- net worth** See *capital*. 348
- new classical model** The model where all wages and prices are completely flexible with respect to expected changes in the price level. 1
- new economy** A period of U.S. economic growth beginning in the 1990s that corresponded with high productivity growth. 148
- new Keynesian model** Based on similar microeconomic foundations as in real business cycle models, but embeds stickiness into the analysis. 571
- new neoclassical synthesis** A set of principles, on which almost all modern macroeconomists agree. 593
- nominal anchor** A nominal variable—such as the inflation rate, the money supply, or an exchange rate—that ties down the price level or inflation to achieve price stability. 551

- nominal exchange rate** The relative price of one currency in terms of another. 424
- nominal GDP** A measure of GDP that has not been adjusted to accurately reflect changes in the price level. 30
- nominal interest rate** An interest rate you read about in the newspaper that makes no allowance for inflation. 39
- nominal variables** Variables that are measured at current market prices. 30
- non-accelerating inflation rate of unemployment (NAIRU)** The rate of unemployment where inflation stops accelerating (changing). 273
- nonactivists** People who believe wages and prices are very flexible, so the self-correcting mechanism is very rapid. 327
- nonborrowed monetary base** The monetary base minus the banks' borrowing from the Fed. 130
- nonconventional monetary policy** Non-interest-rate tools used to stimulate aggregate demand when a central bank faces the zero-lower-bound problem. 382
- nonrival** Something that can be used by multiple people in more than one activity simultaneously. 176
- Okun's law** Describes the negative relationship between the unemployment gap and the output gap. 275
- open economy** An economy open to trade and flows of capital across its borders. 83
- open market operations** The Fed's buying and selling of bonds in the open market. 106
- open market purchase** A purchase of bonds by the Fed. 127
- open market sale** A sale of bonds by the Fed. 127
- opportunity cost** The amount of income forgone (sacrificed) by holding money rather than alternative assets such as bonds. 251
- optimal forecast** The best guess of the future using all available information. 543
- originate-to-distribute** A practice used by mortgage brokers of making loans and quickly selling them to investors in the form of security. 373
- output gap** The difference between output and potential output. 275
- patents** Legal rights that give inventors the sole right to use, make, or sell licensing rights to others for a set period of time, typically around twenty years. 179
- payment technology** Newer methods for payment, such as credit cards, that could affect the demand for money. 260
- payroll tax** Taxes on wages, such as Social Security taxes. 410
- peaks** High points of economic activity. 201
- pension funds** Acquire funds through contributions from employees and their employers and provide retirement income to the employees covered by the pension plan. 348
- perfect capital mobility** A situation where an open economy does not have any restrictions on flows of capital between domestic and foreign residents or vice versa. 83
- perfect competition** A market where buyers and sellers are price takers because they are not large or powerful enough to charge more than the market price for their goods or services. 56, 215
- permanent income** The level of income that is expected to persist over a long period of time and is therefore representative of a consumer's lifetime resources. 469
- permanent income hypothesis** A hypothesis that asserts that consumption depends on permanent income. 469
- personal consumption expenditure** See *consumption expenditure*. 24
- personal consumption expenditure (PCE) deflator** Nominal PCE divided by real PCE. 32
- personal taxes** Taxes composed of income taxes and property taxes that are a major source of total government revenue. 399
- Phillips curve** The negative relationship between unemployment and inflation. 268
- planned expenditure** The total amount of spending on domestically produced goods and services that households, businesses, the government, and foreigners want to make. 223
- planned investment spending** The total planned spending by businesses on new physical capital (e.g., machines, computers, factories) plus planned spending on new homes. 223
- policy trilemma** The fact that a country (or monetary union like the Eurozone) can't pursue the following three policies at the same time: 1) free capital mobility, 2) a fixed exchange rate, and 3) an independent monetary policy. 445
- political business cycle** When fiscal and monetary policy is expansionary right before elections, with higher inflation following. 549
- portfolio theories** Where people decide how much of an asset, such as money, they want to hold as part of their overall portfolio of assets. 262
- positive supply shock** Results in an increase in the quantity of output produced for given combinations of capital and labor. 54
- potential output** The natural rate of output, the level of production that an economy can sustain in the long run. 274
- present discounted value** See *present value*. 459
- present value** The common-sense notion that a dollar you will receive tomorrow is less valuable to you now than a dollar paid to you today. 459
- price indexes** Different measures of the price level. 31
- price level** The average level of prices in the economy. 30
- price shocks** Shifts in inflation that are independent of the tightness in the labor markets or of expected inflation. 272
- price stability** Low and stable inflation. 314
- principal-agent problem** Where individuals or institutions act as agents for investors (the principals) but do not have the investors' best interests at heart. 373

- printing money** Use of new government-printed money to purchase goods and services. 413
- private disposable income** Equals the income received by the private sector, plus payments made to the private sector by the government, minus taxes paid to the government. 29
- private saving** Equals private disposable income minus consumption expenditure. 68
- private saving rate** The proportion of private disposable income that is saved. 68
- procyclical** When a variable moves up during expansions and down during contractions—that is, in the same direction as aggregate economic activity. 203
- production approach** A technique for computing GDP as the current market value of all final goods and services newly produced in the economy during a fixed period of time. 19
- production function** See *aggregate production function*. 48
- production smoothing** When firms keep on producing when sales are temporarily low, putting the goods produced into inventory, and then do not raise production when sales are temporarily high, instead drawing down these inventories to satisfy the higher demand. 499
- productivity** How productive capital and labor are. 48
- property rights** The protection of property from expropriation by the government or other parties. 180
- prudential regulation** Rules set by the government to prevent banks from taking on too much risk. 357
- prudential supervision** Where the government monitors banks by examining them on a regular basis. 357
- random walk** When changes in a variable are unpredictable. 475
- random walk hypothesis** Theory based on the life-cycle and permanent income hypotheses that suggests that changes in consumption will be unpredictable. 475
- ratio scale** A scale in which equal distances reflect the same percentage change. 188
- rational expectations** Expectations that are identical to optimal forecasts (the best guess of the future) using all available information. 543
- rational expectations revolution** The widespread adoption of the rational expectations theory into macroeconomic models. 545
- rational inattention** The act of only making decisions about prices at infrequent intervals because it is rational to do so given the time and effort that is required to make these decisions. 216
- real business cycle model** A business cycle model that begins with the assumption that all wages and prices are completely flexible and argues that real shocks cause fluctuations in potential output and long-run aggregate supply. 567
- real exchange rate** The relative price of goods in two countries, that is, the rate at which you can exchange domestic goods for foreign goods. 425
- Real Gross Domestic Product (GDP)** Measures the output of actual goods and services produced in an economy over a fixed period, usually a year. 5
- real interest rate** The amount of extra purchasing power a lender must be paid for the rental of his or her money. 39
- real money balances** The quantity of money in real terms. 251
- real rental price (cost) of capital** The rental price of capital in terms of goods and services. 56
- real shocks** Shocks to productivity or the willingness of workers to work that affect aggregate supply. 567
- real variable** A measure of an economic variable in terms of quantities of actual goods and services. 30
- real wage rate** The wage in terms of goods and services. 57
- recession** When economic activity declines and real GDP per person falls. 6
- recognition lag** The time it takes for policy makers to be sure of what the data are signaling about the future course of the economy. 327
- rental price (cost) of capital** The price paid to rent a unit of capital. 56
- repurchase agreements (repos)** Short-term borrowing which, in effect, use assets like mortgage-backed securities as collateral. 376
- required reserve ratio** The fraction of deposits that the Fed requires be kept as reserves. 127
- required reserves** Reserves that the Fed requires banks to hold. 127
- reserves** Banks' holding of deposits in accounts with the Fed plus currency that is physically held by banks (vault cash). 127, 253
- residential investment** Includes spending on new housing, whether it is occupied by owners or rented out by landlords. 487
- restrictive covenants** Debt contracts that restrict borrowers' activities. 352
- revaluation** When a country's central bank resets the par value of its exchange rate at a higher level. 445
- Ricardian equivalence** An argument that suggests that tax cuts have no effect on spending and national saving. 415
- risk** The degree of uncertainty associated with the return on the asset relative to other assets. 262
- risk averse** When most people do not like risk and so find riskier assets less desirable. 262
- rival** Something that if used in one activity, cannot be used in another. 176
- Romer models** Models of economic growth that explain advances in technology endogenously (from within the model). 186
- rules** Binding plans that specify how policy will respond (or not respond) to particular data such as unemployment and inflation. 547
- sacrifice ratio** The percentage reduction of real GDP that is necessary to reduce the inflation rate by one percentage point. 599

- saving** The difference between the amount of income a person has to spend and his or her current spending. 456
- saving-investment diagram** A graphical analysis of the equilibrium in the goods market. 78
- saving rate** The fraction of consumer's income that is saved each year. 150, 468
- screening** Collecting information about potential borrowers before a transaction occurs to avoid adverse selection problems. 352
- seasonally adjusted** The process by which economists adjust the data to subtract out the usual seasonal fluctuations using advanced statistical techniques. 31
- sectoral shifts** When new industries grow and old industries die off. 529
- securities** Claims on the borrowers' future income or assets in the form of common stock or bonds. 347
- securitization** The bundling together of smaller loans (like mortgages) into standard debt securities. 373
- seignorage** The revenue the government generates by issuing the currency. 413
- self-correcting mechanism** A feature that occurs because the short-run aggregate supply curve shifts up or down to restore the economy to full employment (aggregate output at potential) over time. 291
- shadow banking system** Hedge funds, investment banks, and other non-depository financial firms, which are not as tightly regulated as banks. 376
- skill-biased technical change** The idea that new technologies such as computer hardware, software, and the Internet have boosted the relative productivity of college-educated workers. 524
- small open economy** An economy that is open to trade and to flows of capital across its borders and that is "small" relative to the world economy, so that whatever happens in this economy has no effect on the world real interest rate. 84
- Solow diagram** A diagram based on the Solow growth model showing the steady-state level of investment and capital-labor ratio graphically. 152
- Solow growth model** Explains how saving rates and population growth determine capital accumulation, which in turn determine economic growth. 149
- Solow residual** Economic growth that is not explained by capital growth or labor growth, which is an estimate of total factor productivity. 146, 568
- speculative attacks** Massive sales of a weak currency that lead to a sharp decline in the exchange rate. 448
- spot exchange rate** The exchange rate for the spot transaction. 424
- spot transaction** The predominant exchange rate transaction, which effects the immediate (two-day) exchange of bank deposits. 424
- stabilization policy** An important goal for macroeconomic policy to minimize business cycle fluctuations and stabilize economic activity. 12
- stagflation** A situation of rising inflation but a falling level of aggregate output. 296
- staggered price setting** When competitors adjust prices at different intervals. 217
- steady state** Where capital per worker comes to rest and stops changing. 152
- sticky prices** Prices that adjust slowly over time to their long-run equilibrium. 214
- stock** A quantity at a given point in time. 22
- stock-out avoidance** The motivation for holding inventories to avoid running out of goods and thereby losing sales. 499
- structural unemployment** Unemployment that arises from lack of skills or a mismatch of skills with available jobs. 313, 529
- structured credit products** Financial instruments that pay out income streams from a collection of underlying assets. 373
- subprime mortgages** Mortgages offered to borrowers with less-than-stellar credit records. 373
- substitution effect** The change in consumption that occurs from the change in the relative price of consumption in two periods. 465
- supply shock** A shock that leads to a decline in the quantity of output produced from given quantities of capital and labor. 54
- supply-siders** Economists who focus on the favorable effects of tax cuts on aggregate supply. 411
- T-account** A simplified balance sheet that shows only changes in the balance sheet. 128
- tariffs** Taxes on imported goods. 399
- tax-adjusted user cost of capital** The user cost of capital that the firm compares to the before-tax marginal product of capital to determine the desired level of capital. 494
- tax multiplier** The change in equilibrium output from a change in taxes that is always less in absolute value than the expenditure multiplier because the initial change in spending occurs through consumption expenditure. 408
- tax smoothing** A policy of keeping tax rates fairly stable when government spending fluctuates. 407
- tax wedges** The difference between what people earn after taxes on their labor or investments and what they are paid before they make their tax payments. 406
- taxes on production and imports** Primarily sales taxes, but they also include taxes on imported goods, known as *tariffs*. 399
- Taylor principle** Where monetary policy makers raise *nominal* rates by more than any rise in expected inflation so that *real* interest rates rise when there is a rise in inflation. 242
- Taylor rule** A rule that provides a guide for how to set the real federal funds rate, the policy instrument, which equals its historical average of 2%, plus a weighted average of the inflation gap and the output gap. 329

- technological spillover** The spread of technology to its creators' neighbors and eventually around the world due to the nonrivalry of ideas. 192
- terms of trade** See *real exchange rate*. 425
- theory of intertemporal choice** Irving Fisher's theory, published in 1930, which describes consumption decisions in a simplified world with only two periods of time—today (period 1) and the future (period 2). 457
- theory of purchasing power parity (PPP)** A theory that states that exchange rates between any two currencies will adjust to reflect changes in the price levels of the two countries. 428
- time-inconsistency problem** The tendency to deviate from good long-run plans when making short-run decisions. 547
- Tobin's q** A ratio of the market value and replacement cost. 500
- total factor productivity** See *productivity*. 48
- trade balance** The difference between merchandise exports and imports. 26
- trade deficit** A situation where net exports is negative in an economy. 71
- trade surplus** A situation where net exports is positive in an economy. 71
- traditional Keynesian model** The standard model of aggregate demand that assumes expectations are not rational and prices are sticky. 576
- transfer payments** Direct payments to individuals—such as unemployment insurance benefits, Social Security benefits, Medicare, or welfare payments—where goods or services are not provided in return. 398
- transfers** Government payments for Social Security, Medicare, and unemployment insurance benefits. 25
- transitory income** The component of income that does not persist for a long period of time, and so is subject to temporary fluctuations. 470
- troughs** Low points of economic activity as illustrated on a chart. 201
- twin deficits** The phenomenon of a simultaneous trade deficit and government budget deficit. 88
- underground economy** Good and services produced that are hidden from the government, either because they are illegal or because the person producing the goods and services is avoiding paying taxes on the income he or she receives. 20
- unemployment gap** The difference between the unemployment rate and the natural rate of unemployment. 270
- unemployment insurance** A government program that provides unemployed workers with a percentage of their wages for a given period after they lose their job. 528
- unemployment rate** Measures the percentage of workers looking for work, but who do not have jobs, at a particular point in time. 7
- unemployment spells** The length of time a worker remains unemployed. 527
- user cost of capital** The expected real cost of using a unit of capital over a particular period. 488
- uses-of-saving identity** Tells us that saving either goes into investment—acquiring capital goods and boosting the capital stock—or, alternatively, into net exports—selling goods to foreigners in exchange for foreign currency assets. 71
- utility** A measure of overall happiness. 460
- value added** The value of a firm's output minus the cost of the intermediate goods purchased by the firm. 21
- value-added tax** A tax that is paid by a producer on the difference between what it receives for its goods and services minus the costs. 70
- wage rate** The price of labor. 56
- wage rigidity** The inability of wages to adjust to the level that would equate supply and demand in the labor market and thus eliminate unemployment. 529
- wealth** A person's holdings of assets (such as bonds, stocks, houses, and fine art) minus his or her liabilities. 67, 103
- welfare** See *utility*. 460
- work in process** Holdings of partially finished components that will go into the final product. 498
- world real interest rate** The real interest rate found in world markets. 83
- zero-lower-bound problem** The limit on monetary policy when nominal rates are zero. 382

This page intentionally left blank

Italicized *t* refers to tables, *f* refers to figures. Footnotes are indicated by *n*.

- Accelerationist Phillips curve, 273
- Accounting
 - growth, 145–149
 - national income, 18, 19
- Accounting profits, 56ⁿ⁷
- Acemoglu, Daron, 185
- Activist economists, 12, 327
- Actual expenditure, 223
- Acyclical economic variables, 203
- AD. *See* Aggregate demand
- Adaptive expectations, 272–273, 543
- AD/AS model. *See* Aggregate demand-aggregate supply (AD/AS) model
- Adverse selection, 349, 352, 364, 366, 369, 373
- Adverse supply shocks, 54, 62, 63^f, 296–298, 299^f
- Africa, foreign aid to, 185
- Agency problems, in mortgage markets, 373
- Agency theory, 364
- Aggregate demand (AD), 222, 223
 - decline in, during financial crisis, 379–380
 - decline in, during Great Depression, 369–371, 370^f
 - effects of shocks on, 575–576
 - equilibrium in, 287–291
 - fiscal policy and, 407–408
 - Ricardian equivalence and, 416
 - shocks, 291–295
- Aggregate demand-aggregate supply (AD/AS) model, 217–218, 222
 - equilibrium in, 287–291
 - exchange rates and, 438–440
 - for financial crisis of 2007–2009, 378^f
 - with financial frictions, 585^f
 - foreign business cycles and, 303–305
- Aggregate demand curve, 245–250, 284–286
 - algebraic determination of response to rightward shift of, 292
 - deriving algebraically, 247
 - deriving graphically, 245–247, 246^f
 - factors that shift, 247–250, 285–286, 285^f
 - IS curve and changes in, 247–248, 249^f
 - MP curve and, 248, 250^f
 - new Keynesian model and, 573–574
 - shifts, and output and inflation, 586
- Aggregate demand shock
 - credibility and, 552–554
 - response to, 317–320
- Aggregate output
 - exchange rates and, 439^f
 - inflation rate and, 246^f, 249^f
 - real interest rate and, 243, 246^f, 249^f
- Aggregate production
 - determinants of, 47–49
 - new Keynesian model and, 571
- Aggregate production function, 48
- Aggregate supply
 - effects of shocks on, 574–575
 - fiscal policy and, 410–411
- Aggregate supply curve, 267, 273–280
 - equilibrium and, 287–291
 - long-run, 274, 274^f, 277–278, 286–287
 - new Keynesian model and, 571–573, 572^f
 - shifts in, 277–280, 278^f, 279^f, 280^f, 287^t
 - short-run, 274^f, 275–277, 278–280, 286–287
- Aggregate supply shocks, 295–302, 554, 555^f
- AIG, 367, 379
- Alesina, Alberto, 561
- American Recovery and Reinvestment Act, 384–385
- Anchor currency, 443
- Animal spirits, 226
- Anticipated inflation, 119–120
- Anti-inflation policy, 582–584
- Applications
 - China and 2007–2009 financial crisis, 304–305, 305^f
 - collateral, 353–354
 - college wage premium, 523–525
 - consumption function, 546–547
 - evidence on convergence, 155–156
 - explaining real wage growth, 61–62
 - financial crisis of 2007–2009, 372–375
 - Fisher effect, 117
 - global saving glut, 97–98
 - Great Depression, 368–372
 - Great Depression bank panics and money supply, 135–136
 - Great Inflation, 337–338
 - housing market boom and bust, 507–509
 - labor force participation of women, 522–523
 - life-cycle hypothesis, 475
 - negative demand shocks, 294–295, 295^f
 - negative supply shocks, 297–298, 298^f
 - oil price shocks, 555–557
 - oil shocks, real wages, and the stock market, 62–63
 - population growth and living standards, 192–193
 - positive supply shocks, 300–301
 - production function, 49–51
 - quantity theory of money, 113–115
 - stock market and boom and bust, 501–502
 - subprime financial crisis and the dollar, 435–436
 - twin deficits, 87–88, 88^f
 - United Kingdom and 2007–2009 financial crisis, 303–304, 303^f
 - U.S. growth rates in postwar period, 147–148
 - Vietnam War buildup, 233–234, 234^f
 - Volker disinflation, 294–295
- Appreciation, currency, 424
- Argentina, 449
- Argentine currency board, 449
- Asset price boom and bust, 366–367
- Asset-price bubbles, 366
 - central bank responses to, 387–388
 - credit and, 386^f
 - policy response to, 386–388
 - regulatory policy responses to, 388
 - types of, 386–387
- Assets, 12, 127
 - domestic, 431–438
 - dominated, 263
 - fire sales of, 367, 376–377
 - liquidity of, 263
- Asymmetric information, 349–350
 - collateral and, 353–354
 - credit rating agencies and, 373
 - financial crises and, 364
 - financial intermediaries and, 350–353
- Autonomous consumption, 76, 79, 236
- Autonomous consumption expenditure, 224, 286, 469
- Autonomous easing of monetary policy, 243, 244, 244^f

- Autonomous investment, 78, 82–83, 226, 236
 aggregate demand curve and, 286
 Autonomous monetary policy, 285
 Autonomous net exports, 227, 236–237, 286
 Autonomous spending
 definition of, 236
IS curve and changes in, 236–237, 237*f*
 Autonomous tightening of monetary policy, 243, 244*f*, 248, 250*f*
 Average propensity to consume, 468
 Average propensity to save, 468–469
- Backward-looking expectations, 272–273
 Balanced growth path, 188
 Balance of payment accounts, 71–72
 Balance sheet
 of Fed, 126–127
 financial intermediaries, 348
 Bank failures, 212
 Banking crisis, 367–368
 Bank of the United States, 367
 Bank panics, 135–136, 367, 369
 Banks and banking
 advantages of, 351–352
 deposit creation, 130–133
 discount loans to, 127, 129
 as financial intermediaries, 348, 351–352
 reserves, 127, 253
 risk-taking by, 366
 role of, in developing economies, 352–353
 shadow banking system, 376–377
 share of total credit to nonfinancial business of, 351*f*
See also Federal Reserve System (Fed)
 Bank stress tests, 380*n*9
 Barro, Robert, 417, 545
 Basket of goods, 32–33
 “Bathtub mode” of steady state, 154
 Baumol, William J., 261*n*1
 Bear Stearns, 367, 378
 Behavioral economics, 476–478
 Bernanke, Ben, 97–98, 106, 330, 376, 381, 558–559
 Bhutan, 22
 Big Mac Index, 429, 43*t*
 Bills, Mark, 217
 Black market economy, 20
 Blinder, Alan, 217
 BNP Paribas, 377
 Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, 106
 Boivin, Jean, 217
 Bolivia, real GDP of, 6
 Bonds, 38, 347
 Booms, 201
 Borrowed reserves, 130, 133
 Borrowing constraints, 417, 466–468
 Boskin, Michael, 33
 Brazil, legal system in, 181
 Budget deficit(s), 11, 67, 399–400
 entitlements and, 402–403
 formula for, 400
 inflation and, 413–415
 national saving and, 71
 Ricardian equivalence in, 415–418
 U.S., 87–88, 88*f*
 U.S., 1930–2011, 12*f*
 U.S., relative to GDP, 401*f*
See also Government debt
 Budget surplus, 69, 81, 399–400
 Bureau of Economic Analysis (BEA), 19, 72
 Bureau of Labor Statistics, 32
 Burns, Arthur, 201, 549
 Bush, George W., 418
 Business cycle contraction, 201
 Business Cycle Dating Committee, 202
 Business cycle expansion, 201
 Business cycle models
 comparison of, 576–584, 577*f*, 577*t*
 with financial frictions, 584–587
 new Keynesian model, 566, 571–576
 new neoclassical model, 566*n*1
 real business cycle model, 566, 567–570, 567*f*
 traditional Keynesian model, 576–584
 Business cycle(s), 6, 200
 AD/AS analysis of foreign, 303–305
 co-movement and timing of economic variables, 203
 dating, 202–203
 decoupling of, 208
 definition of, 201
 financial variables and, 206, 208
 fluctuations in, 568, 574–576
 history of U.S., 210–213, 211*f*
 illustration of, 201, 201*f*
 inflation and, 206
 international, 208–210, 210*f*
 macroeconomic variables and, 203–210
 modern theory of, 566–587
 political, 549
 time horizons in, 213–215
 unemployment and, 206
 Business expectations, planned
 investment spending and, 226
 Business fixed investment, 486
- Calvo, Guillermo, 547
 Capital, 47–48
 on balance sheet, 348
 cost of using, 56
 demand for, 56–58
 determining desired level of, 489–490, 490*f*
 diminishing marginal product of, 158
 government, 404
 human, 177–178, 404–405
 real price of, 496*t*
 relation to output, 51–52, 52*f*
 rental price of, 56, 59*f*
 supply of, 58
 user cost of, 487, 488–489, 493–495, 494*f*
 Capital accumulation, in Solow growth model, 151–152
 Capital-accumulation equation, 152, 173
 Capital controls, 446
 Capital dilution, 159
 Capital gains taxes, 70
 Capital goods, 21
 Capital growth, 146, 149
 Capital investment, government, 405
 Capital-labor ratio, 149, 150*f*, 151*f*, 153, 161*f*
 Golden Rule, 168–172, 170*f*, 171*f*
 Capital market
 effect of negative supply shock on, 63*f*
 supply and demand analysis of, 59*f*
 Capital mobility, 431, 445
 Capital outflows, net, 71–72
 Capital stock
 changes in desired level of, 492–495
 determining level of, 488
 Cashless society, 260
 CDOs. *See* Collateralized debt obligations (CDOs)
 Cecchetti, Stephen, 217
 Central banks, 11
 establishing credibility of, 557–561
 European Central Bank (ECB), 107
 foreign exchange interventions by, 440–443

- independence of, 560–561, 561f
- inflation and, 11–12
- inflation targeting by, 557–559
- monetary policy and, 243
- monetary policy of, 12
- response of, to asset-price bubbles, 387–388
- See also* Federal Reserve System (Fed)
- Certificates of deposit (CDs), 108
- Chain-weighted measures, 31
- Checkable deposits, 108, 130–133, 134
- Checking accounts, 108
- Child labor, 358
- China
 - economic growth in, 359
 - financial crisis of 2007–2009 and, 304–305, 305f
 - financial development in, 359
 - fixed exchange rate regime in, 446
 - international reserves of, 446
 - one-child policy in, 162
 - per capita income, 51
 - saving rate in, 10, 11f, 98
 - trade surplus, 13
 - U.S. debt held by, 405
- Chronically unemployed, 527
- Classical dichotomy, 112, 214, 333
- Classical economics, 110
- Classical models, 214, 222
- Classicals, 110
 - on economic fluctuations, 214
- Closed economies
 - definition of, 75
 - responses to changes in investment and saving in, 79–83
 - saving, investment, and goods market equilibrium in, 75–78
- Cobb-Douglas production function, 48–49, 50, 61, 489
 - characteristics of, 51–54
 - constant returns to scale and, 51
 - diminishing returns and, 51–53
- Coincident variables, 203
- Collateral, 353–354
- Collateralized debt obligations (CDOs), 374, 376
- Collective bargaining, 531–532
- College premium, 177
- College wage premium, 523–525, 523f
- Colonization, 182
- Common law, 180–181
- Co-movement, of economic variables, 203
- Compensation of employees, 27
- Competition
 - monopolistic, 215
 - perfect, 56, 215
- Computers, real investment in, 501f
- Conditional convergence, 156n8
- Conference Board, 204
- Constant-money-growth-rate rule, 548
- Constant returns to scale, 51
- Constrained discretion, 551
- Constraints
 - borrowing, 417, 466–468
 - financing, 495, 499n3, 507t
- Consumer durables, 24
- Consumer optimization, 461–462, 462f
- Consumer price index (CPI), 32–33
 - calculation of, 33
 - errors in, 33–34
- Consumer spending, 204, 205f
- Consumption, 24, 24t
 - autonomous, 76, 79, 236
 - behavioral economics and, 476–478
 - with borrowing constraint, 466–468
 - government, 25, 68–69
 - intertemporal choice and, 457–462
 - Keynesian theory of, 468–469
 - optimal level of, 461–462, 465–466, 467f
 - over life cycle, 474f
 - per worker, 153, 168
 - present value of, 459–460
 - relationship between saving and, 456–457
 - response of, to income, 462–463
 - wealth and, 463
- Consumption expenditures, 23, 24, 24t, 68, 76, 223
 - aggregate demand curve and, 286
 - autonomous, 224, 286, 469
 - planned expenditure and, 223–224
 - real interest rates and, 224
- Consumption function
 - application of, 546–547
 - Keynesian, 223–224, 456, 468–469
 - life-cycle, 472–473
 - permanent income, 470
- Consumption smoothing, 464, 469, 472–473
- Consumption taxes, 70
- Contracts, enforcement of, 180–181
- Convergence, 154–156, 155f
- Convexity, 461
- Corporate bonds, interest rate spread on, 209f
- Corporate income tax, 495n2, 497t
- Corporate profits, 27
- Corporate taxes, 399
- Corruption, 182–183
- Cost of living, 33–34
- Cost-push inflation, 334–335, 335f, 336–337
- Cost-push shocks, 272
- Costs
 - menu, 119, 216
 - opportunity, 251
 - shoe-leather, 119
 - transaction, 103
- CPI. *See* Consumer price index (CPI)
- Crawling peg, 447
- Credibility, 551
 - aggregate demand shocks and, 552–554, 553f
 - aggregate supply shocks and, 554, 555f
 - of central banks, 557–561
 - nominal anchor and, 551–552
 - oil price shocks and, 555–557
- Credit
 - drying up of, during financial crisis of 2007–2009, 377–378
 - feedback loops between asset prices and, 386f
 - government-directed, 355
- Credit boom, 366
- Credit cards, 111
- Credit channel, 382
- Credit default swaps, 373
- Credit-driven bubbles, 386–387
- Credit markets, 40
- Credit rating agencies, 373
- Credit spreads
 - financial crisis of 2007–2009 and, 380f
 - during Great Depression, 370–371, 371f
- Cross-country comparisons
 - expenditure components of GDP, 28f
 - government debt, 404, 404t
 - growth accounting rates, 148–149
 - home ownership rates, 51t
 - inflation rate, 9f
 - per capita income, 5t
 - real GDP per capita, 6f
 - saving rate, 11f
 - unemployment rate, 8f
- Crowding out, 81–82, 405
- Currency, 103
 - anchor, 443
 - appreciation, 424
 - in circulation, 126–127

- depreciation, 424
- devaluation, 444–445
- exchange rates, 226
- foreign, 423–424
- reevaluation, 444–445
- seignorage, 413
- shifts from deposits into, 128–129
- trading, 427–428
- U.S., 109
- See also* Exchange rates
- Currency board, 443
- Currency holdings, 134
- Current account balance, 71*n*1
- Curves
 - indifference, 460–461, 460*f*
 - marginal product of capital, 492, 493*f*
 - monetary policy, 240, 241–244
 - Phillips curve, 267–273, 571–573
 - See also* Aggregate demand curve; Aggregate supply curve; Demand curve; *IS* curve; Supply curve
- Cyclical unemployment rate, 532
- Data. *See* Macroeconomic data
- Data lag, 327
- Davis, Donald R., 156
- Debt deflation, 368, 371–372
- Debt intolerance, 406
- Debt repudiation, 406
- Deflation, 7, 581
- Deflators
 - GDP, 32
 - PCE, 32
- Deleveraging, 366
- Demand
 - for capital, 56–58
 - for domestic assets, 432–438
 - excess, 60, 254
 - for housing, 504–505
 - for labor, 56–58, 520–521
 - See also* Aggregate demand (AD)
- Demand curve
 - for capital, 58
 - for domestic assets, 431–432
 - factors that shift, 254, 255*f*
 - for housing, 504*f*
 - for labor, 58, 518
 - for money, 252
 - See also* Aggregate demand curve
- Demand deposits, 108
- Demand for money, 111, 251
 - empirical evidence on, 263–265
 - factors that determine, 264*t*
 - interest rates and, 264
- Keynesian theories of, 260–262
- portfolio theories of, 262–263
- stability of, 264–265
- Demand-pull inflation, 334, 335–337, 336*f*
- Demand shocks, 291–295, 291*f*
 - credibility and, 552–554
 - negative, 294–295, 295*f*, 301–302
 - positive, 291–294
 - response to, 317–320, 318*f*, 319*f*
- Demographics, 532
- Denmark, 412–413
- Dependency ratio, 402
- Deposit creation, 130–133, 132*t*
- Deposit insurance, 356–357, 366
- Depository institutions, 348
- Deposits, shifts from, into currency, 128–129
- Depreciation, 29, 151, 424, 490
- Depreciation allowances, 495*n*2
- Depreciation rate, 151, 491, 497*t*
- Depressions, 6, 201
- De Soto, Hernando, 183, 353–354
- Devaluation, 444–445
- Developing countries
 - financial deepening in, 357–359
 - legal title to property in, 353–354
 - microcredit in, 347
 - role of banks in, 352–353
- Diminishing marginal product, 51, 158
- Diminishing returns, 51–53
- Direct finance, 346–347
- Dirty float, 443
- Disability insurance, 533
- Discounting, 459–460
- Discount loans, 127, 129
- Discount rate, 127
- Discount window, 383
- Discouraged workers, 36, 525
- Discretion, 547, 550
 - constrained, 551
- Discretionary policy, 13, 547–548, 550–551
- Disposable income, 29, 68, 223, 456–457
- Distortions, 406
- Divine coincidence, 320
- Doing Business* (World Bank), 183
- Dollar. *See* U.S. dollar
- Dollar yardstick, 120
- Domestic assets
 - changes in demand for, 432–438
 - demand curve for, 431–432
 - supply curve for, 431
- Domestic real interest rate (r^D), 433, 434*f*
- Dominated assets, 263
- DSGE models. *See* Dynamic, stochastic, general equilibrium (DSGE) models
- Dual mandate, 314
- Dynamic, stochastic, general equilibrium (DSGE) models, 571
- Easterly, William, 185
- Econometric policy evaluation, 545–546
- Economic activity
 - measuring, 19
 - stabilizing, 313, 314–327
- Economic growth, 144
 - cross-country differences in, 148–149
 - drivers of, 175–176
 - endogenous growth theory and, 186–188
 - factors that affect, 189–194
 - financial development and, 357–359
 - geography and, 182
 - policies to achieve, 9–10
 - policies to promote, 176–180
 - post-war, 156
 - price level changes and, 8–9
 - role of institutions in, 180–185
 - Solow growth model, 149–164
 - sources of U.S., 148*f*
 - U.S., in postwar period, 147–148
- Economic indicators, leading, 203, 204
- Economic models
 - definition of, 4
 - development of, 4–5
 - variables in, 4, 4*f*
- Economic profits, 56–58
- Economic Recovery Act (1981), 88, 179
- Economic Recovery Act (2008), 383–384
- Economics
 - behavioral, 476–478
 - classical, 110
 - supply-side, 411–412
- Economic Stimulus Act (2008), 384, 471–472
- Economic theory
 - definition of, 4
 - development of, 4–5
- Economic variables
 - co-movement of, 203
 - timing of, 203
- Economy
 - fiscal policy and, 408*f*
 - in long run, 404–407

- sectoral shifts in, 529
- in short run, 407–413
- underground, 20
- Education, 177–178, 190
- Effectiveness lag, 328
- Efficiency wages, 531
- Emergency Economic Stabilization Act, 380
- Employee benefits, 27
- Employee compensation, 27
- Employment
 - changes in labor supply and demand and, 520–525
 - procyclical inflation and, 570
 - in real business cycle model, 569–570
- Employment ratio, 36, 514–516
- The Employment Situation* (Bureau of Labor Statistics), 37
- Employment status
 - changes in, 526f
 - flows into and out of, 525–526
- Employment targets, inflation and, 334–337
- Employment-to-population ratio, 514–516
- The End of Poverty* (Sachs), 184–185
- Endogenous growth, factors that affect, 189–194
- Endogenous growth theory, 186–188
- Endogenous variables, 4, 4f
- Energy shocks, 54
- Enron Corporation, 356
- Entitlements, 398, 402–403
- Equation of exchange, 110–111
- Equilibrium
 - aggregate demand shocks and, 291–295
 - factor market, 58–60
 - in foreign exchange market, 431f, 432
 - general, 287–288
 - labor market, 519, 519f
 - long-run, 56, 288, 290f
 - in money market, 252f, 253–254
 - reason economy heads toward, 230–231
 - short-run, 288, 288f
 - short-run, over time, 289–291
 - supply (price) shocks and, 295–302
- Equilibrium interest rate, 254–255
- Equilibrium output, algebraic determination of, 289
- Equilibrium price, 58–60
- Equilibrium real interest rate, 315–317, 316f, 320, 332n11
- Equities, 347
- Establishment survey, of unemployment, 37
- Europe
 - financial crisis of 2007–2009 in, 377–378
 - Stability and Growth Pact, 414–415
 - unemployment rates in, 534–535, 534f
- European Central Bank (ECB), 107, 314, 377, 415
- Ex ante real interest rate, 39
- Excess demand, 60, 254
- Excess reserves, 127, 134, 135f
- Excess supply, 60, 253
- Exchange rate, 226
- Exchange rates, 423–428
 - aggregate demand and supply analysis of, 438–440
 - analysis of changes in, 432–438
 - changes in expected future, 436–437, 437f
 - fixed, 443–446
 - floating (flexible), 443
 - forward, 424
 - importance of, 426–427
 - intervention and, 441–442
 - in long run, 428–430
 - nominal, 424–425
 - pegging, 447–449
 - publication of, 425
 - real, 425–426
 - in short run, 430–432
 - spot, 424
 - volatility of, 438
 - yen/U.S. dollar, 427f
- Exchange rate targeting, 557
- Exchange rate transactions, 424
- Exchanges, 347
- Excludability, 176
- Exogenous variables, 4, 4f
- Expansionary fiscal contractions, 412–413
- Expansionary policy, 578–582
- Expectations
 - adaptive, 543
 - management of, 581–582
 - rational, 542–545
- Expectations-augmented Phillips curve, 270
- Expectations channel, 382
- Expected future exchange rate, 436–437, 437f
- Expected future income, 506t
- Expected future output, 496t
- Expected rate of change of real price of capital, 497t
- Expected return, 262, 431
- Expenditure
 - actual, 223
 - autonomous consumption, 224
 - components of, 223–227
 - planned, 223
 - See also* Consumption expenditures
- Expenditure approach, 23–27
- Expenditure multiplier, 228n5, 408–409
- Exports, net, 23, 24t, 25–26, 71–72, 223, 226–227
- Ex post real interest rate, 39
- Factor accumulation, 149
- Factor income, 29
- Factor market equilibrium, 58–60
- Factor markets, supply and demand analysis of, 59f
- Factor prices, determination of, 56–60
- Factors of production, 47–48, 498
- Fair Labor Standards Act, 530
- Fannie Mae, 378–379, 510
- Fascism, 372
- Favorable supply shocks, 54, 300–301, 300f
- Fed. *See* Federal Reserve System (Fed)
- Federal debt. *See* Government debt
- Federal deficit. *See* Budget deficit
- Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC), 356
- Federal funds rate, 38, 213, 240–241
 - during financial crisis of 2007–2009, 382, 581–582
 - housing price bubble and, 375
 - inflation rate and, 245f
 - real interest rate and, 241
 - setting of, 251–256
 - Taylor rule and, 329–332, 331f
- Federal Home Loan Banks, 510–511
- Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation (FHLMC), 378–379, 510
- Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation rate, 38
- Federal Housing Administration (FHA), 510
- Federal National Mortgage Association (FNMA), 378–379, 510
- Federal Open Market Committee (FOMC), 105, 106, 240, 442, 559
- Federal Reserve Bank of New York, 442–443

- Federal Reserve Banks, 105, 106
- Federal Reserve System (Fed),
105, 105*f*
balance sheet of, 126–127
Board of Governors, 106
control of monetary base by,
127–130
control of money supply and,
106, 253
discount lending by, 127, 129
foreign exchange interventions by,
440–443
Great Depression and, 549
housing price bubble and, 375–376
inflation and, 11–12
inflation targeting by, 558–559
mission of, 314
monetary aggregates, 107–108, 107*t*
monetary policy of, 12, 240–241
open market operations, 106,
127–128
reaction of, to global financial crisis,
312, 381–383, 381*f*
response of, to asset-price bubbles,
387–388
setting of federal funds rate by,
251–256
use of equilibrium real interest rate
by, 315–316
use of M1 and M2 by, 108
use of Taylor rule by, 331–332
- Final goods and services, 21–22
- Finance
direct, 346–347
indirect, 347
- Finance companies, 348
- Financial crises, 12, 363
agency theory and, 364
asymmetric information and, 364
banking crisis and, 367–368
debt deflation and, 368
dynamics of, 364–380
initiation of, 364–367
in Japan, 385
sequence of events in, 365*f*
uncertainty and, 367
See also Financial crisis of
2007–2009; Great Depression
- Financial crisis of 2007–2009, 209
autonomous monetary easing at
onset of, 244
causes of, 372–373
China and, 304–305, 305*f*
credit spreads and, 380*f*
decline of aggregate demand in,
379–380
deterioration of financial institu-
tions' balance sheets in, 376
effects of, 373–375
events leading to, 284
events of, 363
failure of high-profile firms during,
378–379
federal funds rate and, 382,
581–582
Fed reaction to, 312, 381–383
financial frictions and, 586–587
fiscal policy during, 384–385
global financial markets and,
377–378
government response to, 383–385
in Ireland, 379
negative supply and demand
shocks and, 301–302, 302*f*
real interest rates in, 587*f*
residential housing prices and,
374–375, 375*f*
run on shadow banking system in,
376–377
United Kingdom and, 303–304, 303*f*
U.S. dollar and, 435–436
- Financial deepening, 357–359
- Financial development, economic
growth and, 357–359
- Financial engineering, 373
- Financial frictions, 566, 584–587
- Financial innovation, 365–366,
372–373
- Financial institutions, decline in bal-
ance sheets of, 376
- Financial instruments, 347
- Financial intermediaries, 347
assets of U.S., 351*f*
asymmetric information and,
350–353
financial liberalization and,
365–366
primary assets and liabilities
of, 348*t*
types of, 348
- Financial intermediation, 347
- Financial liberalization, 365–366
- Financial markets
global, during financial crisis,
377–378
integration of, 209
- Financial regulation, asset-price bub-
bles and, 388
- Financial sector, government regula-
tion of, 354–357
- Financial system
flow of funds through, 346–347,
346*f*
information challenges and,
349–354
role of, 345–348
- Financial variables, 206, 208
- Financing constraints, 495, 498*t*,
499*n*3, 507*t*
- Fire sales, 367, 376–377
- Fiscal policy, 396
aggregate demand and, 407–408
aggregate supply and, 410–411
balancing budget and, 412
budget deficits and, 11
definition of, 11
economy in long run and, 404–407
economy in short run and,
407–413, 408*f*
effect on saving of, 78–81
during financial crisis of
2007–2009, 384–385
supply-side economics and,
411–412
- Fiscal stimulus, debate over tax-
based vs. spending-based,
409–410
- Fiscal stimulus package, 384–385, 396
activist/nonactivist debate over,
328–329
crowding out and, 81–82
IS curve and, 235–236
- Fisher, Irving, 39, 110, 111, 456, 457
- Fisher effect, 117
- Fisher equation, 39–40, 116–117
- Fixed exchange rate regime, 226*n*3,
443–446
- Fixed investment, 24, 224
- Flinders Island, 193
- Floating (flexible) exchange rate
regime, 443
- Flows, 22
vs. stocks, 23
- FOMC. *See* Federal Open Market
Committee (FOMC)
- Ford, Henry, 531
- Ford Motor Company, 531
- Foreign aid, effectiveness of, 184–185
- Foreign assets, net, 73, 74–75
- Foreign currencies, 423–424
- Foreign debt, 405
- Foreign exchange interventions,
440–443
under fixed exchange rate
regime, 444*f*
- Foreign exchange market, 423–428
equilibrium in, 431*f*, 432
intervention in, 440–443
- Foreign exchange rates. *See* Exchange
rates

- Foreign exchange trading, 427–428
 Foreign real interest rate (r^F), 433, 435f
 Forward exchange rate, 424
 Forward transactions, 424
 401(k) plans, 10, 477
 France, 448
 Freddie Mac, 378–379, 510
 Free-rider problem, 350
 Frictional unemployment, 270n4, 313, 527
 Friedman, Milton, 102, 115, 262n2, 269, 269n3, 272, 332, 456, 469, 549
 Friedman-Phelps Phillips curve analysis, 269–272
 Fundamental economic values, 366
 Fundamental identity of national income accounting, 19
- GDP. *See* Gross domestic product (GDP)
 GDP deflator, 32
 General equilibrium, 287–288
The General Theory of Employment, Interest, and Money (Keynes), 222, 260, 468
 Geography, economic growth and, 182
 Germany
 exchange-rate pegging in, 448
 post-war growth in, 156
 Giannoni, Marc, 217
 Globalization, 525
 Global saving glut, 97–98
 Global trade imbalances, 13
 GNP. *See* Gross national product (GNP)
 Golden Rule capital-labor ratio, 168–172, 170f, 171f
 Goldin, Claudia, 178
 Goods
 basket of, 32–33
 capital, 21
 durables, 24
 final, 21–22
 intermediate, 21
 market value of, 19–20
 newly produced, 22
 nondurables, 24
 nonmarket, 20
 revenues from selling, 56
 Goods market equilibrium, 75–76, 78f, 228–229
 IS curve of, 231, 320n7
 in large open economies, 94–96, 95f
 in open economy, 84
 in small open economy, 84–86
 solving for, 228
 trade deficit, 86
 trade surplus, 85
 Governing Council, 107
 Government bonds
 interest rate on, 208, 208f
 spreads between long- and short-term, 209f
 Government budget, 396–400, 397t
 balancing of, 412
 revenue in, 399
 spending in, 397–398
 See also Budget deficit; Budget surplus
 Government budget constraint, 400
 Government capital, 404
 Government consumption, 25, 68–69
 Government debt
 debate over burden of, 404–407
 international comparison of, 404, 404t
 monetizing, 413
 size of, 400–404
 See also Budget deficit
 Government-directed credit, 355
 Government investment, 25, 68–69, 405
 Government-issued money, 413–414
 Government National Mortgage Association (GNMA), 510
 Government policies
 housing market and, 510–511
 to promote productivity, 176–180
 in response to financial crisis of 2007–2009, 383–385
 to stimulate saving, 70–71
 Government purchases (spending), 23, 24t, 25, 223
 aggregate demand curve and, 286
 budget and, 397–398
 effect on saving of, 81
 fixed level of, 227
 on infrastructure, 176–177
 IS curve and, 232–233, 233f
 as percentage of GDP, 398t
 planned expenditure and, 227
 on R&D, 179
 Government regulation
 of financial sector, 354–357
 to promote transparency, 354–355
 prudential, 357
 Government safety net, 355–357
 Government saving, 68–69, 81
 Government saving rate, 67
 Government securities, 127
 Government sponsored enterprises (GSEs), 510–511
 Grant and Ward, 367
 Grants in aid, 398
 Great Depression, 6, 18, 222
 bank failures in, 212
 bank panics during, 135–136, 369
 credit spreads during, 370–371, 371f
 debt deflation in, 371–372
 decline in aggregate demand during, 369–371
 international dimensions of, 372
 policy errors during, 549
 real interest rate in, 371
 recovery from, 372
 stock market crash in, 368–369
 unemployment rate during, 7
 unemployment rate in, 212
 Great Inflation, 7, 11, 212–213, 337–338
 Great Moderation, 213
 Great Recession, 7, 11, 200, 213
 See also Financial crisis of 2007–2009
 Greece, 414–415
 Greenspan, Alan, 330, 363, 387
 Gross domestic product (GDP)
 capital goods and, 21
 chain-weighted measures of, 31
 changes in components of, over time, 26–27
 components of, 23–26, 24t
 current U.S., 19
 definition of, 19
 expenditure approach to measuring, 23–27
 implicit price deflator for, 32
 income approach to measuring, 27–29, 28t
 international comparison of expenditure components of, 28f
 inventory investment and, 21–22
 nonmarket goods and services and, 20
 over fixed time period, 22
 production approach to measuring, 19–22
 real, 5–6, 5f
 real vs. nominal, 30–31
 transfers and, 25
 value added technique and, 21
 Gross investment, 490–491, 491f
 Gross national product (GNP), 29
 Growth accounting, 145–149
 application of, 147–148
 cross-country differences in, 148–149
 in practice, 146–147

- Growth accounting equation, 145–146
- Growth effect, 158
- Haircuts, 376
- Haiti, 144, 184
- Hall, Robert, 475
- Happiness, 22
- Head Start program, 178
- Health care costs, 403
- Hedge funds, 348
- Hicks, Sir John, 231
- Hierarchical mandates, 314
- High-powered money, 127
- Home ownership rates, cross-country comparison of, 51*t*
- Honohan, Patrick, 358
- Household formation, 506*t*
- Household survey, of unemployment, 37
- Housing market, 502–511
 - boom and bust in, 2001–2009, 507–509, 508*f*, 509*f*
 - demand in, 504–505
 - U.S. government policies and, 510–511
- Housing prices, 374–375, 375*f*
 - determination of, 503, 503*f*
 - expected appreciation of, 506*t*
 - residential investment and, 503–504, 508*f*
- Hsieh, Chang-Tai, 148*n*4
- Human capital, 177–178, 404–405
- Human development index, 22
- Hyperbolic discounting, 476–477
- Hyperinflation, 9, 115–116
- Ideas, nonrivalry of, 176, 187
- Immigration, 191
- Implementation lag, 328
- Implicit price deflator for GDP, 32
- Imports, 26*n*2
- Impossible trinity, 445
- Imputed value, 20
- Income
 - categories of, 27, 29
 - consumption and, 462–463
 - disposable, 29, 68, 223, 456–457
 - vs. money, 103
 - national, 29, 60–61
 - net factor, 29
 - net government, 29
 - per capita, 49–50
 - permanent, 469–470
 - ratio of U.S. wealth to, 1955–2010, 73*f*
 - total, 457*n*1
 - transitory, 470
- Income approach, 27–29, 28*t*
- Income effect, 465–466, 483, 484*f*
- Income inequality, 523–525
- Income measures, 29
- Income taxes, 70, 495*n*2
- Index of leading indicators, 203
- India, legal system in, 181
- Indifference curves, 460–461, 460*f*
- Indirect business taxes, 27
- Indirect finance, 347
- Individual Retirement Accounts (IRAs), 70
- Inflation, 7–9
 - 1960–2010, 207*f*
 - 1965–1982, 338*f*
 - 1970–2010, 556*f*
 - budget deficit and, 413–415
 - business cycle and, 206
 - cost of, 119–121
 - cost-push, 334–335, 335*f*, 336–337
 - demand-pull, 334, 335–337, 336*f*
 - demand shocks and, 291–293, 295*f*
 - employment targets and, 334–337
 - exchange rates and, 439*f*
 - expectations about, 542
 - expected, 278
 - expected, and nominal interest rate, 118*f*
 - Great Inflation, 7, 11, 212–213
 - hyperinflation, 9, 115–116
 - interest rates and, 116–118
 - long-run theory of, 113
 - measuring, 31–35
 - monetary policy and, 332–333
 - money growth and, 114*f*, 115*f*
 - policies to reduce, 11–12
 - procyclical, 570
 - real interest rate and, 241–244
 - Ricardian equivalence and, 416
 - shifts in aggregate demand curve and, 586
 - in short run, 114–115
 - stabilizing, 313–327
 - Taylor principle and, 309–310, 310*f*
 - unemployment and, 269*f*, 271
- Inflationary monetary policy, 334–338
- Inflation gap, 314
- Inflation hedges, 263
- Inflation rate, 7, 34
 - aggregate output and, 246*f*, 249*f*
 - algebraic determination of, 289
 - annual, 1890–2009, 211*f*
 - cross-country comparison of, 9*f*
 - federal funds rate and, 245*f*
 - percentage change method and, 34–35
 - quantity theory and, 113–115
 - U.S., 1914–2010, 8*f*
 - U.S., with different price indexes, 1950–2010, 35*f*
- Inflation target, 314, 332, 333*f*
- Inflation targeting, 557–559
- Inflation tax, 414
- Information, asymmetric, 349–350
- Infrastructure, 176–177
- Institutions, 180–185
- Insurance companies, 348
- Interest parity, 430*n*2
- Interest rates
 - changes in, 254–255
 - consumption expenditure and real, 224
 - definition of, 38
 - equilibrium, 254–255
 - during financial crisis of 2007–2009, 382
 - during Great Inflation, 213
 - inflation and, 116–118
 - intertemporal choice and, 464–468, 464*f*
 - measuring, 38–40
 - money demand and, 264
 - money market and, 251–256
 - net exports and real, 226
 - planned investment spending and real, 225
 - real, 76, 83, 85–86
 - real money demand and, 252, 252*f*
 - real vs. nominal, 39–40, 40*f*
 - on Treasury bills, 208, 208*f*
 - types of, 38–39
- Intermediate goods and services, 21
- International business cycles, 208–210, 210*f*
- International reserves, 440
- Interstate Highway System, 177
- Intertemporal budget constraint, 457–459, 459–460
- Intertemporal budget line, 458*f*, 459
 - with borrowing constraint, 466
 - interest rates and, 464–465
 - optimal level of consumption and, 465–466
- Intertemporal choice
 - consumption and, 457–462
 - consumption function and, 469
 - income and wealth and, 462–464
 - interest rates and, 464–468, 464*f*
 - permanent income hypothesis and, 470–471
 - in practice, 462–468

- Intertemporal marginal rate of substitution, 461
- Intertemporal substitution, 569
- Inventories, 21
- Inventory
- as factor of production, 498
 - motivation for holding, 498–499
- Inventory investment, 21–22, 24, 24–225, 487, 498–502
- Investment, 23–25, 24*t*
- autonomous, 78, 82–83, 226
 - business fixed, 486
 - changes in, 98, 99*f*
 - desired level of capital and, 490–492
 - determinants of, 496–498*t*
 - economic meaning of, 25
 - fixed, 24, 224
 - function, 77–78
 - goods market equilibrium and, 78*f*
 - government, 25, 68–69
 - gross, 490–491, 491*f*
 - in human capital, 177–178
 - inventory, 21–22, 24, 224–225, 487, 498–502
 - in large open economies, 94–99
 - neoclassical theory of, 487–498
 - net, 490, 491*f*
 - in open economy, 83–84
 - residential, 25, 487, 502–511
 - responses to changes in, in closed economy, 79–83
 - response to rise in, 83*f*
 - saving and investment equation, 75–76
 - in small open economy, 84–86, 86–87, 89, 89*f*
 - Tobin's q theory and, 500–502
 - U.S. national saving, trade balance, and, 1960–2010, 75*f*
- Investment banks, 347
- Investment function, 226
- Solow growth model, 150–151
- Investment growth, consumer, 205*f*
- Investment spending, 204
- autonomous, 236
 - components of, 487*f*
 - data on, 486–487
 - planned, 223, 224–226
- Investment tax credit, 82, 495*n*2
- Ireland
- expansionary fiscal contraction in, 412–413
 - financial crisis of 2007–2009 and, 379
- IS curve, 222, 230*f*, 320*n*7
- autonomous spending and, 236–237, 237*f*
 - derivation of, 229
 - factors that shift, 232–237
 - financial frictions and, 584, 586
 - fiscal stimulus package and, 235–236
 - government purchases and, 232–234, 233*f*, 234*f*
 - new Keynesian model and, 573–574
 - numerical example, 229–230
 - saving-investment diagram and, 231, 232*f*
 - shifts in, and aggregate demand curve, 247–248, 249*f*
 - tax changes and, 234–235, 235*f*
 - understanding, 229–232
- Italy, tax avoidance in, 20
- Japan
- lost decade in, 385
 - per capita income, 50
 - post-war growth in, 156
- Jay Cooke and Company, 367
- Jorgenson, Dale, 487
- J.P. Morgan, 378
- Just-in-time production, 498
- Katz, Lawrence F., 178, 530–531
- Keynes, John Maynard, 214, 222, 226, 456, 468
- on “animal spirits,” 226
 - on goods market equilibrium, 228
 - theory of money demand of, 251, 260–262
- Keynesian consumption function, 223–224, 456, 468–469
- Keynesian liquidity preference, 251–252, 262
- Keynesian models, 214
- Keynesians, 214
- Keynesian theory of consumption, 468–469
- King, Robert, 357
- Klenow, Peter, 217
- Kleptocracies, 184, 185
- Knickerbocker Trust Company, 367
- Kremer, Michael, 193
- Krueger, Alan, 530–531
- Kuznets, Simon, 18
- Kydland, Finn, 547, 567, 570
- Labor, 47
- allocation of, 186
 - child, 358
 - cost of, 56
 - demand curve for, 518
 - demand for, 56–58, 520–521
 - relation to output, 52–53, 53*f*
 - supply curve for, 518–519
 - supply of, 58, 521
- Labor force, 36
- composition of, 533
- Labor force participation
- definition of, 522
 - of women, 522–523, 522*f*
- Labor-force participation rate, 36
- Labor growth, 146, 149
- Labor hoarding, 570
- Labor market
- for college graduates, 524*f*
 - developments in, 514–518
 - effect of negative supply shock on, 63*f*
 - employment ratio and, 514–516
 - equilibrium in, 519, 519*f*
 - supply and demand analysis of, 59*f*
 - supply and demand in, 518–519
- Labor productivity, 49, 50*n*3
- growth of, 61–62, 61*t*
- Labor unions, 531–532, 535, 535*f*
- Lagging variables, 203
- Lags, 327–328
- Laibson, David, 476, 477
- Laidler, David, 261*n*1
- Large open economies, 84
- changes in investment in, 98, 99*f*
 - changes in savings in, 96–97, 97*f*
 - goods market equilibrium in, 94–96, 95*f*
 - vs. small open economies, 89–90
- Law of one price, 428
- Lawyers, 182
- Leading economic indicators, 203, 204
- Leading variables, 203
- Legal businesses, cost of
- establishing, 183
- Legal system, 180–182, 181*t*
- Legislative lag, 328
- Lehman Brothers, 200, 209, 367, 379
- Leisure, 518–519
- Lending
- by Fed, 383
 - restriction of, during financial crisis, 377
- Levine, Ross, 357
- Liabilities, 347
- Libertarian paternalism, 477
- LIBOR. *See* London Inter-Bank Offered Rate (LIBOR)
- Life-cycle consumption function, 472–473
- Life-cycle hypothesis, 456, 472–475
- Liquid assets, 104
- Liquidity, 262, 263

- Liquidity constraints, 466–468
- Liquidity preference framework, 251
- Liquidity preference function, 251, 252, 262
- Liquidity preference theory, 251
- Living standards, 47, 164, 192–193
- Loans
 - collateral for, 353–354
 - private, 350
 - risky, 366
- Logarithmic scale, 188
- London Inter-Bank Offered Rate (LIBOR), 38
- Long run
 - economy in, 404–407
 - exchange rates in, 428–430
 - vs. short run, 214–215
- Long-run aggregate supply curve, 274, 274f, 286–287, 323n8
 - shifts in, 277–278, 278f, 287
 - supply shocks and, 320–323
- Long-run equilibrium, 56, 288, 290f
- Long-run Phillips curve, 271–272, 271f
- Lucas, Robert, Jr., 144, 545, 545–546, 566n1

- M1 money, 108, 109f, 136f
- M2 money, 108, 109f
- Maastricht Treaty, 314
- Macroeconomic analyses, rational expectations theory and, 544–545
- Macroeconomic data
 - inflation, 7–9
 - interpreting, 5–9
 - real GDP, 5–6
 - unemployment rate, 7
- Macroeconomic data, measuring, 18–41
 - GDP, 19–31
 - inflation, 31–35
 - interest rates, 38–40
 - unemployment, 35–38
- Macroeconomic models
 - development of, 4–5
 - interpretation of macroeconomic data and, 5–9
 - long-run, 214, 215f
 - short-run, 214, 215f
 - variables in, 4, 4f
- Macroeconomic policy, 9–13
 - in 1960s, 268–269
 - discretionary, 547–548, 550–551
 - for economic growth, 9–10
 - fiscal policy, 11
 - to increase saving rate, 10
 - monetary policy, 12
 - objectives of, 312–314
 - response to asset-price bubbles, 386–388
 - rule-determined, 548–549
 - rules for, 13
 - stabilization policy, 12–13
- Macroeconomics
 - definition of, 3
 - practice of, 3–9
 - study of, 13–14
 - time horizons in, 213–215
- Macroeconomic variables, business cycle and, 203–210
- Macroprudential regulation, 388
- Managed float regime, 443
- Management of expectations, 581–582
- Marcometric models, 545–546
- Marginal product, 51
- Marginal product of capital (MPK), 52, 59f
 - calculation of, 53–54
 - demand curve analysis, 58
 - diminishing, 158
- Marginal product of capital (MPK) curve, 492, 493f
- Marginal product of labor (MPL), 52, 59f
 - calculation of, 53–54
 - demand curve analysis, 58
- Marginal propensity to consume (*mpc*), 224, 468, 473
- Marginal rate of substitution, 461
- Market-clearing assumption, 570
- Market-clearing wages, 529
- Market equilibrium, 58–60
 - goods, 75–76
 - in open economy, 84
 - See also* Goods market equilibrium
- Market value, 19–20
- Marshall Plan, 185
- McCallum, Bennet, 545
- Medicaid, 402–403, 403f
- Medicare, 25, 398, 402–403, 403f
- Medium of exchange, 103–104
- Menu costs, 119, 216
- Microcredit, 347
- Microeconomics, 3
- Mihov, Ilian, 217
- Millennium Project, 184
- Minimum wage, 529, 530–531
- Mitchell, Wesley, 201
- Modigliani, Franco, 456, 472
- Monetary aggregates, 107–108, 107t
- Monetary base, 126
 - components of, 139
 - control of, 127–130
 - nonborrowed, 130, 133
- A Monetary History of the United States* (Friedman and Schwartz), 549
- Monetary liabilities, 126
- Monetary neutrality, 333
- Monetary policy, 12
 - aggregate demand shocks and, 317–320, 318f, 319f
 - autonomous, 285
 - autonomous easing of, 243, 244
 - autonomous tightening of, 243, 244f, 248, 250f
 - credibility and, 551–557
 - discretionary, 547–548, 550–551
 - equilibrium real interest rate and, 315–317
 - Federal Reserve and, 240–241
 - during financial crisis of 2007–2009, 381–383
 - housing price bubble and, 375–376
 - independent, 445–446
 - inflation and, 332–333
 - inflationary, 334–338
 - inflation targeting, 557–559
 - lags and, 327–328
 - nonconventional, 382–383, 581–582
 - permanent supply shock and, 320–323, 321f, 322f
 - rule-based, 548–549
 - stabilization policy, 312–327
 - Taylor principle and, 242–243
 - Taylor rule and, 329–332
 - temporary supply shock and, 323–327
- Monetary policy (MP) curve, 240, 241–244, 242f
 - aggregate demand curve and, 248, 250f
 - equilibrium real interest rate and, 316f
 - shifts in, 243, 244f
 - Taylor rule versus, 330
 - upward slope of, 242–243
- Monetary targeting, 550–551
- Monetary transmission mechanisms, 382
- Monetizing the debt, 413
- Money
 - demand curve for, 252
 - functions of, 103–104
 - government-issued, 413–414
 - high-powered, 127
 - inflation and growth of, 114f, 115f
 - M1, 108, 109f, 136f
 - M2, 108, 109f

- meaning of, 103
 measuring, 107–109
 as medium of exchange, 103–104
 neutrality of, 112
 quantity of, 102
 quantity theory of, 110–115
 as store of value, 104
 supply curve for, 253
 as unit of account, 104
 unusual forms of, 104
 velocity of, 110–111
- Money demand**, 111, 251
 empirical evidence on, 263–265
 factors that determine, 264*t*
 interest rates and, 264
 Keynesian theories of, 260–262
 portfolio theories of, 262–263
 precautionary motive, 260
 speculative motive, 261
 stability of, 264–265
 transactions motive, 260
- Money market**
 equilibrium in, 252*f*, 253–254
 interest rates and, 251–256
- Money multiplier**, 136–140
 derivation of, 137–138
 intuition behind, 138–139
- Money supply**, 104–105
 control of, 106, 253
 determinants of, 133–135
 Great Depression bank panics and, 135–136
 multiple deposit creation and, 130–133
 process, 126–133, 134–135, 134*t*
 response of, to changes, 139–140
- Monitoring**, 352
- Monopolistic competition**, 215
- Moral hazard**, 349–350, 353–354, 356, 364, 366, 369
- Mortgage-backed securities**, 373, 376, 383
- Mortgage brokers**, 373
- Mortgage defaults**, 376
- Mortgage markets**
 agency problems in, 373
 financial innovation in, 372–373
- Mortgage rates**, 506*t*
- mpc*. *See* Marginal propensity to consume
- MPK**. *See* Marginal product of capital (MPK)
- MPL**. *See* Marginal product of labor (MPL)
- Mugabe, Robert**, 184
- Multiple deposit creation**, 130–133
- Multipliers**
 expenditure, 408–409
 tax, 228*n*5, 408–409
- Mutual funds**, 348
- Myopia**, 416–417
- NAIRU**, 273. *See* Non-accelerating inflation rate of unemployment (NAIRU)
- Napoleonic code**, 181
- NASDAQ stock index**, 501–502
- National Bureau of Economic Research (NBER)**, 202
- National Central Banks (NCBs)**, 107
- National environment shocks**, 54
- National income**, 29, 60–61
- National income accounting**, 18, 19
- National Income and Product Accounts**, 18
- National income identity**, 23
- National Institutes of Health**, 179
- National rate of output**, 274
- National saving**, 69–70
 government debt and, 405
 investment, trade balance, and, 1960–2010, 75*f*
 Ricardian equivalence and, 416
- National saving rate**, 70
- National Science Foundation**, 179
- National wealth**, 68
- Natural rate of unemployment**, 270, 277–278, 313, 532–535
- Negative (adverse) supply shocks**, 54, 62, 63*f*, 296–298, 296*f*, 298*f*, 299*f*, 301–302
- Negative demand shocks**, 294–295, 295*f*, 554
- Neoclassical model**, 486
- Neoclassical theory of investment**, 487–498
 changes in desired level of capital stock and, 492–495
 determining desired level of capital, 489–490
 determining level of capital stock, 488
 housing demand and, 504–505
 summary of, 495
 Tobin's *q* theory vs., 500–501
 use cost of capital and, 488–489
- Net capital outflow**, 71, 72
- Net capital outflow identity**, 71, 74–75
- Net domestic product**, 29
- Net exports**, 23–26, 24*t*, 71–72, 223
 aggregate demand curve and, 286
 autonomous, 227, 236–237, 286
 planned expenditure and, 226–227
 real interest rates and, 226
- Net factor income**, 29
- Net foreign assets**, 73, 74–75
 in U.S., 1975–2008, 74*f*
- Net foreign investment**, 71
- Net government income**, 29
- Net interest**, 27
- Net interest payments**, 398
- Net investment**, 490, 491*f*
- Net worth**, 348, 368
- Neutrality of money**, 112
- New Keynesian model**, 566, 571–576
 anti-inflation policy and, 582, 583*f*, 584
 building blocks of, 571–574
 business cycle fluctuations in, 574–576
 compared with other business cycle models, 576–584
 objections to, 576
- Newly produced goods and services**, 22
- New neoclassical model**, 566*n*1
- Newton, Sir Isaac**, 187
- Nixon, Richard**, 549
- Nominal anchor**, 551–552
- Nominal exchange rate**, 424–425
- Nominal GDP**, 30–31, 31*n*4
- Nominal interest rate**, 39–40, 40*f*
 expected inflation and, 118*f*
 real interest rate and, 241
- Nominal variables**, 30
- Non-accelerating inflation rate of unemployment (NAIRU)**, 273
- Nonactivist economists**, 12, 327
- Nonborrowed monetary base**, 130, 133
- Nonconventional monetary policy**, 382–383, 581–582
- Nondurable goods**, 24
- Nonmarket goods and services**, 20
- Nonrivalry**, 176, 187
- Nordhaus, William**, 18
- North, Douglass**, 180
- Norway, unemployment rate in**, 7
- Obama, Barack**, 328–329, 396
- Ohio Life Insurance and Trust Company**, 367
- Oil prices**
 in 1970s, 212–213
 in 2007–2008, 284
 inflation and, 542
 shocks, 62, 555–557
- Okaun, Arthur**, 275

- Okun's law, 275–276
- Open economies
 definition of, 83
 large, 84
 perfect capital mobility and, 83
 saving, investment, and goods market equilibrium in, 83–84
 small, 84–90
See also Large open economies;
 Small open economies
- Open market operations, 106, 127–128
- Open market purchase, 127–128, 253
- Open market sale, 127–128, 253
- Opportunity cost, 251
- Optimal forecast, 543
- Optimistic expectations-driven bubbles, 387
- Optimization, 461–462, 462*f*, 467*f*
- Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD), 22, 155
- Originate-to-distribute business model, 373
- Other income, 27
- Output
 equilibrium level of, 230–231
 expected future, 496*t*
 national rate of, 274
 potential, 274
 relation to capital, 51–52, 52*f*
 relation to labor, 52–53, 53*f*
 shifts in aggregate demand curve and, 586
 short-run, 578–582
- Output gap, 275, 278–279, 280*f*
- Partial-adjustment model, 492*n*1
- Patents, 179–180
- Payment technology, 260
- Payroll taxes, 410
- PCE deflator. *See* Personal consumption expenditure (PCE) deflator
- Peaks, 201
- Pension funds, 348
- Per-capita GDP, population growth and, 193*f*
- Per capita income, 49–50
 population increase and, 191
 relative to United States, 5*t*
 saving rate and, 158*f*
- Per capital real GDP, population growth and, 160–162, 161*f*
- Per-capita output
 population growth and, 160, 191, 192*f*
 saving rate and, 194, 194*f*
- Percentage change method, inflation rate and, 34–35
- Perfect capital mobility, 83, 445
- Perfect competition, 56, 215
- Permanent income, 469–470
- Permanent income consumption function, 470
- Permanent income hypothesis, 456, 469–471
- Personal consumption expenditure, 24, 24*t*
- Personal consumption expenditure (PCE) deflator, 32
- Personal taxes, 399
- Per-worker production function, 150*f*
- Phelps, Edmund, 269, 272
- Phillips curve, 267, 268–273
 after 1960s, 271
 accelerationist, 273
 with adaptive expectations, 272–273
 analysis in 1960s, 268–269
 expectations-augmented, 270
 Friedman-Phelps analysis, 269–272
 long-run, 271–272, 271*f*
 modern, 272–273
 new Keynesian model and, 571–573, 572*f*
 short-run, 271–272, 271*f*
- Planned expenditure, 223
- Planned investment spending, 223
 business expectations and, 226
 planned expenditure and, 224–226
 real interest rates and, 225
- Poland, unemployment rate in, 7
- Policy evaluation, econometric, 545–546
- Policy makers, 218
- Policy rules, 547–549
- Policy trilemma, 445–446, 445*f*
- Political business cycle, 549
- Poor countries
 foreign aid to, 184–185
 policies for economic growth in, 9–10
 productivity in, 49–51
- Population growth
 changes in, 160, 161*f*
 endogenous growth and, 191, 192*f*
 living standards and, 192–193
 policies to limit, 162
 real GDP per capita and, 160–162, 161*f*
 in Solow growth model, 158–162
 steady state and, 159
- Portfolio theories, 262–263
- Positive (favorable) supply shocks, 54, 300–301, 300*f*
- Positive demand shocks, 291–294, 291*f*, 552–553
- Post-war growth, 156
- Potential output, 274
- Precautionary motive, 261
- Preferences, 460–461
- Prescott, Edward, 567, 570
- Present discounted value, 459–460
- Present value, 459–460
- Price indexes, 31–32
 inflation rate and, 34–35, 35*f*
- Price level, 30, 34, 112
- Prices
 asset, 366–367
 equilibrium, 58–60
 factor, 56–60
 housing, 503–504, 503*f*
 relative, 119–120, 121
 sticky, 214
- Price shocks, 272, 278, 295–302
- Price stability, 313–314
- Price stickiness, 215–217
- Prime rate, 38
- Principal-agent problem, 373
- Printing money, 413
- Prison population, 533
- Private disposable income, 29
- Private loans, 350
- Private saving, 68
- Private saving rate, 67, 68
- Procyclical economic variables, 203
- Procyclical inflation, 570
- Production
 factors of, 47–48, 498
 just-in-time, 498
- Production approach, 19–22
- Production function, 47, 48
 aggregate, 48
 application of, 49–51
 Cobb-Douglas, 48–49, 50, 51–54, 61, 489
 per-worker, 150*f*
 relating output to capital, 51–52, 52*f*
 relation labor and output, 52–53, 53*f*
 in Romer model, 186–187
 slope of, 52
 Solow growth model, 149–150
 supply shocks and, 54–55, 55*f*
 for technology, 187, 188
- Production smoothing, 499
- Productive capacity, 47
- Productivity, 48
 labor, 49, 50*n*3
 policies to promote, 176–180

- of R&D, 189–191, 191*f*
- total factor, 48–49
- Productivity growth, 146, 149
- natural rate of unemployment
 - and, 533
 - in Solow growth model, 162–163, 163*f*
- Productivity shocks, 568, 570
- Profit maximization, 57
- Profits
 - corporate, 27
 - economic, 56–58
- Property rights, 180
 - legal system and, 180–182
 - obstacles to effective, 182–185
- Prudential regulation, 357
- Prudential supervision, 357
- The Purchasing Power of Money* (Fisher), 110
- Purchasing power parity (PPP), 428–429

- Quantitative easing, 382
- Quantity of money, 102
- Quantity theory of money, 110–115
 - inflation and, 113–115
 - in long run, 113
 - price level and, 112
 - in short run, 114–115
- r^* . *See* Equilibrium real interest rate
- Random walk, 475–476
- Random walk hypothesis, 475–476
- Rational expectations, 273*n*5, 476
 - policy making and, 542–545
- Rational expectations revolution, 545
- Rational inattention, 216
- Ratio scale, 188
- r^D . *See* Domestic real interest rate (r^D)
- Real business cycle model, 566, 567–570, 567*f*
 - anti-inflation policy and, 582, 583*f*
 - compared with other business cycle models, 576–584
 - employment and unemployment in, 569–570
 - objections to, 570
- Real exchange rate, 425–426
- Real gross domestic product (GDP), 5–6
 - annual growth rate of, 1890–2009, 211*f*
 - calculation of, 30–31
 - chain-weighted measures of, 31
 - components of, 203–206
 - cross-country comparison of, 6*f*
 - determinants of, 47
 - fluctuations in, 6
 - growth, 1960–2010, 204*f*
 - vs. nominal, 30–31
 - population growth and per capita, 160–162, 161*f*
 - U.S., per capita, 1900–2010, 5*f*
- Real interest rate, 39–40, 40*f*, 76, 496*t*
 - aggregate output and, 246*f*, 249*f*
 - consumption expenditure and, 224
 - domestic, 433, 434*f*
 - equilibrium, 315–317, 320, 332*n*11
 - federal funds rate and, 241
 - in financial crisis of 2007–2209, 587*f*
 - foreign, 433, 435*f*
 - during Great Depression, 371
 - inflation and, 241–244
 - investment decisions and, 77–78
 - net exports and, 226
 - planned investment spending and, 225
 - shifts in aggregate demand curve and, 586
 - world, 83, 85–86
- Real money balances, 111, 251, 253
- Real mortgage rates, 506*t*
- Real price of capital, 496*t*
- Real rental price (or cost) of capital, 56–57, 59*f*
- Real shocks, 567
- Real variables, 30–31
- Real wage growth, 61–62, 61*t*
- Real wage rate, 57, 59*f*
- Real wages, 517–518
 - oil shocks and, 62
- Recessions, 6, 201
 - dating, 202
 - See also* Great Recession
- Recognition lag, 327–328
- Recovery Act, 396
- Redistribution effects, 406
- Regulatory forbearance, 385, 385*n*13
- Relative prices, 119–120, 121
- Rental price of capital, 56
- Repurchase agreements (repos), 376
- Required reserve ratio, 127, 134
- Required reserves, 127
- Research and development (R&D), 178–180
 - changes in productiveness of, 189–191, 191*f*
 - increase in population engaged in, 189, 190*f*
- Research universities, 179
- Reserves, 127, 253
 - borrowed, 130, 133
 - excess, 127, 134
 - required, 127
 - required reserve ratio, 127
- Residential housing prices, 374–375, 375*f*
- Residential investment, 25, 487, 502–511
 - determinants of, 506–507*t*
 - housing prices and, 503–504, 508*f*
- Restrictive covenants, 352
- Retirement plans, 477–478
- Revaluation, 444–445
- Revenue, 399
 - seignorage, 414
- r^F . *See* Foreign real interest rate (r^F)
- Ricardian equivalence, 415–418
 - budget deficits and, 415–418
 - Bush tax cuts and, 418
 - implications of, 416
 - objections to, 416–417
- Risk, 262, 263
- Risk averse, 262
- Rival, 176
- Robinson, James, 185
- Rogoff, Kenneth, 559
- Romer, Christina, 409
- Romer, Paul, 186
- Romer model, 186–188
 - balanced growth path in, 188*f*
 - population growth and, 192–193
 - saving and, 194
 - sustained growth in, 188
- Roosevelt, Franklin Delano, 369, 372
- Rule-determined policy, 13, 548–549
- Rules, 547
 - case for, 548–549
 - types of, 548
- Rwanda, real GDP of, 6

- Sachs, Jeffrey, 184, 185
- Safety net, 355–357
- Salaries, 27
- Sales taxes, 10, 27, 70
- Samuelson, Paul, 18, 206, 267, 268
- Sargent, Thomas, 545, 566*n*1
- Saving
 - autonomous consumption and, 79
 - behavioral policies to increase, 477
 - changes in, 96–97, 97*f*
 - decline in, 80*f*
 - effect of fiscal policy on, 78–81
 - function, 76–77
 - global saving glut, 97–98
 - goods market equilibrium and, 78*f*
 - government, 68–69

- government policies to stimulate, 70–71
- government purchases and, 81
- government saving and, 81
- increase in, 80*f*, 87*f*
- increase return on, 70
- in large open economies, 94–98, 97*f*
- national, 69–70
- in open economy, 83–84
- over life cycle, 473–475, 474*f*
- private, 68
- relationship between consumption and, 456–457
- relationship between wealth and, 67–70, 73–74
- responses to changes in, in closed economy, 79–83
- Romer model and, 194
- in small open economy, 84–86, 86–87
- tax incentives for, 70
- uses of, 71–72
- Saving and investment equation, 75–76
- Saving-investment diagram, 78, 78*f*
 - IS* curve and, 231, 232*f*
 - in small open economy, 85*f*
- Saving rate, 150, 468–469
 - 2008 tax rebate and, 471*f*
 - changes in the Solow model, 157–158, 157*f*
 - cross-country comparison of, 11*f*
 - Golden Rule level of, 171*f*
 - government, 67
 - measures of U.S., 1955–2010, 69*f*
 - national, 70
 - per capita income and, 158*f*
 - per-capita output and, 194*f*
 - policies to increase, 10
 - private, 67, 68
 - U.S., 1950–2010, 10*f*
- Savings deposits, 108
- Schleifer, Andrei, 184
- Schwartz, Anna, 549
- Screening, 352
- Seasonally adjusted, 31
- Sectoral shifts, 529
- Securities, 347
- Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), 354
- Securitization, 373
- Seignorage, 413, 414
- Seko, Mobutu Sese, 185
- Self-correcting mechanism, 291
- Self-employment income, 27
- Services, 24
 - final, 21–22
 - intermediate, 21
 - market value of, 19–20
 - newly produced, 22
 - nonmarket, 20
 - revenues from selling, 56
- Shadow banking system, 376–377
- Shoe-leather costs, 119
- Short run
 - economy in, 407–413
 - exchange rates in, 430–432
 - vs. long run, 214–215
- Short-run aggregate supply curve, 274*f*, 275–277, 286–287, 323*n*8
 - derivation of, 276–277
 - new Keynesian model and, 571–573, 572*f*
 - shifts in, 278–280, 279*f*, 280*f*, 287*t*
 - supply shocks and, 324–327
- Short-run equilibrium, 288, 288*f*
 - over time, 289–291
- Short-run output, 578–582
- Short-run Phillips curve, 271–272, 271*f*
- Skill-biased technical change, 524–525
- Small open economy
 - definition of, 84
 - vs. large open economy, 89–90
 - responses to changes in saving and investment in, 86–87
 - saving, investment, and trade balance in, 84–86
 - world economy and, 86
- Social Security, 25, 398, 402–403, 403*f*
- Social Security taxes, 399
- Solow, Robert, 146, 149, 267, 268
- Solow diagram, 151*f*, 152
 - with population growth, 160*f*
- Solow growth model, 145, 149–164
 - algebra of, 173
 - building blocks of, 149–152
 - capital accumulation in, 151–152
 - convergence in, 154–156
 - dynamics of, 152–153
 - investment function in, 150–151
 - limitations of, 164
 - output and consumption in, 153*f*
 - population growth in, 158–162
 - production function in, 149–150
 - productivity growth in, 162–163, 163*f*
 - results from, 163–164
 - saving rate changes in, 157–158, 157*f*
- Solow residual, 146–147
- Solow residuals, 568, 569*f*, 570
- South Korea
 - economic growth in, 144
 - real GDP of, 6
- Special purpose vehicles (SPVs), 374
- Speculative attacks, 448
- Speculative motive, 261
- Spending-based fiscal stimulus, 409–410
- Spot exchange rate, 424
- Spot transactions, 424
- Stability and Growth Pact, 414–415
- Stabilization policy, 12–13, 312–327
 - activist/nonactivist debate over, 327–329
 - short-run output and, 578–582
- Stagflation, 296–297
- Staggered price setting, 217
- Standard of living, 47, 164
- Steady state, 152, 153
 - “bathtub model” of, 154
 - at different capital-labor ratios, 168
 - population growth and, 159
 - solving for, 173
 - technology growth and, 162–163
- Sterilized intervention, 441*n*6
- Sticky prices, 214, 215–217
- Stiglitz, Joseph, 22
- Stock, James, 213
- Stock market
 - crash of 1929, 368–369, 369*f*
 - decline in, during financial crisis, 377
 - effect of negative supply shock on, 63*f*
 - oil shocks and, 62
- Stock-out avoidance, 499
- Stock prices
 - 1960–2010, 207*f*
 - financial crisis of 2007–2009 and, 377*f*
- Stocks (concept), 22
 - vs. flows, 23
- Store of value, 104
- Structural unemployment, 270*n*4, 313, 529
- Structured credit products, 373
- Subprime borrowers, 509
- Subprime financial crisis, 435–436
- Subprime mortgage market, 200, 363, 372–373, 374
- Subprime mortgages, 373
- Sub-Saharan Africa, 184
- Substitution effect, 465–466, 483, 484*f*
- Summers, Lawrence, 561
- Supervisory Capital Assessment Program (SCAP), 380*n*9

- Supply
 - of capital, 58
 - excess, 60, 253
 - of labor, 58, 521
- Supply curve, 58
 - aggregate, 273–280
 - for domestic assets, 431
 - factors that shift, 254–255
 - for labor, 518–519
 - for money, 253
 - response to shifts in, 256f
- Supply shocks, 54–55, 295–302
 - credibility and, 554, 555f
 - effect of, 54
 - negative, 54, 62, 63f, 296–298, 296f, 299f
 - oil shocks, real wages, and the stock market, 62–63
 - permanent, 298–299, 299f, 320–323
 - positive, 54, 300–301, 300f
 - response of production function to, 55f
 - response to, 320–327, 321f, 322f
 - temporary, 295–297, 323–327
 - types of, 54
- Supply-side economics, 411–412
- Supply-siders, 411
- Switzerland, demise of monetary targeting in, 550–551

- T-account, 128
- Tariffs, 399
- TARP. *See* Treasury Asset Relief Plan (TARP)
- Tax-adjusted user cost of capital, 494–495
- Tax-based fiscal stimulus, 409–410
- Tax credits, investment, 82, 495n2
- Tax cuts
 - budget deficit and, 88
 - payroll, 410f
 - random walk hypothesis and, 476
 - supply-side, 411f
- Tax distortions, 119
- Taxes
 - aggregate demand curve and, 286
 - capital gains, 70
 - consumption, 70
 - corporate, 399, 495n2, 497t
 - effect on saving of, 79–81
 - income, 70
 - inflation, 414
 - IS curve and changes in, 234–235, 235f
 - payroll, 410
 - personal, 399
 - planned expenditure and, 227
 - on production and imports, 399
 - Ricardian equivalence and, 418
 - sales, 10, 27, 70
 - Social Security, 399
 - user cost of capital and, 493–495
 - value-added, 70
- Tax incentives
 - for R&D, 179, 190
 - for saving, 70
- Tax multiplier, 228n5, 408–409
- Tax policy, saving rate and, 10
- Tax rebate of 2008, 471–472
- Tax revenue, 399
- Tax smoothing, 407
- Tax wedges, 406
- Taylor, John, 242, 329, 375
- Taylor principle, 242–243, 255n4, 309–310, 310f
- Taylor rule, 242n1, 329–332, 548
 - federal funds rate and, 331f
 - Fed’s use of, 331–332
 - vs. monetary policy curve, 330
 - in practice, 330–331
- Taylor rule equation, 329–330
- Technological spillover, 192
- Technology
 - excludability and, 176
 - as production input, 175–176
 - production of, 187, 188
- Technology growth, steady state and, 162–163
- Technology shocks, 54, 501–502
- Teenagers, minimum wage laws and, 530–531
- Temporary workers, 533
- Ten-year Treasury bond rate, 38
- Term Auction Facility (TAF), 383
- Terms of trade, 425
- Thaler, Richard, 477
- A Theory of Consumption Function* (Friedman), 469
- Theory of intertemporal choice, 457–462
- Theory of purchasing power parity (PPP), 428–429
- Three-month Treasury bill, real and nominal interest rates, 1955–2010, 40f
- Time deposits, 108
- Time-inconsistency problem, 547–548
- Time subscripts, 147
- Tobin, James, 261n1
- Tobin’s *q* theory, 486, 500–502
- Total factor productivity, 48–49, 50, 175–176
- Total income, 457n1
- Trade, terms of, 425
- Trade balance, 26, 71–72
 - link between net capital outflows and, 72
 - in small open economy, 84–86
 - U.S. national saving, investment, and, 1960–2010, 75f
- Trade deficits, 13, 71, 86
 - U.S., 74–75, 87–88, 88f
- Trade imbalances, 13
- Trade surplus, 71, 85
- Traditional Keynesian model, 576–584
- Transaction costs, 103
- Transactions motive, 260
- Transfer payments, 398
- Transfers, 25
- Transitory income, 470
- Transparency, 354–355
- Treasury Asset Relief Plan (TARP), 383–384
- Treasury bills, interest rate on, 38, 208, 208f
- Trough, 201
- Twin deficits, 87–88, 88f

- Unanticipated inflation, 120–121
- Uncertainty
 - increase in, 367
 - inflation and, 120–121
- Underground economy, 20
- Unemployment
 - 1970–2010, 556f
 - business cycle and, 206
 - causes of, 527–532
 - civilian, 2010, 37f
 - duration of, 527
 - dynamics of, 525–527
 - efficiency wages and, 531
 - establishment survey of, 37
 - frictional, 270n4, 313, 527
 - household survey of, 37
 - inflation and, 271
 - measuring, 35–38
 - natural rate of, 270, 277–278, 313, 532–535
 - non-accelerating inflation rate of, 273
 - in real business cycle model, 569–570
 - structural, 270n4, 313, 529
 - unemployment insurance and, 528
 - wage rigidity and, 529, 530f
- Unemployment gap, 270

- Unemployment insurance, 25, 528, 534–535
- Unemployment rate, 7, 35–38, 516
 - 1960–2010, 208f
 - 1965–1982, 338f
 - annual, 1890–2009, 211f
 - cross-country comparison of, 8f
 - cyclical, 532
 - European, 534–535, 534f
 - during Great Depression, 212
 - during Great Recession, 213
 - inflation and, 1950–2009, 269f
 - negative demand shocks and, 295f
 - Okun’s law, 275
 - in practice, 313
 - U.S., 1929–2010, 7f
- Unemployment spells, 527
 - Unions, 531–532, 535, 535f
- United Kingdom
 - exchange-rate pegging in, 448
 - financial crisis of 2007–2009 and, 303f
- United States
 - annual inflation and money growth rates, 1965–2010, 115f
 - budget deficits, 1930–2011, 12f
 - civilian unemployment, 2010, 37f
 - economic growth in, 144
 - education investment in, 177–178
 - expenditure components of GDP, 1950–2010, 26f
 - growth in labor productivity and real wages, 61f
 - growth rates, in postwar period, 147–148
 - inflation and unemployment, 1950–2009, 269f
 - inflation and unemployment, 1970–2010, 556f
 - inflation rate, 1914–2010, 8f
 - inflation rate with different price indexes, 1950–2010, 35f
 - as largest net debtor, 74–75
 - net foreign assets, 1975–2008, 74f
 - personal saving rate, 1950–2010, 10f
 - ranking, on human development index, 22
 - real GDP per capita, 1900–2010, 5f
 - real wages in, 1965–2010, 517f
 - sources of economic growth in, 148f
 - trade deficit, 13
 - unemployment rate, 1929–2010, 7f
 - unemployment rate, 1960–2010, 516f
- Unit of account, 104
- Unsterilized intervention, 441n6
- U.S. business cycles
 - 1890–2009, 211f
 - Great Depression and, 212
 - Great Moderation, 213
 - Great Recession, 213
 - interwar period, 212
 - post–World War II, 212–213
 - pre–World War I, 210, 212
- U.S. currency, 109
- U.S. dollar, 423
 - effect of purchase of, 442f
 - real and nominal yen/U.S. dollar exchange rate, 427f
 - subprime financial crisis and, 435–436
- Use-of-saving identity, 71
- User cost of capital, 487, 488–489, 493–495, 494f
- U.S. government
 - growth in debt of, 400–403
 - response of, to financial crisis of 2007–2009, 383–385
- U.S. labor market
 - developments in, 514–518
 - employment ratios, 1960–2010, 515f
 - See also* Labor market
- U.S. Treasury bills, 40
- Utility, 460
- Value added, 21
- Value-added tax, 70
- Variables
 - coincident, 203
 - co-movement of, 203
 - endogenous, 4, 4f
 - exogenous, 4, 4f
 - financial, 206, 208
 - lagging, 203
 - leading, 203
 - nominal, 30
 - real, 30–31
 - timing of, 203
- Velocity of money, 110–111
- Verdier, Thierry, 185
- Vietnam War buildup, 233–234, 234f
- Vishney, Robert, 184
- Volcker, Paul, 294–294, 337, 560
- Volcker disinflation, 294–294
- Wage growth, explaining real, 61–62
- Wage rate, 56
 - real, 57, 59f
- Wage rigidity, 529, 530f, 531–532
- Wages, 27
 - changes in labor supply and demand and, 520–525
 - for college graduates, 177
 - college wage premium, 523–525, 523f
 - efficiency, 531
 - market-clearing, 529
 - minimum wage, 529, 530–531
 - real, 517–518
- War, 184
- Watson, Mark, 213
- Wealth
 - consumption and, 463
 - definition of, 67–68
 - vs. money, 103
 - money demand and, 263
 - national, 68
 - over life cycle, 473–475, 474f
 - ratio of U.S. wealth to income, 1955–2010, 73f
 - relationship between saving and, 67–70, 73–74
- Weil, David, 149, 177
- Weinstein, David, 156
- Welfare, 460
- Welfare payments, 398
- Well-being, measures of, 22
- Women, labor force participation of, 522–523, 522f
- Workers
 - discouraged, 36, 525
 - temporary, 533
- Work in process, 498
- World Bank, *Doing Business* reports, 183
- World economy, small open economy and, 86
- World real interest rate, 83, 85–86
- World War II, 156, 372, 400
- Young, Alwyn, 148n4
- Yuan, 446
- Zaire, foreign aid to, 185
- Zero-lower-bound problem, 382, 581–582
- Zimbabwe
 - hyperinflation in, 9, 116
 - kleptocracy in, 184

Guide to Commonly Used Symbols

Symbol	Term
α	fraction of population devoted to R&D
β	parameter that indicates how expectations of future inflation affect current inflation
γ	responsiveness of inflation to output gap
δ	depreciation rate
Δ	change in a variable
ε	real exchange rate
λ	responsiveness of real interest rate to inflation rate
π	inflation rate
π^e	expected rate of inflation
π^T	inflation target
Π	real economic profits
ρ	price shock
τ	tax rate
χ	productivity of research and development
A	available technology (total factor productivity)
AD	aggregate demand curve
AS	aggregate supply curve
B	bonds
BR	borrowed reserves
c	consumption per worker
c	currency ratio
c	responsiveness of consumption to real interest rates
C	consumption expenditure
C	currency in circulation
\bar{C}	autonomous consumption
d	responsiveness of investment to real interest rates
D	checkable deposits
D	demand curve
e	excess reserves ratio
E	nominal exchange rate
E^e	expected exchange rate
E^{par}	fixed exchange rate
ER	excess reserves
EX	exports
g	productivity growth rate
g_A	growth rate of technology (total factor productivity)
g_K	growth rate of capital
g_L	growth rate of labor
g_Y	growth rate of output
G	government purchases
G_C	government consumption
G_I	government investment
i	investment per worker
i	nominal interest rate
I	investment
\bar{I}	autonomous investment
i^D	interest rate on dollar assets
i^F	interest rate on foreign assets
IM	imports
IS	IS curve
k	capital per worker (capital-labor ratio)
K	capital
k_G	Golden Rule capital-labor ratio
L	labor
L_A	labor devoted to producing new technology

Symbol

L_P
 $LRAS$
 $LRPC$
 m
 M
 M^d
 M^s
 MB
 MB_n
 MD
 MP
 mpc
 MPK
 MPL
 MRS
 MS
 n
 \bar{N}
 NX
 \bar{NX}
 P
 p_k
 PC
 r
 \bar{r}
 r_c
 R
 R
 R^D
 R^F
 rr
 RR
 s
 S
 S
 s_G
 S_G
 S_P
 $SRAS$
 T
 U
 U_n
 uc
 V
 w
 W
 W
 x
 y
 Y
 Y_D
 Y^P
 Y_P
 Y^{pe}
 Y_T

Term

labor devoted to producing goods and services
long-run aggregate supply curve
long-run Phillips curve
money multiplier
money supply
demand for money
money supply
monetary base
nonborrowed monetary base
money demand curve
monetary policy curve
marginal propensity to consume
marginal product of capital
marginal product of labor
marginal rate of substitution
money supply curve
population growth rate (labor force growth rate)
population
net exports
autonomous net exports
price or price level
real price of unit of capital
Phillips curve
real interest rate
autonomous component of the real interest rate
real rental price of capital
rental price of capital
reserves in banking system
nominal expected return on dollar assets
nominal expected return on foreign assets
required reserve ratio
required reserves
savings per worker
supply curve
savings or national savings
Golden Rule saving rate
government savings
private savings
short-run aggregate supply curve
taxes
unemployment rate
natural rate of unemployment
user cost of capital
velocity of money
real wage rate
wage rate
initial wealth (assets)
responsiveness of net exports to real interest rates
income per worker (output per worker)
output, income
private disposable income
potential output
permanent income
planned expenditure
transitory income

Students learn best when they attend lectures and keep up with their reading and assignments... but learning shouldn't end when class is over.

MyEconLab Picks Up Where Lectures and Office Hours Leave Off

Instructors choose MyEconLab:

“MyEconLab offers them a way to practice every week. They receive immediate feedback and a feeling of personal attention. As a result, my teaching has become more targeted and efficient.”

— **Kelly Blanchard, Purdue University**

“Students tell me that offering them MyEconLab is almost like offering them individual tutors.”

— **Jefferson Edwards, Cypress Fairbanks College**

“Chapter quizzes offset student procrastination by ensuring they keep on task. If a student is having a problem, MyEconLab indicates exactly what they need to study.”

— **Diana Fortier, Waubensee Community College**

Students choose MyEconLab:

In a recent study, 87 percent of students who used MyEconLab regularly felt it improved their grade.

“It was very useful because it had EVERYTHING, from practice exams to exercises to reading. Very helpful.”

— **student, Northern Illinois University**

“It was very helpful to get instant feedback. Sometimes I would get lost reading the book, and these individual problems would help me focus and see if I understood the concepts.”

— **student, Temple University**

“I would recommend taking the quizzes on MyEconLab because they give you a true account of whether or not you understand the material.”

— **student, Montana Tech**



Visit www.myeconlab.com for all of the information you need on using MyEconLab.

Macroeconomics Matters: The Latest Economic Events and Policy Responses

	APPLICATIONS apply the analysis in each chapter to explain important real-world situations.	POLICY AND PRACTICE cases explore specific examples of actual policies and how they were executed.	MACROECONOMICS IN THE NEWS boxes introduce students to relevant news articles and data from the daily press and explain how to read them.
Chapter 2 Measuring Macroeconomic Data		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Can GDP Buy Happiness? • Policy and Overstatements of the Cost of Living 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unemployment and Employment • Interest Rates
Chapter 3 Aggregate Production and Productivity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Why Are Some Countries Rich and Others Poor? • Explaining Real Wage Growth • Oil Shocks, Real Wages, and the Stock Market 		
Chapter 4 Saving and Investment in Closed and Open Economies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • How the United States Became the Largest Net Debtor in the World • The Twin Deficits 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Government Policies to Stimulate Saving • Crowding Out and the Debate over the 2009 Fiscal Stimulus Package 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Balance of Payments Accounts
Chapter 4 Appendix Saving and Investment in Large Open Economies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Global Saving Glut 		
Chapter 5 Money and Inflation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Testing the Quantity Theory of Money • Testing the Fisher Effect 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Zimbabwean Hyperinflation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Monetary Aggregates
Chapter 5 Appendix The Money Supply Process	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Great Depression Bank Panics and the Money Supply, 1930–1933 		
Chapter 6 The Sources of Growth and the Solow Model	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • U.S. Growth Rates in the Postwar Period • Evidence on Convergence, 1960–2009 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • China's One-Child Policy and Other Policies to Limit Population Growth 	
Chapter 7 Drivers of Growth: Technology, Policy, and Institutions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Does Population Growth Improve Living Standards? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Government Measures to Increase Human Capital • The World Bank's <i>Doing Business</i> • Does Foreign Aid Work? 	
Chapter 8 Business Cycles: An Introduction			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Leading Economic Indicators
Chapter 9 The <i>IS</i> Curve	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Vietnam War Buildup, 1964–1969 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Fiscal Stimulus Package of 2009 	
Chapter 10 Monetary Policy and Aggregate Demand		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Autonomous Monetary Easing at the Onset of the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis 	
Chapter 11 Aggregate Supply and the Phillips Curve		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Phillips Curve Tradeoff and Macroeconomic Policy in the 1960s 	
Chapter 12 The Aggregate Demand and Supply Model	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Volcker Disinflation, 1980–1986 • Negative Demand Shocks, 2001–2004 • Negative Supply Shocks, 1973–1975 and 1978–1980 • Positive Supply Shocks, 1995–1999 • Negative Supply and Demand Shocks and the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis • The United Kingdom and the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis • China and the 2007–2009 Financial Crisis 		

	APPLICATIONS apply the analysis in each chapter to explain important real-world situations.	POLICY AND PRACTICE cases explore specific examples of actual policies and how they were executed.	MACROECONOMICS IN THE NEWS boxes introduce students to relevant news articles and data from the daily press and explain how to read them.
Chapter 13 Macroeconomic Policy and Aggregate Demand and Supply Analysis	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Great Inflation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Federal Reserve's Use of the Equilibrium Real Interest Rate, r^* • The Activist/Nonactivist Debate over the Obama-Fiscal Stimulus Package • The Fed's Use of the Taylor Rule 	
Chapter 14 The Financial System and Economic Growth	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Tyranny of Collateral • Is China a Counter-Example to the Importance of Financial Development to Economic Growth? 		
Chapter 15 Financial Crises and the Economy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Mother of All Financial Crises: The Great Depression • The 2007–2009 Financial Crisis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Was the Fed to Blame for the Housing Price Bubble? • Nonconventional Monetary Policy and the Monetary Transmission Mechanism • Japan's Lost Decade, 1992–2002 • Debate over Central Bank Response to Bubbles 	
Chapter 16 Fiscal Policy and the Government Budget		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Entitlements Debate: Social Security and Medicare/Medicaid • Tax Smoothing • The 2009 Debate over Tax-Based Versus Spending-Based Fiscal Stimulus • Two Expansionary Fiscal Contractions: Denmark and Ireland • The Euro Area's Stability and Growth Pact: A Greek Tragedy? • The Bush Tax Cuts and Ricardian Equivalence 	
Chapter 17 Exchange Rates and International Economic Policy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Subprime Crisis and the Dollar • Why Are Exchange Rates So Volatile? • How Did China Accumulate over \$2 Trillion of International Reserves? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A Day at the Federal Reserve Bank of New York's Foreign Exchange Desk • The Collapse of the Argentine Currency Board 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Foreign Exchange Rates
Chapter 18 Consumption and Saving	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Housing, the Stock Market, and the Collapse of Consumption in 2008 and 2009 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The 2008 Tax Rebate • Behavioral Policies to Increase Saving 	
Chapter 19 Investment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Stock Market and Boom and Bust in "New Economy" Investment, 1995–2001 • Boom and Bust in the Housing Market, 2001–2009 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • U.S. Government Policies and the Housing Market 	
Chapter 20 The Labor Market, Employment, and Unemployment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Why Has Labor Force Participation of Women Increased? • Why Are Returns to Education and Income Inequality Increasing? • Why Are European Unemployment Rates Generally Much Higher Than U.S. Unemployment Rates? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unemployment Insurance and Unemployment • Minimum Wage Laws 	
Chapter 21 The Role of Expectations in Macroeconomic Policy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Consumption Function • A Tale of Three Oil Price Shocks 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Political Business Cycle and Richard Nixon • The Demise of Monetary Targeting in Switzerland • Will the Federal Reserve Adopt Inflation Targeting? • The Appointment of Paul Volcker, Anti-Inflation Hawk 	
Chapter 22 Modern Business Cycle Theory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Financial Frictions and the 2007–2009 Recession 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Management of Expectations and Nonconventional Monetary Policy 	